

# User Manual

## ZKBio CVSecurity

Version: 3.0

Date: March 2025

Software Version: ZKBio CVSecurity\_6.6.0\_R

English

Thank you for choosing our product. Please read the instructions carefully before operation. Follow these instructions to ensure that the product is functioning properly. The images shown in this manual are for illustrative purposes only.



For further details, please visit our Company's website  
[www.zkteco.com](http://www.zkteco.com).

## Copyright © 2025 ZKTECO CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

Without the prior written consent of ZKTeco, no portion of this manual can be copied or forwarded in any way or form. All parts of this manual belong to ZKTeco and its subsidiaries (hereinafter the "Company" or "ZKTeco").

## Trademark

**ZKTeco** is a registered trademark of ZKTeco. Other trademarks involved in this manual are owned by their respective owners.

## Disclaimer

This manual contains information on the operation and maintenance of the ZKTeco equipment. The copyright in all the documents, drawings, etc. in relation to the ZKTeco supplied equipment vests in and is the property of ZKTeco. The contents hereof should not be used or shared by the receiver with any third party without express written permission of ZKTeco.

The contents of this manual must be read as a whole before starting the operation and maintenance of the supplied equipment. If any of the content(s) of the manual seems unclear or incomplete, please contact ZKTeco before starting the operation and maintenance of the said equipment.

It is an essential pre-requisite for the satisfactory operation and maintenance that the operating and maintenance personnel are fully familiar with the design and that the said personnel have received thorough training in operating and maintaining the machine/unit/equipment. It is further essential for the safe operation of the machine/unit/equipment that personnel has read, understood and followed the safety instructions contained in the manual.

In case of any conflict between terms and conditions of this manual and the contract specifications, drawings, instruction sheets or any other contract-related documents, the contract conditions/documents shall prevail. The contract specific conditions/documents shall apply in priority.

ZKTeco offers no warranty, guarantee or representation regarding the completeness of any information contained in this manual or any of the amendments made thereto. ZKTeco does not extend the warranty of any kind, including, without limitation, any warranty of design, merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

ZKTeco does not assume responsibility for any errors or omissions in the information or documents which are referenced by or linked to this manual. The entire risk as to the results and performance obtained from using the information is assumed by the user.

ZKTeco in no event shall be liable to the user or any third party for any incidental, consequential, indirect, special, or exemplary damages, including, without limitation, loss of business, loss of profits, business interruption, loss of business information or any pecuniary loss, arising out of, in connection with, or relating to the use of the information contained in or referenced by this manual, even if ZKTeco has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

This manual and the information contained therein may include technical, other inaccuracies or

typographical errors. ZKTeco periodically changes the information herein which will be incorporated into new additions/amendments to the manual. ZKTeco reserves the right to add, delete, amend or modify the information contained in the manual from time to time in the form of circulars, letters, notes, etc. for better operation and safety of the machine/unit/equipment. The said additions or amendments are meant for improvement /better operations of the machine/unit/equipment and such amendments shall not give any right to claim any compensation or damages under any circumstances.

ZKTeco shall in no way be responsible (i) in case the machine/unit/equipment functions due to any non-compliance of the instructions contained in this manual (ii) in case of operation of the machine/unit/equipment beyond the rate limits (iii) in case of operation of the machine and equipment in conditions different from the prescribed conditions of the manual.

The product will be updated from time to time without prior notice. The latest operation procedures and relevant documents are available on <http://www.zkteco.com>.

If there is any issue related to the product, please contact us.

### ZKTeco Headquarters

**Address** ZKTeco Industrial Park, No. 32, Industrial Road,  
Tangxia Town, Dongguan, China.

**Phone** +86 769 - 82109991

**Fax** +86 755 - 89602394

For business related queries, please write to us at: [sales@zkteco.com](mailto:sales@zkteco.com).

To know more about our global branches, visit [www.zkteco.com](http://www.zkteco.com).

## About the Company

ZKTeco is one of the world's largest manufacturer of RFID and Biometric (Fingerprint, Facial, Finger-vein) readers. Product offerings include Access Control readers and panels, Near & Far-range Facial Recognition Cameras, Elevator/Floor access controllers, Turnstiles, License Plate Recognition (LPR) gate controllers and Consumer products including battery-operated fingerprint and face-reader door locks. Our security solutions are multi-lingual and localized in over 18 different languages. At the ZKTeco state-of-the-art 700,000 square foot ISO9001-certified manufacturing facility, we control manufacturing, product design, component assembly, and logistics/shipping, all under one roof.

The founders of ZKTeco have been determined for independent research and development of biometric verification procedures and the productization of biometric verification SDK, which was initially widely applied in PC security and identity authentication fields. With the continuous enhancement of the development and plenty of market applications, the team has gradually constructed an identity authentication ecosystem and smart security ecosystem, which are based on biometric verification techniques. With years of experience in the industrialization of biometric verifications, ZKTeco was officially established in 2007 and now has been one of the globally leading enterprises in the biometric verification industry owning various patents and being selected as the National High-tech Enterprise for 6 consecutive years. Its products are protected by intellectual property rights.

## About the Manual

This manual introduces the operations of **ZKBio CVSecurity**.

All figures displayed are for illustration purposes only. Figures in this manual may not be exactly consistent with the actual products






## Document Conventions

Conventions used in this manual are listed below:

### GUI Conventions

| For Software |  |
|--------------|--|
| Convention   | Description  |
| Bold font    | Used to identify software interface names e.g. <b>OK</b> , <b>Confirm</b> , <b>Cancel</b> .                                  |
| >            | Multi-level menus are separated by these brackets. For example, File > Create > Folder.                                      |
| For Device   |  |
| Convention   | Description  |
| < >          | Button or key names for devices. For example, press <OK>.  |
| []           | Window names, menu items, data table, and field names are inside square brackets. For example, pop up the [New User] window. |
| /            | Multi-level menus are separated by forwarding slashes. For example, File/Create/Folder.                                      |

### Symbols

| Convention  | Description  |
|---|--|
|  | This represents a note that needs to pay more attention to.                            |
|  | The general information which helps in performing the operations faster.               |
|  | The information which is significant.  |
|  | Care taken to avoid danger or mistakes.  |
|  | The statement or event that warns of something or that serves as a cautionary example. |

## Table Of Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>1 Installation And Login .....</b>                 | <b>19</b> |
| 1.1 Operating Environment Requirements .....          | 19        |
| 1.2 System Installation .....                         | 20        |
| 1.3 Self-service License Reset .....                  | 24        |
| 1.3.1 Online Deactivation + Online Activation .....   | 24        |
| 1.3.2 Offline Deactivation + Online Activation .....  | 27        |
| 1.3.3 Online Deactivation + Offline Activation .....  | 30        |
| 1.3.4 Offline Deactivation + Offline Activation ..... | 34        |
| <b>2 Personnel .....</b>                              | <b>41</b> |
| 2.1 Personnel Management .....                        | 41        |
| 2.1.1 Person .....                                    | 42        |
| 2.1.2 Department .....                                | 63        |
| 2.1.3 Position .....                                  | 66        |
| 2.1.4 Dismissed Personnel .....                       | 67        |
| 2.1.5 Pending Review .....                            | 68        |
| 2.1.6 Custom Attributes .....                         | 69        |
| 2.1.7 List Library .....                              | 70        |
| 2.1.8 Parameters .....                                | 71        |
| 2.2 Card Management .....                             | 75        |
| 2.2.1 Card .....                                      | 76        |
| 2.2.2 Wiegand Format .....                            | 78        |
| 2.2.3 Issue Card Record .....                         | 80        |
| <b>3 Access Control .....</b>                         | <b>82</b> |
| 3.1 Operation Scenario .....                          | 82        |
| 3.2 Operation Process .....                           | 82        |
| 3.3 Access Device .....                               | 82        |
| 3.3.1 Device .....                                    | 82        |
| 3.3.2 I/O Board .....                                 | 96        |
| 3.3.3 Door .....                                      | 98        |
| 3.3.4 Reader .....                                    | 100       |
| 3.3.5 Auxiliary Input .....                           | 101       |
| 3.3.6 Auxiliary Output .....                          | 102       |
| 3.3.7 Event Type .....                                | 104       |
| 3.3.8 Daylight Saving Time .....                      | 105       |
| 3.3.9 Real-Time Monitoring .....                      | 106       |
| 3.3.10 Alarm Monitoring .....                         | 111       |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 3.3.11 Map .....                                  | 112        |
| 3.4 Access Rule .....                             | 114        |
| 3.4.1 Timezone .....                              | 114        |
| 3.4.2 Holiday .....                               | 116        |
| 3.4.3 Access Level .....                          | 117        |
| 3.4.4 Set Access Level Allocation .....           | 122        |
| 3.4.5 Set Access Level Groups by Person .....     | 124        |
| 3.4.6 Set Access Level Groups by Department ..... | 126        |
| 3.4.7 Interlock .....                             | 128        |
| 3.4.8 Linkage .....                               | 129        |
| 3.4.9 Anti-Passback .....                         | 131        |
| 3.4.10 First-Person Open .....                    | 132        |
| 3.4.11 Multi-Person Group .....                   | 134        |
| 3.4.12 Multi-Person Verification .....            | 136        |
| 3.4.13 Verification Mode .....                    | 139        |
| 3.4.14 Parameters .....                           | 140        |
| 3.5 Advanced Function .....                       | 141        |
| 3.5.1 Area Definition .....                       | 142        |
| 3.5.2 Reader Definition .....                     | 143        |
| 3.5.3 Area Headcount .....                        | 145        |
| 3.5.4 Global Anti-Passback .....                  | 146        |
| 3.5.5 Global Linkage .....                        | 148        |
| 3.5.6 Global Interlock Group .....                | 151        |
| 3.5.7 Global Interlock .....                      | 152        |
| 3.5.8 Authorization Limits .....                  | 154        |
| 3.5.9 Crowd Control .....                         | 155        |
| 3.5.10 Muster Point .....                         | 156        |
| 3.5.11 Muster Point Report .....                  | 161        |
| 3.6 Access Control Reports .....                  | 163        |
| 3.6.1 All Transactions .....                      | 163        |
| 3.6.2 Events from Today .....                     | 164        |
| 3.6.3 All Exception Events .....                  | 165        |
| 3.6.4 Alarm Log .....                             | 166        |
| 3.6.5 Access Rights by Door .....                 | 167        |
| 3.6.6 Access Rights by Personnel .....            | 168        |
| 3.6.7 First In and Last Out .....                 | 168        |
| <b>4 Video Intercom .....</b>                     | <b>170</b> |
| 4.1 Basic Management .....                        | 170        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 4.1.1 Building .....                    | 170        |
| 4.1.2 Unit .....                        | 172        |
| 4.1.3 Parameter .....                   | 174        |
| 4.2 Device Management .....             | 176        |
| 4.2.1 DNK Device Operation Guide .....  | 176        |
| 4.2.2 IPBX Device Operation Guide ..... | 179        |
| 4.3 Access Management .....             | 181        |
| 4.3.1 Access Control Group .....        | 181        |
| 4.3.2 Set Access by Levels .....        | 184        |
| 4.3.3 Set Access by Person .....        | 186        |
| 4.4 Extension Management .....          | 188        |
| 4.4.1 Extension Number .....            | 188        |
| 4.4.2 Extension Assignment .....        | 192        |
| 4.4.3 Contact List .....                | 199        |
| 4.4.4 Voice Interaction .....           | 202        |
| 4.5 Video Intercom Reports .....        | 206        |
| 4.5.1 Call Records .....                | 206        |
| 4.5.2 Unlock Records .....              | 208        |
| <b>5 Smart Video Surveillance .....</b> | <b>211</b> |
| 5.1 Device Management .....             | 211        |
| 5.1.1 Device (Add Device) .....         | 211        |
| 5.1.2 Group Management .....            | 219        |
| 5.1.3 Video View .....                  | 221        |
| 5.1.4 Video Preview .....               | 221        |
| 5.1.5 Video Playback .....              | 223        |
| 5.2 Decoding On the Wall .....          | 224        |
| 5.2.1 Decoder .....                     | 224        |
| 5.2.2 TV Wall .....                     | 225        |
| 5.2.3 Large Screen Control .....        | 227        |
| 5.3 Search .....                        | 230        |
| 5.4 Intelligent .....                   | 230        |
| 5.4.1 Behavior Analysis .....           | 230        |
| 5.4.2 Crowd Situation .....             | 235        |
| 5.4.3 General Intelligence .....        | 237        |
| 5.4.4 Live Alarm .....                  | 239        |
| 5.4.5 Global Linkage .....              | 241        |
| 5.4.6 Link Record .....                 | 242        |
| 5.5 Statistics .....                    | 243        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 5.5.1 Alarm Report .....                        | 243        |
| 5.5.2 Patrol Report .....                       | 244        |
| 5.5.3 Patrol Alarm .....                        | 245        |
| 5.6 Video Patrol .....                          | 246        |
| 5.6.1 Patrol Group .....                        | 246        |
| 5.6.2 Patrol Plan .....                         | 249        |
| 5.6.3 Real-Time Patrol .....                    | 253        |
| 5.7 Map Management .....                        | 255        |
| 5.7.1 Video Map .....                           | 255        |
| 5.8 Maintenance Configuration .....             | 259        |
| 5.8.1 Developer Log .....                       | 259        |
| 5.8.2 Client Request Log .....                  | 259        |
| 5.8.3 CU Request .....                          | 260        |
| 5.8.4 Parameters .....                          | 261        |
| 5.9 ZKBio Video Client .....                    | 262        |
| 5.9.1 Installing the Client .....               | 262        |
| 5.9.2 Configuration And Use .....               | 265        |
| <b>6 Time &amp; Attendance Management .....</b> | <b>268</b> |
| 6.1 Operation Scenario .....                    | 268        |
| 6.2 Operation Flow .....                        | 268        |
| 6.3 Attendance Management .....                 | 268        |
| 6.3.1 Personnel Verification Method .....       | 268        |
| 6.3.2 By Area .....                             | 269        |
| 6.3.3 Attendance Device .....                   | 271        |
| 6.3.4 Attendance Point .....                    | 274        |
| 6.3.5 Roll Call .....                           | 275        |
| 6.3.6 Mobile Check In Address .....             | 275        |
| 6.3.7 Command from Server .....                 | 277        |
| 6.3.8 Device Operation Log .....                | 277        |
| 6.4 Attendance Setting .....                    | 278        |
| 6.4.1 Attendance Rule Setting .....             | 278        |
| 6.4.2 Holidays .....                            | 283        |
| 6.4.3 Leave Type .....                          | 284        |
| 6.4.4 Automatic Report .....                    | 285        |
| 6.4.5 Process Settings .....                    | 286        |
| 6.5 Regular Shift Setting Schedule .....        | 287        |
| 6.5.1 Timetable .....                           | 287        |
| 6.5.2 Personnel Schedule .....                  | 292        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 6.5.3 Group Schedule .....                | 294        |
| 6.5.4 Schedule Details .....              | 297        |
| 6.6 Exception .....                       | 297        |
| 6.6.1 Appended Log .....                  | 297        |
| 6.6.2 Ask For Leave .....                 | 298        |
| 6.6.3 Overtime .....                      | 299        |
| 6.6.4 Adjust Rest .....                   | 300        |
| 6.6.5 Shift Adjustment .....              | 301        |
| 6.6.6 Attendance Detail Report .....      | 302        |
| 6.6.7 Daily Attendance Report .....       | 305        |
| 6.6.8 Monthly Attendance Report .....     | 310        |
| 6.6.9 Calculate Report .....              | 313        |
| 6.6.10 Attendance Custom Report .....     | 317        |
| <b>7 Parking Management .....</b>         | <b>319</b> |
| 7.1 Operation Scenario .....              | 319        |
| 7.2 Operation Flow .....                  | 319        |
| 7.3 Basic Parking Setting .....           | 320        |
| 7.3.1 Parking Settings .....              | 320        |
| 7.3.2 Device .....                        | 322        |
| 7.3.3 Parking Area .....                  | 323        |
| 7.3.4 Entrance And Exit Area .....        | 324        |
| 7.3.5 Guard Booth .....                   | 325        |
| 7.3.6 Channel .....                       | 327        |
| 7.3.7 Vehicle Definition .....            | 328        |
| 7.3.8 Shift Settings .....                | 329        |
| 7.3.9 Manual Release Reason .....         | 330        |
| 7.3.10 Dual Verification Setting .....    | 332        |
| 7.3.11 Dual Verification Lane .....       | 332        |
| 7.4 Charge Management .....               | 334        |
| 7.4.1 Fixed Cars Are Charging Rules ..... | 334        |
| 7.4.2 Temporary Car Charging Rules .....  | 335        |
| 7.4.3 Overtime Charging Rules .....       | 338        |
| 7.4.4 Discount Strategy .....             | 339        |
| 7.4.5 Business Management .....           | 340        |
| 7.4.6 Financial Reconciliation .....      | 341        |
| 7.5 Vehicle Management .....              | 342        |
| 7.5.1 License Plate Registration .....    | 342        |
| 7.5.2 Vehicle Authorization .....         | 344        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 7.5.3 Fixed Vehicle Extension .....               | 346        |
| 7.5.4 Block&Allow List Management .....           | 347        |
| 7.6 Report Management .....                       | 348        |
| 7.6.1 Vehicle Inside .....                        | 348        |
| 7.6.2 Entry Record .....                          | 349        |
| 7.6.3 Exit Record .....                           | 350        |
| 7.6.4 Charge Record .....                         | 350        |
| 7.6.5 Expired Vehicle .....                       | 351        |
| 7.6.6 Fixed Vehicle Authorization Record .....    | 351        |
| 7.6.7 Device Operation Record .....               | 352        |
| 7.6.8 Handover Statistics .....                   | 352        |
| 7.6.9 Daily Income Statistics .....               | 352        |
| 7.6.10 Monthly Income Statistics .....            | 353        |
| 7.7 Real-Time Monitoring .....                    | 353        |
| 7.7.1 Sentry Booth Monitoring .....               | 353        |
| 7.7.2 Monitor Room .....                          | 355        |
| 7.8 Ticket Dispenser Management .....             | 357        |
| 7.8.1 Authorized Products (BEST-W Protocol) ..... | 357        |
| 7.8.2 Set Parking Parameter .....                 | 359        |
| 7.8.3 Add Ticket Dispenser .....                  | 366        |
| 7.8.4 Lane Setting .....                          | 369        |
| 7.8.5 Vehicle Authorization .....                 | 371        |
| 7.8.6 Result Verification .....                   | 373        |
| 7.8.7 Central Payment Station .....               | 375        |
| 7.8.8 Annex 1 .....                               | 377        |
| <b>8 Visitor Management .....</b>                 | <b>379</b> |
| 8.1 Operation Scenario .....                      | 379        |
| 8.2 Operation Flow .....                          | 379        |
| 8.3 Visitor Registration .....                    | 379        |
| 8.3.1 Entry Registration .....                    | 379        |
| 8.3.2 Visitor .....                               | 387        |
| 8.4 Visitor Reservation .....                     | 390        |
| 8.4.1 Visitor Reservation .....                   | 390        |
| 8.4.2 Reservation Audit .....                     | 393        |
| 8.4.3 Invite .....                                | 394        |
| 8.4.4 Respondent Self-Approval .....              | 396        |
| 8.5 Basic Management .....                        | 402        |
| 8.5.1 Parameters .....                            | 402        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 8.5.2 Set Up Permission Groups by Visited Department (Visited Department Level) ..... | 420        |
| 8.5.3 Entry Place .....   | 422        |
| 8.5.4 Visit Reason .....  | 427        |
| 8.5.5 Custom Attributes .....   | 428        |
| 8.6 Advanced .....  | 429        |
| 8.6.1 Category .....  | 429        |
| 8.6.2 WatchList .....   | 431        |
| 8.6.3 Watch List Thumbnails .....   | 433        |
| 8.6.4 Alert Template .....  | 434        |
| 8.6.5 Linkage .....   | 435        |
| 8.7 Visitor Reports .....   | 438        |
| 8.7.1 Last Visited Location .....   | 438        |
| 8.7.2 Visitor History Record .....  | 438        |
| 8.7.3 Visitor Daily Visit Report .....  | 440        |
| 8.7.4 Visitor Weekly Visit Report .....   | 440        |
| 8.7.5 Visitor Monthly Visit Report .....  | 441        |
| <b>9 Space Management .....</b>   | <b>442</b> |
| 9.1 Device Management .....   | 442        |
| 9.1.1 Search and Add Device .....   | 442        |
| 9.1.2 Delete .....  | 444        |
| 9.1.3 Control .....   | 444        |
| 9.2 Space Management .....  | 444        |
| 9.2.1 Space .....   | 444        |
| 9.2.2 Space Services .....  | 447        |
| 9.2.3 Space Facility .....  | 448        |
| 9.3 Reservation Management .....  | 450        |
| 9.3.1 Space Reservation .....   | 450        |
| 9.3.2 Reservation Details .....   | 451        |
| 9.4 Statistics Report .....   | 453        |
| 9.4.1 Space Usage Statistics .....  | 453        |
| 9.4.2 Sign-In Statistics .....  | 454        |
| 9.5 Notification .....  | 454        |
| <b>10 Elevator Control .....</b>  | <b>457</b> |
| 10.1 Elevator Control Management .....  | 457        |
| 10.1.1 Operation Scenario .....   | 457        |
| 10.1.2 Operation Flow .....   | 457        |
| 10.1.3 Elevator Device .....  | 458        |
| 10.1.4 Elevator Control Rules .....   | 473        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 10.1.5 Parameters .....                     | 482        |
| 10.1.6 Elevator Control Reports .....       | 483        |
| 10.1.7 Elevator Integration .....           | 486        |
| <b>11 Consumption (Offline) .....</b>       | <b>493</b> |
| 11.1 Consumption System .....               | 493        |
| 11.1.1 Consumption Basic Management .....   | 493        |
| 11.1.2 Key Value Information .....          | 500        |
| 11.1.3 Card Information .....               | 501        |
| 11.2 Device Management .....                | 503        |
| 11.2.1 Consumption Device .....             | 503        |
| 11.2.2 Consumption Parameter .....          | 507        |
| 11.3 Card Management .....                  | 508        |
| 11.3.1 Card Service .....                   | 508        |
| 11.3.2 Top Up .....                         | 511        |
| 11.3.3 Card Management .....                | 512        |
| 11.3.4 Income and Expenses .....            | 513        |
| 11.4 Consumer Details .....                 | 514        |
| 11.5 Manual Supplement .....                | 516        |
| 11.5.1 New .....                            | 516        |
| 11.5.2 Refresh .....                        | 517        |
| 11.6 Subsidy .....                          | 517        |
| 11.6.1 Subsidy Management .....             | 517        |
| 11.6.2 Consumption Report .....             | 522        |
| 11.6.3 Statistical Report .....             | 530        |
| <b>12 Consumption (Online) System .....</b> | <b>543</b> |
| 12.1 Consumption Basic Management .....     | 543        |
| 12.1.1 Piecewise Fixed Value .....          | 543        |
| 12.1.2 Consumption Time Zone .....          | 544        |
| 12.1.3 Restaurant Information .....         | 545        |
| 12.1.4 Meal Information .....               | 547        |
| 12.1.5 Categories .....                     | 547        |
| 12.1.6 Commodity Information .....          | 548        |
| 12.1.7 Card Information .....               | 550        |
| 12.1.8 Consumption Parameter .....          | 552        |
| 12.1.9 Incoming Goods Management .....      | 553        |
| 12.1.10 AD Setting .....                    | 554        |
| 12.2 Device Management .....                | 555        |
| 12.2.1 Consumption Device Management .....  | 555        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 12.2.2 Face Consumption Machine .....        | 556        |
| 12.3 Consumption Account .....               | 559        |
| 12.3.1 Account Service .....                 | 559        |
| 12.3.2 Card Management .....                 | 563        |
| 12.3.3 Wallet .....                          | 564        |
| 12.3.4 Income and Expenses .....             | 564        |
| 12.3.5 Subsidy Management .....              | 565        |
| 12.4 Consumer Details .....                  | 568        |
| 12.4.1 Consumption Details Report .....      | 568        |
| 12.4.2 Offline Consumption .....             | 569        |
| 12.4.3 Manual Supplement .....               | 569        |
| 12.5 Consumption Report .....                | 570        |
| 12.5.1 Top Up Table .....                    | 570        |
| 12.5.2 Refund Table .....                    | 570        |
| 12.5.3 Subsidy Table .....                   | 571        |
| 12.5.4 Card Balance Table .....              | 572        |
| 12.6 Statistical Report .....                | 573        |
| 12.6.1 Personal Consumption Statistics ..... | 573        |
| 12.6.2 Personal Balance List .....           | 575        |
| 12.6.3 Personal Recharge Statistics .....    | 575        |
| 12.6.4 Department Summary Table .....        | 576        |
| 12.6.5 Restaurant Summary .....              | 577        |
| 12.6.6 Device Summary Table .....            | 579        |
| 12.6.7 Income and Expenditures Summary ..... | 580        |
| 12.6.8 Meal Summary Table .....              | 582        |
| 12.6.9 Commodity Summary .....               | 583        |
| 12.6.10 Recharge Summary Table .....         | 584        |
| 12.6.11 Personnel Meal Summary Table .....   | 584        |
| 12.6.12 Device Meal Summary Table .....      | 585        |
| 12.6.13 Monthly Statement Management .....   | 585        |
| 12.7 Consumption Ordering .....              | 586        |
| 12.7.1 Order Management .....                | 586        |
| 12.7.2 Meal Order Statics Report .....       | 587        |
| 12.7.3 Ordering Details Management .....     | 587        |
| 12.7.4 Ordering Statistics .....             | 588        |
| <b>13 Patrol Management .....</b>            | <b>589</b> |
| 13.1 Operation Scenario .....                | 589        |
| 13.2 Operation Flow .....                    | 589        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 13.3 Patrol Route Monitoring .....                            | 589        |
| 13.3.1 Patrol Monitoring .....                                | 589        |
| 13.4 Basic Settings (Patrol Basic Management) .....           | 590        |
| 13.4.1 Device Addition (Device) .....                         | 590        |
| 13.4.2 Checkpoint .....                                       | 591        |
| 13.4.3 Parameters .....                                       | 592        |
| 13.5 Patrol Management .....                                  | 593        |
| 13.5.1 Set Up a Patrol Plan .....                             | 593        |
| 13.5.2 Designated Patrol Personnel Group (Patrol Group) ..... | 594        |
| 13.5.3 Set Up Patrol Routes (Route) .....                     | 596        |
| 13.6 Result Validation (Patrol Reports) .....                 | 598        |
| 13.6.1 All Transactions .....                                 | 598        |
| 13.6.2 Patrol Records Today .....                             | 599        |
| 13.6.3 Patrol Route Statistics .....                          | 600        |
| 13.6.4 Patrol Personnel Statistics .....                      | 601        |
| <b>14 Entrance Control .....</b>                              | <b>603</b> |
| 14.1 Operation Scenario .....                                 | 603        |
| 14.2 Operation Flow .....                                     | 603        |
| 14.3 Channel Device .....                                     | 604        |
| 14.3.1 Passage .....  | 604        |
| 14.3.2 Device .....   | 605        |
| 14.3.3 Gate .....   | 612        |
| 14.3.4 Reader .....   | 613        |
| 14.3.5 Auxiliary Input .....                                  | 613        |
| 14.3.6 Event Type .....                                       | 614        |
| 14.3.7 Daylight Saving Time .....                             | 615        |
| 14.3.8 Device monitoring .....                                | 616        |
| 14.3.9 Real-Time monitoring .....                             | 618        |
| 14.4 Entrance Control .....                                   | 619        |
| 14.4.1 Barrier Gate Permission Group .....                    | 619        |
| 14.4.2 Set Access by Levels .....                             | 622        |
| 14.4.3 Anti-Passback .....                                    | 623        |
| 14.4.4 Linkage Setting .....                                  | 624        |
| 14.4.5 Parameters .....                                       | 626        |
| 14.5 Passage Settings .....                                   | 627        |
| 14.5.1 Barrier Gate Passing Rules .....                       | 627        |
| 14.5.2 Flap Barrier .....                                     | 629        |
| 14.5.3 Swing Barrier .....                                    | 630        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 14.6 Channel Reports .....                  | 632        |
| 14.6.1 All Transactions .....               | 632        |
| 14.6.2 Today's Access Record .....          | 633        |
| 14.6.3 Personnel Last Access Location ..... | 634        |
| 14.6.4 All Exception Events .....           | 635        |
| <b>15 FaceKiosk .....</b>                   | <b>637</b> |
| 15.1 Facekiosk Device .....                 | 637        |
| 15.1.1 Device .....                         | 637        |
| 15.1.2 Set Attendance by Area .....         | 638        |
| 15.1.3 Set Attendance by Person .....       | 639        |
| 15.2 Media Advertisement Resources .....    | 639        |
| 15.2.1 Advertisement Resources .....        | 639        |
| 15.2.2 Advertisement Settings .....         | 640        |
| 15.3 FaceKiosk Reports .....                | 641        |
| 15.3.1 Verification Record .....            | 641        |
| <b>16 Locker .....</b>                      | <b>642</b> |
| 16.1 Locker Device Management .....         | 642        |
| 16.1.1 Device .....                         | 642        |
| 16.1.2 Parameters .....                     | 645        |
| 16.1.3 Visual Panel .....                   | 646        |
| 16.1.4 Linkage .....                        | 648        |
| 16.2 Locker Report .....                    | 650        |
| 16.2.1 All Transaction .....                | 650        |
| <b>17 Intrusion Alarm .....</b>             | <b>652</b> |
| 17.1 Intrusion Device .....                 | 652        |
| 17.1.1 Device .....                         | 652        |
| 17.1.2 Partition .....                      | 655        |
| 17.1.3 Zone .....                           | 658        |
| 17.1.4 Device User .....                    | 660        |
| 17.1.5 Global Linkage .....                 | 661        |
| 17.2 Real-time Monitoring .....             | 662        |
| 17.2.1 Partition .....                      | 663        |
| 17.2.2 Zone .....                           | 664        |
| 17.2.3 Real Time Event .....                | 664        |
| 17.3 Intrusion Record .....                 | 664        |
| 17.3.1 Event Record .....                   | 664        |
| 17.3.2 Linkage Record .....                 | 666        |
| 17.4 Real Time Monitoring on Map .....      | 668        |

|                                     |            |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| 17.4.1 Map Configure .....          | 668        |
| 17.4.2 Real Time Monitoring .....   | 668        |
| <b>18 Energy Saving .....</b>       | <b>669</b> |
| 18.1 Device Management .....        | 675        |
| 18.1.1 Gateway .....                | 675        |
| 18.1.2 Terminal .....               | 678        |
| 18.1.3 Event Type .....             | 681        |
| 18.1.4 Area Personnel .....         | 682        |
| 18.2 Scene Management .....         | 682        |
| 18.2.2 Report Management .....      | 685        |
| <b>19 System Management .....</b>   | <b>687</b> |
| 19.1 System Management .....        | 687        |
| 19.1.1 Operation Log .....          | 687        |
| 19.1.2 Database Management .....    | 688        |
| 19.1.3 Area Settings .....          | 691        |
| 19.1.4 E-mail Management .....      | 693        |
| 19.1.5 Dictionary Management .....  | 694        |
| 19.1.6 Data Cleaning .....          | 694        |
| 19.1.7 Resource File .....          | 696        |
| 19.1.8 Cloud Setting .....          | 697        |
| 19.1.9 Certificate Type .....       | 698        |
| 19.1.10 Print Template .....        | 699        |
| 19.1.11 System Monitoring .....     | 700        |
| 19.1.12 Parameters .....            | 703        |
| 19.2 Authority Management .....     | 704        |
| 19.2.1 User .....                   | 704        |
| 19.2.2 Role .....                   | 706        |
| 19.2.3 API Authorization .....      | 706        |
| 19.2.4 Client Register .....        | 708        |
| 19.2.5 Security Parameters .....    | 710        |
| 19.3 Communication Management ..... | 712        |
| 19.3.1 Device Commands .....        | 712        |
| 19.3.2 Communication Device .....   | 713        |
| 19.3.3 Product .....                | 713        |
| 19.3.4 Authorized Device .....      | 715        |
| 19.3.5 Communication Monitor .....  | 716        |
| 19.4 Third Party Integration .....  | 716        |
| 19.4.1 LED Device .....             | 716        |

|                                    |            |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| 19.4.2 Digifort Camera .....       | 721        |
| 19.4.3 Artec Intergration .....    | 722        |
| 19.4.4 Line Notification .....     | 722        |
| 19.4.5 AD Management .....         | 725        |
| 19.4.6 SMS Management .....        | 727        |
| <b>20 Service Center .....</b>     | <b>729</b> |
| 20.1 Device Center .....           | 729        |
| 20.1.1 Device .....                | 729        |
| 20.2 Event Center .....            | 729        |
| 20.2.1 The Event Type .....        | 729        |
| 20.2.2 The Event Record .....      | 730        |
| 20.3 Notification Center .....     | 730        |
| 20.4 Map Center .....              | 731        |
| 20.4.1 Real-Time Monitoring .....  | 731        |
| 20.4.2 Map Configuration .....     | 734        |
| 20.5 Scene Center .....            | 739        |
| 20.5.1 Scene Configuration .....   | 739        |
| 20.6 Push Center .....             | 762        |
| 20.6.1 Push Configuration .....    | 762        |
| 20.6.2 Push Exception Record ..... | 764        |

# 1 Installation And Login

## 1.1 Operating Environment Requirements

| Category      | Minimum Configuration Requirements   |
|---------------|--|
| CPU           | Core i5 quad-core with a clock speed of 2.8 GHz or higher  |
| RAM           | Not less than 8 GB   |
| Hard Disk     | Not less than 500GB (the remaining space of the system disk is more than 15GB)   |
| OS            | Windows 7/8/8.1/10/11, Windows Server 2008/2012/2016/2019/2022/2025  |
| Graphics Card | Intel integrated graphics, video memory greater than 2.0G (Intel® HD Graphics 530 and above recommended)   |
| Network Card  | At least one network card, the recommended network speed is not less than 1000Mbit/s   |
| Monitor       | At least 21.5 inches, and the best resolution of the monitor is recommended: 1920 * 1080.<br>It is recommended to set the display resolution to 1920 * 1080. Using other resolutions may cause the interface to be abnormal. |
| Browser       | Support Chrome33+ (recommended)/Firefox27+/Explorer11+/Microsoft Edge 89+  |

**Table 1-1**

### Instruction:

The number of live channels supported under the minimum configuration requirements:

| Resolution       | Configuration a (H.264 format) | Configuration a (H.265 format) |
|------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| CIF (512K)       | 38                             | 38                             |
| 4CIF/D1 (2M)     | 22                             | 22                             |
| 720P (2M 25fps)  | 10                             | 10                             |
| 1080P (4M 25fps) | 6                              | 6                              |

**Table 1-2**

In the video preview window, you can view the system CPU or memory usage in real time. If the CPU reaches 80%, it is not recommended to increase the video preview window, which will cause the video stream to freeze; if the CPU has reached 80% and the video window does not meet the actual application, the system configuration needs to be improved.

## 1.2 System Installation

**Step 1:** Obtain the installation package.

Instruction:

Before installing the software, it is recommended to close the anti-virus software in the system to avoid failing the environment detection. If the antivirus software detects abnormality, you can also choose to ignore it.

After running the application, there will be a few seconds of detection process, please be patient.

**Step 2:** Right-click the installation package installer, choose to run as an administrator, and the environment detection tool will automatically perform system environment detection. If an abnormality is detected during the installation process, the interface will give a prompt. The user can refer to the prompt information to repair, and re-test after repairing until all the test items are passed before proceeding to the next Step.

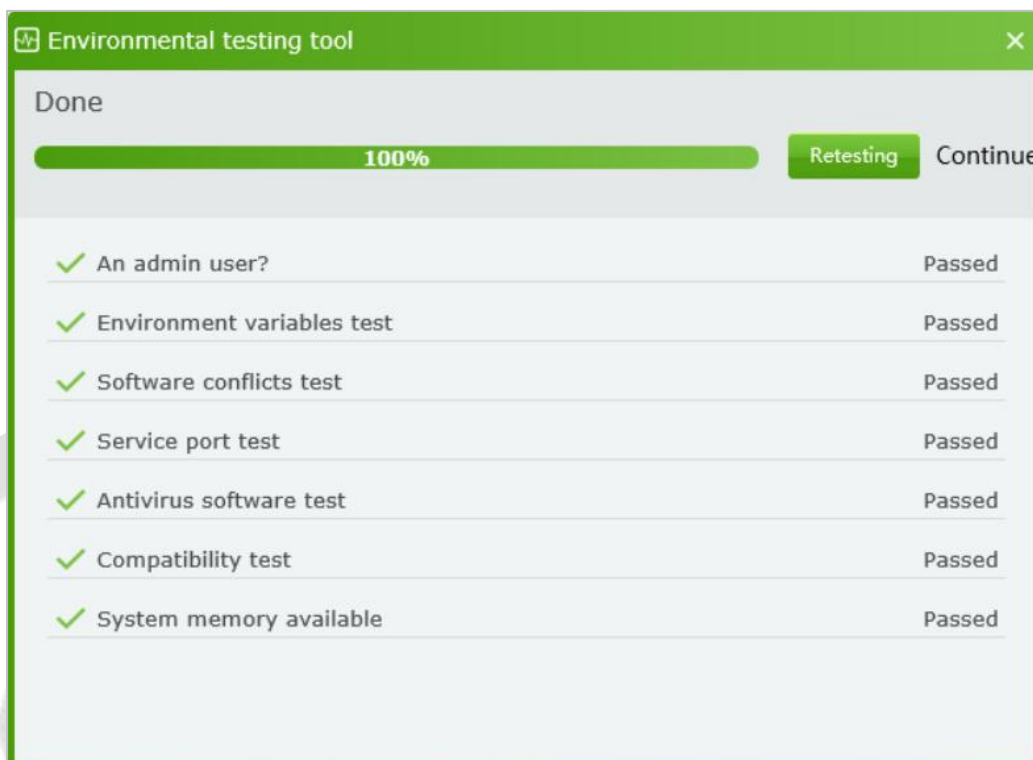


Figure 1- 1

**Step 3:** If the detection is normal, click **Continue**.

**Step 4:** Select "I agree to this agreement (A)" and click **Next**.

**Figure 1-2**

**Step 5:** After configuring the server port and other parameters, click **Next**.

Instruction:

The default port is 8098, and the Adms service port defaults to 8088.

If the port is occupied, please modify the port number manually. When modifying, try to avoid the occupied ports in the system, and can not overlap with the database port 5442, Redis port 6390, and 21 and 80 ports.

Check "Add firewall exception to this port" to prevent Windows Firewall from blocking the program from running.

The https protocol is used by default.

**Figure 1-3**

**Step 6:** After setting the installation directory, click **Next**.

Instruction:

The default installation path is C:\Program Files\ZKBioCVSecurity. You can also click **Browse** to customize the installation path. Please follow the interface prompts to ensure that the selected installation path has enough disk space.



**Figure 1-4**

**Step 7:** After setting the backup file storage path, click **Next**.

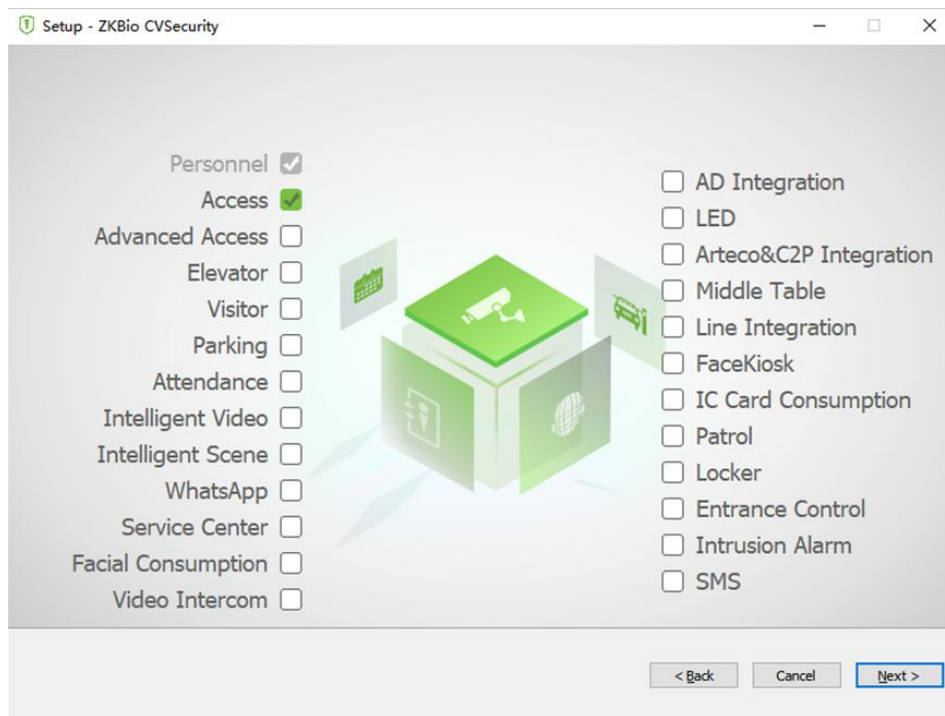
Instruction:

The system scans the entire disk by default, locates the drive letter with the largest free space, and creates a new SecurityDBBack folder. You can also click **Browse** to customize the storage path of the backup file.



**Figure 1-5**

**Step 8:** Select the modules needed for your project, then click **Next**



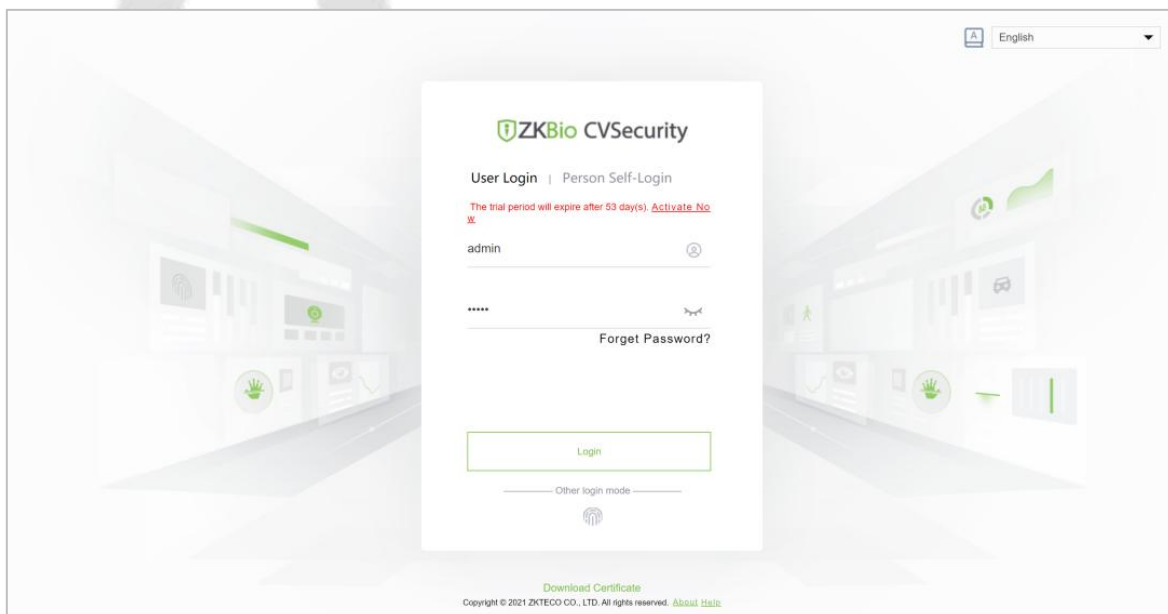
**Figure 1-6**

**Step 9:** After the installation is complete, you will be prompted whether to restart the computer immediately (the default is "Yes"). Click **Finish** to restart the computer to complete the software installation.

Instruction:

After the software installation is complete, it will take a long time (about 2 minutes) for the service to start up. Please wait patiently for the service to start and then complete the operation.

**Step 10:** Enter the login page as shown in figure below, log in to the system.



**Figure 1-7**

### 1.3 Self-service License Reset

In general, the software license and the client's server correspond to each other, which means that once a license has been registered, it cannot be used on any other server. However, in special cases, customers may need to perform server migration. For example, if the performance of the original server is too low or if the original server is being damaged, etc., the customer needs to migrate the license to the new server.

At this point, customers can utilize the self-service license reset function, which enables users to reset the license associated with the original server and reactivate it on the new server. This not only enhances the efficiency of license migration but, more importantly, eliminates the need for users to purchase new licenses.

#### 1.3.1 Online Deactivation + Online Activation

● **Description:**

Deactivate the original server online, and activate the new server online.

● **Preconditions:**

Both original server and the new server are being connected to the network.

● **Steps:**

1. Click **Admin > About > Online Deactivation.**

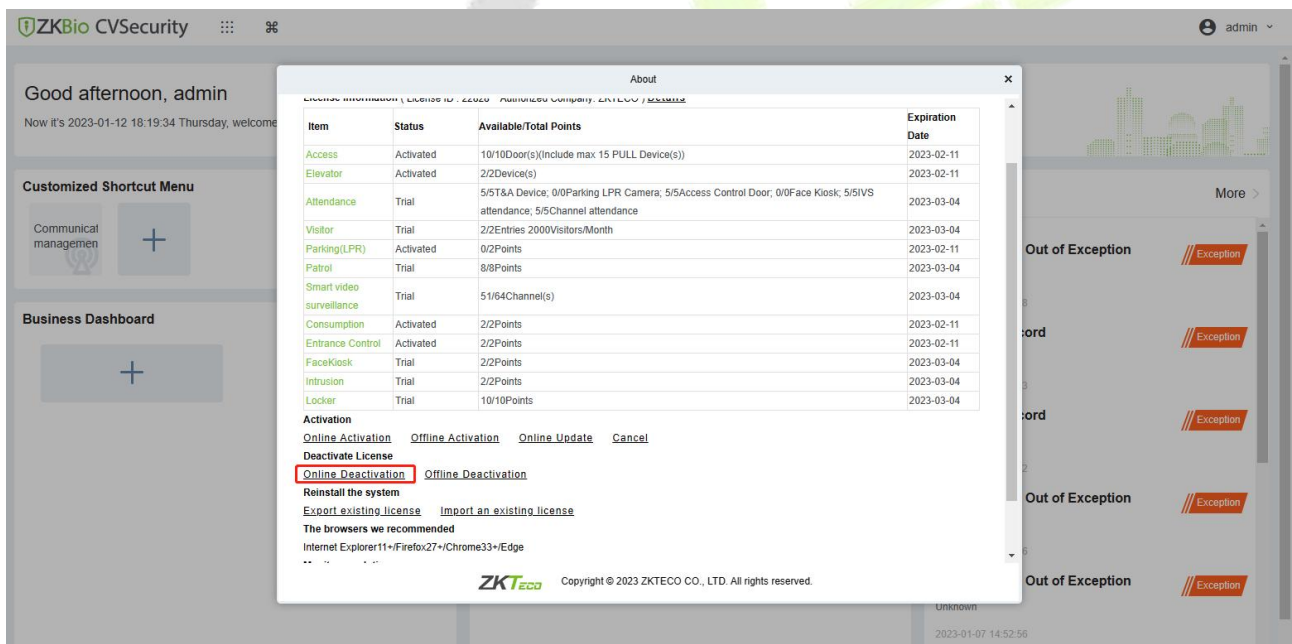
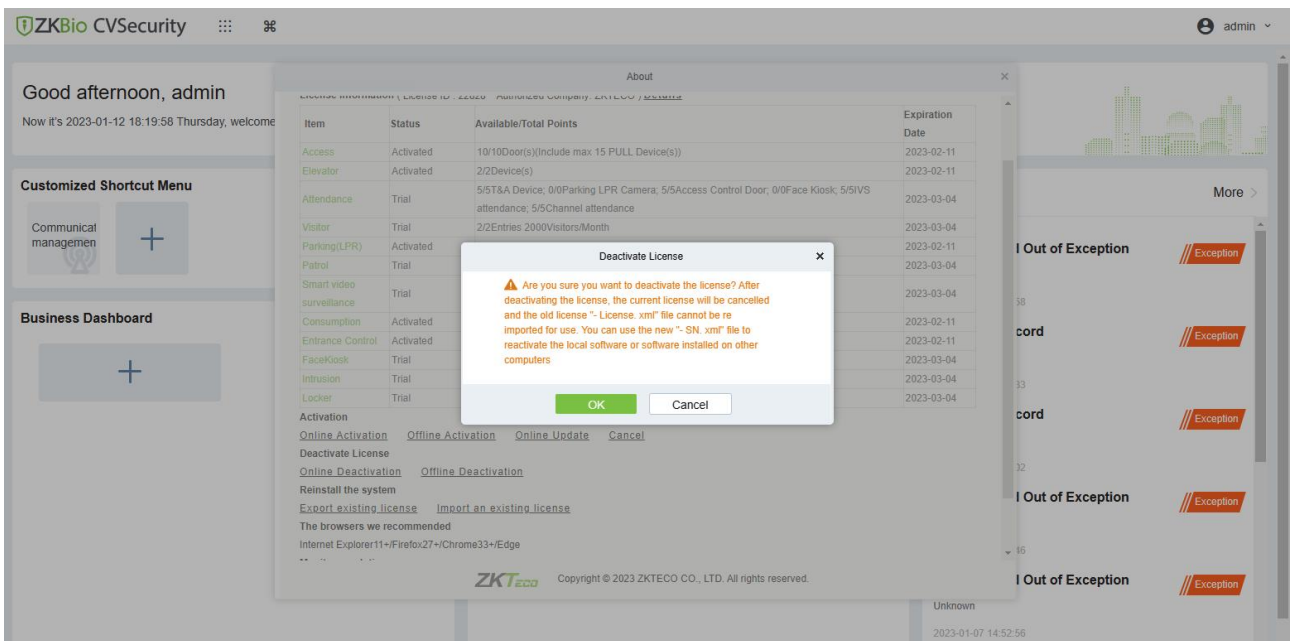


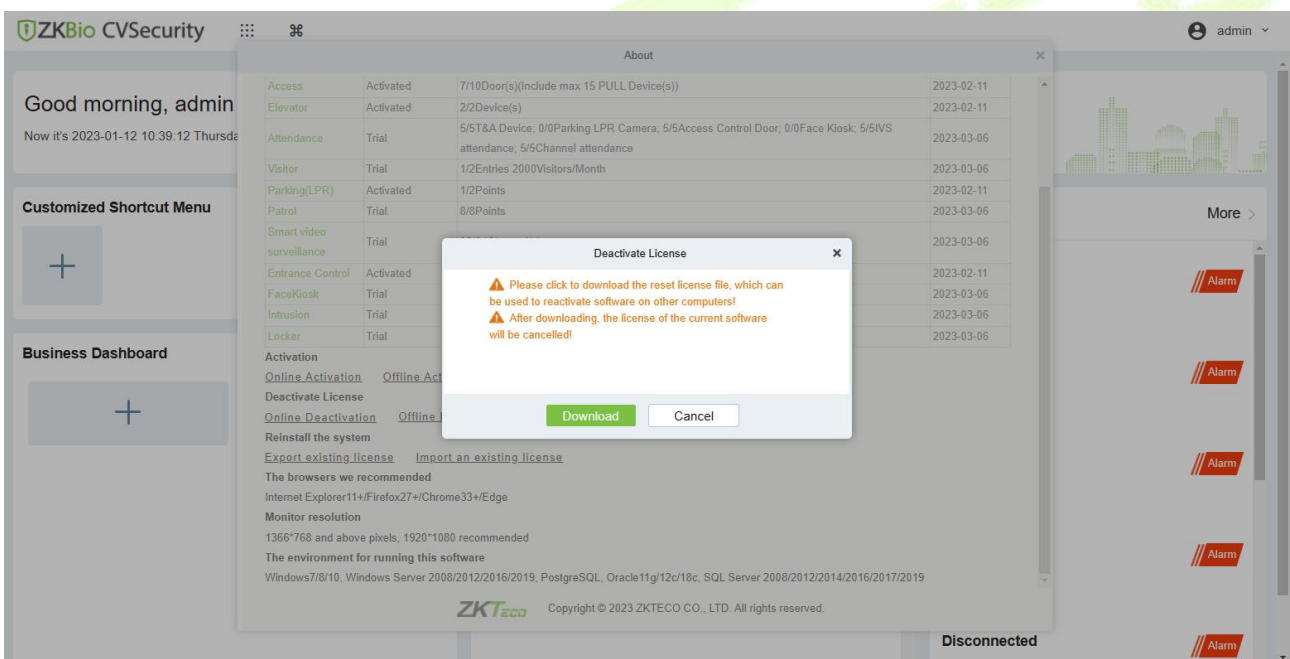
Figure 1- 8 Online Deactivation

2. Click **OK.**



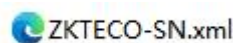
**Figure 1- 9 Online Deactivation Confirm.**

3. Click **Download**, then a license file with a suffix of SN.xml will be downloaded.



**Figure 1- 10 Online Deactivation File Download.**

4. Save the license file with a suffix of SN.xml you just downloaded.



5. Log in to a new server.

6. Click **Admin > About > Online Activation**. Fill in the relevant information, then click on **Browse** to upload the file you got from previous step with the SN.xml suffix

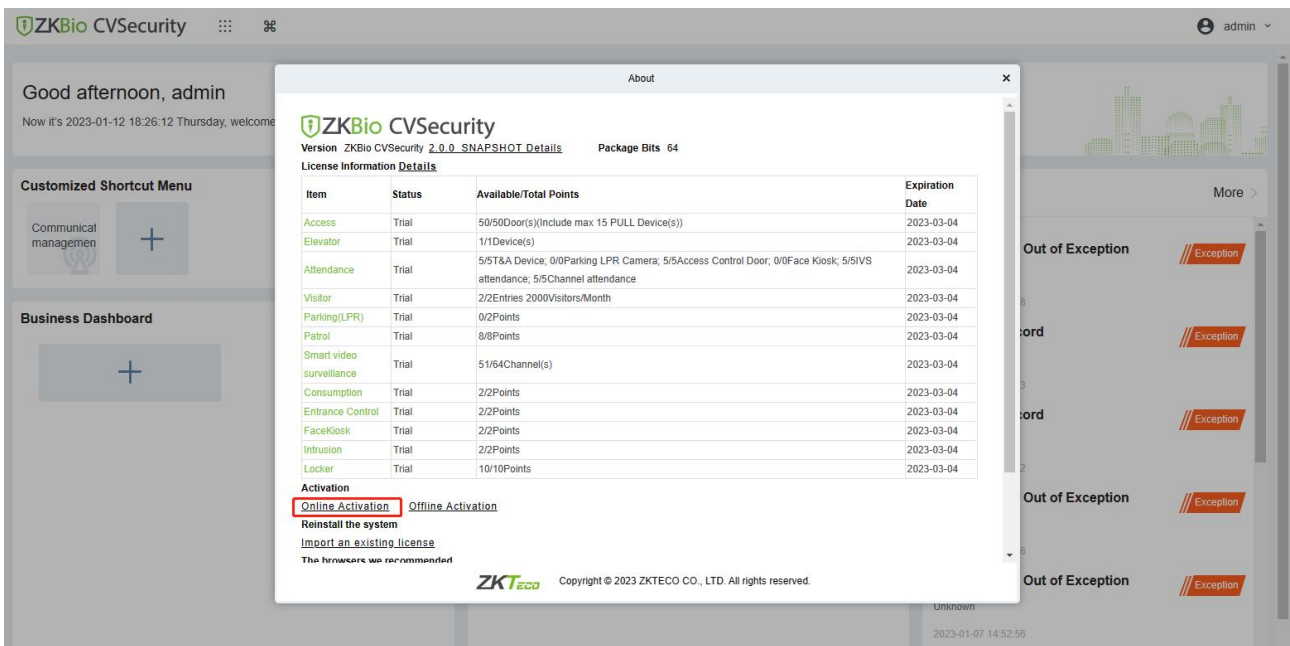


Figure 1- 11 Online Activation

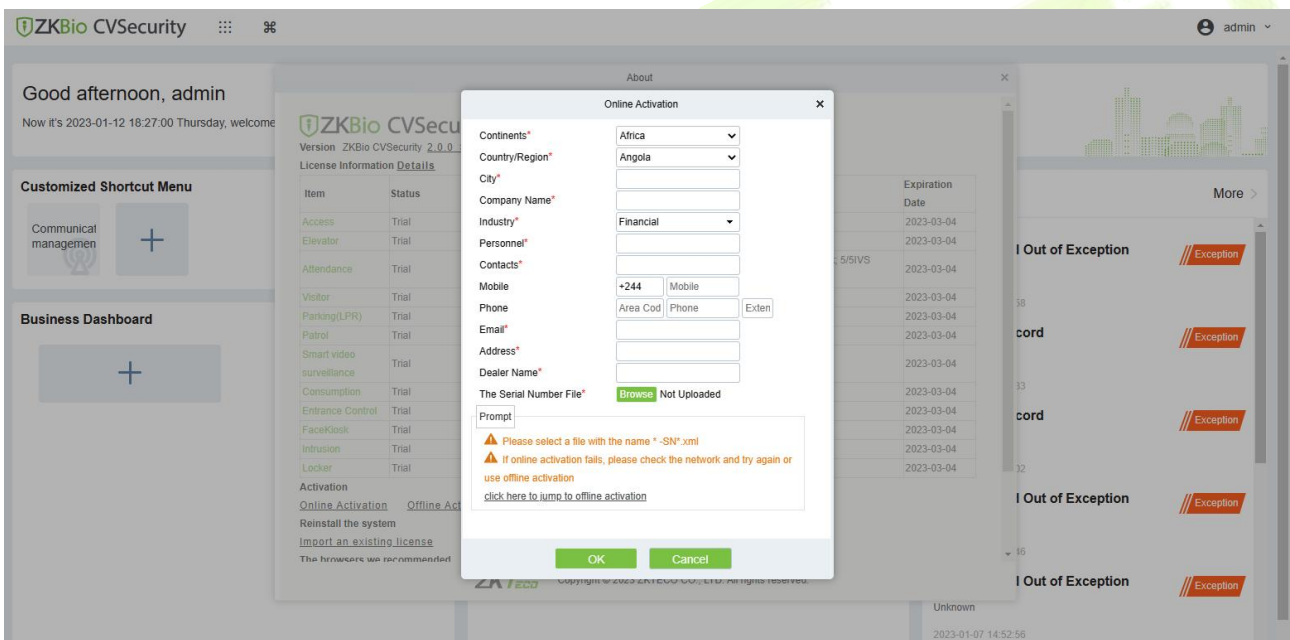


Figure 1- 12 Online Activation Confirm

7.The activation is successful. The following is the successful activation interface:

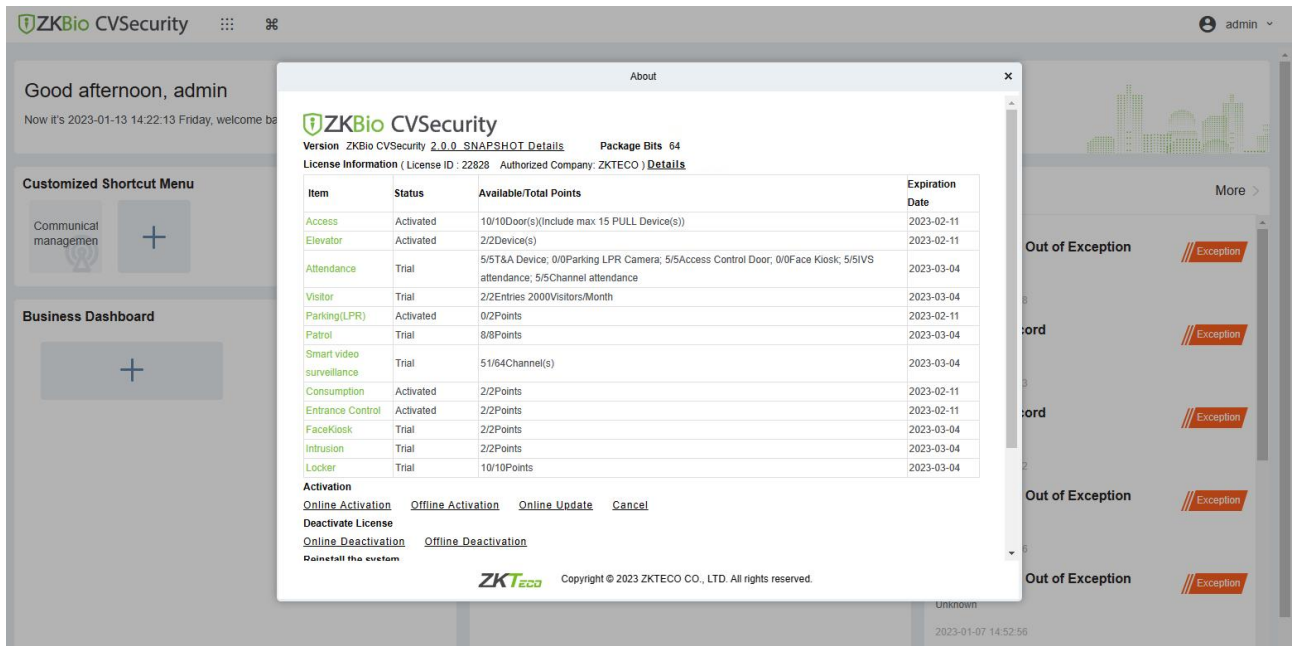


Figure 1- 13 License Activation Succeeded

### 1.3.2 Offline Deactivation + Online Activation

●Description:

Offline deactivate the original server, and then online, activate the new server.

●Preconditions:

The original server is not connected to the network, while the new server is connected to the network.

●Steps:

1. Click **Admin > About > Offline Deactivation**.

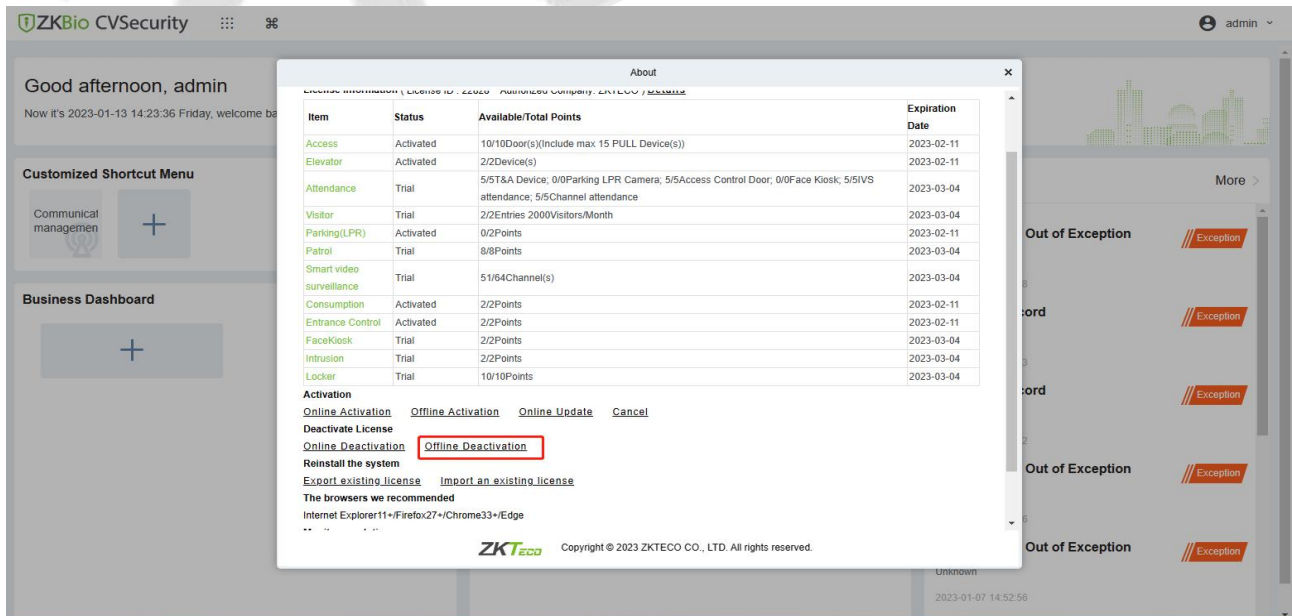


Figure 1- 14 Offline Deactivation

2. Click **OK**.

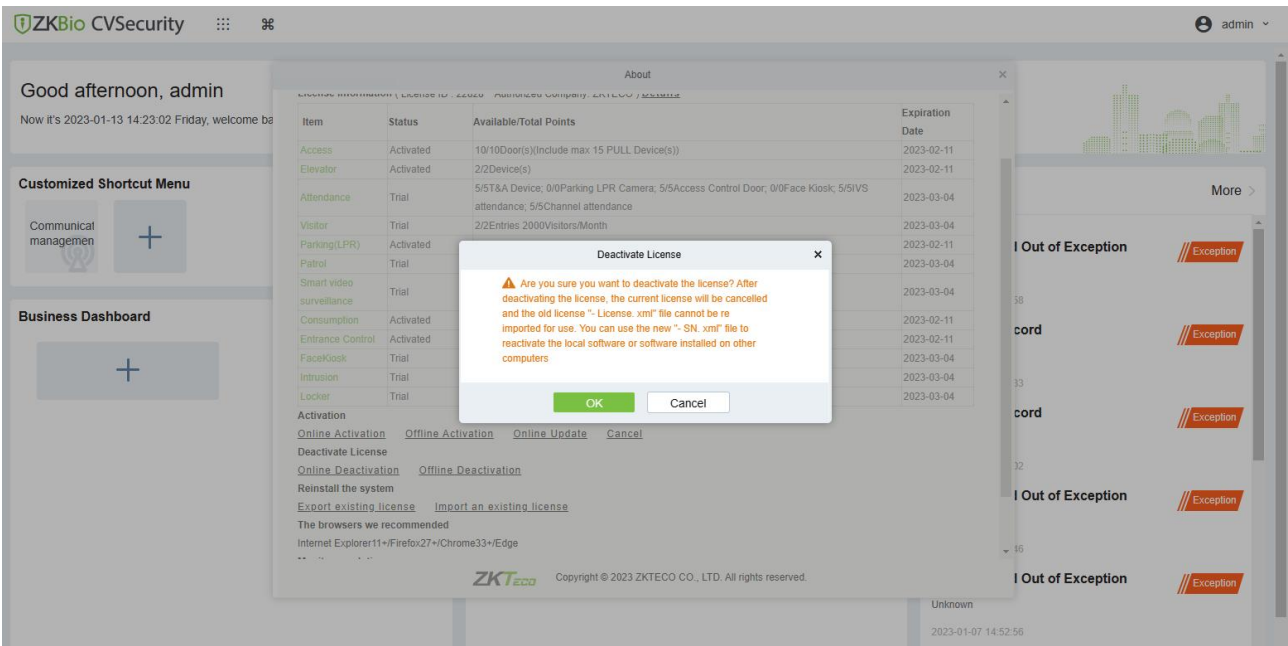


Figure 1- 15 Offline Deactivation Confirm

3. Click **Download**, and then a license file with a suffix of BackActi.xml will be downloaded.

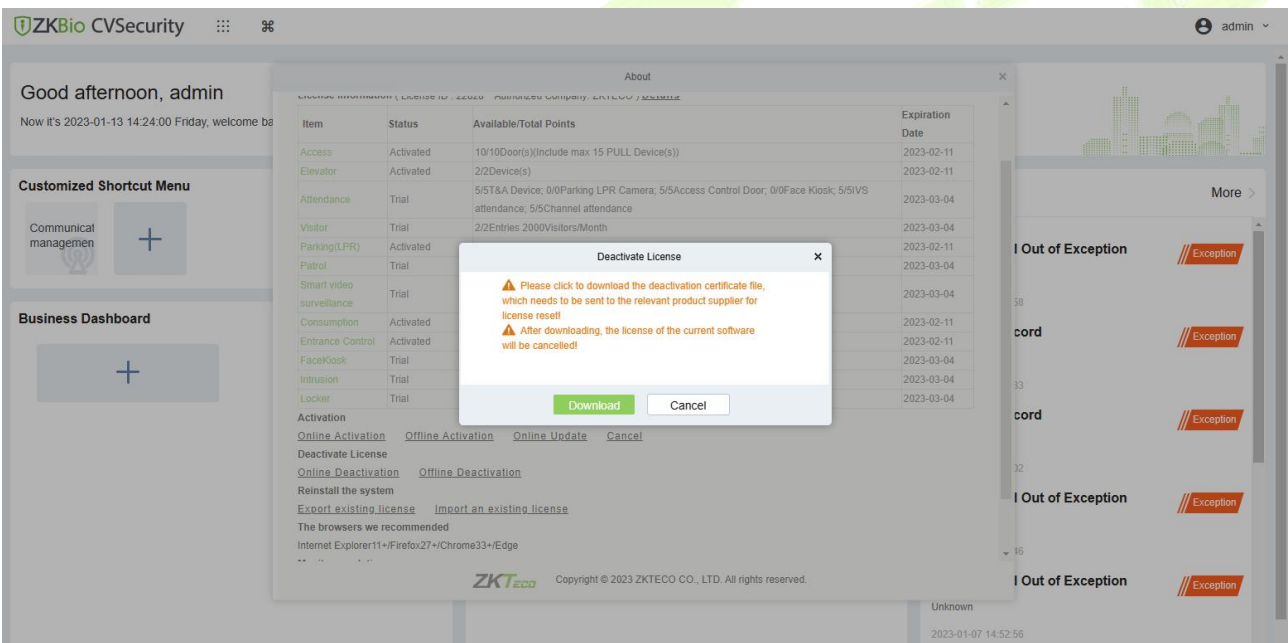
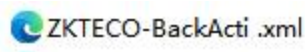


Figure 1- 16 Offline Deactivation File Download

4. Save the license file with a suffix of BackActi.xml that you just downloaded.



5. Open the ZKBio CVSecurity License Deactivate page.

**Web Link:** [ZKBio CVSecurity License Deactive \(zkteco.com\)](http://zkteco.com)

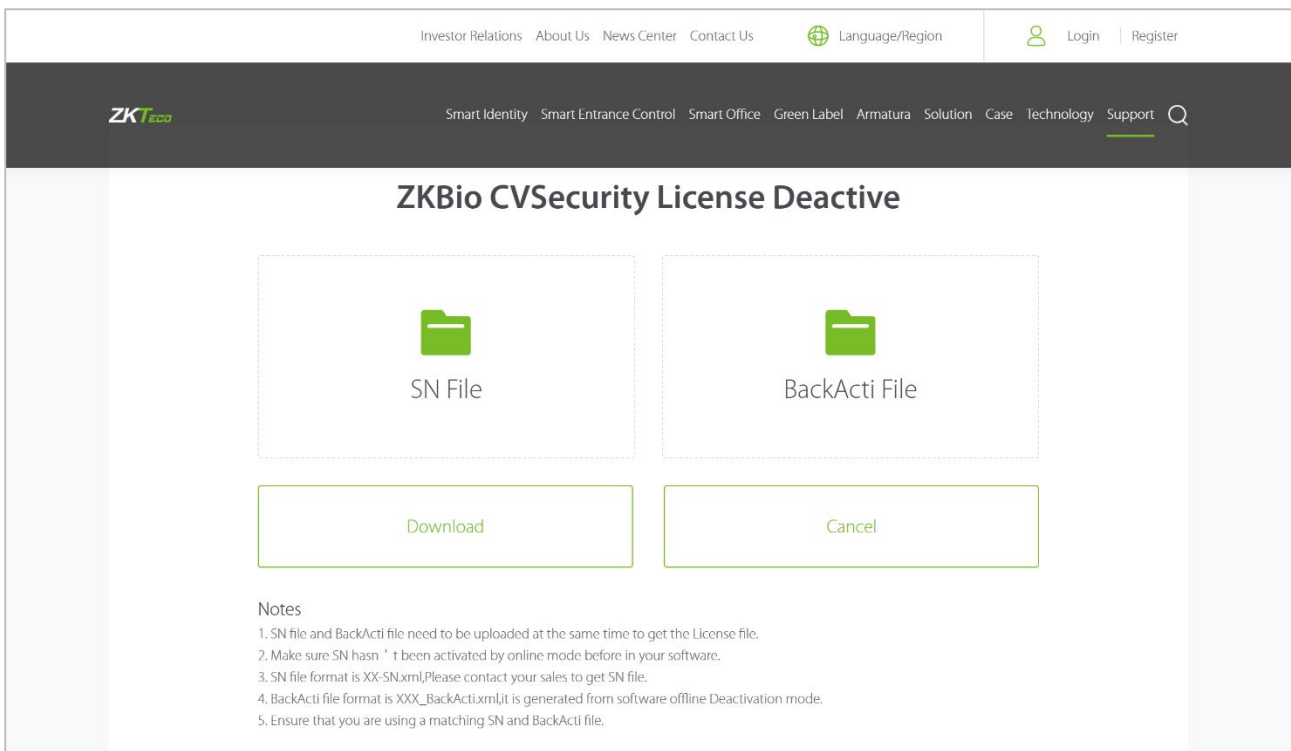


Figure 1- 17

6. Follow the instructions on the page to upload the SN file and the BackActi file downloaded in step 4 in turn.

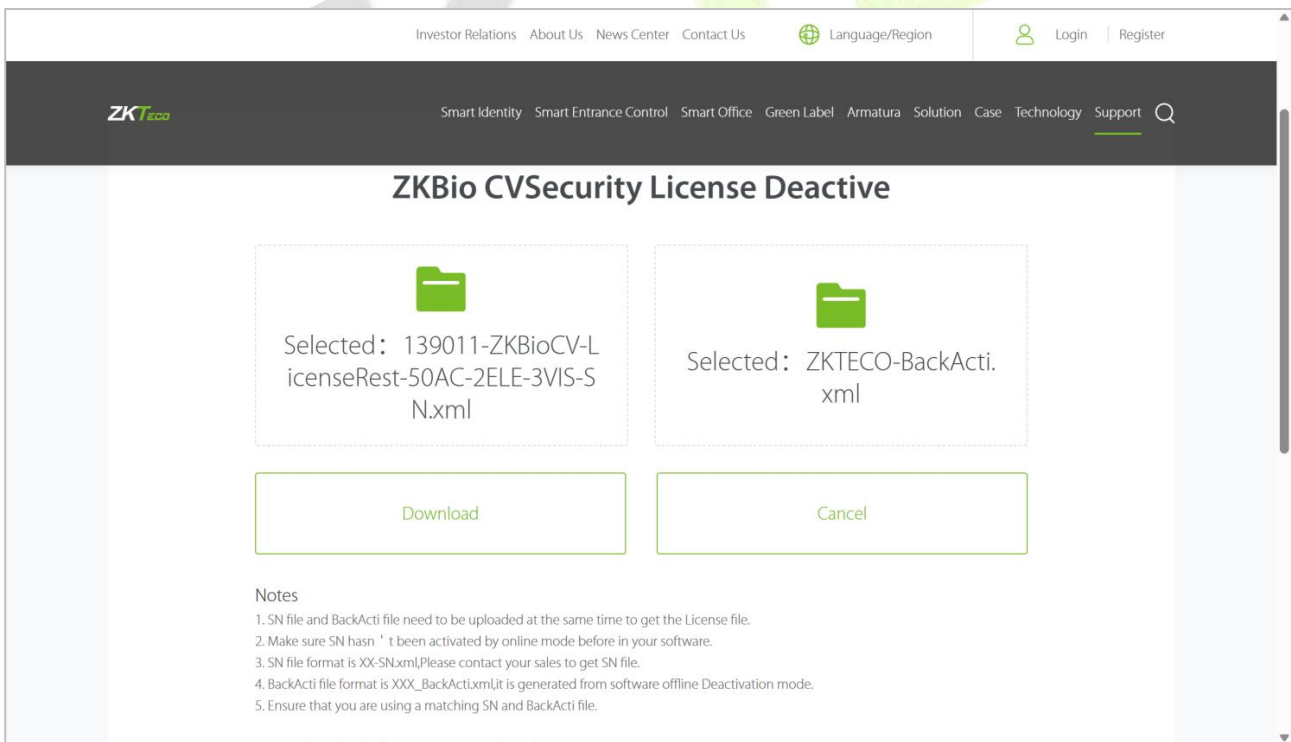
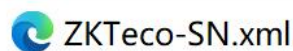


Figure 1- 18

7. Click the Download button to download the activation file.



8. Log in to a new server.

9. Click **Admin > About > Online Activation**. Fill in the relevant information, then click on Browse to

upload the file that you just got from previous step with the SN.xml suffix.

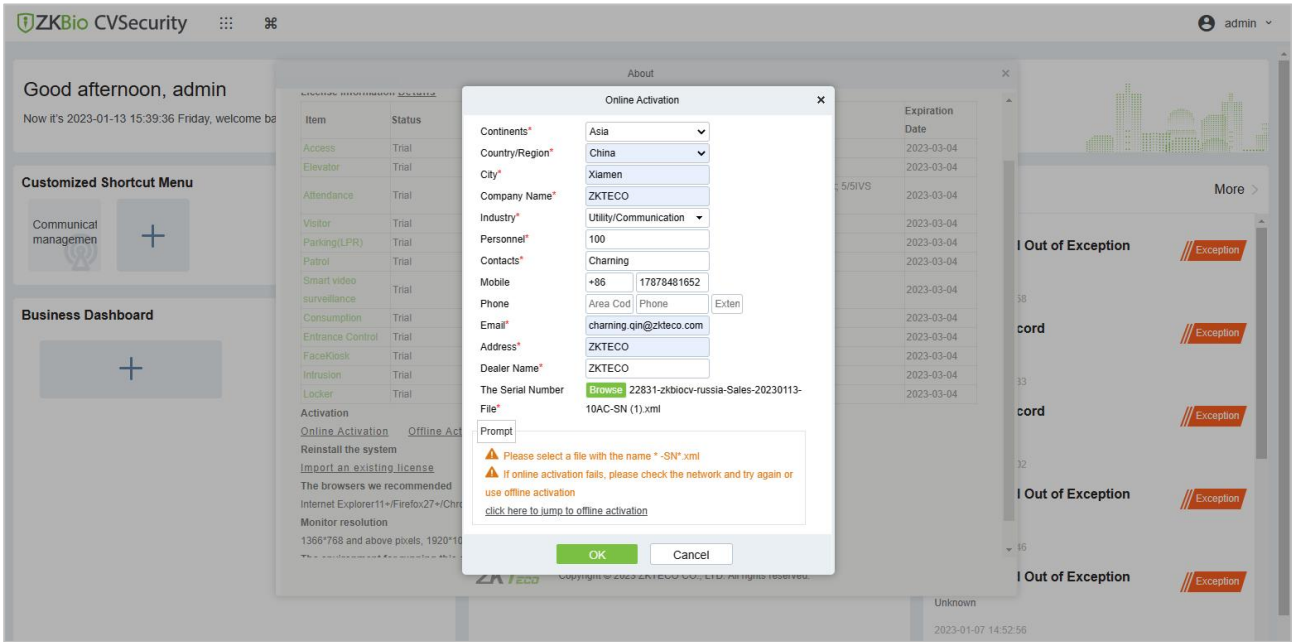


Figure 1- 19 Information Filling and File Uploading

10. The activation is successful. The following is the successful activation interface:

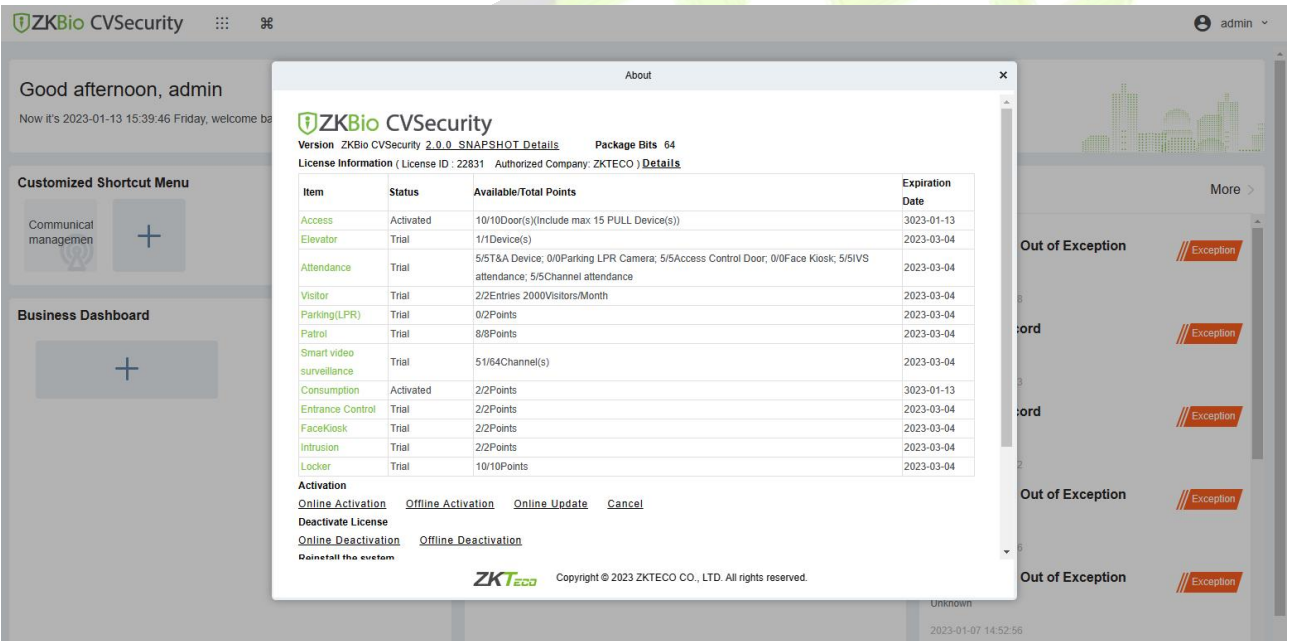


Figure 1- 20 License Activation Succeeded

### 1.3.3 Online Deactivation + Offline Activation

●Description:

Deactivate the original server online, and activate the new server offline.

●Preconditions:

Original server is connected to the network, and the new server is not connected to network.

●Steps:

1.Click Admin > About > Online Deactivation.

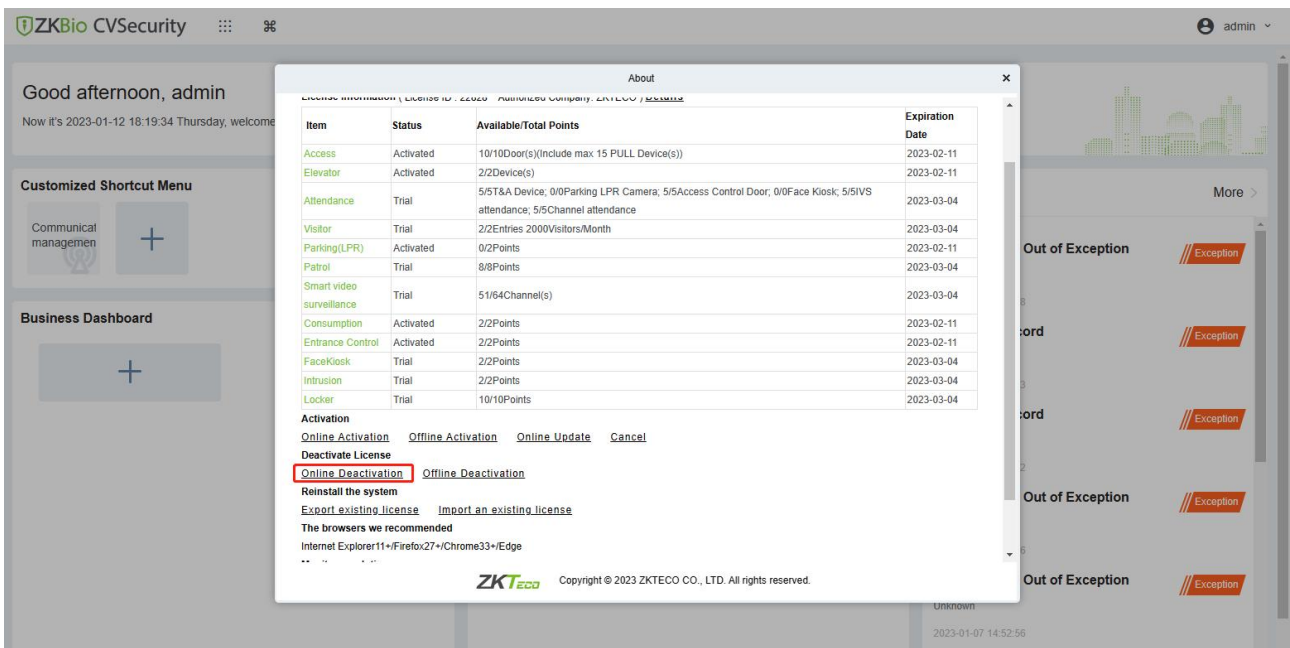


Figure 1- 21 Online Deactivation

2. Click OK.

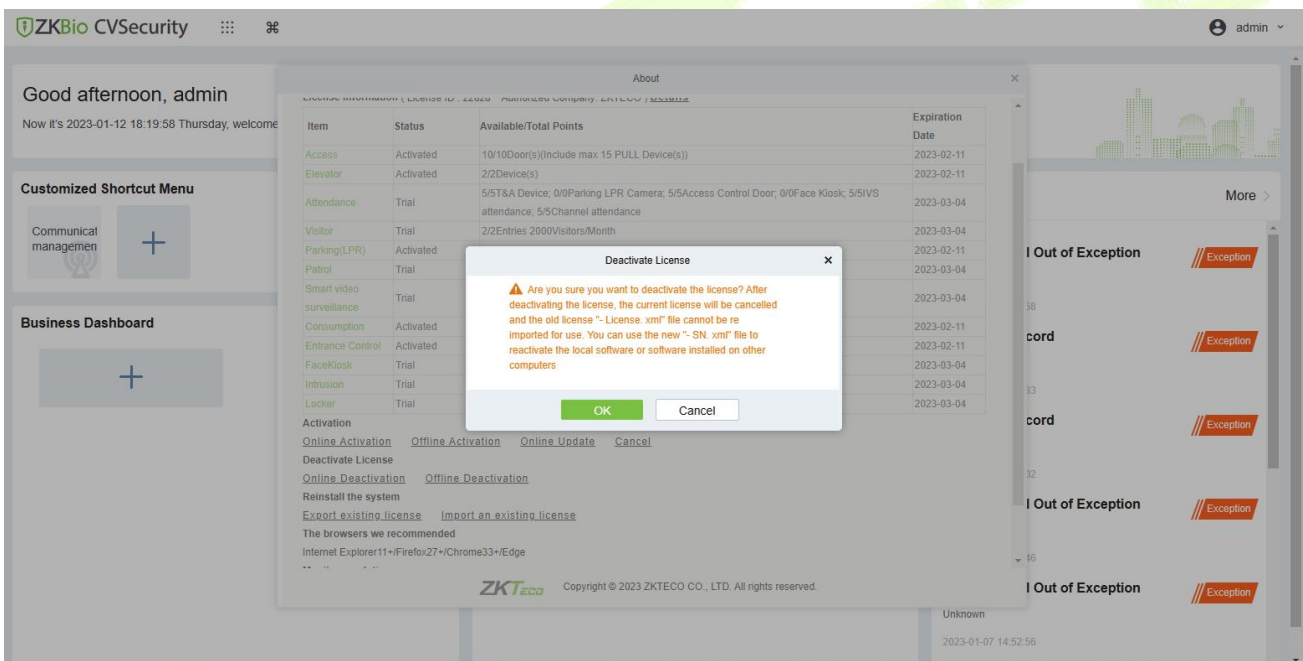


Figure 1- 22 Online Deactivation Confirm

3. Click Download, and then a license file with a suffix of SN.xml will be downloaded.

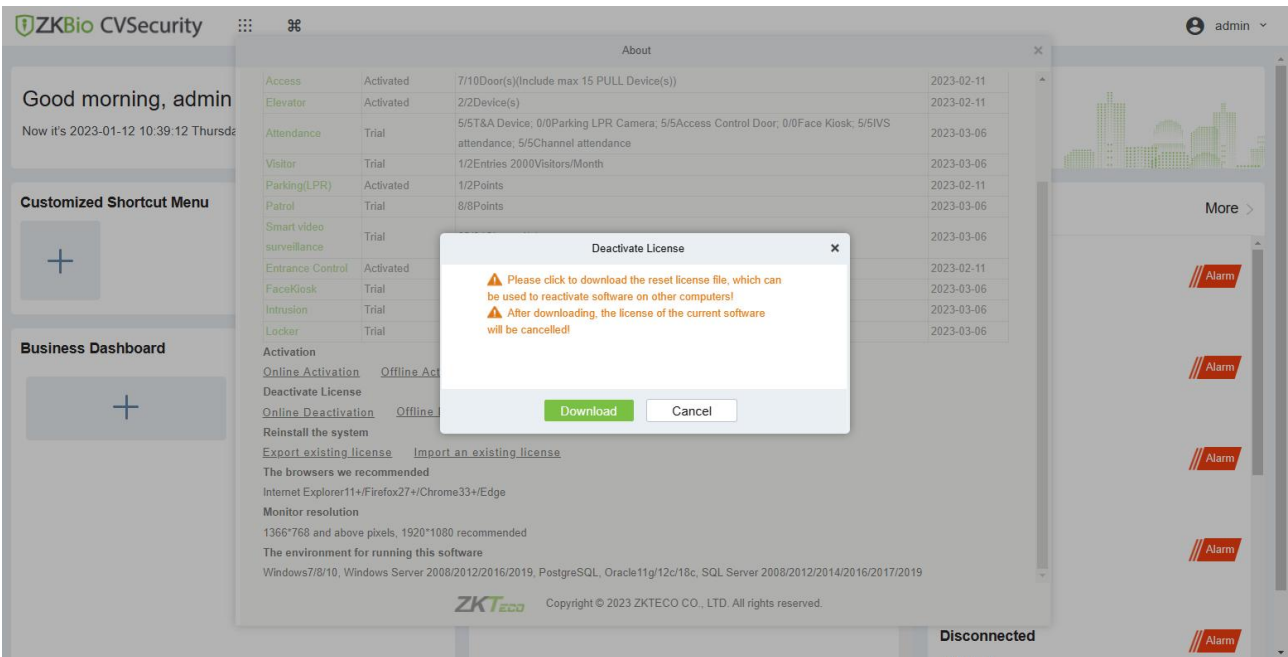
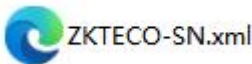


Figure 1- 23 Online Deactivation File Download

4. Save the license file with a suffix of SN.xml you just downloaded.



5. Log in to a new server.

6. Click Admin > About > Offline Activation. Fill in the relevant information, then click Browse to upload the file that you just got from the previous step with the SN.xml suffix.

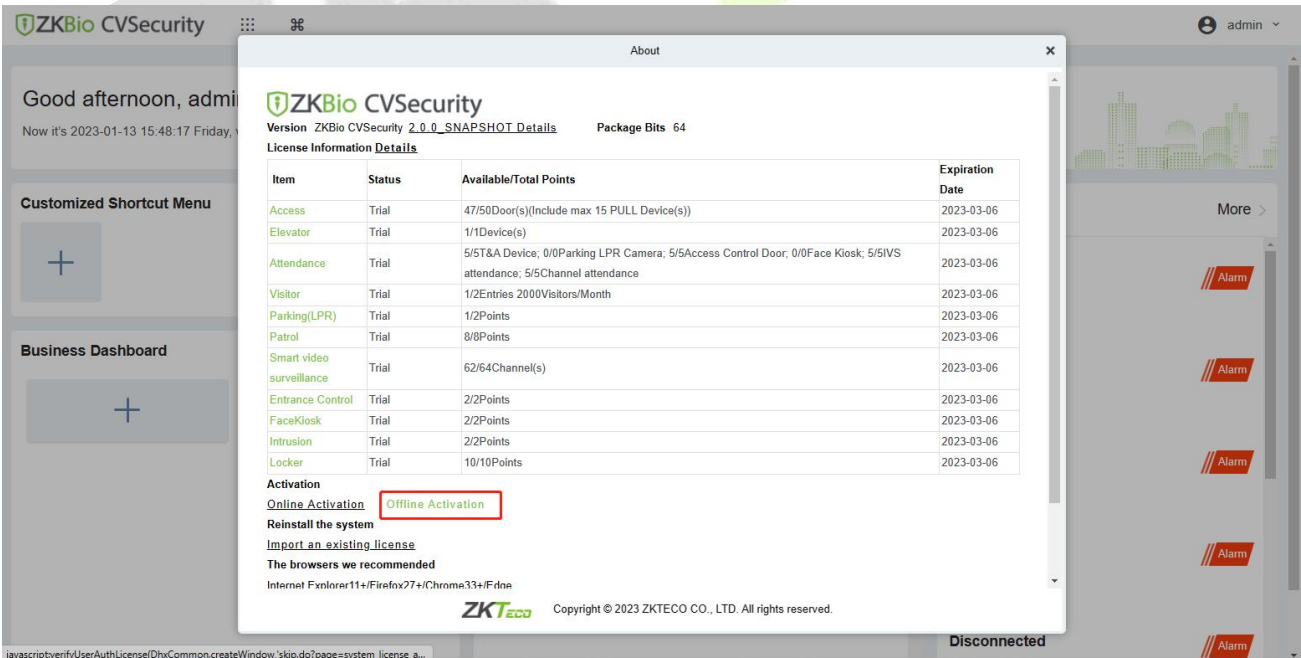


Figure 1- 24 Online Activation

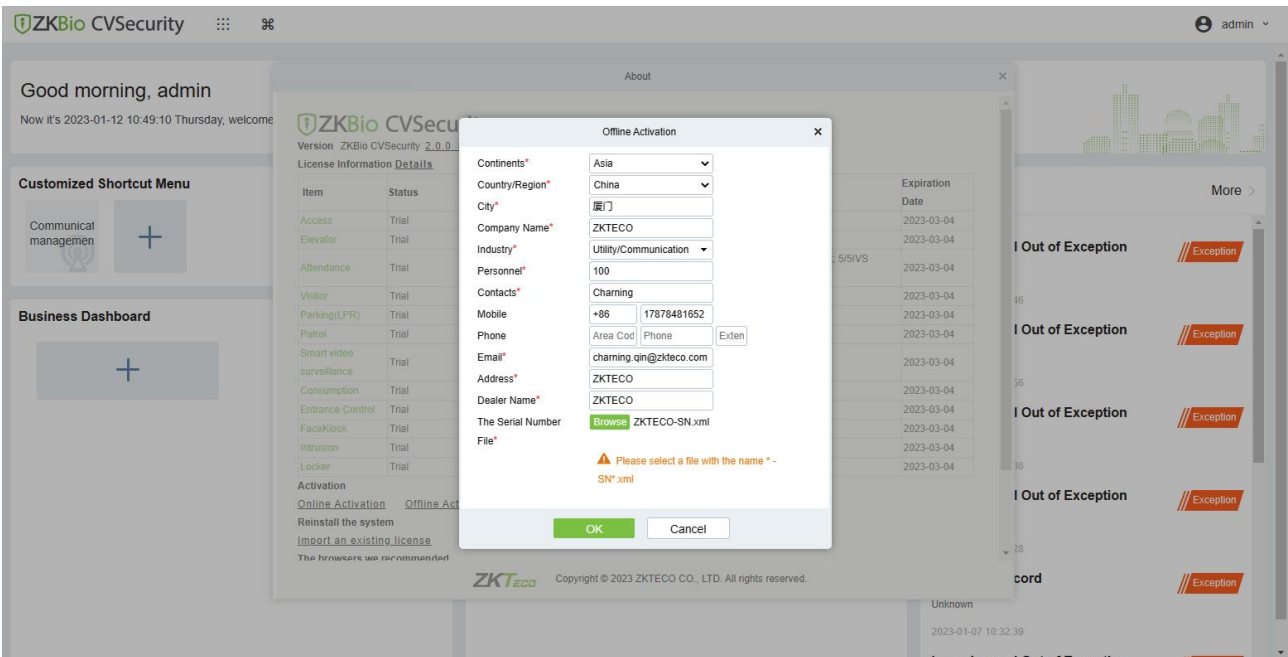


Figure 1- 25 Information Filling and File Uploading

7. Click Download, then a license file with a suffix of upk.xml will be downloaded.

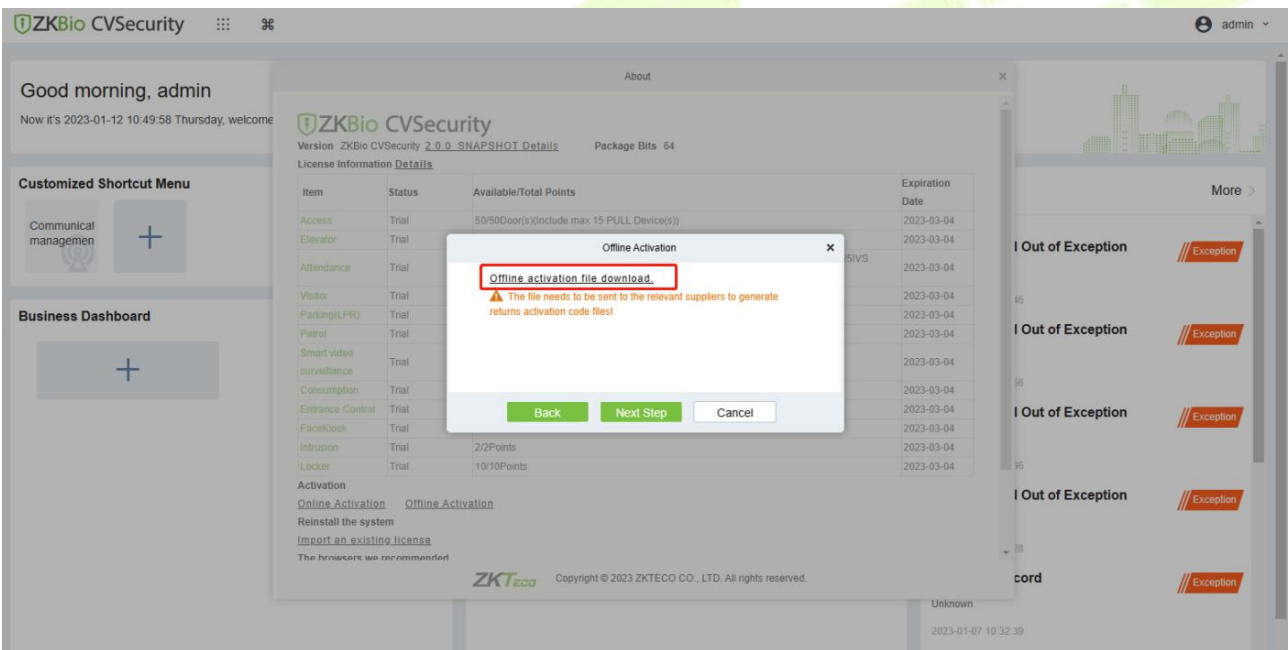



Figure 1- 26 Offline Activation File Download

8. Save the license file with a suffix of upk.xml that you just downloaded.

 ZKTECO\_lic\_upk.xml

9. Go to the website to create the xxx-License.xml file:

Web Link: [ZKBio CVSecurity Offline Activation License \(zkteco.com\)](https://zkteco.com)

 22828-ZKBioCV-HQ-Sales-20230111-XXXX-XXXX-2Park-License.xml

10. Back to the the new server, click Admin > About > Offline Activation > Yes, and upload the file that you just got from previous step with the License.xml suffix

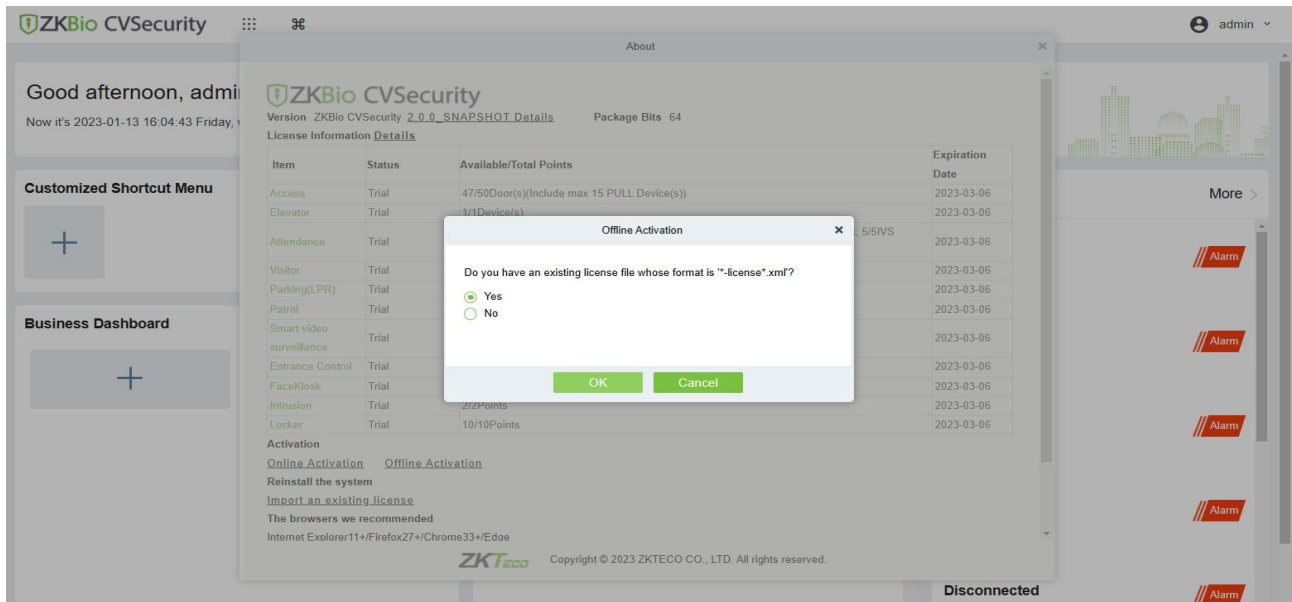


Figure 1- 27 Offline Activation File Upload

11. The activation is successful. The following is the successful activation interface:

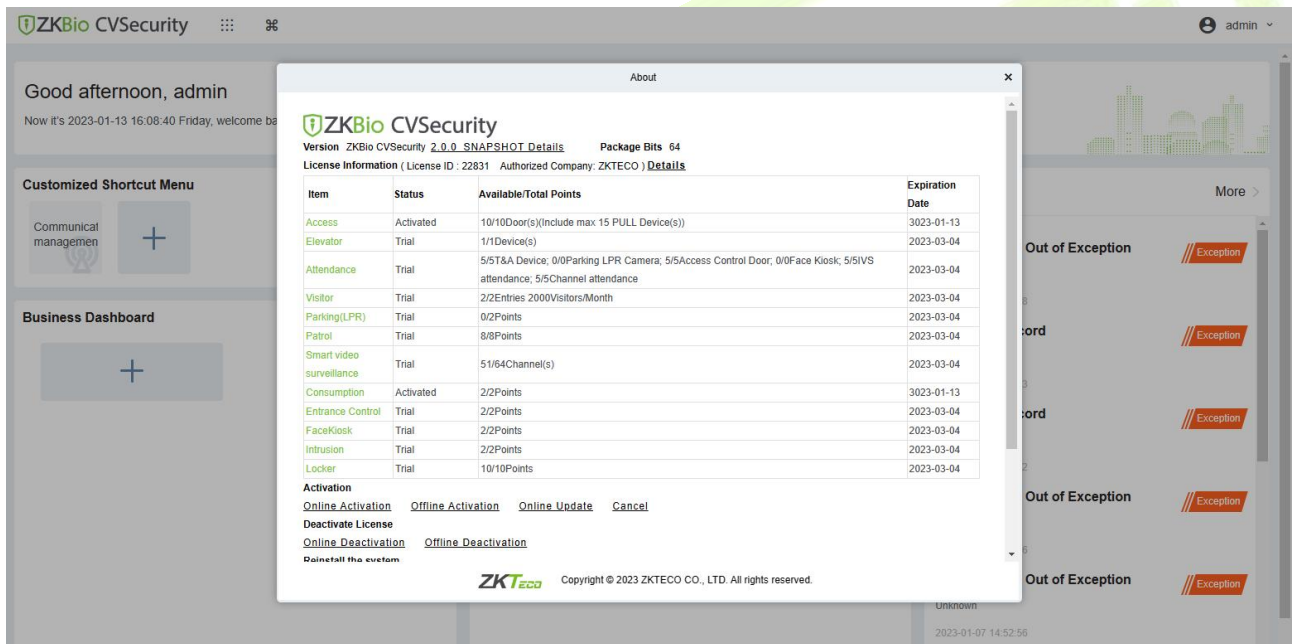


Figure 1- 28 License Activation Succeeded

### 1.3.4 Offline Deactivation + Offline Activation

●Description:

Offline deactivate original server, and then offline activate the new server.

●Preconditions:

Both original server and new server are not connected to the network.

●Steps:

1. Click **Admin > About > Offline Deactivation**.

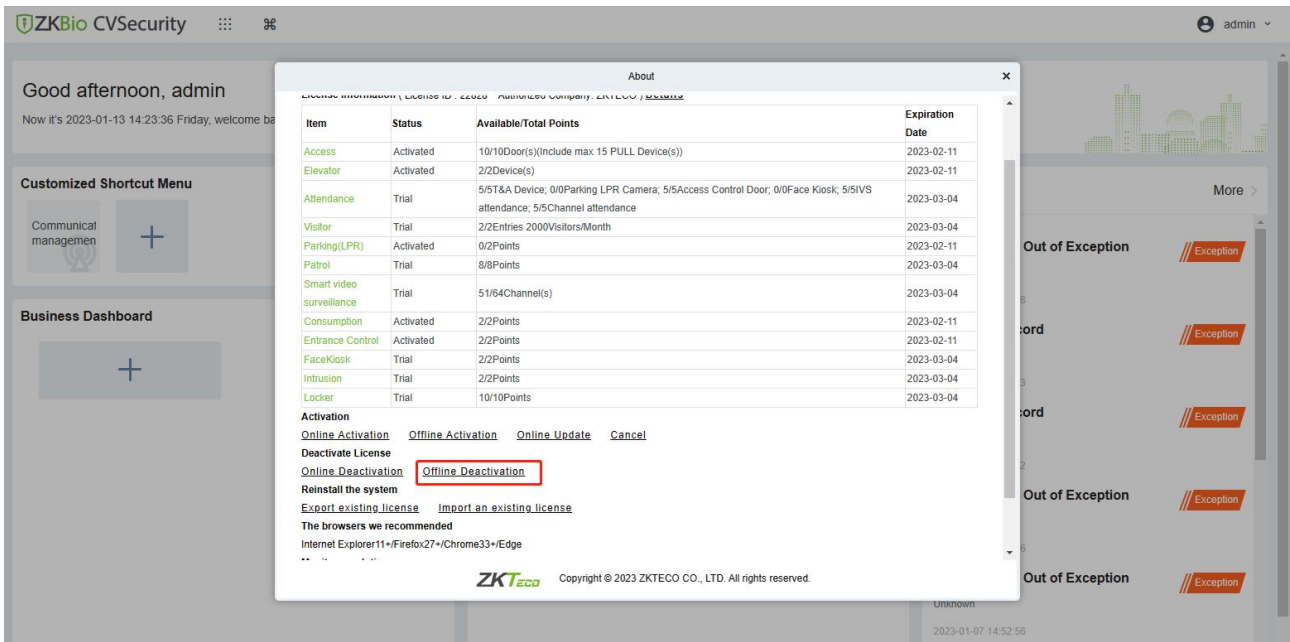


Figure 1- 29 Offline Deactivation

2. Click **OK**.

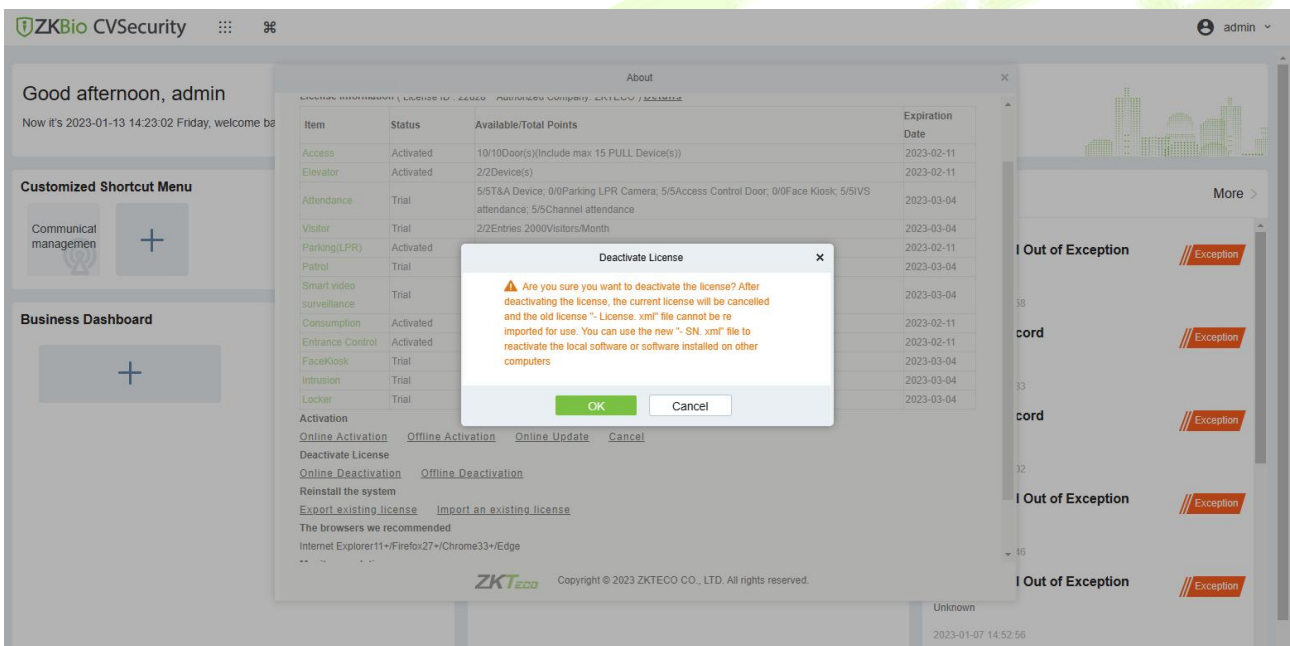


Figure 1- 30 Offline Deactivation Confirm

3. Click **Download**, and then a license file with a suffix of BackActi.xml will be downloaded.

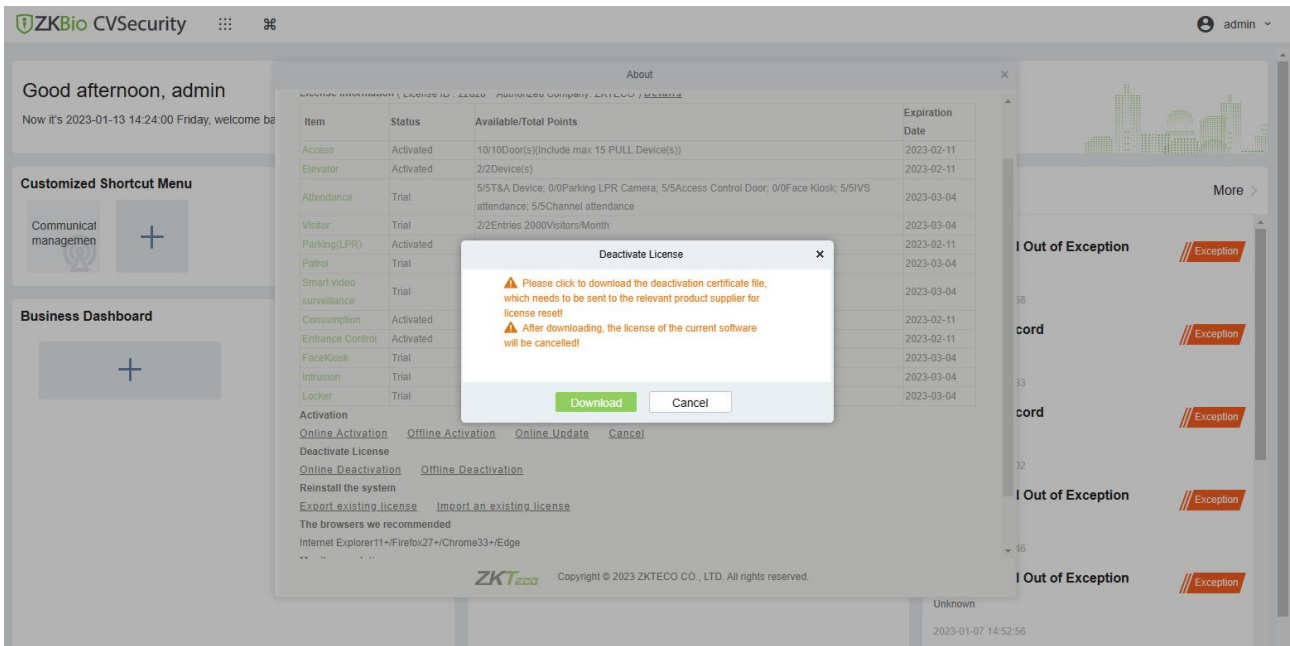
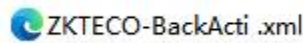


Figure 1- 31 Offline Deactivation File Download

4. Save the license file with a suffix of BackActi.xml you just downloaded.



5. Open the ZKBio CVSecurity License Deactivate page

Web Link: [ZKBio CVSecurity License Deactive \(zkteco.com\)](http://zkteco.com)

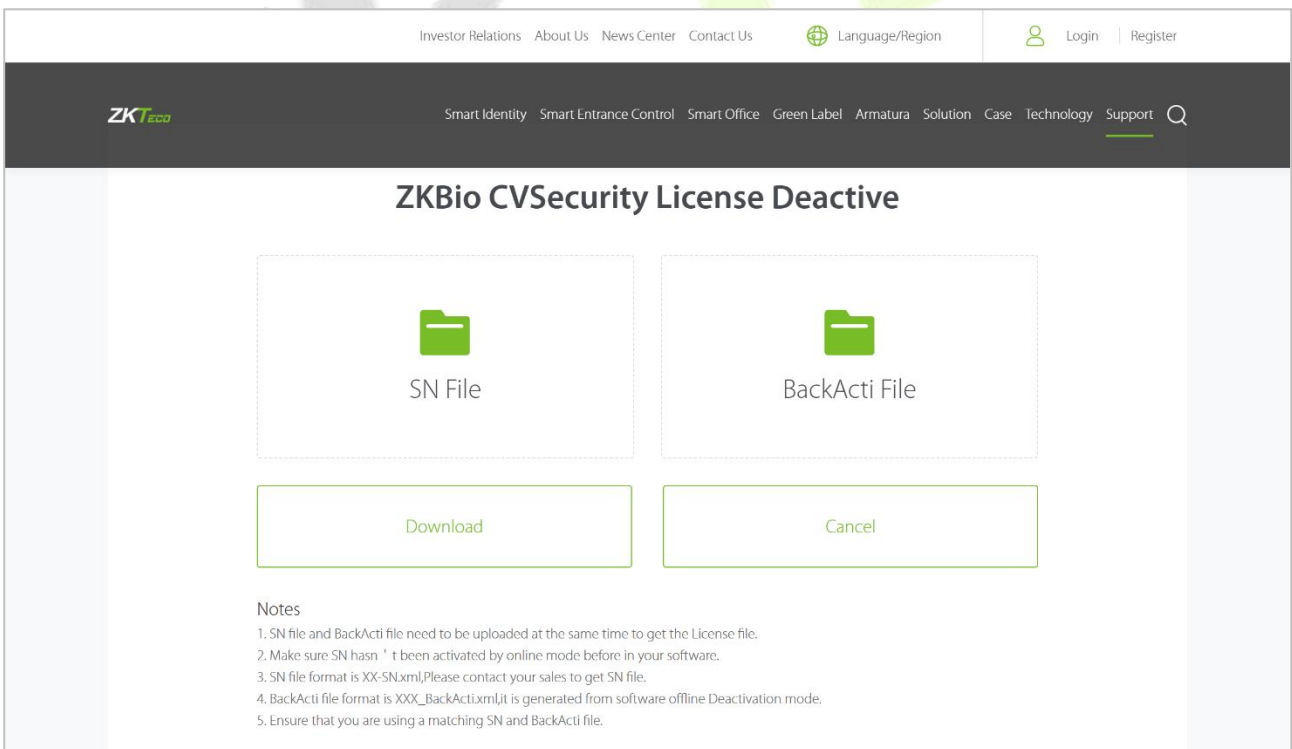


Figure 1- 32

6. Follow the instructions on the page to upload the SN file and BackActi File.

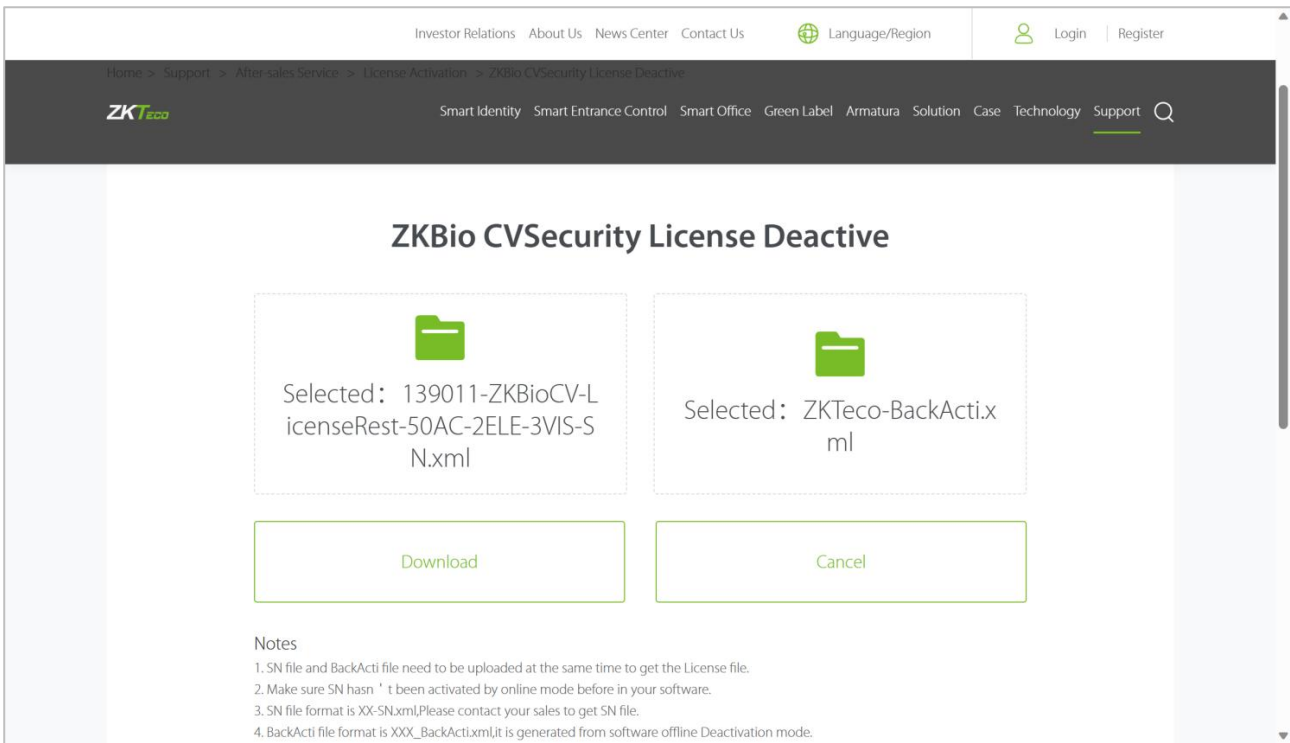


Figure 1- 33

7. Click the **Download** button to download the activation file.



8. Log in to a new server.

9. Click **Admin > About > Offline Activation**. Fill in the relevant information, then click Browse to upload the file that you just got from previous step with the SN.xml suffix.

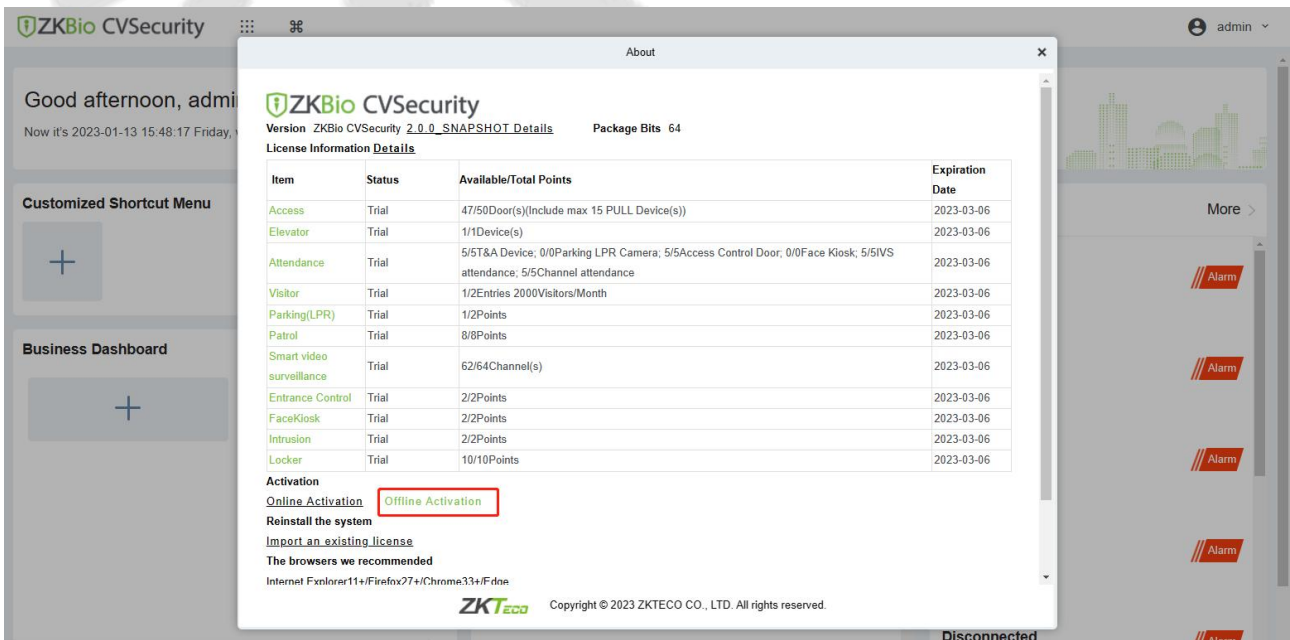
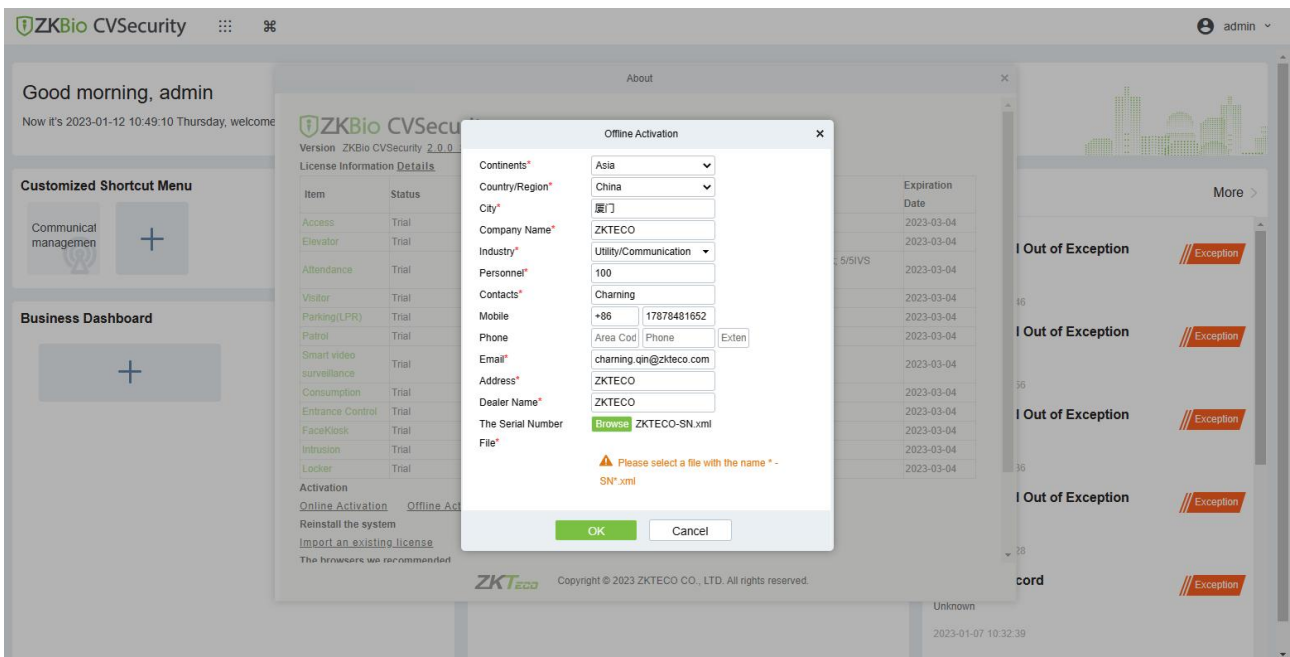
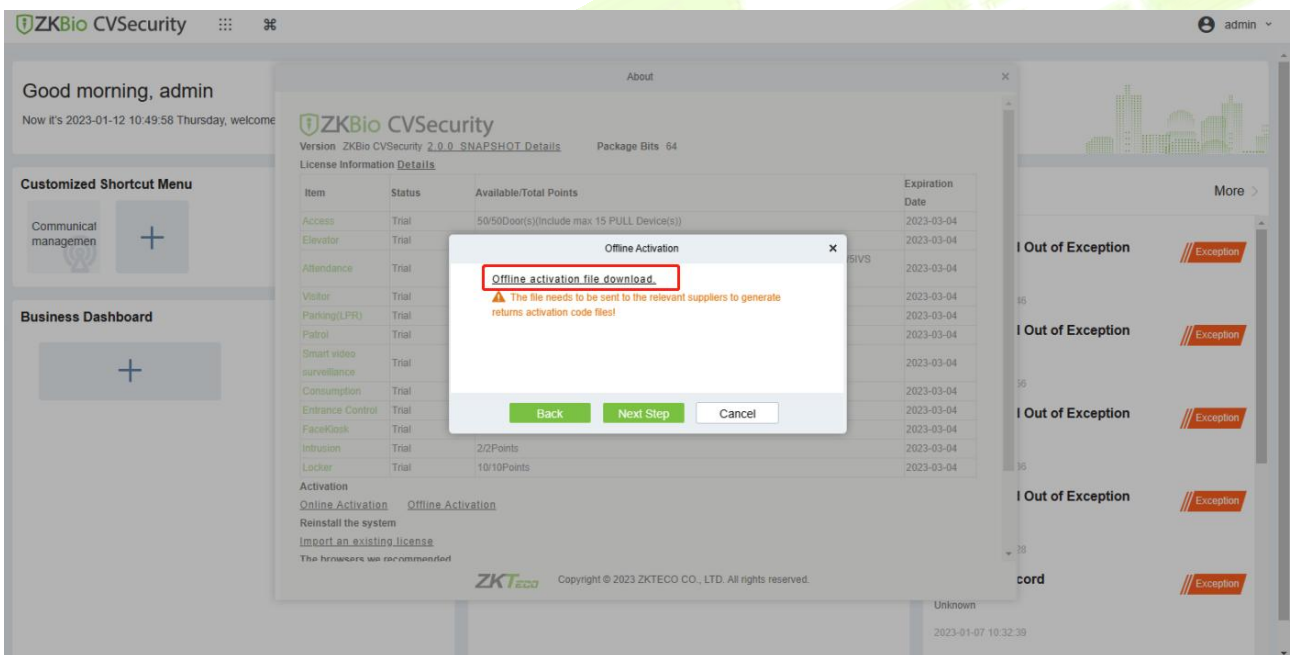


Figure 1- 34 Offline Activation




**Figure 1- 35 Offline Activation Information Filling**

10. Click **Download**, and then a license file with a suffix of upk.xml will be downloaded.



**Figure 1- 36 Offline Activation File Download**

11. Save the license file with a suffix of upk.xml that you just downloaded.

 ZKTECO\_lic\_upk.xml

12. Open the ZKBio CVSecurity Offline Activation License page.

**Web Link:** [ZKBio CVSecurity Offline Activation License \(zkteco.com\)](http://zkteco.com)

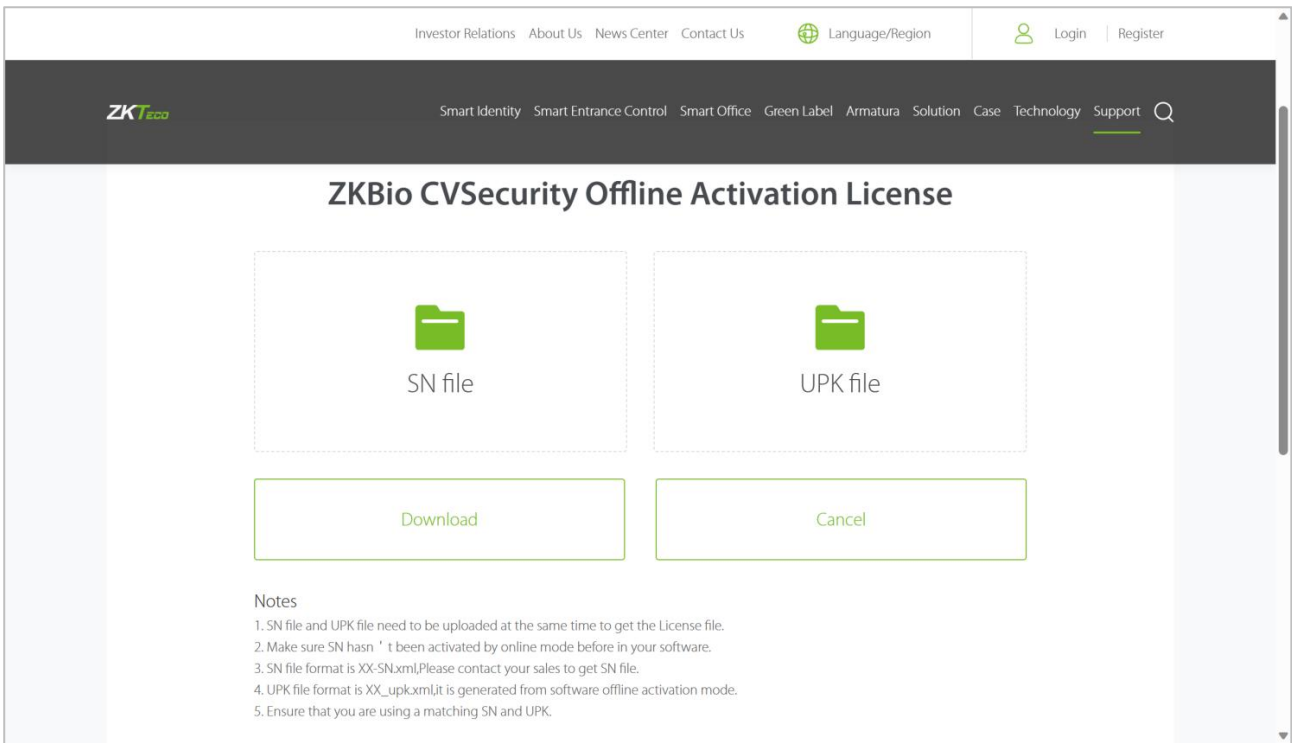


Figure 1- 37

13. Follow the instructions on the page to upload the files downloaded in step 7 and step 11 in turn.

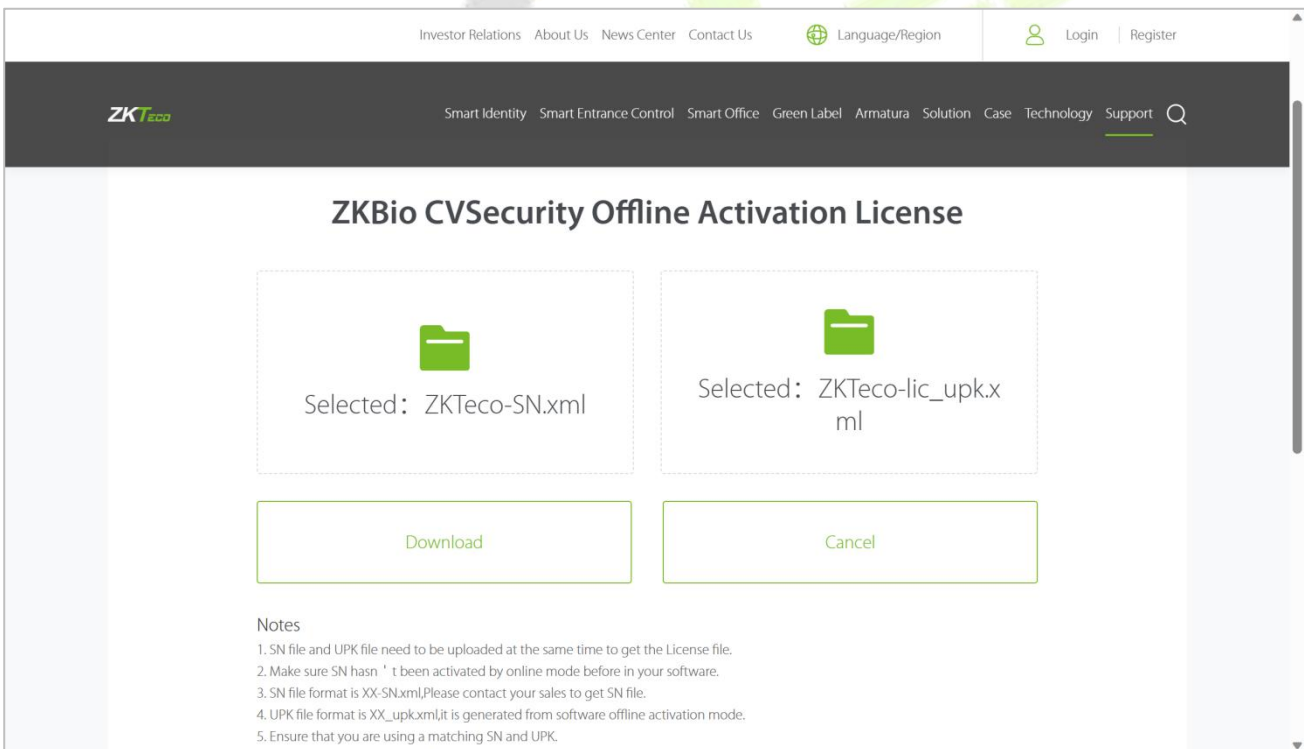
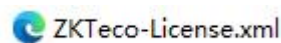


Figure 1- 38

14. Click the **Download** button to download the offline activation file.



15. Back to the the new server, click **Admin > About > Offline Activation > Yes**, and upload the file that you just got from the previous step with the License.xml suffix.

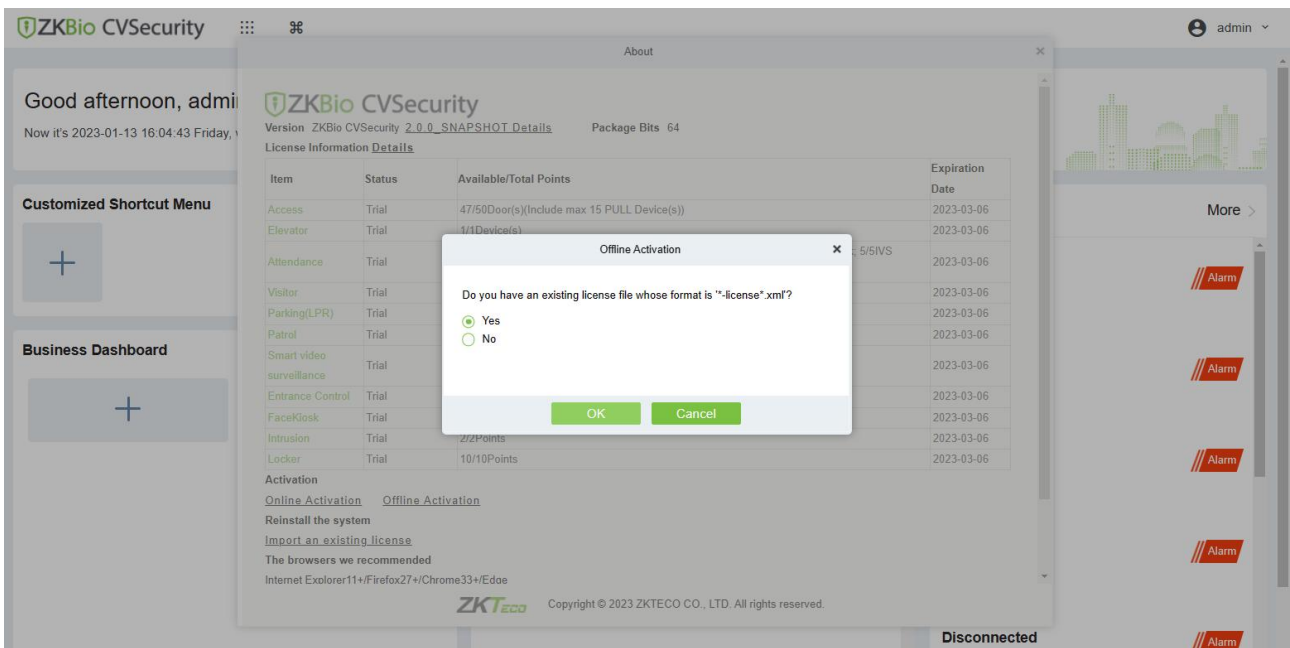


Figure 1- 39 Offline Activation File Download Confirm

16. The activation is successful. The following is the successful activation interface:

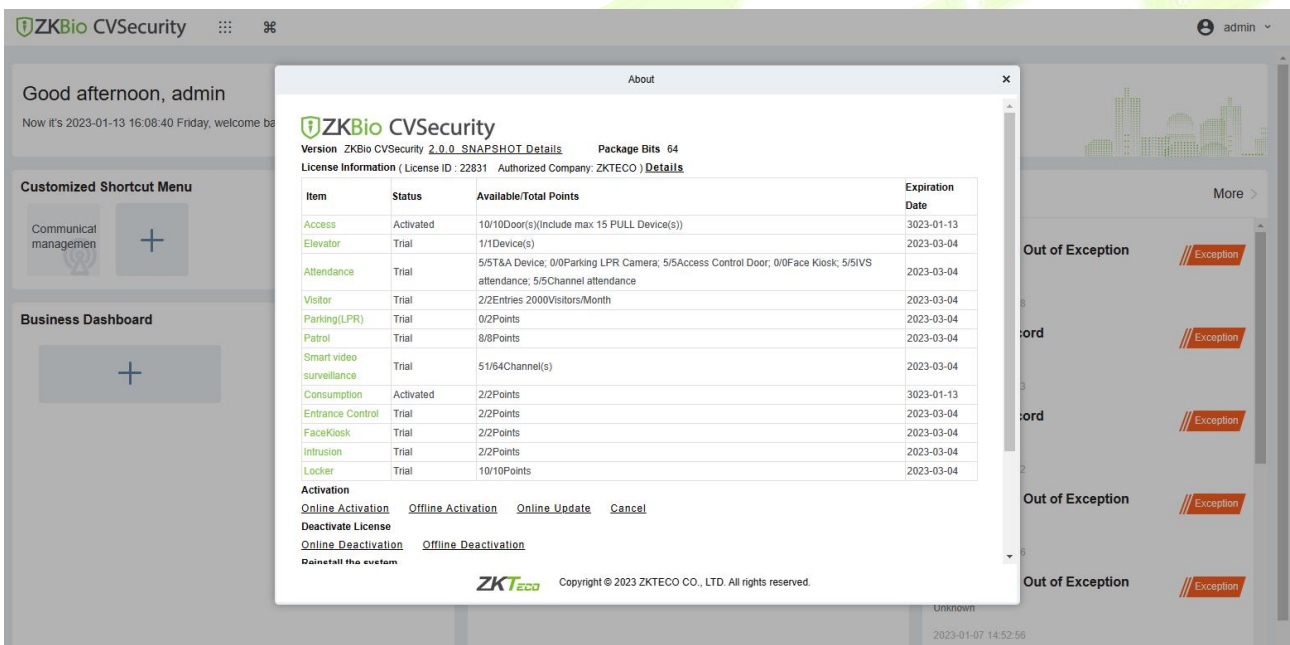


Figure 1- 40 License Activation Succeeded

## 2 Personnel

Before using the other functions, please configure the personnel system: Personnel and Card Management.

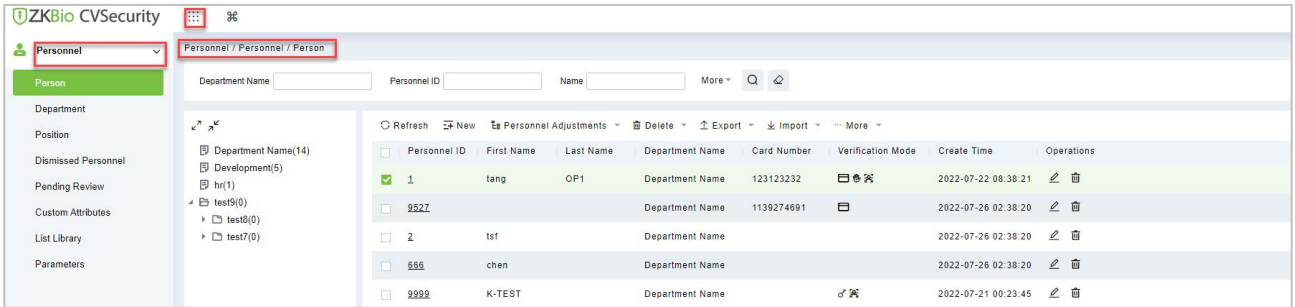


Figure 2- 1 Personnel

### 2.1 Personnel Management

Personnel Management includes these modules: Person, Department, Position, Dismissed Personnel, Pending review, Custom Attributes, List Library, and Parameters.

● Operating Procedures:

This operation process is suitable for guiding users how to configure and manage the basic personnel organization after the system is installed.

The flow of personnel organization configuration is shown in figure below.

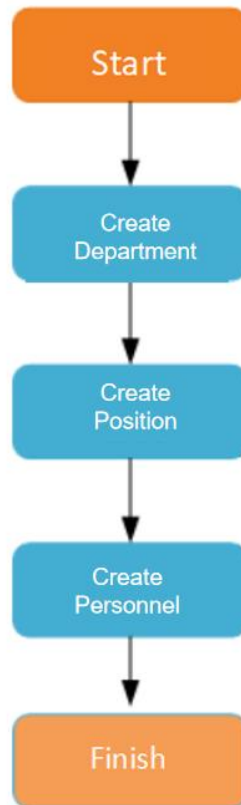


Figure 2- 2 Flowchart of Personnel Configuration

## 2.1.1 Person

When using this management program, the user shall register personnel in the system, or import personnel information from other software or documents into this system.

Main functions of Person include Refresh, Add (New), Personnel Adjustments, Delete, Export, Import, and more.

### 2.1.1.1 Add Personnel (New)

Click **Personnel > Personnel > New**.

**Figure 2- 3 Add Personnel New**




● Fields are as follows:

**Notes:**(Personnel ID)

When configuring a personnel number, check whether the current device supports the maximum length and whether letters can be used in personnel ID.

To edit the settings of the maximum number of characters of each personnel number and whether letters can also be used, please click **Personnel > Parameters**.

| Parameter            | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| Personnel ID         | Default maximum support for 9 digits; if you need to support more digits or letters for IDs, please go to the <b>Parameter</b> menu to configure.         |
| Department           | Select from the pull-down menu and click <b>OK</b> . If the department was not set previously, only one department named <b>Company Name</b> will appear. |
| First Name/Last Name | The maximum number of characters is 50.   |
| Gender               | Set the gender of personnel.  |

| Parameter                    | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Mobile Phone                 | <p>If you need to send a short message to this person, check the mobile phone box and select the option to send the message.</p> <p><b>Modem – SMS:</b> A modem SMS is a dedicated device that connects to your PC or server, allowing you to send and receive SMS messages.</p> <p><b>AWS – SMS:</b> AWS SMS is a managed service that delivers messages from publishers to subscribers.</p> <p>Mobile Phone <input type="text" value="232142423432"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p> |
| Certificate Type             | There are four types of certificates: ID, Passport, Driver License and Others. Select one to upload.   |
| Certificate Number           | Enter certificate number.  |
| Birthday                     | Input employee’s actual birthday.  |
| Email                        | <p>To send an email notification to this person, simply check the box and enter the available email ID of the individual.</p> <p>Email <input type="text" value="popy.xiao1@zkteco.com"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>  |
| Hire Date                    | It is the date on which the personnel are appointed. Click to select the date.   |
| Position Name                | Set a suitable name for the position. Any character, maximum combination of 100 characters. Position names should not be repeated.   |
| Device Verification Password | Set password for personnel accounts. It can only contain up to 6-digits. If a password exceeds the specified length, the system will truncate it automatically. It cannot be the same with others password and the duress password.  |
| Card Number                  | <p>The max length is 10, and it should not be repeated.</p> <p>Card Number <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/>  ZKBio CVSecurity Integration ACMS</p> <p>WhatsApp <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><a href="#">Issue Card from Device Mobile Credentials</a></p> <p>For more details on Mobile Credentials please refer to the documentation.</p>                  |
| Biometric Type               | Click on icon  to register the person Fingerprints, Finger Vein, Palm, Face registration . Click on icon  to view Biometric template details and resgistered person face comparison photos and Plam comparison photos.   |
| WhatsApp                     | <p>Please enter your WhatsApp account number, and check the box to send WhatsApp messages to this person.</p> <p>WhatsApp <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p>  |
| APP Push                     | <p>After verification, an app message notification will be sent to this person.</p> <p>APP Push <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p>  |

**Table 2- 1 Personnel ID**

●Biometric Type:

This part introduces the Steps of personnel biometric registration in ZKBio CVSecurity. The registered biometric data can be used for verification and identification of **Access Control**, attendance, and other equipment.

Biometric registration includes **fingerprint, finger vein, palm registration** and **face registration**. Since the interfaces of fingerprint registration and finger vein registration are similar, fingerprint registration and palm print registration are used as examples to illustrate the operation process.

●Description:

The server side of the box does not support external "palm meter, finger vein meter" to collect

biometric templates, and the fingerprint reader is only supported by the "Live20R" model.


● **Preconditions:**

On the computer terminal where the administrator registers the personnel information, connect the fingerprint reader device through the USB port.

● **Steps:**

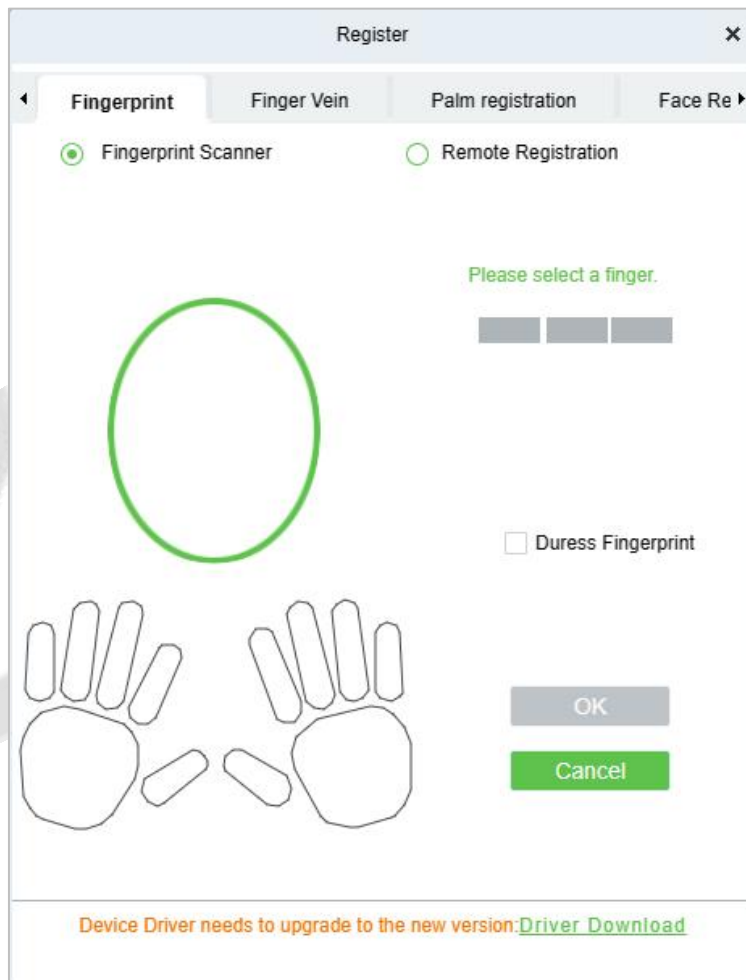
**Step 1:** In the Personnel module, choose **Personnel Management > Person**.

**Step 2:** Click **Add** with the mouse, and the interface for adding personnel will pop up.

**Step 3:** On the interface for adding personnel, click the " " button.

**Step 4:** (Optional) If the driver is not installed, click the icon to pop up the registration and driver download box, download the driver, and complete the installation.

**Step 5:** After the driver is installed, fingerprint registration can be performed, as shown in figure below.




**Figure 2- 4 Biometric Type**

**Step 6:** Select the fingers respectively, press the fingerprint on the connected fingerprint reader three times in a row, and the system prompts the fingerprint to be registered successfully.

**Step 7:** Click **OK** to save and close the fingerprint registration interface.

Details Information:

Click this  button to view the details of Biometric Templates or upload a facial photo.

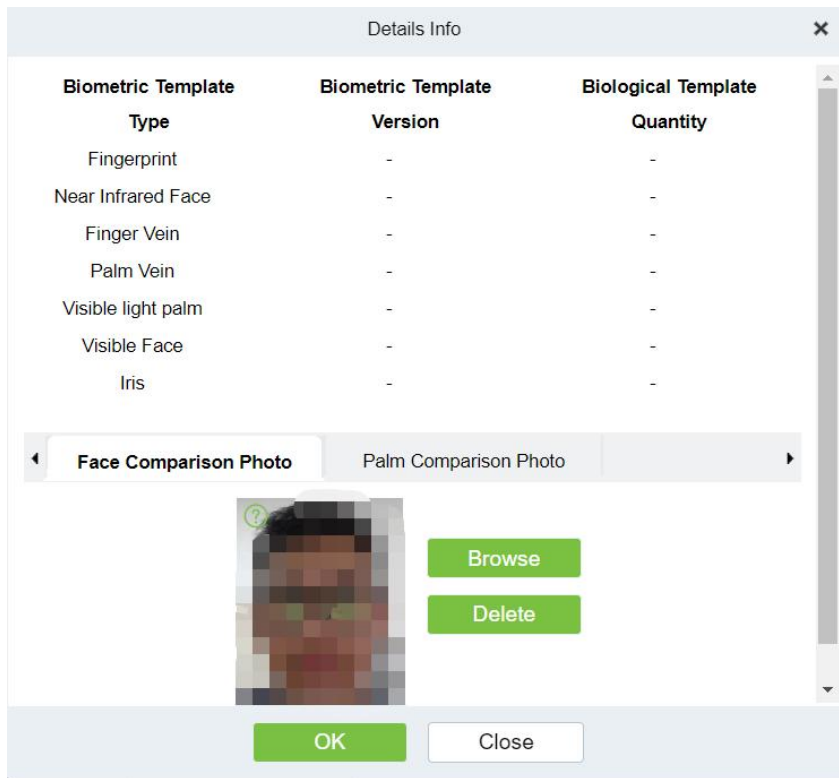



Figure 2- 5 Biometric Details

Face Comparison Photo

Click on **Browse** to upload a facial photo; you can click  to view the specifications for the photo.

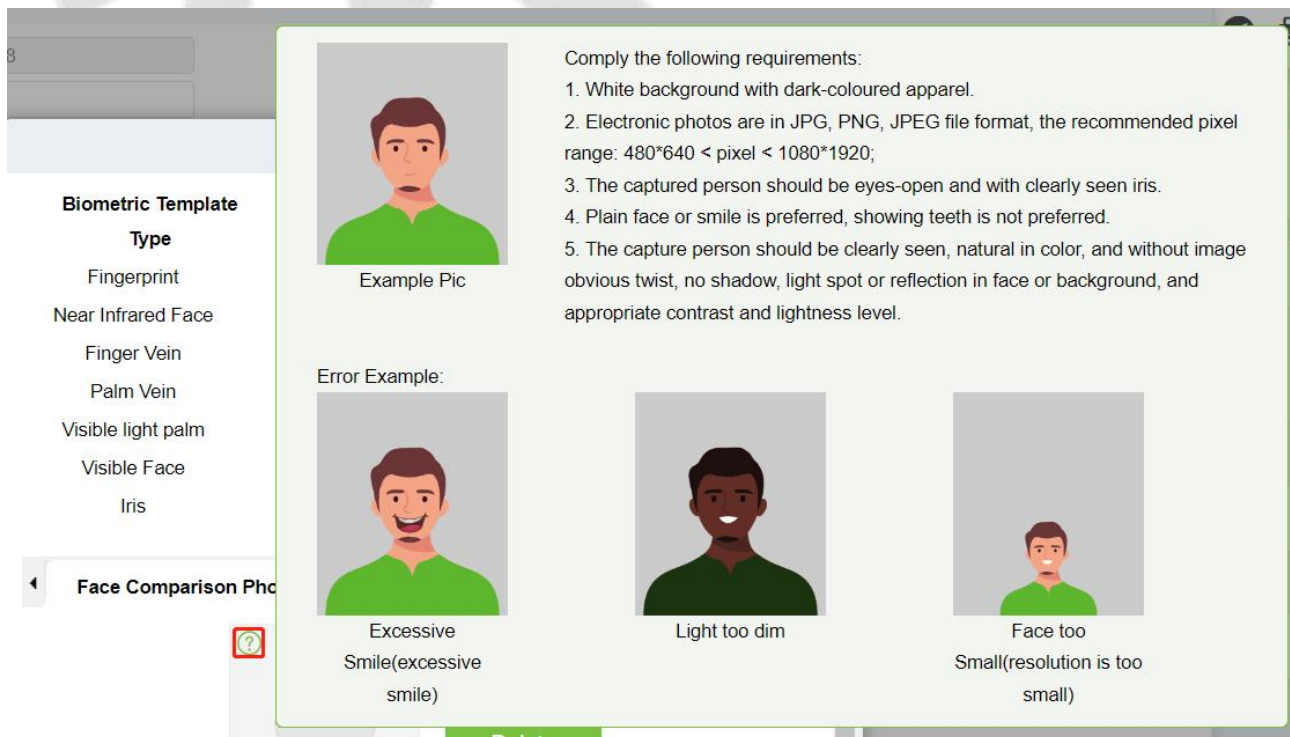
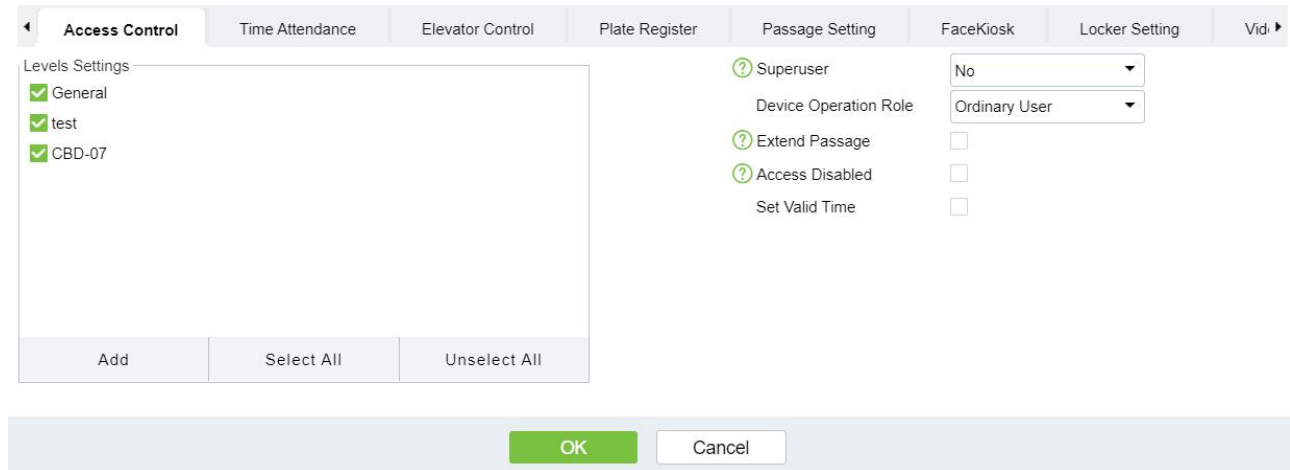


Figure 2- 6 Face Photo

● Access Control:

Click **Access Control** parameter for the personnel.



**Figure 2- 7 Access Control**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter             | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Level settings        | Click <b>Add</b> , then set passage rules of special positions in different time zones.  |
| Superuser             | In access controller operation, a super user is not restricted by the regulations on time zones, anti-passback and interlock and has extremely high door-opening priority. |
| Device Operation Role | Select administrator to get its levels.  |
| Extend Passage        | Extend the waiting time for the personnel through the access points. Suitable for physically challenged or people with other disabilities.                                 |
| Access Disabled       | Temporarily disable the personnel’s access level.Only InBio Pro Controller supported   |
| Set Valid Time        | Set Temporary access level. Doors can be set to open only within certain time periods. If it is not checked, the time to open the door is always active.                   |

**Table 2- 2 Access Control**

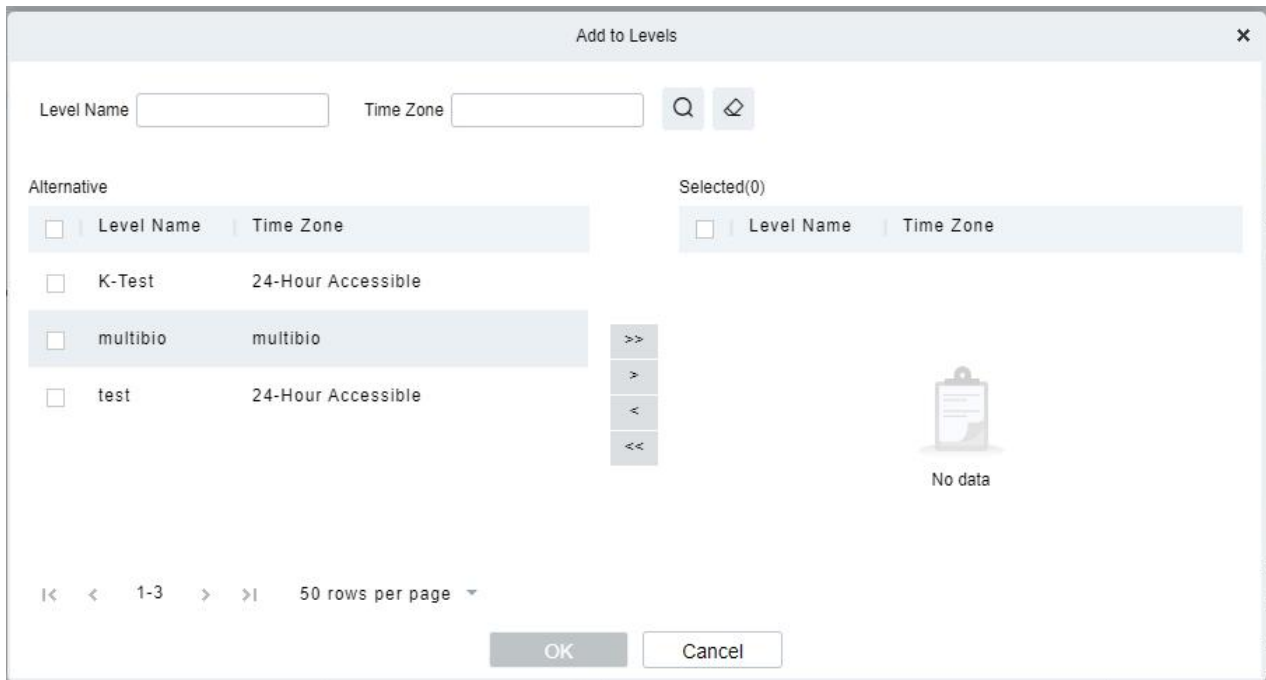


Figure 2- 8 Level Settings

Note:

- 1.The system will automatically search for the relevant numbers in the departure library during verification.
- 2.The Personnel Information List, by default, is displayed as a table. If Graphic Display is selected, photos and numbers will be shown. Put the cursor on a photo to view details about the personnel.
- 3.Not all devices support the "Disabled" function. When a user adds a device, the system will notify the user whether the current device supports this function. If the user needs to use this function, please upgrade the device.
- 4.Not all the devices support the "Set Valid Time" function of setting the hour, minute, and second. Some devices only allow users to set the year, month, and day of the local time. When a user adds a device, the system will notify the user whether the current device support this function. If the user needs to use this function, please upgrade the device.

●Time Attendance:

Set the **Time Attendance** parameter for the personnel.

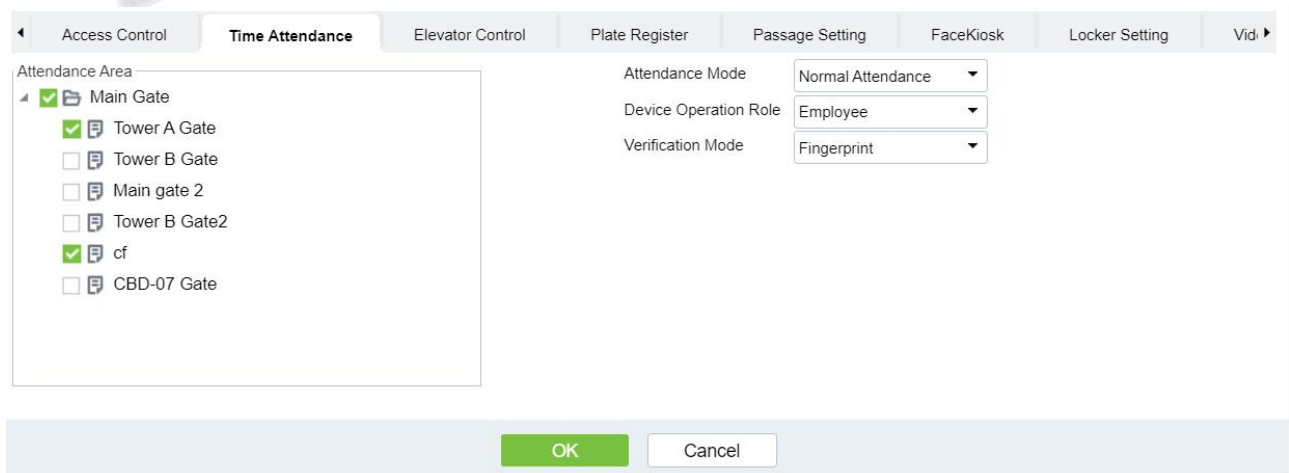


Figure 2- 9 Time Attendance

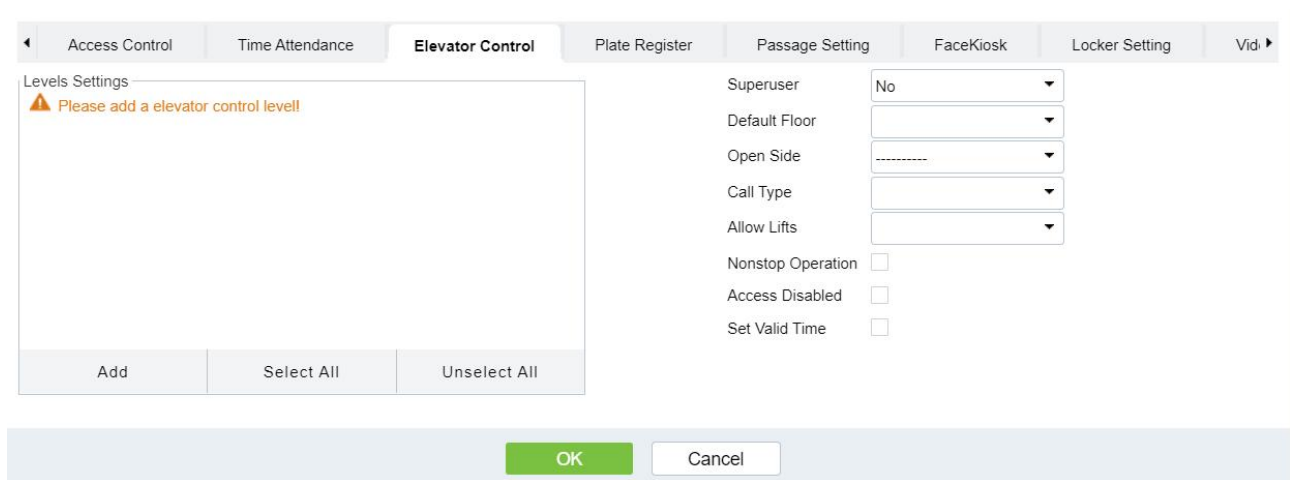
Fields are as follows:

| Parameter             | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Attendance Mode       | You can set the staff attendance area as <b>Normal Attendance</b> and <b>No Punch Required</b> .   |
| Device Operation Role | It will set the authority for operating the device and send it to the corresponding device such as, <b>Employee, Enroller, Administrator, and Superuser</b>                                      |
| Verification Mode     | You can set verification mode as following options: Automatic Recognition, Fingerprint, PIN, Password, Card, Fingerprint/ Password, Fingerprint/Card, PIN+Fingerprint, Fingerprint+Password etc. |

**Table 2-3 Time Attendance**

● Elevator Control:

Click **Elevator Control** and set the Elevator Control parameter for the personnel.



**Figure 2- 10 Elevator Control**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter         | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Superuser         | In elevator controller operation, a super user is not restricted by the regulations on time zones, holidays and has extremely high door-opening priority.      |
| Default Floor     | Select the floor that needs to be reached.   |
| Open Side         | Select the elevator door opening direction based on actual conditions. only DCS supported  |
| Call Type         | Select different roles based on user permissions. only DCS supported   |
| Allow Lifts       | Allowed elevator cars, only supported by KONE; Mitsubishi elevator no supported.   |
| Nonstop Operation | Enabling this option will allow the elevator to directly reach the floor   |
| Access Disabled   | Checking the box will disable elevator privileges for that person; only EC16 control panel and DCS system supported.   |
| Set Valid Time    | Set Temporary Floor permission. Floor can be set to enable only within certain time periods. If it is not checked, the time to open the door is always active. |

**Table 2- 3 Elevator Control**

**Note:** The Elevator level must be set in advance.

● Plate Register:

Click **Plate Register**, set the plate control parameter for the personnel.

**Figure 2- 11 Plate Register**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter            | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| License Plate        | The user needs to register the license plate.      |
| Parking Space Number | Parking space number corresponding to the vehicle. |

**Table 2- 4 Plate Register**

**Note:** Each personnel may register a maximum of 6 license plates.

● Passage Setting:

Click **Passage Setting**, set the Passage Setting parameter for the personnel.

**Figure 2- 12 Passage Setting**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter             | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Superuser             | Set Superuser as <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> according to requirement.  |
| Device Operation Role | It will set the authority for operating the device and send it to the corresponding device such as, <b>Ordinary User</b> , <b>Administrator</b> , and <b>Enroller</b> . |

**Table 2- 5 Passage Setting**

●Facekiosk:

Click **Facekiosk**, set the Facekiosk parameter for the personnel.

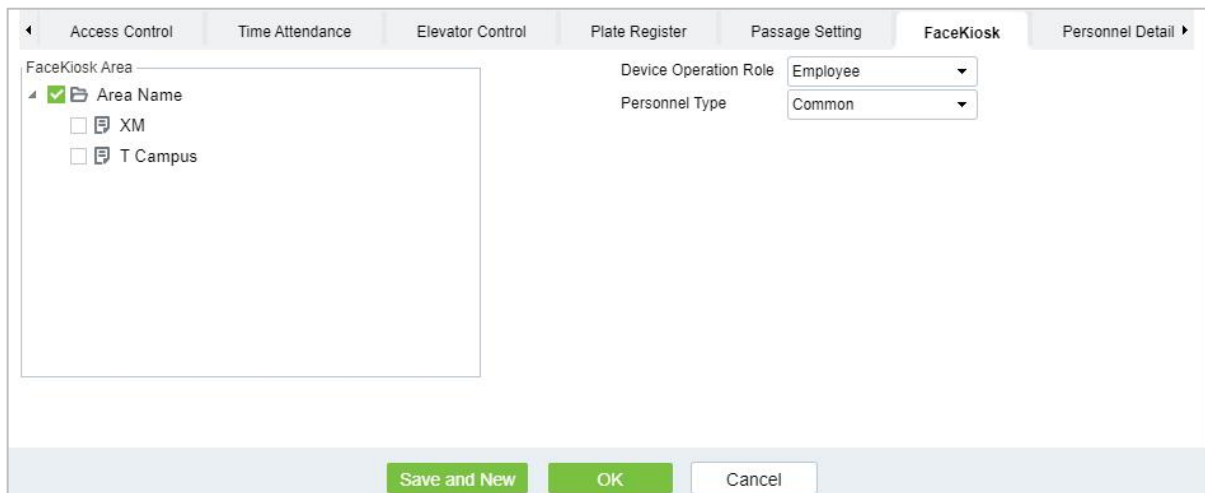


Figure 2- 13 Facekiosk

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter             | Description   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Device Operation Role | It will set the authority for operating the device and send it to the corresponding device such as, employee and Superuser. |
| Personnel Type        | Select type of personnel such as Common, VIP, and Blocklist.  |

Table 2- 6 Facekiosk

●Locker Setting:

Assigning a cabinet that has a locker number for the personnel.

Click **Locker Setting**, view the locker number for this personnel.

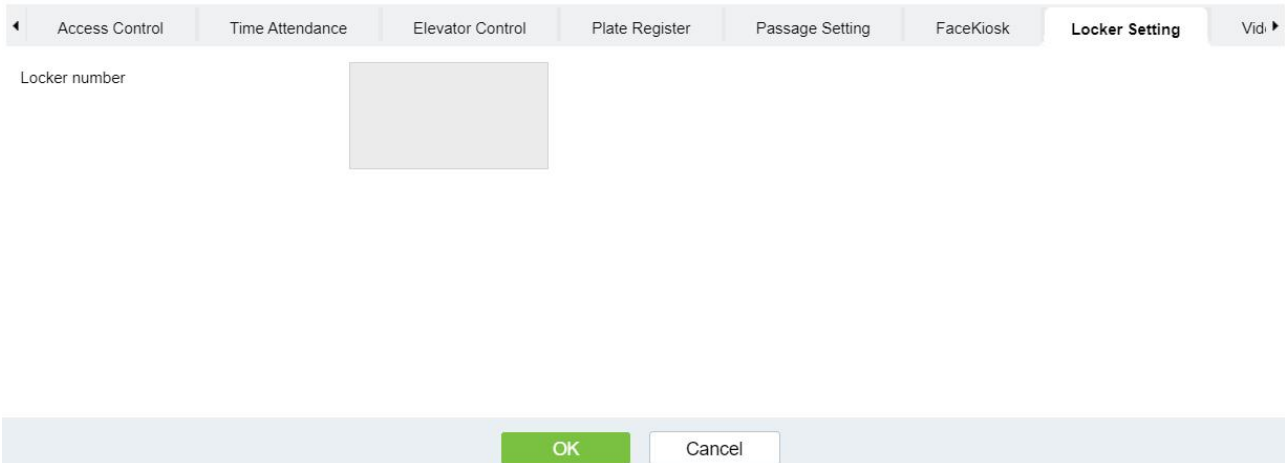
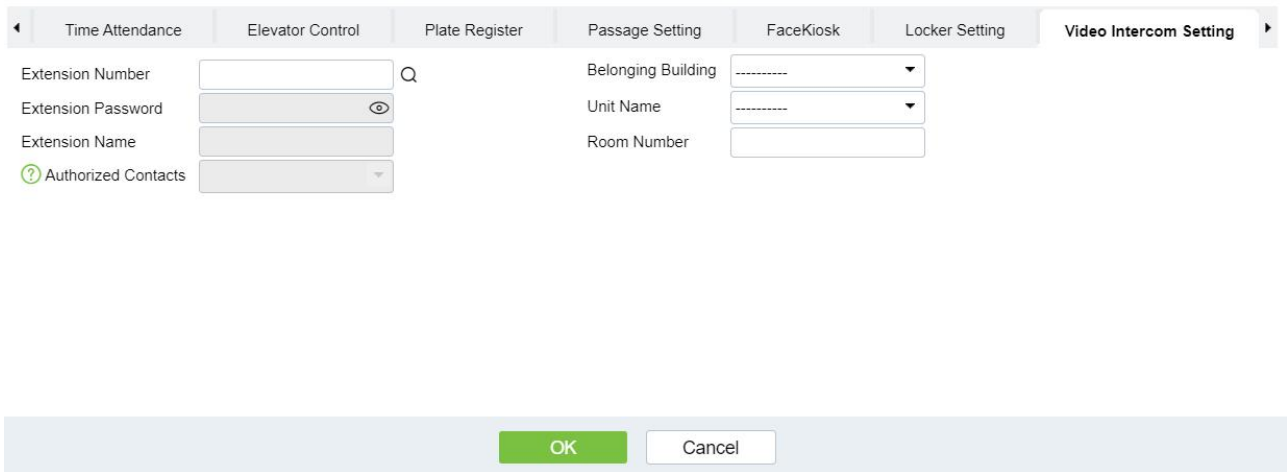


Figure 2- 14 Locker

●Video Intercom Setting:

Assigning extension number to selected person from personnel module, an extension number is a number or code used within a company or organization to identify different telephone sets.

Click **Video Intercom Setting**, assign a room number or extension number to this person.



**Figure 2- 15 Video Intercom Setting**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter           | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Extension Number    | Assign an extension number to this person, click to select.   |
| Extension Password  | After selecting the Extension Number, the password will be automatically filled in, but the administrator can also modify it. |
| Extension Name      | After selecting the Extension Number, it will be automatically filled in, and the administrator can also make changes.        |
| Authorized Contacts | You can choose to assign this person to a contact list, which will be displayed in the Mobile APP after assignment.           |
| Belonging Building  | The building where the person resides   |
| Unit Name           | The unit where the person resides   |
| Room Number         | The room number where the person resides  |


**Table 2- 7 Video Intercom**

● More Card:

Click **More Card**, the user can register another card for this person.

**Note:** This feature requires the multi-card per person function to be enabled first. The operation method is: go to **Parameters -> Card Setting -> Multiple cards per personnel** and select **Yes**.

Edit ✕

|                              |                                      |                    |  |   |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--|---|
| Personnel ID*                | <input type="text" value="22001"/>   | Department*        | <input type="text" value="Community Manager"/> | <br><input type="button" value="Browse"/> <input type="button" value="Capture"/> |
| First Name                   | <input type="text" value="someone"/> | Last Name          | <input type="text" value="del"/>               |   |
| Gender                       | <input type="text" value="-----"/>   | Mobile Phone       | <input type="text"/>                           |   |
| Certificate Type             | <input type="text" value="-----"/>   | Certificate Number | <input type="text"/>                           |   |
| Birthday                     | <input type="text"/>                 | Email              | <input type="text"/>                           |   |
| Hire Date                    | <input type="text"/>                 | Position Name      | <input type="text"/>                           |   |
| Device Verification Password | <input type="text"/>                 | Card Number        | <input type="text"/>                           |   |
| Biometrics Type              | <input type="text"/>                 | WhatsApp           | <input type="text"/>                           |   |
| APP Push                     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  |                    |  |   |

←
Elevator Control
Plate Register
Passage Setting
FaceKiosk
Locker Setting
Video Intercom Setting
More Cards
▶

Secondary Card

**Table 2- 8 More Card**

● Personnel Details:

Click **Personnel Details**, to set the Personnel detail parameter for the personnel.

←
Plate Register
Passage Setting
FaceKiosk
Locker Setting
Video Intercom Setting
More Cards
Personnel Detail
▶

|               |                                   |                |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Employee Type | <input type="text" value="----"/> | Hire Type      | <input type="text" value="----"/> |
| Job Title     | <input type="text"/>              | Street         | <input type="text"/>              |
| Birthplace    | <input type="text"/>              | Country        | <input type="text"/>              |
| Home Phone    | <input type="text"/>              | Home Address   | <input type="text"/>              |
| Office Phone  | <input type="text"/>              | Office Address | <input type="text"/>              |

**Figure 2- 16 Personnel Details**

**Note:** If you need to display more fields, you can first add them under the **Custom Attributes** menu.

After entering the information, click **OK** to save and exit, the person details will be displayed in the added list.

**2.1.1.2 Personnel Adjustments**

Click **Personnel > Person > Personnel Adjustment**.

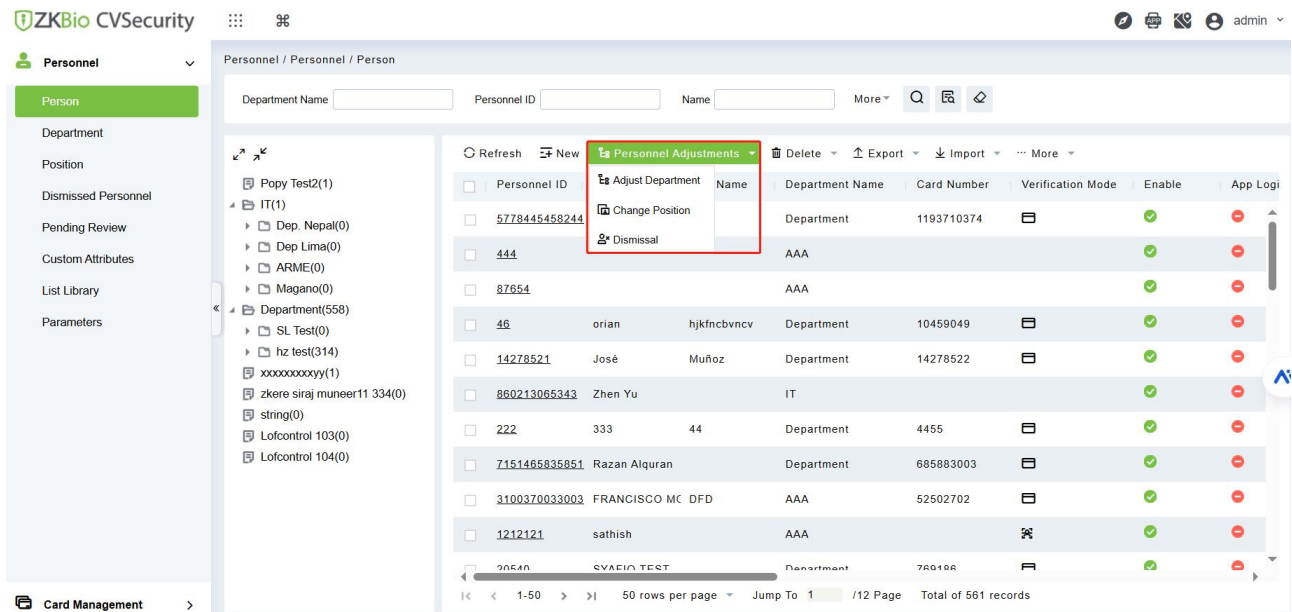


Figure 2- 17 Personnel Adjustment

● **Adjust Department:**

Select the person from the list. Click **Personnel > Person > Personnel Adjustment**, then select **Adjust Department**.

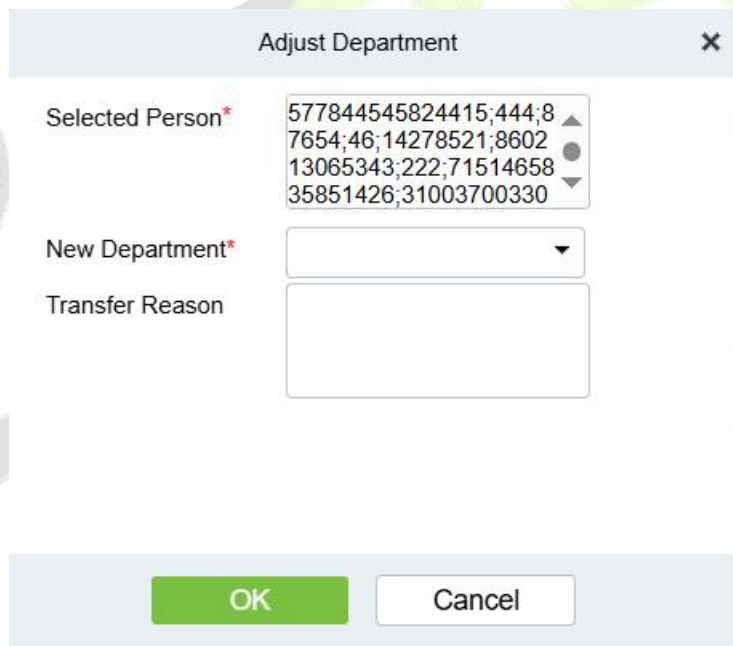


Figure 2- 17 Adjust Department

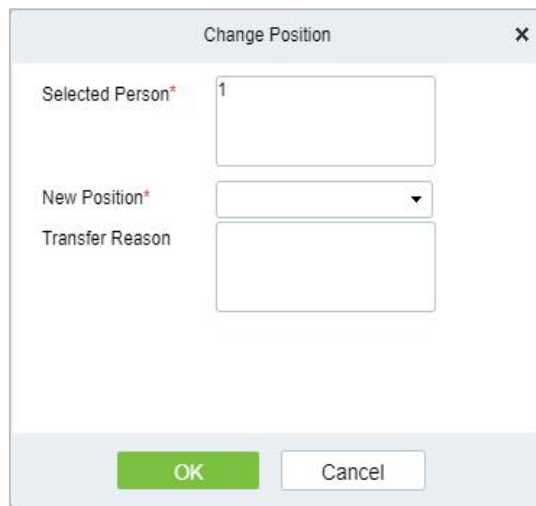
Fields are as follows:

| Parameter       | Description                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| New Department  | Select new department from list. |
| Transfer Reason | Mention the reason for transfer. |

Table 2- 9 Adjust Department

● **Change Position:**

Select the person from the list. Click **Personnel > Person > Personnel Adjustment**, then select **Change Position**.



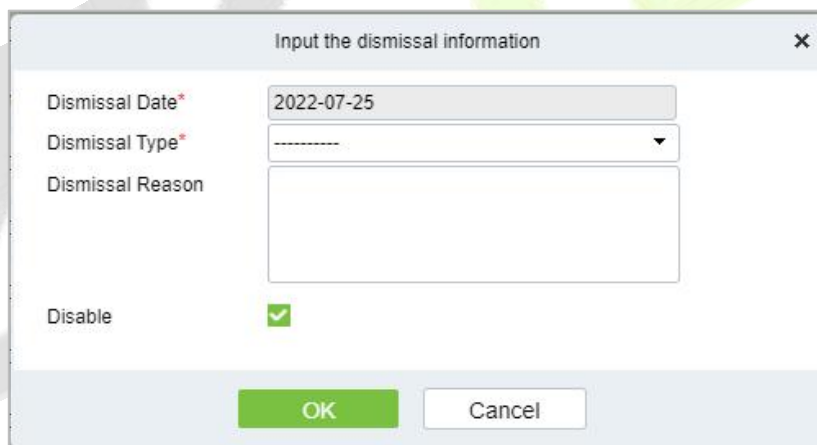
**Figure 2- 18 Change Position**

| Parameter       | Description                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| New Position    | Select new Position from list.   |
| Transfer Reason | Mention the reason for transfer. |

**Table 2- 10 Change Position**

● Dismissal:

Select the person from the list. Click **Personnel > Person > Personnel Adjustment**, then select Dismissal.



**Figure 2- 19 Dismissal**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter        | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Dismissal Date   | Select date.   |
| Dismissal Type   | Select the type of dismissal from follows, Voluntary Redundancy, Transfer, Dismissed, Resignation. |
| Dismissal Reason | Mention the reason for Dismissal.  |

**Table 2- 11 Dismissal**

**2.1.1.3 Delete**

Click **Personnel > Person**, then select Delete.

● Delete Personnel:

Click **Personnel > Person > Delete**, then select Delete Personnel.

● Delete Biometric Data:

Click **Personnel > Person > Delete**, then select Delete Biometric Data.

#### 2.1.1.4 Export

Click **Personnel > Person**, then select Export.

● Export Personnel:

Click **Personnel > Person > Export**, then select Export Personnel.

Personnel's basic information is all checked (selected), check custom attributes as required.

The screenshot shows the 'Export Personnel' dialog box with the following configuration:

- Basic Information:** All fields are checked (selected).
- Custom Attributes:** All fields are unchecked.
- Encrypt or not:** Radio button for 'No' is selected.
- File Format:** Dropdown menu is set to 'EXCEL'.
- Data to Export:** Radio button for 'All (max 100000 records)' is selected.
- Start Position:** Input field contains '1'.
- Total Records:** Input field contains '100'.

**Figure 2- 20 Export Personnel**

| Personnel ID | First Name         | Last Name | Department Number | Department Name | Gender | Birthday | Mobile Phone | Card Number | License |
|--------------|--------------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------------|--------|----------|--------------|-------------|---------|
| 1            | ju                 |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 9999         | K-TEST             |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 12135        |                    |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 12134        | name1              |           | 3                 | hr              | Male   |          |              |             |         |
| 1114         | Md. Jalal          |           | 2                 | Development     | Male   |          |              | 123456      |         |
| 1119         | multibio           |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 5            | YYYY               |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 2222         | ygv                |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 555          | fc                 |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 4            | W9                 |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 3            |                    |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 1118         |                    |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 1116         |                    |           | 1                 | Department Name |        |          |              |             |         |
| 1115         | Zorro              |           | 2                 | Development     |        |          |              |             |         |
| 1113         | Abdulla            |           | 2                 | Development     | Male   |          |              | 654321      |         |
| 1111         | Esha Test          |           | 2                 | Development     | Female |          |              | 145632      |         |
| 1112         | Anwar Hossain Abid |           | 2                 | Development     | Male   |          |              | 654987      |         |

Figure 2- 21 Export Personnel

● Export Biometric Template:

Click **Personnel > Person > Export**, then select Export Biometric Template.

Export Biometric Template

Encrypt or not:  Yes  No

File Format: EXCEL

Data to Export:  All (max 100000 records)

OK Cancel

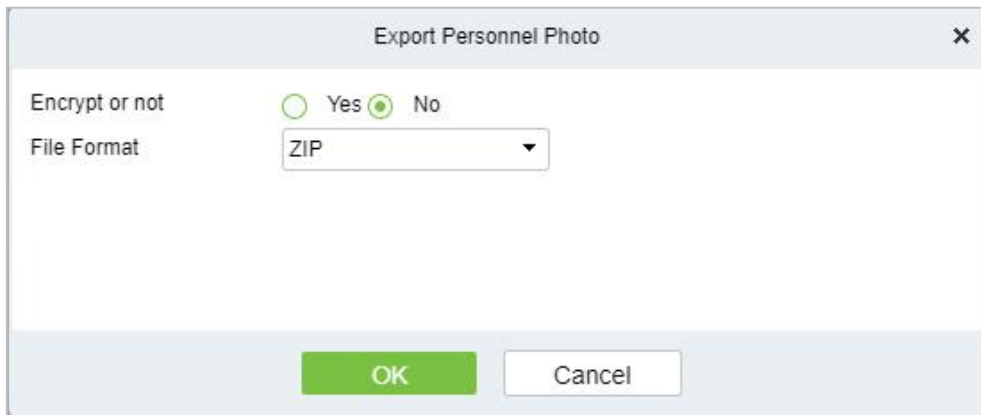
Figure 2- 22 Export Biometric Template

| Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Biometric Template Validity | Biometric Template Type Number | Biometric Template Type | Biometric Template Version | Biometric Template   | Biometric Template No. | Biometric Template Index | Duress |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|--|------------------------|--------------------------|--------|
| 1            | tang       | OP1       | Effective                   | 8                              | Palm Vein               | 12                         | apUBEUAH7YUAAWAAWqEAT+tuIDKJ0bXAVICEEHjWmJ0EEUJLW1a<br>CEWfnTqHe7vKH9lFTUMamv8Cfr7RHhHccDmp+HdQYHMEUjJgz11tOc<br>EBITrDhznG5wteDnB4fUSRfQZA/eKngSorsjSpidVYfyf3Mty3jhwW9z<br>tbTfoDRUJD8onqj04/OY4P505P5j3qk1tpJZyfwlpbwJHIN9ZEdAjBmZ<br>n9KD2oOINNONISXJz+Lnv+nASS0gbC3S/UUI6TuzBmS2eYqLRQYWRJ<br>InBKyyZzAXEBlUVZQ6CoCm0aKjPCs3KVBCPreq3a6vCH+LPDRckis0yLq<br>7BLKnOMApWh9IRMBHueRvQtwRgfudLTTdA7Xsq9Ux7TXN7fdGQ+<br>buOBTSrL6errWIBil/aVwTbX8fb3zjTGMvoJzTpDBwDKMox6QZxOchL<br>Kg4PPN8u0QttNaQffhobyfIF3EYShRI1ghSYn5OVDp6jth1gXxzlz/f6u/D<br>ch+HSCQj4/yMRSIExb1F+OepLxMbdwBjOxE/SJFZxwNfd1YSyFNKEG<br>Jj/ev/6iqx+mdgHG5v6X7j5Gsd7vp0+Xp75VDJ7lFhC06jBYaHGRQVAJ9<br>8B0q/EZKTARBAH9p9YmV73n26FmWozqNVIWLLraqmmCSblZjgXT3s<br>7a3lPaG/LuFJRhH5LD6Avqmcdb6fzL+s7Pnr+7Tcf7731qrtrbtB03Q+Ut<br>05XDgubnYDJaWOXpQqGnvLzFG5GBPHaPMokP7/Iyq5MAYbKAUMc<br>AoL4uXiNlPhR4QbRyXixeDnN7lJrItSjWjlyu1oAvRsaYgrS4voyoLoQf<br>Nv700uTo7raD5rFOz457xU2H2YTHaFuQ54o7UVJ4pBaMF/A626/XF<br>5fV15eJGPVYVCbGprQJUSCHLUVSUnZ3dDlDXWIXUgHtkDxjvPmd<br>9mv5LSno6P+V/rD9Vbp3Gu/pqblUb7Lrg9e+1WYqanoTKIGrXfYRkzrk<br>zryldh6lL2l4xb6/m1ZrcibZucjEscrlV9NxBjJxdYrdB68dfb41zdD86<br>eLjV/ghV9kR4Utw5e7Ybwxw8Cj1rE+fr7bXR93Deek6ZsIQYHmu4H<br>bAUQarTMBITjnlLcB7kO67bP84fMk4bRCLZBYCvDiorEIMVGTjpMYSZ<br>EjY3cPNYjzxR8agckDLyS32wFOu36ak5PWVLT4mxTzCqNlPbrd5+rl<br>h9eUgYg2Znc35FGHyxvVR+CXJzD1ZFRWhbWRgBX5/87v5sGtdkbiUS<br>YqL/6dFqeDjgbitZaxqbZdP61jntC+gAKjNcpkBg1XgwbSja6vRQ1wl<br>MqnxrRmbq7Lgr2MN+4e4t5MhB72lTMoxTWod8NLTx7rPMN4hWX<br>xb/t7fu+ZofNt4fB3zurrXJPKN5+Gwaivb3sXdfYrV1qEm0hgldJaH1<br>nF1EWWh+Yg4PmTKb8AwpHSQIzHobBy45fAeAKRAXSYnMwpdCDUw<br>Q8m7CT1587B8MABQcWDT4IMW0N7h06ZybcUjcl05CD8u5U2x3 | 0                      | 1                        | No     |

**Figure 2- 23 Export Biometric Template.**

● Export Personnel Photo:

Click **Personnel > Person > Export**, then select Export Personnel Photo.



**Figure 2- 24 Export Personnel Photo**

### 2.1.1.5 Import

Introduce the configuration Steps of manually importing personnel in batches in ZKBio CVSecurity.

It is suitable for scenarios where a large number of personnel information is added. Compared with the manual registration method of individual personnel, the batch import and addition method is faster.

Before adding departments in batches, you need to fill in the template file as required. After filling out the template file, you can import and add departments in batches in the "Department" interface.

● Instruction:

1. The import and addition of personnel includes importing personnel information, personnel biometric template data (optional), and personnel photos (optional), which need to be imported separately.
2. Importing is to pay attention to the uniqueness of the personnel number. When the personnel number is repeated, the result of import and addition will fail.

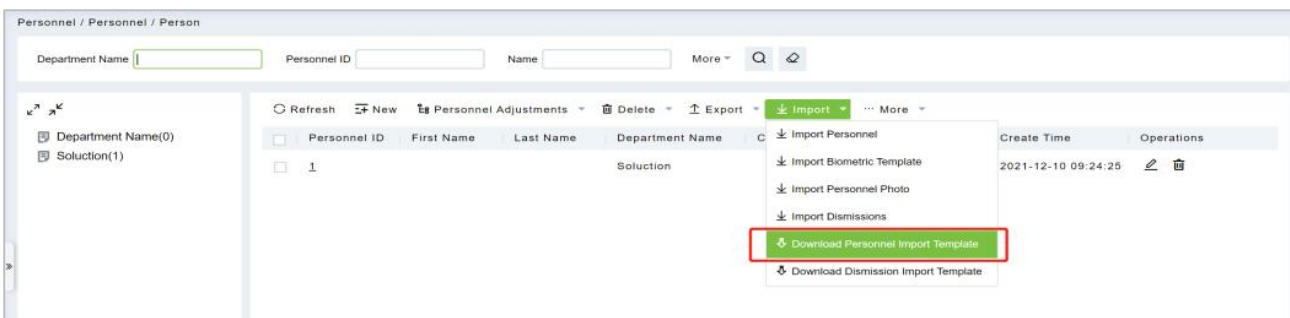
#### Import Personnel Information

Before adding people in batches, you need to obtain or fill in a template file as required. After filling in the template file, you can import and add people in batches on the Personnel Management > Personnel interface.

● Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Personnel module, choose "**Personnel Management > Personnel**".

**Step 2:** On the personnel interface, select and click the "**Import > Download Personnel Import Template**" button, select the parameters to be filled in, and download the template "personnel information template.xls" locally. The parameter selection is shown in Figure 2-21.



### Figure 2- 25 Import Personnel Information Template

**Step 3:** Open the exported template file "Personnel Information Template.xls" for adding personnel information.

**Step 4:** In the personnel interface, select and click the "**Import > Import Personnel Information**" button; in the **Import Personnel** Interface, click the **Browse** button to import the batch import template into the system, as shown in figure below

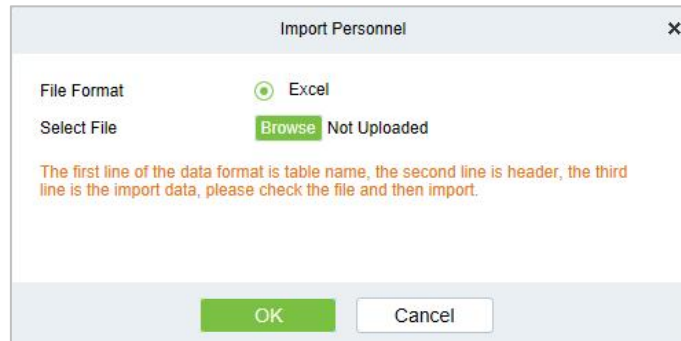


Figure 2- 26 Import Personnel

**Step 5:** Click **OK**, and the interface displays the result of personnel import and addition.

**Step 6:** Click **Close** to complete the import and addition of personnel information.

### Import Biometric Template

#### ● Preconditions:

1. The system needs to have the basic information files of the personnel in order to support the import of biometric template data.
2. The biometric template data of the current system personnel has been obtained.

#### ● Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Personnel module, choose "**Personnel Management > Personnel**".

**Step 2:** On the personnel interface, select and click the "**Import > Import Biometric Template Data**" button; in the pop-up import personnel biometric template data interface, click the **Browse** button to import personnel biometric template data into the system in batches, as shown in Figure 2-23 is shown.

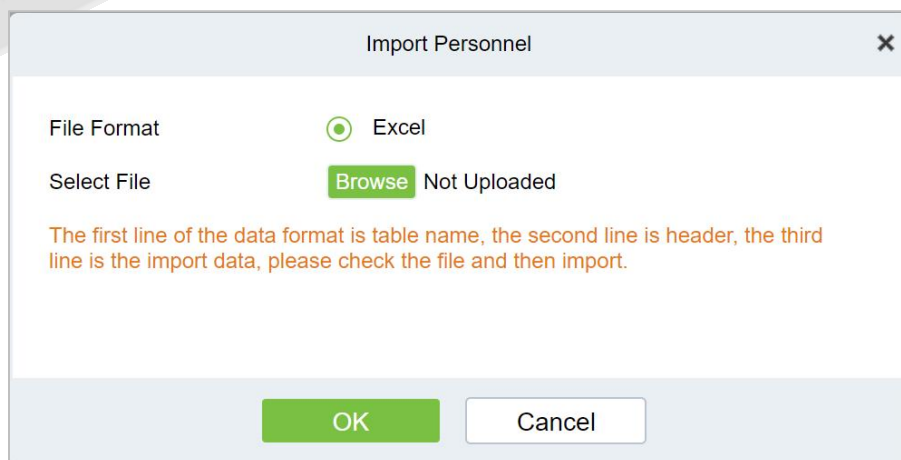


Figure 2- 27 Importing Personnel Biometric Template Data

**Step 3:** Click **OK**, the interface displays the import and addition results.

**Step 4:** Click **Close** to complete the import of personnel biometric template data.

## Import Personnel Photos

### ● Preconditions:

1. The system needs to have the basic information files of the personnel in order to support the import of personnel photos.
2. The personnel photos of the current system personnel have been obtained and correctly named according to the personnel number.
3. The photo requirements for personnel are as follows:

**Image Format:** support .JPEG, .png format.

**Image Size:** The recommended image size is 35KB~200KB, and the maximum size of a single image is 5MB.

**Image Quality:** Faces in images are clear and not blurred by lens defocus or face motion. The minimum image depth is an 8-bit grayscale image.

**Pixels:** The recommended value of face pixels is 200\*200, and the distance between the eyes should be greater than or equal to 60 pixels, preferably greater than or equal to 90 pixels.

**Brightness and Contrast:** The ambient illumination is not less than 300Lux, the image brightness is uniform, the contrast is moderate, and the face has no invisible, no backlight, no reflection, no overexposure, no underexposure and no yin and yang faces.

**Attitude:** The portrait is upright, looking straight ahead, the horizontal rotation angle of the face should be within  $\pm 10^\circ$ , the elevation angle should be within  $\pm 10^\circ$ , and the tilt angle should be within  $\pm 10^\circ$ .

**Blocking:** Eyebrows, eyes, mouth, nose and facial contours should not be blocked by bangs, masks, accessories, glasses, etc. The lenses of glasses should be colorless and non-reflective, and the frames of glasses should not be too thick to block human eyes.

**Face Area:** The face is complete, the outline and facial features are clear, and there is no heavy makeup. The face area of the image should not be processed by PS.

**Expression:** Natural expression, neutral or smiling (no missing teeth), eyes open naturally, mouth closed naturally, no obvious expressions such as laughter or frown.

### ● Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Personnel module, choose "Personnel Management > Personnel".

**Step 2:** On the Personnel interface, select and click the "Import > Import Personnel Photo" button, as shown in figure below.

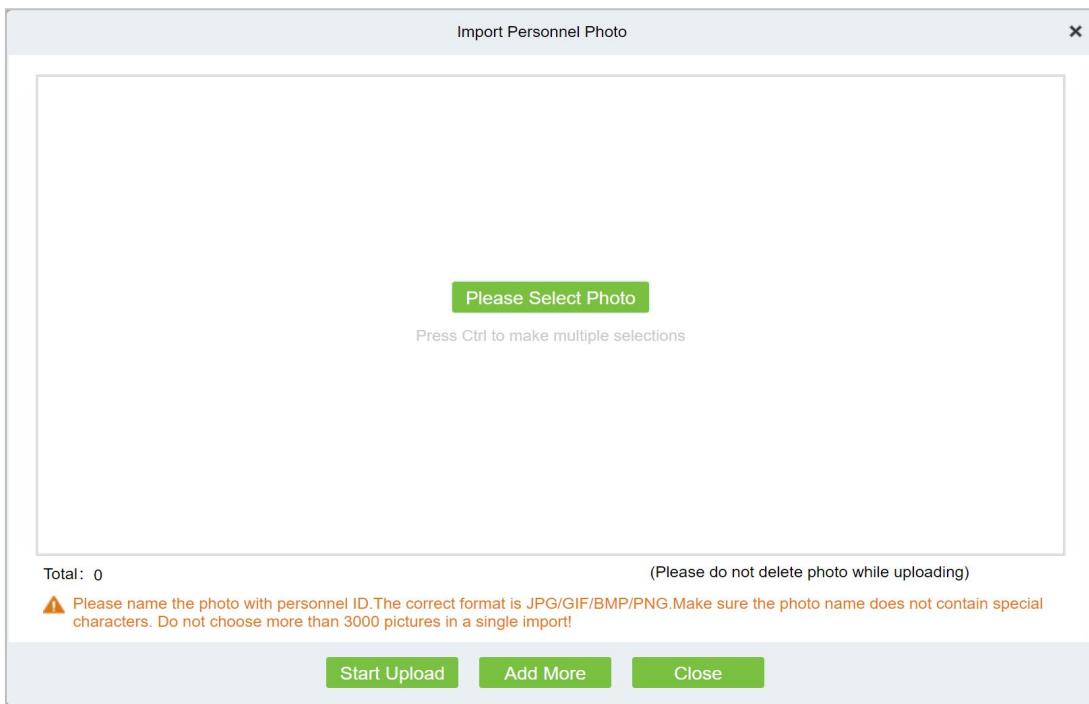


**Figure 2- 28 Import Personnel Photos**

**Note:** If you have selected Face Picture, the pixel of the face photo must be greater than 80,000 pixels, and the face should be centered and well-lit.

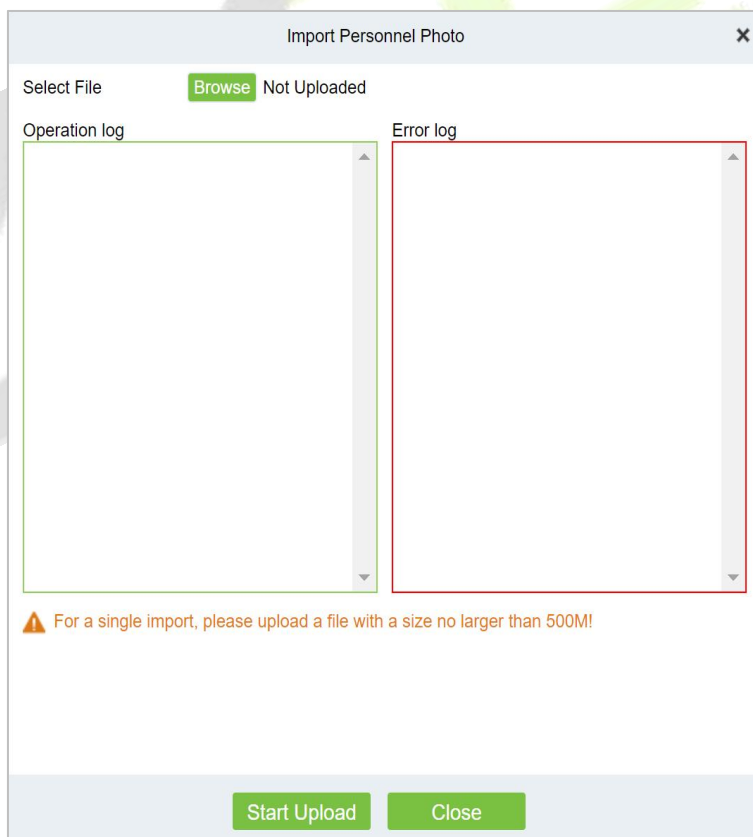
**Step 3:** Optional: upload photos and compressed packages.

**Step 4:** After selecting the photo method, click **OK** to enter the interface for importing personnel photos, select the photo and click **Start Uploading**.



**Figure 2- 29 Photos - Importing Personnel Photos**

**Step 5:** After selecting the compression package method, click **OK** to enter the interface of importing personnel photos, click **Browse** to select the file and then click **“Start Uploading”**.



**Figure 2- 30 Compressed Package - Importing Personnel Photos**

**Step 6:** After the upload is complete, the interface displays the results of the imported personnel photos.

**Step 7:** Click **Close** to complete the import and addition of personnel photos.

### 2.1.1.6 More

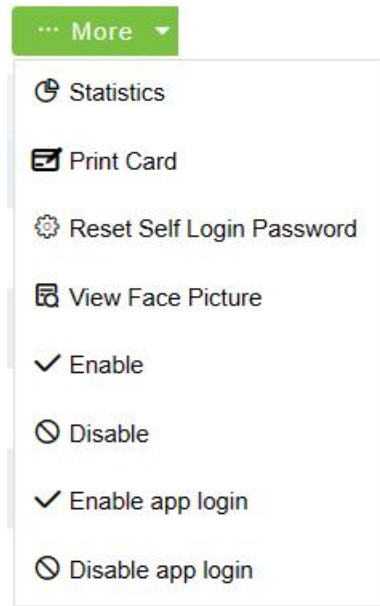


Figure 2- 31 More

#### Statistics

Click **Personnel > Person > More**, then select Statistics.

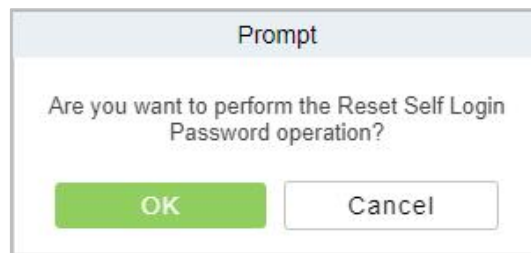
| Statistical Type   |        | Current Total |
|--------------------|--------|---------------|
| Male               |        | 4             |
| Female             |        | 1             |
| Person             |        | 22            |
| Fingerprint        |        | 0             |
| Near Infrared Face |        | 0             |
| Finger Vein        |        | 0             |
| Palm Vein          | V12.0  | 1             |
| Visible Face       | V58.12 | 1             |
| Card               |        | 6             |
| Face Picture       |        | 3             |

Figure 2- 32 Statistics

View the number of Person, Male, Female, and the number of Fingerprints, Near Infrared Face, Finger Vein, Palm Vein, Visible Face, Card, and Face Picture.

#### Reset Self Login Password

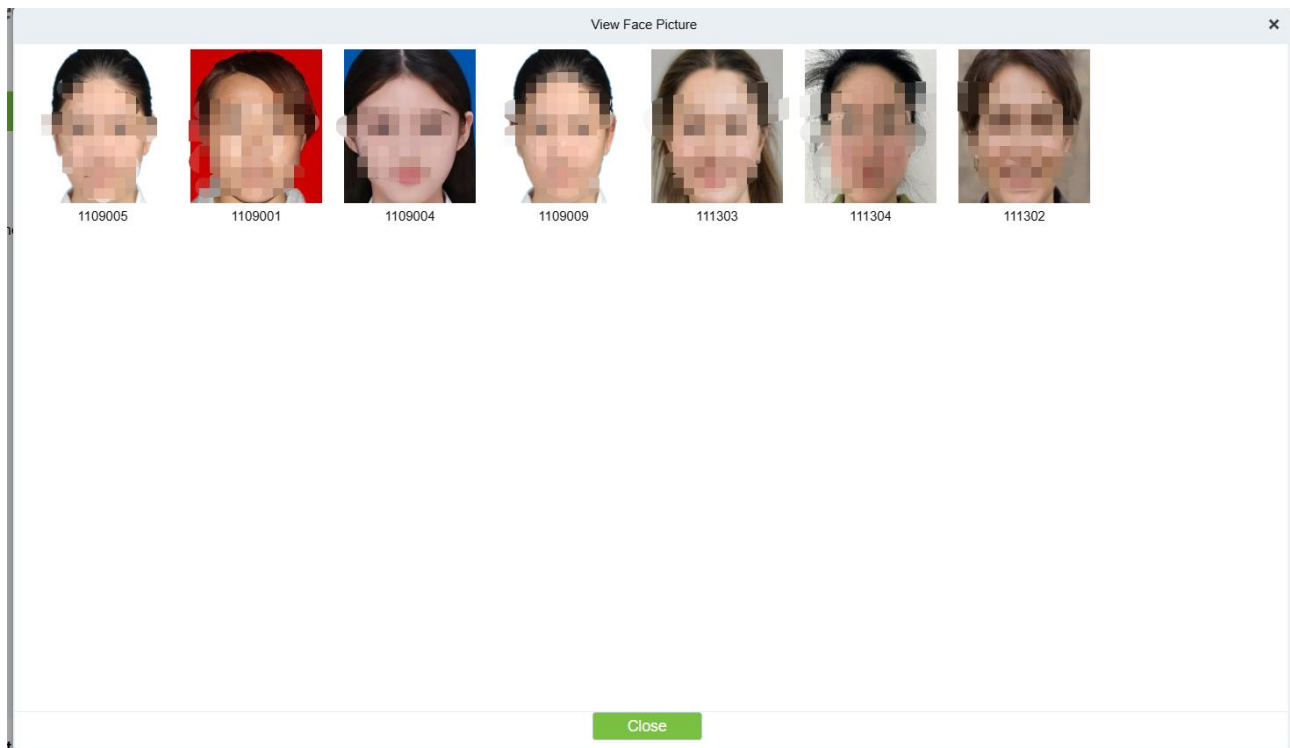
Click **Personnel > Person > More**, then select Reset Self Login Password.



**Figure 2- 33 Statistics**

View Face Picture (V6.0.0 or above supported)

Click **Personnel > Person > More**, then select View Face Picture.



**Figure 2- 34**

**Enable (V6.1.0 or above supported)**

Click **Personnel > Person > More**, then select **Enable**. **Selected** persons will be enabled.

**Disable (V6.1.0 or above supported)**

Click **Personnel > Person > More**, then select **Disable**. **The** credentials of the selected personnel will be disabled; all the access rights of the selected personnel such as access control, gate barrier, elevator control, locker, etc. will be unavailable, and at the same time will not be able to take attendance, consumption and so on until enabled.

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Card Number | Verification Mode | Enable | App login enabl... | Create Time |
|--------------------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-------------|-------------------|--------|--------------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 111303       | kad        | lai       |             | ☒                 | ⊖      | ⊖                  | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1109001      | kara       | 1109001   | 86***33     | ☒☒                | ⊕      | ⊖                  | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1109004      |            |           |             | ☒☒                | ⊕      | ⊖                  | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 11568        | Popy       |           |             |                   | ⊖      |                    | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1109006      |            |           | 58***52     | ☒♂                | ⊕      |                    | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1109003      | kara       | 1109003   | 61***85     | ☒♂                | ⊕      |                    | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4143         | sansan     | 周三        | 46*****33   | ☒                 | ⊕      |                    | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 11567        | Ning       | Qin       |             |                   | ⊕      |                    | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 111304       | 111304     |           | 86*****75   | ☒☒                | ⊕      |                    | 2023-11-1   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 111302       | karaa      | adaki     |             | ☒                 | ⊕      |                    | 2023-11-1   |

Figure 2- 35

**Enable APP Login (V6.1.0 or above supported)**

Click **Personnel > Person > More**, then select **Enable app login**. Selected persons will be enabled ZKBio CVSecurity Mobile APP login.

**Disable APP Login (V6.1.0 or above supported)**

Click **Personnel > Person > More**, then select **Disable app login**. Selected persons will be disabled ZKBio CVSecurity Mobile APP login.

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | Card Number | Verification Mode | Enable | App login |
|--------------------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|-------------------|--------|-----------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 667          | JK         |           | Department Name |             | ☒                 | ⊕      | ⊕         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 666          | Ngaliman   | Ng        | Department Name |             | ☒                 | ⊕      | ⊕         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1147         | wusaqi     | yaha      | Department Name | 2461369181  | ☒                 | ⊕      |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1146         | WLP        | 123456    | Department Name | 2461500509  | ☒☒                | ⊕      |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 22           | uu         |           | Department Name | 1367759229  | ☒♂☒☒              | ⊕      |           |

Figure 2- 36

**Note:** If you need to know how to use the ZKBio Zexs APP, please refer to the [ZKBio Zexs APP](#).

**2.1.2 Department**

Click **Personnel**, then select Department.

Before managing company personnel, it is required to set a departmental organization chart of the company. Upon the first use of the system, by default it has a primary department named General and numbered 1. This department can be modified but can't be deleted.

Main functions of Department Management include **Add (New), Delete, Export** and **Import Department**.

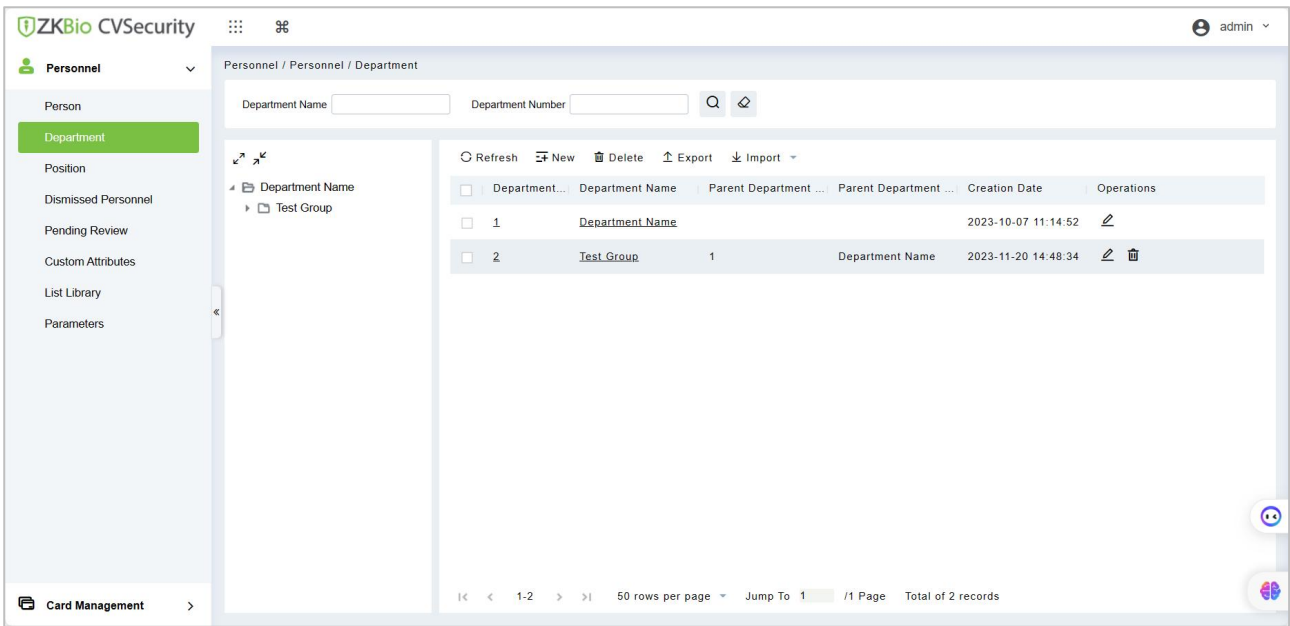


Figure 2- 37

### 2.1.2.1 Add a Department (New)

Introduce the configuration Steps for manually adding a single department in ZKBio CVSecurity.

It is suitable for scenarios where a small number of departmental organizations are added. After most departmental organizations have been created, individual departments can be added individually.

●Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Personnel module, choose “Personnel Management > Department”.

**Step 2:** Click **Add** with the mouse, and the interface for adding a department will pop up.

**Step 3:** In the interface of adding a department, fill in the corresponding parameters according to the adding requirements, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 2-10 for the description of parameter filling.

The 'New' form is a modal window with a close button (X) in the top right. It contains a warning message: 'If the new department does not appear in the department list, please contact the administrator to re-authorize the department in the user edit!'. Below the message are four input fields: 'Department Number\*' (empty), 'Department Name\*' (empty), 'Sort\*' (containing '99999'), and 'Parent Department' (a dropdown menu). At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Save and New' (green), 'OK' (green), and 'Cancel' (white).

Figure 2- 38 Add Department (New)

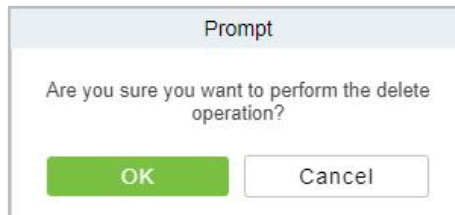
●Fields are as follows:

| Parameter         | Instructions   |
|-------------------|--|
| Department Number | Customize the department number, support letters and numbers.        |
| Department name   | Customize the department name.                                       |
| Sort              | Fill in the number of the superior department.                       |
| Parent Department | The department name corresponding to the superior department number. |

**Table 2- 12 Add Department**

### 2.1.2.2 Delete

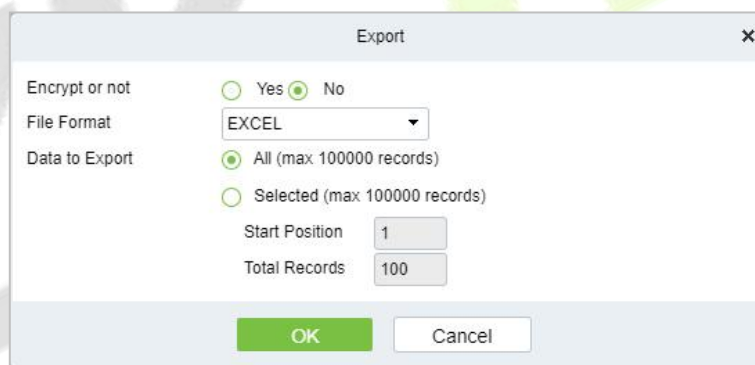
Click **Personnel > Department**, then select Delete.



**Figure 2- 39 Delete Department**

### 2.1.2.3 Export

Click **Personnel > Department**, then select Export.

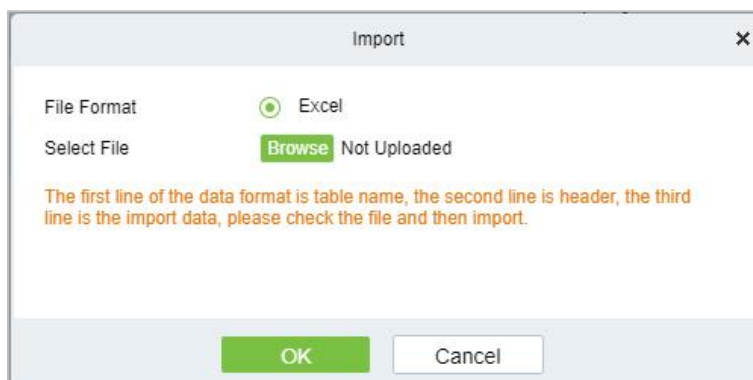


**Figure 2- 40 Export Department**

### 2.1.2.4 Import

● Import:

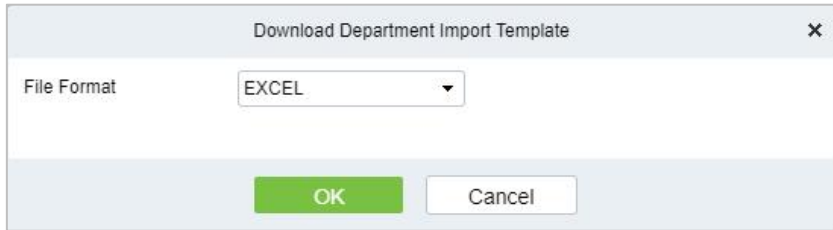
Click **Personnel > Department > Import**, then select Import.



**Figure 2- 41 Import Department.**

●Download Import Template Department:

Click **Personnel > Department > Import**, then select Download Import Template Department.



**Figure 2- 42 Download Import Template Department**

### 2.1.3 Position

Introduces the configuration Steps of manually adding a job in ZKBio CVSecurity, and adding a job is used to define the job information of a person.

Click **Personnel**, then select **Position**.

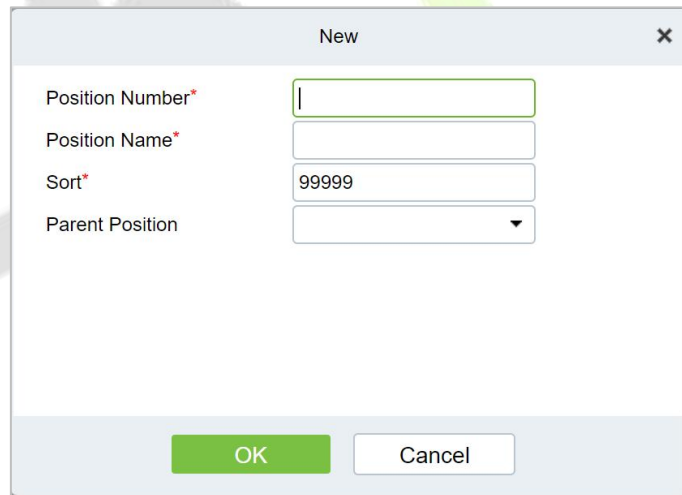
#### 2.1.3.1 Add Position

●Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Personnel >Personnel Management > Position.

**Step 2:** Click **New (Add Position)**, and the new job interface will pop up.

**Step 3:** On the new job interface, fill in the corresponding parameters according to the adding requirements, as shown in figure below; please refer to Table 2-11 for parameter filling instructions.



**Figure 2- 43 Add Position (New)**

●Fields are as follows:

| Parameter       | Instructions  |
|-----------------|---|
| Job number      | Customize the job number for easy memory.   |
| Job Title       | Customize job title.  |
| Sort            | Sort job listings, only numbers are supported.  |
| Parent position | Select the corresponding parent position from the drop-down radio box. If you need to cancel, click Selected again. |

**Table 2- 13 Adding New Position**

### 2.1.3.2 Export

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Position**, then select Export.

**Figure 2- 44 Export Position**

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save to exit.

### 2.1.3.3 Import

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Position > Import**, then select Import.

**Figure 2- 45 Import Position.**

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

### 2.1.3.4 Delete

Click **Personnel > Position**, then click Delete.

**Figure 2- 46 Delete Position**

## 2.1.4 Dismissed Personnel

This parameter will display the personnel who are not working in company anymore. Once the person is dismissed, it will be listed.

Click **Personnel**, then select Dismissed Personnel.

### 2.1.4.1 Delete

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Dismissed Personnel**, then select Delete.

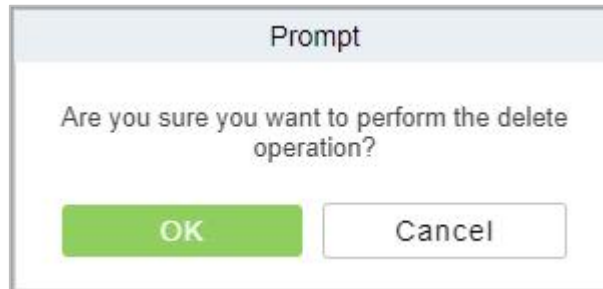


Figure 2- 47 Delete

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

### 2.1.4.2 Export

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Dismissed Personnel**, then select Export.

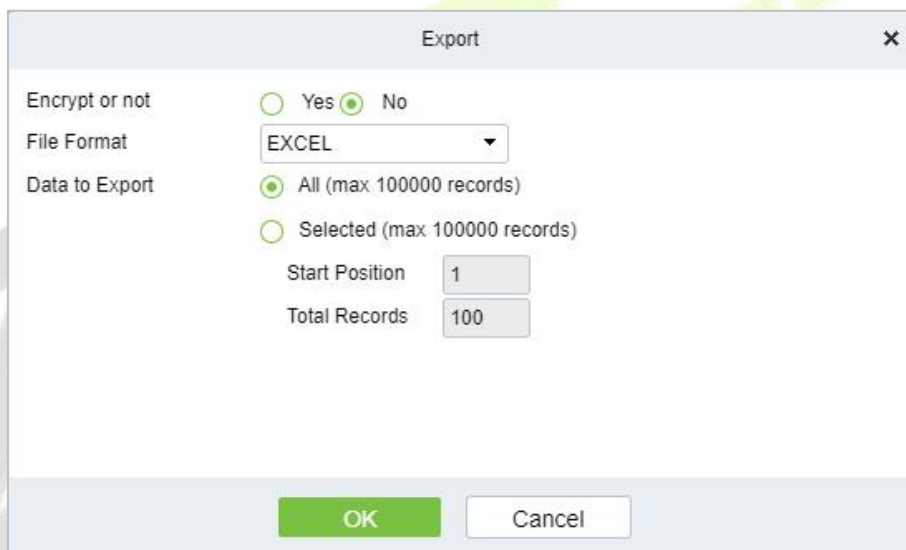


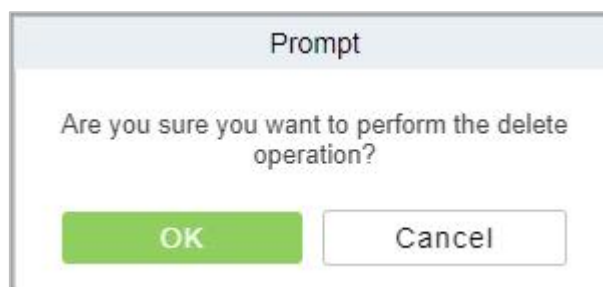
Figure 2- 48 Export

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

## 2.1.5 Pending Review

### 2.1.5.1 Delete

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Pending Review**, then select Delete.



**Figure 2- 49 Delete Pending Review**

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

### 2.1.6 Custom Attributes

Some personal attributes can be customized or deleted to meet different customers' requirements. When the system is used for the first time, the system will initialize some personal attributes by default. Customized personal attributes can be set for different projects according to requirements.

Click **Personnel**, then select Custom Attributes.

#### 2.1.6.1 Add Custom Attributes (New)

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Custom Attributes**, then select **New** (Custom Attributes).

**Figure 2- 50 Add Customer Attribute (New)**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter       | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Display Name    | Must be filled and should not be repeated. Max length is 30.  |
| Input Type      | Select the display type from "Pull-down List"," Multiple Choice", "Single Choice" and "Text".   |
| Attribute Value | Suitable for lists displaying as "Pull-down List","Multiple Choice" and "Single Choice" lists. Use a ";" to distinguish the multiple values. If the input type is "Text", the attribute value is not suitable.  |
| Row/Column      | The column and row of a field are used together to control the display position of the field. Numerals are supported. The column number cannot exceed 99, and the row number can only be 1 or 2. The combination of the column and row must not be duplicated. As shown in the following figure, Employee Type, is in the first column and first row, and Hire Type is in the first column and second |

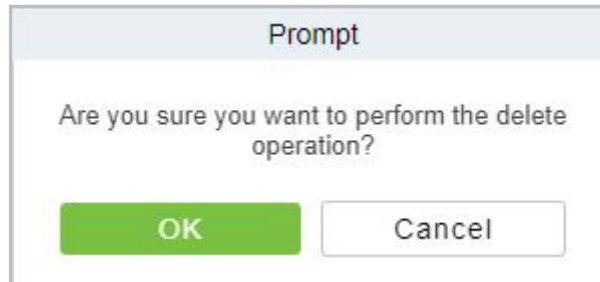
| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|           | row.        |

**Table 2- 14 Add Customer Attribute (New)**

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

### 2.1.6.2 Delete

Step 1: Click **Personnel > Custom Attributes**, then select Delete.



**Figure 2- 51 Delete Custom attributes**

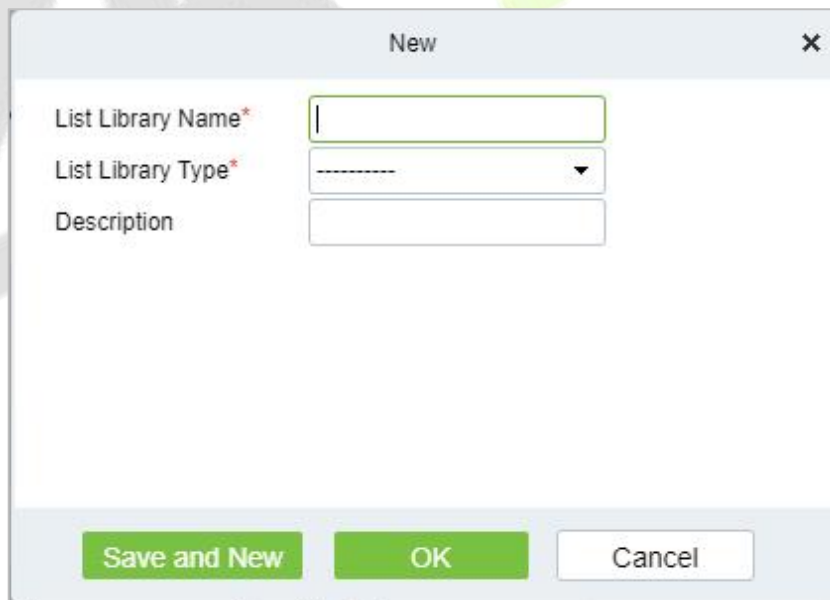
**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

## 2.1.7 List Library

The list library is mainly used for face matching with face cameras or ZKIVA-Edge.

### 2.1.7.1 Add a List Library (New)

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > List Library**, then select **New** (List Library).



**Figure 2- 52 Add List Library (New)**

| Parameter         | Description                  |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| List Library Name | The name of list library.    |
| List Library Type | Select type of list library. |

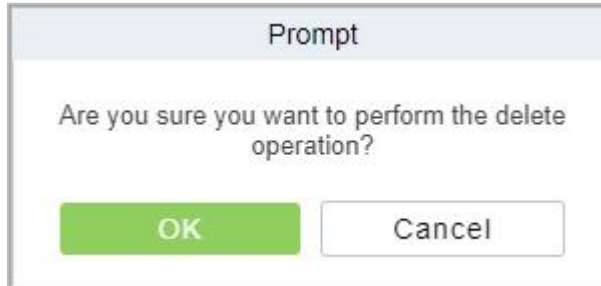
| Parameter   | Description                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Description | Fill Description as required. |

**Table 2- 15 Add List Library**

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

### 2.1.7.2 Delete

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > List Library**, then select Delete.



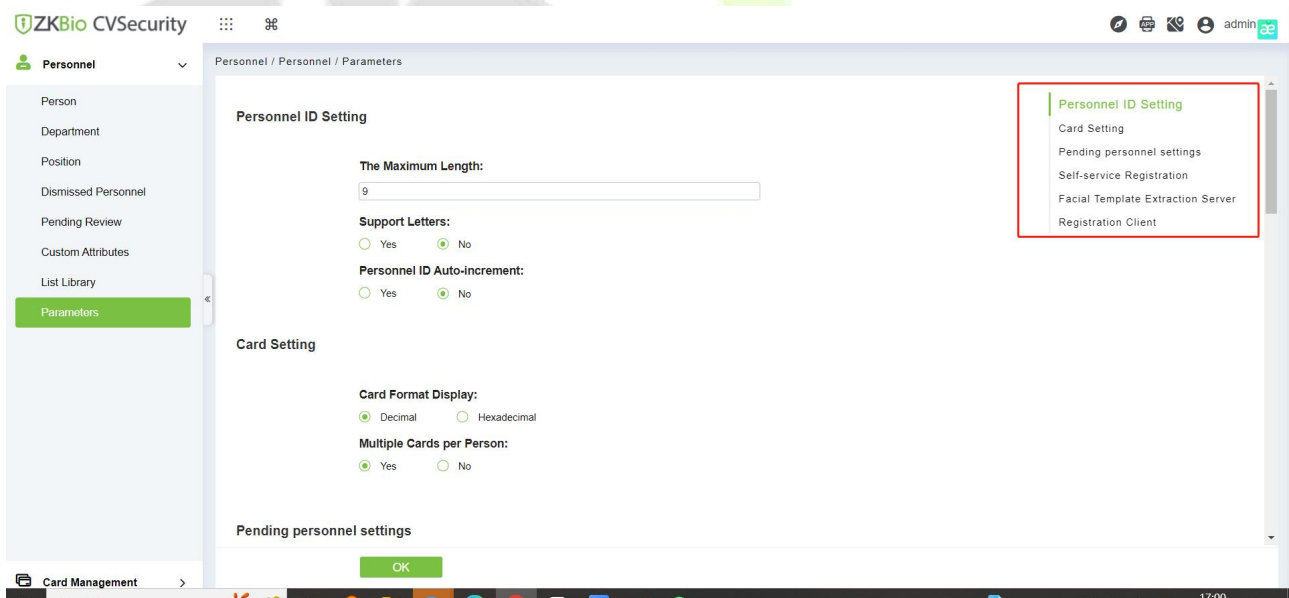
**Figure 2- 53 Delete List Library**

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

## 2.1.8 Parameters

In Parameters you can do few settings for options like Personnel ID Setting, Card setting, Pending Personnel Selling, Self-Service registration, Facial Template Extraction Server, and Registration Client.

Click **Personnel > Personnel Management**, then select Parameters.



**Figure 2- 54 Parameters**

### 2.1.8.1 Personnel ID Setting

**The maximum length:** The Personnel ID supports a maximum length of 23 characters.

**Support Letters:** When "Yes" is selected, the Personnel ID can include letters.

**Personnel ID Auto-increment:** When "Yes" is selected, the Personnel ID will automatically increment by 1.

### Personnel ID Setting

**The Maximum Length:**

**Support Letters:**  
 Yes     No

**Personnel ID Auto-increment:**  
 Yes     No

Figure 2- 55 Personnel ID Setting.

### 2.1.8.2 Card Setting

Set **Card Format Display** Select either Decimal or Hexadecimal as the display option.

**Multiple Cards per Person:** After selecting "Yes," you can register multiple cards for each personnel.

### Card Setting

**Card Format Display:**  
 Decimal     Hexadecimal

**Multiple Cards per Person:**  
 Yes     No

Figure 2- 56 Card Setting

### 2.1.8.3 Pending Personnel Setting

**Enable Auto-audit:** After selecting **Yes**, the system will automatically approve self-registered personnel.

### Pending personnel settings

**Enable Auto-audit:**  
 Yes     No

Figure 2- 57 Pending Personnel Selling

### 2.1.8.4 Self Service Registration

**Enable Self Registration:** After selecting "Yes", personnel can scan to self-register their personal information.

### Self-service Registration

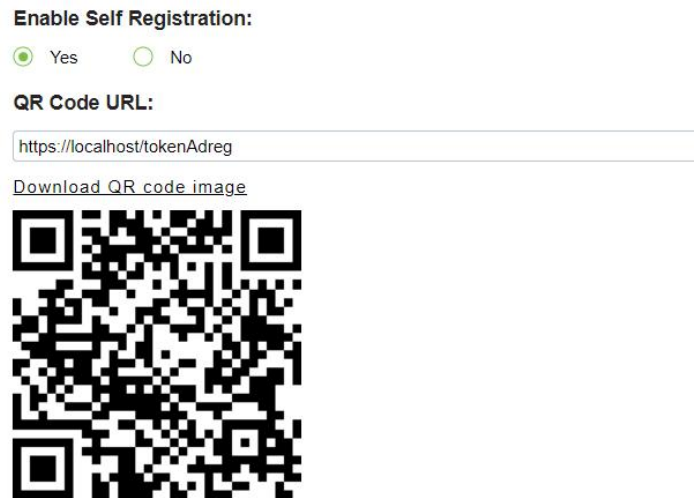


Figure 2- 58 Self Service Registration

#### 2.1.8.5 Personal Sensitive Information Protection

After checking these fields, the corresponding fields under the Personnel menu will be hidden from view.

**Note:** In ZKBio CVSecurity version V6.4.0 and later, this feature is adjusted to be configured under the Role menu, allowing for different privacy protections for different user roles.

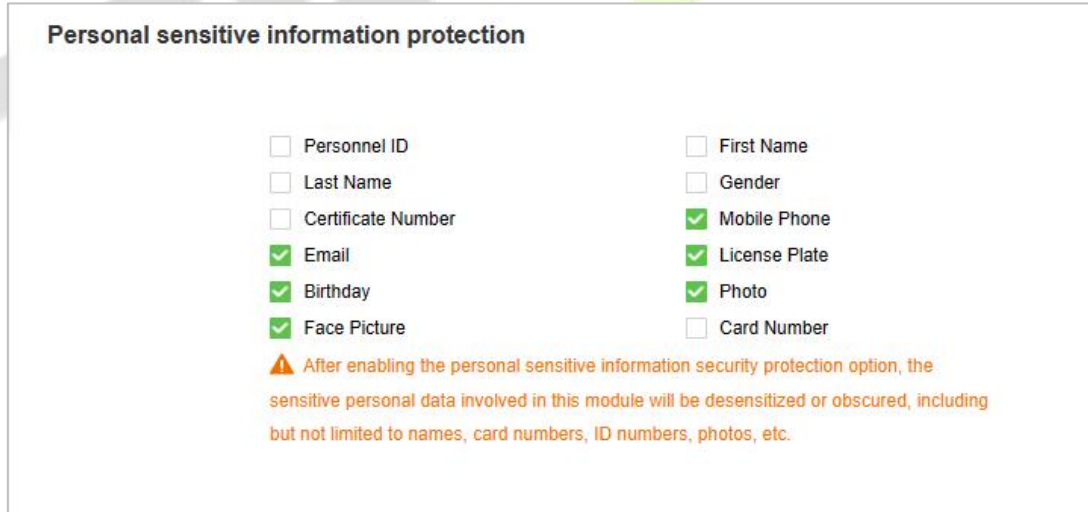


Figure 2- 59 Sensitive Information Protection

#### 2.1.8.6 Facial Template Extraction Server

This feature is applicable to the KF1000 Pro Series. A single KF1000 Pro Reader can be used as an enrollment device. After the enrollment is completed, the facial template can be uploaded to ZKBio CVSecurity and then synchronized for use with the Inbio Pro Plus.

## Facial Template Extraction Server

### Enable Facial Template Extraction:

Yes  No

### Facial template extraction server address:

https://Server address:Port

### Username:


admin

### Password:

..... 

**Test Connection** Offline

 When enabling facial template extraction, a device that supports facial template extraction needs to be connected!

 When facial template extraction is enabled, when the facial template extraction server is online and the user verification is passed, personnel will default to extracting facial templates when comparing photos; When the facial template extraction server is in offline mode, do not extract facial templates!

**Facial template extraction server address:** Enter the server address, the default port number is 8809.

**Username:** Enter the Webserver user name for the KF1000 Pro series reader.

**Password:** Enter the Webserver password for the KF1000 Pro series reader.

### 2.1.8.7 Registration Client

● Fields are as follows:

**Registration Client**

**Device Driver**

Certificate Recognition Driver Installation Status: Detected Certificate Recognition Driver is not installed

Card Printer Driver Installation Status: Detected Card Printer Driver is not installed

**Certificate Recognition**

OCR  IDReader

**Registration Code\***

[Dropdown]

**Register**

Download OCR V1.0 Driver  Download OCR V2.0 Driver

**Certificate No. Automatic Backfill Type**

Document No.  Personal No.

**Card Printing**

**Registration Code\***

[Dropdown]

**Register**

[Download Driver](#)

Figure 2- 60 Registration Client

**Note:**

**Registration Code:** Please make sure you have activated the corresponding license.and then go to **System > Authority Management > Client Register** to got the registration code.

System / Authority Management / Client Register

Registration Code [ ] Client Type [ ] Activation [ ]

Refresh New Reset Delete

| Registration Code        | Client name | Registration Key | Activ... | Activated D... | Creation Date | Client Type | Oper |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------------|----------|----------------|---------------|-------------|------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | BBABAF      |                  |          |                |               |             |      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 369D77      |                  |          |                |               |             |      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 61FF4A      | 18-bc-1...       |          |                |               |             |      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 8A0A9D      | 1c-1b-0...       |          |                |               |             |      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 12A25F      | 1c-1b-0...       |          |                |               |             |      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CC771E      | 18-31-b...       |          |                |               |             |      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 7291D0      | 18-31-b...       |          |                |               |             |      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | E1FC74      | Fanya A43A85...  |          |                |               |             |      |

**New**

Client Type\* [ ]

Registration Code\* [ ]

- APP Client-Administrator
- APP Client-Staff
- OCR-Personnel**
- OCR-Visitor
- ID Reader-Personnel**
- ID Reader-Visitor

**OK** **Cancel**

Figure 2- 61 Registration Code

## 2.2 Card Management

There are three modules in Card Management: Card, Wiegand Format, and Issue Card Record.

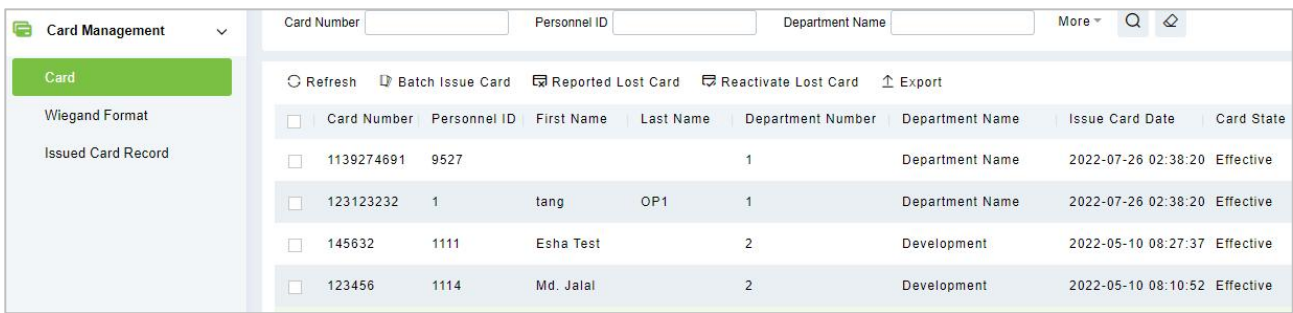


Figure 2- 62 Card Management

## 2.2.1 Card

### 2.2.1.1 Batch Issue Card

1. Click **Personnel > Card Management > Card**, then click Batch Issue Card.

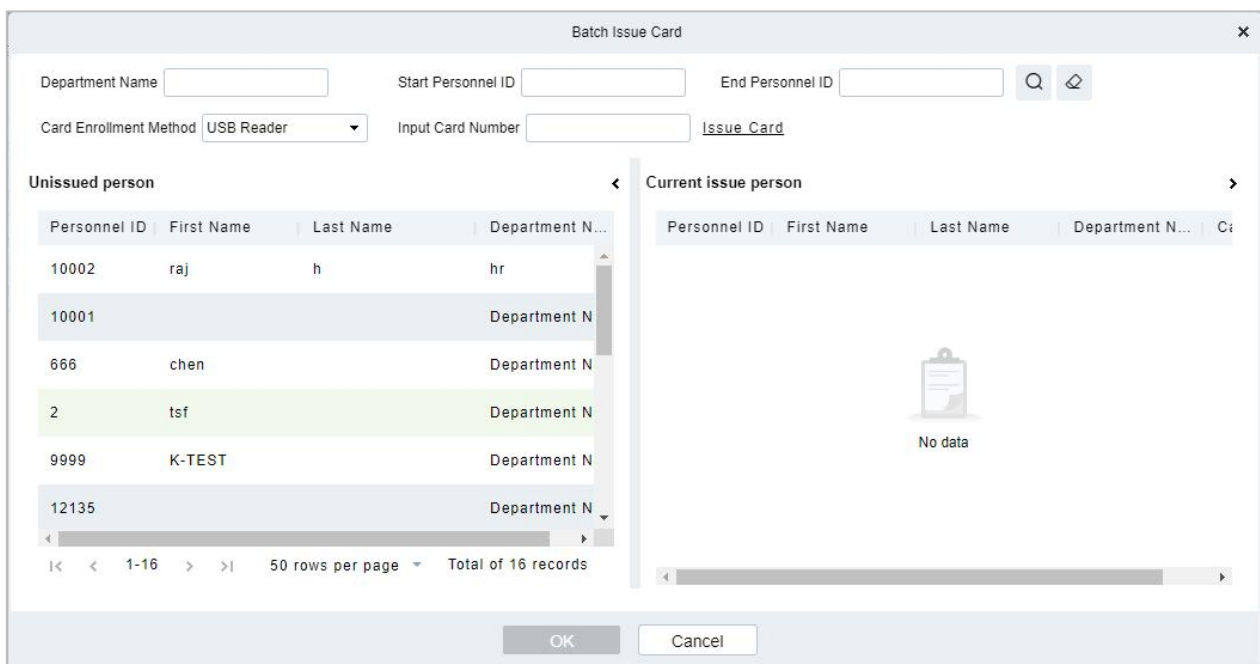


Figure 2- 63 Batch Issue card

2. Fill the fields for Department Name, Start Personnel ID, End Personnel ID, Card Enrollment Method, and Input Card Number.

3. Enter Start and End Personnel No. and click Generate List to generate personnel list and show all personnel without cards within this number series.

**Note:** The Start and End Personnel No. only support numbers.

4. Select Card Enrollment Method: Register with a USB Reader or device.

If you want to enroll a card with a USB Reader, you may place the card over the "issue machine" directly. The System will get the card number and issue it to the user in the list on the left.

For the use of device, you need to select the position of punching, click start to read, the system will read the card number automatically, and issue it to the user in the list on the left one by one. After that, click Stop to read.

**Note:** During the Batch Issue Card", system will check whether the card issuer issues card or not, if card has been issued before, the system will prompt "The Card Number has already been issued".

5. Click **OK** to complete card issue and exit.

### 2.2.1.2 Reported Lost Card

Click **Personnel > Card Management > Card**, then select Reported Lost Card.

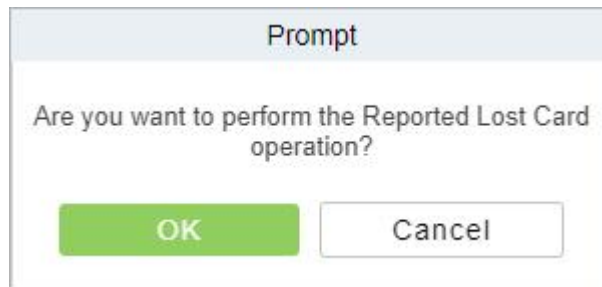


Figure 2- 64 Reported Lost Card

**Note:** Report Lost Card is applicable to all functional modules, not to the offline elevator module. After the report of loss, the status of the card becomes invalid but not written into the management card. Need to write management card in the appropriate module, such as offline elevator control module **Write management card (Elevator Device > Card > Write management card)**.

### 2.2.1.3 Reactive Lost Card

Click **Personnel > Card Management > Card**, then select Reactive Lost Card.

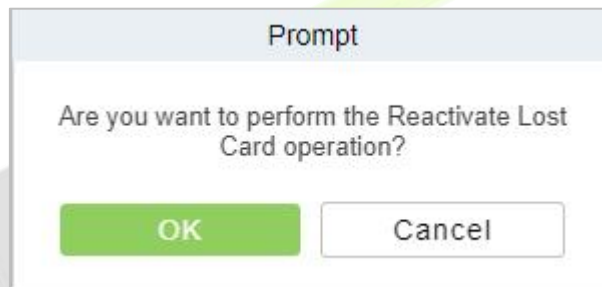
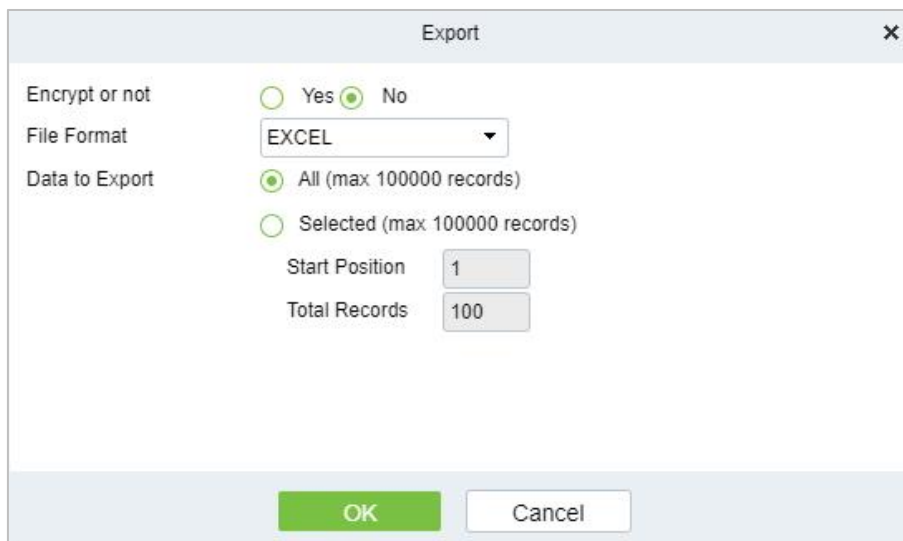


Figure 2- 65 Reactive Lost Card

**Note:** Reactivate Lost Card is applicable to all functional modules, not to the offline elevator module. After reactivating lost card, the status of the card becomes valid but not written into the management card. Need to write management card in the appropriate module, such as offline elevator control module **Write management card (Elevator Device > Card > Write management card)**.

### 2.2.1.4 Export

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Personnel Management > Card Management > Card**, then select Export.



**Figure 2- 66 Export**

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

## 2.2.2 Wiegand Format

Wiegand Format is the card format that can be identified by the Wiegand reader. The software is embedded with 9 Wiegand formats. You may set the Wiegand card format as you needed.

Click **Personnel > Personnel Management > Card Management**, then select Wiegand Format.

### 2.2.2.1 Add Wiegand Format (New)

Click **Personnel > Personnel Management > Card Management > Wiegand format**, then select New (Add Wiegand format).

**Figure 2- 67 Add Wiegand format (New)**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter | Instructions  |
|-----------|---|
| Name      | Enter the Name.   |
| Total Bit | Enter the total bit.  |
| Site Code | Enter the Site code.  |
| Auto      | Click if Auto is required.  |
| Mode One  | In Mode One Odd Parity Check, Even Parity Check, CID, Site Code, and Manufacturer Code should be set as Start Bit and The Maximum Length. |
| Mode Two  | In Mode Two Card Check format and Parity check Format must be entered.  |

**Table 2- 16 Wiegand Format**

This software supports two modes for adding the Wiegand Format: If mode 1 does not meet your setting requirements, you may switch it to mode 2. Take Wiegand Format 37 as an example:

● Format Specifying:

“P” indicates Parity Position; “s” indicates Site Code; “c” indicates Cardholder ID; “m” indicates Manufactory Code; “e” indicates Even Parity; “O” indicates Odd Parity; “b” indicates both odd check and even check; “x” indicates parity bits no check.

The previous Wiegand Format 37: the first parity bits (p) check “eeeeeeeeeeeeeeee”; the second parity bits check “oooooooooooooooooooo”. Card Check Format can only be set “p, x, m, c, s”; Parity Check Format can only be set “x, b, o, e”.

🔗 Note:

You can go to **Access > Device > Door**, select the device and configure the **Wiegand Input Format**.

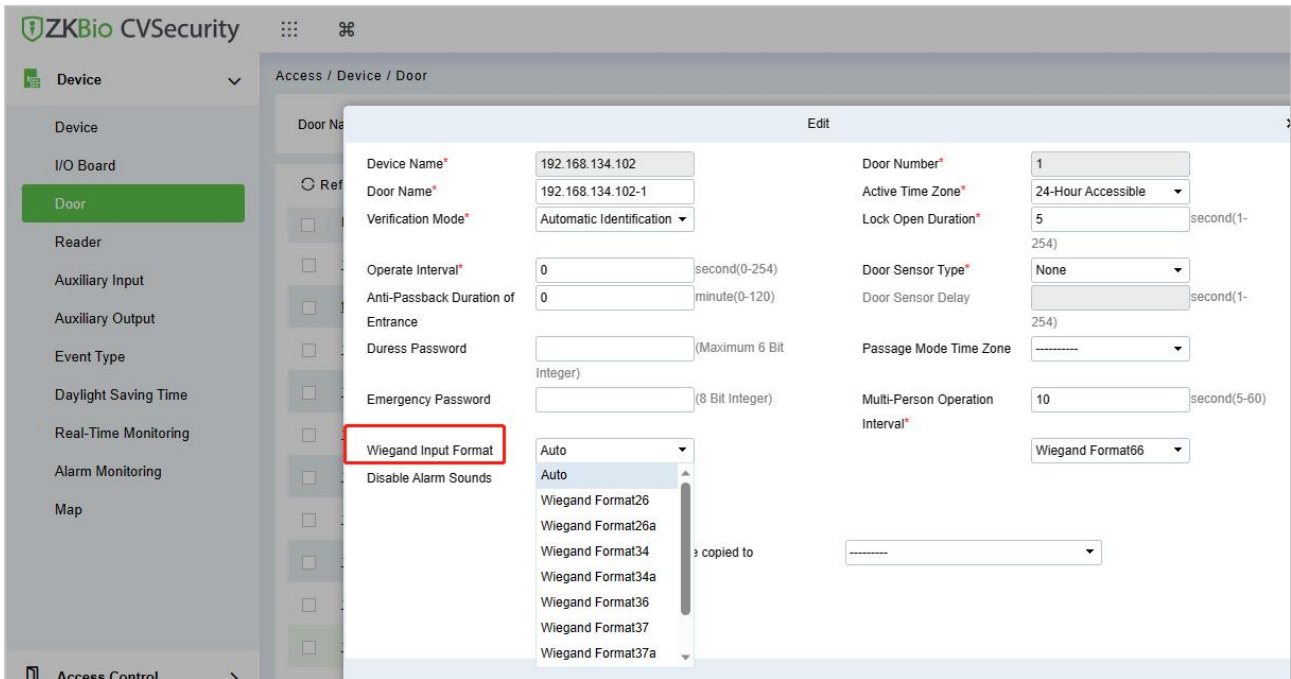


Figure 2- 68 Wiegand Format

2.2.2.2 Delete

Click **Personnel > Personnel Management > Card Management > Wiegand Format**, then select Delete.

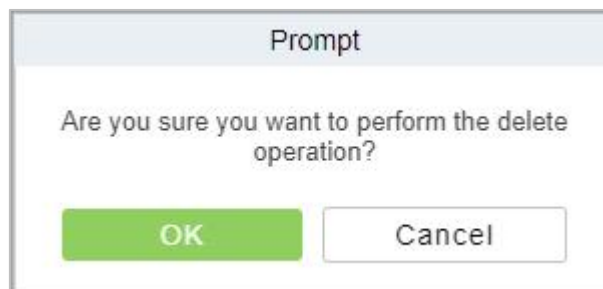
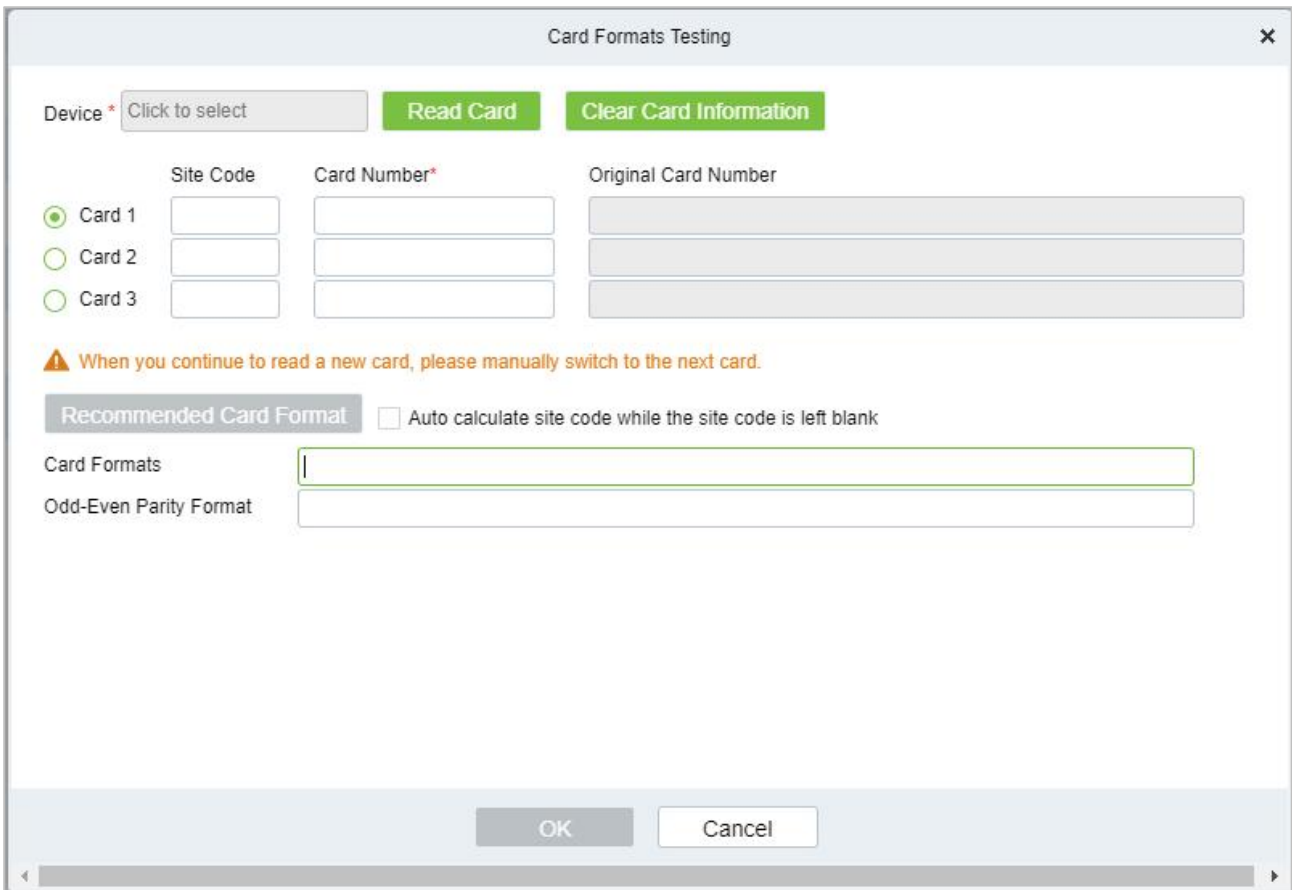


Figure 2- 69 Delete Wiegand Format

2.2.2.3 Card Formats Testing

Click **Personnel > Personnel Management > Card Management > Wiegand Format**, then select Card format Testing.



**Figure 2- 70 Card Formats Testing**

When the card number does not match with the one which is displayed on the system, the user can use the **Card Formats Testing function** to calibrate the Wiegand format. The page is explained as follows:

Select the device that supports the card format test function, and fill the card number and the site code (optional):

●Steps:

Click **Read Card** and swipe the card on the reader. The original card number will be displayed on the **Original Card Number** text box.

Click **Recommended Card Format** and the recommended Wiegand card format will be displayed below.

Click **Auto calculate site code while the site code is left blank** and the software will calculate the site code according to the card format and card number.

Click **OK** and the page will jump to the Wiegand format page to save the new Wiegand format.

**Note:** The card format testing function is only supported by few devices.

### 2.2.3 Issue Card Record

Click **Personnel > Personnel Management > Card Management**, then select Issue Card Record.

#### 2.2.3.1 Export

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel > Personnel Management > Card Management > Issue Card Record**, then select Export.

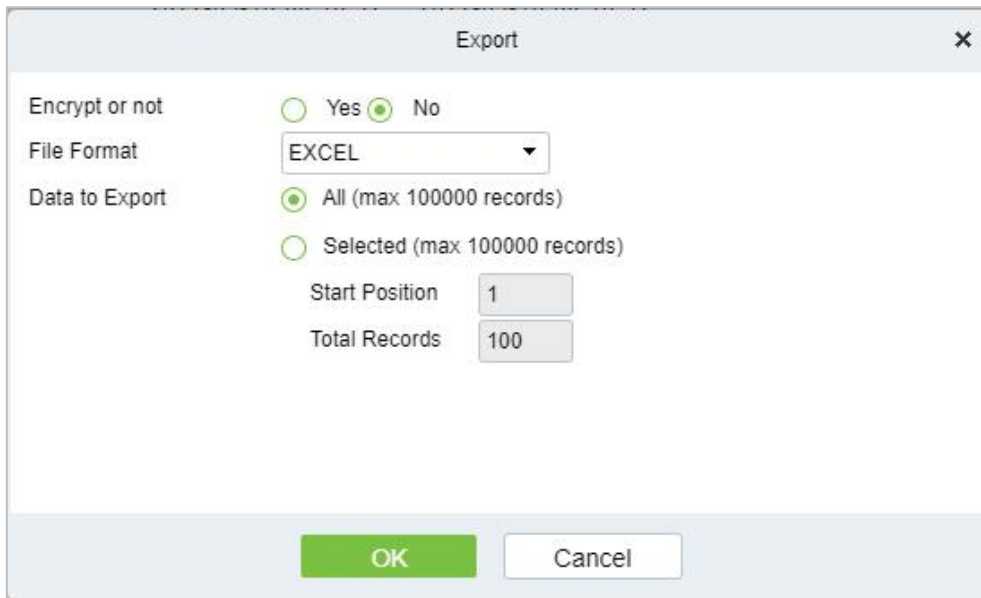
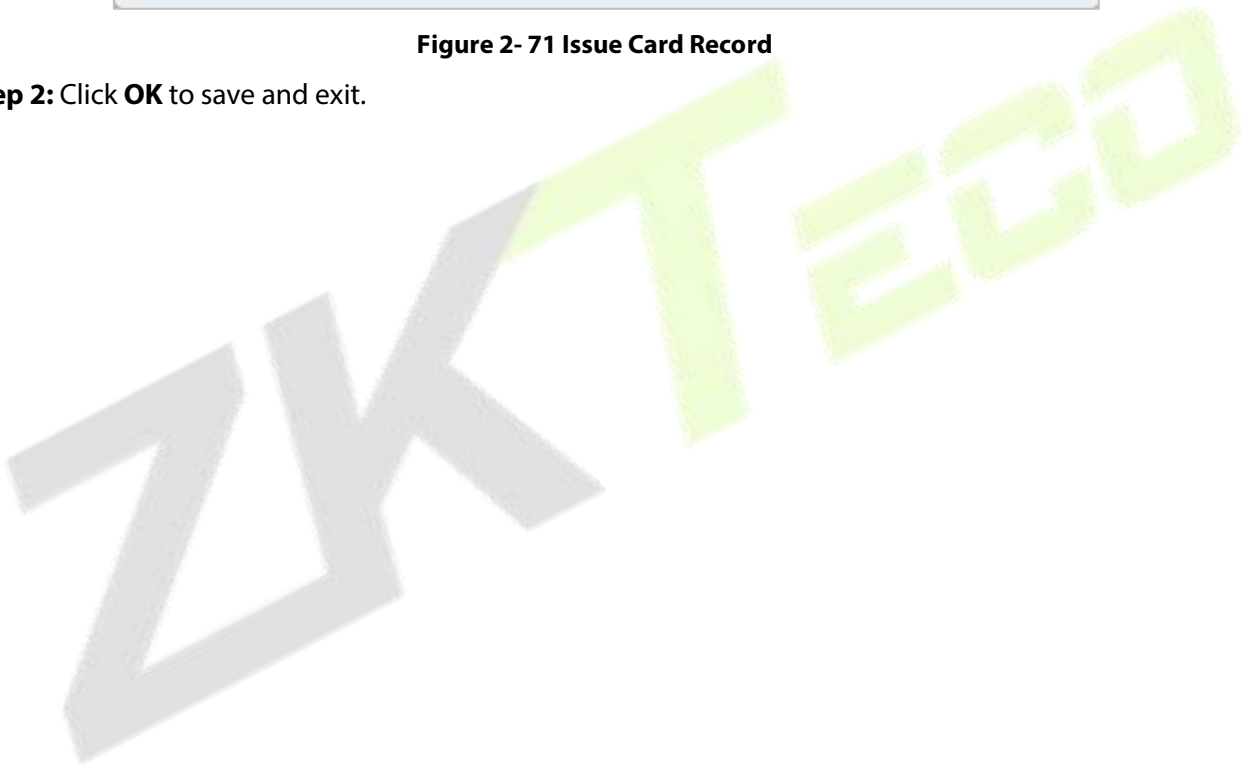


Figure 2- 71 Issue Card Record

**Step 2:** Click **OK** to save and exit.



## 3 Access Control

### 3.1 Operation Scenario

The **Access Control** module is used as the entry and exit management of pedestrians. Through the configuration of access control equipment and permission groups, unified management of entry and exit of people is realized. The most fundamental problem to solve is to control who uses what media to enter and exit which door at what time.

### 3.2 Operation Process

This section describes the configuration process of the **Access Control** module service.

The **Access Control** module service configuration process is shown in Figure 3-1.

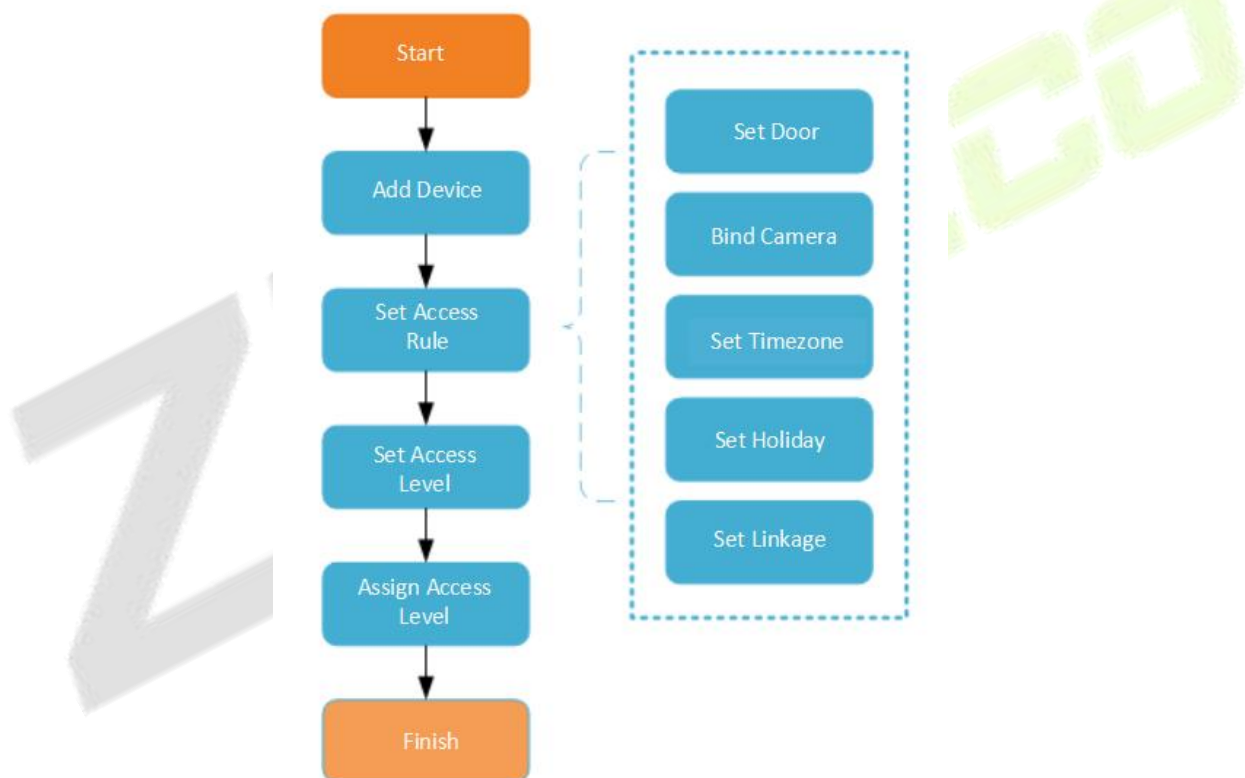


Figure 3- 1 Access Control Configuration Process

### 3.3 Access Device

#### 3.3.1 Device

Introduce the configuration Steps of searching and adding access control devices in ZKBio CVSecurity.

Through the search method, the access control devices that have been set to point to the server can be found, and the access control devices that have been searched can be added directly, which is convenient to operate.

●Preconditions:

1. Before adding the **Access Control** device, perform IP allocation settings.
2. The device needs to set the server address in advance before searching and adding. The configuration Steps for the server are as follows:
  - a. In the access control device that has been connected to the power supply and the network, set it directly on the device screen.
  - b. Select and click "Main Menu > Communication Equipment > Network Management Platform or Cloud Server Settings"
  - c. Set the IP address and port of the current server, that is, the IP address and port of the current ZKBio CVSecurity server and complete the configuration to the server.

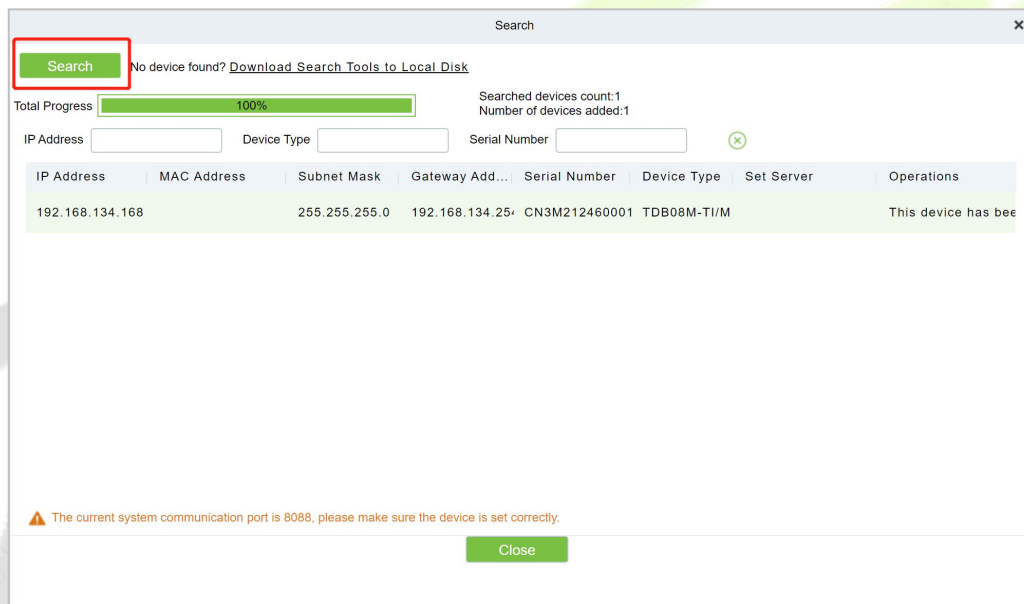
### 3.3.1.1 Add Devices (New)

#### ●Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, select "Device > Access Control Device".

**Step 2:** On the device interface, click the "search" button to pop up a search box.

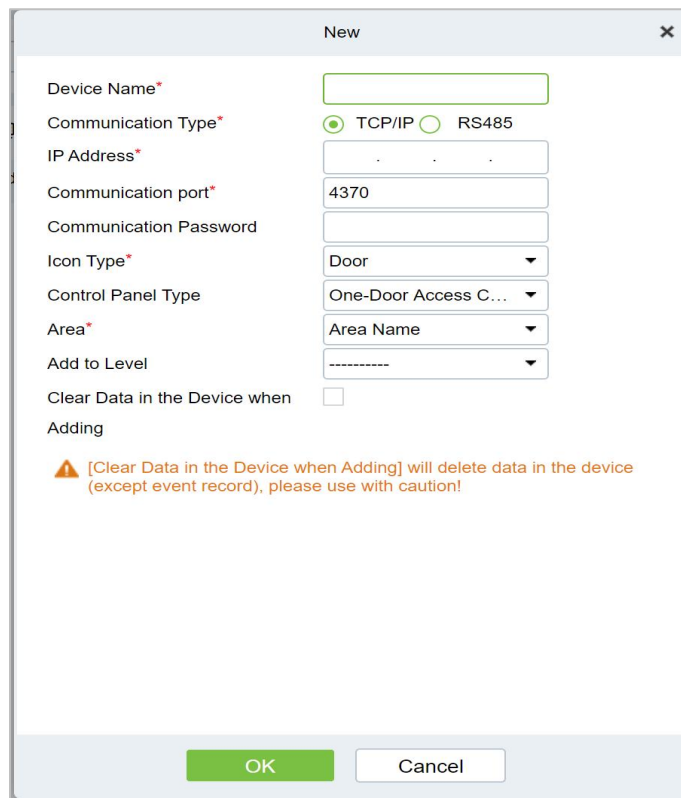
**Step 3:** Click "start **Search**" in the search box to display the **access control devices** that can be added, as shown in Figure 3-2.



**Figure 3- 2 Device Search and Add Interface**

**Step 4:** Optional: Modify the IP address of the **Access Control** device, click "**Modify IP Address**", the device will be restarted after modifying the IP address, and the IP address modification will be completed after the restart.

**Step 5:** For the searched access control devices, click the **Add** button in the operation bar to add the device; the device addition settings are shown in Figure 3-3, and the parameter settings are described in Table 3-3.



**Figure 3- 3 Device Add Interface**

| Parameter                           | How to set  |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Device Name                         | Customize the name of the device.   |
| New Server Address/Port             | Set the IP address and communication port of the system to be used (the default communication port is 8088).  |
| Communication Password              | Fill in the communication password of the device. If there is no password, you do not need to fill in it. You can add it only after the verification is successful.<br>For new factory equipment and initialized equipment, the communication password is empty.<br>In order to ensure that the device is not used by others, users can enter the device IP address through the web page to enter the background to customize the device verification password. |
| Icon Type                           | Select the icon display type of the real-time monitoring interface: Door, Parking Barrier, Flap Barrier.  |
| Area                                | Divide the device into regions and select the region to which the device belongs.   |
| Add To Permission Group             | The device is automatically added to the selected permission group.   |
| Delete Data From Device When Adding | Set whether the original <b>Access Control</b> data in the device will be automatically cleared after the device is added.  |

**Table 3- 1 Parameter setting**

**Step 6:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding access control devices. After the operation is completed, the device will restart, and the device will be added after the restart is complete.

**Step 7:** Click **Close** to close the device search and add interface.

### 3.3.1.2 Delete

Select device, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the device.

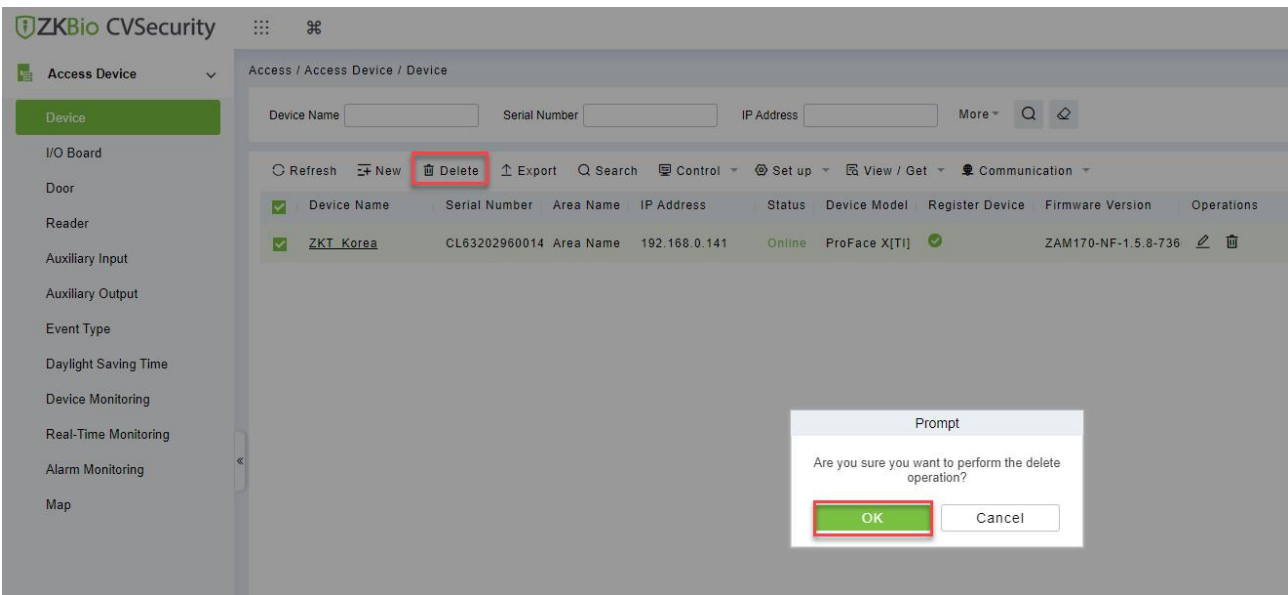


Figure 3- 4 Device Add Interface

### 3.3.1.3 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

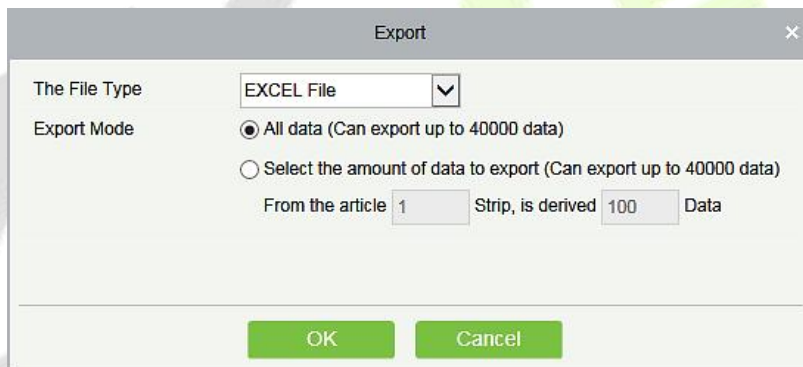


Figure 3- 5 Export

| ZKTECO Device  |               |           |                    |                         |                |                 |        |              |                 |                                  |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Device Name    | Serial Number | Area Name | Communication Type | Network Connection Mode | IP Address     | RS485 Parameter | Enable | Device Model | Register device | Firmware Version                 |
| 192.168.218.60 | 20100501999   | Area Name | HTTP               | Wired                   | 192.168.218.60 |                 | Enable | C3-400Pro    |                 | AC Ver 4.7.7.3033<br>Jun 16 2017 |

Figure 3- 6 Export

### 3.3.1.4 Control

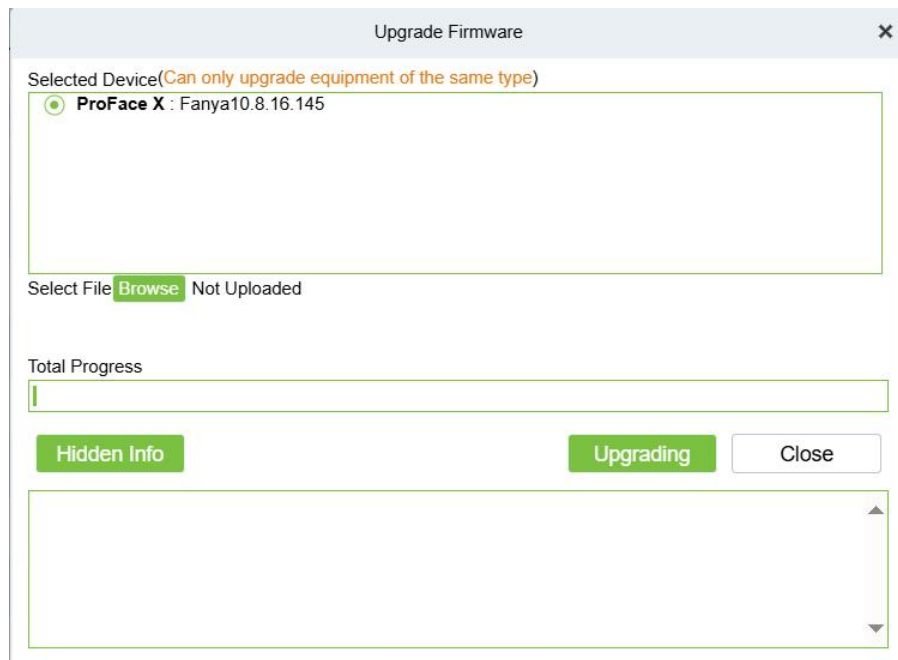
#### ● Clear Administration Permission

This function allows for the online removal of the administrator rights of the device, which is used to solve the problem of forgetting the administrator password.

#### ● Clear Command

The command to clear the cache

## ● Upgrade Firmware



Tick the device that needs to be upgraded, click **Upgrade firmware** to enter edit interface, then click **Browse** to select firmware upgrade file (named emfw.cfg) provided by Access software, and click **OK** to start upgrading.

**Note:** The user shall not upgrade firmware without authorization. Contact the distributor before upgrading firmware or upgrade it following the instructions of the distributor. Unauthorized upgrade may affect normal operations.

### ● Reboot Device

It will reboot the selected device.

### ● Synchronize Time

It will synchronize device time with server's current time.

### ● Disable/Enable

Select device, click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

### ● Synchronize All Data to Devices

Synchronize data of the system to the device. Select device, click **Synchronize All Data to Devices** and click **OK** to complete synchronization.

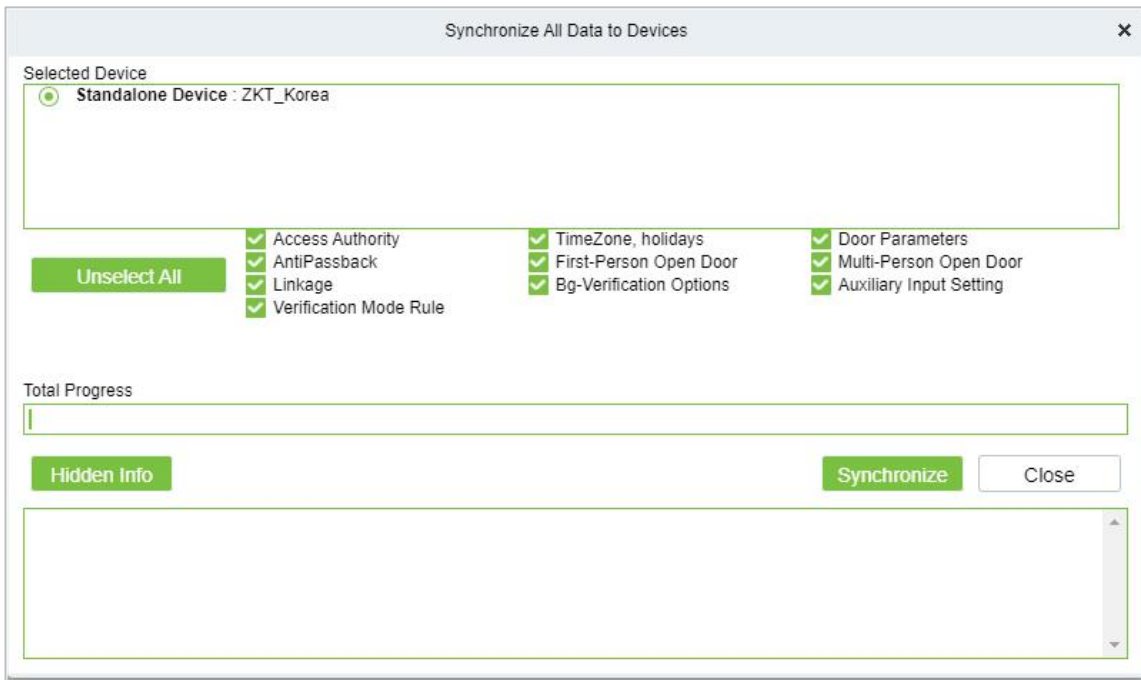


Figure 3- 7 Synchronize All Data to Devices

**Note:** **Synchronize All Data to Devices** will delete all data in the device first (except transactions), and thus download all settings again. Please keep the internet connection stable and avoid power down situations. If the device is working normally, please use this function with caution. Execute it in rare user situations to avoid impact on normal use of the device.

### 3.3.1.5 Set Up

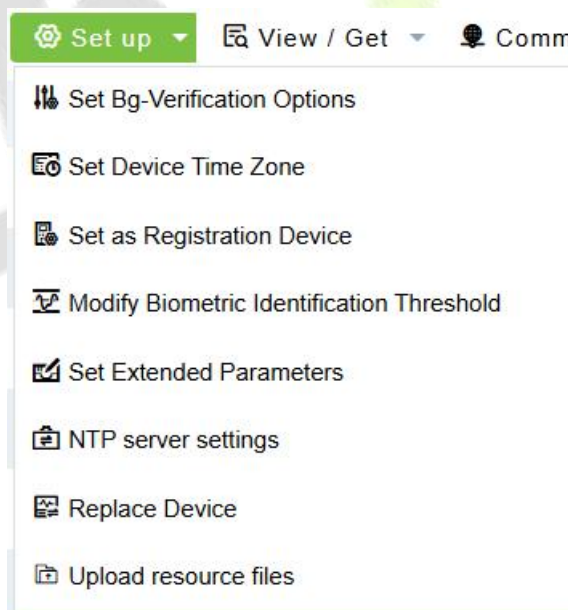
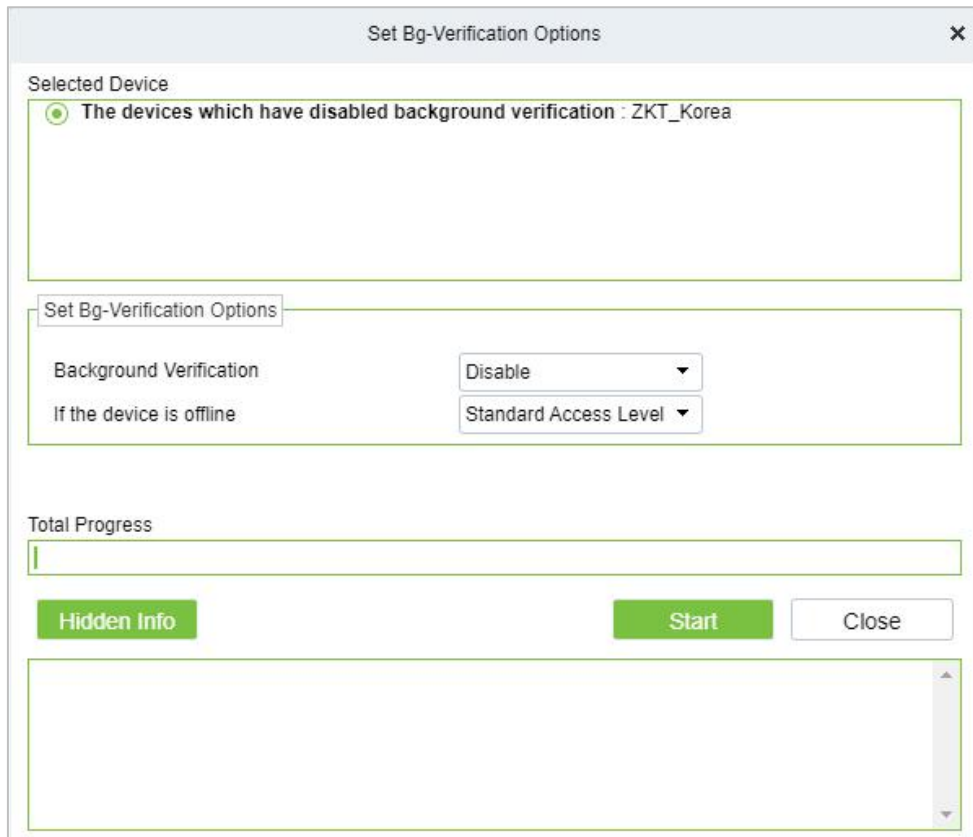


Figure 3- 8 Setup

● **Set Background Verification Parameters:**

Select the required online device; click **More > Set Bg-verification parameters.**



**Figure 3- 9 Set Bg-Verification Parameters**

**Background verification:** Enable or Disable Background verification function.

**If the device is offline:** If the controller is offline, the device has levels of Standard Access Level or Access Denied.

After setting parameters, click **Start** button to issue command to the device setting.

**Note:** If you need advanced access control functions, please enable Background verification, and issue the background verification parameters to the device.

● **Set Device Time Zone**

If the device supports the time zone settings and is not in the same time zone with the server, you need to set the time zone of the device. After setting the time zone, the device will automatically synchronize the time according to the time zone and server time.

Modify the Fingerprint Identification Threshold (Ensure that the access controller supports fingerprint function)



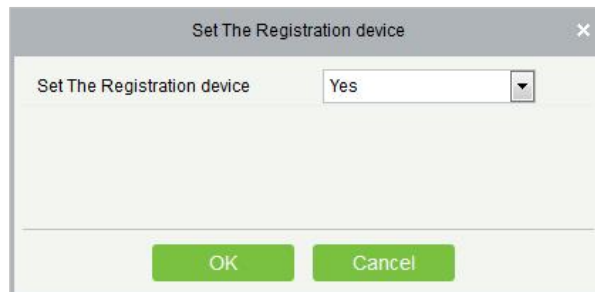
**Figure 3- 10 Modify the Fingerprint Identification Threshold**

Users can modify the fingerprint identification thresholds in the devices; it ranges from 35 to 70 and it is

55 by default. The system will read the thresholds from the device. Users can view the thresholds devices list. More than one device can be changed by using Batch operation function.

### ● Set the Registration device

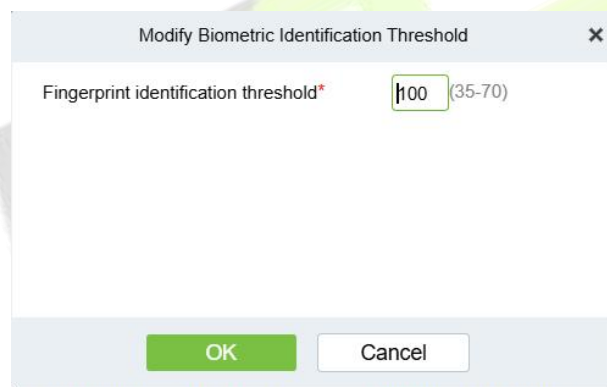
Set the registration device only when the standalone device's data such as personnel can automatically upload.



**Figure 3- 11 Set the Registration device**

### ● Modify Biometric Identification Threshold

Configure the fingerprint recognition threshold of the device online.



**Figure 3- 12 Biometric Threshold**

### ● Set Extended Parameters

The relevant parameters of the face recognition device can be configured online.

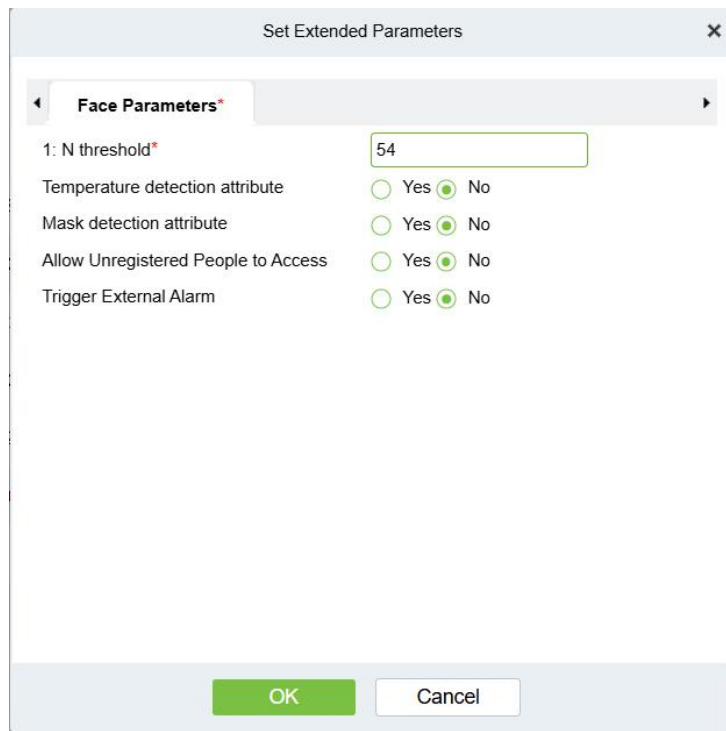


Figure 3- 13 Extended Parameters

If the device does not support face recognition or this parameter, the following prompt will pop up.

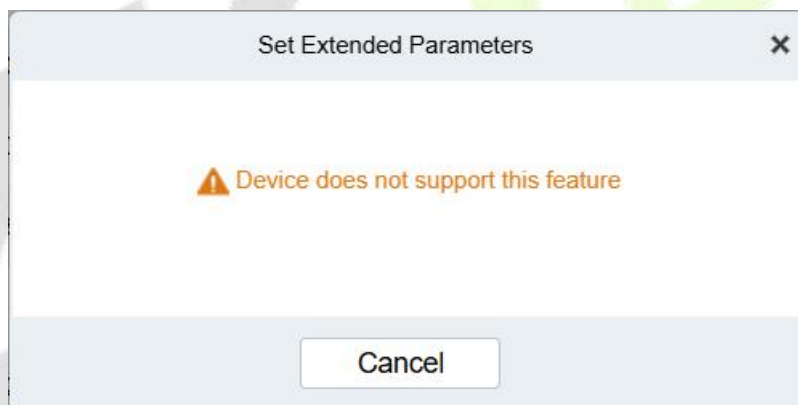


Figure 3- 14 Extended Parameters

● NTP Server Setting

If you need to ensure the accuracy and consistency of time synchronization, you can configure the NTP service here. This function is only supported by the controller .

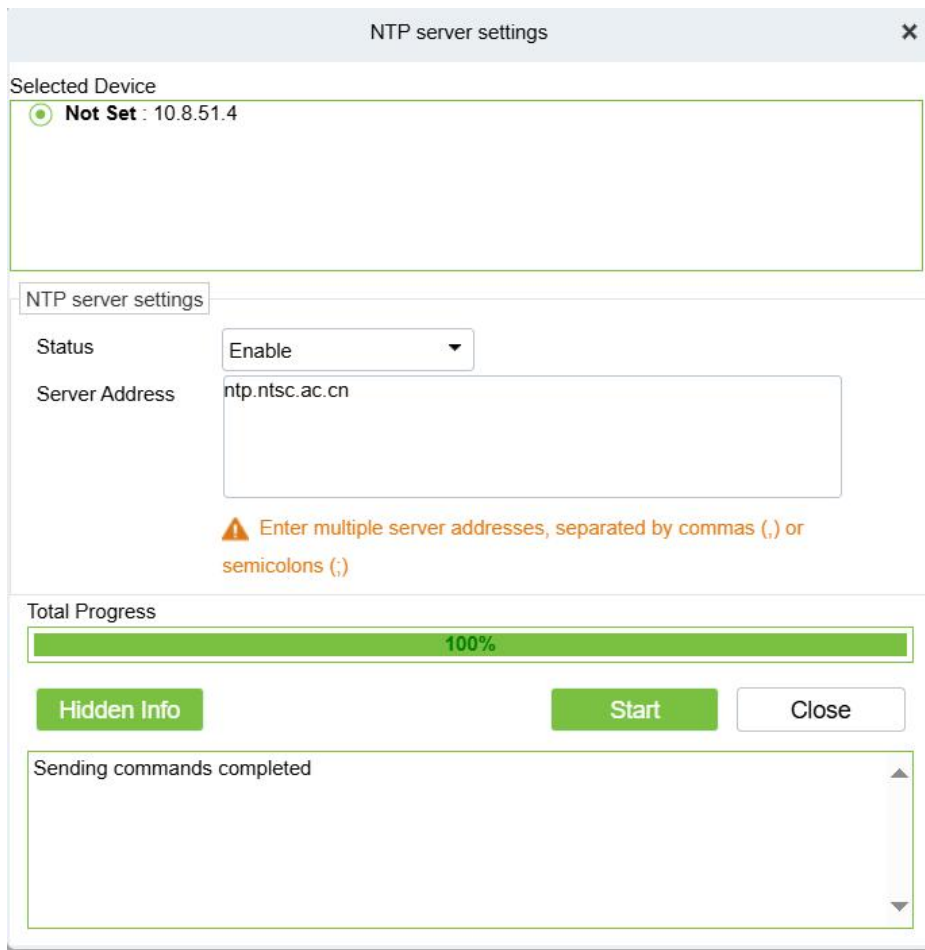


Figure 3- 15 NTP Server

● Device Replacement

Introduce the configuration Steps for replacing access control devices in ZKBio CVSecurity.

When a device is unavailable, we can quickly add a new device and synchronize all configurations from faulty device to the new device by simply entering the serial number of the replaced device.

**Step 1:** Go to the **Access > Access Device**, select the unavailable device.

| Device Name | Serial Number | Area Name | IP Address  | Status  | Device Model | Register Device | Firmware Version   | Operations |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------|
| 10.8.14.206 | COKC22026004  | Area 1    | 10.8.14.206 | Offline | SpeedFace M4 |                 | ZAM180-NF50VA-Ver3 |            |

Figure 3- 16 Select the Unavailable Device

**Step2:** Click **Set up > Replace Device**.

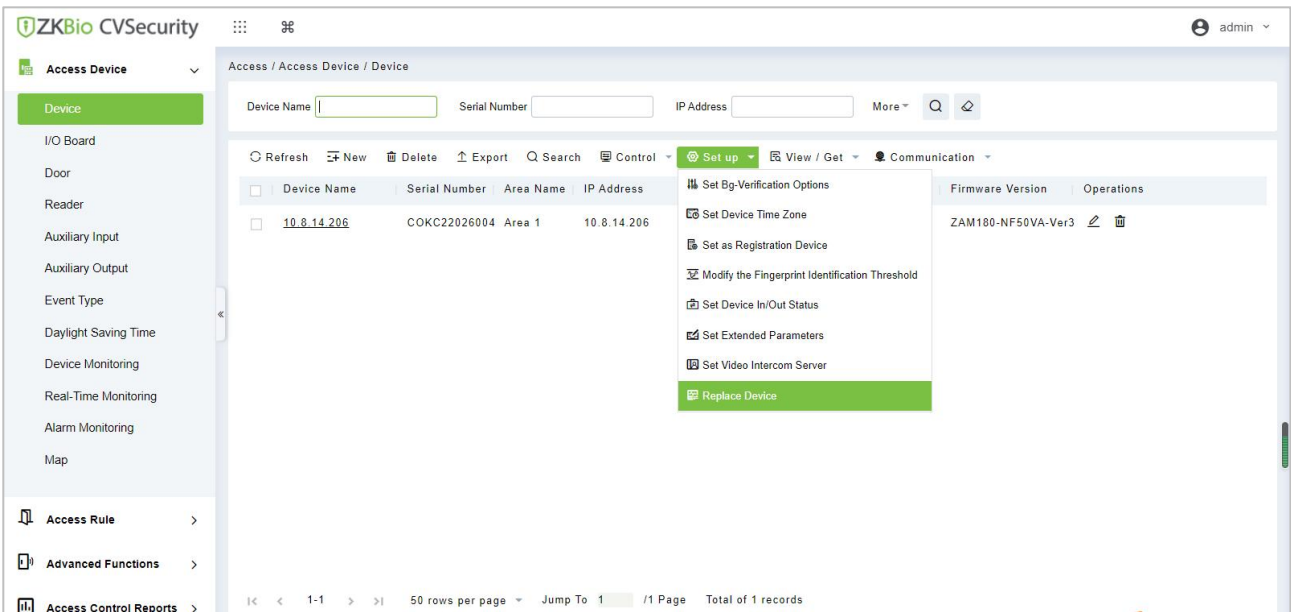


Figure 3- 17 Replace Device

Step 3: Enter the serial number of the new device, then click OK.

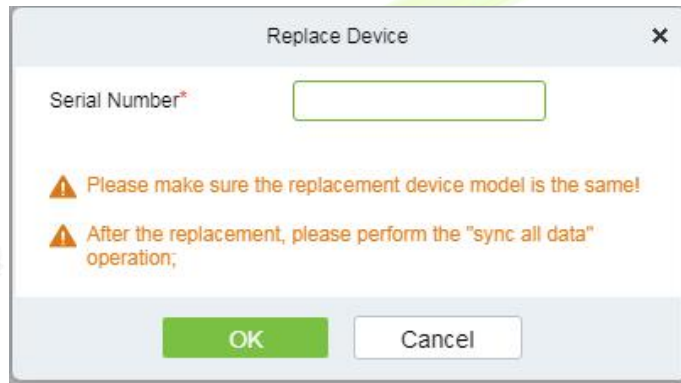


Figure 3- 18 Input the Serial Number

Step 4: Select the new device, then click Control > Enable.

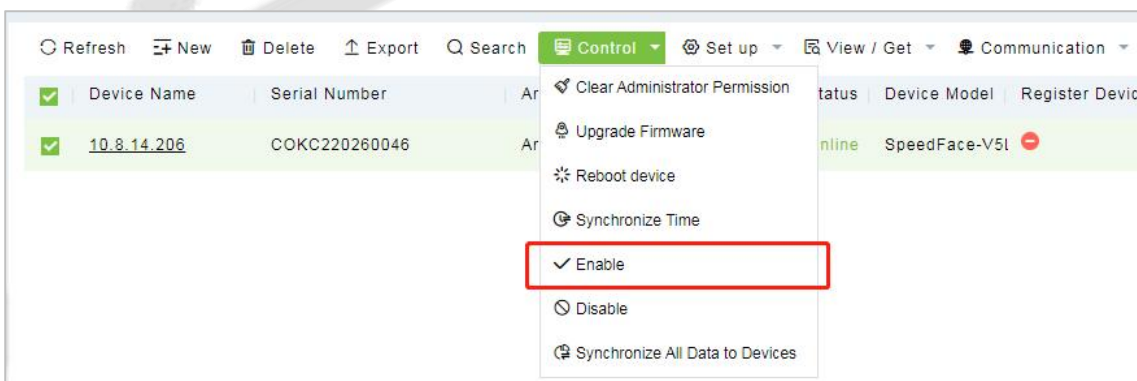


Figure 3- 19 Enable Device

Step 5: Select the new device, then click Control > Synchronize All Data to Device.

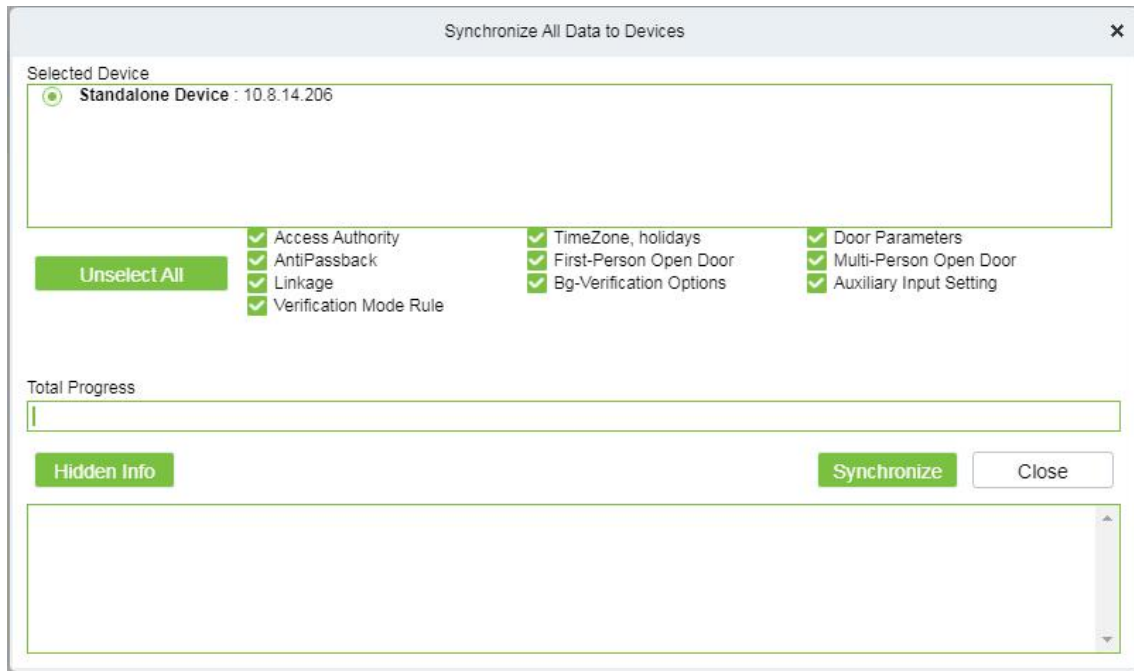


Figure 3- 20 Synchronize Device Data

Note:

1. Before replacement, the device needs to configure the server address and IP allocation.
2. Make sure that the replacement device model is the same.
3. After the replacement, please perform the "sync all data" operation.

● Upload Resource File

Upload advertising resources such as device carousel images online. This function is only supported by some Android devices.

3.3.1.6 View/ Get

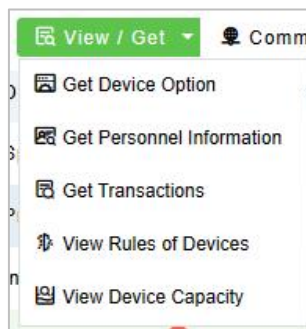


Figure 3- 21 View/Get

● Get Device Option

It gets the common parameters of the device. For example, get the firmware version after the device is updated.

● Get Personnel Information

Renew the current number of personnel, fingerprints, finger vein and face templates in the device. The final value will be displayed in the device list.

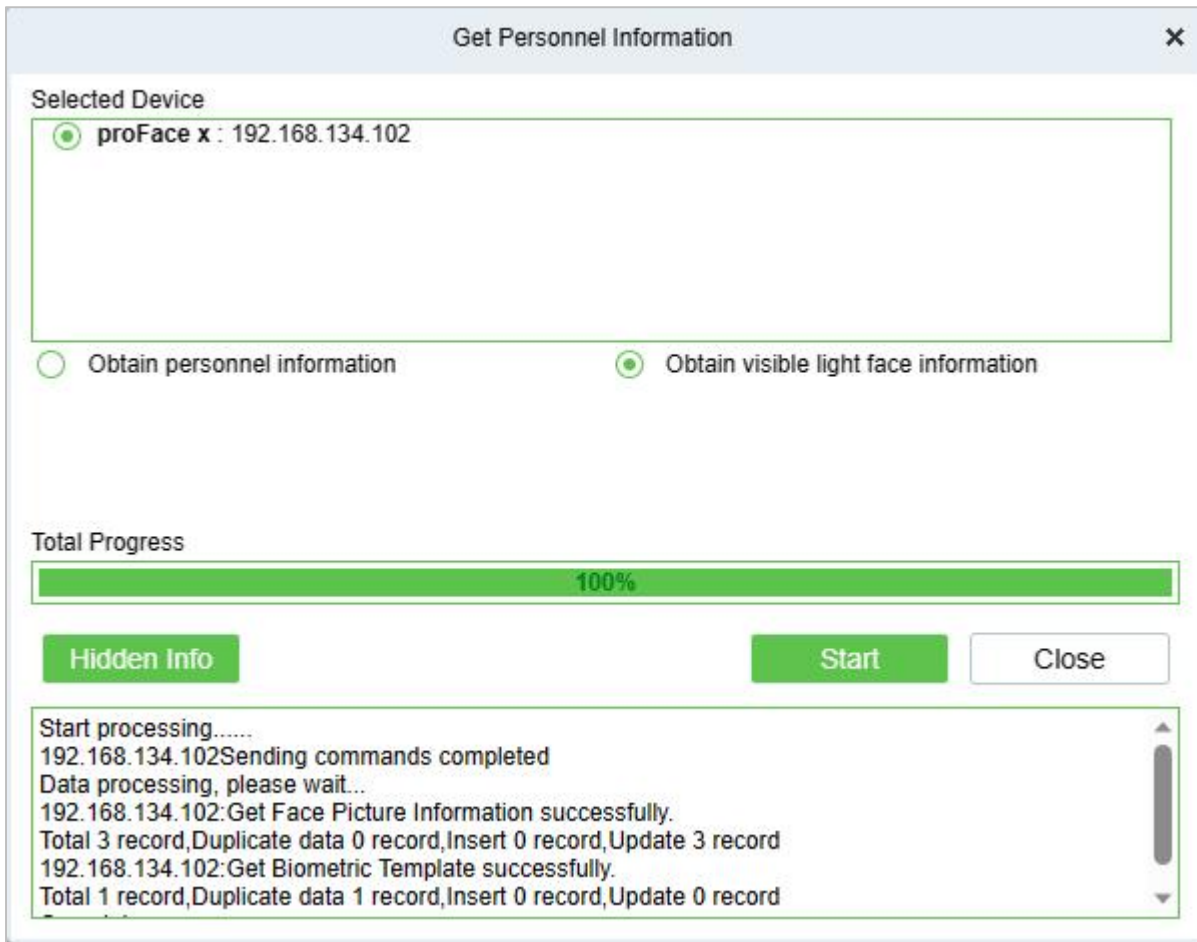


Figure 3- 22 Get Personnel Information

● **Get Transactions**

Get transactions from the device into the system. Two options are provided for this operation: Get New Transactions and Get All Transactions.

■ **Get New Transactions**

The system only gets new transactions since the last collected and recorded transaction. Repeated transactions will not be rewritten.

■ **Get All Transactions**

The system will get transactions again. Repeated entries will not be shown twice.

When the network status is healthy and the communication between the system and device is normal, the system will acquire transactions of the device in real-time and save them into the system database. However, when the network is interrupted or communication is interrupted for any reasons, and the transactions of the device have not been uploaded into the system in real-time, Get Transactions can be used to manually acquire transactions of the device. In addition, the system, by default, will automatically acquire transactions of the device at 00:00 on each day.

**Note:** Access controller can store up to 100 thousand of transactions. When transactions exceed this number, the device will automatically delete the oldest stored transactions (deletes 10 thousand transactions by default).

● **View Rules of Devices**

Shows the Access rules in the device.

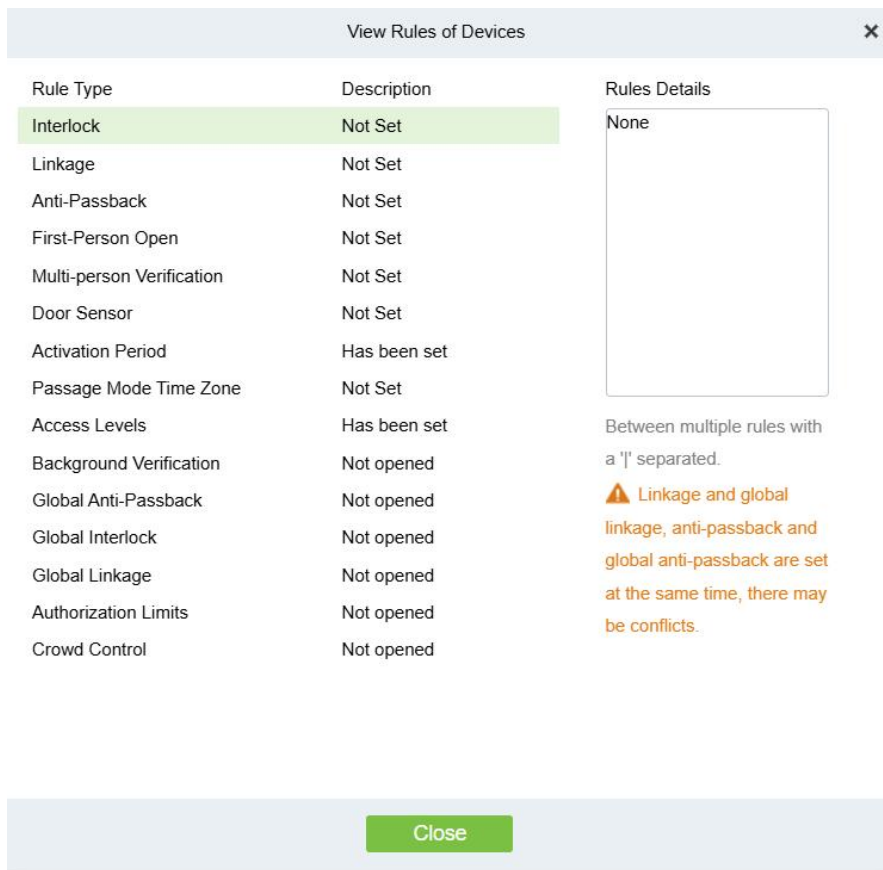


Figure 3- 23 View rules of device

● View Device Capacity

It checks the capacity of personnel’s biometric details in the device.

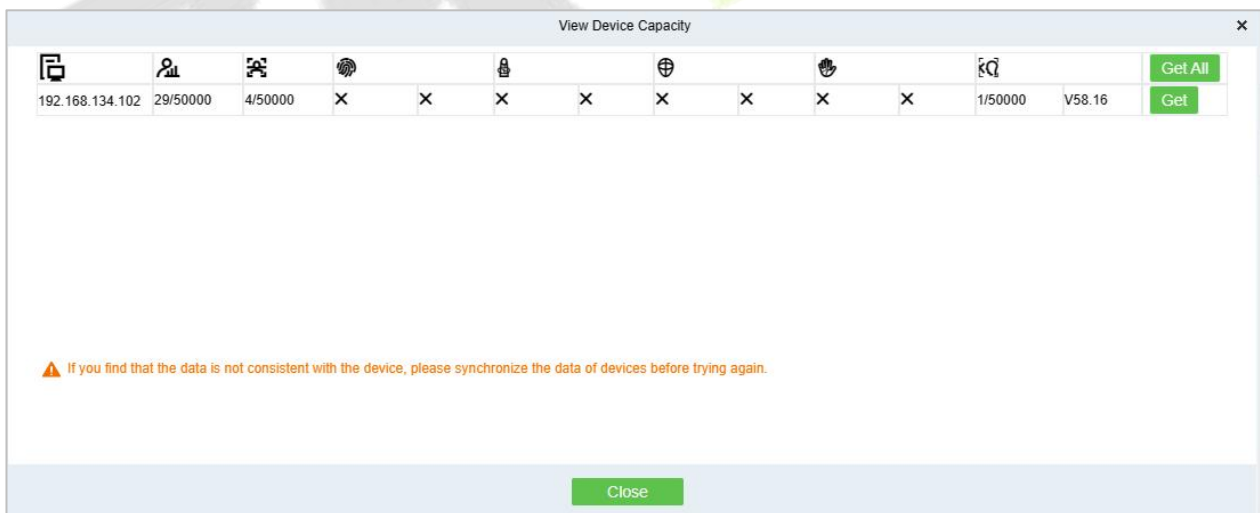
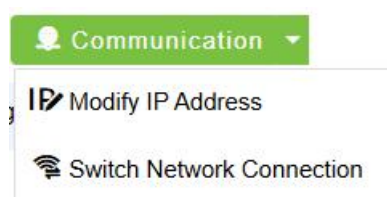


Figure 3- 24 View device capacity

3.3.1.7 Communication



### ● Modify IP Address

Select a device and click **Modify IP address** to open the modification interface. It will obtain a real-time network gateway and subnet mask from the device. (Failed to do so, you cannot modify the IP address). Then enter a new IP address, gateway, and subnet mask. Click **OK** to save and quit. This function is the similar as Modify IP Address Function in Device.

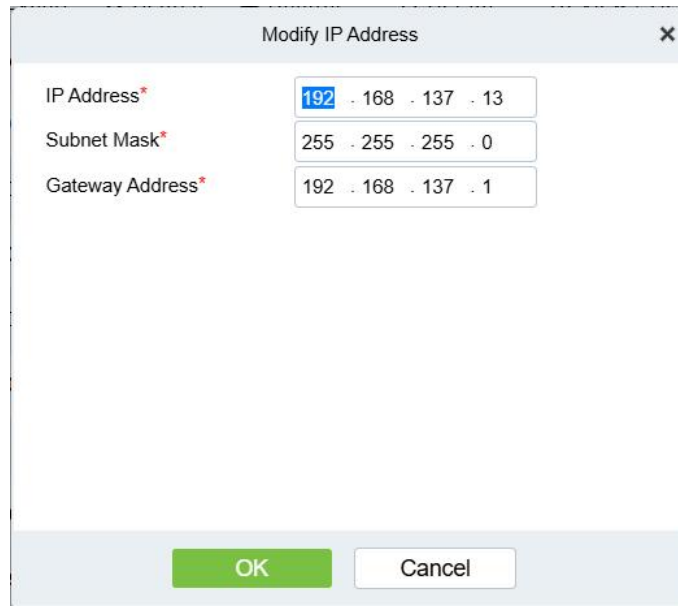


Figure 3- 25 Modify IP Address

### ● Switch Network Connection

This function is applicable to InBio5 series access control panels, which is used to switch among different network connection modes of the control panel.

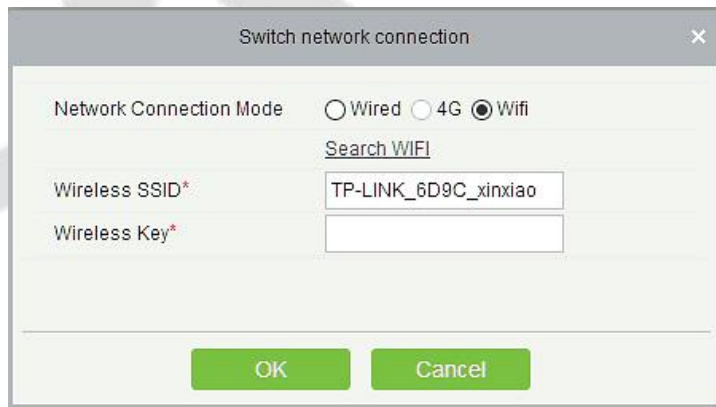


Figure 3- 26 Switch network connection

This function is applicable to InBio5 series access control panels, which is used to switch among different network connection modes of the control panel.

## 3.3.2 I/O Board

By connecting to the I/O expansion board(EX0808), the number of doors can be expanded, and more doors can be operated.

### Preconditions

Log in to the system with the current account and have the authority.

### Function Usage Scenarios

The current area needs to be expanded with more doors.

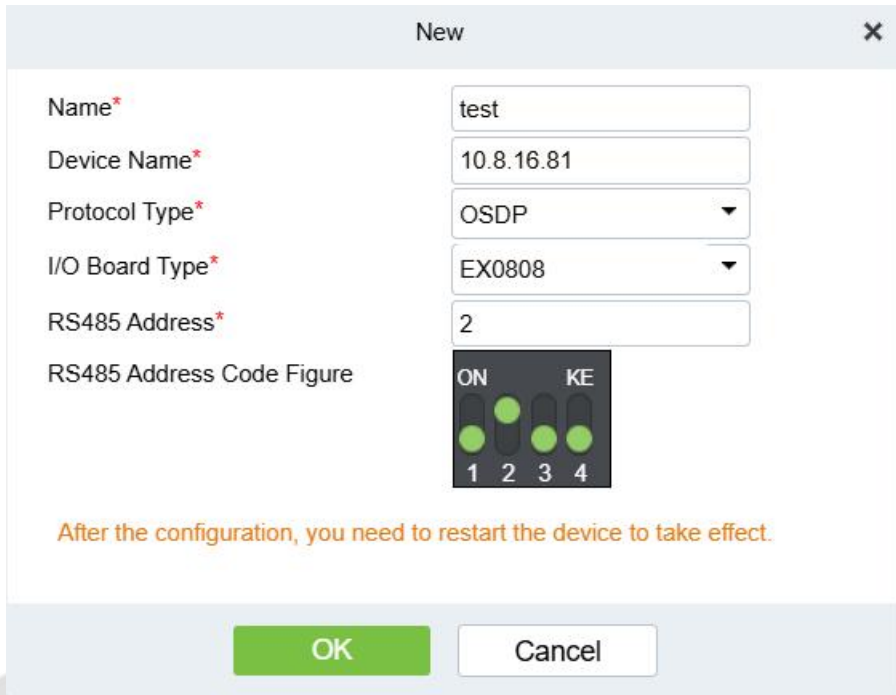
**Using Trigger Result**

One device can control multiple doors.

**Operation Steps:**

Click **[Access Control Device] > [I/O Expansion Board] > [Add]** to display the new page.

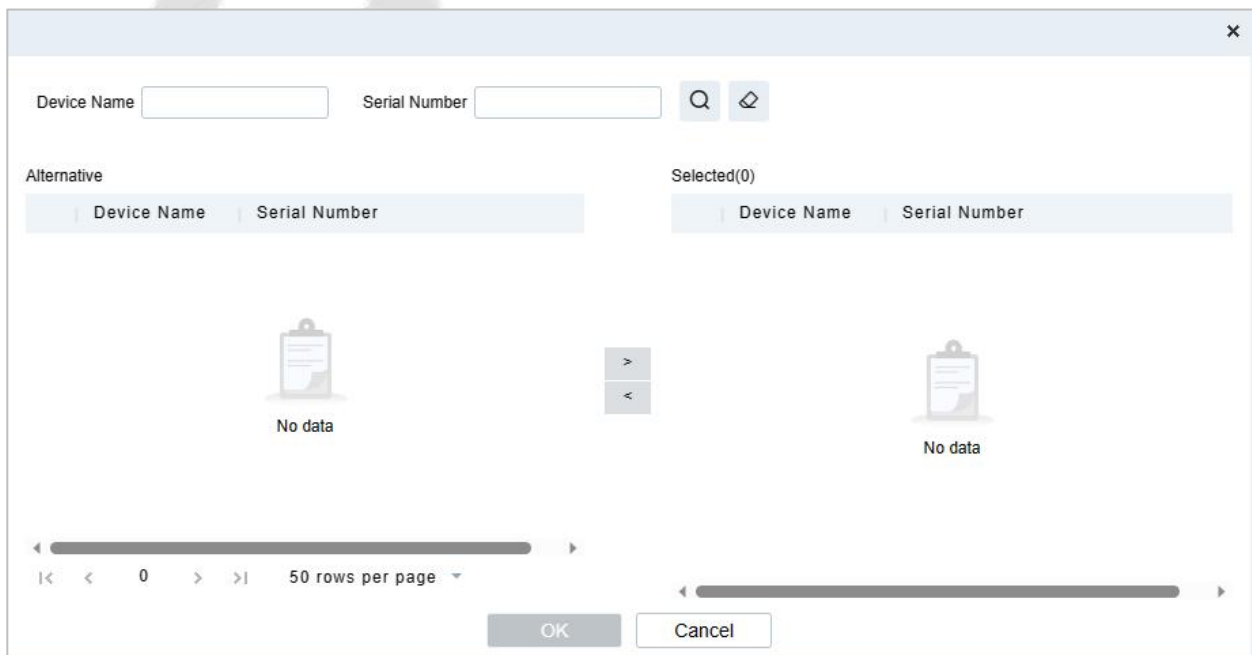
Enter each parameter, click **[OK]** to save the expansion board.



**Figure 3- 27 I/O Board**

**Name:** I/O Board Name

**Device Name:** Select the controller device that needs to be connected to the I/O board.



**Figure 3- 28 Select Device**

**Protocol Type:** Select the communication protocol for the I/O connection; filter the protocol according

to the device selected previously. For example, since Inbio Pro plus supports RS485 and OSDP, options for RS485 and OSDP will appear.

**I/O Board Type:** Select EX0808.

**RS485 Address:** RS485 DIP Switch Address.You can enter the numbers(1-15) or click on the coding diagram below to fill it in automatically.

### 3.3.3 Door

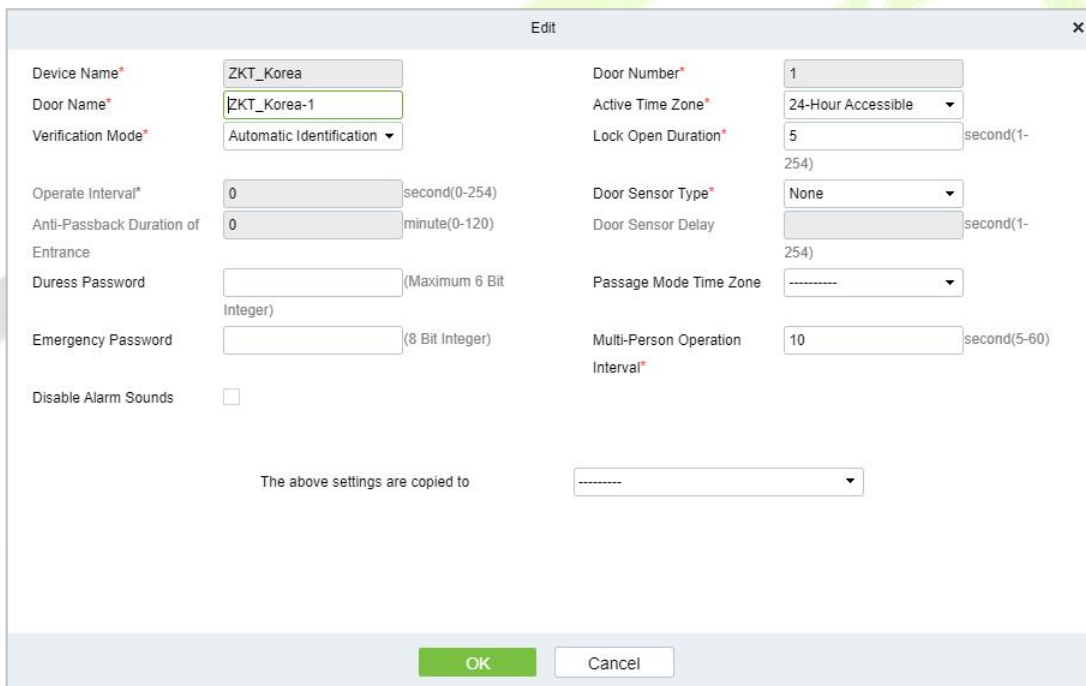
The setting of door parameters affects the logic judgment of access control verification. The door parameters support different parameter settings according to the different firmware of the device. The following describes the configuration Steps of the door parameters with one of the devices.

● **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, select “**Devices > Door**”.

**Step 2:** In the management interface of the door, click the **Edit** button in the door operation bar to pop up the door parameter setting box.

**Step 3:** In the door parameter setting interface, fill in the corresponding parameters according to the addition requirements, as shown in figure below, please refer to Table 3-2 for parameter filling instructions.



**Figure 3- 29 Setting Door Parameters**

● **Instructions:**

The firmware of different access control devices supports different door parameters. Set the parameters based on the actual door parameter page. Table 3-4 describes the parameter set for different devices.

| Parameter               | Setup Instructions  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Device Name/Door Number | The basic information about the door is displayed. Reset is not supported.  |
| Name of the Door        | Customize the name of the door for easy memory.   |
| Gate Validity Period    | Select a period when the gate is valid.<br>Not within the validity period of this door, even if the person has the permission |

| Parameter                                      | Setup Instructions   |
|--|--|
|  | of this door, can not open the door inside.  |
| Verify The Way                                 | Set this parameter to the authentication mode supported by the device.   |
| Lock Drive Duration                            | Set the time range for unlocking a lock after authentication. For example, if the value is set to 5 seconds, the door can be opened within 5 seconds after the verification. If the door is not opened after 5 seconds, the door will be automatically locked, and the door can be opened only after the verification.                   |
| Wiegand Format                                 | Select a Wiegand card format that can be recognized by the door's Wiegand reader.<br>The card format and Settings are different, will not open the door. There are 9 built-in formats in the software, the default is automatic matching wiegand card format, automatic matching can identify a variety of built-in wiegand card format. |
| Exit Button State                              | Set the status of the door exit button, locked, not locked. Lock: the door lock does not open after pressing the exit button. Not locked: the door lock is opened after pressing the exit button.  |
| The Exit Button Is Delayed                     | When the exit button is set to lock, set the delay time of the exit button, that is, the delay time of the inspection door alarm after the exit button is locked.  |
| Operation Interval                             | Set the interval for Access Control Operation.   |
| Effective Time of Exit Button                  | Select the time period for setting the exit button.  |
| Magnetic Door Type                             | Option No, normally open, normally closed, default none.   |
| Behind Closed Doors to Lock                    | Set whether to lock back after the door is closed.   |
| Magnetic Door Delay                            | Set the delay for checking the door status sensor after the door is opened. When the door is not "normally open", if it is open, it will start timing, alarm will start after the door magnetic delay time, and alarm will be canceled when the door is closed.  |
| Duration Of Anti-Passback Entry                | Set a limit on how long an intelligent entry can take.   |
| Stress The Password                            | Set up the user to open the door when the threat password. An alarm will be generated when the coerced code opens the door.  |
| Emergency Code                                 | Set a password for the user to use in an emergency. The password is used by the administrator and is valid in any period and authentication mode.  |
| The Door Is Normally Open                      | Select the time when this door is normally open.   |
| Extended Time of Passage                       | Set on the basis of the original opening time, additional limit time. Common terms for participants, inconvenient personnel to extend the passage time.  |
| Open Time Delay                                | Set the time for waiting for the delayed door opening after authentication.  |
| Disable Alarm Reminder                         | If alarm event occurs on this door, whether there will be alarm sound reminder on the real-time monitoring interface.  |
| Allow Superuser Access When the Door Is Locked | Set whether the super user can verify access when the door is locked.  |
| The Above Settings Are Copied To               | To set the door parameters above, the options are all doors of the current device, all doors of all devices.   |

**Table 3- 2 Door Parameters**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of the door parameters

**Remote Opening/Closing:** It can control one door or all doors.

To control a single door, right click over it, and click **Remote Opening/ Closing** in the pop-up dialog box. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/ Closing** behind Current All.

In remote opening, user can define the door opening duration (The default is 15s). You can select **Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** to enable the intraday door passage mode time zones, or set the door to Normal Open, then the door will not be limited to any time zones (open for 24 hours).

To close a door, select **Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** first, to avoid enabling other normal open time zones to open the door, and then select **Remote Closing**.

**Note:** If **Remote Opening /Closing** fails, check whether the devices are disconnected or not. If disconnected, check the network.

**Cancel the alarm:** Once an alarming door is displayed on the interface, the alarm sound will be played. Alarm cancellation can be done for single door and all doors. To control a single door, move the cursor over the door icon, a menu will pop-up, then click **Remote Opening/Closing** in the menu. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/Closing** behind Current All.

**Note:** If **Cancel the alarm** fails, check if any devices are disconnected. If found disconnected, check the network.

**Remote Normally Open:** It will set the device as normal open by remote.

**Activate Lockdown:** It will remotely set the door status to locked status. After this, the door wouldn't receive any operations, such as card reading and remote operations. This function is supported only by certain devices.

**Deactivate Lockdown:** It will unlock a locked door. This function is supported only by certain devices.

### 3.3.4 Reader

This section describes the Step configuration of the Reader binding camera in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### ● Operation Scenario:


After the camera is bound, if related Settings are set during linkage, the Reader will perform video linkage (capture) once corresponding events occur. The Reader bind cameras in the same way. This section uses the Reader as an example to describe how to bind cameras.

#### ● The Premise Conditions:

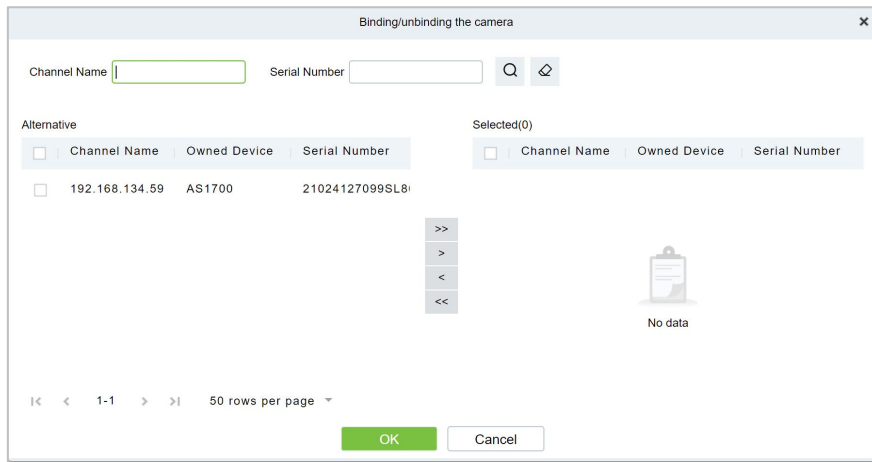
A video camera has been added in the **Smart Video Surveillance** module.

#### ● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the access Control module, choose "**Device > Reader**".

**Step 2:** In the Operation column of the corresponding Reader, click . The bind/unbind camera page is displayed.

**Step 3:** On the Select Reader screen, set the Reader as required, as shown in figure below



**Figure 3- 30 Binding A Camera**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to bind the camera.

| Parameter          | How to set   |
|--------------------|--|
| Device Name        | Customize the name of the device.  |
| Reader Name        | Display the reader’s name of the device  |
| Communication Type | Wiegand/RS485, Wiegand, RS485, and Disabled are available. When a communication type is selected, the reader interface on the device will receive data (including card and fingerprint data) for the specified type only |
| In/Out             | Display the in/out of the device.  |
| Bound Camera       | connecting the camera with the reader.   |
| Owning Camera      | The device is automatically added to the selected permission group.  |

**Table 3- 3 Reader Parameters**

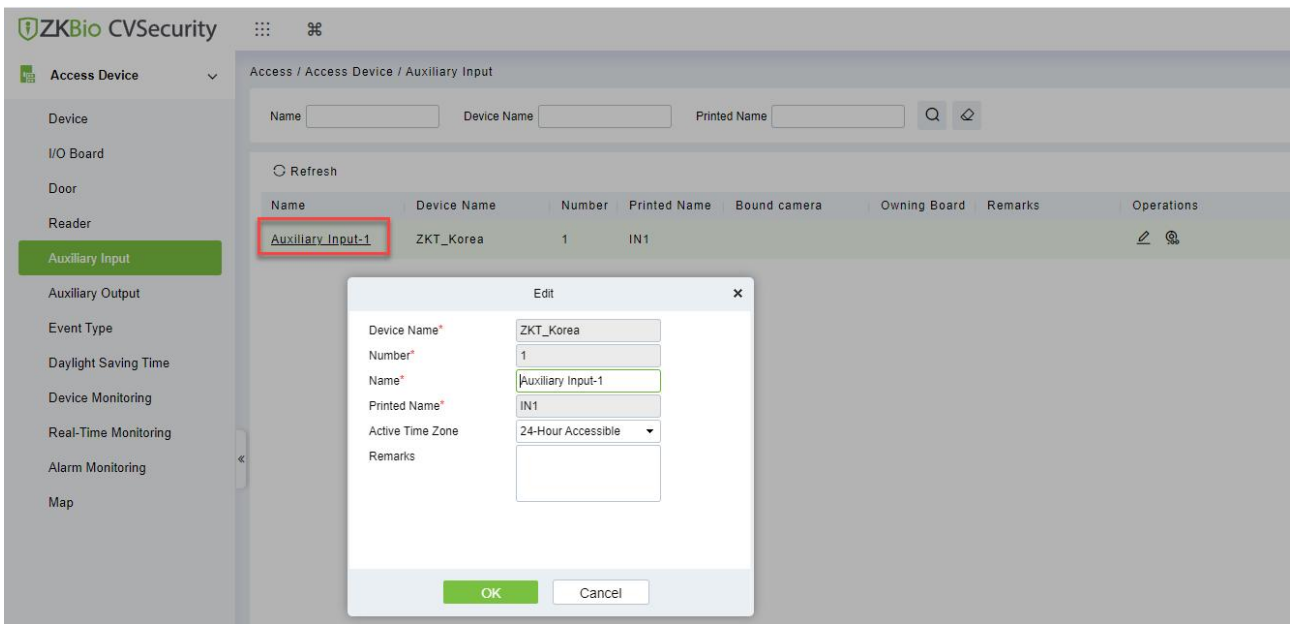
### 3.3.5 Auxiliary Input

It is mainly used to connect to the devices, such as the infrared sensors or smog sensors.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** Click **Access Device > Auxiliary Input** on the Action Menu, to access below shown interface.

**Step 2:** Click on Name or **Edit** to modify the parameters as shown below:



**Figure 3- 31 Auxiliary input**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to save the name and remark and exit.

● Bind/Unbind Camera:



Through this option, the reader can be connected to the cameras, and the system will make a video linkage (pop-up videos, videos or screenshots) once there is a corresponding event occurs. For this, the interaction setting in Linkage or in Global Linkage should be done before. For details, please refer to Reader: Bind/Unbind Camera.

🔔 **Note:** An auxiliary input point can bind more than one channel.

| Parameter     | How to set  |
|---------------|---|
| Device Name   | Customize the name of the device.                                   |
| Name          | Display the name of the device                                      |
| Number        | Customize the name of the device                                    |
| Printed Name  | Display the input number of the device.                             |
| Bound Camera  | connecting the camera with the reader.                              |
| Owning Camera | The device is automatically added to the selected permission group. |

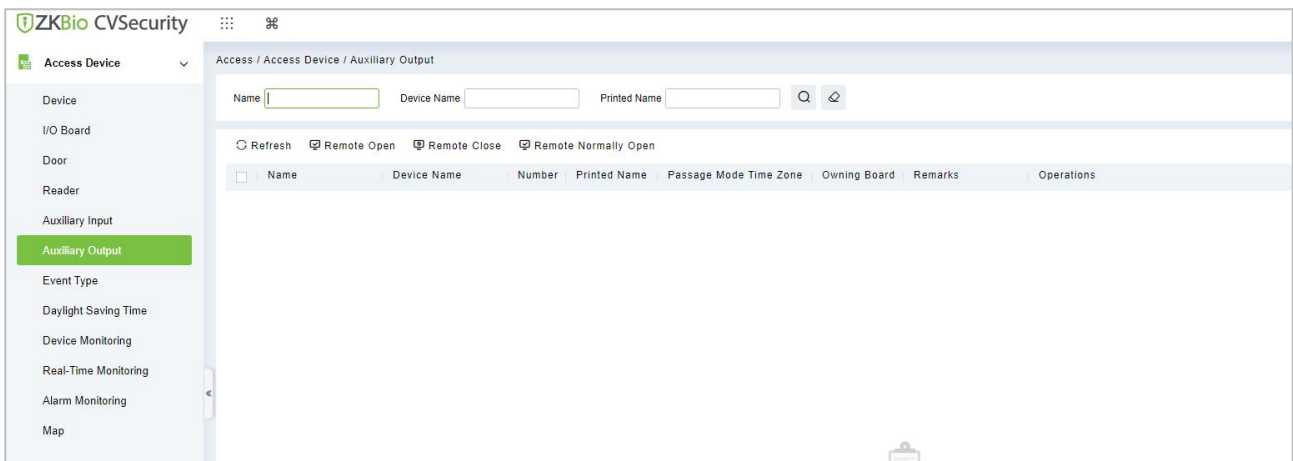
**Table 3- 4 Auxiliary Input Parameters**

### 3.3.6 Auxiliary Output

It is mainly related to alarm and is used when linkage is working.

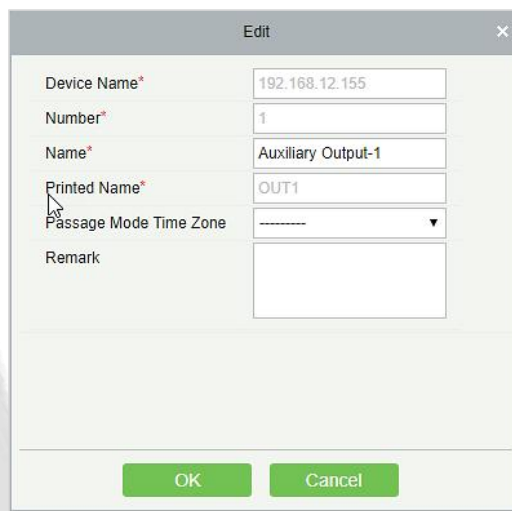
● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** Click **Access Device > Auxiliary Output** on the Action Menu to access the following interface:



**Figure 3- 32 Auxiliary Output**

**Step 2:** Click **Edit** to modify the parameters.



**Figure 3- 33 Auxiliary Output Edit**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to save the name and remark and exit.

### 3.3.6.1 Remote Opening/Closing

It can control one door or all doors.

To control a single door, right click over it, and click **Remote Opening/ Closing** in the pop-up dialog box. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/ Closing** behind Current All.

### 3.3.6.2 Remote Normally Open

It will set the device as normal open by remote.

| Parameter     | How to set  |
|---------------|---|
| Device Name   | Customize the name of the device.                                   |
| Name          | Display the name of the device                                      |
| Number        | Customize the name of the device                                    |
| Printed Name  | Display the input number of the device.                             |
| Bound Camera  | connecting the camera with the reader.                              |
| Owning Camera | The device is automatically added to the selected permission group. |

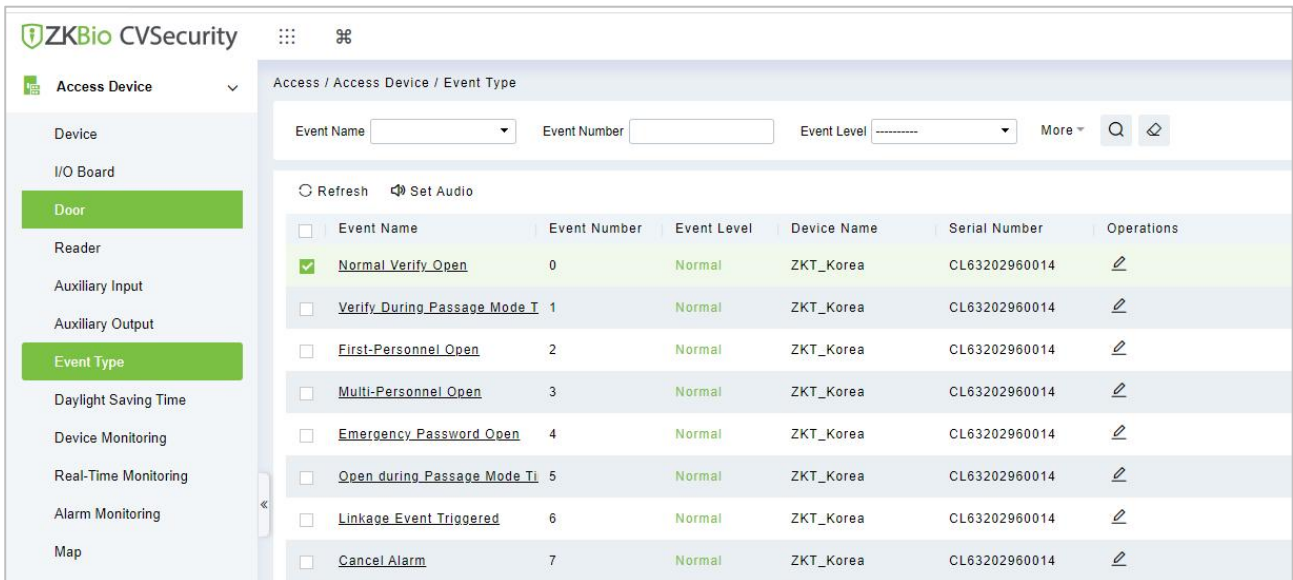
**Table 3- 5 Remote Normally Open Parameter**

### 3.3.7 Event Type

It will display the event types of the access devices.

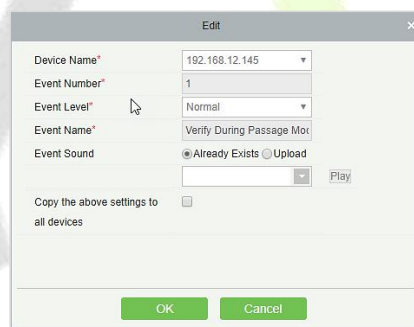
● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** Click **Access Device** > **Event** to access the following page:



**Figure 3- 34 Event Type**

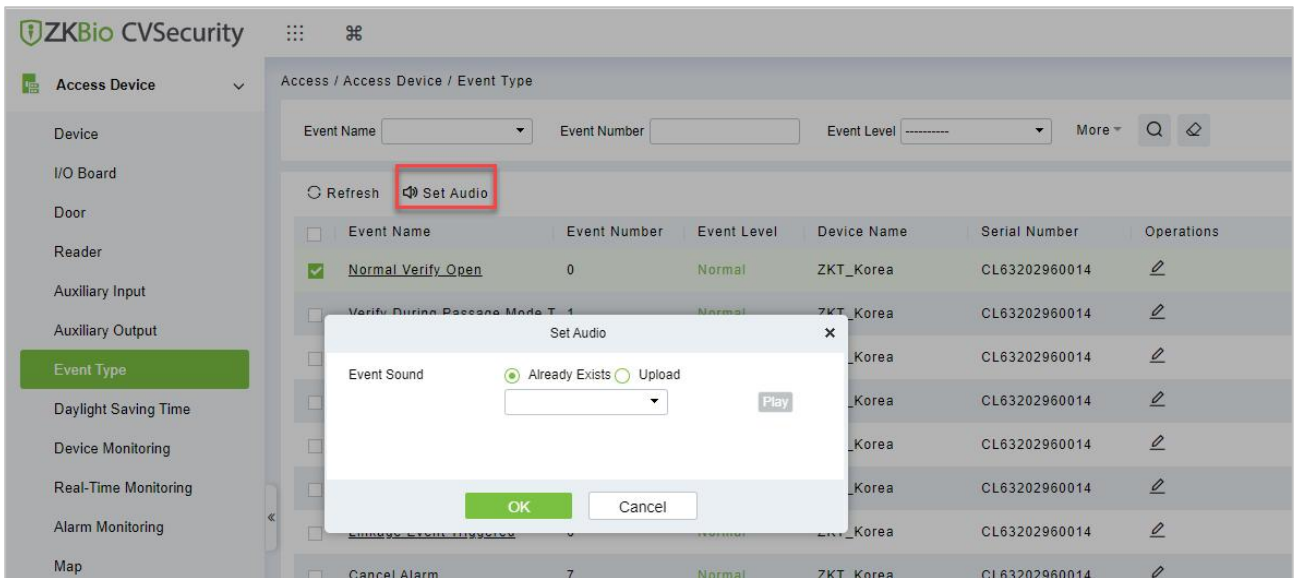
**Step 2:** Click **Edit** or click the event type name to edit.



**Figure 3- 35 Event Type Edit**

#### 3.3.7.1 Set Audio

Same as the event sound. Click **Set Audio**:



**Figure 3- 36 Event Type Set Audio**

You can upload an audio from your local PC. The file must be in wav or mp3 format, and it must not exceed 10MB.

| Parameter     | How to Set   |
|---------------|--|
| Event Level   | Normal, Exception, and Alarm are available               |
| Event Name    | Display the name of the device and it can't be modified. |
| Device Name   | Display the name of the device                           |
| Event Number  | Display the event number of the device.                  |
| Serial Number | Display the serial number of the device                  |

**Table 3- 6 Event Parameters**

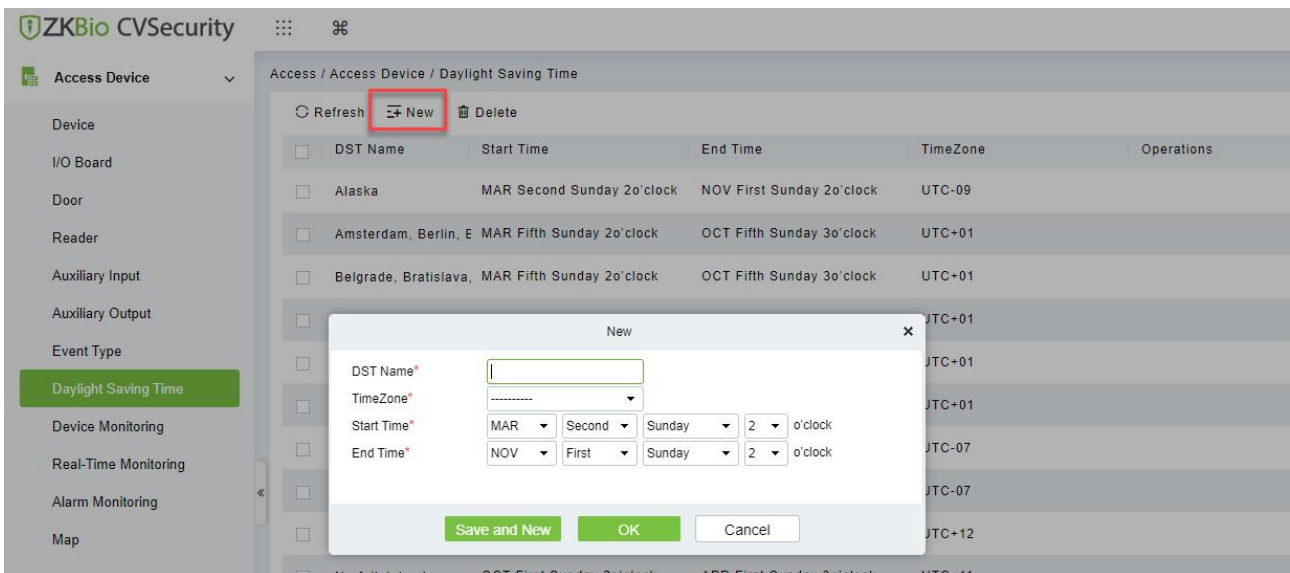
### 3.3.8 Daylight Saving Time

DST, also called the Daylight-Saving Time, is a system to adjusting the official prescribe local time to save energy. The unified time adopted during the implementation of known as the "DST". Usually, the clocks are adjusted forward one hour in the summer to make people sleep early and get up early. It can also help to save energy. In autumn, clocks are adjusted backwards. The regulations are different in different countries. At present, nearly 70 countries adopt DST.

To meet the DST requirement, a special function can be customized. You may adjust the clock one hour forward at XX (hour) XX (day) XX (month) and one hour backward at XX (hour) XX (day) XX (month) if necessary.

#### 3.3.8.1 Add DST (New)

**Step 1:** Click **Access Device > Daylight Saving Time > New.**



**Figure 3- 37 Daylight Saving Mode**

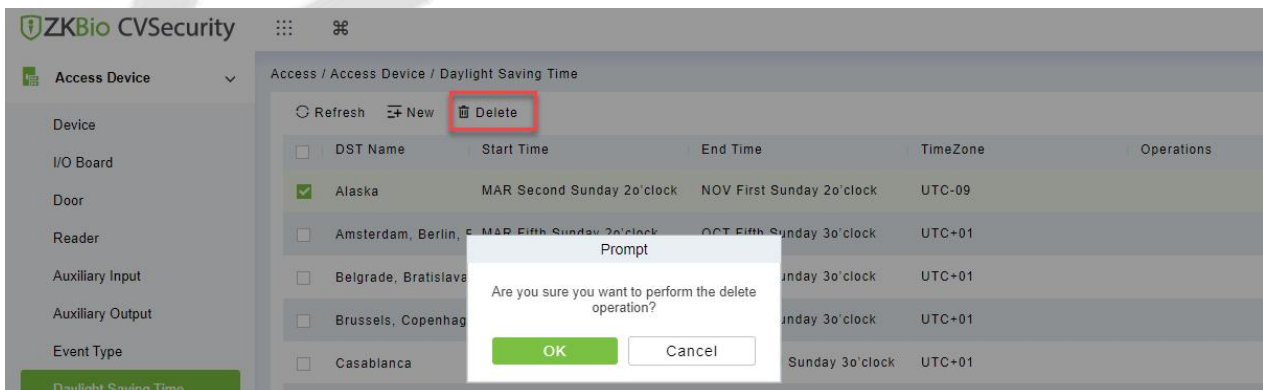
Set as "Month-Weeks-week hour: minute" format. The start time and end time is needed. For example, the start time can be set as "second Monday in March, 02:00". The system will be advanced one hour at the start time. The system will go back to the original time at the end time.

| Parameter  | How to set                           |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| DST Name   | Display the DST name                 |
| Start Time | Display the start time of the device |
| End Time   | Display the end time of the device   |
| Time Zone  | Display the timezone of the device.  |

**Table 3- 7 Daylight Saving Mode Parameters**

### 3.3.8.2 Delete

Select device, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the device.



**Figure 3- 38 Daylight Saving Mode Delete**

### 3.3.9 Real-Time Monitoring

On the real-time management screen, the status of the added device is displayed and the device can be opened or closed. At the same time, the dynamic of real-time events is monitored. If the door opening can be verified and corresponding access control events can be generated, the access control management service configuration is complete.

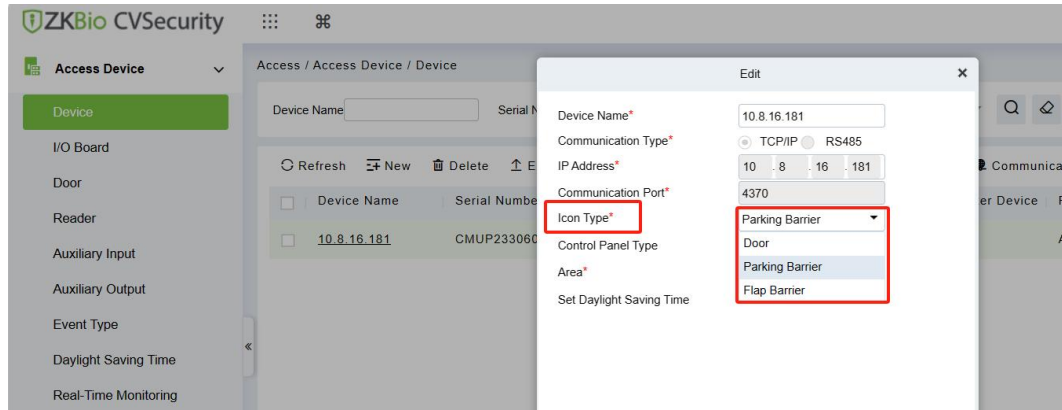
● **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** Check whether the device is online.

In the Access Control module, choose “Access Control Device > Real-time Monitoring”.

Check whether the icon status of the added device is online. For details about the icon status, see Table 3-8.

**Note:** The icons support 3 types, which are: **Door, Parking Barrier, Flap Barrier.** You can go to **Access Module -> Access Device->Device** to select the device, **Edit** for switching.



**Figure 3- 39 Icon Type**

The following table takes Door Icon as an example; the other 2 types(Flap Barrier & Parking Barrier) are only different graphics, but the meaning is the same, you can refer to the following table:

| Icon | State   | Icon | State   |
|------|---|------|---|
|      | The device is disabled.   |      | Door offline status   |
|      | No door status sensor, relay off/no relay status                      |      | Door status sensor not set, relay open/no relay state               |
|      | The door is closed and the relay is off/no relay is in online state   |      | The door is closed and the relay is on/no relay                     |
|      | On line door open, relay closed/no relay                              |      | On line door open, relay open/no relay state                        |
|      | Door opens alarm, relay closes  |      | The door opens to alarm and the relay opens                         |
|      | Door opening timeout alarm, relay closed/no relay, door magnetic open |      | Door opening timeout alarm, relay open/no relay, door magnetic open |
|      | Door opening timeout alarm, relay closed/door magnetic closed         |      | Door opening timeout alarm, relay open/door magnetic close          |
|      | Door close alarm, relay off/no relay status                           |      | Door close alarm, relay open/no relay status                        |

| Icon | State  | Icon | State  |
|------|--|------|--|
|      | No door magnetic setting, door alarm, relay closed         |      | No door magnetic setting, door alarm, relay open |
|      | Door opening timeout alarm, no relay/door magnetic closing |      | The door was locked                              |
|      | Abnormal communication between the door and the device     |      |  |

**Note:** If there is no relay status, the current firmware does not support the "Check relay Status" function.

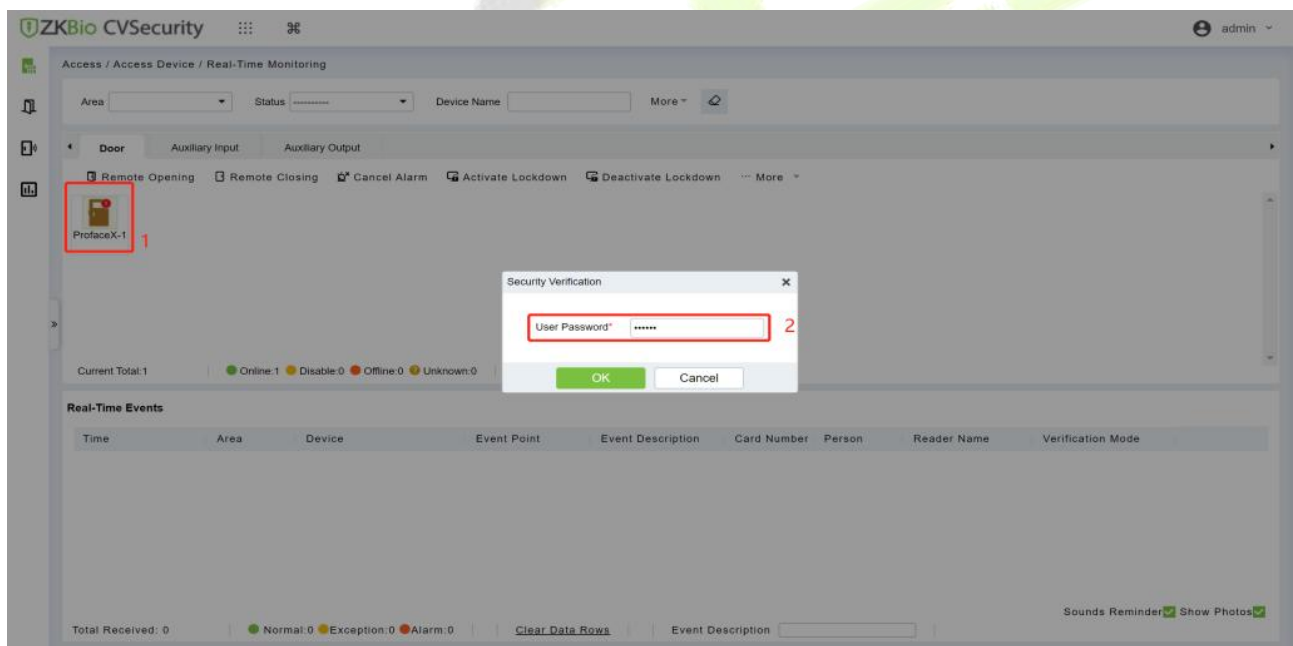
**Table 3- 8 Description of Door Types**

**Step 2:** Remote opening/closing verification, taking remote opening as an example.

Select the online door device, click "**Remote door opening**", enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**.

On the remote door opening screen, enter the time to open the door and tap **OK**, as shown in figure below.

If "Operation succeeded" is displayed, the remote door opening Operation is complete.



**Figure 3- 40 Remote Door Opening**

**Step 3:** Permission to verify.

Verify personnel permissions on added devices.

In the real-time monitoring window, judge whether the personnel permissions are correctly configured according to the event status; If the user has been granted access rights, the real-time access event is a normal verification event, as shown in Figure 3-38, indicating that the access level service is configured.

| Time                | Area      | Device                  | Event Point | Event Description | Card Number | Person | Reader Name | Verification Mode |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|-------------------|
| 2021-12-16 11:15:26 | Area Name | ProfaceX(CN3M212460001) | ProfaceX-1  | Remote Opening    |             |        | Other       | Other             |

**Figure 3-41 Real-Time Events**

### 3.3.9.1 Door

#### Remote Opening/Closing

It can control one door or all doors.

To control a single door, right click over it, and click **Remote Opening/ Closing** in the pop-up dialog box. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/ Closing** behind Current All.

In remote opening, user can define the door opening duration (The default is 15s). You can select **Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** to enable the intraday door passage mode time zones, or set the door to Normal Open, then the door will not be limited to any time zones (open for 24 hours).

To close a door, select **Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** first, to avoid enabling other normal open time zones to open the door, and then select **Remote Closing**.

**Note:** If **Remote Opening /Closing** fails, check whether the devices are disconnected or not. If disconnected, check the network.

#### Cancel the Alarm

Once an alarming door is displayed on the interface, the alarm sound will be played. Alarm cancellation can be done for single door and all doors. To control a single door, move the cursor over the door icon, a menu will pop-up, then click **Remote Opening/Closing** in the menu. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/Closing** behind Current All.

**Note:** If **Cancel the alarm** fails, check if any devices are disconnected. If found disconnected, check the network.

#### ● Remote Normally Open

It will set the device as normal open by remote.

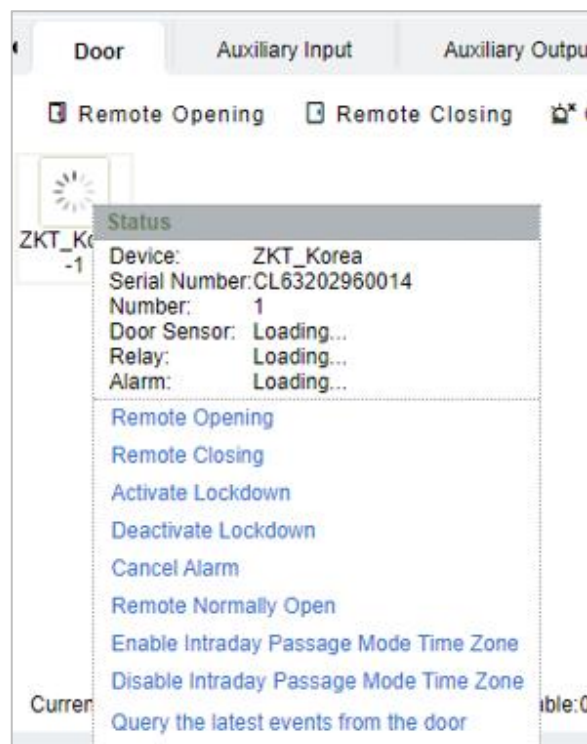
#### ● Activate Lockdown

It will remotely set the door status to locked status. After this, the door wouldn't receive any operations, such as card reading and remote operations. This function is supported only by certain devices. Super User Swipe to Initiate Lockdown after 3 swipes

#### ● Deactivate Lockdown

It will unlock a locked door. This function is supported only by certain devices. Super User Swipe to Initiate disable after 3 swipes

If you move the cursor to a door's icon; you can perform the above operations in a quick way. In addition, you can query the latest events from the door.



**Figure 3- 42 Quick management of doors**

#### ● Personnel Photo Display

If a Real-Time Monitoring event contains personnel activity, the monitor will display the person photo (if no photo is registered, the monitor will display default photo). The event name, time and date are displayed.

#### ● Play Audio

If this option is selected, it plays an audio after an alarming event occurs.

#### ● Query the Latest Events from The Door

Click to quickly view the latest events happened on the door.

#### ● Issue Card to Person

If you swap an unregistered card, a record with a card number will pop-up in real-time monitoring interface. Right click that card number, and a menu will pop-out. Click "Issue card to person", to assign that card to one person.

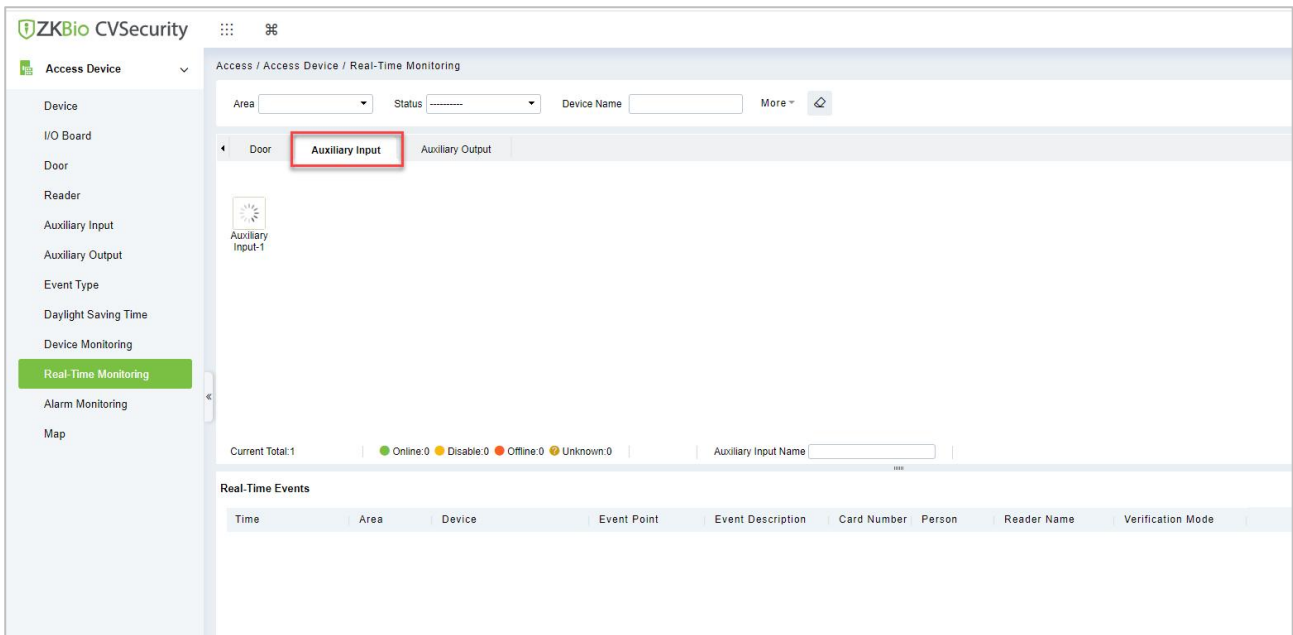
#### ● Event Monitoring:

The system will automatically acquire records of devices being monitored (by default, display 200 records), including normal and abnormal access control events (including alarm events). Normal events will appear in green; alarm events will appear in red; other abnormal events will appear in orange.

The Superuser can initiate lockdown after 3 swipes and deactivate the same after 3 swipes.

### 3.3.9.2 Auxiliary Input

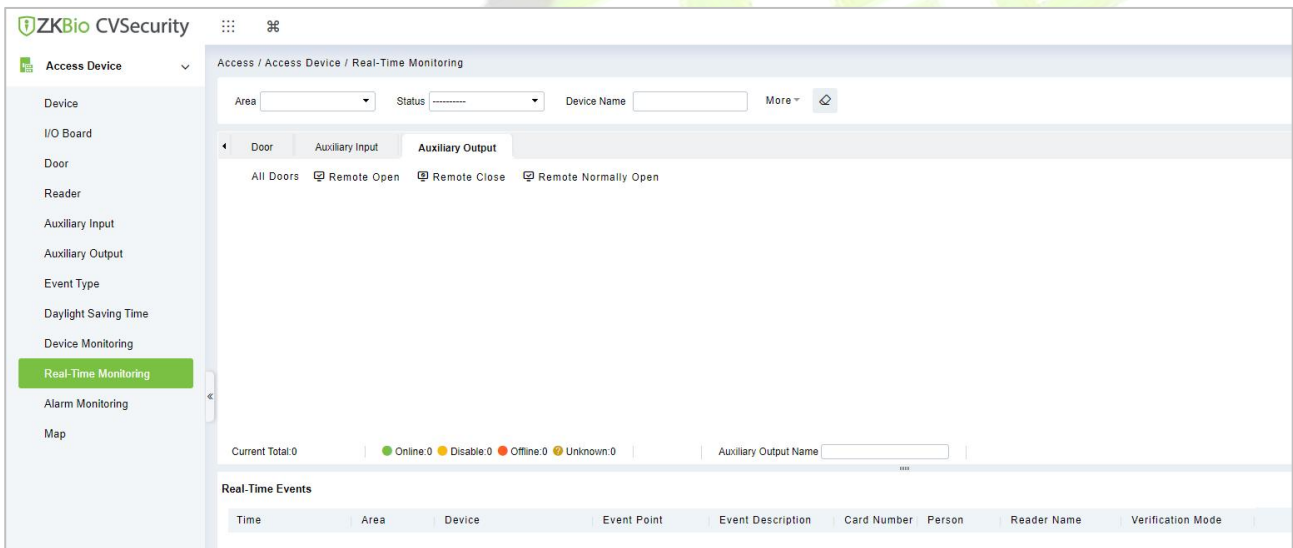
It monitors current auxiliary input events in real-time.



**Figure 3- 43 Real Time Monitoring Auxiliary Input**

### 3.3.9.3 Auxiliary Output

Here you can perform Remote open, Remote Close, Remote Normally Open.



**Figure 3- 44 Real Time Monitoring Auxiliary Output**

#### ● Monitoring All

By default, the home page displays all doors of the panels within the user's level. User may monitor door(s) by setting the Area, Access Control or Door.

### 3.3.10 Alarm Monitoring

It will monitor the status and real-time events of doors under the access control panels in the system in real-time, including normal events and abnormal events

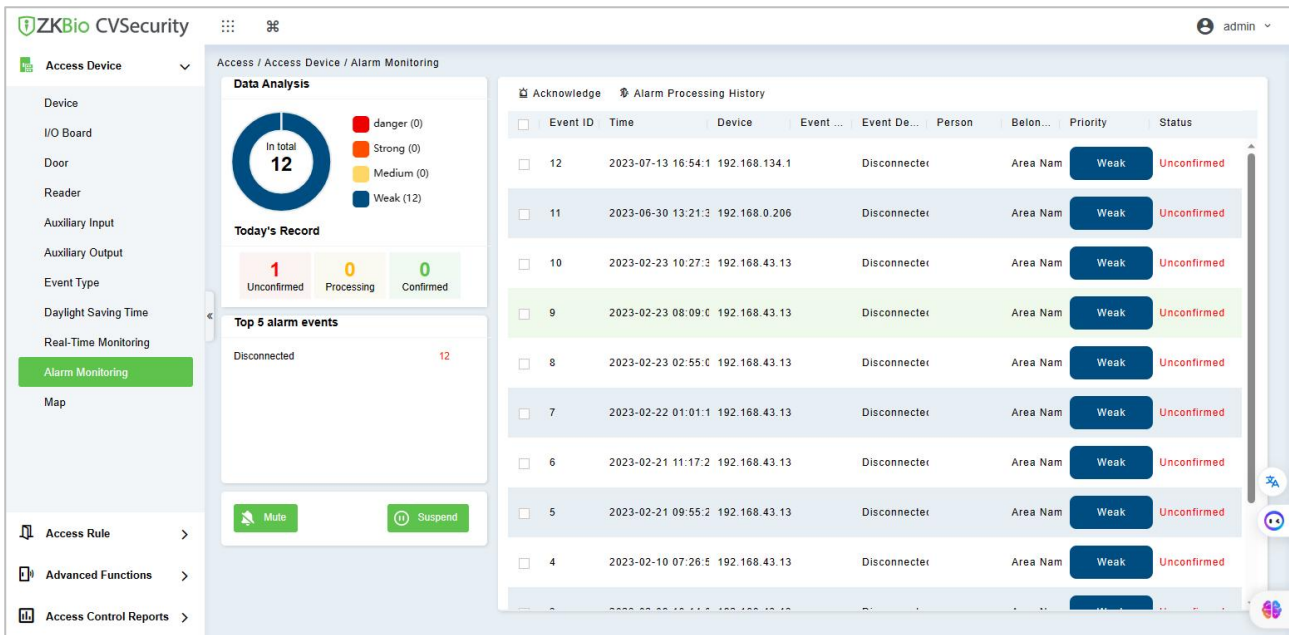


Figure 3- 45 Alarm Monitoring

**Note:**The current alarm priority is set to the default. If you need to modify it, you can go to the path of **Access -> Access Device -> Alarm Monitoring** to make the adjustment.

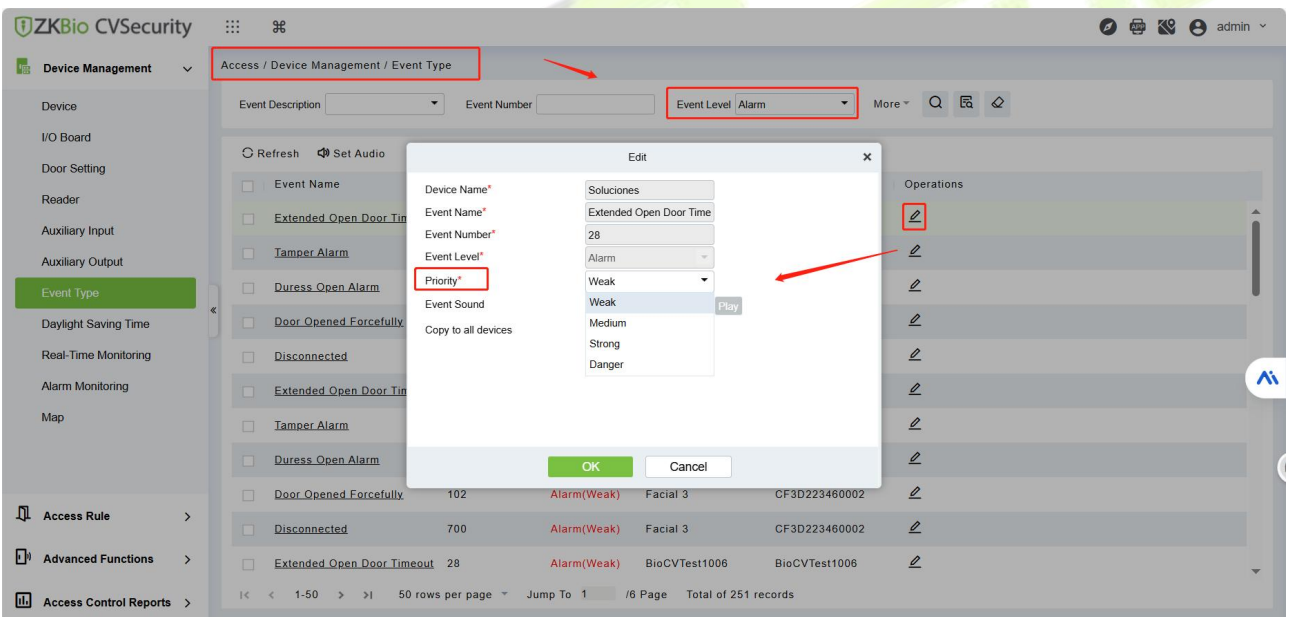


Figure 3- 46 Even Type

### 3.3.11 Map

Click **Access Device > Map > New** to add a map.

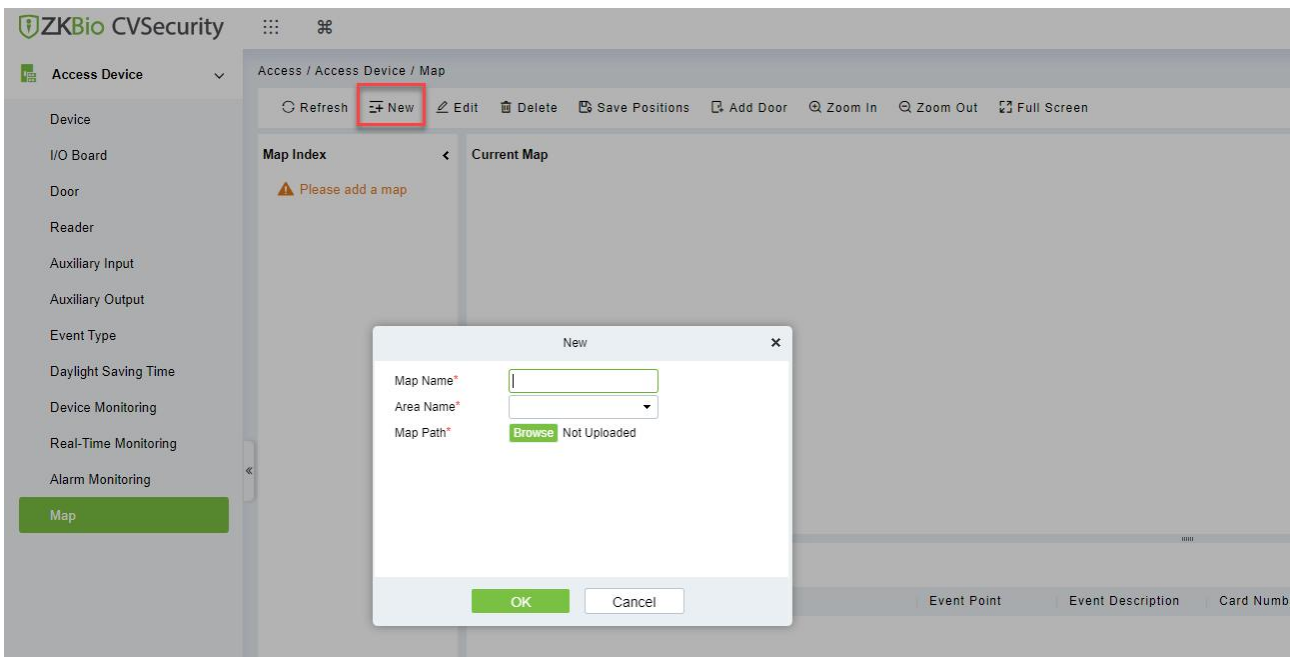


Figure 3- 47 Map

After adding, users can add door on the map, perform zoom-in, zoom-out, etc. If users relocated or modified the map, click **Save Positions** to save. The user can view the new setting at next visit.

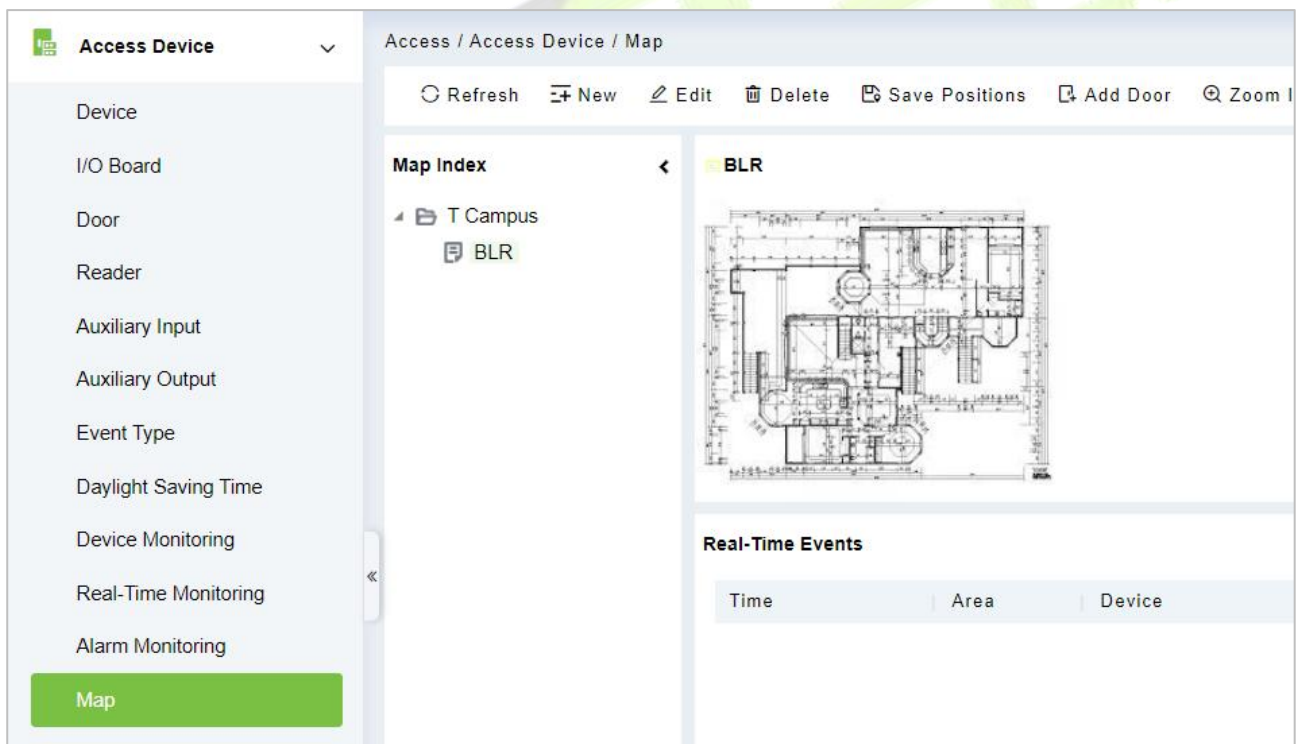


Figure 3- 48 Map Position

### 3.3.11.1 Add/Delete Map

Users can add or delete a map as needed.

### 3.3.11.2 Edit Map

Users can edit map name, change map or the area it belongs to.

### Adjust Map (includes door)

Users can add a door on the map or delete an existing one (right click the door icon, and select **Delete Door**), or adjust the map or position(s) of the door or camera icons (by dragging the door or camera icons), adjust the size of the map (click **Zoom in** or **Zoom out** or click **Full Screen**).

### Add Doors & Cameras

After adding the map, click on "Add doors" and "Add cams" in the toolbar on the right to select devices to add to the map.

### Door Operation

If you move the cursor to a door, the system will automatically filter and displays the operation according to the door status. Users can do remotely open/close doors, cancel alarms, etc.

### Levels Control

Users need to select the relevant area for the map when adding levels. The area will be relevant to the user access levels, users can only view or manage the map within levels. If the relevant area of a map is modified, all doors on the map will be cleared. Users need to add the doors manually again.

When an administrator is adding a new user, he can set the user operation rights in role setting, such as Save positions, Add Door, Add Camera, etc.

#### Note:

In map modification, users can choose to modify the map name but not the path. Users only need to check the box to activate the modification option.

The system supports adding multi doors at the same time. After adding the doors, users need to set the door position on the map and click **Save**.

When modifying door icon, especially when users zoomed out the map, the margin for top and left shall not be smaller than 5 pixels, or system will prompt error.

Users are recommended to add a map size under 1120 \* 380 pixels. If several clients access the same server, the display effect will be different according to resolutions of screen and the settings of browsers.

## 3.4 Access Rule

Access control rules are the core logic control part of access control, including time period settings, linkage settings, etc.

### 3.4.1 Timezone

In **Access Control** Module, time period is a very important basic concept, which is used to set the use time of the door and specify that **Access Control** is available in the valid time period.

This section describes how to configure Step to manually add a time range in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 3.4.1.1 Add (New)

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the access Control module, choose "Access Rule > Time zone".

**Step 2:** Click **New**, the interface for adding time segments is displayed.

**Step 3:** The time segment page is added. Set the content based on the new requirements, as shown in figure below. For parameter Settings, see Table 3-9.

New ✕

Time Zone Name\*

Remarks

| Date           | Time | Interval 1 |          | Interval 2 |          | Interval 3 |          |
|----------------|------|------------|----------|------------|----------|------------|----------|
|                |      | Start Time | End Time | Start Time | End Time | Start Time | End Time |
| Monday         |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Tuesday        |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Wednesday      |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Thursday       |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Friday         |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Saturday       |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Sunday         |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Holiday Type 1 |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Holiday Type 2 |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |
| Holiday Type 3 |      | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  | 00 : 00    | 00 : 00  |

Copy Monday's Setting to Others Weekdays:

**Figure 3- 49 Adding A Time Range**

| Parameter                            | How to set up   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Schedule Name                        | You can set a time range name for easy memory.  |
| Note                                 | Remarks Description of user-defined Settings.   |
| Time interval                        | Set the start time and end time for each time range. The time period includes one week and three holiday-type time periods. |
| Copy Monday's time to other weekdays | You can quickly copy your Monday Settings to other weekdays.  |

**Table 3- 9 Parameters to Be Added in The Time Range**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to finish adding the time range.

### 3.4.1.2 Delete

Select time zone name, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the time zone.

Access / Access Rule / Time Zones

Time Zone Name  Remarks

| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Time Zone Name     | Remarks            | Operations  |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 24-Hour Accessible | 24-Hour Accessible |   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | multibio           |                    | <input type="button" value="✎"/> <input type="button" value="✖"/> |

Prompt

Are you sure you want to perform the delete operation?

**Figure 3- 50 Time Zone Delete**

### 3.4.2 Holiday

The access control time on holidays may be different from that on weekdays. To facilitate Operation, the system supports separate access control time on holidays.

This section describes how to manually add a holiday Step in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 3.4.2.1 Add (New)

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Access Rule > Holidays**”.

**Step 2:** Click **New**, the page for adding holidays is displayed.

**Step 3:** When a page is added during holidays, set the content as required, as shown in figure below. For parameter Settings, see Table 3-10.

**Figure 3- 51 Adding Holidays**

| Parameter                           | How to set up   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Holiday Name                        | You can set holiday names for easy memory.  |
| Type of Holidays                    | The holiday type can be: Holiday type 1, Holiday type 2, holiday type 3. Set holiday type to time Range.  |
| Start time/End time                 | Set the holiday time range.   |
| According to the annual circulation | Set whether this holiday cycle by year: yes, no. For example, if New Year’s Day is January 1, set this parameter to Yes.Mother’s Day falls on the second Sunday in May. If the date is uncertain, set it to No. |
| Note                                | Custom Settings description.  |

**Table 3- 10 Parameters for Adding Holidays**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to finish adding the holiday.

#### 3.4.2.2 Delete

Select holiday, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the holiday.

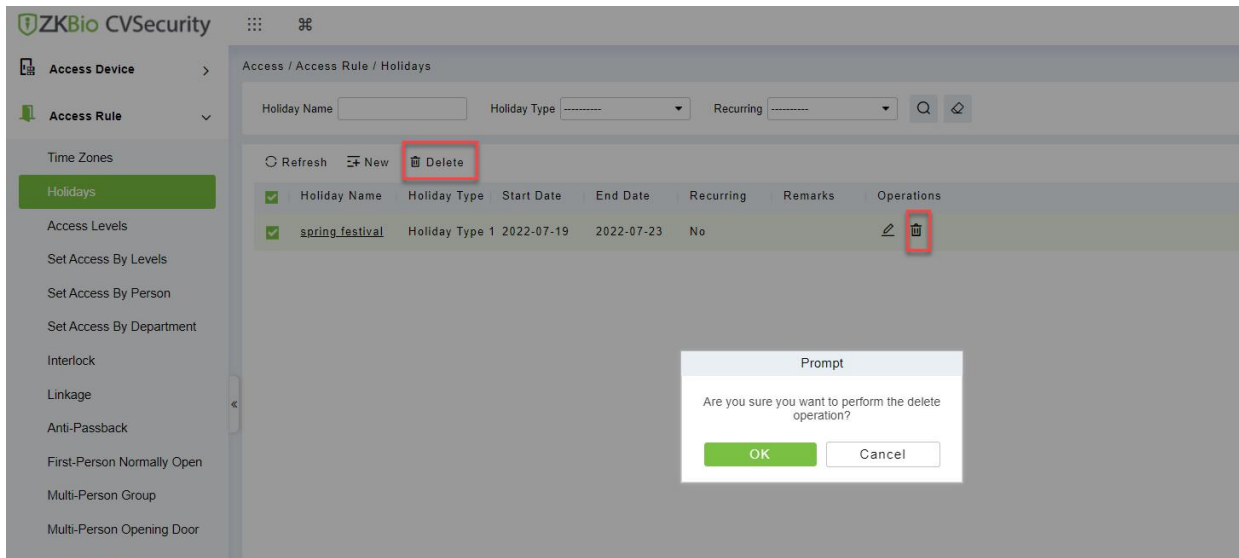


Figure 3- 52 Holiday Delete

### 3.4.3 Access Level

Access level groups define groups and categories of internal doors to facilitate subsequent permission assignment operations.

Setting operations include creating access level groups and adding doors to access level groups.

#### 3.4.3.1 Add (New)

This section describes how to create Step for Access Control groups in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Access Rule > Access Level**”.

**Step 2:** Click **New** in the left column, and the page for adding access level groups is displayed.

**Step 3:** On the page for adding access level groups, set parameters based on the new requirements, as shown in figure below. For parameter Settings, see Table 3-11.

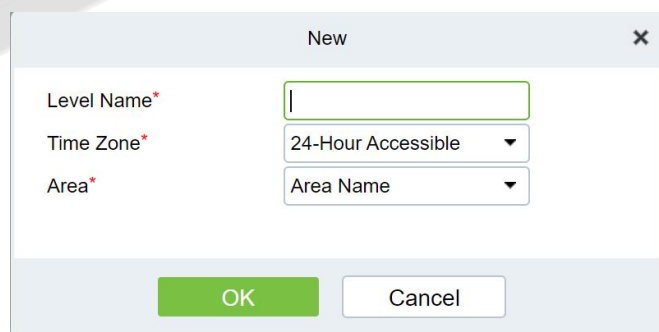


Figure 3- 53 Adding Access Level Groups

| Parameter             | How to set up  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Permission Group Name | You can customize the name of the access level group for easy query.   |
| Access Control Period | Select the configured access time range to define the valid access time range for this permission group.   |
| Area                  | Select the configured area from <b>System &gt; System Management &gt; Area Settings</b> and define the area to which the Access Control group belongs. |

Table 3- 11 Description of Access Control Right Groups

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to finish configuring the access control right group.

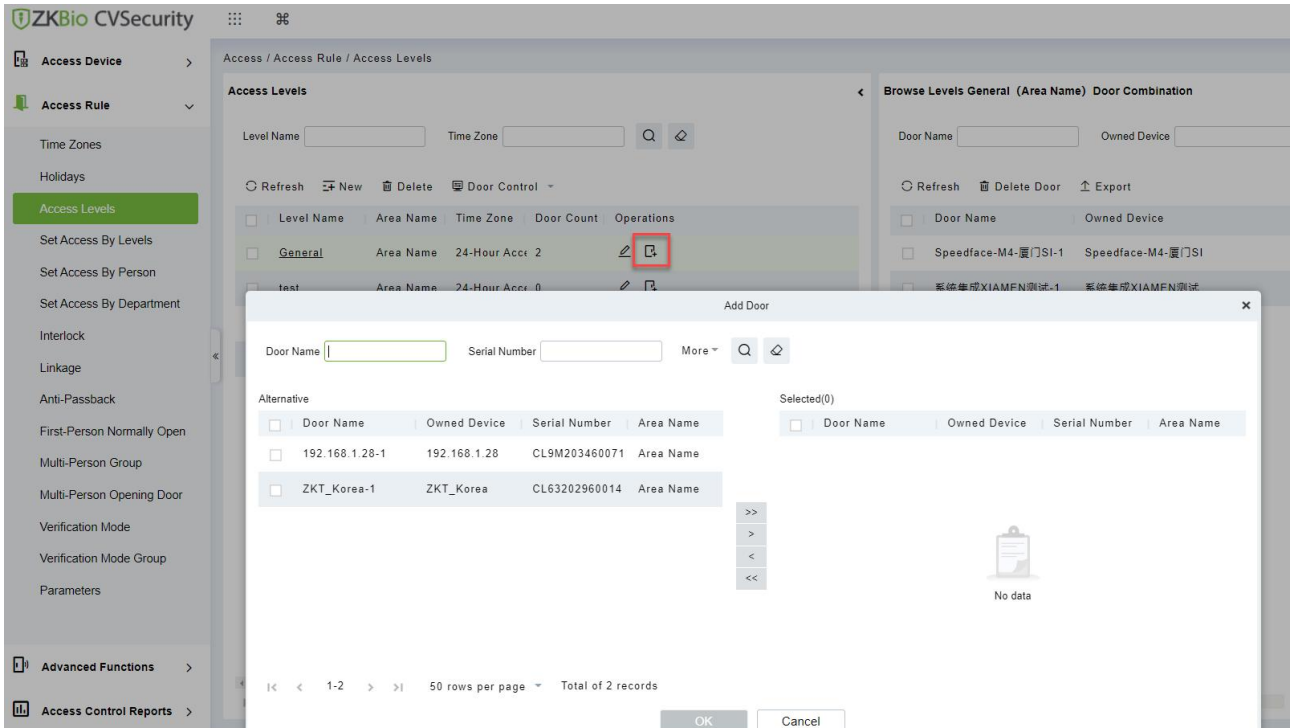
### 3.4.3.2 Add Door

This topic describes how to add Operation Step to the door of the created access level group in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Access Rule > Access level>Add Door**”.

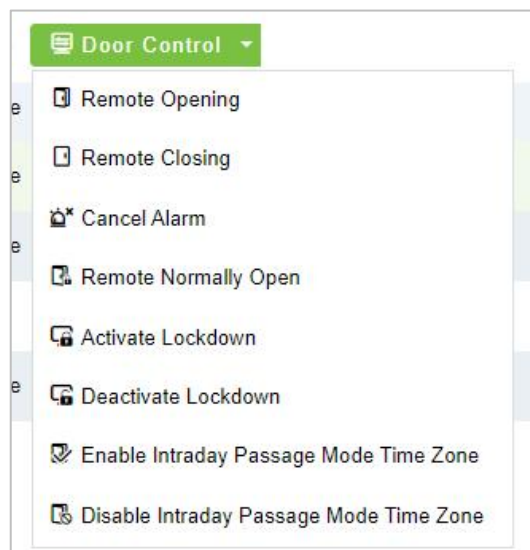
**Step 2:** Click “**Add Door**”, and the page for selecting a door is displayed. add a door as required, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 3- 54 Adding Access Level Groups Add Doors**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to finish configuring the door for the access control right group.

### 3.4.3.3 Door Control



**Figure 3- 55 Door Control**

### Remote Opening/Closing

It can control one door or all doors.

To control a single door, right click over it, and click **Remote Opening/ Closing** in the pop-up dialog box. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/Closing** behind Current All.

In remote opening, user can define the door opening duration (The default is 15s). You can select **Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** to enable the intraday door passage mode time zones, or set the door to Normal Open, then the door will not be limited to any time zones (open for 24 hours).

To close a door, select **Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** first, to avoid enabling other normal open time zones to open the door, and then select **Remote Closing**.

**Note:** If **Remote Opening/Closing** fails, check whether the devices are disconnected or not. If disconnected, check the network.

### Cancel the Alarm

Once an alarming door is displayed on the interface, the alarm sound will be played. Alarm cancellation can be done for single door and all doors. To control a single door, move the cursor over the door icon, a menu will pop-up, then click **Remote Opening/Closing** in the menu. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/Closing** behind Current All.

**Note:** If **cancel the alarm** fails, check if any devices are disconnected. If found disconnected, check the network.

### Remote Normally Open

It will set the device as normal open by remote.

### Activate Lockdown

It will remotely set the door status to locked status. After this, the door wouldn't receive any operations, such as card reading and remote operations. This function is supported only by certain devices. Super User Swipe to Initiate Lockdown after 3 swipes

### Deactivate Lockdown

It will unlock a locked door. This function is supported only by certain devices. Super User Swipe to Initiate disable after 3 swipes.

### 3.4.3.4 Import or Export Access Level

**Step 1:** Export and fill in Access Level Template:

In the **Access Module**, click **Access Rule > Access Levels > Export > Export Access Level**, then fill in the Access levels information.

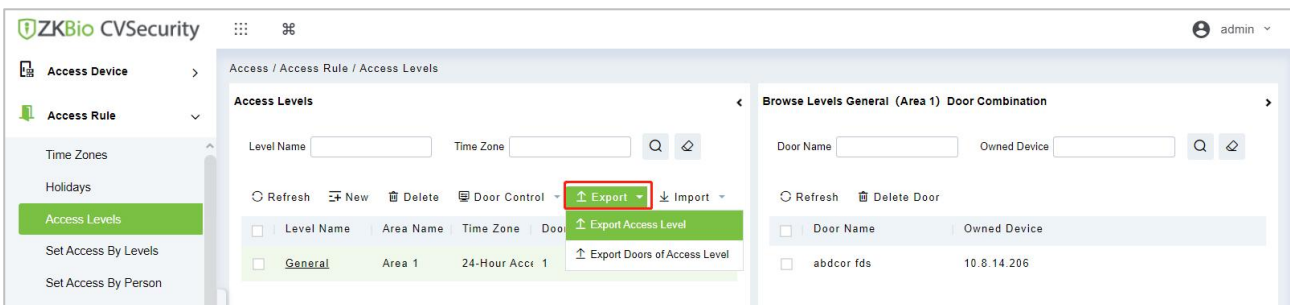


Figure 3- 56 Export Access Level Template

| Access Levels |           |             |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| Level Name    | Area Name | Time Zone   |
| Level 1       | Area 1    | Time Zone 1 |
| Level 2       | Area 2    | Time Zone 1 |
| Level 3       | Area 3    | Time Zone 1 |
| Level 4       | Area 4    | Time Zone 1 |
| Level 5       | Area 5    | Time Zone 1 |

Figure 3- 57 Fill in Access Level Template

**Note:** The Level name can be customized. The Area Name can be set from **System > System Management > Area Settings**, the Time Zone can be set from **Access > Access Rule > Time Zones**.

**Step 2:** Export the Doors of Access Level Template:

In the **Access Module**, click **Access Rule > Access Levels > Export > Export Doors of Access Level**, then You can export doors of access level in Excel file format.

Enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and Click **OK**.

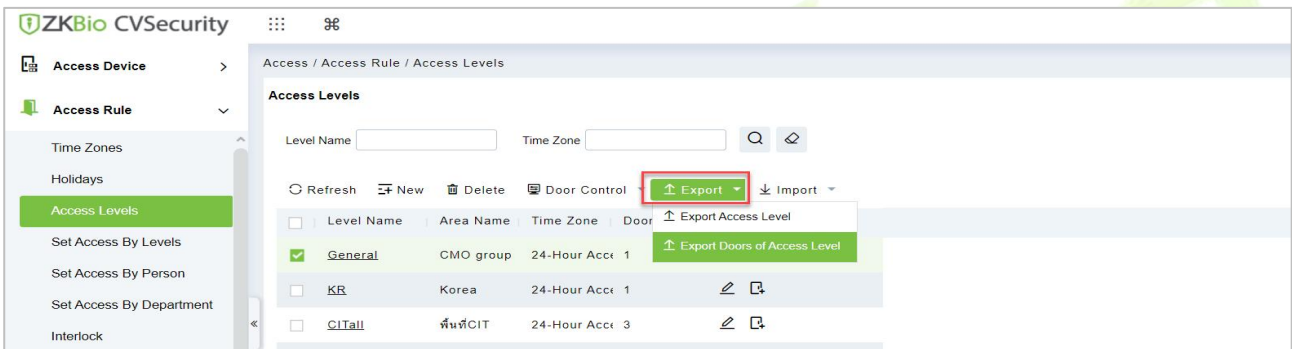


Figure 3- 58 Export the Access Level Template 1

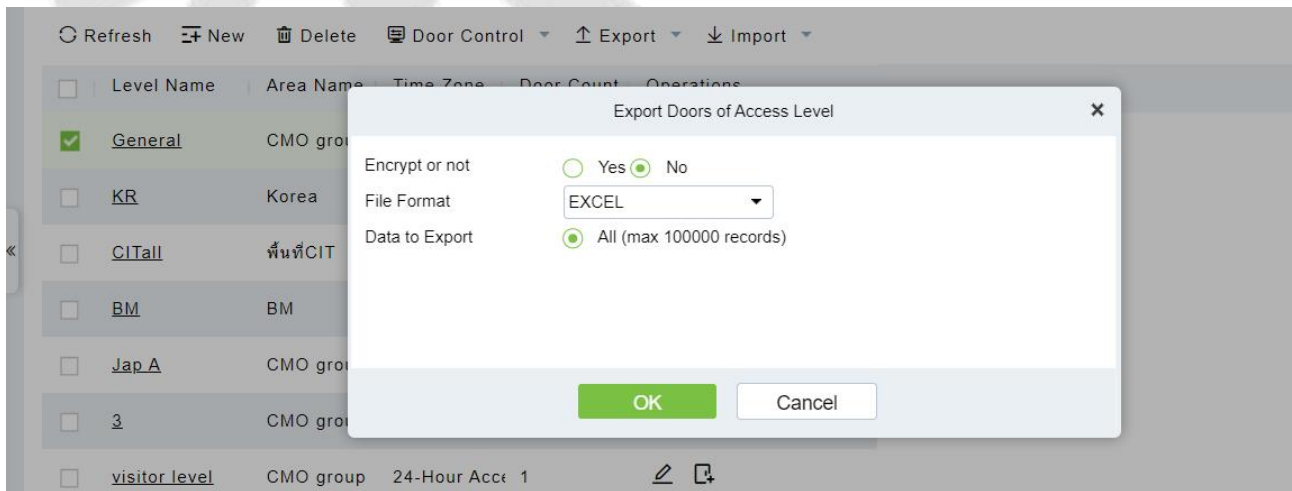


Figure 3- 59 Export the Access Level Template 2

**Step 3:** Import the Access Level Template:

In the **Access** module, click **Access Rule > Access Levels > Import > Import Access Level**, and click **Browser** to upload the Access Level Template.

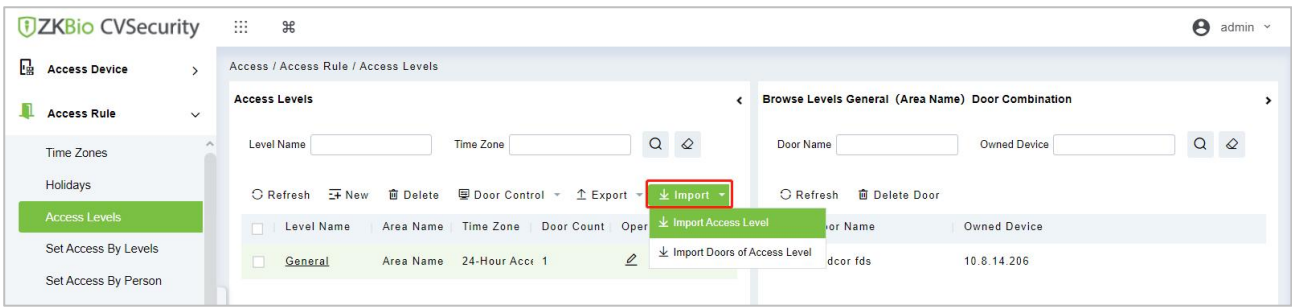


Figure 3- 60 Import the Access Level Template 1

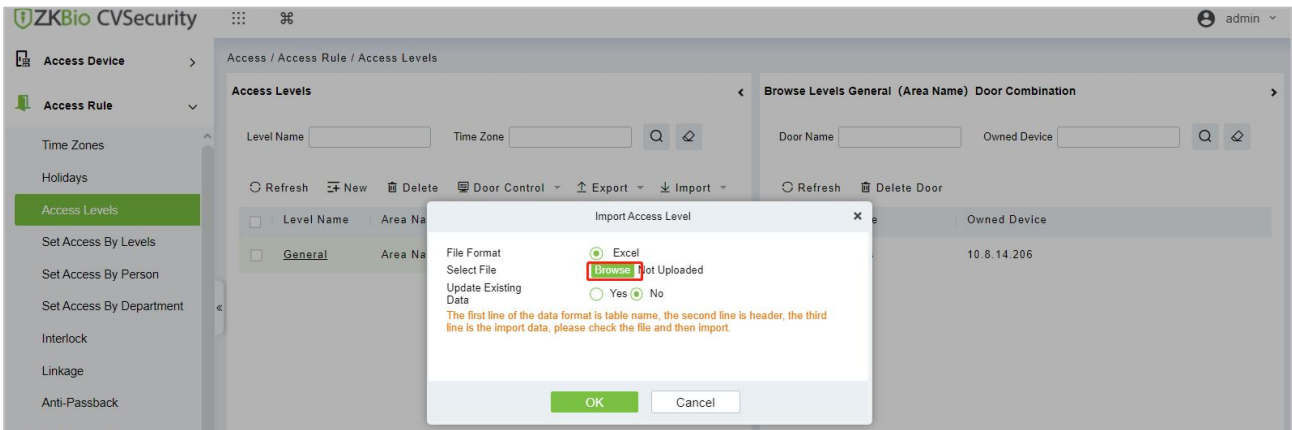


Figure 3- 61 Import the Access Level Template 2

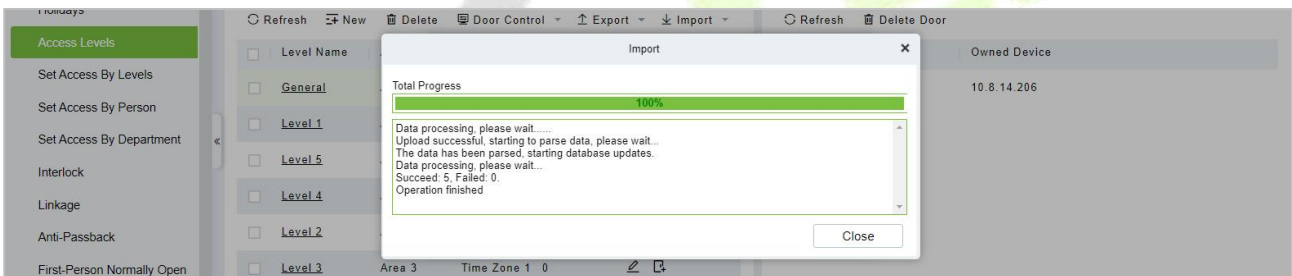


Figure 3- 62 Import the Access Level Template 3

**Step 4:** After the upload is successful, we can view the uploaded level as the following figure.

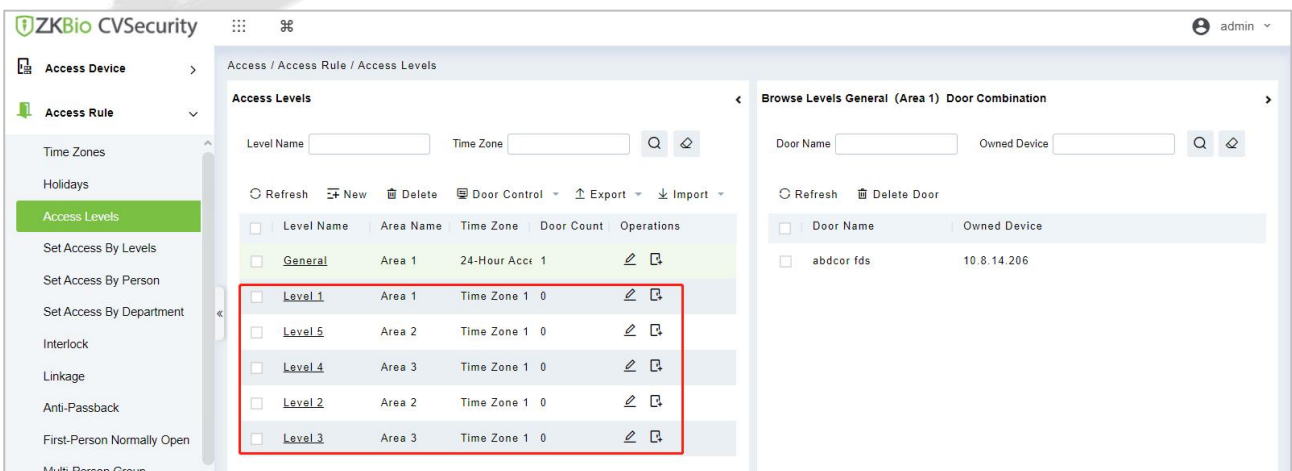
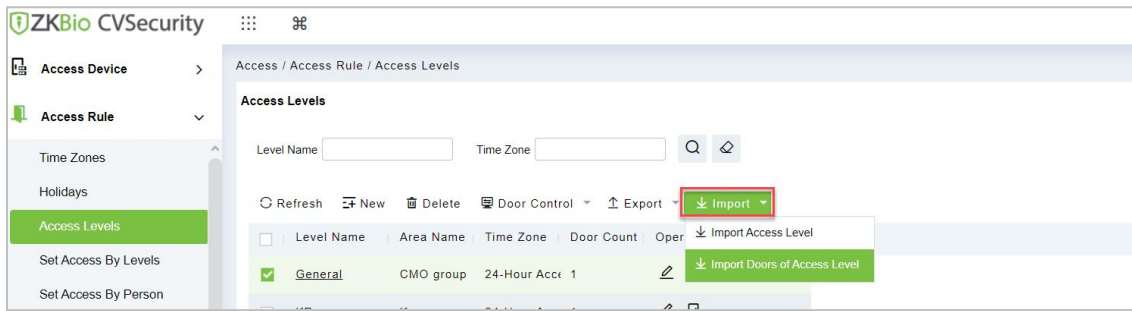


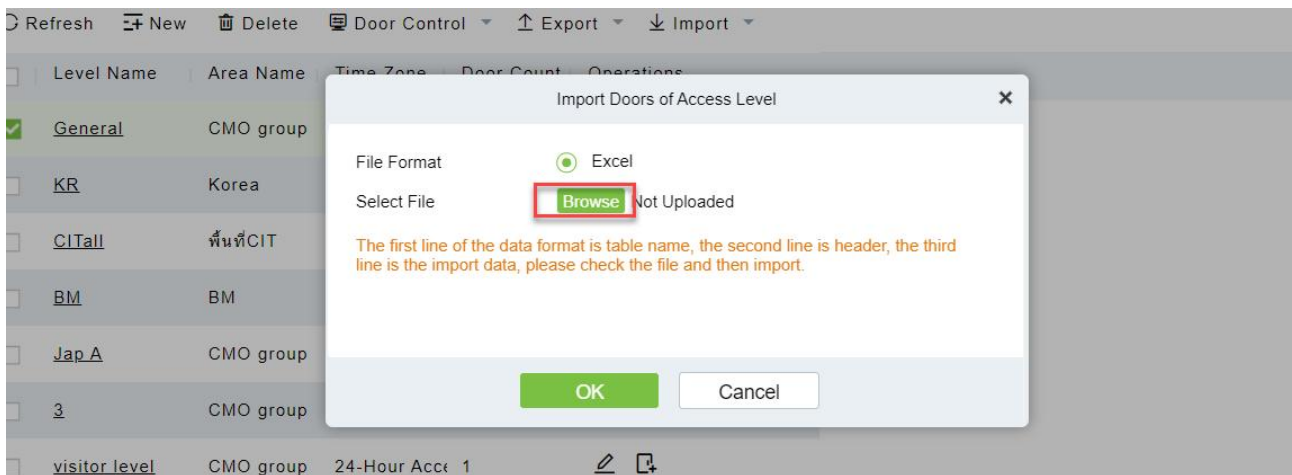
Figure 3- 63 Import the Access Level Template 4

**Step 5:** Import the Doors of Access Level Template:

In the Access module, click **Access Rule** > **Access Levels** > **Import** > **Import Doors of Access Level**, and click **Browse** to upload the Access Level Template.

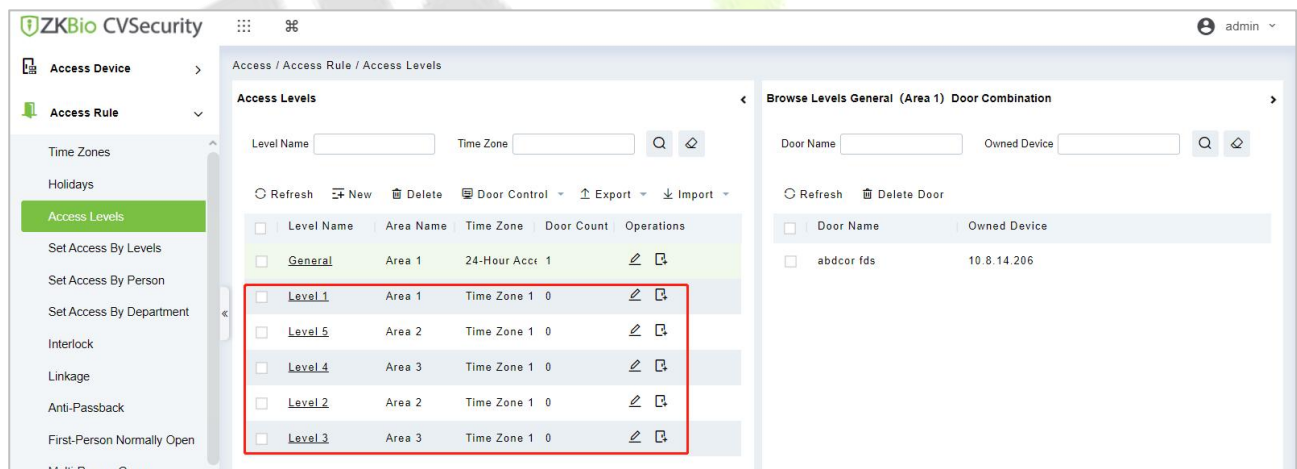


**Figure 3- 64 Import the Doors of Access Level Template 1**



**Figure 3- 65 Import the Doors of Access Level Template 2**

**Step 6:** After the upload is successful, we can view the uploaded level as the following figure.



**Figure 3- 66 Import the Doors of Access Level Template 3**

### 3.4.4 Set Access Level Allocation

Permission assignment Manages the access level of personnel. After permission assignment, personnel can verify the door opening Operation.

You can assign user rights by user Name group or assign user rights by user group.

#### 3.4.4.1 Assign Personnel Rights by Permission Group

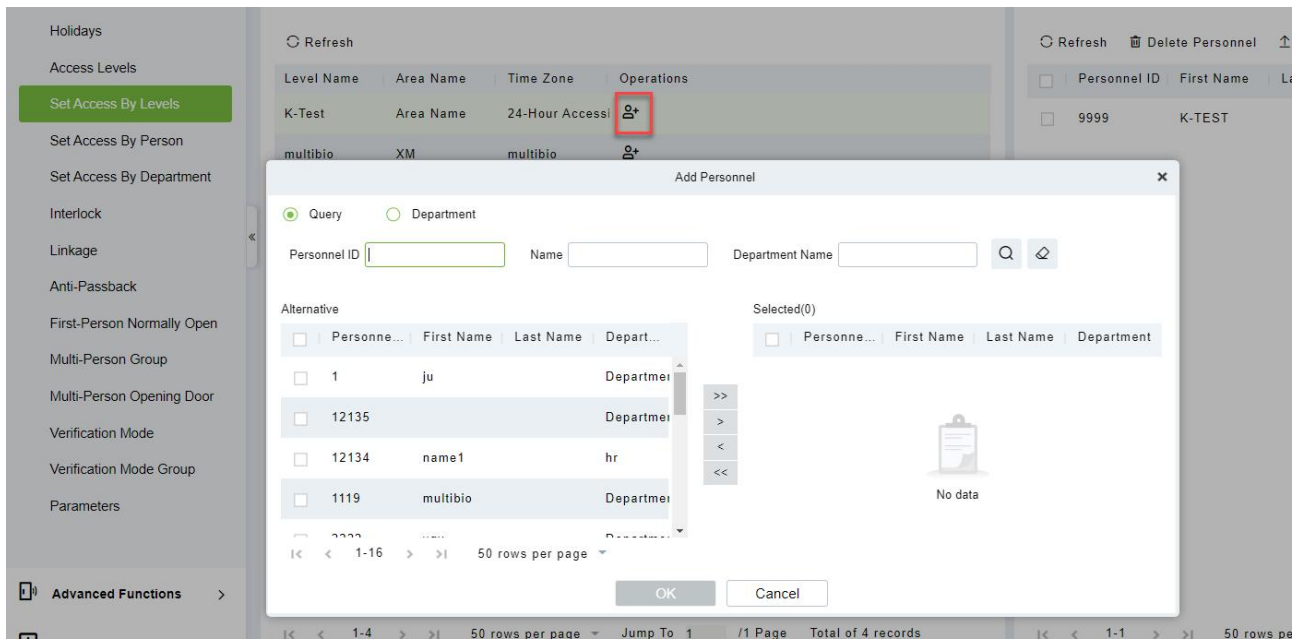
Assigning personnel permissions by permission group is used to define a set of open-door personnel for a permission group.

Describes Operation Step that assigns staff permissions by permission group in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Access Rule>Set Access by Levels**”.

**Step 2:** In the Operation column of the corresponding permission group, tap “**Add Personnel**”. The Add personnel page is displayed. Select personnel as required, as shown in figure below.

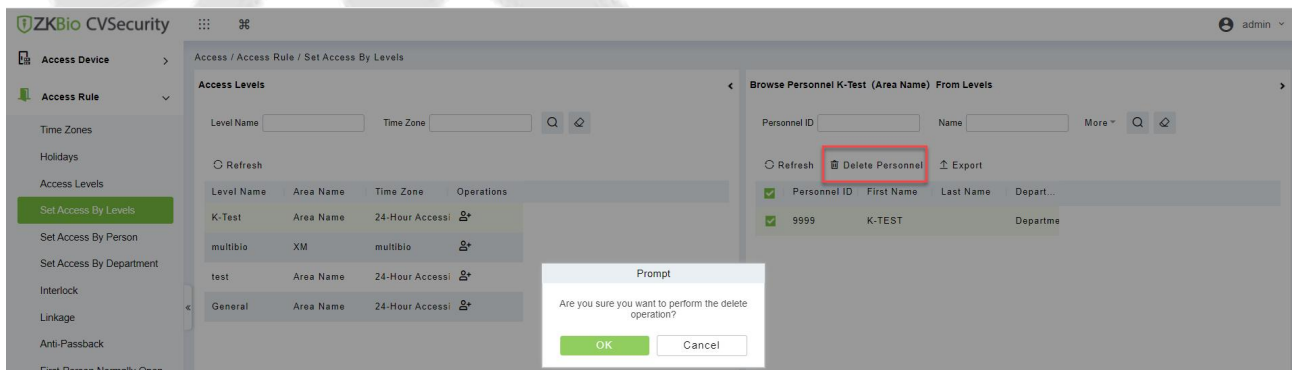


**Figure 3- 67 Assigning Rights to Users by Rights Group**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the assignment of personnel permissions.

**3.4.4.2 Delete Personnel**

Select personnel ID, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the personnel ID.



**Figure 3- 68 Delete Personnel**

**3.4.4.3 Export**

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

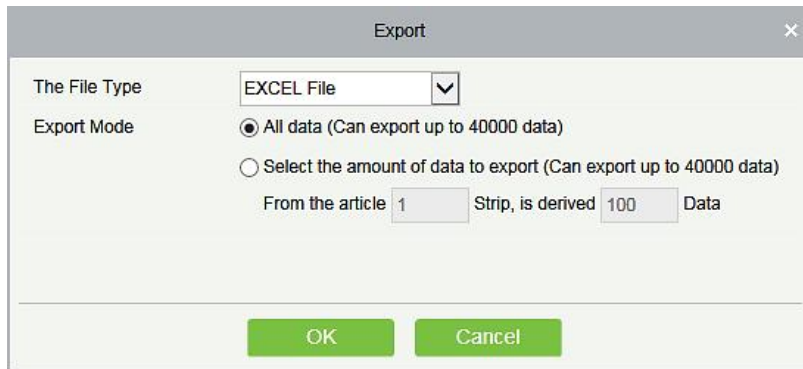


Figure 3- 69 Export

| ZKTECO Device  |               |           |                    |                         |                |                 |        |              |                 |                                  |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Device Name    | Serial Number | Area Name | Communication Type | Network Connection Mode | IP Address     | RS485 Parameter | Enable | Device Model | Register device | Firmware Version                 |
| 192.168.218.60 | 20100501999   | Area Name | HTTP               | Wired                   | 192.168.218.60 |                 | Enable | C3-400Pro    |                 | AC Ver 4.7.7.3033<br>Jun 16 2017 |

Figure 3- 70 Set Access level Allocation Export

### 3.4.5 Set Access Level Groups by Person

Assigning access level groups by person A permission set is used to define the access level set of a person.

This section describes Operation Step that assigns access control group permissions by person in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 3.4.5.1 Access Control Setting

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Access Control > Settings by Personnel**".

**Step 2:** In the Operation column of the Access Control group, click "**Add Access Control Group**". The page for adding access control groups is displayed. Select the Access Control group as required.

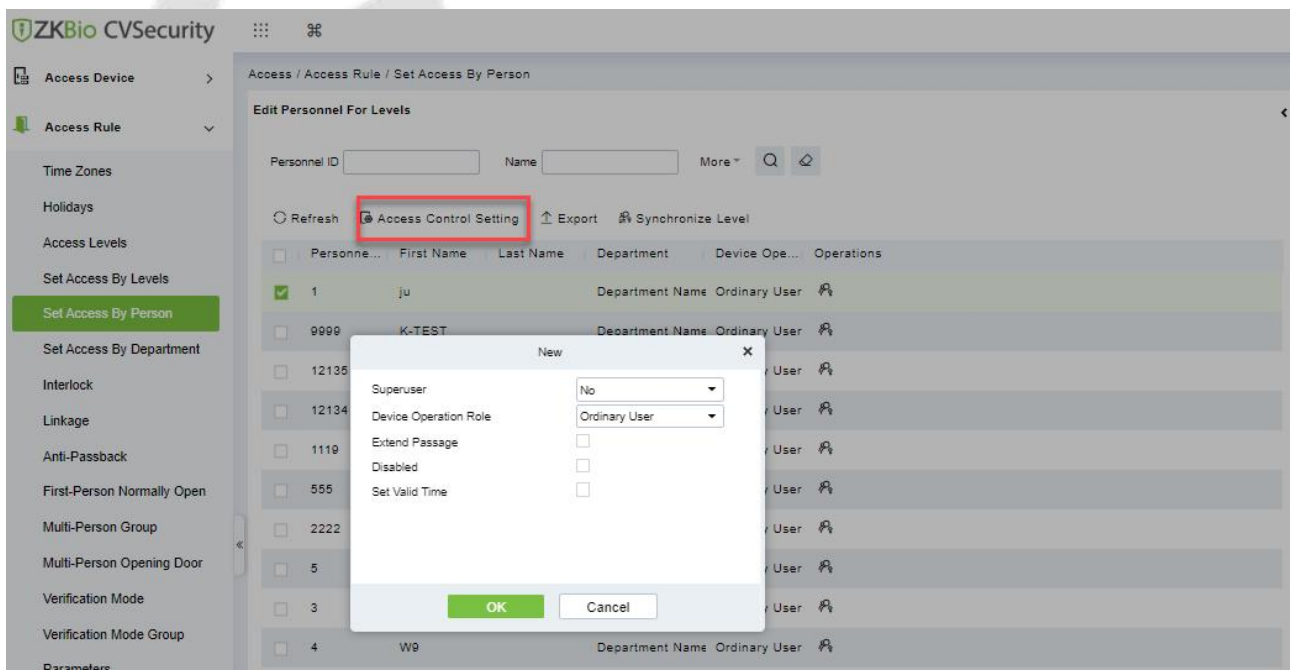


Figure 3- 71 Assigning Rights Groups by User

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the assignment of personnel permissions.

### 3.4.5.2 Add Level

Permission assignment Manages the access level of personnel. After permission assignment, personnel can verify the door opening Operation.

You can assign user rights by Name or assign user rights by user group.

#### Assign Personnel Rights by Permission Level

Assigning personnel permissions by permission group is used to define a set of open-door personnel for a permission group.

Describes Operation Step that assigns staff permissions by permission group in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### ● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "Access Rule>Set Access by Levels".

**Step 2:** In the Operation column of the corresponding permission group, tap "Add Levels". The Add level page is displayed. Select personnel as required.

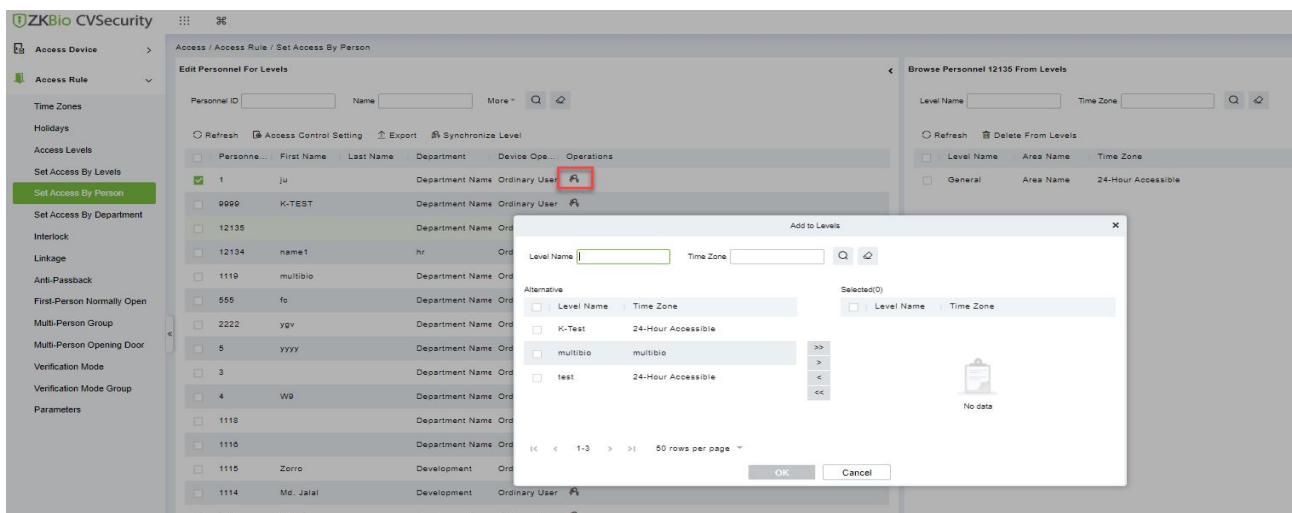


Figure 3- 72 Assigning Rights to Users by Rights Group

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the assignment of level permissions.

### 3.4.5.3 Delete from Level

Select level name, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the level name.

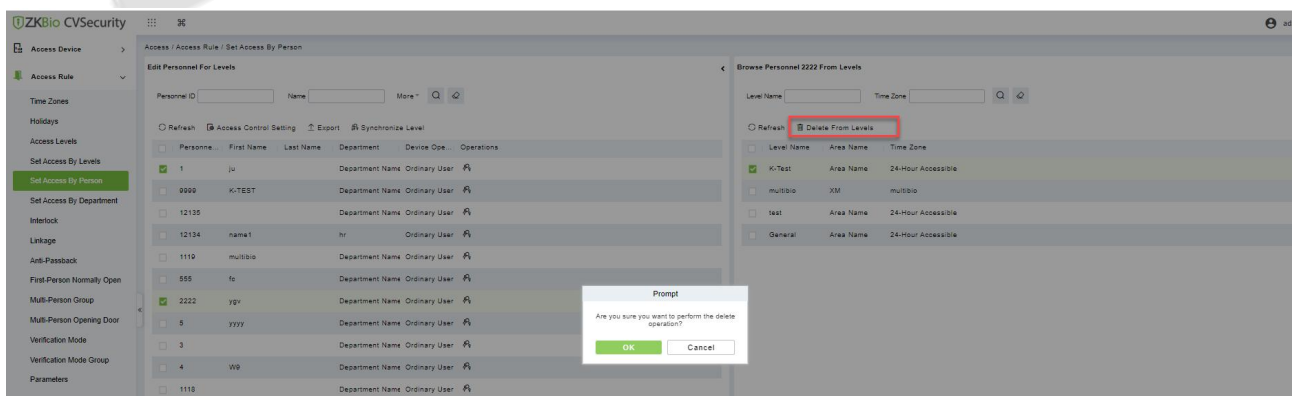


Figure 3- 73 Access Level Group by Person Delete

### 3.4.5.4 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

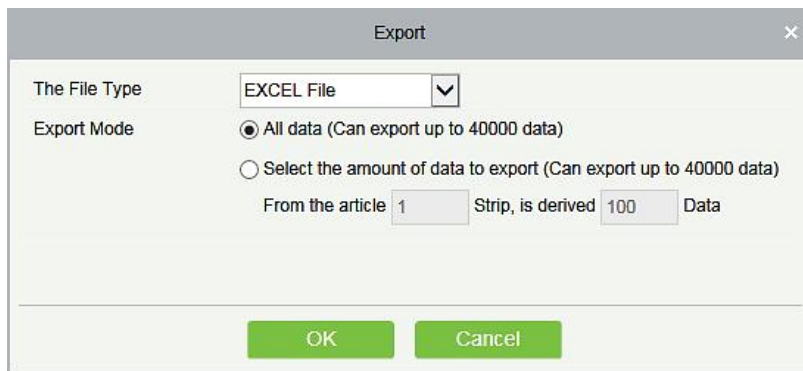


Figure 3- 74 Export

| ZKTECO Device  |               |           |                    |                         |                |                 |        |              |                 |                                  |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Device Name    | Serial Number | Area Name | Communication Type | Network Connection Mode | IP Address     | RS485 Parameter | Enable | Device Model | Register device | Firmware Version                 |
| 192.168.218.60 | 20100501999   | Area Name | HTTP               | Wired                   | 192.168.218.60 |                 | Enable | C3-400Pro    |                 | AC Ver 4.7.7.3033<br>Jun 16 2017 |

Figure 3- 75 Access Level Group by person Export

### 3.4.5.5 Synchronize Level

Select the level to be synchronized and send the corresponding device area data in the software to the device.

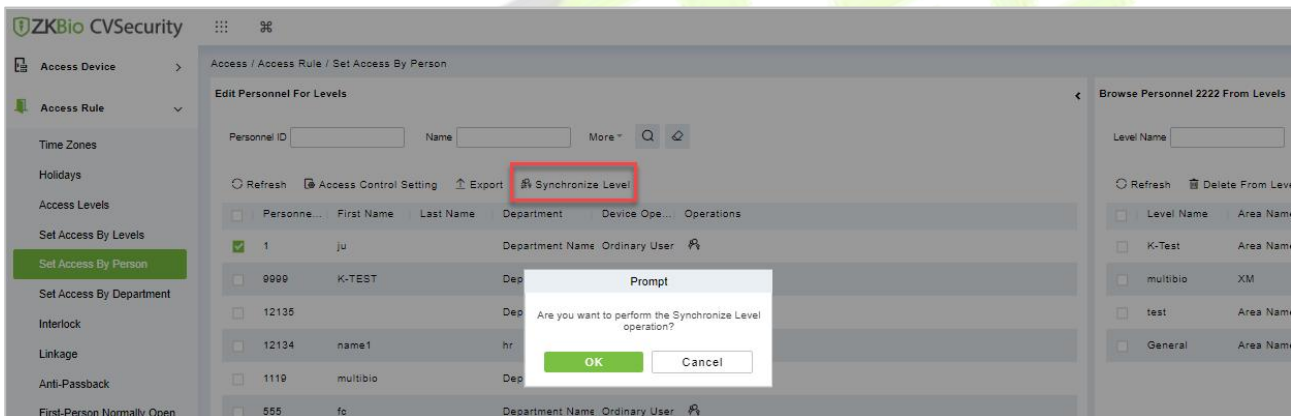


Figure 3- 76 Synchronize Level

### 3.4.6 Set Access Level Groups by Department

The access level group assigned by department defines the set of access levels for the personnel in the department.

This section describes Operation Step that assigns Access Control group permissions by person in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Access Control > Set by department**”.

**Step 2:** In the Operation column of the Access Control group, click “**Add Access Control Group**”. The page for adding Access Control groups is displayed. Select the Access Control group as required.

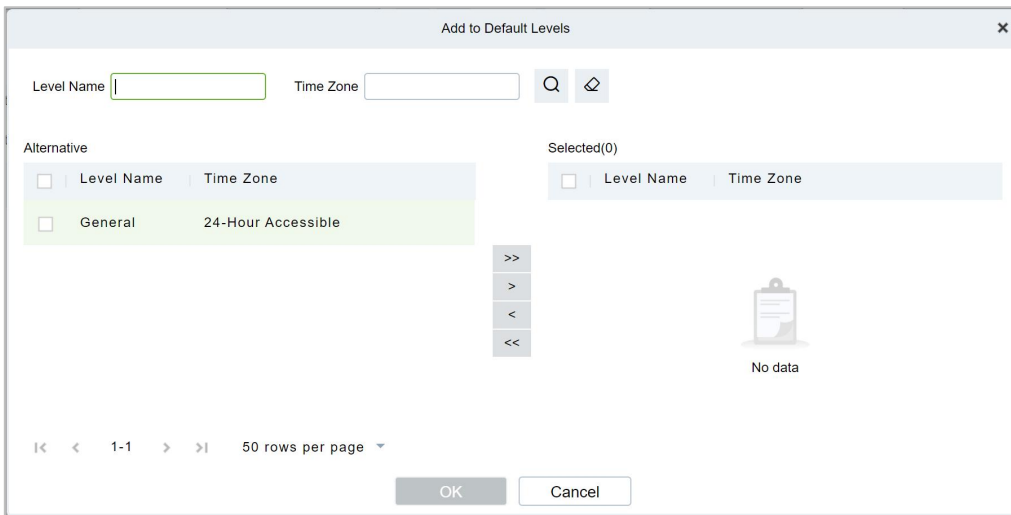


Figure 3- 77 Assigning Rights Groups by Department

Step 3: Click **OK** to complete the assignment of department permissions.

### 3.4.6.1 Add Default Level

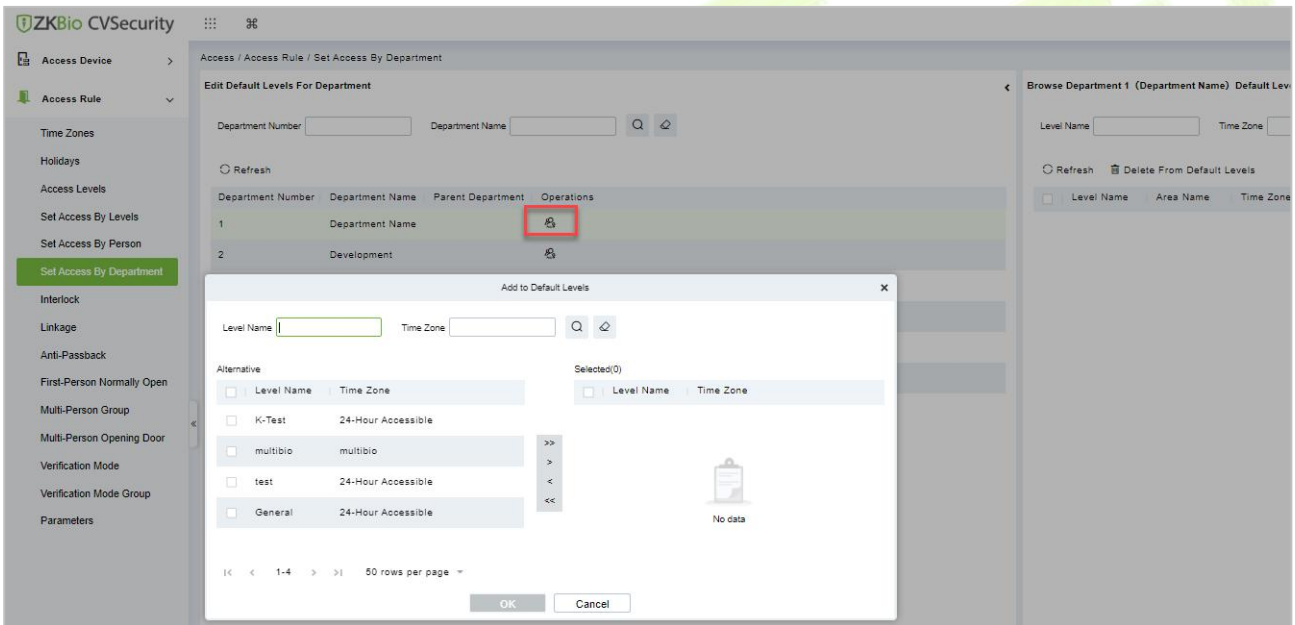


Figure 3- 78 Add Default Level Groups by Department

### 3.4.6.2 Delete Default Level

Select delete default level name, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the default level name.

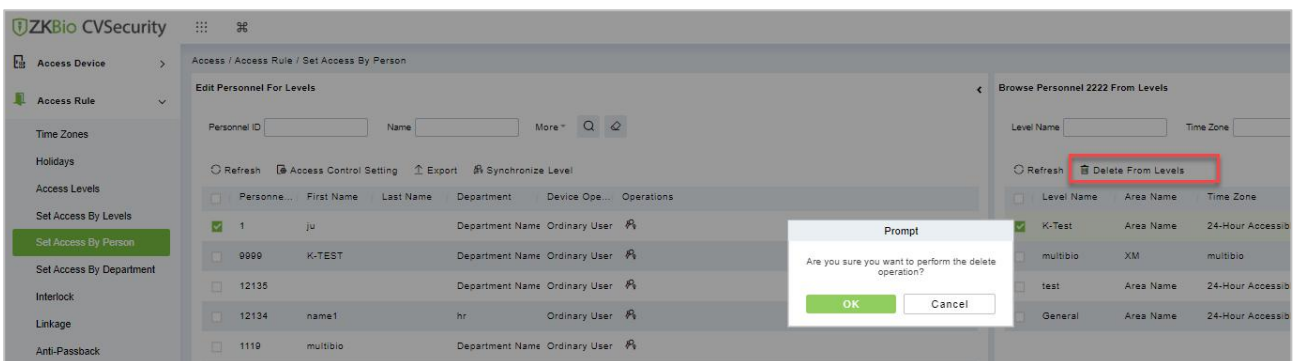


Figure 3- 79 Delete Rights Groups by Department

### 3.4.7 Interlock

Set interlock control between two or more doors on the access controller device: To verify the opening of a door, ensure that all other doors interlocked with the door are closed; otherwise, the door cannot be opened.

This section describes the Step of adding interlock effect in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● **The Premise Conditions:**

The door opening/closing state monitoring is realized by detecting the door magnetic state. Therefore, interlock function requirements:

1. The door status sensor at the device end must be correctly installed
2. In door setting on the software side, the status of the door status sensor must be set to normally open or normally closed (based on the actual installation).

#### 3.4.7.1 Add (New)

● **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Access Control > Interlock**" and click New.

**Step 2:** Select the specified device.

**Instructions:**

When you add a device for which interlock has been configured, the device cannot be found in the drop-down list. After the configured interlock information is deleted, the device is returned to the drop-down list.

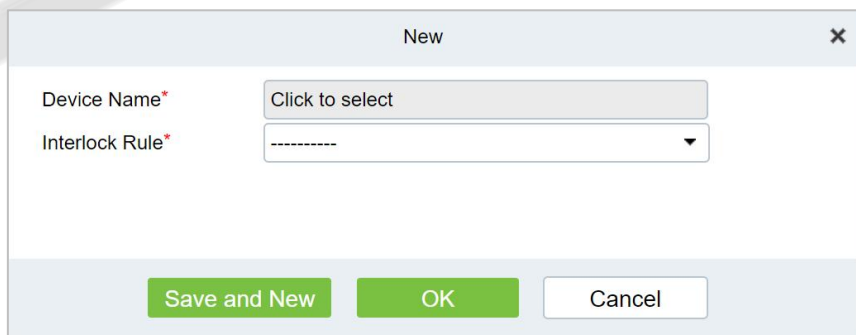
Interlock Settings vary with the number of doors controlled by the device:

Single-door controller: no interlock setting

Dual door controller: 1-2 two door interlock Settings

Four-door controller: 1-2 two-door interlock, 3-4 two-door interlock, 1-2-3 three-door interlock, 1-2-3-4 four-door interlock, 1-2 and 3-4 door interlock

**Step 3:** Select the interlock rule, and click **OK** to complete the settings, as shown in figure below. The new interlock Settings are displayed in the list.



**Figure 3- 80 Adding Interlock Configuration**

| Parameter      | How to set up                            |
|----------------|--|
| Device Name    | You can customize the name of the Device |
| Interlock Rule | Select the configured interlock rule.    |

**Table 3- 12 Description of interlock**

### 3.4.7.2 Delete

Select interlock, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the interlock.

### 3.4.8 Linkage

The use method and scenario of linkage are flexible. After a specific event is triggered by an input point in the **Access Control** system, a linkage action will be generated at the specified output point to control events such as verification opening, alarm and abnormality in the system.

This section describes how to add Step to the linkage effect in ZKBio CVSecurity.

Add (New)

● **The Premise Conditions:**

Before adding a linkage configuration, perform the following operations:

**Step 1:** Add Settings for binding cameras to access control devices, input points, output points, and readers.

**Step 2:** Optional: In the **System Management** module, choose "**System Management > Mail Management**" to set the sender server. The Step of setting the sender server is as follows:

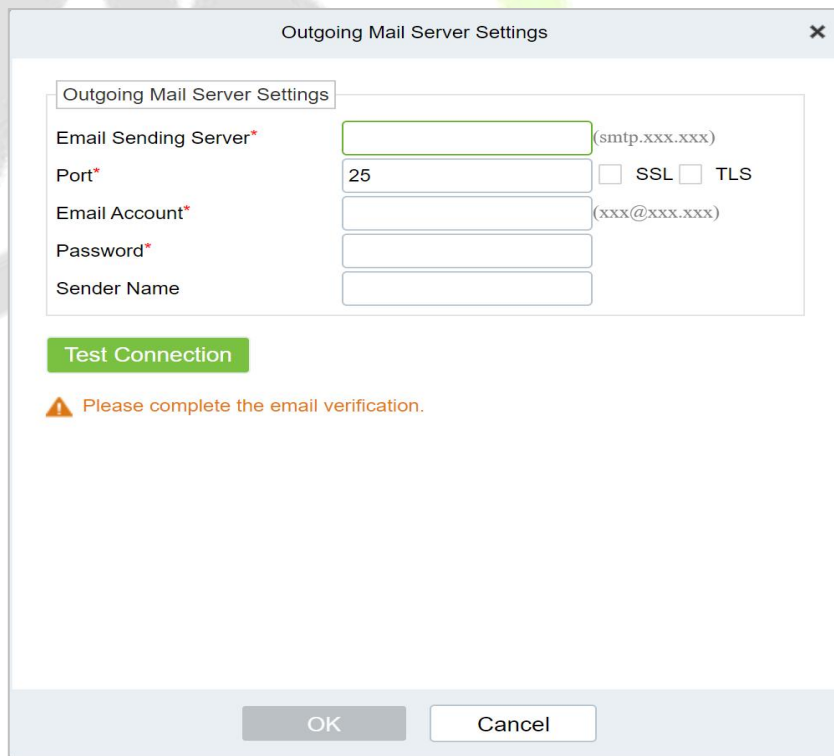
In the System Management module, choose 'system Management > Mail Management'.

Click "**Sender Server Settings**" to pop up the sender server Settings interface.

On the Sender server Settings screen, set parameters as required, as shown in figure below. For parameter Settings, see Table 3-13.

After setting, click "**Test connection**" to receive the email, indicating that the test has passed.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to finish setting email parameters.



**Figure 3- 81 Mailbox Parameters**

| Parameter                 | How to set up  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Email server address/port | You can customize the email server address and port. |

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
|                             | The email products that provide the SMTP server can be used. |
| Email username and password | Enter the user’s name and password for the mailbox.          |
| Name of sender              | Sets the name of the sender on the received message.         |

**Table 3- 13 Mailbox Management Parameters**

**● Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Access Control > Linkage**”.

**Step 2:** On the linkage setting screen, click **Add**, as shown in figure below. Table 3-14 and Table 3-15 refer to the linkage parameters.

**Figure 3- 82 New Linkage Configuration**

| Parameter                   | How to set up   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Linkage Name                | You can customize the linkage name for easy query.  |
| Device                      | Custom Select an added access control device.   |
| Linkage Departure Condition | Select the condition triggered by the linkage Operation, that is, the event type generated by the selected device.                        |
| Input Point                 | Select the input point to set device input.   |
| Output Point                | Select the output point to set device output.   |
| Linkage Action Setting      | You can set the linkage action, including Operation, video linkage, and email. Table 3-3 describes the configurations of the three modes. |

**Table 3- 14 New Linkage Parameters**

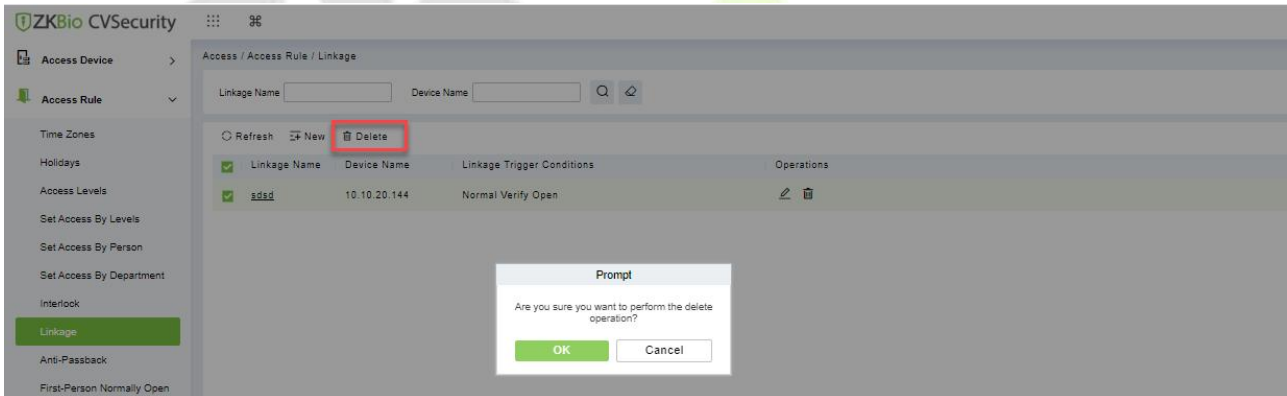
| Parameter                     | How to set up   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| The Output Point of Operation | Set the output action type: close, open, normally open.<br>Sets the delay time if the output action is on.  |
| Video Linkage                 | Pop-up video and display duration: Select pop-up video on the real-time monitoring screen and set the pop-up duration.<br>Video recording and Video Duration: Select Video recording to set the video duration.<br>Capture: Set linkage action whether to take a photo: If a photo is taken, you also need to set whether to pop up on the real-time monitoring interface and the display duration. |
| E-Mail                        | Set the email address that receives the linkage content when a linkage event occurs.  |
| Intrusion                     | Configure the action of arming an area after an event is triggered  |
| Send SMS                      | Configure the recipient of the SMS when the event is triggered  |
| Line                          | Configure the recipient of the Line when the event is triggered   |
| WhatsApp                      | Configure the recipient of the WhatsApp when the event is triggered   |

**Table 3- 15 Setting Linkage Actions**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the linkage configuration.

### 3.4.8.1 Delete

Select linkage, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the linkage.



**Figure 3- 83 Adding Interlock Configuration**

## 3.4.9 Anti-Passback

Some occasions require the personnel that brush card to verify, brush card to come in from a door must brush card to go out from another door, brush card record must enter a strict correspondence. This function can be used when users enable it in the settings. It is generally used in special units, scientific research, bank vaults and other occasions.

This section describes the Step of adding the Anti-Passback effect in ZKBio CVSecurity.

### 3.4.9.1 Add (New)

**● Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Access Control > Anti-Passback**" and click New.

**Step 2:** Select the specified device.

**Instructions:**

When you add an Anti-Passback device, the configured Anti-Passback device is not displayed in the device list. After the antisubmarine information is deleted, the device returns to the device list.

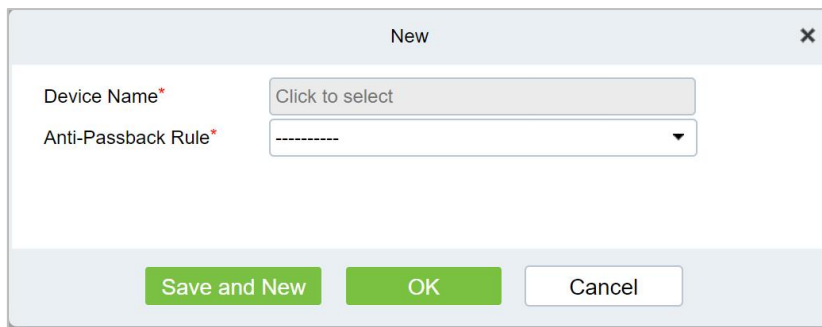
The Anti-Passback setting varies with the number of gates controlled by the equipment:

**Anti-Passback setting of single door controller:** Anti-Passback between readers

**Two controllers:** door 1 Anti-Passback between readers, door 2 Anti-Passback between readers, door 1 and door 2 Anti-Passback

**Four door controllers:** door 1 and door 2 Anti-Passback, door 3 and door 4 Anti-Passback, door 1/ door 2 and door 3/ door 4 Anti-Passback, door 1 and door 2/ door 3/ door 4 Anti-Passback, door 1 and door 2/ door 3/ door 4 Anti-Passback, door 1/ door 2/ door 3/ door 4 Anti-Passback reader

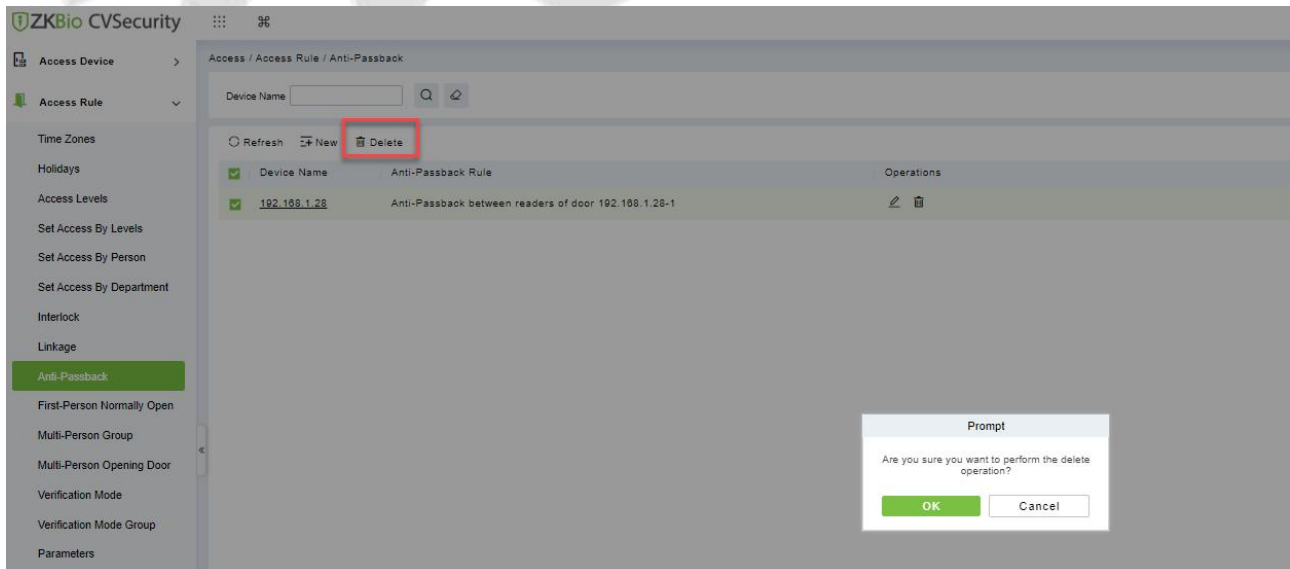
**Step 3:** Select the Anti-Passback rule and click **OK** to complete the settings. The new Anti-Passback Settings are displayed in the list.



**Figure 3- 84 Adding the Anti-Passback Configuration**

### 3.4.9.2 Delete

Select device, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the device.



**Figure 3- 85 Anti-Passback Delete**

### 3.4.10 First-Person Open

In the specified period, after the verification of the first person with normally open permission, the door normally open, the end of the valid period of the door automatically closed.

This section describes how to add Step in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● **The Premise Conditions:**

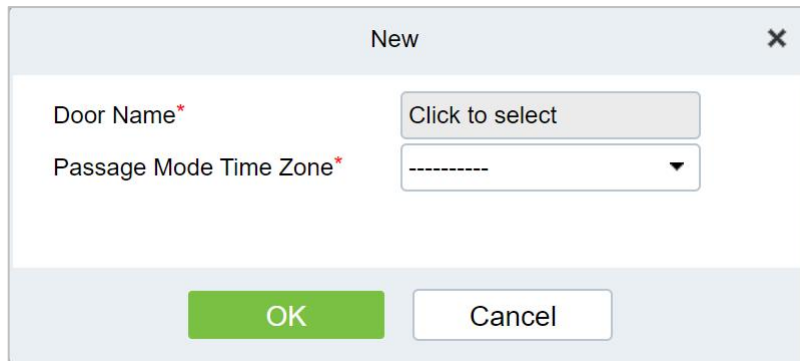
The time range has been set for the Access Control module.

**3.4.10.1 Add (New)**

● **Operation Step:**

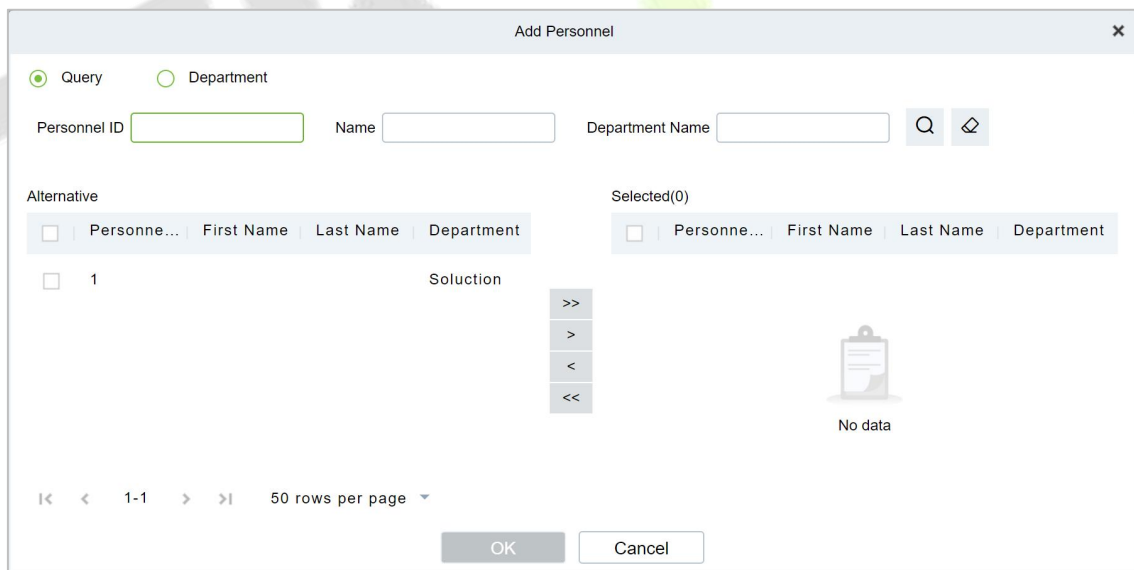
**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Access Control > First person normally Open**" and click New.

**Step 2:** Select the specified device, add Settings for the specified door, and select the normally open time period, and click **OK**, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 3- 86 Configuring the First Person to Open the Door**

**Step 3:** Click "**Add People**" on the interface of "**Opening of the first person**". After adding people, click **OK** to complete the setting of "opening of the first person".



**Figure 3- 87 Adding A First Person Normally Open Person Configuration**

**3.4.10.2 Delete**

Select personnel ID, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the personnel ID.

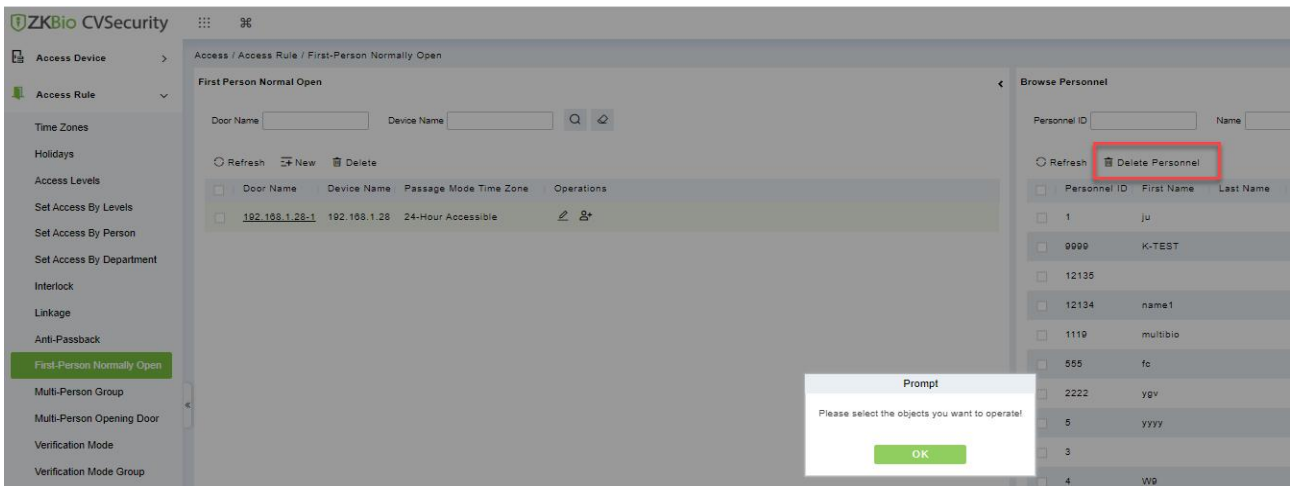


Figure 3- 88 Delete Person Normally Open Person Configuration

### 3.4.11 Multi-Person Group

The door will open only after the consecutive verification of multiple people. Any person verifying outside of this combination (even if the person belongs to other valid combination) will interrupt the procedure and you need to wait 10 seconds to restart verification. It will not open by verification by only one of the combinations.

#### 3.4.11.1 Add (New)

**Step 1:** Click **Access Rule > Multi-Person Group > New** to access the following edit interface:

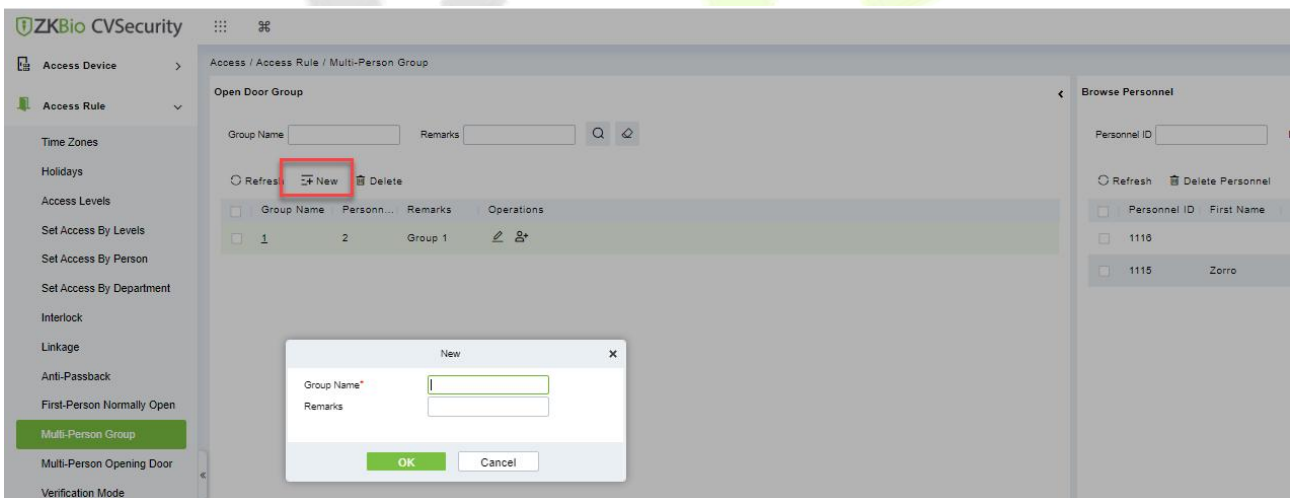


Figure 3- 89 Adding A Multi-Person Group

**Group Name:** Any combination of up to 30 characters that cannot be identical to an existing group name.

After editing, click **OK** to save and return. The added Multi-Person Personnel Group will appear in the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Add personnel** under Related Operations to add personnel to the group.

**Step 3:** After selecting and adding personnel, click **OK** to save and return.

**Note:** A person can only be grouped into one group.

#### 3.4.11.2 Edit

Click **Access Rule > Multi-Person Group > Edit** after selecting the required section in the interface.

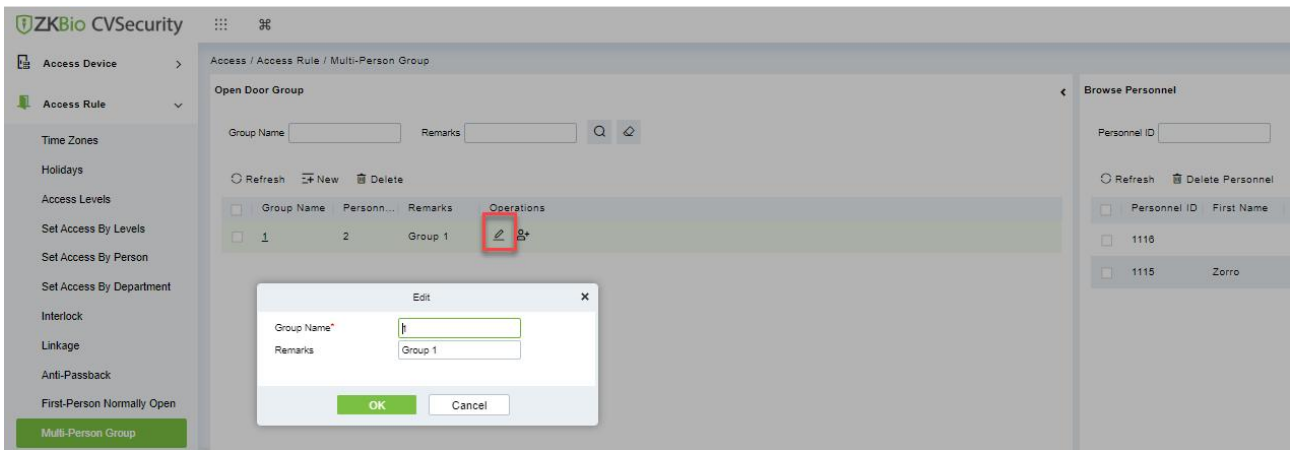


Figure 3- 90 Edit Multi-Person Group

### 3.4.11.3 Add Personnel

Click **Access Rule > Multi-Person Group > Add Personnel** after selecting the required section in the interface.

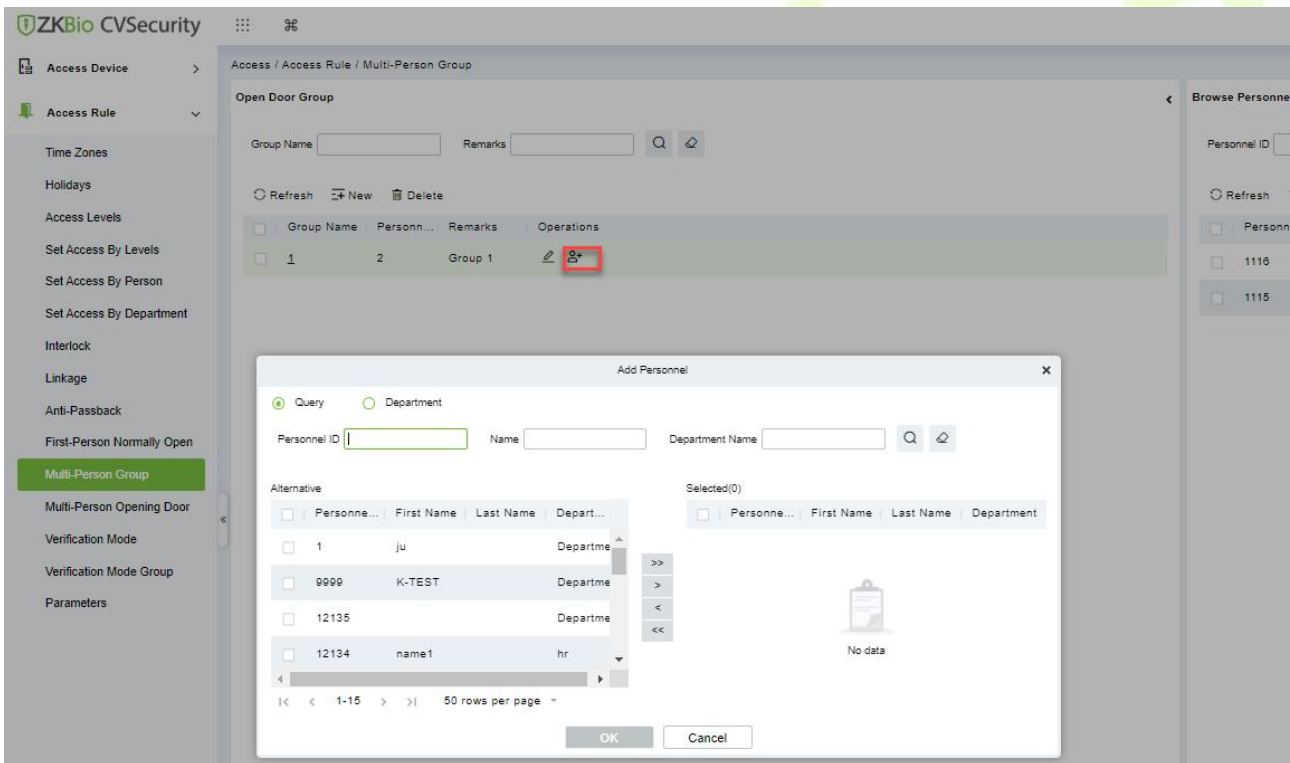


Figure 3- 91 Adding A personnel for Multi-Person Group

### 3.4.11.4 Delete

Click **Access Rule > Multi-person group > Delete** after selecting the required section in the interface.

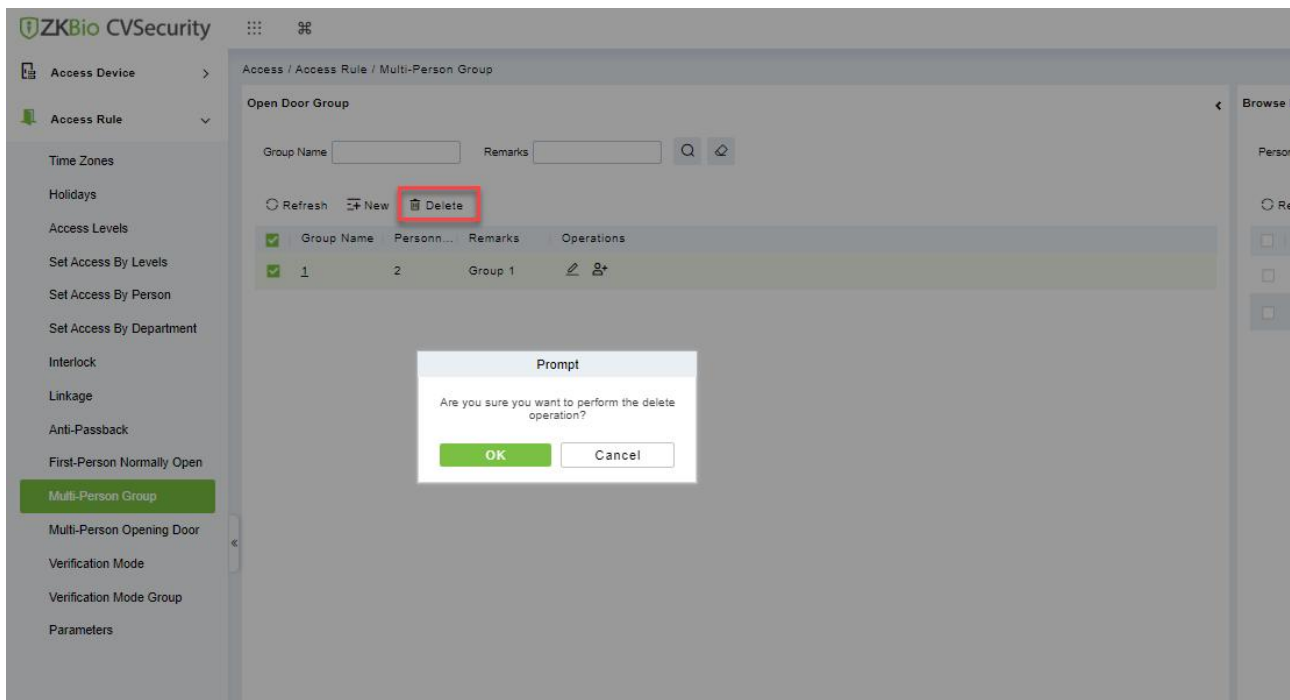


Figure 3- 92 Delete A Multi-Person Group

### 3.4.12 Multi-Person Verification

In a specific scenario, it is necessary for more than one person to be present at the same time to verify their identity before they can open the door through permission verification.

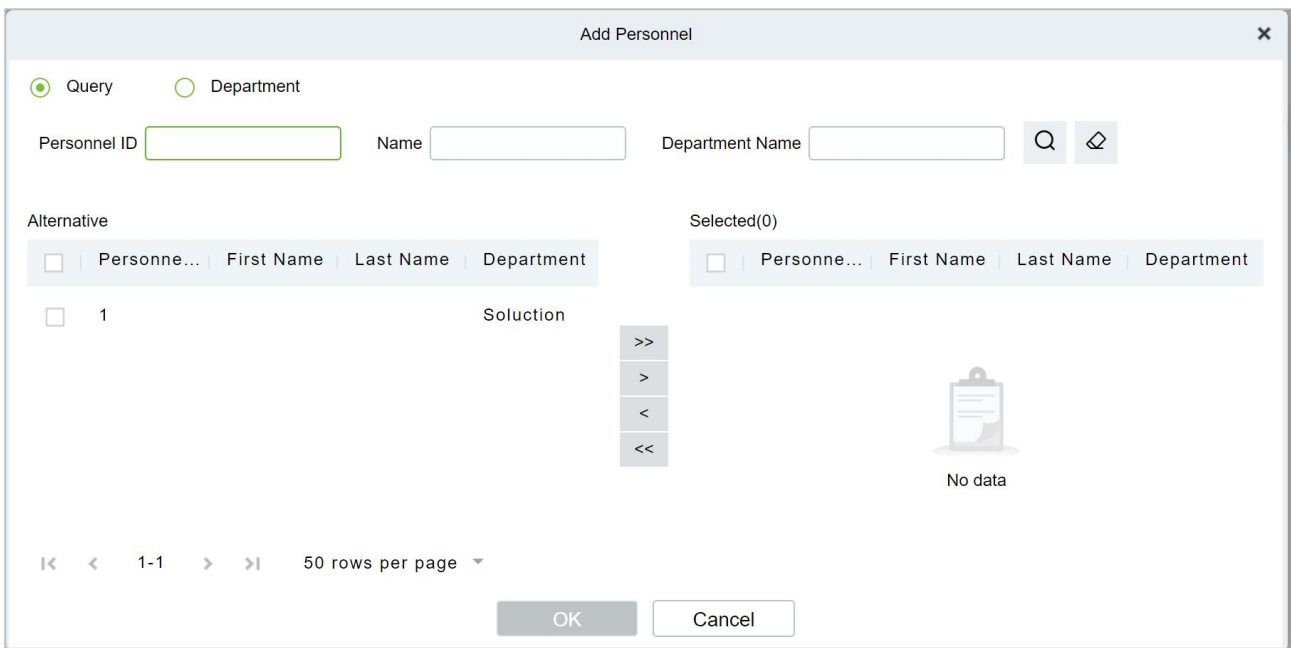
#### ● Instructions:

1. In an application scenario where, multiple users are required to verify their identities before opening the door, the authentication process is limited to N (no more than 5) by grouping people into groups.
2. In practice, if all the personnel to be verified are of the same type or level, it can be verified by multiple people in a single group. If there are different categories or levels of personnel, you can set a certain number of personnel in each group to achieve verification.
3. Before the multi-party door verification rule is reached, if the verification fails during the process, wait 10 seconds for the verification again.

#### 3.4.12.1 Add (New)

**Step 1:** In the **Access Control** module, choose "**Access Rule > Multiple Door Opening Personnel Group**" and click **New**. After filling in the corresponding parameters, click **OK** to save the settings.

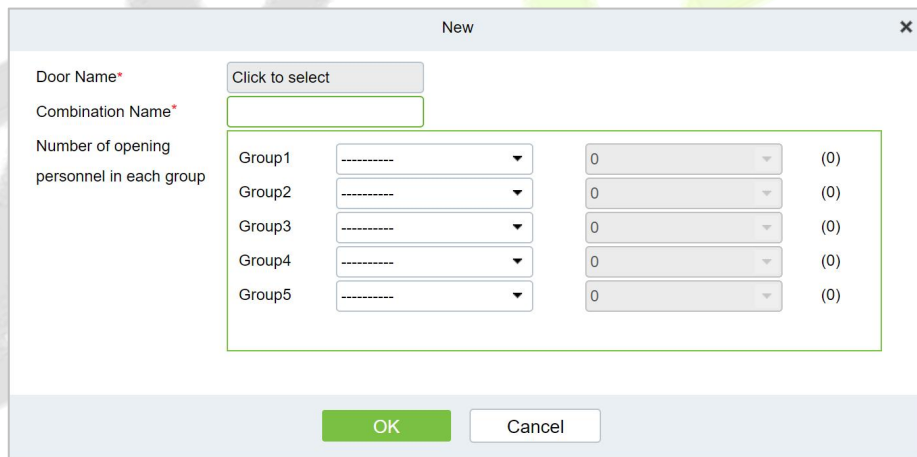
**Step 2:** Click "**Add Personnel**" on the right of the list of created multi-person door opening personnel, select the personnel to be added to the group in the pop-up function, and click **OK** to save the settings.



**Figure 3- 93 Adding Multiple Door Openers**

**Step 3:** In the multi-person door opening interface, click **Add**, set permissions for multi-person door opening personnel group.

**Step 4:** On the page for adding multiple door users, select the specified door, group information for multiple door users, and the number of verification personnel for each group, and click **OK** to save the settings.



**Figure 3- 94 Adding Multiple Door Openers**

**Step 5:** In the **Access Control** module, choose “**Access Rule > Authentication Mode Rule**” and click **Add** to set the access control authentication rule for the corresponding period.

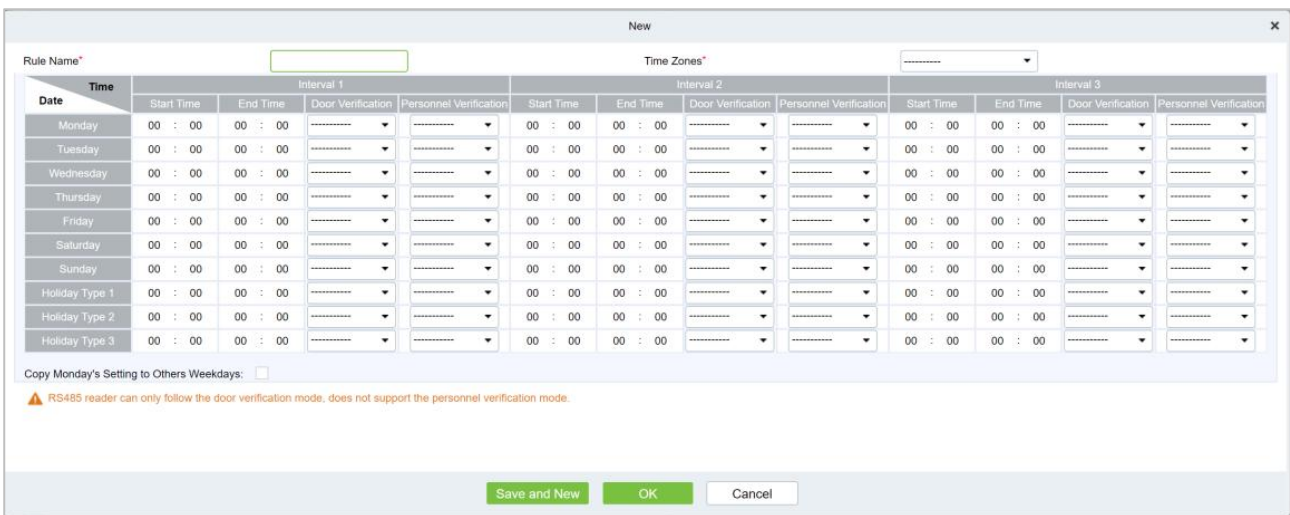


Figure 3- 95 Delete A Multi-Person Group

**Step 6:** Click **Add Door** on the right of the created authentication mode rule, select a door, and set the authentication mode rule for the door.

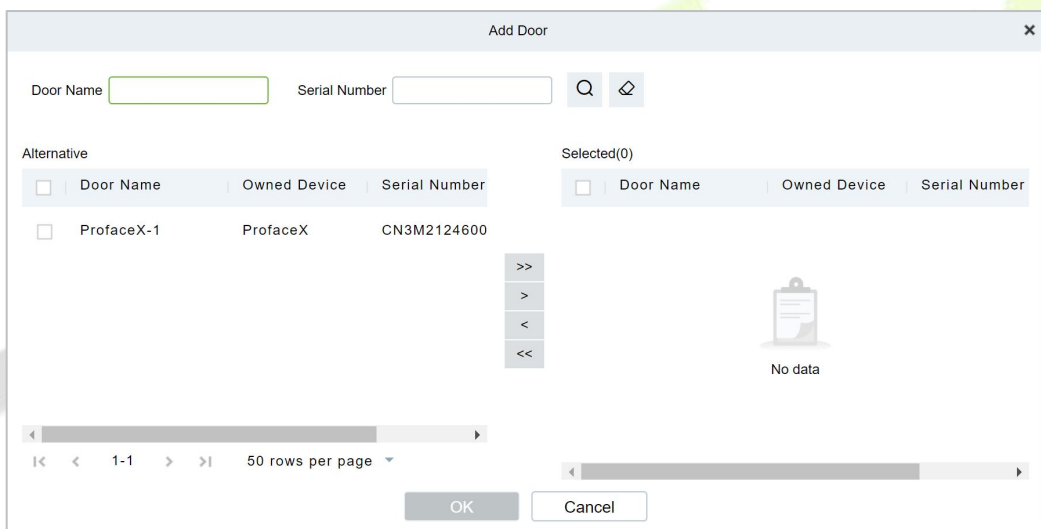


Figure 3- 96 Verification Rule Configuration for Adding Multiple Door Openers

**Step 7:** click **OK** to save the settings.

### 3.4.12.2 Delete

Click **Access Rule** > **Multi-person opening door** > **Delete** after selecting the required section in the interface.

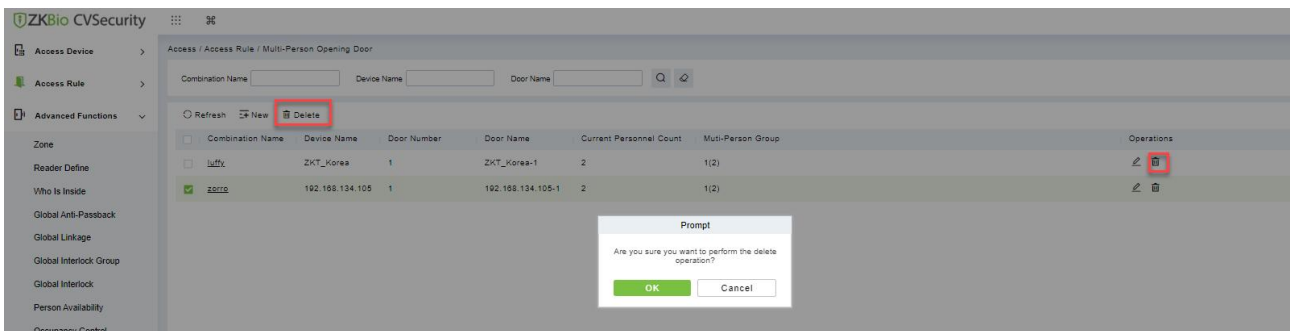


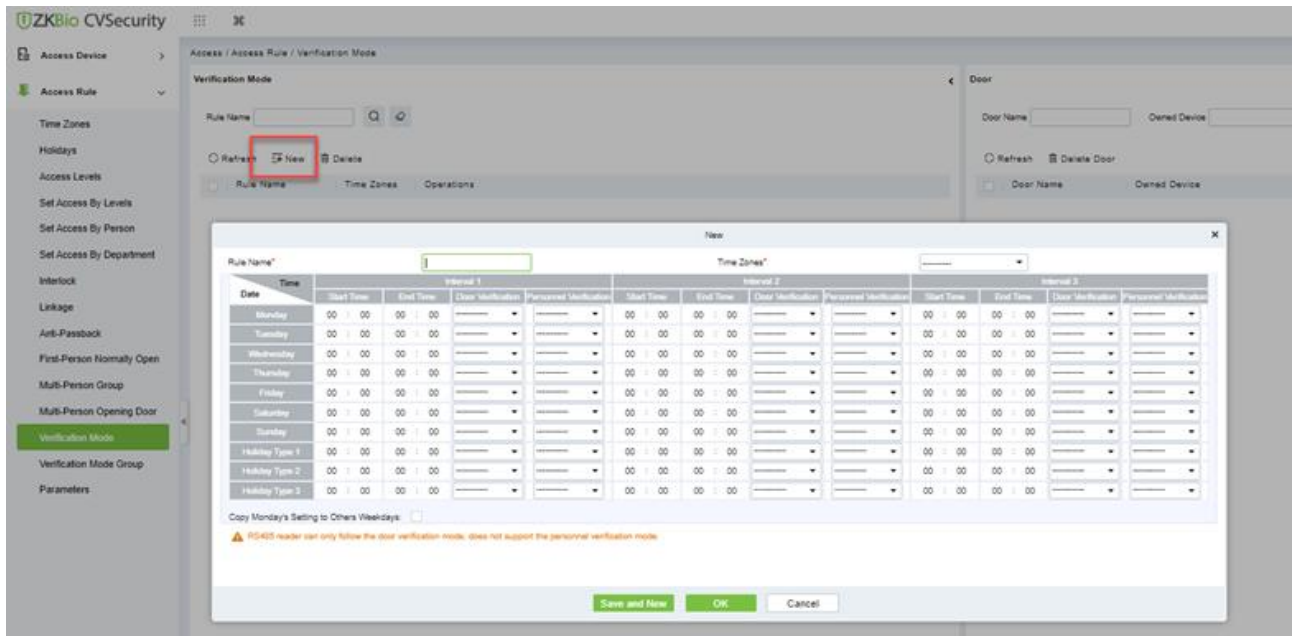
Figure 3- 97 Delete A Multi-Person Group

### 3.4.13 Verification Mode

You can set verification modes for doors and personnel separately in a specified time segment.

#### 3.4.13.1 New

**Step 1:** Click **Access Rule > Verification Mode > New** to go to the page for adding a verification mode rule.



**Figure 3- 98 Add Verification mode**

**Step 2:** Set the following parameters: Select a rule name (not repeatable), the time segment, and verification mode for a door or person in each time segment.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to finish the setting.

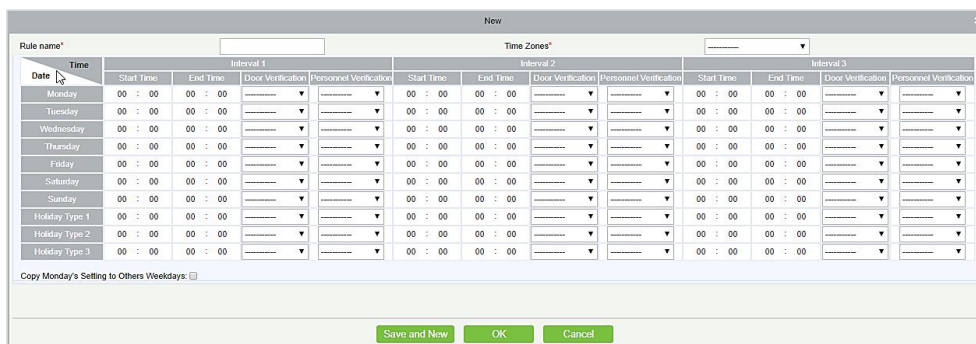
On the list page, you can add or delete doors in the verification mode rule.

#### 3.4.13.2 Verification Mode Group

You can set verification modes for doors and personnel separately in a specified time segment.

● Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Access Rule > Verification Mode > New** to go to the page for adding a verification mode rule.



**Figure 3- 99 Add Verification mode Group**

**Step 2:** Set the following parameters: Select a rule name (not repeatable), the time segment, and verification mode for a door or person in each time segment.

**Step 3:** Click OK to finish the setting.

On the list page, you can add or delete doors in the verification mode rule.

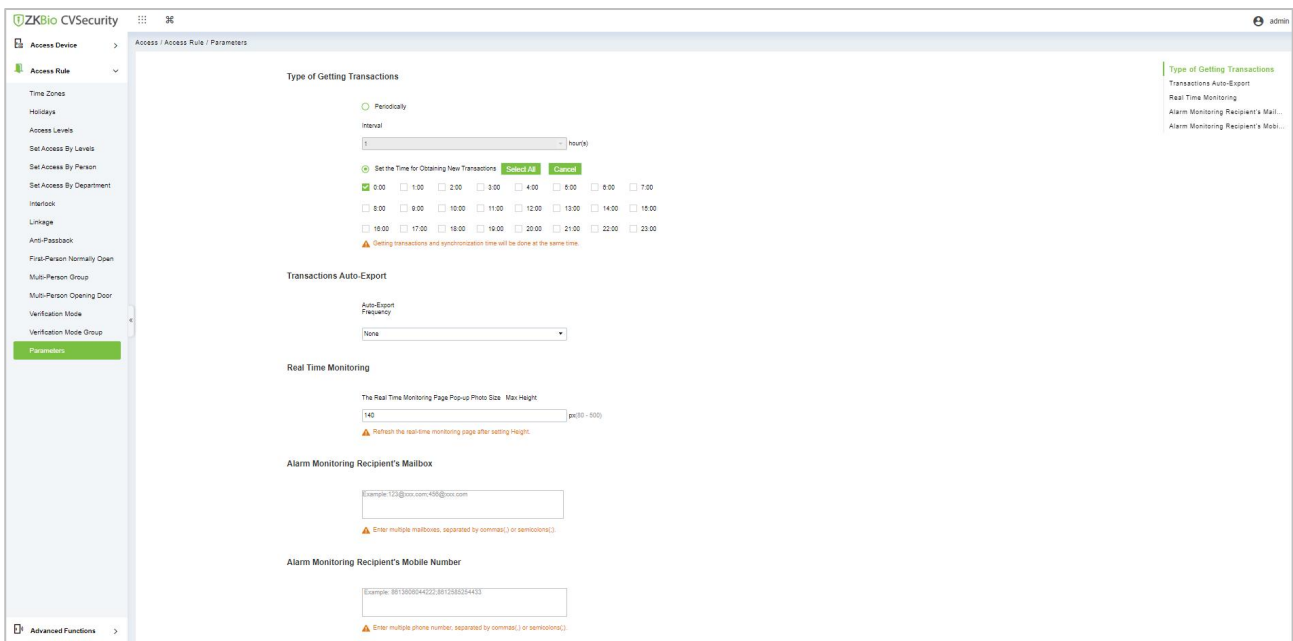
**Note:** If a rule includes the verification mode for personnel, you cannot select doors with the RS485 readers when adding doors. You can modify only the configuration on the reader setting page before adding doors.

- **Verification Mode Group:**

Set appropriate personnel for configured verification mode rule.

### 3.4.14 Parameters

Click **Access Rule > Parameters** to enter the parameter setting interface:



**Figure 3- 100 Add Parameters**

- **Type of Getting Transactions:**

#### Periodically

Start from the setting and efficient time, the system attempts to download new transactions every time interval.

#### Set the Time for Obtaining New Transactions

The selected Time is up, the system will attempt to download new transactions automatically.

#### Transaction Auto-Export

The user can choose the export frequency and the data to be exported each time. If the export frequency is selected as **“By day”**, you must set the time to export the data. You must also select the mode of export. It can be daily transactions or all the system data (30000 data units can be sent at a time. We can customize the data that we need to export from custom report 1 and custom report 2.

If the export frequency is selected as **“By Month”**, you must select the day to export the data. It can be the first day of the month or you can specify any particular date. Then select the export frequency as Daily Data or all System data. Finally, add the recipient’s mail address to send the transaction data.



**Figure 3- 101 Transaction Auto Export**

### The Real Time Monitoring Page Pop-up Staff Photo Size


When an access control event occurs, the personnel photo will pop up. The size of pop photos shall be between 80 to 500 pixels.



**Figure 3- 102 Real Time Monitoring**

### Alarm Monitoring Recipient Mailbox

The system will send email to alarm monitoring recipient's mailbox if there is any event.



**Figure 3- 103 Alarm Monitoring Recipient Mailbox**

### Alarm Monitoring Recipient Mobile Number

The system will send alarm monitoring recipients to mobile, if there is any event.



**Figure 3- 104 Alarm Monitoring Recipient Mobile Number**

## 3.5 Advanced Function

Advanced access control is optional. You must obtain permission to activate the advanced access control.

In addition to the global linkage function, enable the background authentication function first.

The access control area must be defined when advanced functions such as global Anti-Passback are used.

### 3.5.1 Area Definition

Divide areas and define access control areas. The access control area is reserved for advanced access control but not for system management.

This section describes Step in ZKBio CVSecurity to add an access control area.

#### 3.5.1.1 Add (New)

● **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Advanced function > Area Definition**" and click New.

**Step 2:** On the page that is displayed, set related parameters, and click **OK**.

The 'New' dialog box has a title bar with a close button (X). It contains three input fields: 'Zone Code\*' (with a red asterisk), 'Name\*' (with a red asterisk), and 'Remarks'. Below the fields are two buttons: 'OK' (green) and 'Cancel' (white).

Figure 3- 105 Page for Adding Access Control Areas

#### 3.5.1.2 Delete

Click **Advanced function > Area Definition > Delete** after selecting the required section in the interface.

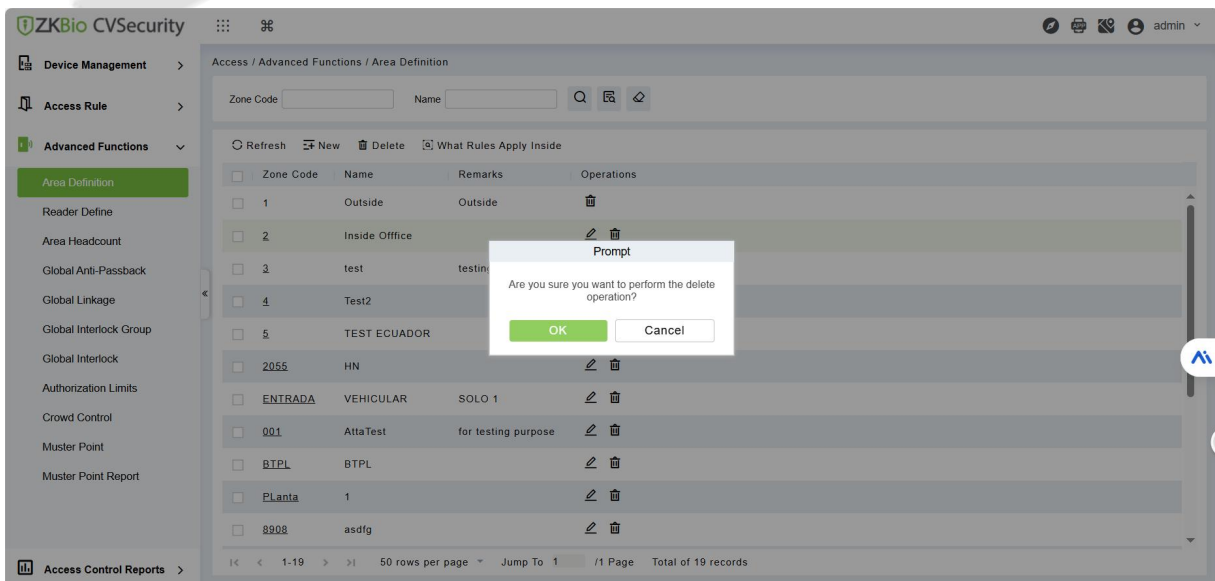


Figure 3- 106 Delete Access Control Areas

### 3.5.1.3 What Rules Apply Inside

Click **What rules inside** after selecting the required section in the interface we can check the rules are applied for the particular zone.

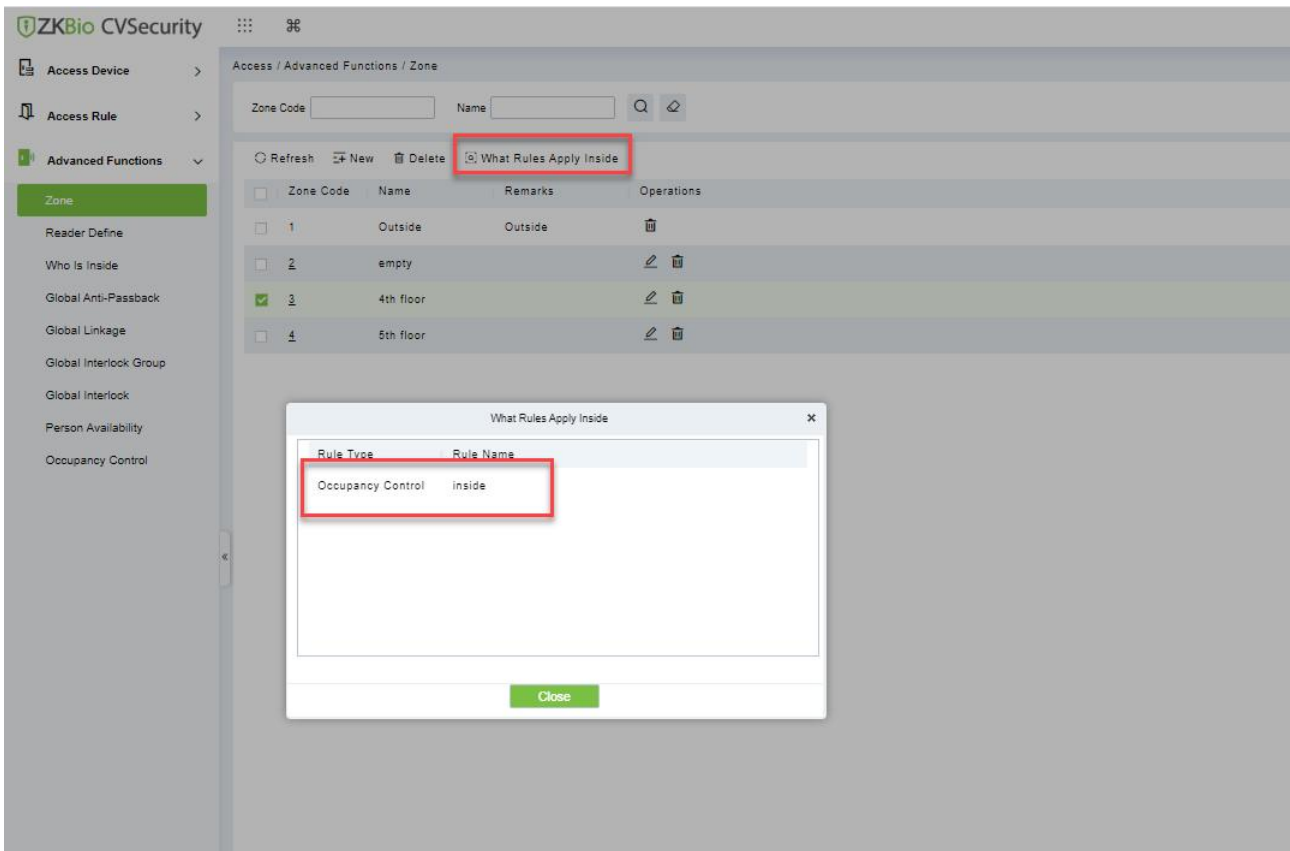


Figure 3- 107 What Rules Apply Inside

## 3.5.2 Reader Definition

This function is configured based on the access control area. To use the global Anti-Passback function, you must define the reader.

This section describes the Step of adding a Reader definition in ZKBio CVSecurity.

### 3.5.2.1 Add (New)

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Advanced function > Reader Define**" and click New.

**Step 2:** On the page that is displayed, set related parameters and click **OK**.

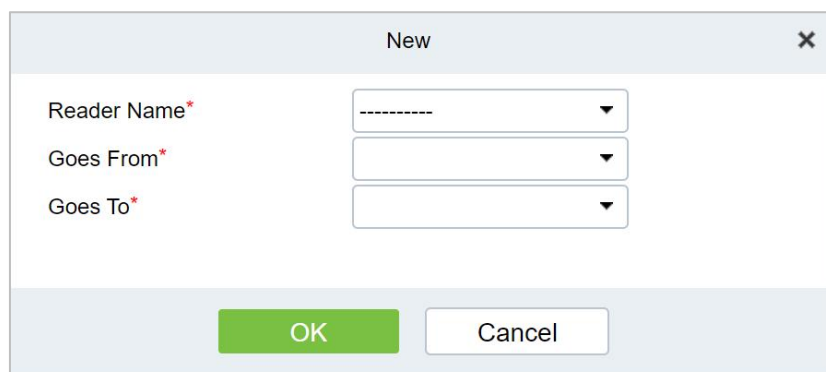


Figure 3- 108 Page for Adding a Reader

### 3.5.2.2 Batch New

**Step 1:** Click **Advanced Functions > Reader Define > Batch New** to enter the batch add interface:

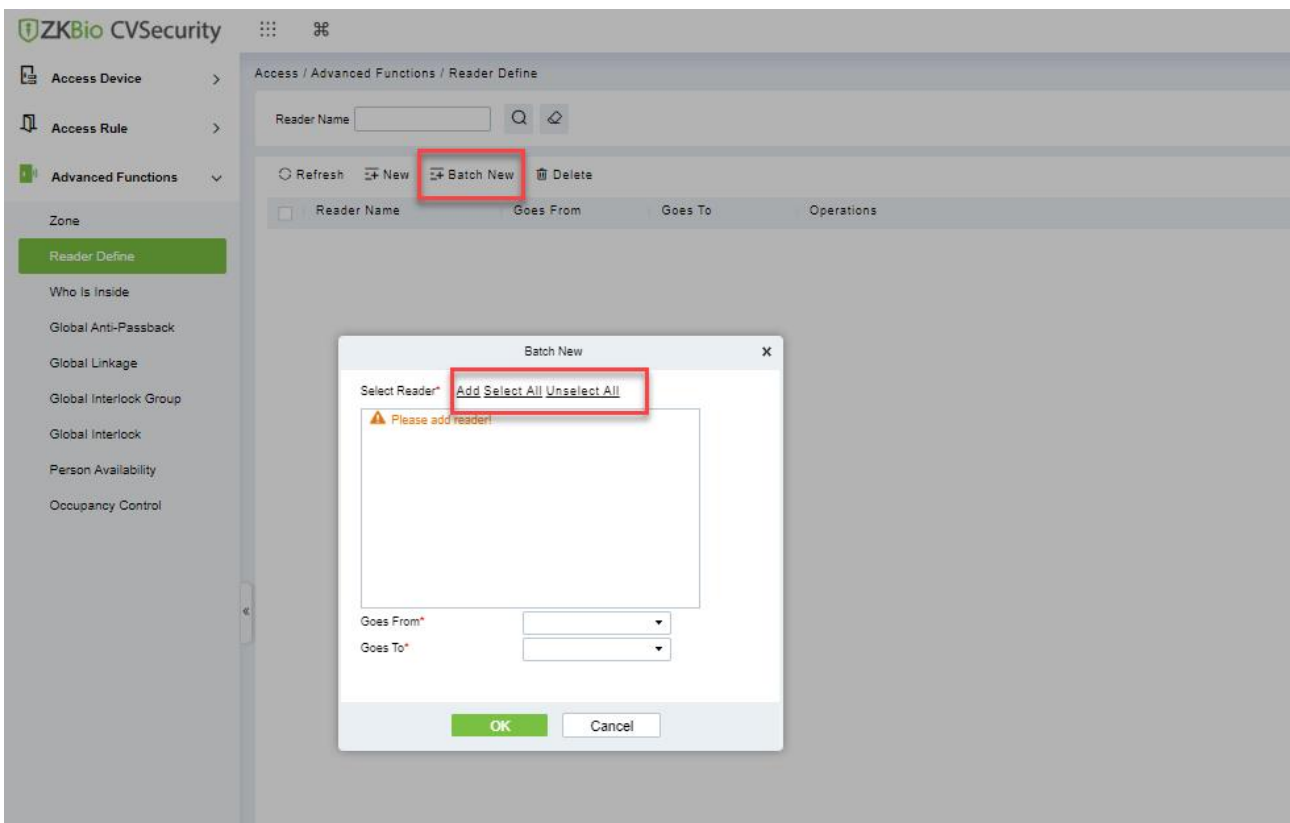


Figure 3- 109 Batch New

**Step 2:** Click **Add**, select Reader(s) and move towards right and click **OK**.

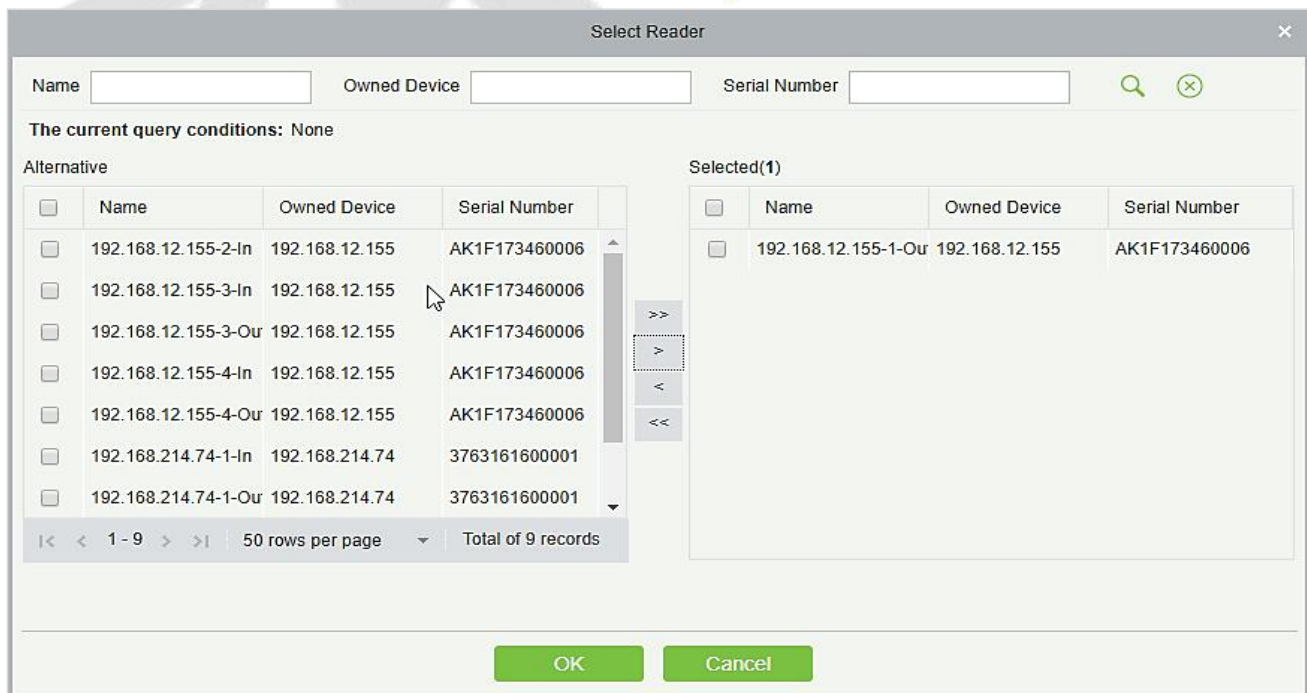


Figure 3- 110 Add Reader Define

**Step 3:** Set Goes from and Goes to as required and press **OK**.

### 3.5.2.3 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Reader Define**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.

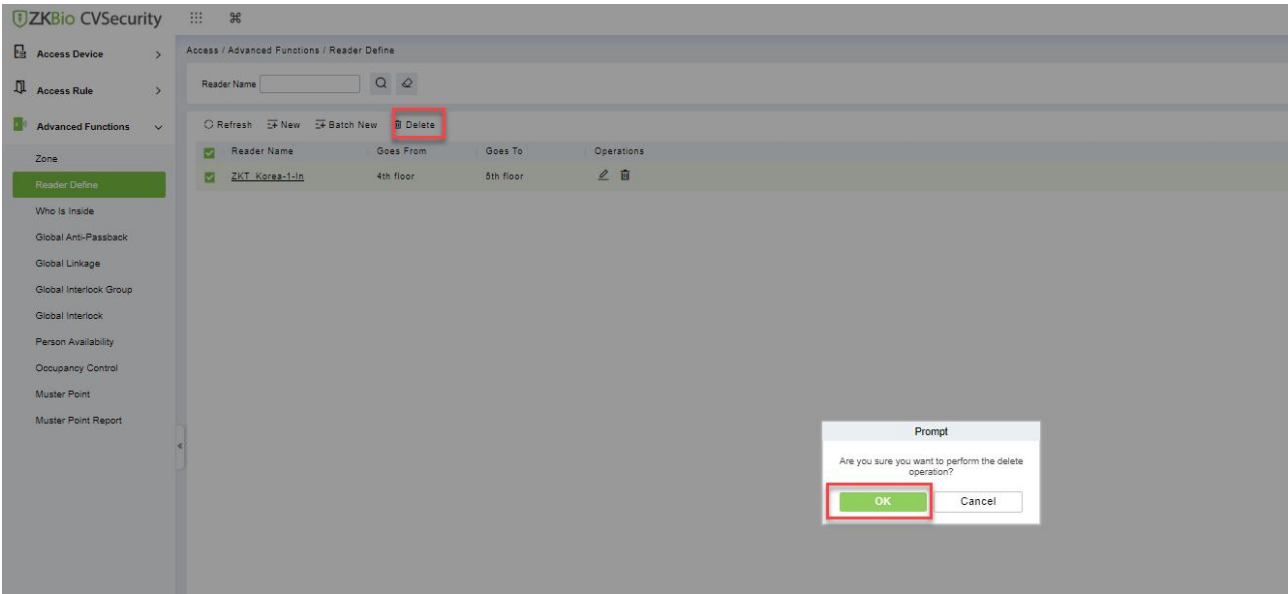


Figure 3- 111 Delete Reader Define

### 3.5.3 Area Headcount

After entering the access control area, users can use this function to view the personnel in the access control area. You can choose the access control area tree to view the personnel in the corresponding access control area.

This section describes how to view the Steps of people in a region in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Advanced Function >Area Headcount**".

**Step 2:** On the page for viewing personnel in a region, you can select the area on the left to view and delete personnel in the area, as shown in figure below.

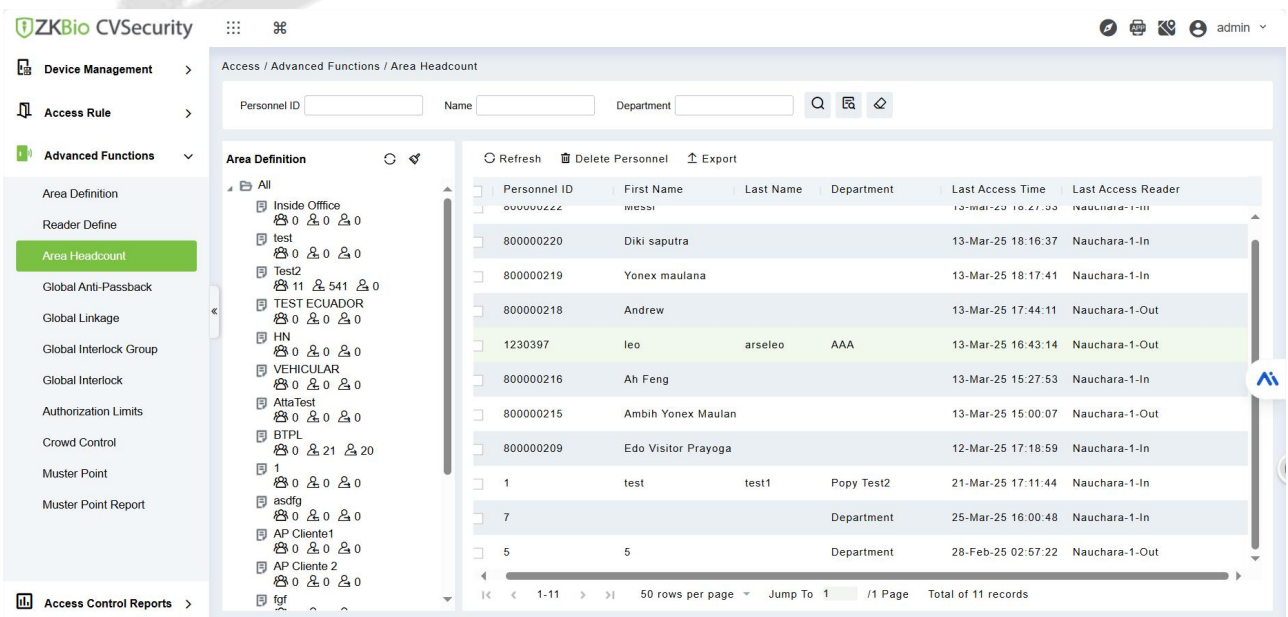


Figure 3- 112 View Area Personnel Page

### 3.5.3.1 Delete Personnel

Select personnel ID, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the level name.

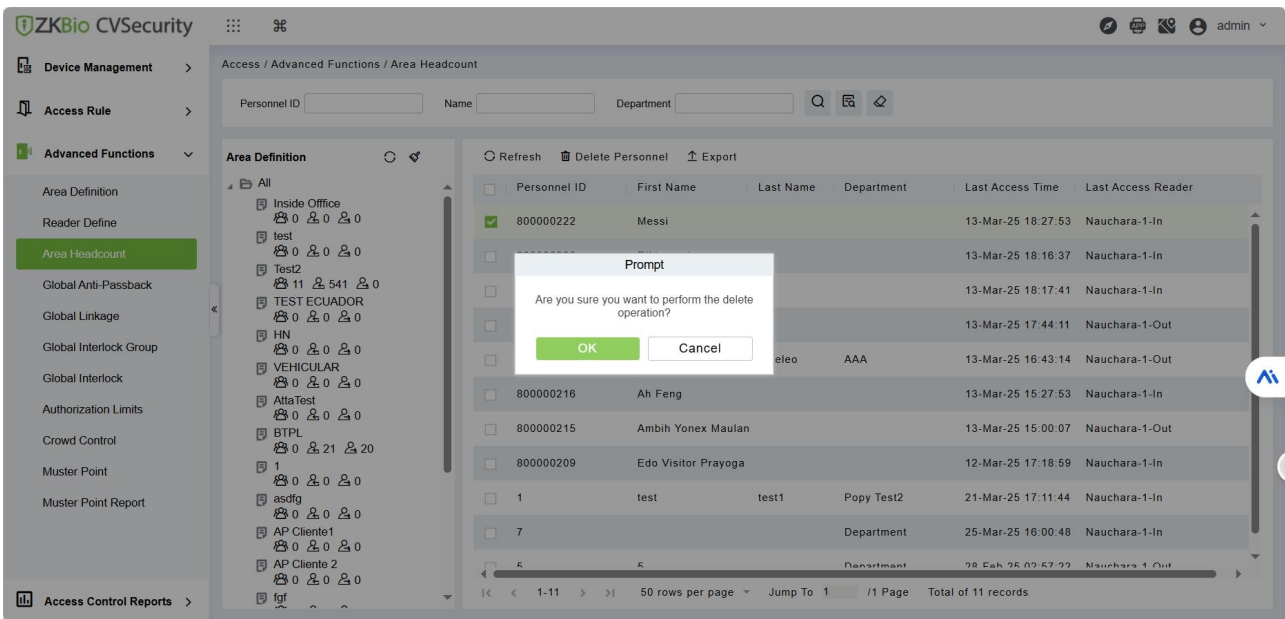


Figure 3- 113 Delete Area Headcount

### 3.5.3.2 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

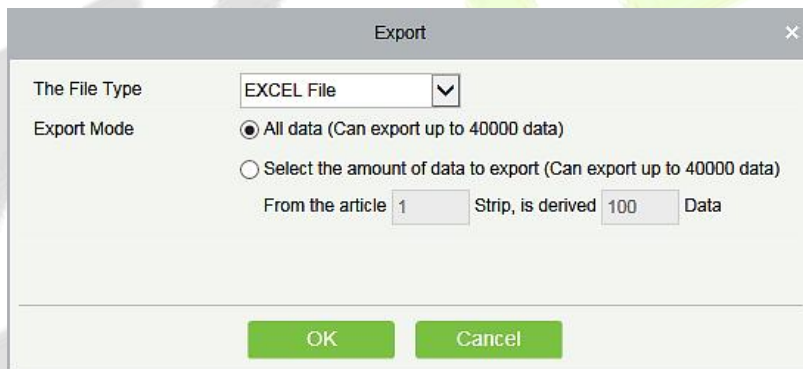


Figure 3- 114 Export

| ZKTECO Device  |               |           |                    |                         |                |                 |        |              |                 |                                  |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Device Name    | Serial Number | Area Name | Communication Type | Network Connection Mode | IP Address     | RS485 Parameter | Enable | Device Model | Register device | Firmware Version                 |
| 192.168.218.80 | 20100501999   | Area Name | HTTP               | Wired                   | 192.168.218.80 |                 | Enable | C3-400Pro    |                 | AC Ver 4.7.7.3033<br>Jun 16 2017 |

Figure 3- 115 Export Area Headcount

## 3.5.4 Global Anti-Passback

Global Anti-Passback Settings can be carried out across devices, and only push devices support global Anti-Passback functions. This function supports logical Anti-Passback, timed Anti-Passback and timed logical Anti-Passback, and can be configured for specific personnel.

This section describes the Step configuration of global Anti-Passback in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● The Premise Condition:

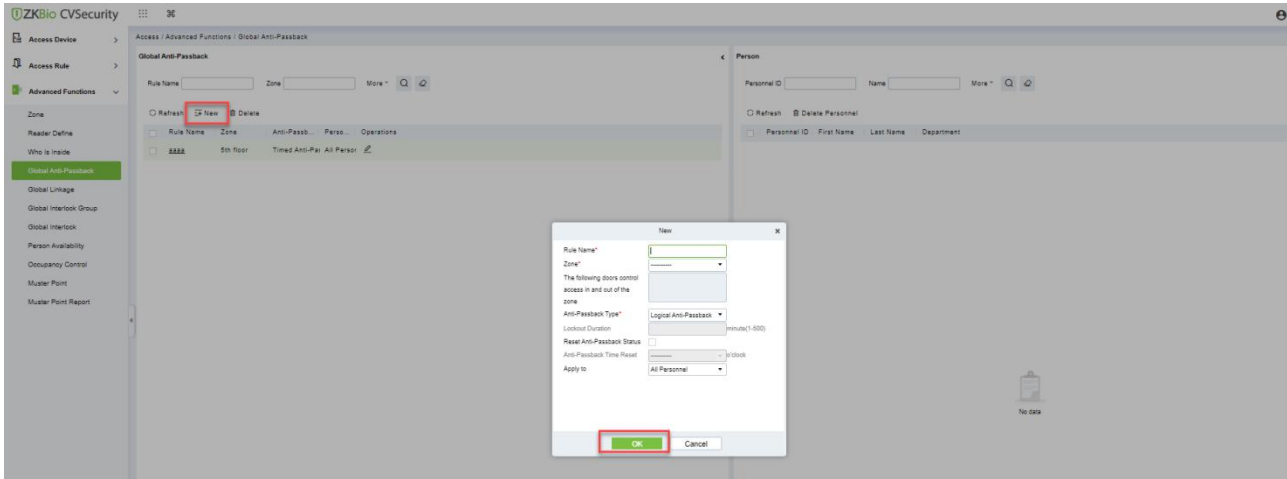
1. Background authentication has been enabled on the device.

2. Set the access control area and reader definition.

### 3.5.4.1 Add (New)

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Advanced Access Control > Global Anti-Passback**" and Click New.



**Figure 3- 116 Add Global Anti-Passback**

**Step 2:** On the page for adding global Anti-Passback Settings, set related parameters and click **OK**, as shown in figure below. For parameter description, see Table 3-16.

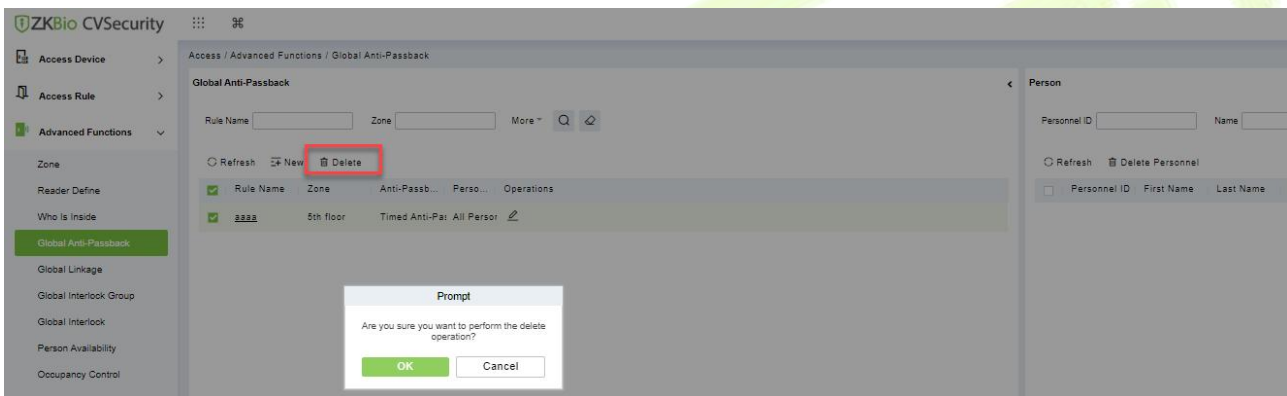
| Parameter  | Description   |
|--|---|
| Rule Name  | The value can contain a maximum of 30 characters.   |
| Entrance Guard Area                                      | Select an option from the access control area drop-down list box.   |
| The Door List Controls Access to The Access Control Area | The corresponding door information is displayed. The same gate shall not be used to control two independent Anti-Passback boundaries.   |
| Anti-Passback Type                                       | It contains three types of Anti-Passback: logic Anti-Passback, timing Anti-Passback and timing logic Anti-Passback.<br>instructions<br>Logical Anti-Passback: strictly follow the "one in, one out" rule in the Anti-Passback area, otherwise the verification will not open<br>Timed Anti-Passback: A user can enter the Anti-Passback area only once within a specified period of time. After the specified period expires, the user's status will be cleared and the user can enter the Anti-Passback area again<br>Timed logical Anti-Passback: the user can open the door normally only after following the exit and entry rules of logical Anti-Passback.Timing logic antisubmarine is only used in abnormal situations. For example: if the logical Anti-Passback time is set and the personnel follows others out, the personnel cannot swipe the card machine within the set locking time. The Anti-Passback state will be reset after the set locking time, and the traffic can continue. |
| The Locking Time   | You can set the locking type only when you select timing Anti-Passback or logic Anti-Passback type.   |
| Reset Global Anti-Passback Status                        | Clear the Anti-Passback status of personnel in the system and restore the initialization status.  |

| Parameter                | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Reset Anti-Passback Time | The reset time can be selected only when reset global Anti-Passback status is selected.<br>When it is time to reset Anti-Passback, the system will automatically clear the Anti-Passback status of all personnel in the access control area.  |
| Applied                  | All personnel, selected personnel, except selected personnel three types: instructions<br>All personnel: This type can only be edited. Personnel selection is not supported<br>Selected Personnel: If you select this type, you can add personnel. This Anti-Passback type takes effect only for these personnel.<br>Personnel other than selected: Select this type, add personnel, this Anti-Passback type will only take effect for personnel other than selected. |

**Table 3- 16 Global Anti-Passback Settings**

### 3.5.4.2 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Global Anti-Pass**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.



**Figure 3- 117 Delete Global Anti-Passback**

## 3.5.5 Global Linkage

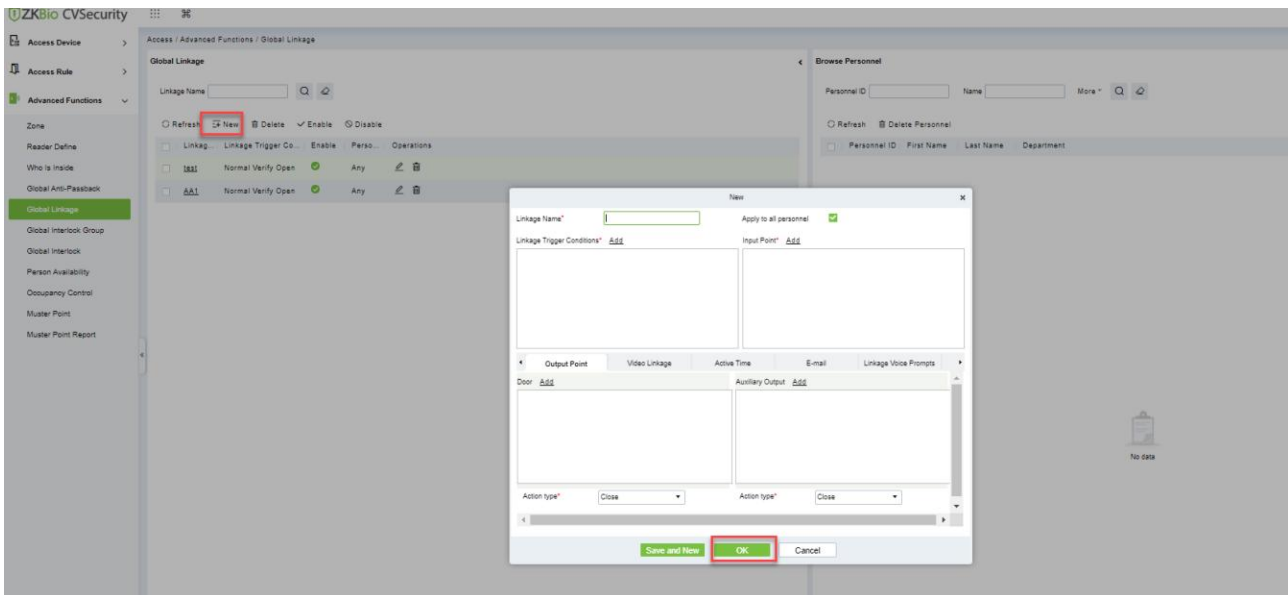
The global linkage function can be set across devices. Only the push device supports the global linkage function

This section describes how to configure Step for global linkage in ZKBio CVSecurity.

### 3.5.5.1 Add (New)

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Advanced Function > Global Linkage**” and Click New.



**Figure 3- 118 Add Global Linkage**

**Step 2:** On the page for adding global linkage, set related parameters and tap **OK**, as shown in figure below. Table 3-17 describes the parameter description to complete global linkage Settings.

| Parameter                 | Operation Instructions  |
|---------------------------|---|
| Linkage Name              | You can customize the linkage name for easy query.  |
| It Works for Everyone     | After this parameter is selected, the linkage Settings take effect on all personnel.  |
| Linkage Trigger Condition | Select the condition triggered by the linkage Operation, that is, the event type generated by the selected device.  |
| Input Point               | Select the input point to set device input.   |
| Dots                      | Select the output point to set device output.<br>Set the output action type: close, open, normally open.<br>Sets the delay time if the output action is on.   |
| Video Linkage             | Pop-up video and display duration: Select pop-up video on the real-time monitoring screen and set the pop-up duration.<br>Video recording and Video Duration: Select Video recording to set the video duration.<br>Capture: Set linkage action whether to take a photo: If a photo is taken, you also need to set whether to pop up on the real-time monitoring interface and the display duration. |
| Valid Time                | The reset time can be selected only when reset global Anti-Passback status is selected<br>When it is time to reset Anti-Passback, the system will automatically clear the Anti-Passback status of all personnel in the access control area.   |
| Mail                      | Set the email address that receives the linkage content when a linkage event occurs   |

**Table 3- 17 lobal Linkage Parameters**

**Apply to all personnel:** If this option is selected, this linkage setting is effective for all personnel.

**Active Time:** Set the active time of the linkage setting.

**Step 3:** Choose Global Linkage trigger conditions, the input point (System will filter devices according to the choice in first step) and the output point, Set up linkage action. For more details about these parameters, please refer to Linkage Setting.

**Note:** You can select multiple Door Events, but “Fail to connect server”, “Recover connection” and “Device connection off” will be filtered automatically from Door Event.

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to save and quit. The added Global Linkage will display in the list.

### 3.5.5.2 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Global Linkage**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.

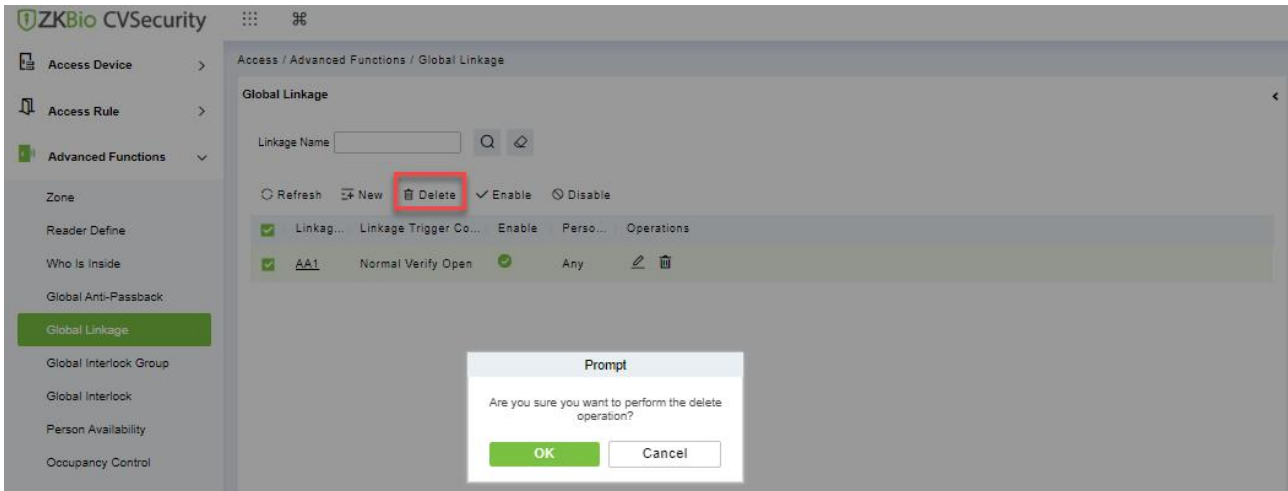


Figure 3- 119 Delete Global Linkage

### 3.5.5.3 Enable

After the device is enabled, the upload and download of data are enabled normally. (When the device is enabled, users can choose whether it is a registration device or not).

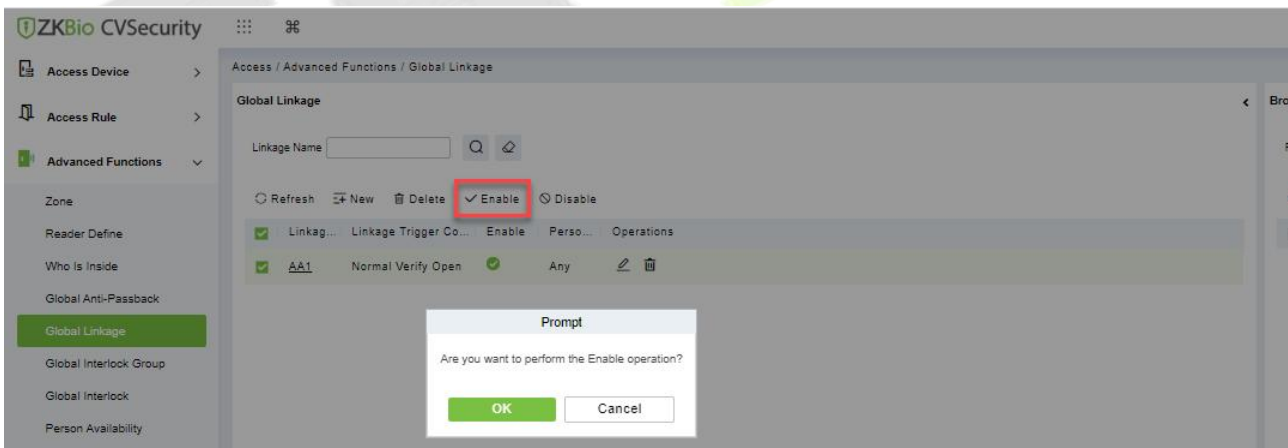
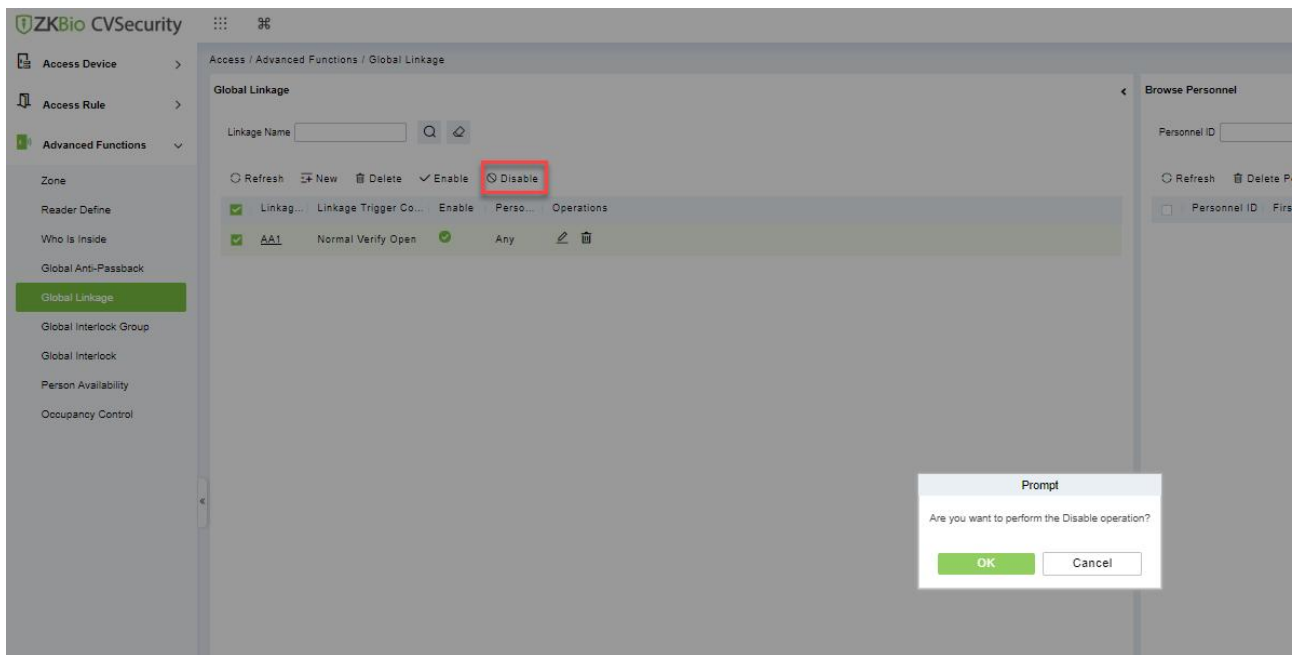


Figure 3- 120 Enable Global Linkage

### 3.5.5.4 Disable

After the device is disabled, the device is not allowed to upload and send data.



**Figure 3- 121 Disable Global Linkage**

### 3.5.6 Global Interlock Group

Global interlocking the global interlocking function can be set across devices. Only the push device supports global interlocking. By setting the global interlock group to group doors, you can set global interlock.

This section describes the Step configuration of global interlock in ZKBio CVSecurity.

- The Premise Condition:

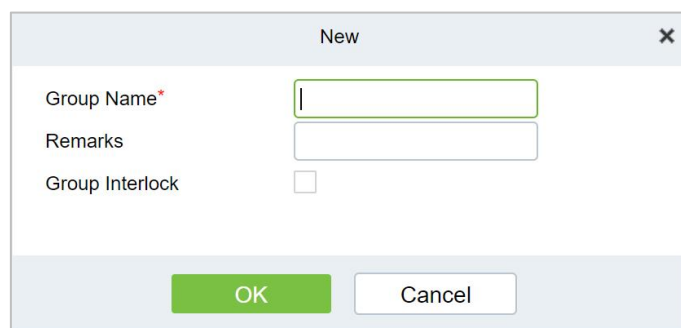
Background authentication has been enabled on the device.

#### 3.5.6.1 Add (New)

- Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Advanced Access Control > Global Interlock Group**” and Click New.

**Step 2:** On the page for adding a global interlock group, set related parameters and Click **OK**, as shown in figure below.



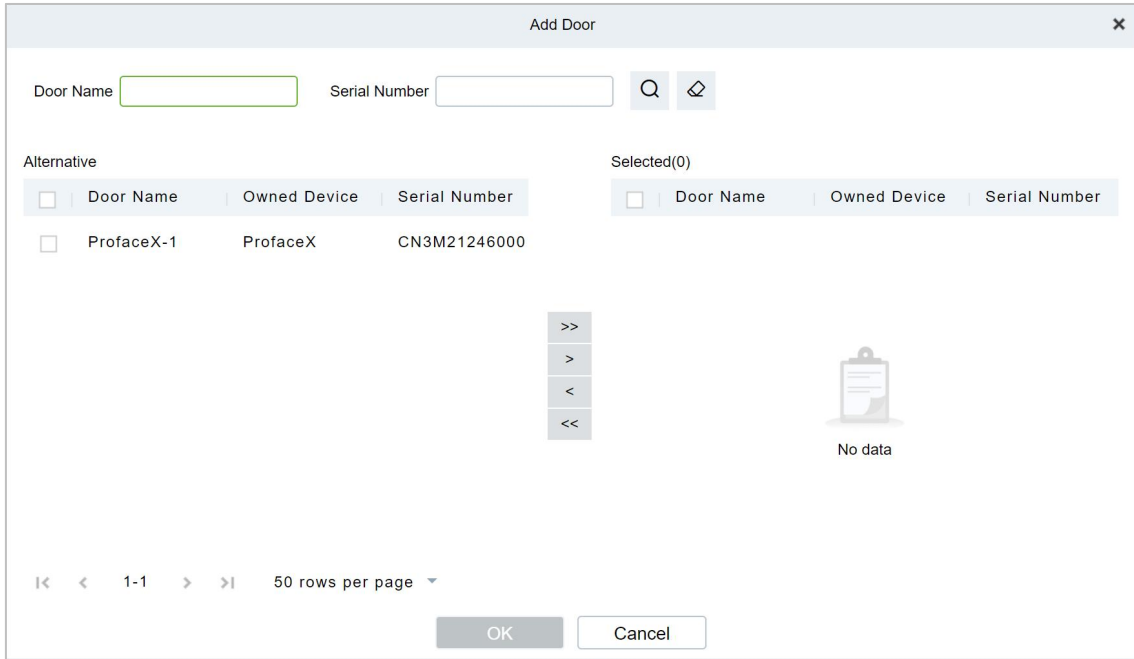
**Figure 3- 122 Global Interlock Group Settings Screen**

| Parameter  | How to set up   |
|------------|---|
| Group Name | Any combination of up to 30 characters that cannot be identical to an existing group name |

|                 |                                       |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| Group Interlock | Select the configured interlock rule. |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|

**Table 3-18 Description of Advance Global Interlock**

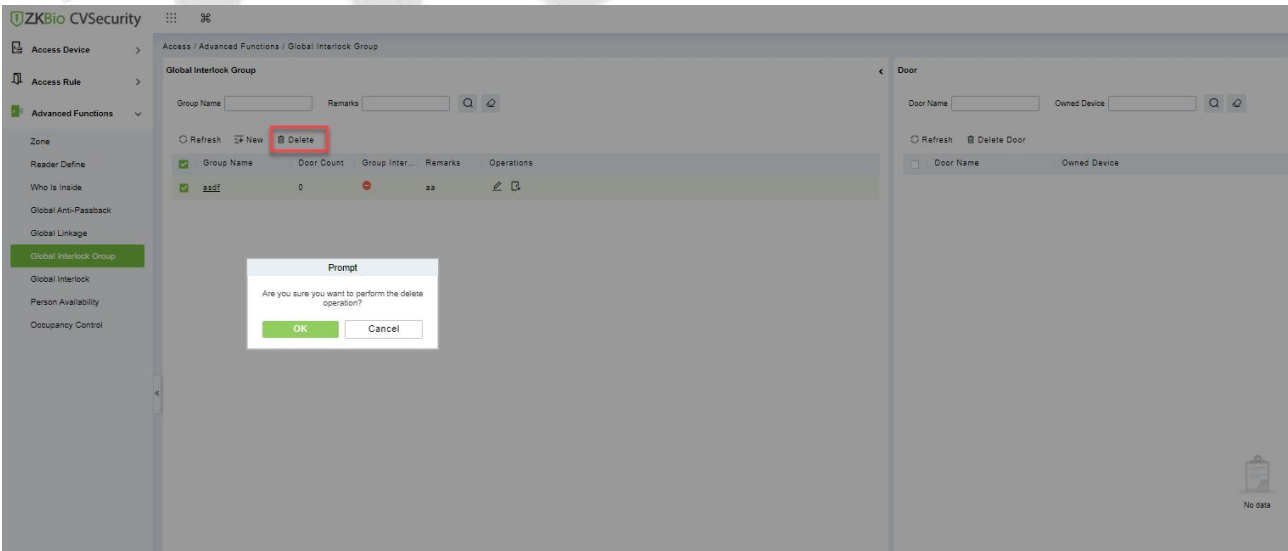
**Step 3:** On the global interlock group page, tap Add Door next to the configured group name on the left, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 3- 123 Adding A Door to A Global Interlock Group**

### 3.5.6.2 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Global Interlock Group**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.



**Figure 3- 124 Delete A Door to A Global Interlock Group**

## 3.5.7 Global Interlock

### 3.5.7.1 Add (New)

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose **“Advanced Access Control > Global Interlock”** and Click New.

On the page for adding global interlock, set related parameters and Click **OK**, for example

**Step 2:** The global interlock name is set.

**Figure 3- 125 Global Interlock Settings Screen**

| Parameter | How to set up   |
|-----------|---|
| Name      | Any combination of up to 30 characters that cannot be identical to an existing name |
| Remark    | Select the configured interlock rule.   |

**Table 3- 18 Description of Access Control Right Groups**

**Step 3:** On the global interlock screen, click **Add** Group next to the configured global interlock on the left, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 3- 126 Page for Adding Global Interlock Groups**

### 3.5.7.2 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Global Interlock**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.

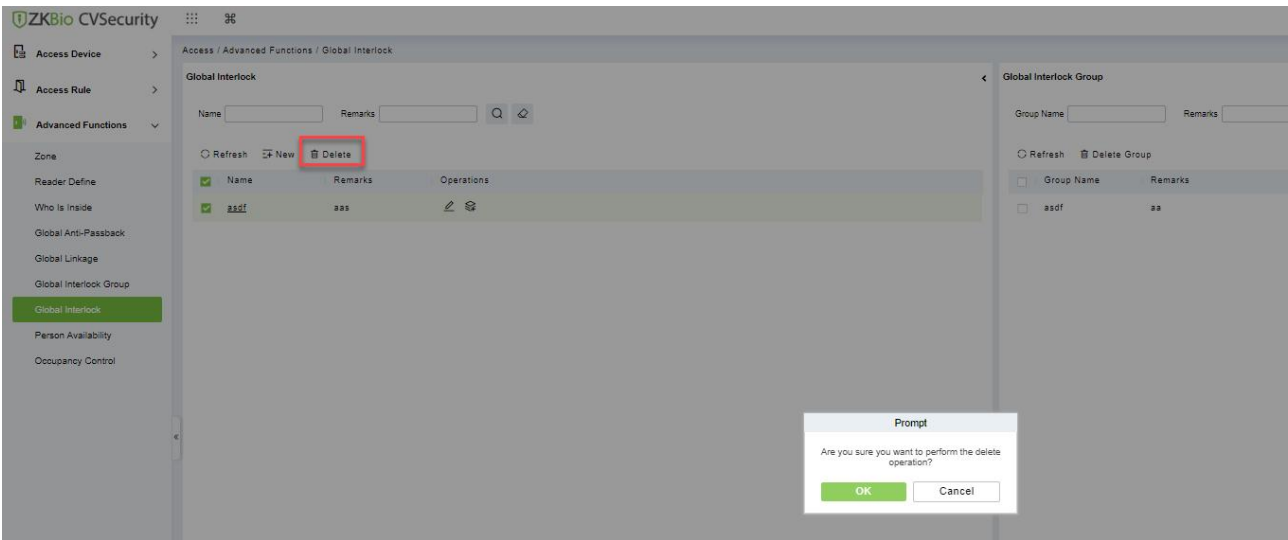


Figure 3- 127 Page for Adding Global Interlock Groups

### 3.5.8 Authorization Limits

It is used to restrict the expiration date, the number of days after the first use, and the number of times the user passes the specified advanced access control area.

● **The Premise Condition:**

1. Background authentication has been enabled on the device
2. Set the access control area and reader definition.

#### 3.5.8.1 Add (New)

● **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose “**Advanced Functions>Authorization Limits**, and Click **New**.”

**Step 2:** On the **Access Control Area Properties** page, set related parameters and Click **OK**.

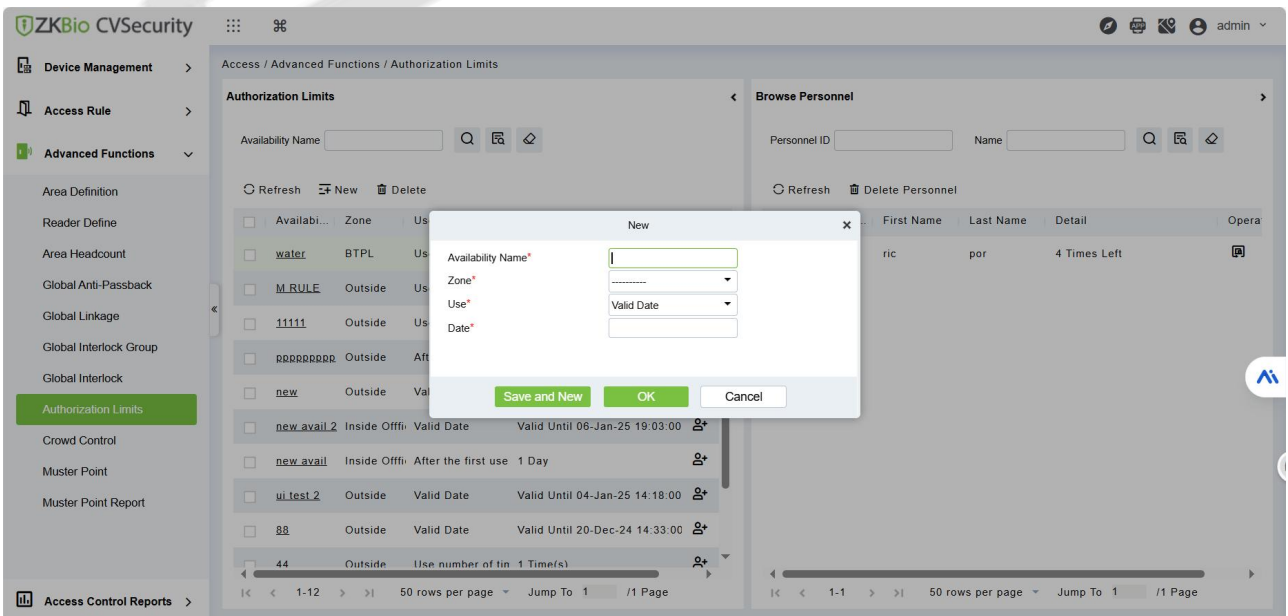


Figure 3- 128 Page for Setting Access Area Properties

**Step 3:** In the properties of the **access control area** that has been set, click **Add Personnel** on the left to add the corresponding personnel, and Click **OK**.

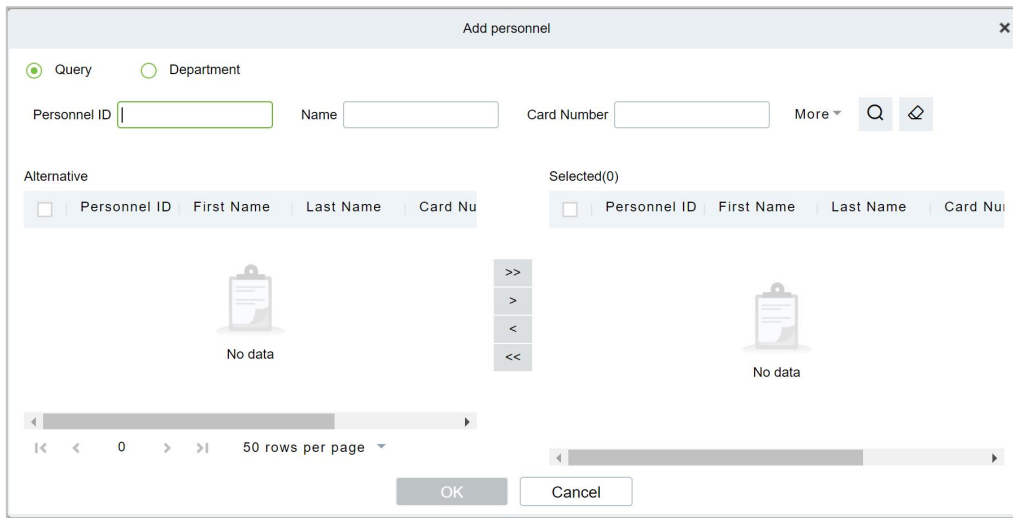


Figure 3- 129 Personnel Availability Add Personnel Settings Screen

Step 4: On the personnel validity screen, tap **Add**, set related parameters, and tap **OK**.

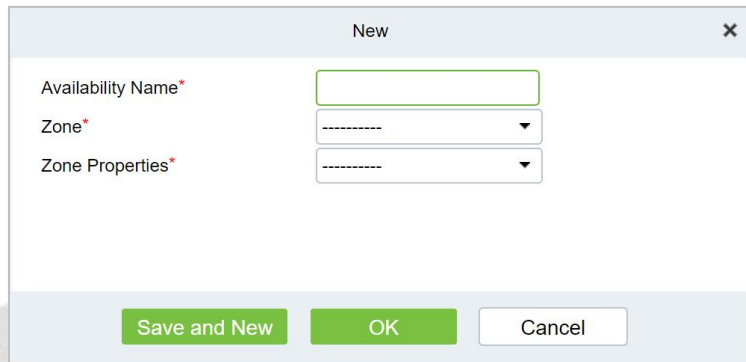


Figure 3- 130 Personnel Validity Setting Screen

### 3.5.8.2 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Personnel Availability**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.

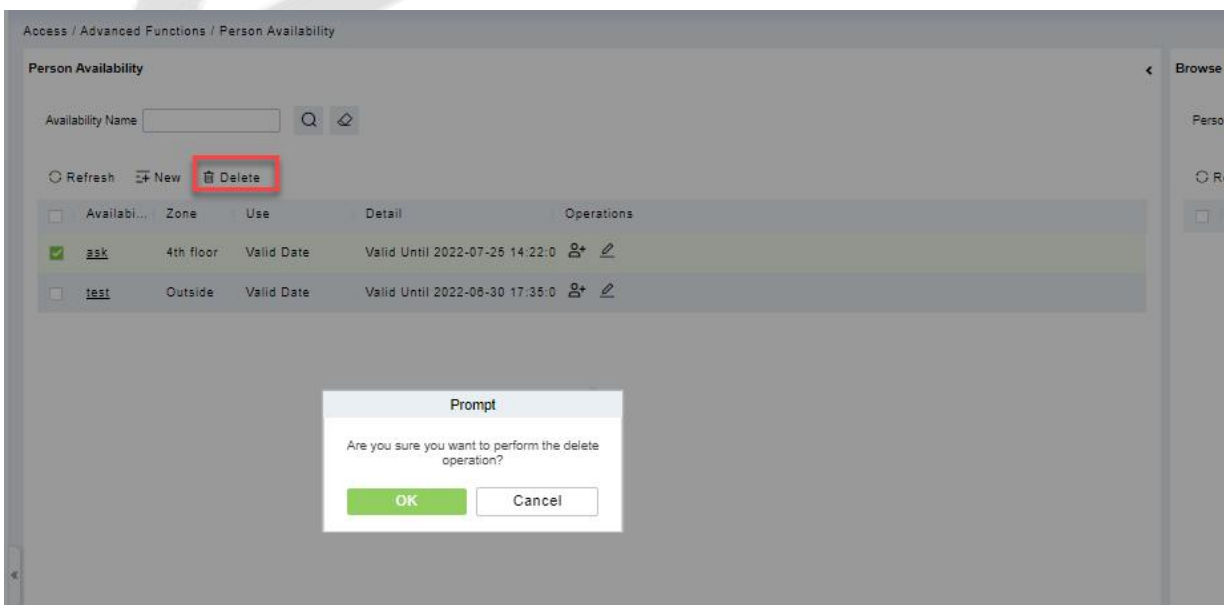


Figure 3- 131 Delete Personnel Validity Setting

## 3.5.9 Crowd Control

Control the maximum/minimum capacity of the area in the Advanced Access Control.

This section describes the Step configuration for population control in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### ● The Premise Condition

1. Background authentication has been enabled on the device.
2. Set the access control area and reader definition.

### 3.5.9.1 Add (New)

#### ● Operation Step

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Advanced Function > Crowd Control**" and Click **New**.

**Step 2:** On the Add Person control screen, set related parameters and click **OK**.

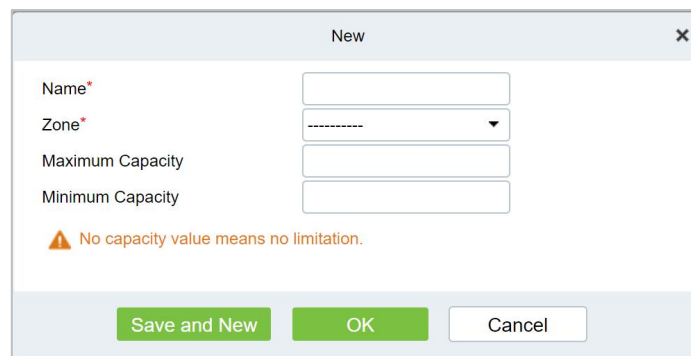


Figure 3- 132 Configuring the People Counting Function

### 3.5.9.2 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Crowd Control**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.

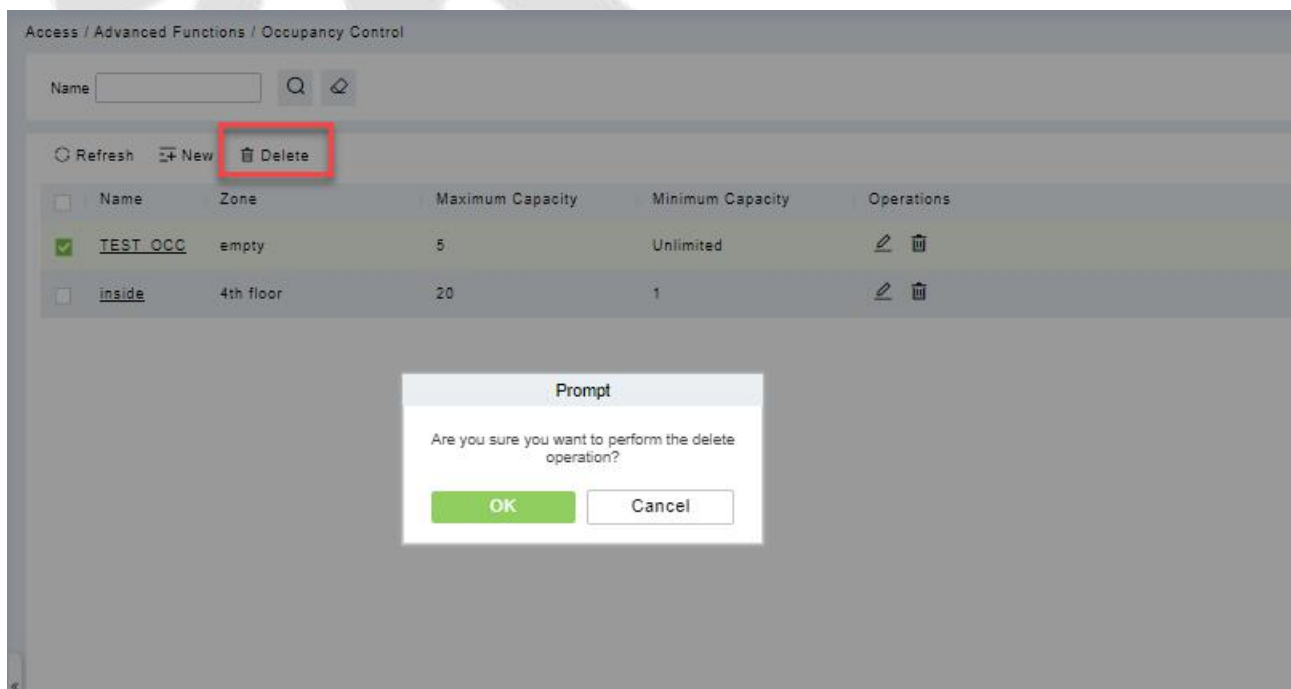


Figure 3- 133 Delete Configuring the People Counting Function

### 3.5.10 Muster Point

**Note:** The V6.6.0 version has been updated and moved to the Scene Center module. For more details, please refer to [Emergency Evacuation](#).

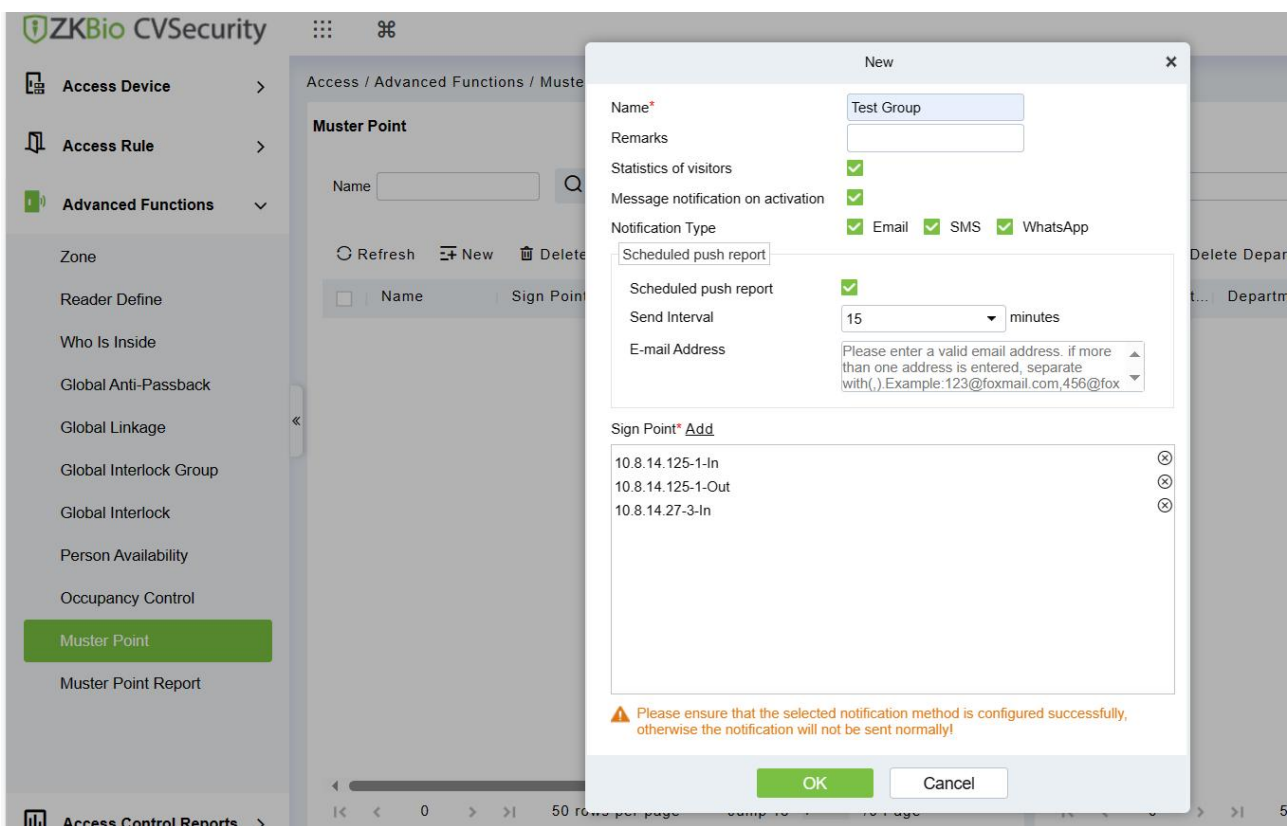
Designate the access control device of a certain place as the Muster Point. When an emergency event (such as a fire alarm) occurs, the linkage triggers the activation of the Muster Point to open the door, and the AC Device is used to count the escape of personnel, and quickly identify the escaped personnel and dangerous personnel.

### 3.5.10.1 Add (New)

Select the access control devices as the equipment of Muster Point, and assign the corresponding department. Note: The equipment selected is equipped with safe house conditions to facilitate evacuation of personnel in the department.

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Set device as Muster Point, go to “**Access Control > Advanced Functions > Muster Point > New**”.



**Figure 3- 134 Sign Point**

**Name:** the name of Muster Point.

**Remarks:** Description of Muster Point.


**Statistics of visitors:** Enabling visitor statistics will notify visitors when a muster point is activated and count all visitors who have not checked out. (V6.1.0\_R or above supported)

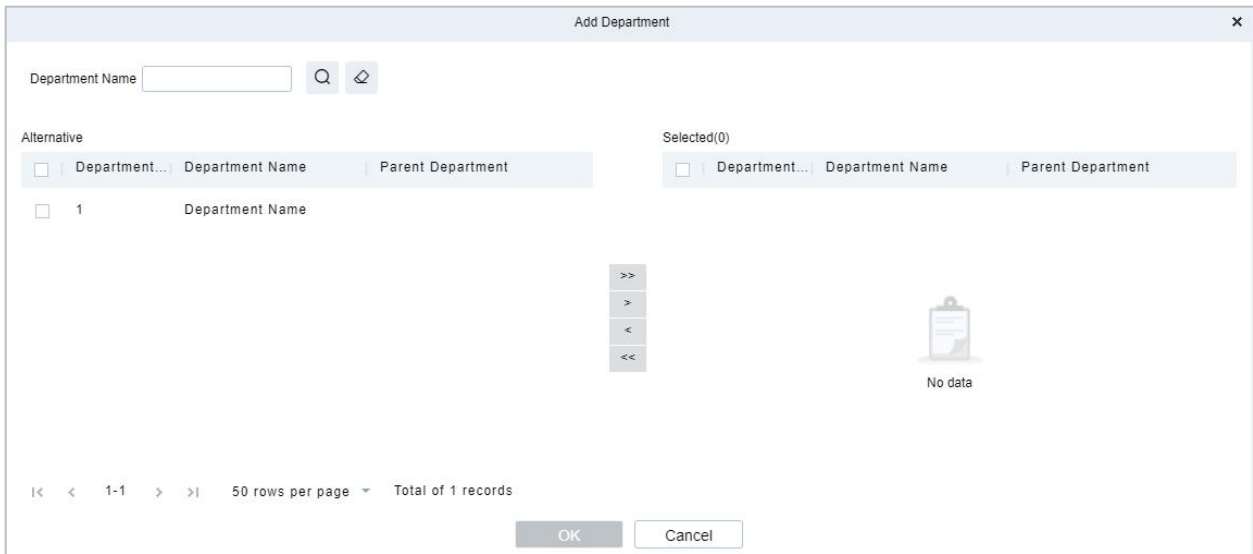
**Message Notification on Activation:** When enabled, the system will automatically send a muster notification to personnel when Muster Point is activated.

**Notification Type:** When enabled message notification, you can choose the sending method, there are 3 method: Email, SMS, WhatsApp.

**Scheduled Push Report:** **Once** enabled, the system will send mustering reports to the administrator at regular intervals (within a set period) when muster point is activated.

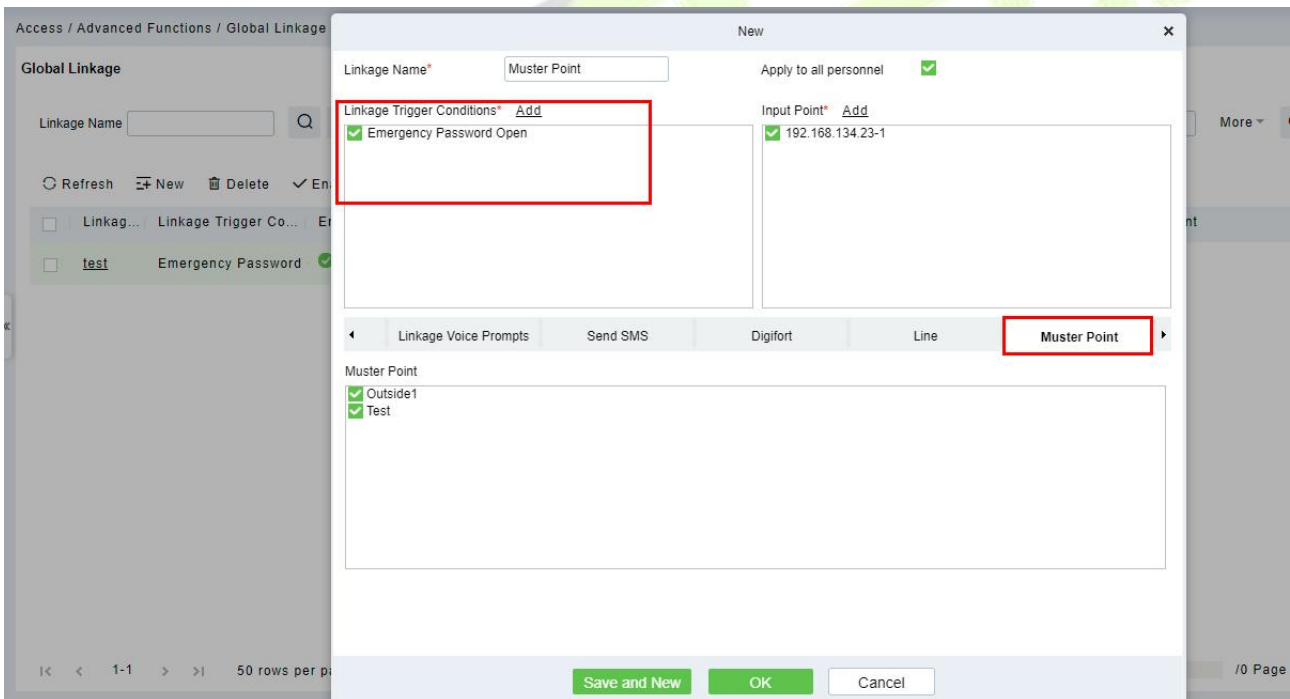
**Email Address:** Administrator email address for receiving mustering reports.

**Step 2:** Click  add department to the point.



**Figure 3- 135 Add Department**

**Step 3:** Set Global Linkage: set Linkage Trigger Conditions and Input Point, Select Muster Point as an output action.



**Figure 3- 136 Global Linkage**

**Note:** Before you use global linkage, you must confirm that your device has enable background authentication.

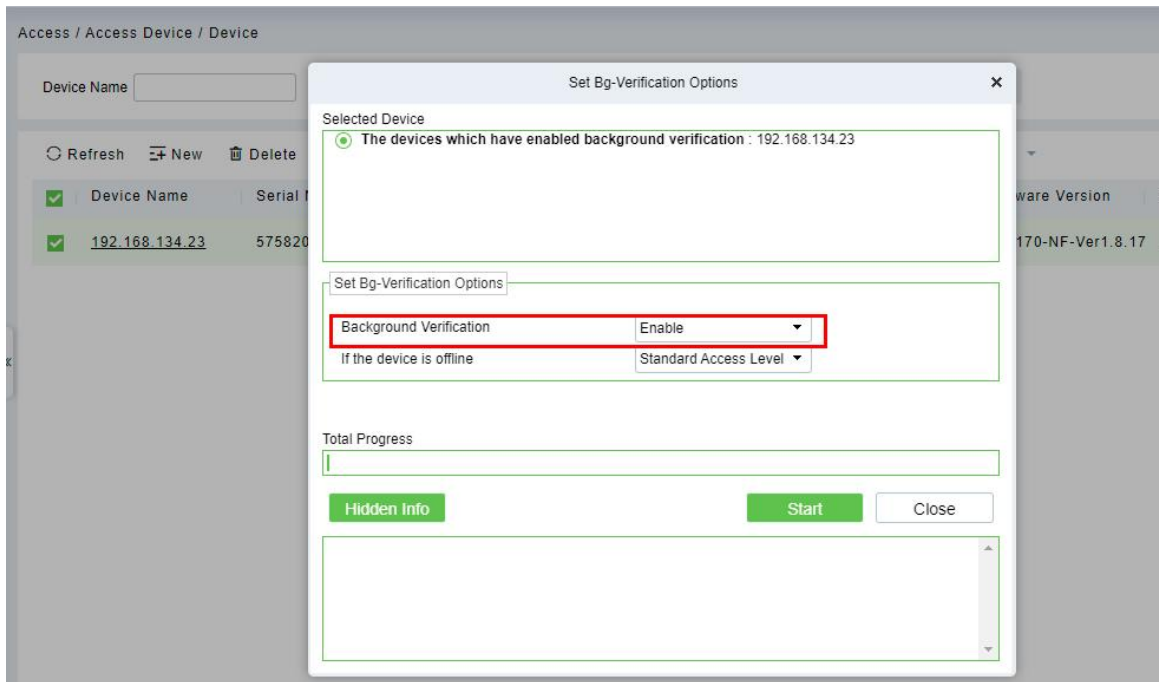


Figure 3- 137 Enable Bg-Verification Options.

### 3.5.10.2 Activated

When the linkage event is triggered, the door is opened remotely, and the Muster Point would be activated.

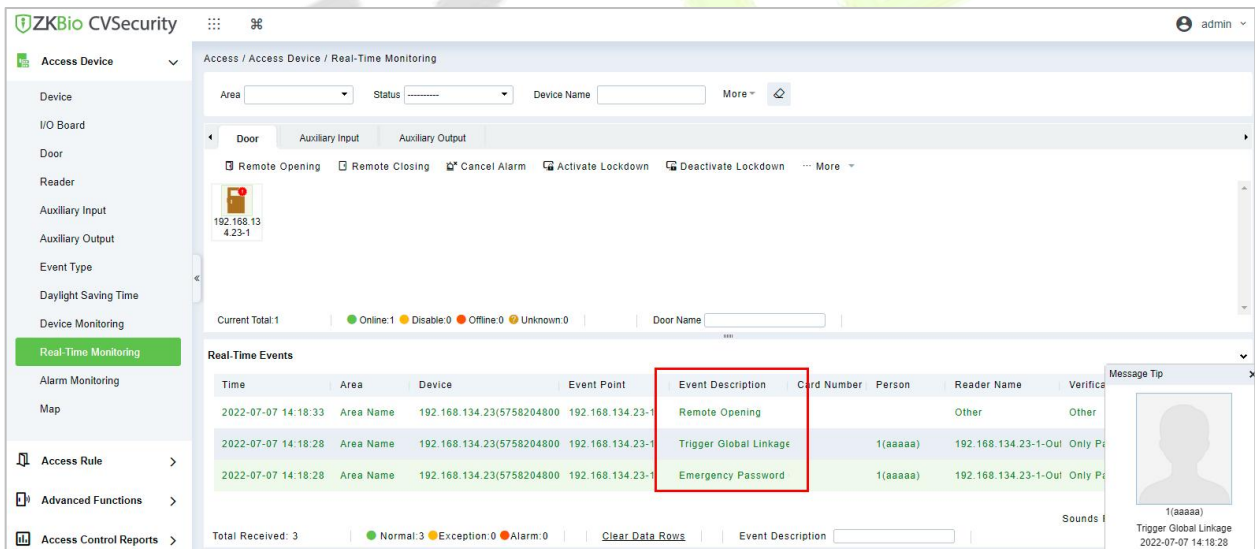


Figure 3- 138 Real-Time Monitoring

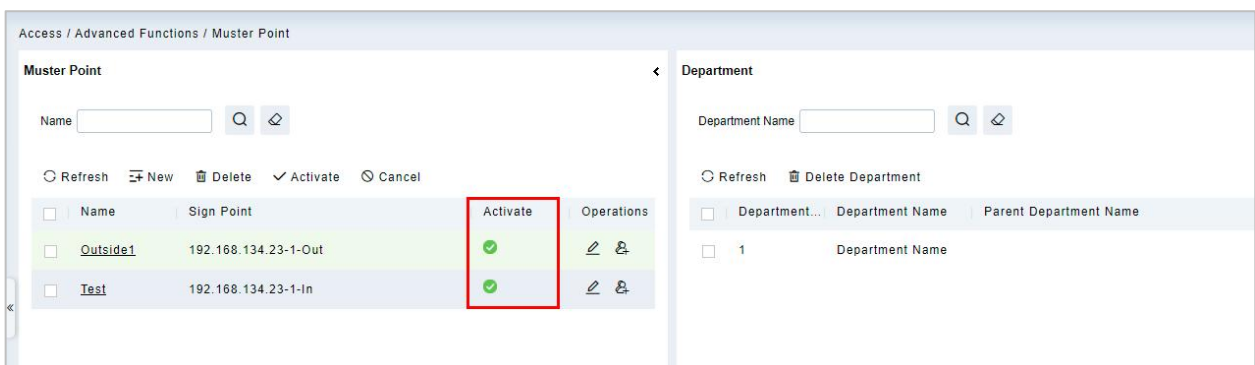


Figure 3- 139 Muster Point

### 3.5.10.3 Delete

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Muster Point**, click **Delete** button under Operations. Click **OK** to delete.

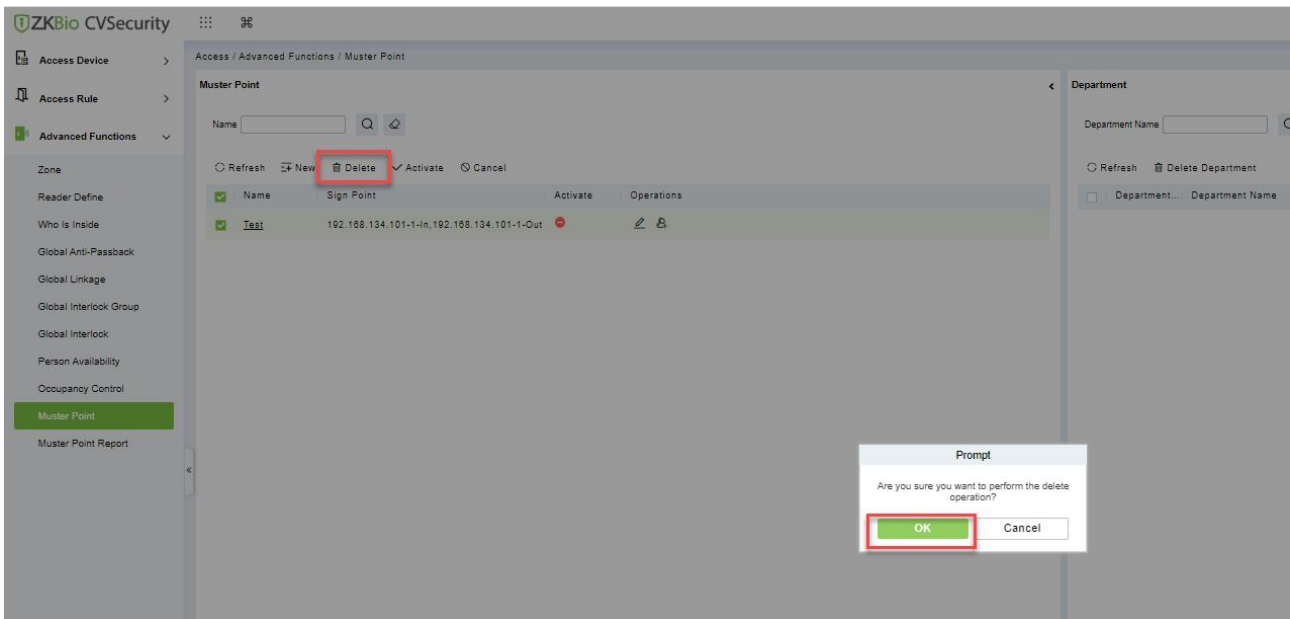


Figure 3- 140 Delete Muster Point

### 3.5.10.4 Cancel

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Muster Point**, click **Cancel** button under Operations. Click **OK** to cancel.

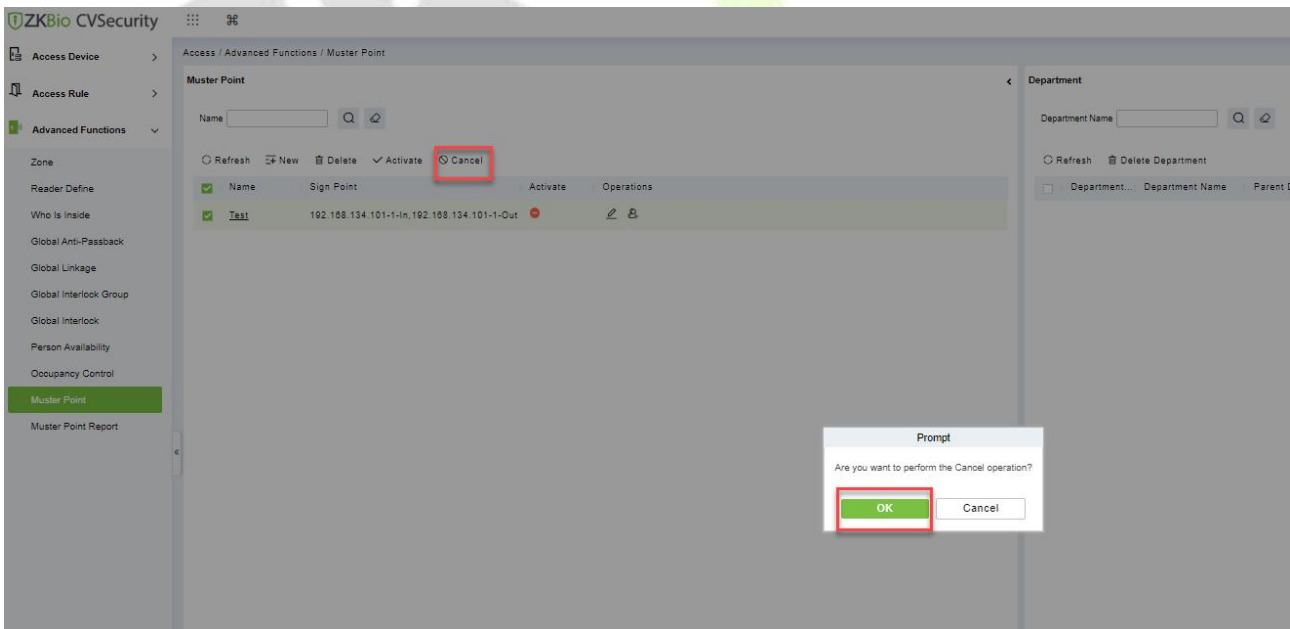



Figure 3- 141 Cancel Muster Point

### 3.5.11 Muster Point Report

Select the access control devices as the equipment of Muster Point and assign the corresponding department. Note: The equipment selected is equipped with safe house conditions to facilitate evacuation of personnel in the department.

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Go to "Access Control > Advanced Functions > Muster Point Report".

You can select a muster point, and click  to genera the report.

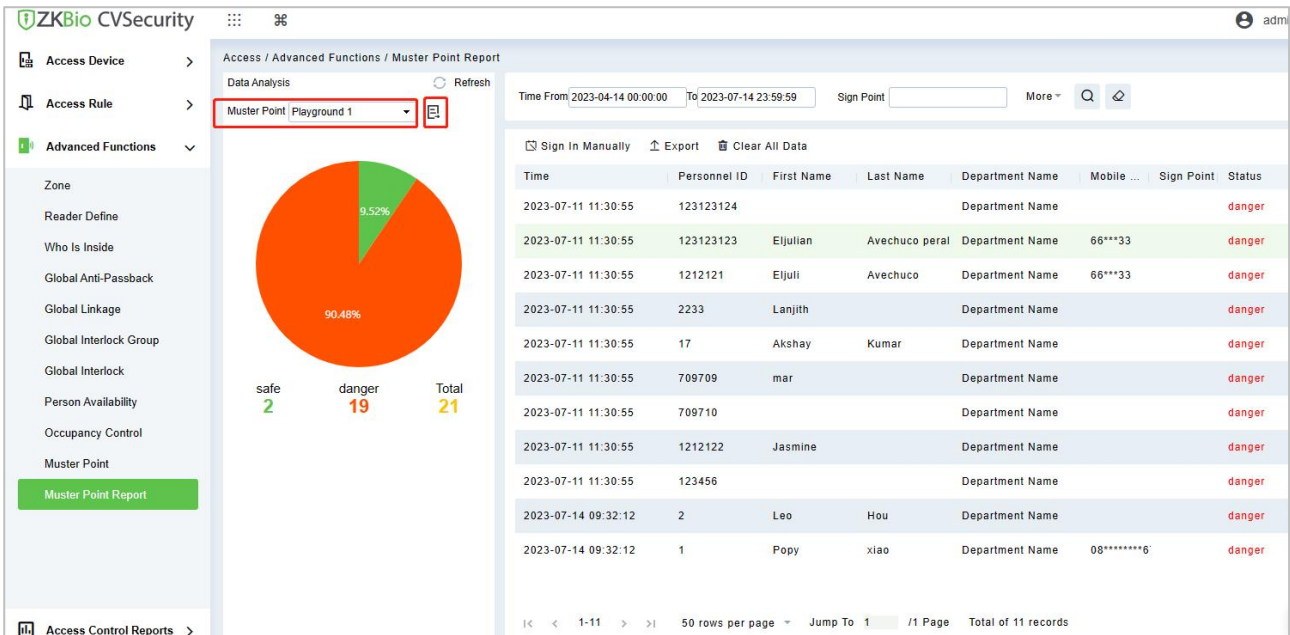


Figure 3- 142 Check the Report

#### 3.5.11.1 Sign In Manually

If someone is not verified on the device, the administrator can manually sign in: Select **Sign in Manually**, see the picture below.

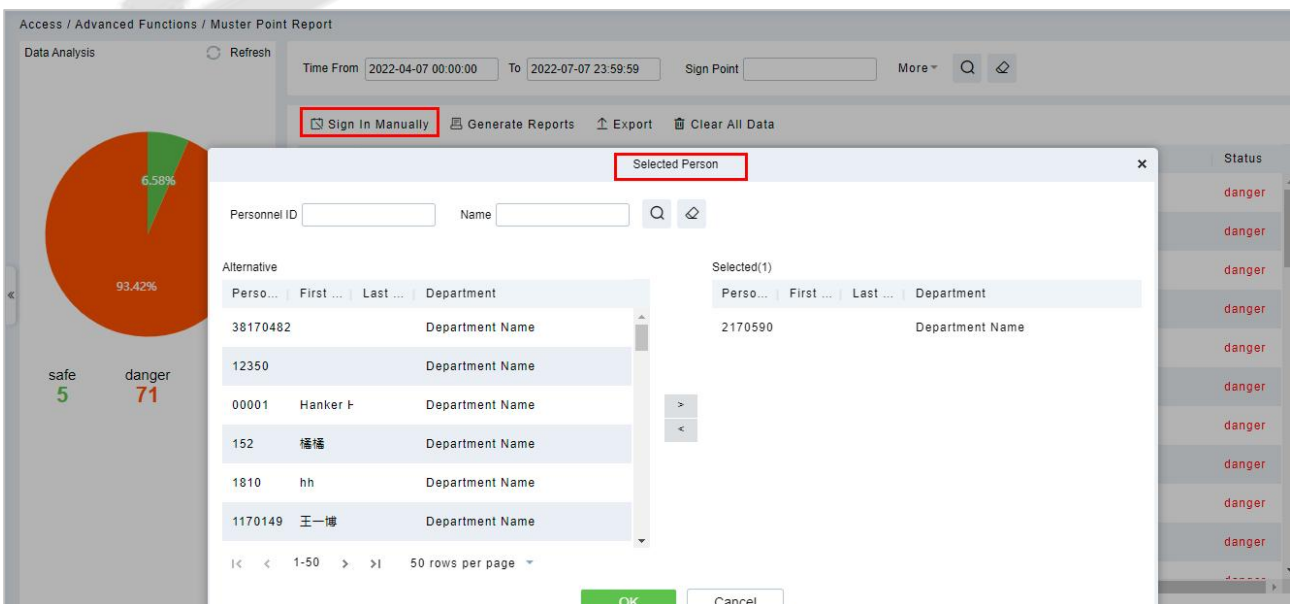


Figure 3- 143 Sign in Manually

Check the statues will change to "safe".

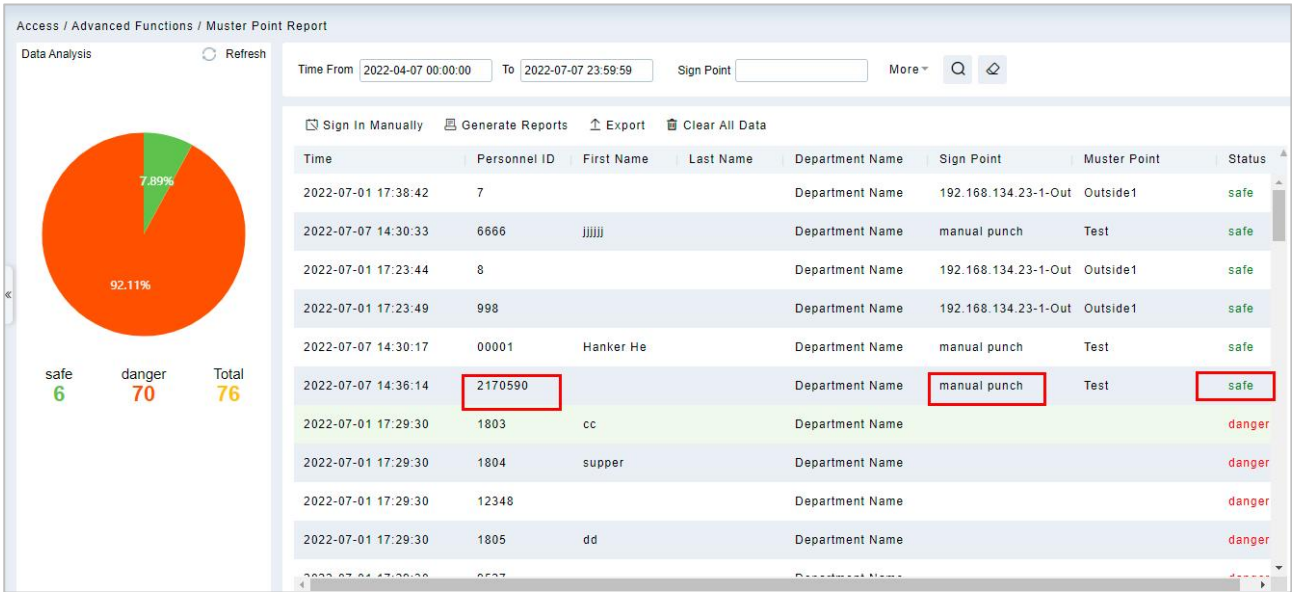


Figure 3- 144 Sign in Manually

### 3.5.11.2 Export

Click Export, enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and click **OK**.

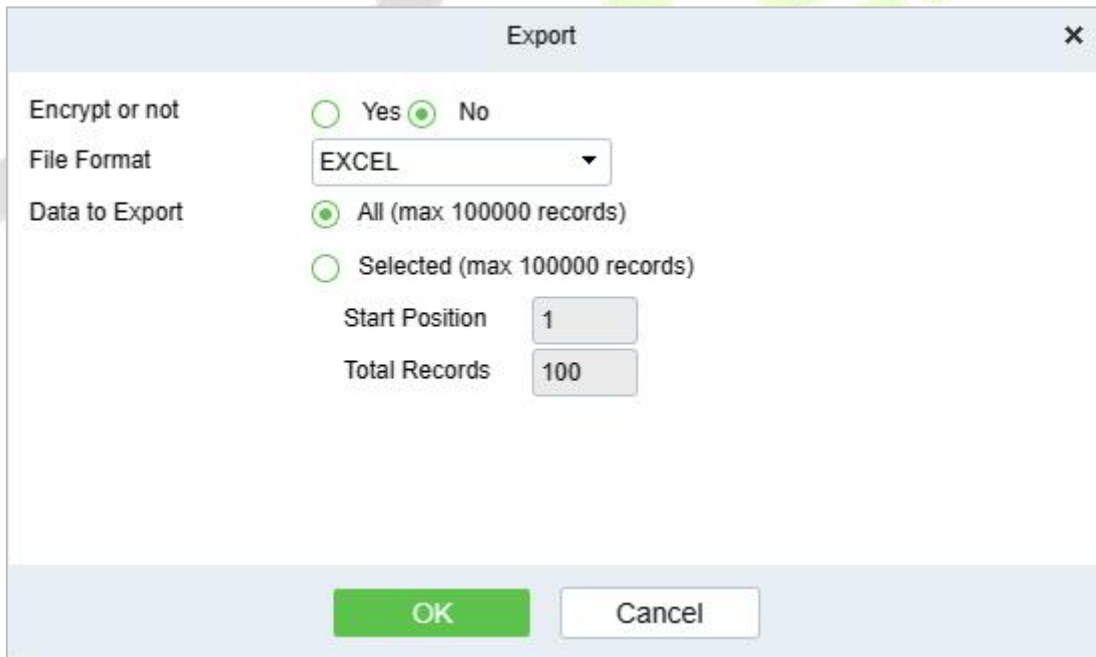


Figure 3- 145 Export

| Muster Point Report |              |            |                |                 |              |            |        |
|---------------------|--------------|------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|------------|--------|
| Time                | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name      | Department Name | Mobile Phone | Sign Point | Status |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 123123124    |            |                | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 123123123    | Eljulian   | Avechuco peral | Department Name | 6622333      |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 1212121      | Eljuli     | Avechuco       | Department Name | 6622333      |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 2233         | Lanjith    |                | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 17           | Akshay     | Kumar          | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 709709       | nar        |                | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 709710       |            |                | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 1212122      | Jasmine    |                | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-11 11:30:55 | 123456       |            |                | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-14 09:32:12 | 2            | Leo        | Hou            | Department Name |              |            | danger |
| 2023-07-14 09:32:12 | 1            | Popy       | xiao           | Department Name | 086134342567 |            | danger |

Figure 3- 146 Report

### 3.5.11.3 Clear All Data

In the **Access > Advanced Functions > Muster Point Setting**, click **Clear All Data** button under Operations. Click **OK** to clear all data.

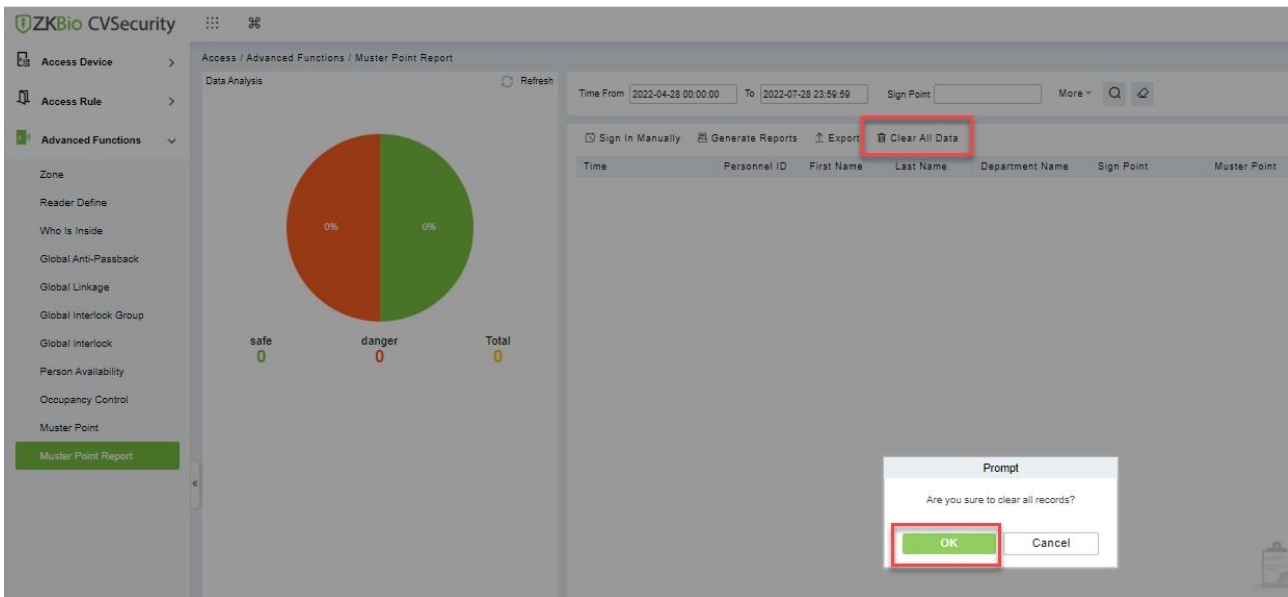


Figure 3- 147 Clear All Data

## 3.6 Access Control Reports

In the access control report, you can query all access control records, including All records, Today's Access records, All abnormal records, door query, personnel query and Personnel access records reports. You can export all records or query records.

This section describes the Step for querying and exporting reports in ZKBio CVSecurity.

### 3.6.1 All Transactions

#### ● Operation Step

**Step 1:** In the Access Control module, choose "**Access Control Report > All Records**".

**Step 2:** On the All Records interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the "search" symbol to complete the query of all records, as shown in figure below.



Figure 3- 148 Report Query Page

#### 3.6.1.1 Export

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and click **OK**.

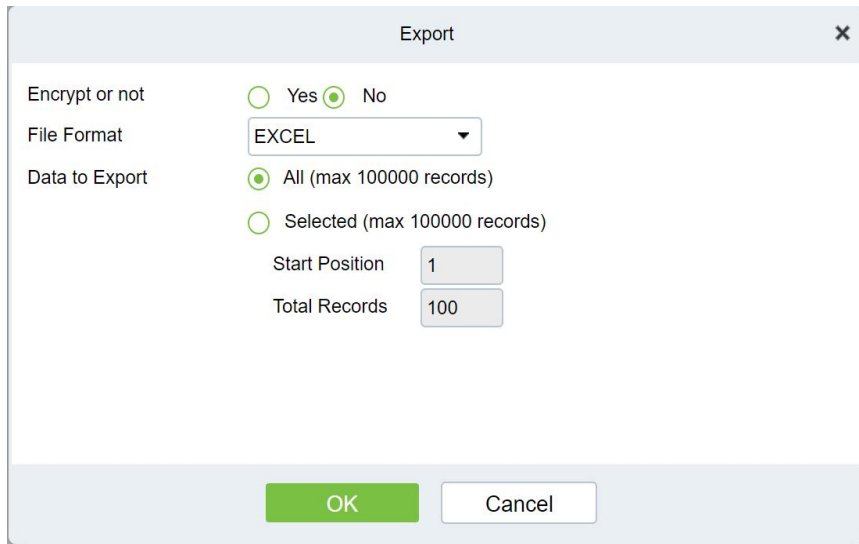


Figure 3- 149 Report Export

| All Transactions    |           |                 |                   |                   |             |              |            |           |             |               |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|
| Time                | Area Name | Device Name     | Event Point       | Event Description | Event Level | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Card Number | Department Na |
| 2023-07-13 16:54:19 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 |                   | Disconnected      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-07-12 11:39:36 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Device Started    | Normal      |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-07-12 11:39:35 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Tamper Alarm      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-07-12 11:33:48 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Device Started    | Normal      |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-07-12 11:33:47 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Tamper Alarm      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-07-07 09:20:19 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Device Started    | Normal      |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-07-07 09:20:18 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Tamper Alarm      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-06-30 13:21:36 | Area Name | 192.168.0.206   |                   | Disconnected      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-06-08 13:35:20 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Device Started    | Normal      |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-06-08 13:35:19 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Tamper Alarm      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-06-01 14:10:44 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Device Started    | Normal      |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-06-01 14:10:43 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Tamper Alarm      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-06-01 11:37:56 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Tamper Alarm      | Alarm       |              |            |           |             |               |
| 2023-06-01 11:37:56 | Area Name | 192.168.134.102 | 192.168.134.102-1 | Device Started    | Normal      |              |            |           |             |               |

Figure 3- 150 Report Export

### 3.6.2 Events from Today

Check out the system record today.

Click **Access Control Reports > Events from Today** to view today's records. You can export all events from today in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

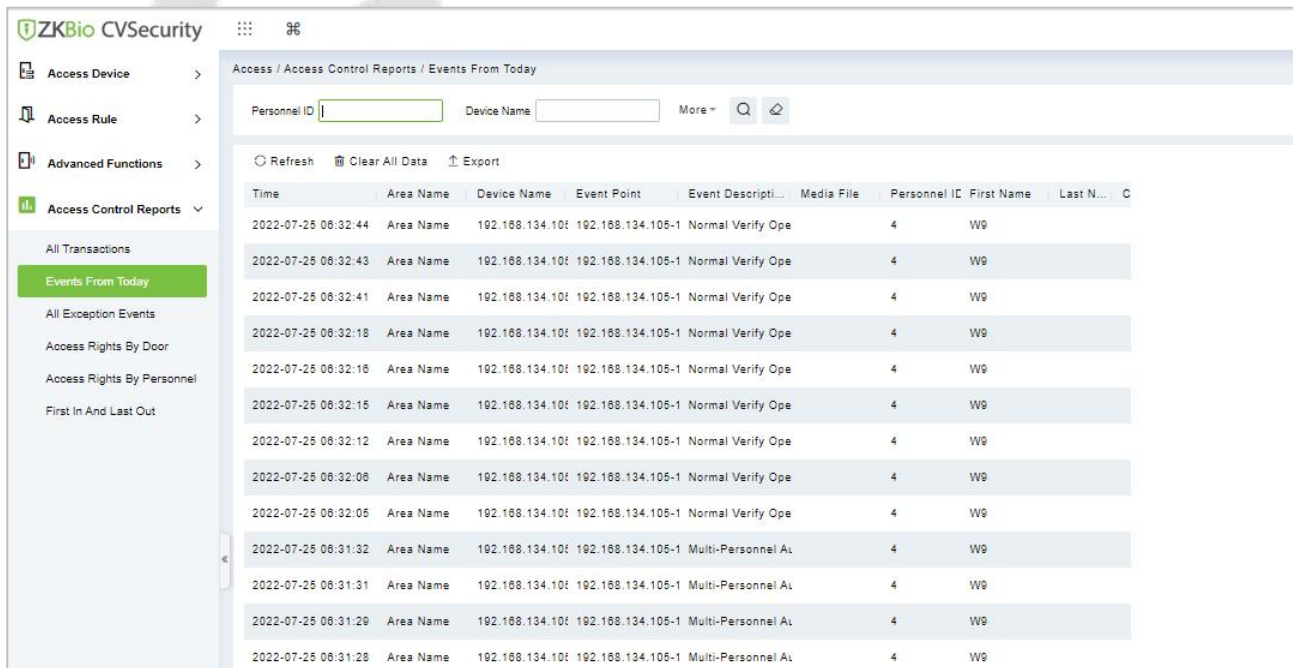


Figure 3- 151 Event from Today

Click Export, enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**.

Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and Click **OK**.

| ZKTECO              |             |              |            |           |                        |                |                  |                           |                     |                   |           |           |        |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------|------------|-----------|------------------------|----------------|------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| Events From Today   |             |              |            |           |                        |                |                  |                           |                     |                   |           |           |        |
| Time                | Card Number | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Department Name        | Device Name    | Event Point      | Event Description         | Reader Name         | Verification Mode | Area Name | Area Name | Remark |
| 2017-12-15 18:29:02 | 4628036     | 6            | Amber      | Lin       | Financial Department   | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:59 | 4628036     | 6            | Amber      | Lin       | Financial Department   | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-1 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-1-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:45 | 13280079    | 5            | Necol      | Ye        | Marketing Department   | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:41 | 13280079    | 5            | Necol      | Ye        | Marketing Department   | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-1 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-1-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:38 | 4461253     | 1            | Jerry      | Wang      | General                | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:35 | 4461253     | 1            | Jerry      | Wang      | General                | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-1 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-1-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:23 | 1411237     | 2940         | Sherry     | Yang      | Hotel                  | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:20 | 1411237     | 2940         | Sherry     | Yang      | Hotel                  | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-1 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-1-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:17 | 9509930     | 9            | Lilian     | Mei       | Development Department | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:13 | 9509930     | 9            | Lilian     | Mei       | Development Department | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-1 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-1-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:06 | 13271770    | 3            | Leo        | Hou       | Financial Department   | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:28:01 | 13271770    | 3            | Leo        | Hou       | Financial Department   | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-1 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-1-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:23:52 | 4461253     | 1            | Jerry      | Wang      | General                | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:23:18 | 4461253     | 1            | Jerry      | Wang      | General                | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:23:12 | 4461253     | 1            | Jerry      | Wang      | General                | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:23:02 | 8156266     | 2            | Lucky      | Tan       | Development Department | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:22:21 | 4461253     | 1            | Jerry      | Wang      | General                | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 18:20:24 | 9509930     | 9            | Lilian     | Mei       | Development Department | 192.168.218.60 | 192.168.218.60-2 | Background Verify Success | 192.168.218.60-2-In | Only Card         | Area Name | Area Name |        |

Created on: 2017-12-15 18:36:55  
 Created from ZKBioSecurity software. All rights reserved.

Figure 3- 152 Report Export Page

**Clear All Data:** Click **Clear All Data** to pop up prompt, and then click **OK** to clear all events from today.

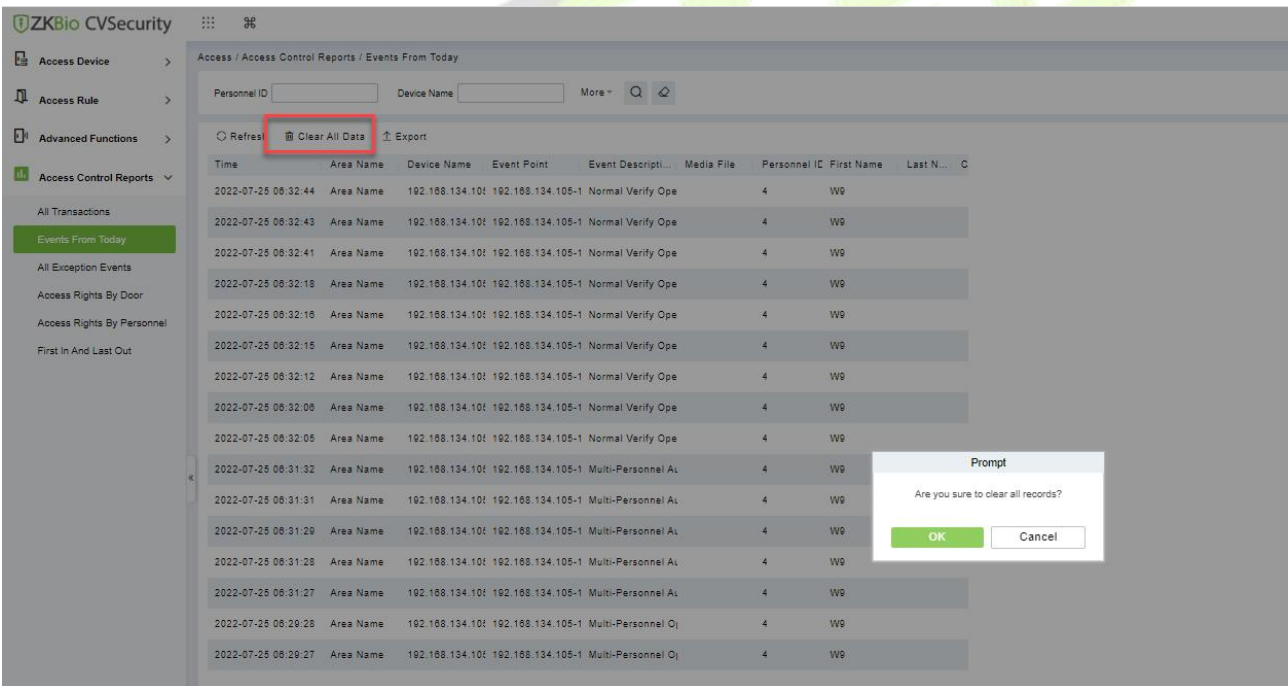
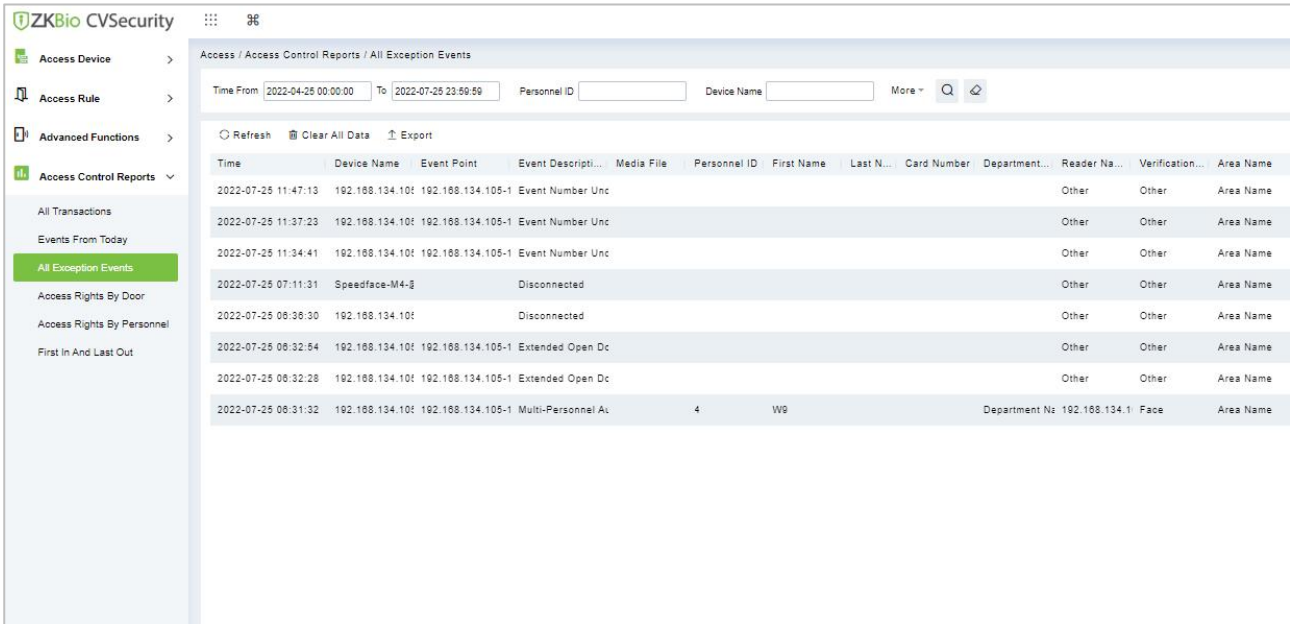


Figure 3- 153 Events Clear All Data

### 3.6.3 All Exception Events

Click **Access Control Reports > All Exception Events** to view exception events in specified condition. The options are same as those of **All Transactions**.



**Figure 3- 154 All Exception events**

**Clear All Data:** Click **Clear All Data** to pop up prompt, and then click **OK** to clear all exception events.

**Export:** You can export all exception events in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

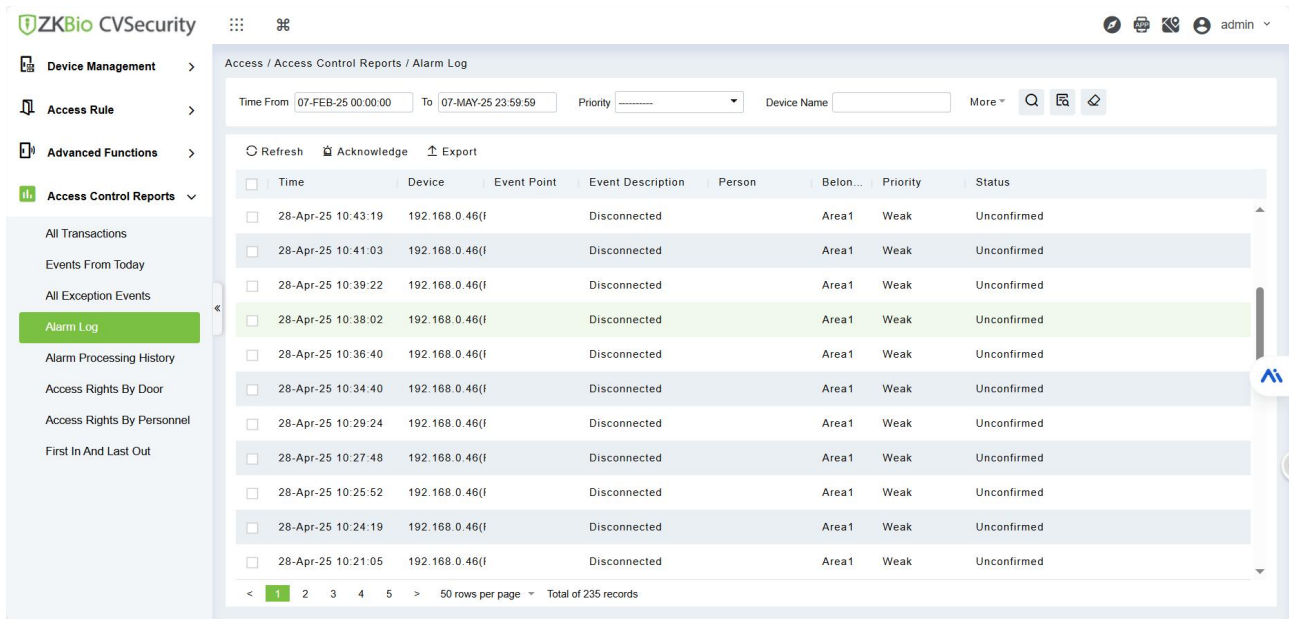
| ZKTECO<br>All Exception Events               |                              |                  |                |             |              |            |           |           |                 |                     |                   |        |
|--|------------------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------|
| Time: 2017-09-15 00:00 - 2017-12-15 23:59:59 |                              |                  |                |             |              |            |           |           |                 |                     |                   |        |
| Time   | Event Description            | Event Point      | Device Name    | Card Number | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Area Name | Department Name | Reader Name         | Verification Mode | Remark |
| 2017-12-15 17:43:03                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 17:42:41                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 17:35:27                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:35:17                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:35:06                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:34:00                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:33:52                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:33:43                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:33:35                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-2 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-2-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:33:14                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 16:08:54                          | Can not connect to server    |                  | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | Other               | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:50:17                          | Disconnected                 |                  | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | Other               | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:53:45                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:41:04                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:19:45                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:19:37                          | Operation Interval too Short | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 |             |              |            |           | Area Name |                 | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Other             |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:05:59                          | Anti-Passback                | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 | 9505930     | 800000005    | Bill       | Fang      | Area Name | Visitor         | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Only Card         |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:05:59                          | Anti-Passback                | 192.168.218.80-1 | 192.168.218.80 | 13280079    | 800000004    | Tom        | Lee       | Area Name | Visitor         | 192.168.218.80-1-In | Only Card         |        |

Created on: 2017-12-15 18:37:19  
 Created from ZKBioSecurity software. All rights reserved.

**Figure 3- 155 All Exception Events Export**

### 3.6.4 Alarm Log

View all the alarm logs and be able to make remarks.



### 3.6.5 Access Rights by Door

View related access levels by door. Click **Access Control Reports > Access Rights by Door**, the data list in the left side shows all doors in the system, select a door, the personnel having access levels to the door will be displayed on the right data list.

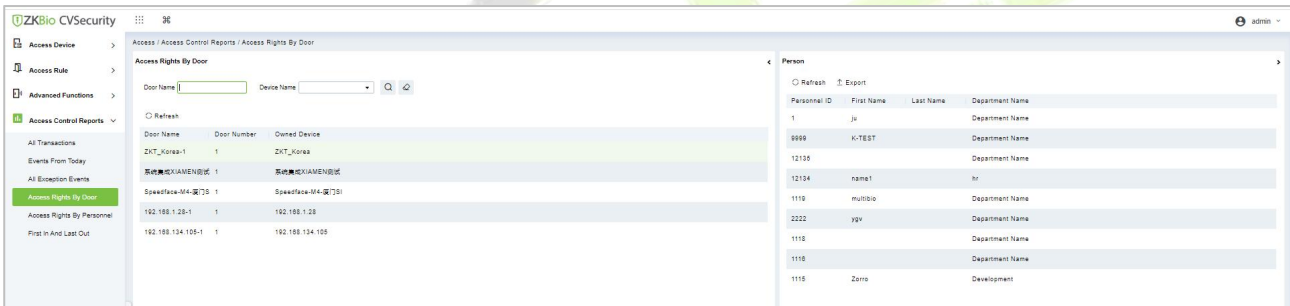


Figure 3- 156 Access Right by Door

You can export all the personnel having access levels to the door data in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

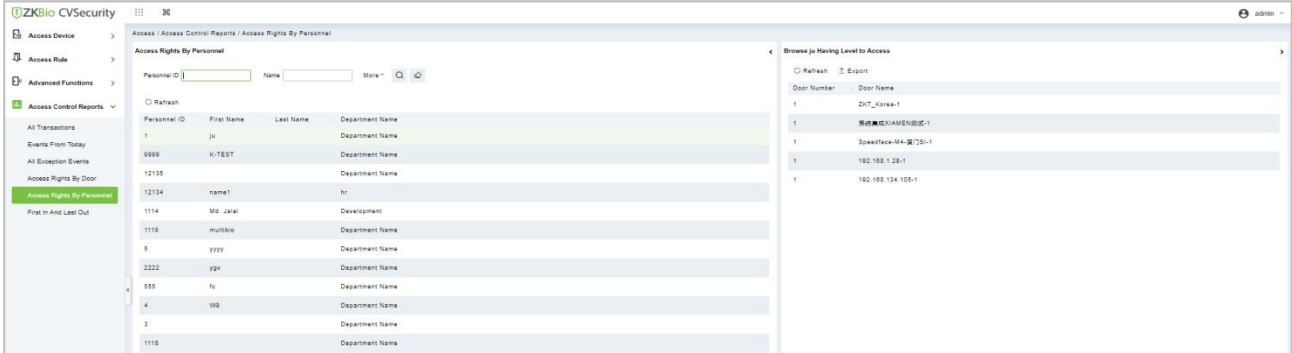
| ZKTECO                                |            |           |                        |
|---------------------------------------|------------|-----------|------------------------|
| 192.168.218.60-1(1) Opening Personnel |            |           |                        |
| Personnel ID                          | First Name | Last Name | Department             |
| 2940                                  | Sherry     | Yang      | Hotel                  |
| 1                                     | Jerry      | Wang      | General                |
| 2                                     | Lucky      | Tan       | Development Department |
| 3                                     | Leo        | Hou       | Financial Department   |
| 4                                     | Berry      | Cao       | General                |
| 5                                     | Necol      | Ye        | Marketing Department   |
| 6                                     | Amber      | Lin       | Financial Department   |
| 7                                     | Jacky      | Xiang     | General                |
| 8                                     | Glori      | Liu       | Marketing Department   |
| 9                                     | Lilian     | Mei       | Development Department |

Figure 3- 157 Access Right by Door Export Page

### 3.6.6 Access Rights by Personnel

View related access levels by door or personnel.

Click **Access Control Reports > Access Rights by Personnel**, the data list in the left side shows all doors in the system, select personnel, the personnel having access levels to the door will display on the right data list.



**Figure 3- 158 Access Right by Personnel**

You can export all the door information in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

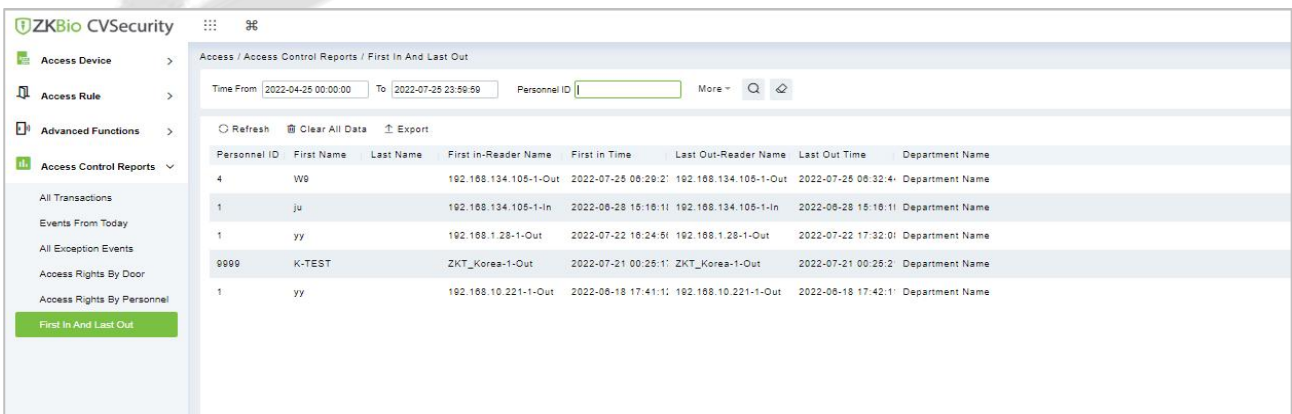
**ZKTECO**  
6(Amber) Having Level to Access

| Door Number | Door Name        |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1           | 192.168.218.60-1 |
| 2           | 192.168.218.60-2 |
| 3           | 192.168.218.60-3 |
| 4           | 192.168.218.60-4 |

**Figure 3- 159 Access Right by Personnel Export Page**

### 3.6.7 First In and Last Out

Click **Access Control Reports > First in And Last Out** to view the First and the Last time interval.



**Figure 3- 160 Access Right by Door Export Page**

#### 3.6.7.1 Clear All Data

In the Access > Advanced Control Reports > First in and Last Out, click **Clear All Data** button under Operations. Click **OK** to clear all data.

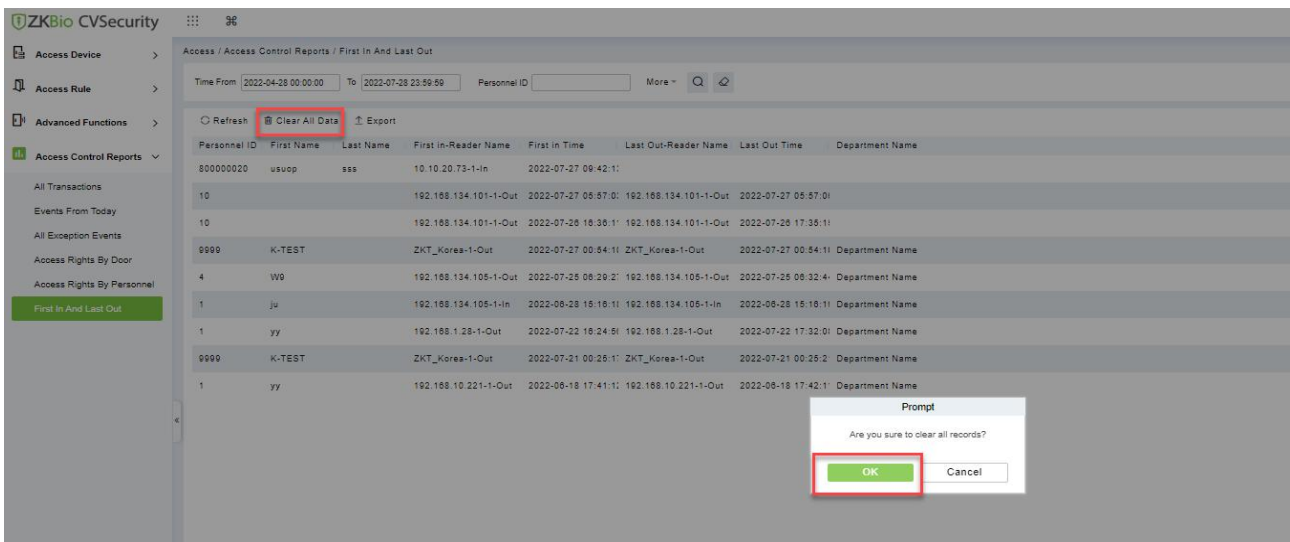


Figure 3- 161 Clear All Data



## 4 Video Intercom

### 4.1 Basic Management

This section describes how to make basic settings in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 4.1.1 Building

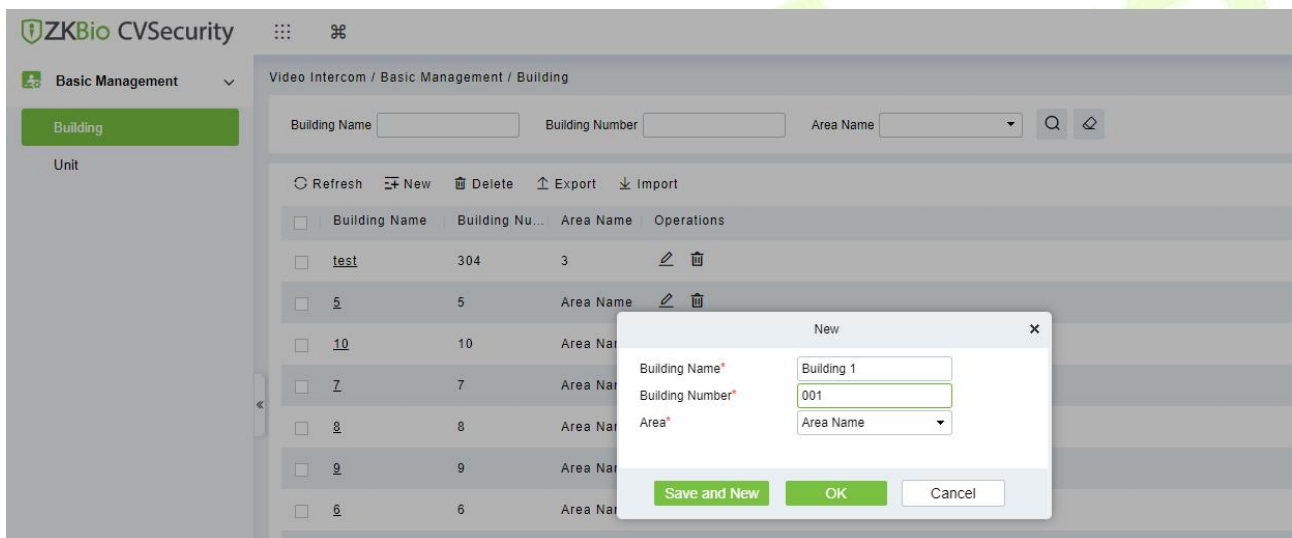
##### 4.1.1.1 Add Building

Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Basic Management > Building**”.

**Step 2:** Click **New**, the page for adding buildings will be displayed.

**Step 3:** On the page where buildings are added, configure the necessary content as shown in the figure below. Also, adjust the parameter settings as indicated in the same figure.



**Figure 4- 1 Building Add Interface**

| Parameter       | Description                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Building Name   | Enter the name of the building.   |
| Building Number | Enter the number of the building. |
| Area            | Select the area name.             |

##### 4.1.1.2 Delete

Select the Building, click **Delete**, and then, click **OK** to delete the building.

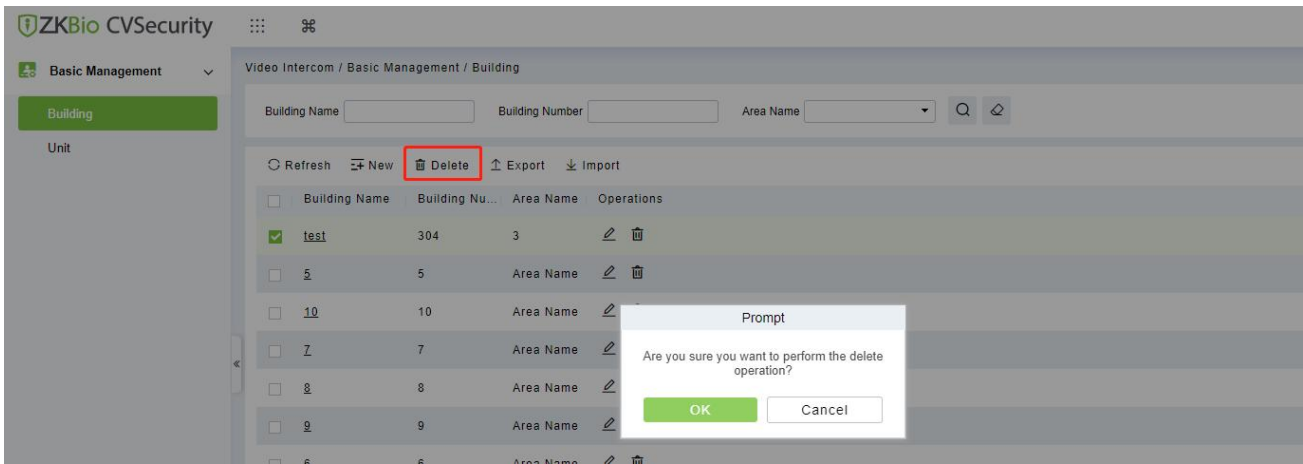
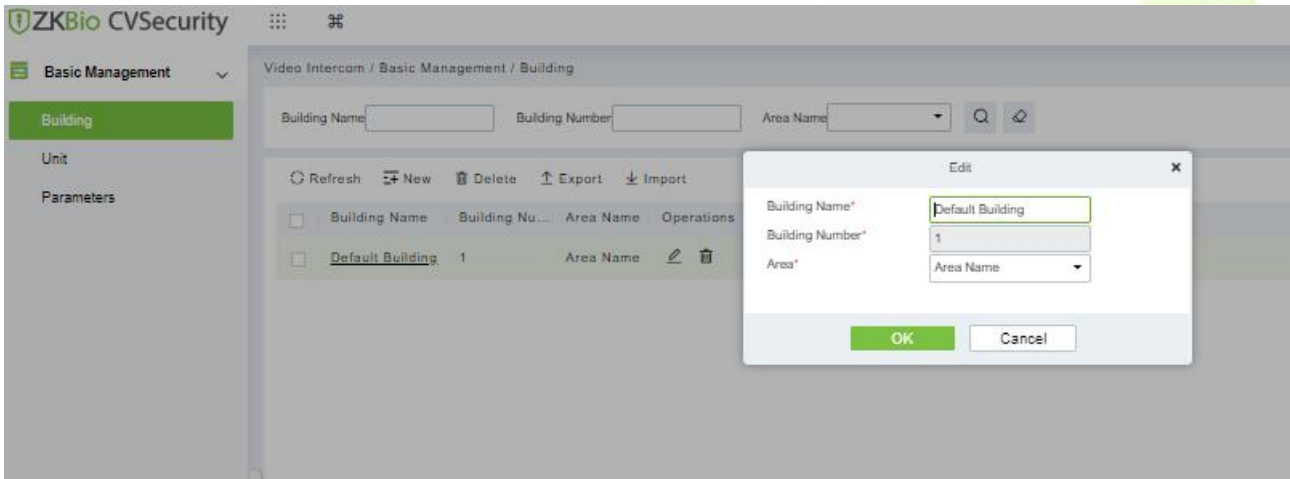


Figure 4- 2 Delete Building

### 4.1.1.3 Edit

Select the Building, click **Edit**, and then, click **OK** after editing the building details.



### 4.1.1.4 Import

Batch import floor data based on the provided template.

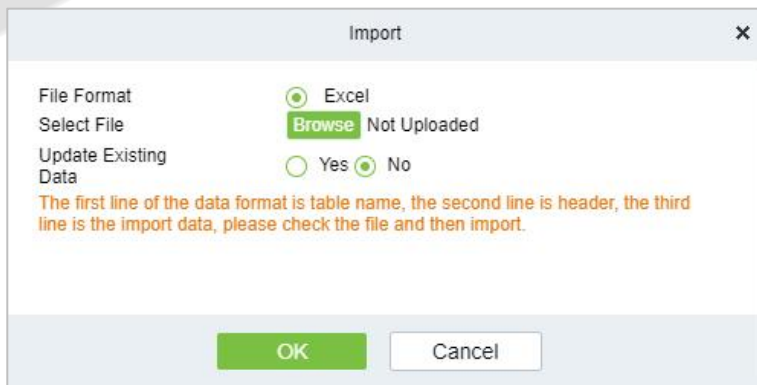


Figure 4- 3 Import

### 4.1.1.5 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

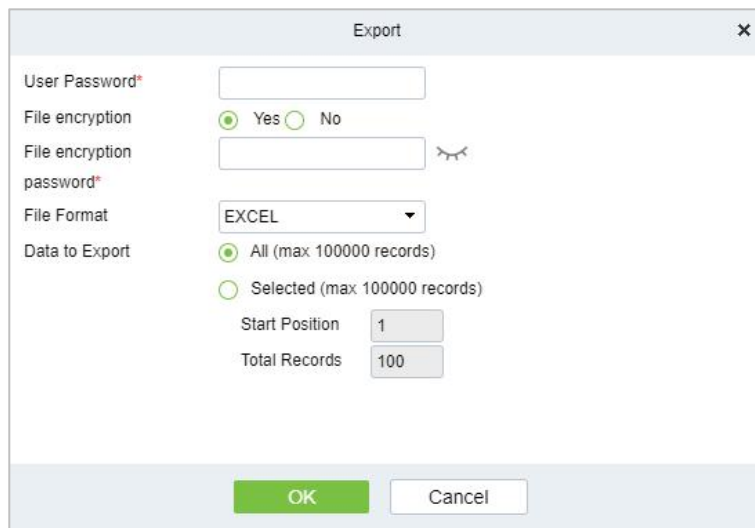


Figure 4- 4 Export

## 4.1.2 Unit

### 4.1.2.1 Add Unit

Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Basic Management > Unit**”.

**Step 2:** Click **New**, the page for adding units will be displayed.

**Step 3:** On the page for adding units, set the required content as shown in the figure below.

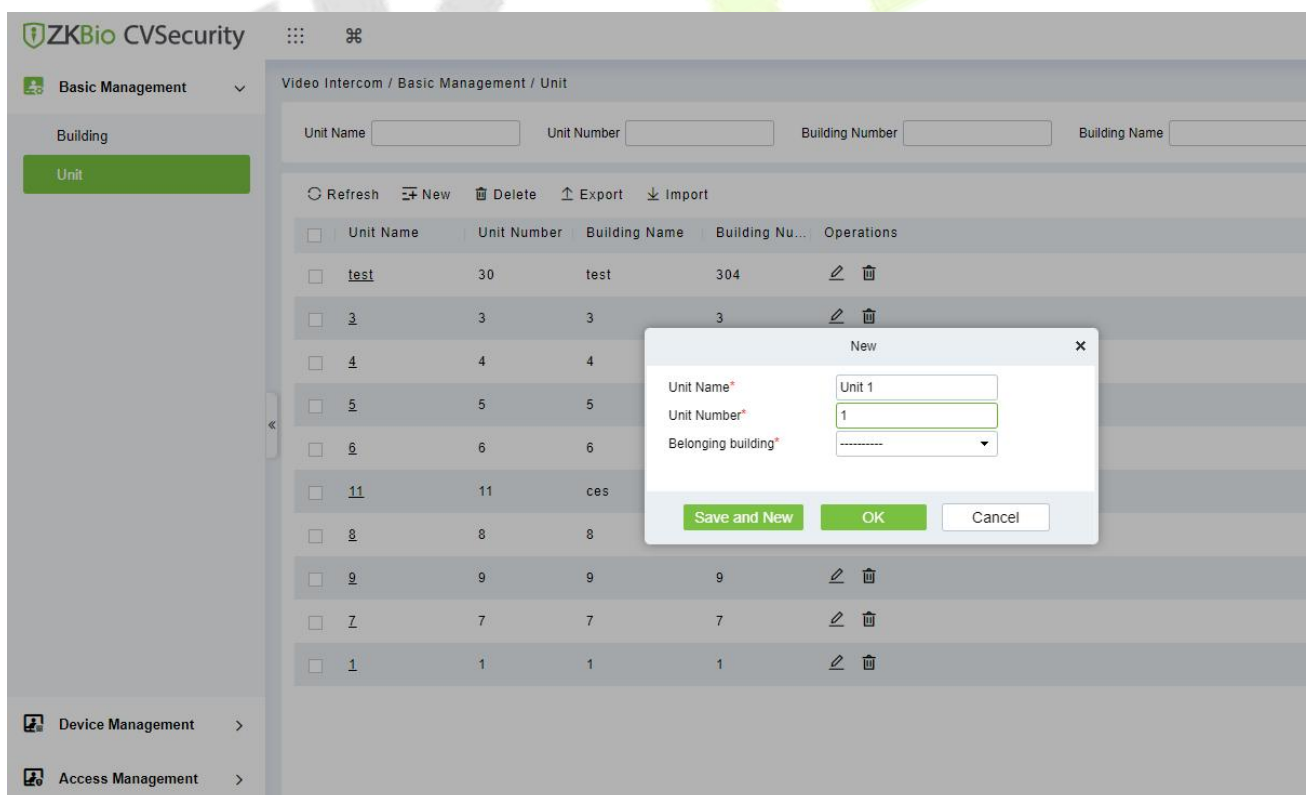


Figure 4- 5 Unit Add Interface

| Parameter | Description                 |
|-----------|-----------------------------|
| Unit Name | Enter the name of the unit. |

| Parameter          | Description                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Unit Number        | Enter the unit number.         |
| Belonging Building | Select the belonging building. |

### 4.1.2.2 Delete

Select Unit, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the unit.

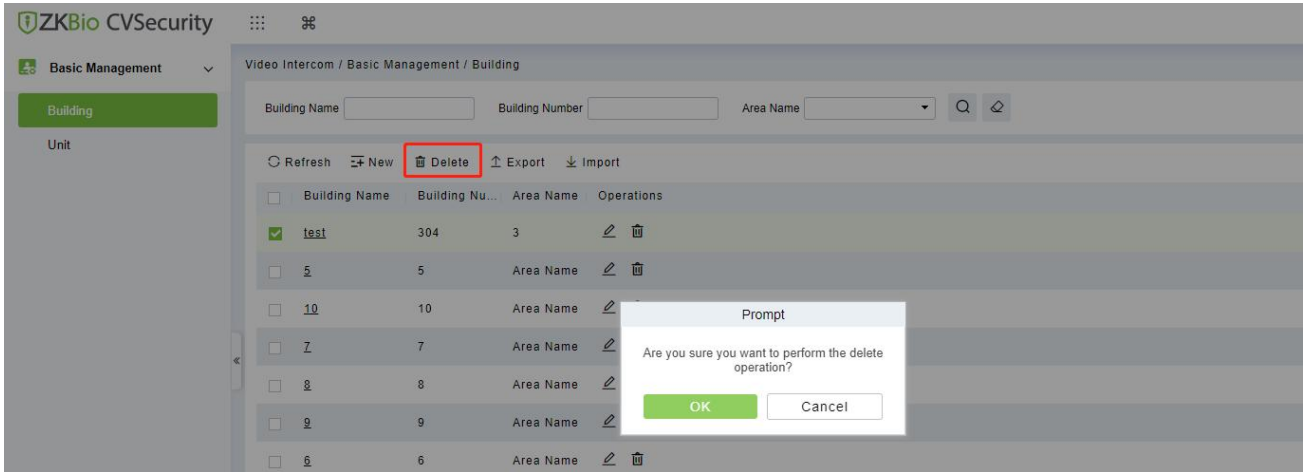
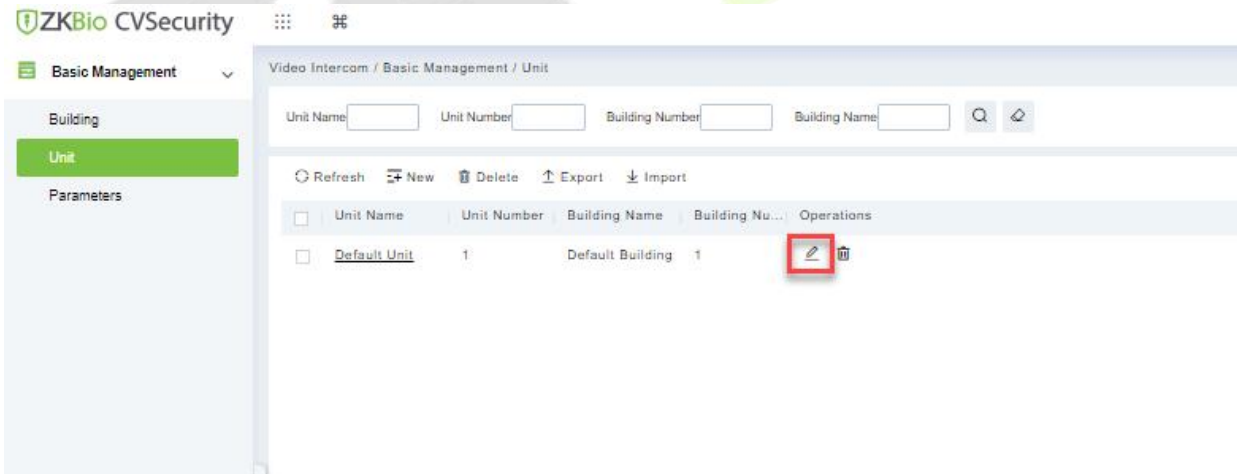


Figure 4- 6 Unit Delete

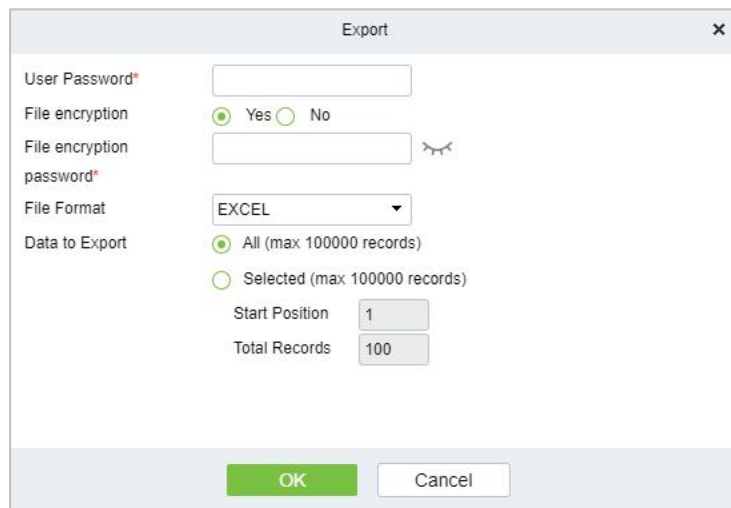
### 4.1.2.3 Edit

Select Unit, click **Edit**, and then click **OK** after editing the unit details.



### 4.1.2.4 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.



The 'Export' dialog box contains the following fields and options:

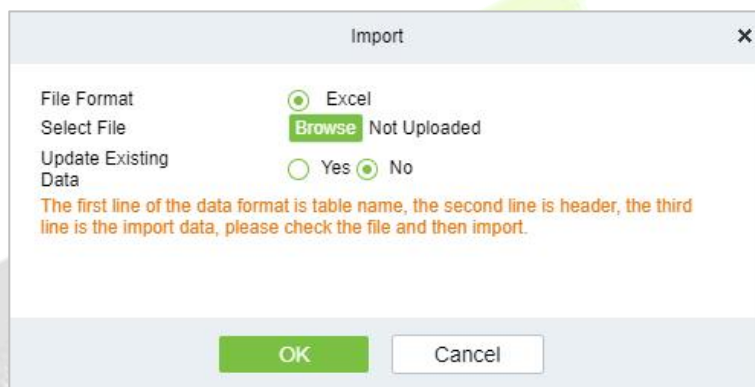
- User Password\*: [Text Input]
- File encryption:  Yes  No
- File encryption password\*: [Text Input]
- File Format: EXCEL (Dropdown)
- Data to Export:  All (max 100000 records)  Selected (max 100000 records)
- Start Position: [Input: 1]
- Total Records: [Input: 100]

Buttons: OK, Cancel

Figure 4- 7 Export

### 4.1.2.5 Import

Batch import floor data according to the added template.



The 'Import' dialog box contains the following fields and options:

- File Format:  Excel
- Select File: [Browse] Not Uploaded
- Update Existing Data:  Yes  No

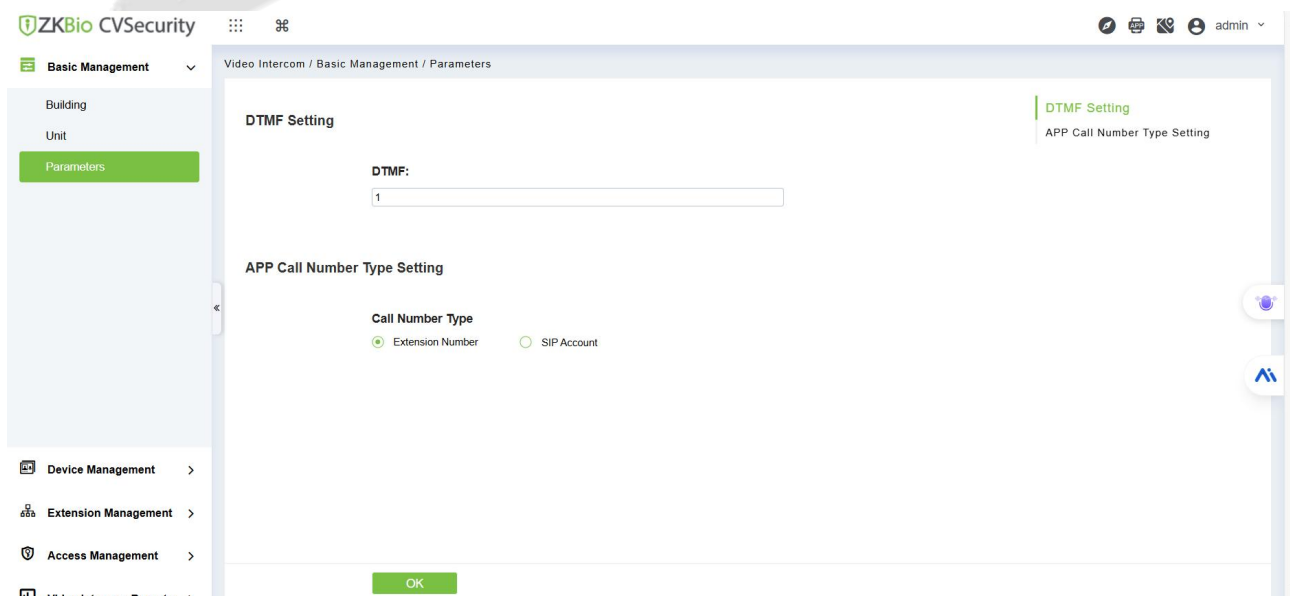
Note: The first line of the data format is table name, the second line is header, the third line is the import data, please check the file and then import.

Buttons: OK, Cancel

Figure 4- 8 Import

### 4.1.3 Parameter

This menu is used for configuring DTMF and APP Call Type.



The 'Parameters' page shows the following configuration options:

- DTMF Setting: DTMF: [Input: 1]
- APP Call Number Type Setting: Call Number Type:  Extension Number  SIP Account

Buttons: OK

●DTMF

DTMF (Dual-Tone Multi-Frequency) is a telephone communication technology used to send signals through telephone key presses. After configuring DTMF in this menu, the command will be synchronized with the connected devices and apps. This synchronization is used to match the door-opening command between the app and the device, facilitating direct door opening via the app.

●APP Call Type

### APP Call Number Type Setting

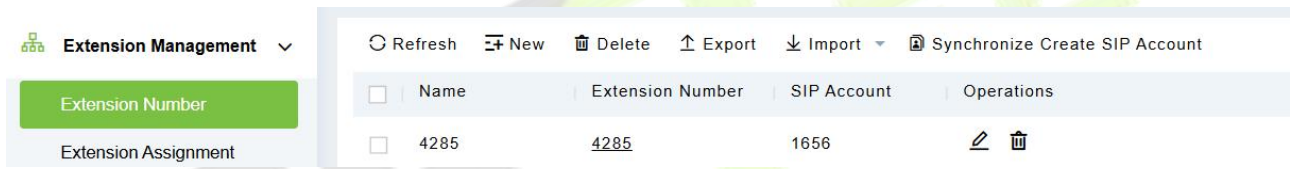
#### Call Number Type

- Extension Number
- SIP Account

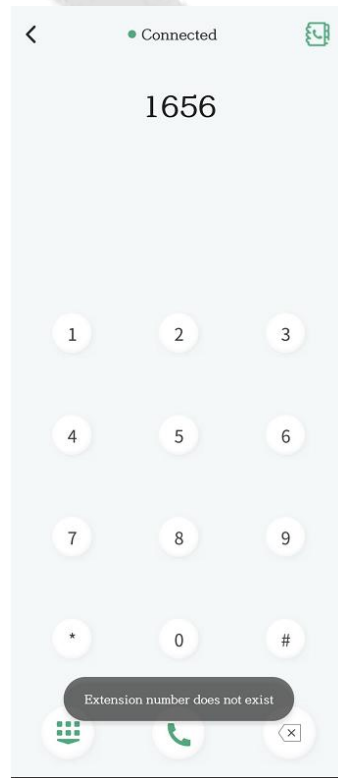
It is used to configure the call type of the APP, and the extension number or SIP account can be selected.

#### Result Verification

For example, if the extension number is selected, only the extension number can be entered for dialing when the APP makes a call. If the SIP account is entered, the APP will prompt that the extension number does not exist.



As shown in the following figure, if a SIP account is entered in the APP, a prompt will be displayed saying "The extension number does not exist."



## 4.2 Device Management

### 4.2.1 DNK Device Operation Guide

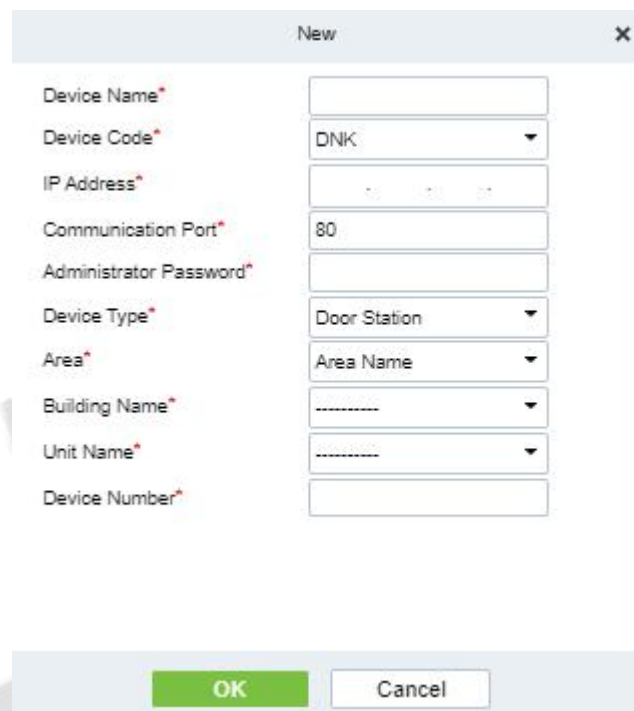
**DNK Type** :the devices supported by this type include:

- Outdoor unit: VEX-B21L, VEX-B21A, VEX-B24L, VEX-B24A, VEX-B25L
- Indoor unit:VT07-B22L,VT07-B26L-W,VT10-B21A,VT10-B21L

#### 4.2.1.1 Add Devices

**Step 1:** Go to **Video Intercom > Device Management > Device**.

**Step 2:** Click **New**, the interface for adding a device will be displayed.



The screenshot shows a 'New' dialog box with the following fields and values:

| Field                   | Value        |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| Device Name*            |              |
| Device Code*            | DNK          |
| IP Address*             |              |
| Communication Port*     | 80           |
| Administrator Password* |              |
| Device Type*            | Door Station |
| Area*                   | Area Name    |
| Building Name*          |              |
| Unit Name*              |              |
| Device Number*          |              |

Buttons: OK, Cancel

**Figure 4- 9 Device Add Interface**

**Step 3:Manufacture:** please select **DNK**.Please add the corresponding parameters.

**Figure 4- 10 Device Add Interface**

| Parameter                | How to set   |
|--------------------------|--|
| Device Name              | Customize the name of the device.  |
| Device Code              | Select the device code.  |
| IP Address               | Fill in the IP address of <b>Video Intercom</b> device.  |
| Communication Port       | Enter the communication port number of the device.   |
| Username                 | Enter the username of the device.  |
| Administrator Password   | Fill in the administrator password.  |
| External Network Address | Enter the external address of the device.  |
| Transport Protocol       | Select the transport protocol of the device.   |
| Device Type              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the device type you want to add, support to select outer station, outdoor station, doorbell station and indoor Station.</li> <li>• If select <b>Outer Station</b>, you should choose the device area and choose whether to enable the unit number.</li> <li>• If select <b>Door Station</b>, you should choose device area, Building and unit.</li> <li>• If select <b>Doorbell Station</b>, you should choose area, building, unit and room.</li> <li>• If select <b>Indoor Station</b>, you should choose area, building, unit and room, and fill in the Sync Code.</li> </ul> |
| Area                     | Divide the device into regions and select the region to which the device belongs.  |
| Building                 | Please first configure the building where the device is located in the " <a href="#">Building</a> " settings.  |

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| Unit          | Please first configure the unit where the device is located in the "Unit" settings. |
| Device Number | Customize the number of the device.   |

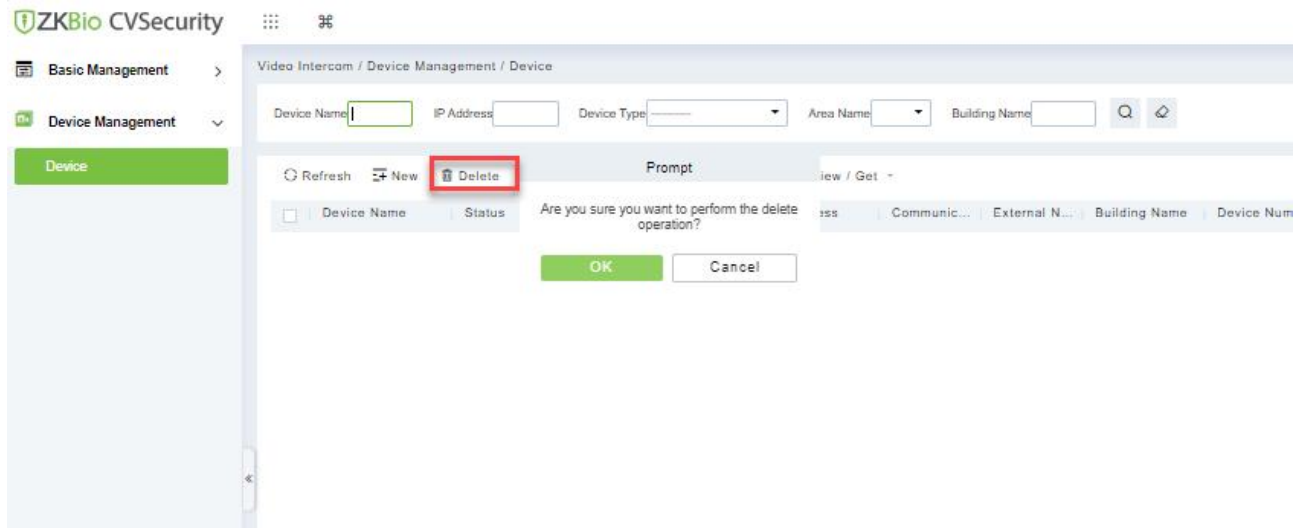
**Table 4-1 Parameter setting**

### 4.2.1.2 Delete

**Step 1:** On the Device interface, select the required Device from the list.

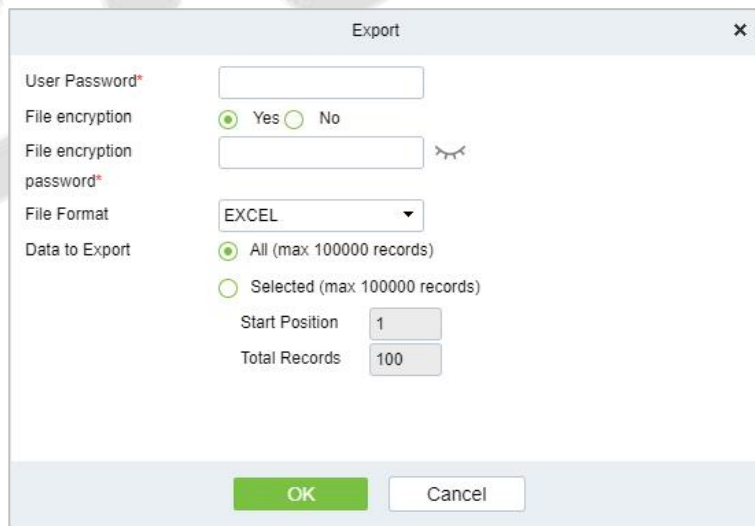
**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Device.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Device from the list.



### 4.2.1.3 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.



**Figure 4- 11 Export video intercom Configuration Flow**

### 4.2.1.4 Control

● **Reboot Device**

It will reboot the selected device.

- Synchronize Time

It will synchronize device time with server's current time.

- Synchronize People Data

Synchronize data of the system to the device. Select device, click **Synchronize People Data** and click **OK** to complete synchronization

#### 4.2.1.5 Set up

- Add Extension

It will add the extension for the device.

- Add Address Book

It will add the address book to the device.

- Upload Media Files

Click to upload the media files for the device.

#### 4.2.1.6 View/Get

- View Extension

Select device and click View Extension to get the device extension data.

- View Address Book

Select device and click View Address Book to get the device address details.

- Get Record

Select device and click get records to get the device data.

- Device Web Service

Select device and click Device Web Service to get the web service details of the device.

### 4.2.2 IPBX Device Operation Guide

This device type is used to assign SIP accounts to devices and the APP for SIP protocol-based video intercom applications. Before using this feature, you need to purchase a GDS PBX server from ZKTeco. If you do not wish to purchase IPBX server hardware, you can also subscribe to our cloud SIP. The following steps mainly illustrate the operational instructions for the GDS PBX service.

- GDS Device

**Step 1:** Go to **Video Intercom > Device Management > Device**.

**Step 2:** Click **New**, the interface for adding a device will be displayed.

**Figure 4- 12 Device Add Interface**

**Step 3:Manufacture :**please select the brand.and add update corresponding parameters.

**Figure 4- 13 GDS Parameter**

| Parameter          | How to set                                    |
|--------------------|---|
| Device Name        | Customize the name of the server.             |
| IP Address         | Fill in the IP address of <b>PBX Server</b> . |
| Communication Port | Fill in the Port of <b>PBX Server</b> .       |
| User Name          | The user name of PBX Server.                  |

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Administrator Password   | Fill in the administrator password.  |
| External Network Address | The address of the actual SIP communication(The port number is the default UDP port for SIP services). |
| Transport Protocol       | Transport protocol for SIP, default is UDP.  |
| Device Type              | Device type, default is IPBX   |
| Area                     | Area in which the PBX server is located  |

### 4.3 Access Management

This menu is solely used for configuring and synchronizing access permissions for personnel entering and exiting for **DNK** device types.

#### 4.3.1 Access Control Group

Access control group define groups and categories of video intercom to facilitate subsequent permission assignment operations.

Setting operations include creating access level groups and adding doors to access level groups.

##### 4.3.1.1 Add Group

This section describes how to create Step for Access Control groups in the module of Video Intercom.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Access Management > Access Control Group**”.

**Step 2:** Click **New** in the left column, and the page for adding access control groups will be displayed.

**Step 3:** On the page for adding access control groups, set parameters based on the new requirements, as shown in figure below.



Figure 4- 14 Adding Access Control Groups

| Parameter   | How to set                                       |
|-------------|--|
| Level name  | Customize the name of the access control groups. |
| Description | Add description as needed.                       |

Table 4-2 Description of Access Control Right Groups

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to finish configuring the access control right group.

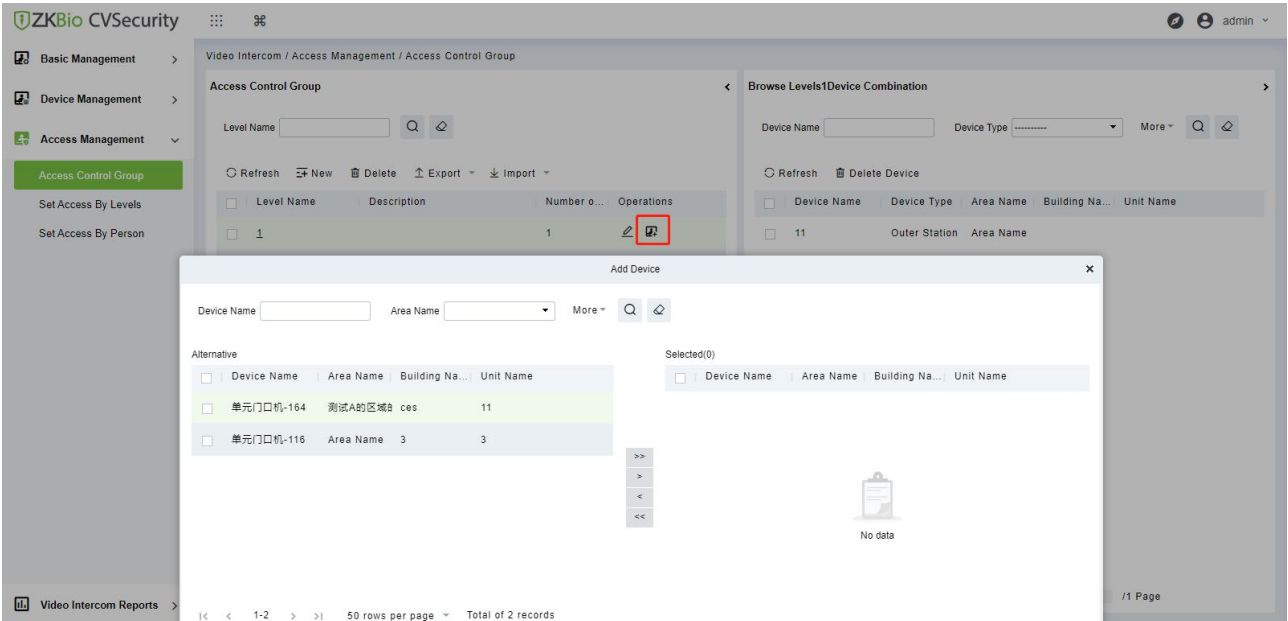
##### 4.3.1.2 Add Device

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Access Management > Access Control Group>Add**

**Device”.**

**Step 2:** Click **“Add Device”**, and the page for selecting a door will be displayed. add a door as required, as shown in figure below.



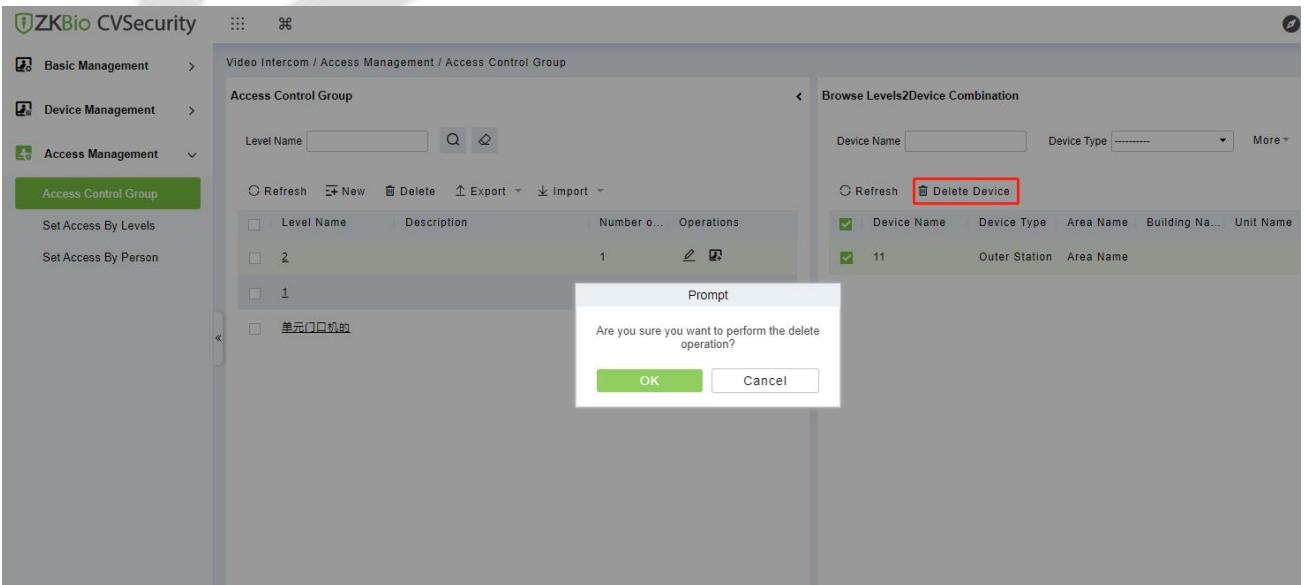
**Figure 4- 15 Adding Access Control Groups Add Devices**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to finish configuring the device for the video intercom right group.

| Parameter   | How to set                    |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Device Name | Enter the name of the device. |
| Area Name   | Enter the name of the Area.   |

**4.3.1.3 Delete Devices**

Select delete device, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete device.



**Figure 4- 16 Delete Device**

### 4.3.1.4 Export / Import

Export the permission group information of Access Control Template:

In the Video Intercom Module, click **Access Management > Access Control Group>Export>Export Access Group**, then You can export doors of access level in Excel file format. Enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click OK. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and Click **OK**.

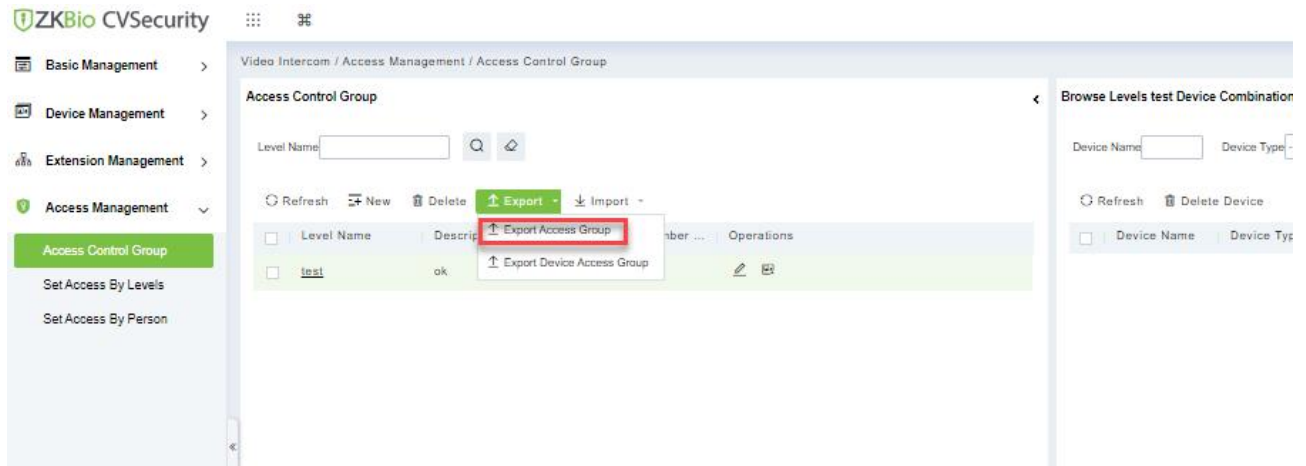


Figure 4- 17 Export Access Group 1.

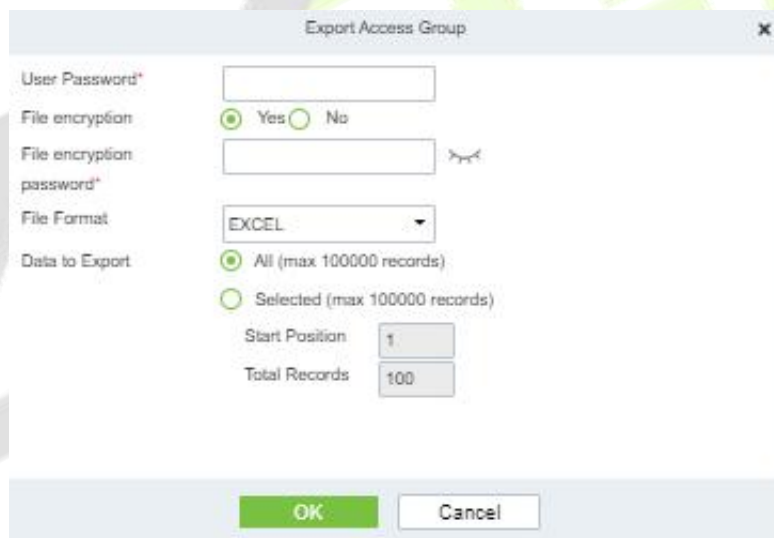


Figure 4- 18 Export the Access GroupTemplate 2

Export the device Access group of Access Control Template:

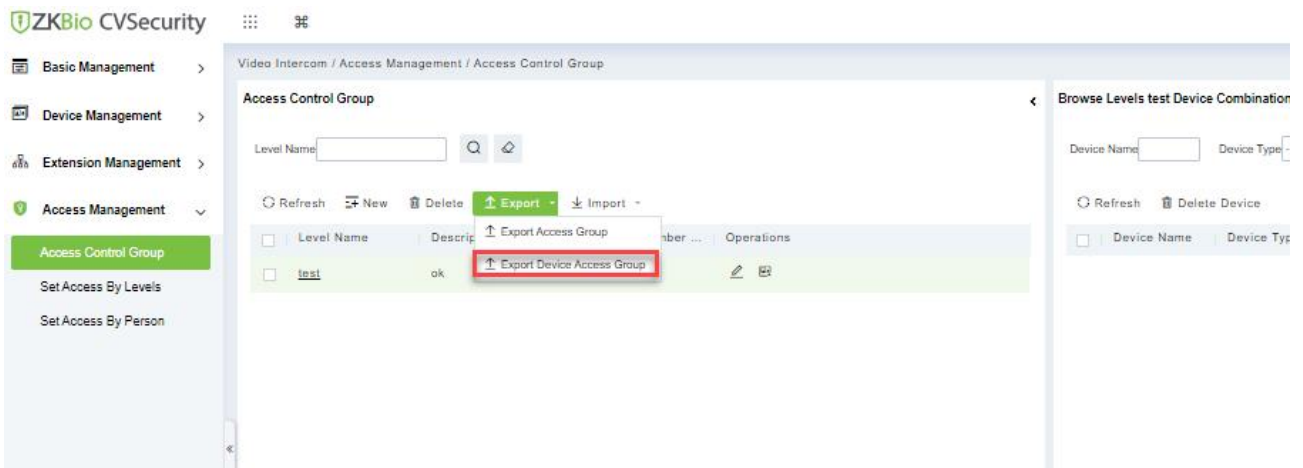


Figure 4- 19 Export the device access groupTemplate 1

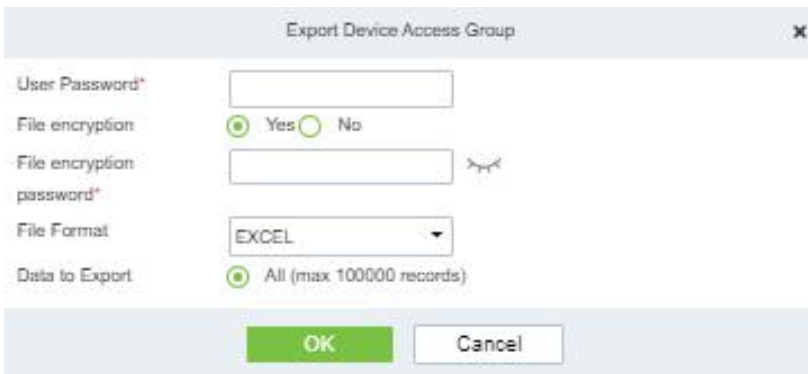


Figure 4- 20 Export the device access groupTemplate2

### 4.3.2 Set Access by Levels

This section describes Operation Step that set access by levels in the module of video intercom in ZKBio CVSecurity.

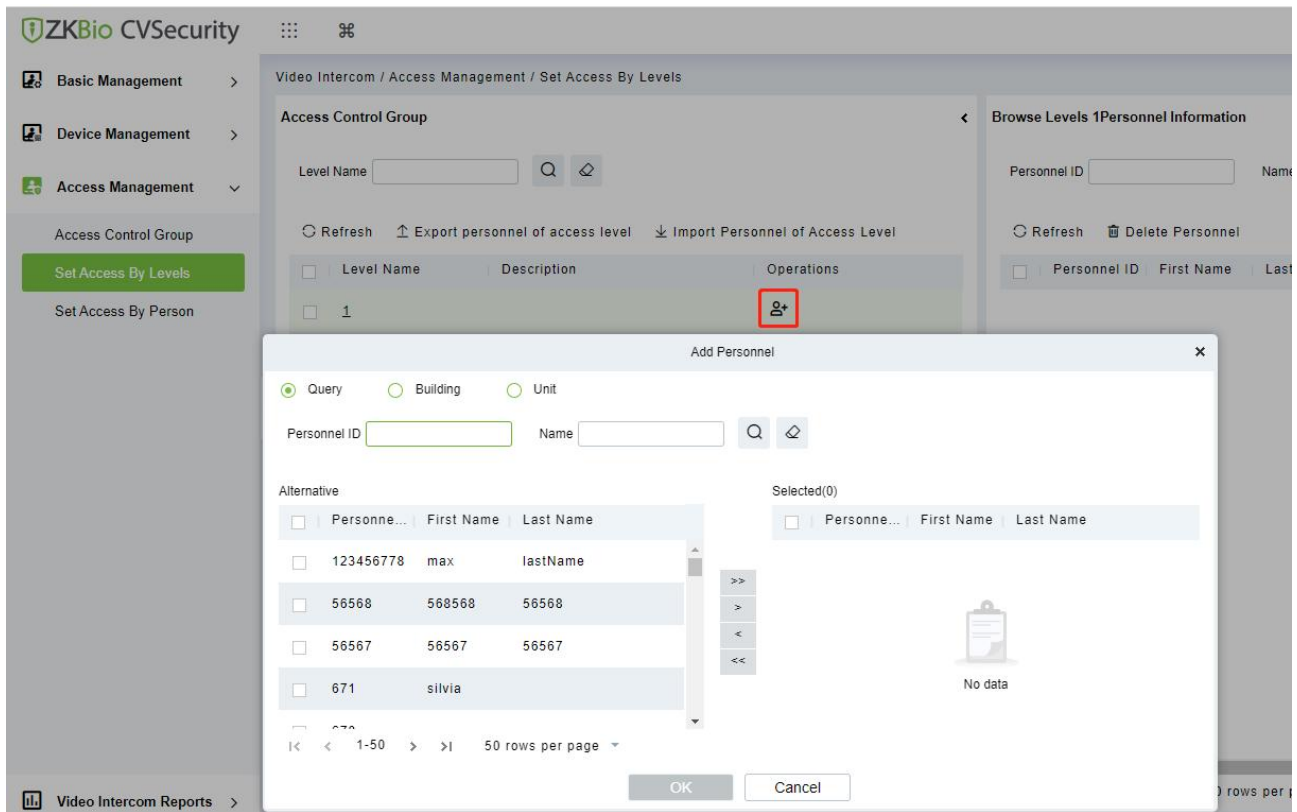
#### 4.3.2.1 Add Personnel

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Access Management>Set Access by Levels**”

**Step 2:** In the Operation column of the corresponding permission group, click “**Add Personnel**”. The Add

Personnel page is displayed. Select personnel as required.



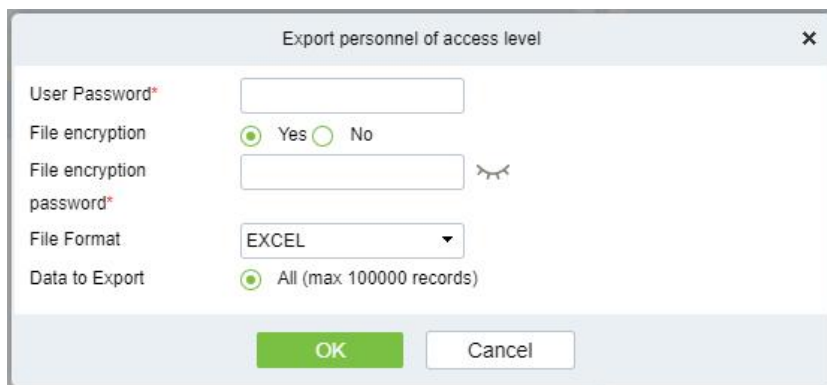
**Figure 4- 21 The Interface of Add Personnel When Set Access by Level**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the assignment of personnel add.

| Parameter     | How to set                    |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Personnel ID  | Enter the personnel ID..      |
| Name          | Enter the name of the person. |
| Building Name | Select the building name.     |
| Unit Name     | Select the unit name.         |

**4.3.2.2 Export Personnel of Access Level**

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and click **OK**.



**Figure 4- 22 Export the Personnel of Access Level**

### 4.3.2.3 Import Personnel of Access Level

Click **Import** and then click **Browse** to select a file from the stored location. Finally, click **OK**.

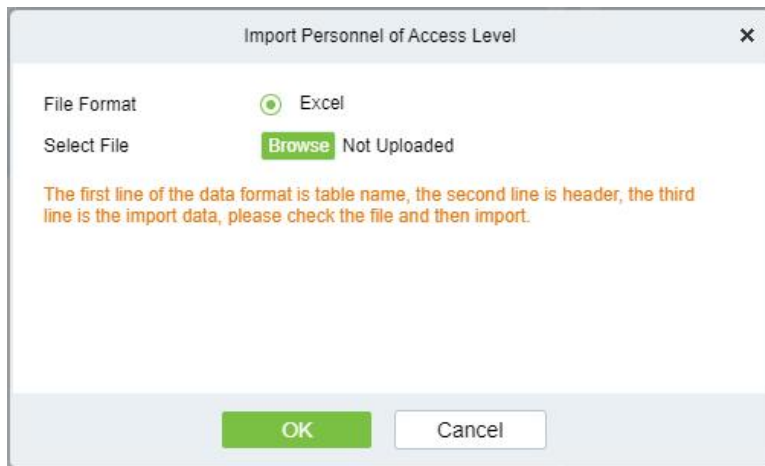


Figure 4- 23 Import the Personnel of Access Level

### 4.3.2.4 Delete Personnel

Select delete personnel, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete personnel.

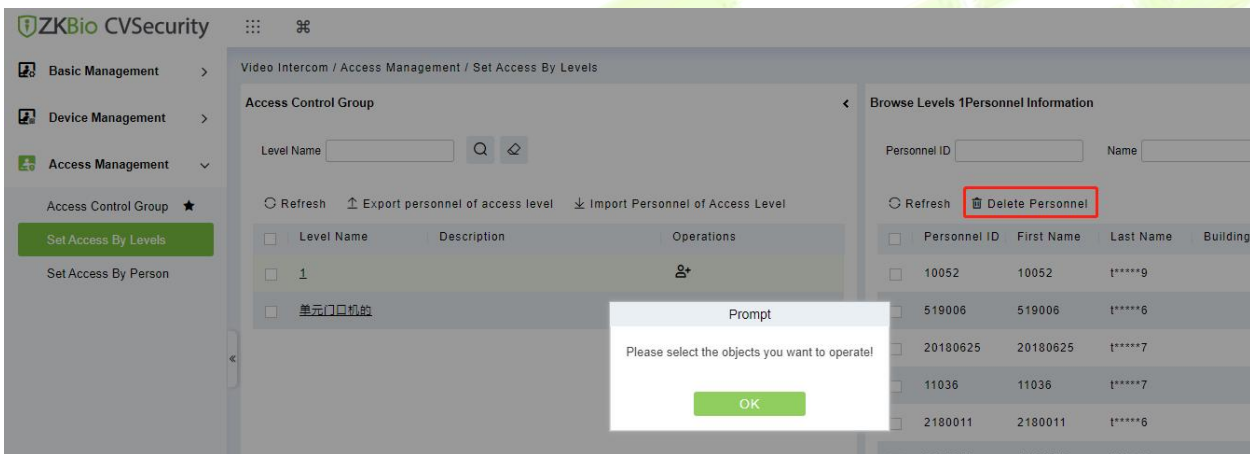


Figure 4- 24 Delete Personnel

## 4.3.3 Set Access by Person

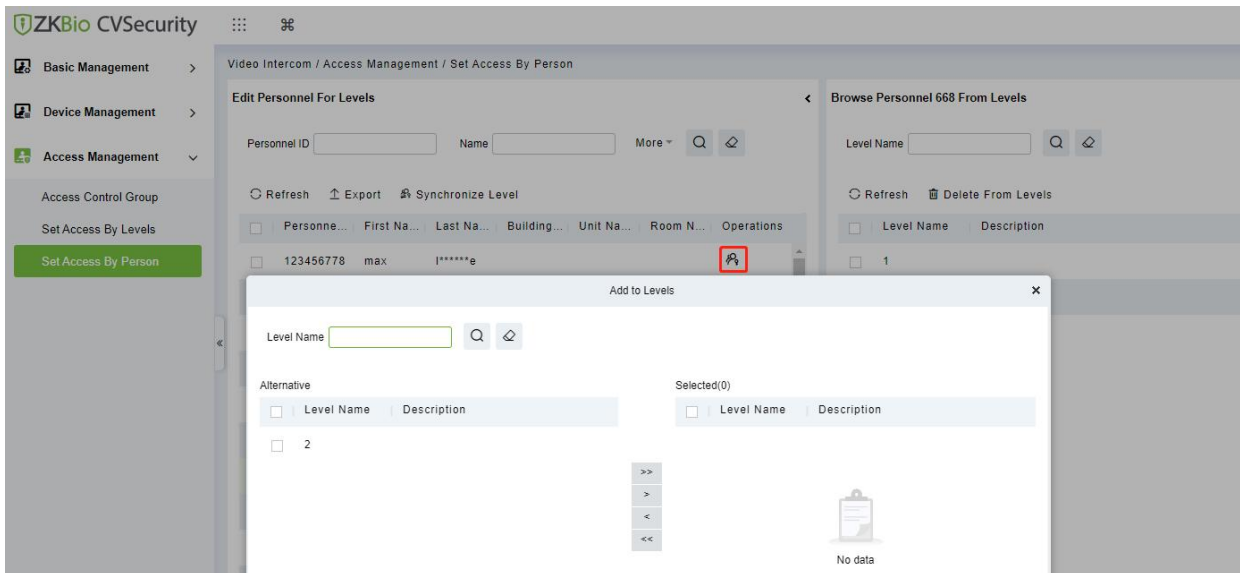
This section describes Operation Step that set access by person in the module of video intercom in ZKBio CVSecurity.

### 4.3.3.1 Add Personnel

Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose **Access Management>Set Access by Person**.

**Step 2:** In the Operation column of the corresponding permission group, click **“Add to Levels”**. The Add level page will be displayed. Select level as required.



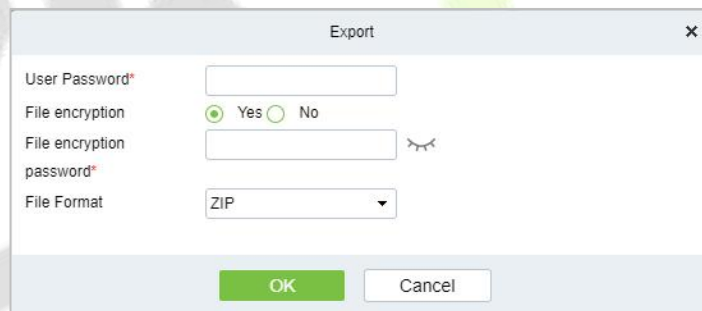
**Figure 4- 25 The Interface of Add Level When Set Access by Personnel**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the assignment of personnel add.

| Parameter  | How to set                                  |
|------------|---|
| Level Name | Enter the name of the level for the person. |

#### 4.3.3.2 Export

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and click **OK**.



**Figure 4- 26 Export the Access Level of Personnel**

#### 4.3.3.3 Synchronize Access Level

Select the level to be synchronized and send the corresponding device area data in the software to the device.

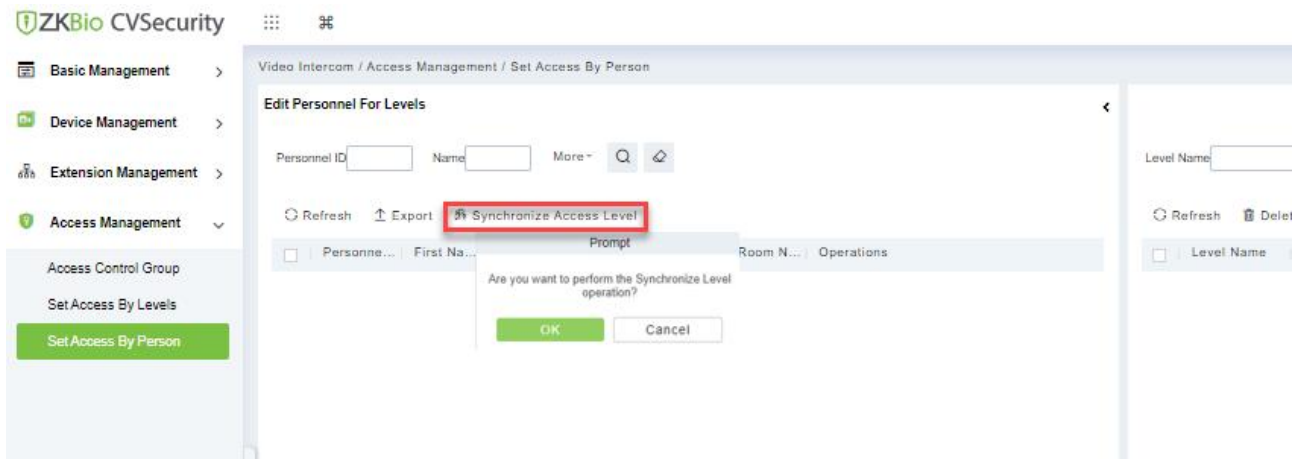


Figure 4- 27 Synchronize Access Level

### 4.3.3.4 Delete from Levels

Select delete level, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete level.

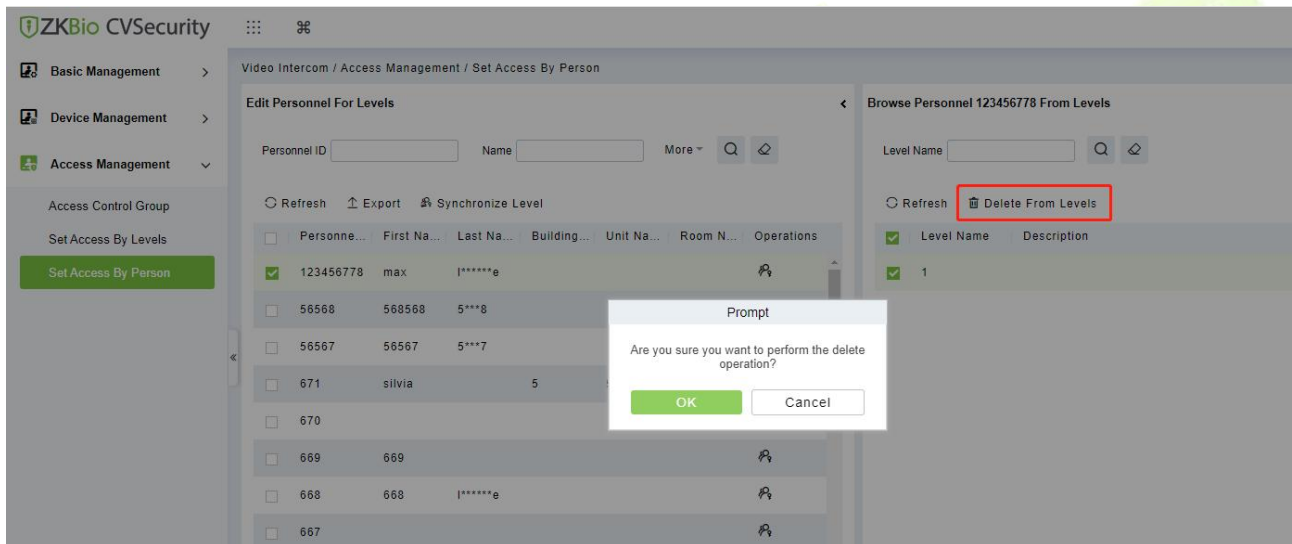


Figure 4- 28 Delete level

## 4.4 Extension Management

This menu is used for managing and assigning extension numbers.

Prerequisite

ZKBio CVSecurity supports two types of SIP servers:

- PBX Server: For addition and operation methods, please refer to [IPBX Device Operation Guide](#)
- Cloud SIP: Enable Cloud Sip ,please refer to [Cloud Setting](#)

### 4.4.1 Extension Number

Usually used for internal telephone systems, an extension number is a number or code used within a company or organization to identify different telephone sets.

#### 4.4.1.1 New

Click on **"New"** to add a single extension number. If you need to add in bulk, please use the "Import"

function.

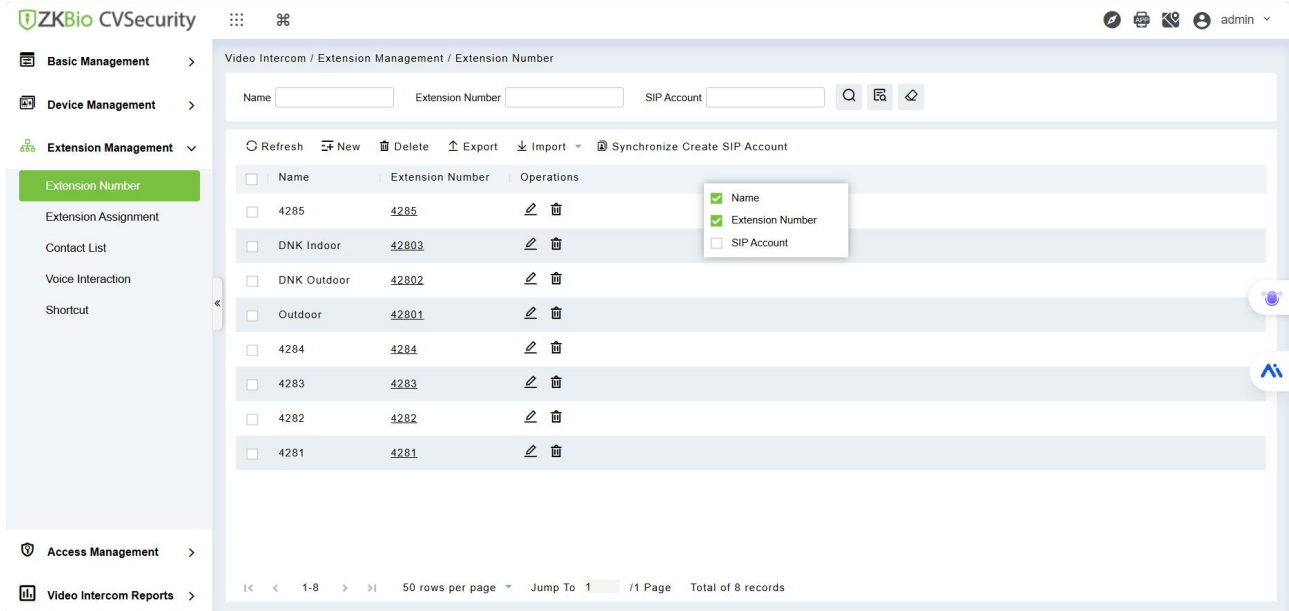
**Figure 4- 29 New Extension Number**

| Parameter               | How to set  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Name                    | Customize the extension name  |
| Extension Type          | Default communication type for SIP  |
| Extension Number        | Customize the extension number; for example, the number for Room 401, Unit 2, Building 1 can be defined as 12401 for easy internal recognition  |
| Extension Password      | Password for the extension  |
| Voice Mail              | Enable voicemail, this parameter is only valid for PBX servers  |
| Voice Mailbox Password  | The voicemail password for this extension, this parameter is only valid for PBX servers   |
| Enable Undisturbed Mode | Enable the Do Not Disturb mode to ignore all incoming calls, this parameter is only valid for PBX servers   |
| Incoming Calling Number | Caller ID number  |
| Calling Name            | Caller ID name  |
| Direct Dialing Address  | Intranet point-to-point call device IP; enter the IP here, and the call will be made to the direct dial address first; if the direct dial address is unreachable, then the call will be made through SIP; dual protection, effectively avoiding |

communication issues in case of network interruption or SIP server downtime.

### Result Verification

After clicking "OK", the created extension number and SIP account will be automatically displayed in the list. The SIP account is hidden by default, and you can right-click on the table header and tick the option.



#### 4.4.1.2 Delete

Select one or more extension numbers from the list, then click "Delete", a dialog box will appear as shown below:

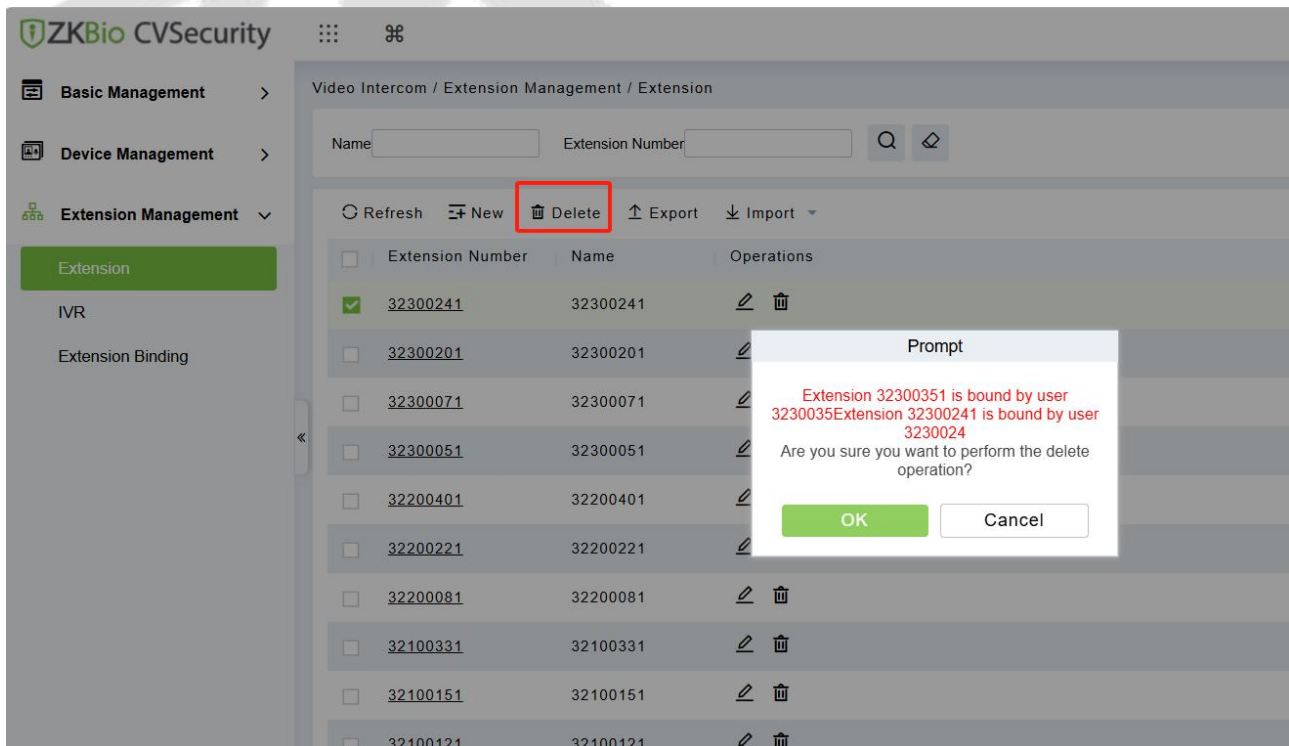


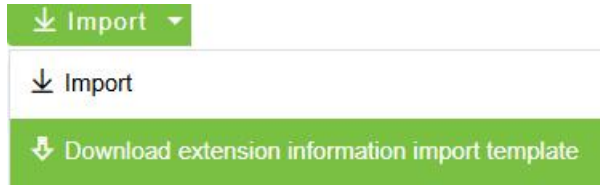
Figure 4- 30 Delete Extension Number

Clicking **OK** will result in the deletion of the selected extension number.

### 4.4.1.3 Import

If you need to add extension numbers in bulk, you can use the Import function.

**Step 1:** Download the import template by clicking **Import** -> **import** template.



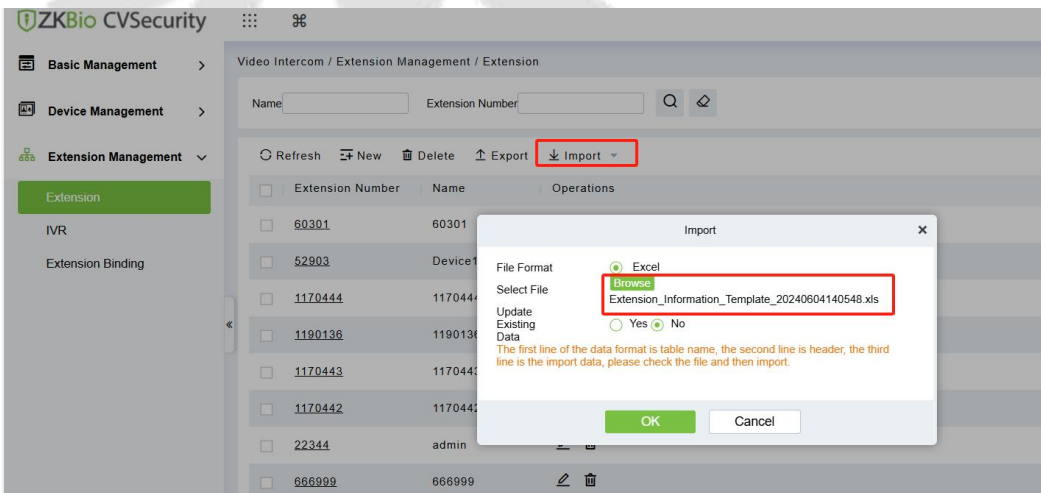
**Figure 4- 31 Import Extension Number**

**Step 2:** Fill in the information into the import template.

| Extension Information Template |              |                     |                |              |
|--------------------------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------|
| Extension Number               | Name         | Direct Dial Address | Calling Number | Calling Name |
| 400                            | Popy Xiao    |                     |                | Popy Xiao    |
| 401                            | Lambert Chen |                     |                | Lambert Chen |
| 402                            | Leo Hou      |                     |                | Leo Hou      |
| 403                            | sfsfd        |                     |                | sfsfd        |
| 404                            | fsfds        |                     |                | fsfds        |
| 405                            | fsfsf        |                     |                | fsfsf        |
| 406                            | fsfsf        |                     |                | fsfsf        |
| 407                            | fsfsf        |                     |                | fsfsf        |
| 408                            | fsfsdfd      |                     |                | fsfsdfd      |
| 409                            | fssdfds      |                     |                | fssdfds      |
| 410                            | fsfsdfd3w    |                     |                | fsfsdfd3w    |
| 411                            | fsfsw        |                     |                | fsfsw        |
| 412                            | fsfsf1       |                     |                | fsfsf1       |
| 413                            | afsdfsf      |                     |                | afsdfsf      |
| 414                            | wdsfsfs      |                     |                | wdsfsfs      |

**Figure 4- 32 Import Extension Number**

**Step 3:** Click on **Import** -> **Import**, then click Browse to select the import template, and click OK to start the bulk import process.



**Figure 4- 33 Import Extension Number**

Once the progress reaches 100%, you will be prompted with the results of the import, as shown in the figure below.

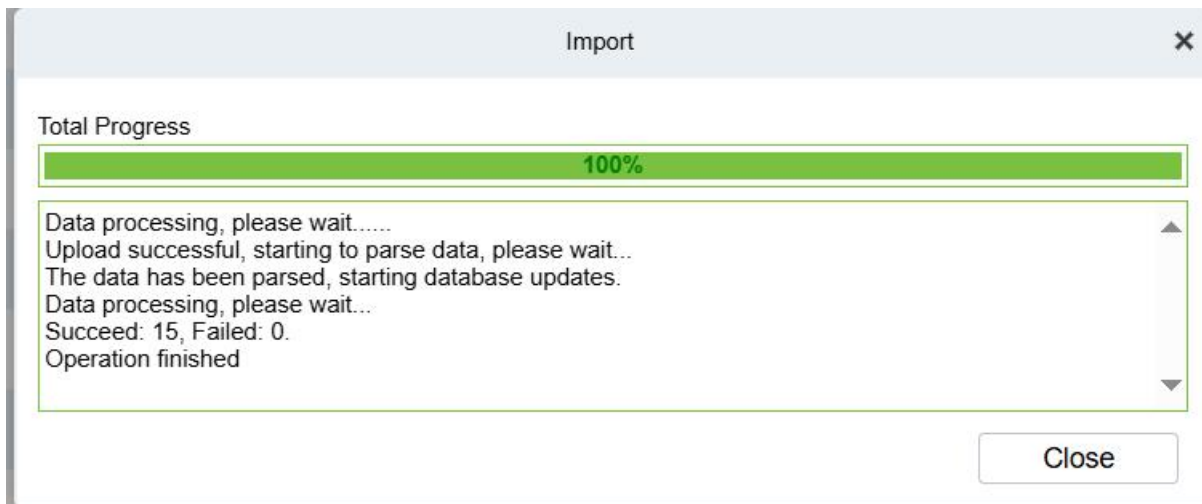


Figure 4- 34 Progress

### 4.4.1.4 Export

Export the relevant information of the extension numbers.

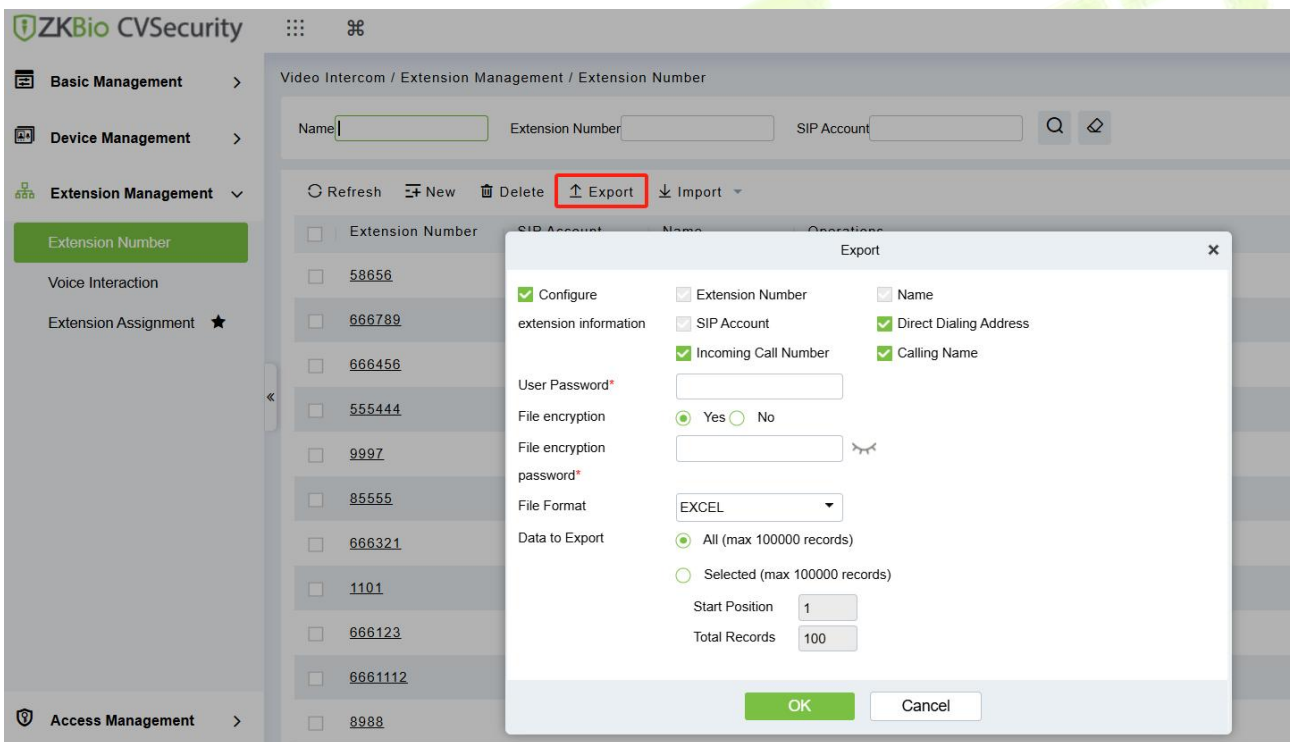


Figure 4- 35 Export Extension Number

### 4.4.2 Extension Assignment

This feature is designed to assign extension numbers to devices, personnel, and system users that have been added to ZKBio CVSecurity.

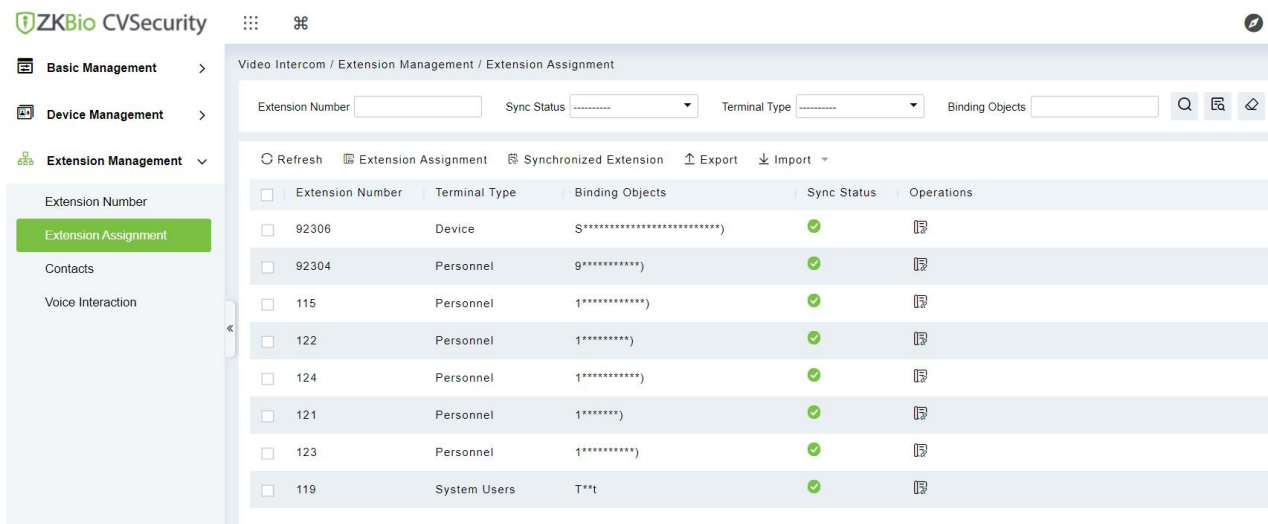


Figure 4- 36 Extension Assignment

### 4.4.2.1 Extension Number Assignment

#### 4.4.2.1.1 Assign Accounts to Devices

Select the Terminal Type from the drop down list the as **Personnel, System users, Device**, then select the Personnel ID for the device you wish to bind, and select the Extension Number. The account information will be automatically synchronized to the device, eliminating the need for users to manually configure the address on the device.

**Authorized Contacts:** Assign the selected contact list to the device, enabling it to dial the short numbers or extension numbers within that contact list.

**Note:** Senseface/Speedpalm /DNK devices require a firmware upgrade to support the contact list functionality.You can refer to the hardware suggestion list for the required firmware versions.

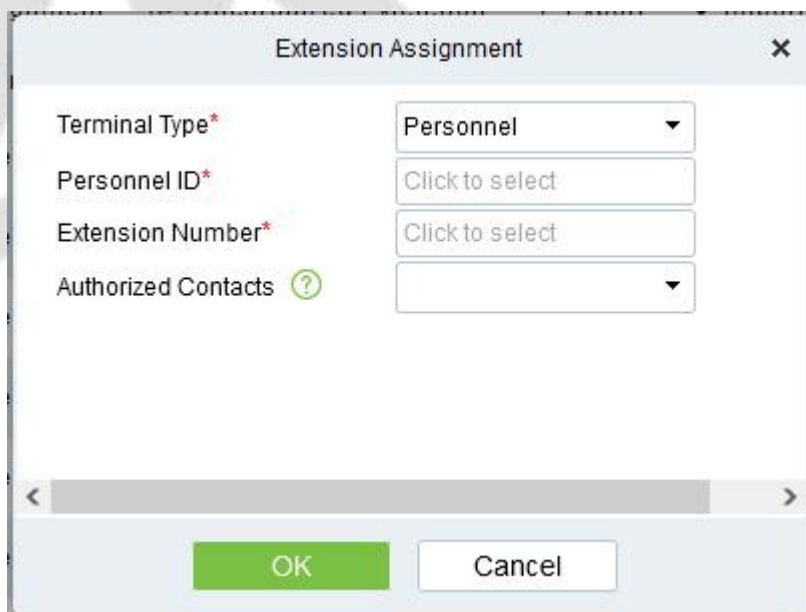


Figure 4- 37 Device

### Result Verification

In the device's visual intercom interface, under "**Account,**" you can see that the SIP server and account information have been automatically written in, as shown in the figure below.

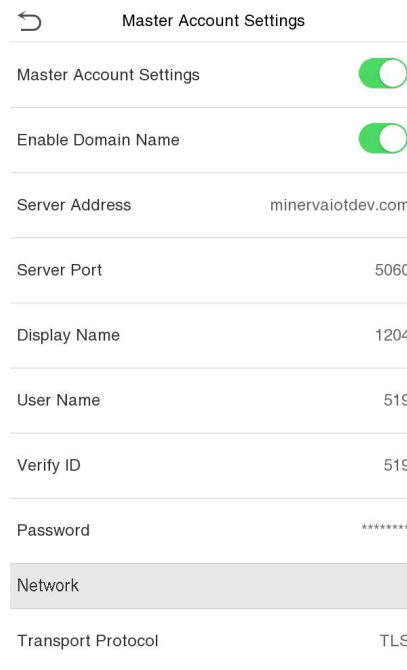


Figure 4- 38 Device Account

#### 4.4.2.1.2 Assigning Accounts to Personnel (App)

**Terminal Type:** Select "Personnel" as the Binding Type;

**Personnel ID:** Choose the Personnel ID for the individual to whom you want to assign the account;

**Extension Number:** Select the extension number in the Extension Number field.

**Authorized Contacts:** After selecting the contact list, the contacts in that list will be automatically synced to the APP.

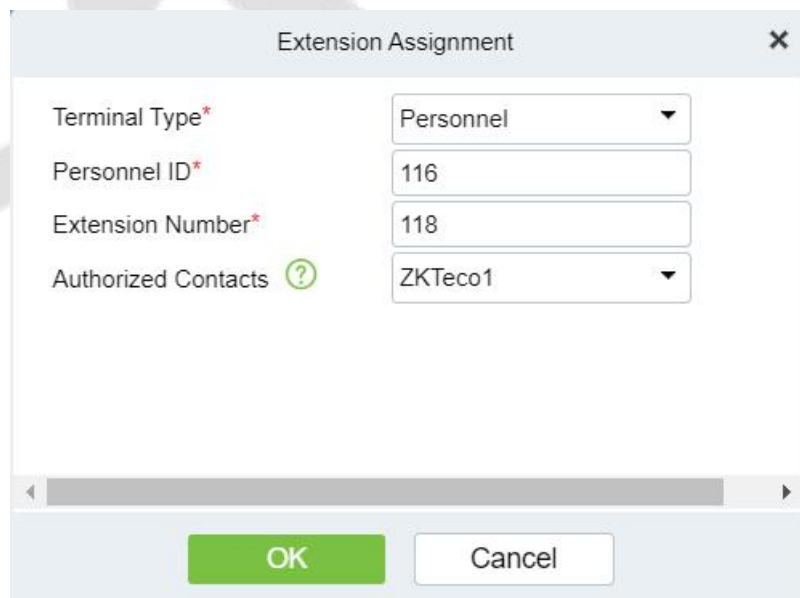
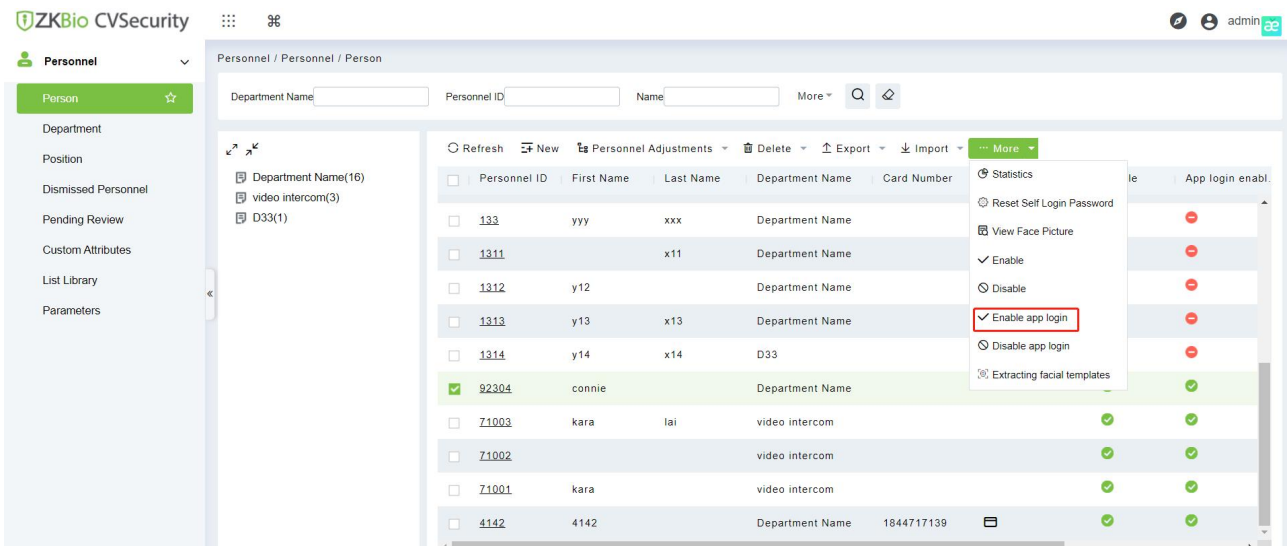


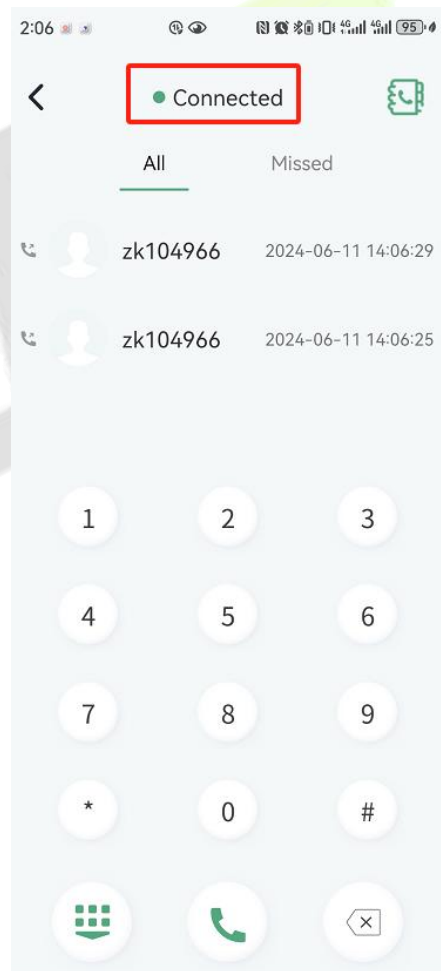
Figure 4- 39 Personnel

If the personnel has already enabled APP Login, then after logging in to the APP, they can directly use the APP for visual intercom communication.



**Result Verification:**

After the personnel logs into the APP and enters the Video Call application, the interface status will display as **"Connected"**; if the personnel has not been assigned an extension number, entering the application will prompt "You have not been assigned an extension number, please contact the administrator."



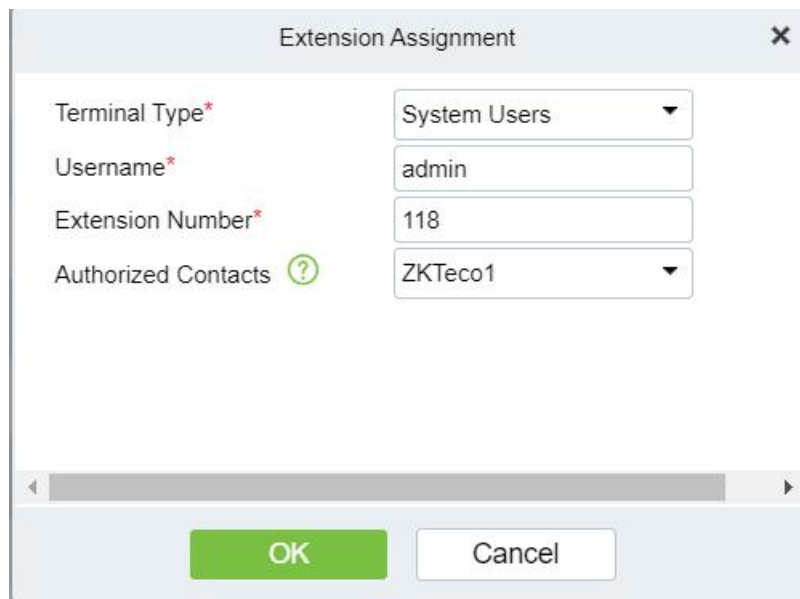
**4.4.2.1.3 Assigning Accounts to System User (App)**

**Terminal Type:** Select "System User";

**User Name:** Choose the system user to whom the account needs to be assigned;

**Extension Number:** Select the extension number.

**Authorized Contacts:** Assign the contact list to the system user; after the assignment, the system user can view contacts and make calls through the APP.



Extension Assignment

Terminal Type\* System Users

Username\* admin

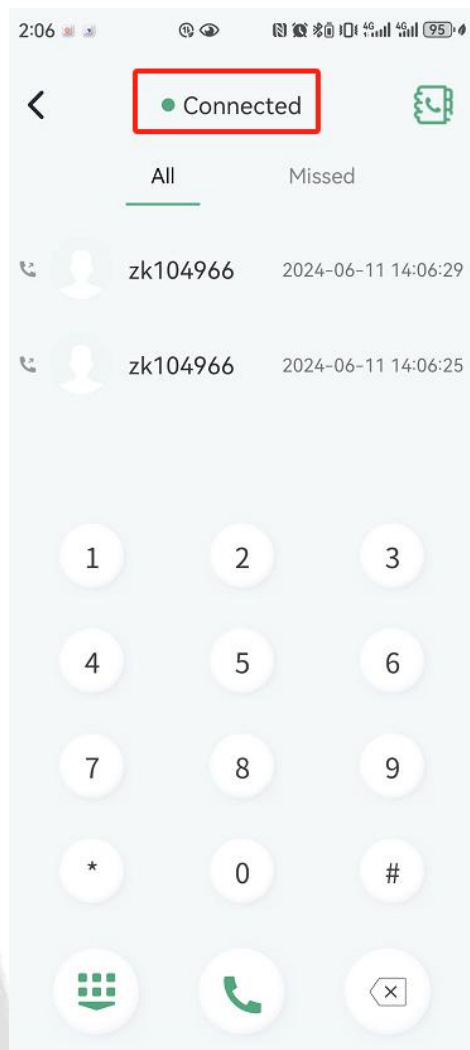
Extension Number\* 118

Authorized Contacts ? ZKTeco1

OK Cancel

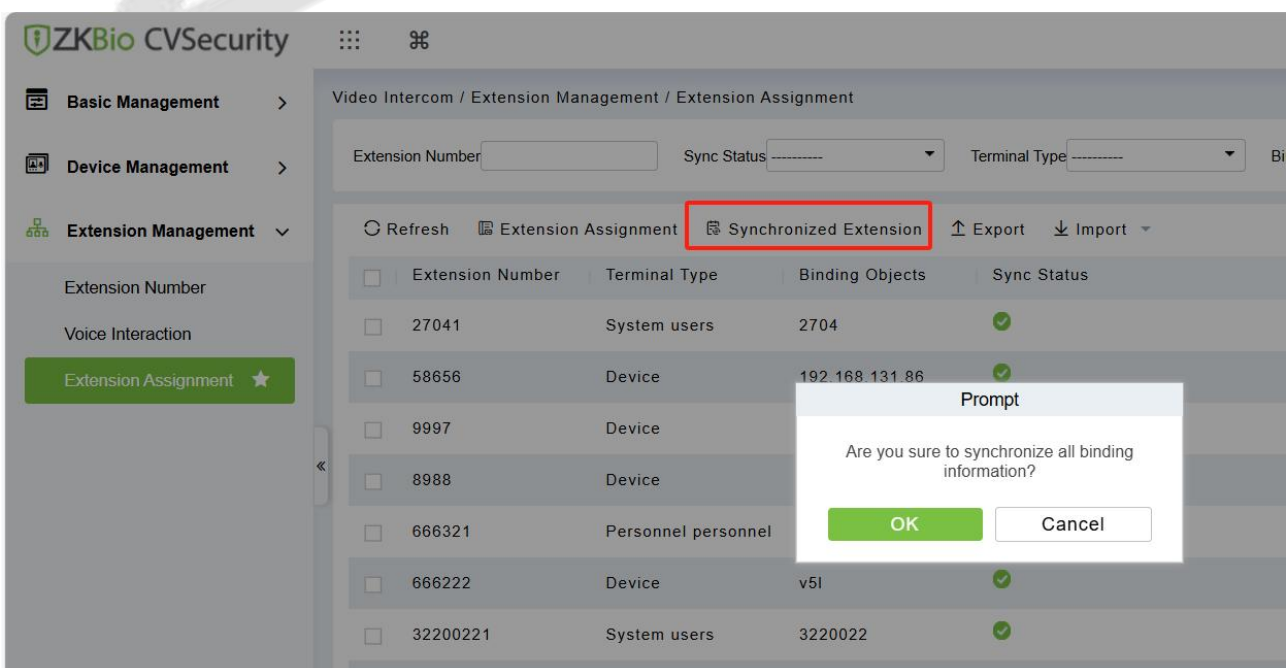
**Result Verification:**

After logging into the APP, upon entering the Video Call application, the interface status will display as "**Connected**"; if no extension number has been assigned, the application will prompt with "You have not been assigned an extension number, please contact the super administrator."



### 4.4.2.2 Synchronized Extension

Following the aforementioned steps to assign extension numbers to devices, personnel, and system users, the system will automatically synchronize the data to the devices or APPs. If the synchronization is interrupted or not successful, you can also click on "Synchronize Extension" to resynchronize.



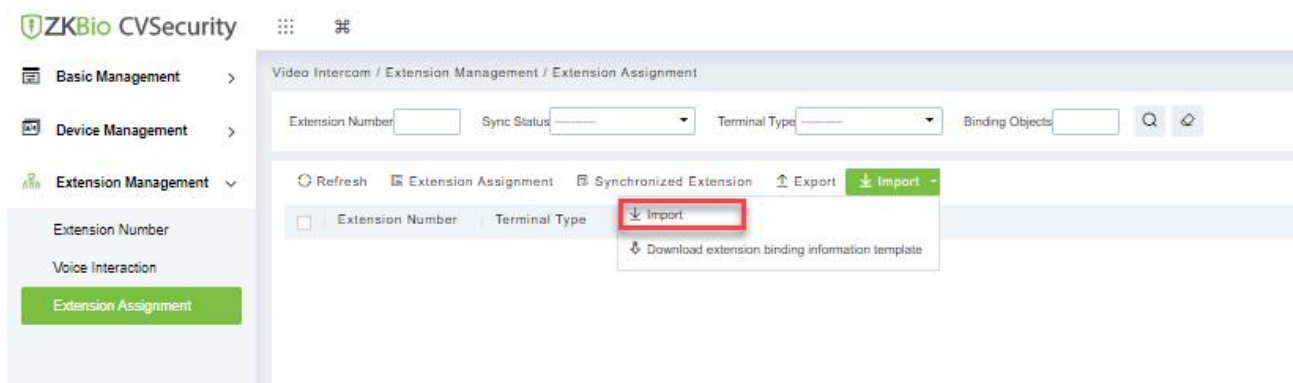
### 4.4.2.3 Import

If you need to add extension numbers in bulk, you can use the Import function.

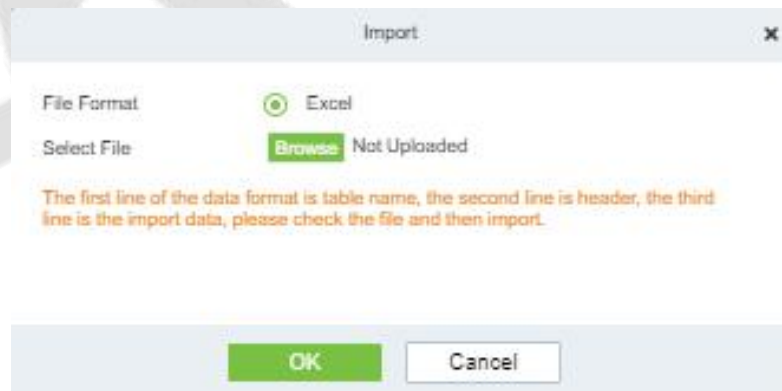
**Step 1:** Click on **Import** -> **Download extension information import template**, then and enter the details.

| Extension Number | Terminal Type | Binding Objects |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 101              | Personnel     | 101             |
| 102              | Personnel     | 102             |
| 103              | Personnel     | 103             |
| 104              | System User   | Test            |
| 105              | Device        | 105             |

**Step 2:** Download the import template by clicking **Import** -> **import** template.

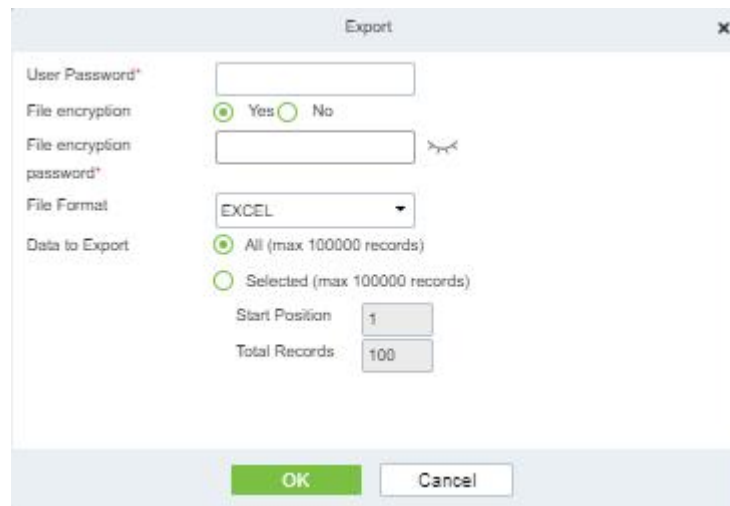


**Step 3:** Click on **Import** -> **Import**, then click Browse to select the import template, and click **OK** to start the bulk import process.



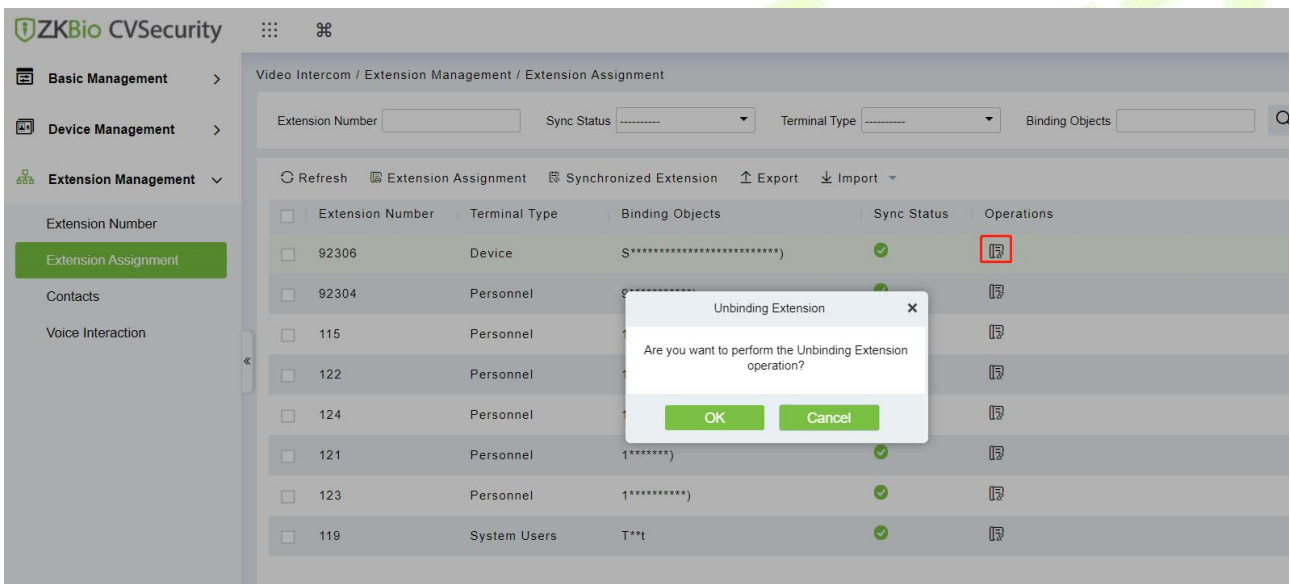
### 4.4.2.4 Export

Export the relevant information of the extension assignment.



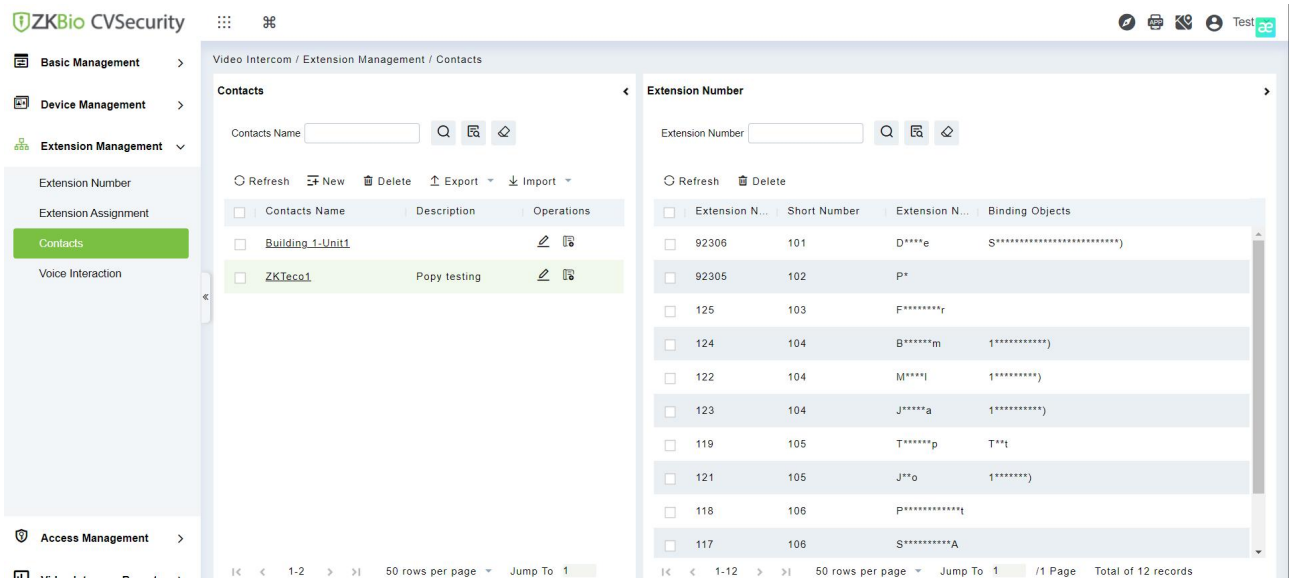
### 4.4.2.5 Unbinding Extension

Click  button, This will unbind the extension number from its current association.



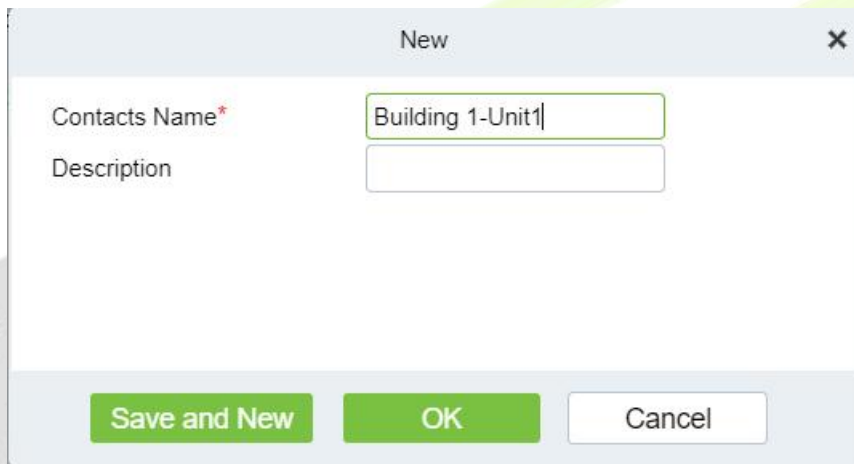
### 4.4.3 Contact List

User can create a contact list and assign it to devices or the app.




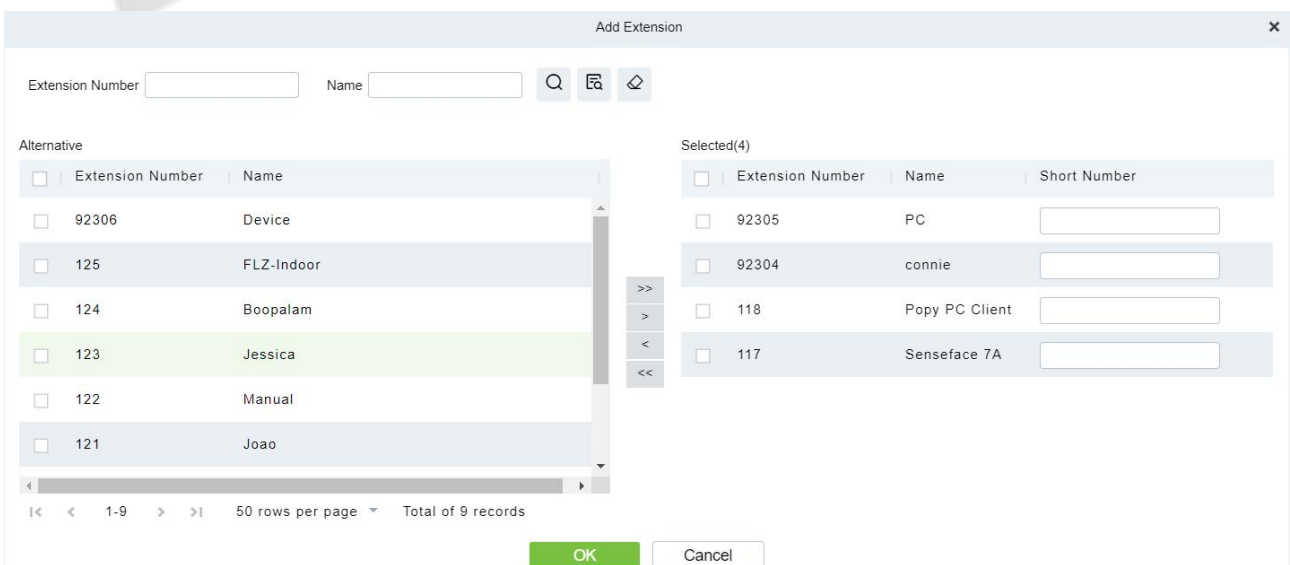
### 4.4.3.1 New

Click the **New** to create a new contact list.



### 4.4.3.2 Add Extension

Click on the  icon to add an extension number to the contact list, as shown in the image below:



After selection, the right sidebar allows you to edit and customize the **Short Number**.

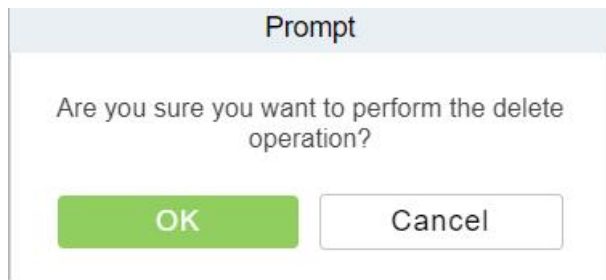
**Short Number:** Users can customize it, and Short Numbers can be duplicated. For example, if there are 4 members in the engineering maintenance team (4 extension numbers), to facilitate answering calls, they can all define their Short Number as 101. When this contact list is synchronized to the device or extension numbers, dialing 101 from the device will ring all 4 members of the engineering maintenance team.

**Note:**

1. The ZKBio Zexs APP (ZKBio Zexus) supports this contact list feature. Senseface/Speedpalm devices need a firmware upgrade to support it.
2. After creating a contact list, you can assign it to individuals, system users, or devices in the Extension Assignment section.

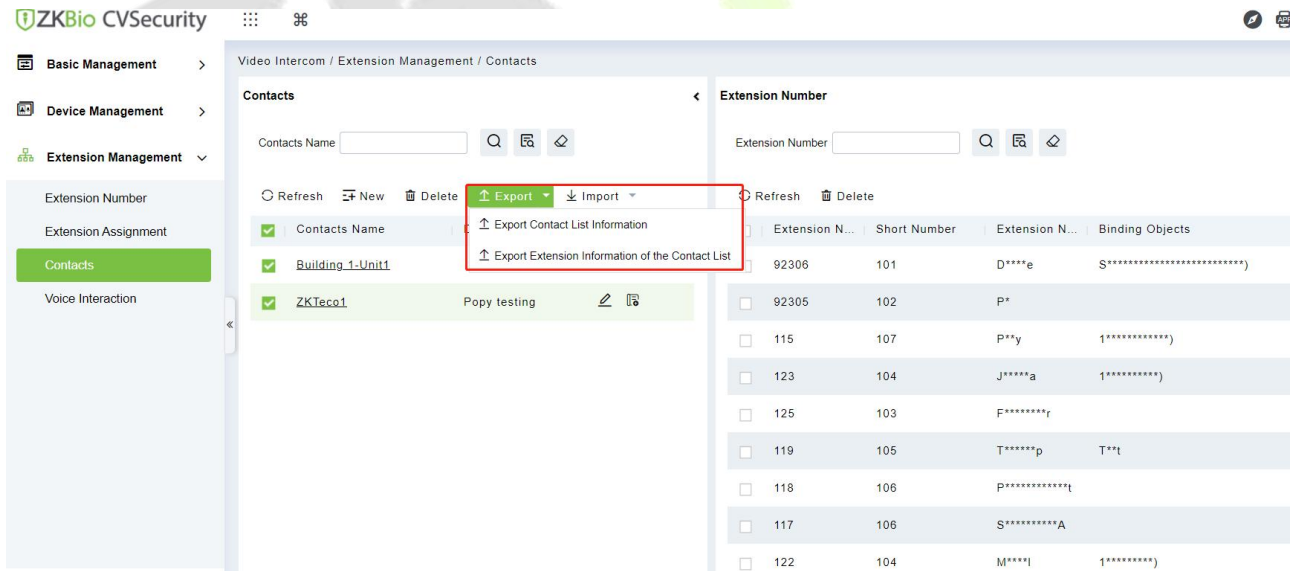
**4.4.3.3 Delete**

Click **Delete** to remove the contact list.



**4.4.3.4 Export**

Click **Export** to export the contact list.



● **Export Contact List Information**

| Contacts         |              |
|------------------|--------------|
| Contacts Name    | Description  |
| Building 1-Unit1 |              |
| ZKTecol          | Popy testing |

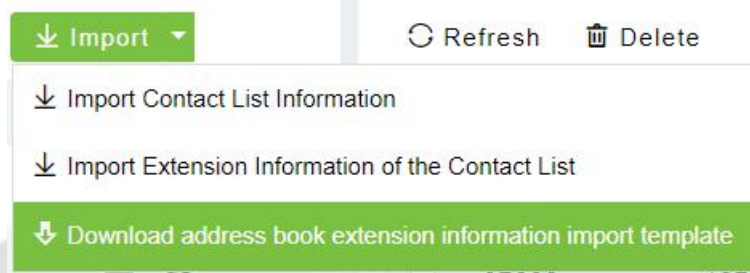
● Export Extension Information of the Contact List

| Video intercom address book extension information |                  |              |                |                                    |
|---|------------------|--------------|----------------|------------------------------------|
| Contacts Name                                     | Extension Number | Short Number | Extension Name | Binding Objects                    |
| ZKTecol   | 92306            | 101          | Device         | Senseface<br>7A(192. 168. 137. 60) |
| ZKTecol   | 92305            | 102          | PC             |                                    |
| ZKTecol   | 115              | 107          | Popy           | 115(Popy xiao)                     |
| ZKTecol   | 123              | 104          | Jessica        | 111(Jessica)                       |
| ZKTecol   | 125              | 103          | FLZ-Indoor     |                                    |
| ZKTecol   | 119              | 105          | Test app       | Test                               |
| ZKTecol   | 118              | 106          | Popy PC Client |                                    |
| ZKTecol   | 117              | 106          | Senseface 7A   |                                    |
| ZKTecol   | 122              | 104          | Manual         | 112(Manuel)                        |
| ZKTecol   | 116              | 107          | Speedpalm V5L  |                                    |
| ZKTecol   | 124              | 104          | Boopalam       | 114(Boopalan)                      |
| ZKTecol   | 121              | 105          | Joao           | 113(Joao)                          |

4.4.3.5 Import

Click "Import" to import a contact list.

You can download the import template and then proceed with the import based on the requirements of the template.



4.4.4 Voice Interaction

IVR (Interactive Voice Response) is a telephone service technology that allows users to interact with an automated telephone system through telephone key presses or voice commands; this feature is only available with PBX Server.

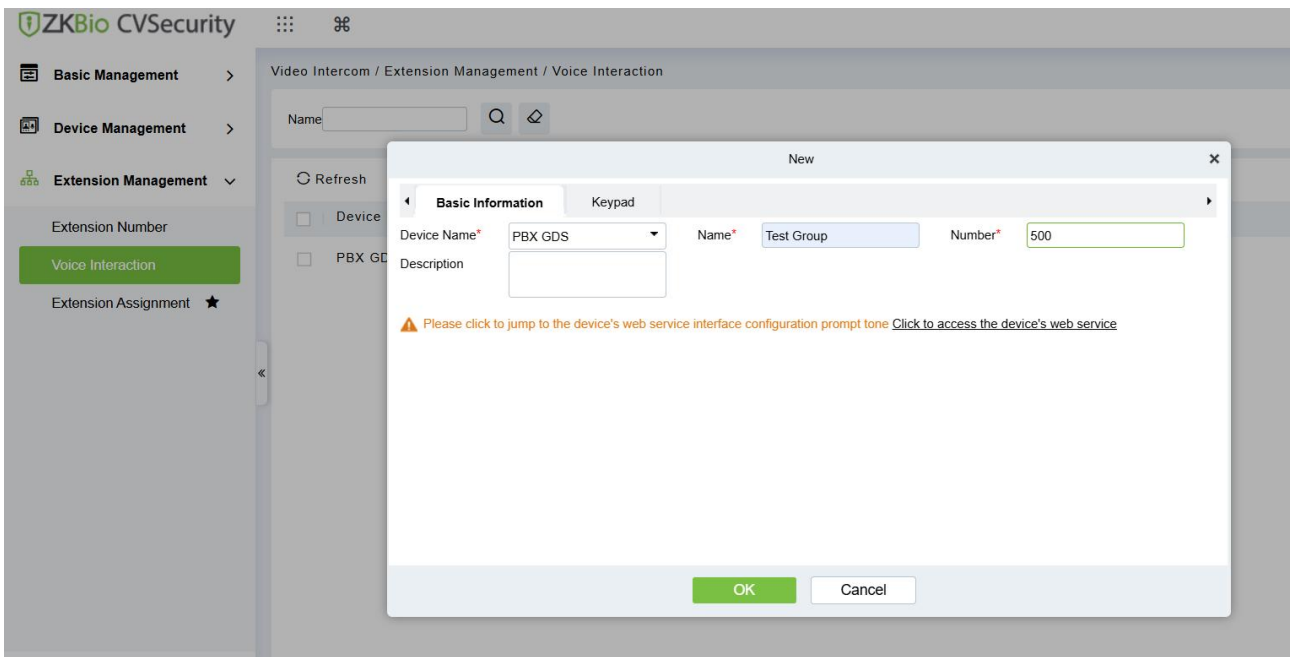
This feature can be used for two major applications: Access Control linkage to video intercom; and IVR Intelligent Voice Interaction.

1. Intelligent Voice Interaction

The IVR system can improve service efficiency, reduce labor costs, and provide users with uninterrupted service 24 hours a day. For example: Suppose the user has configured the IVR extension number to 10086 and has pre-configured the voice guidance content, then the user can dial 10086 via the app, and the guidance content will be played automatically; the user can press buttons according to the guidance, such as pressing 1 to call customer service, pressing 5 to hang up, etc. (Currently, the ZKBio CVSecurity Mobile App does not support retrieving keyboard input during the call process, the next version will support it; the current version can be used in conjunction with the indoor unit.)

4.4.4.1 New

Click on **Video Intercom -> Extension Management ->Voice Interaction page**, and click on New to display the window as shown in the figure below.



**Figure 4- 40 Voice Interaction**

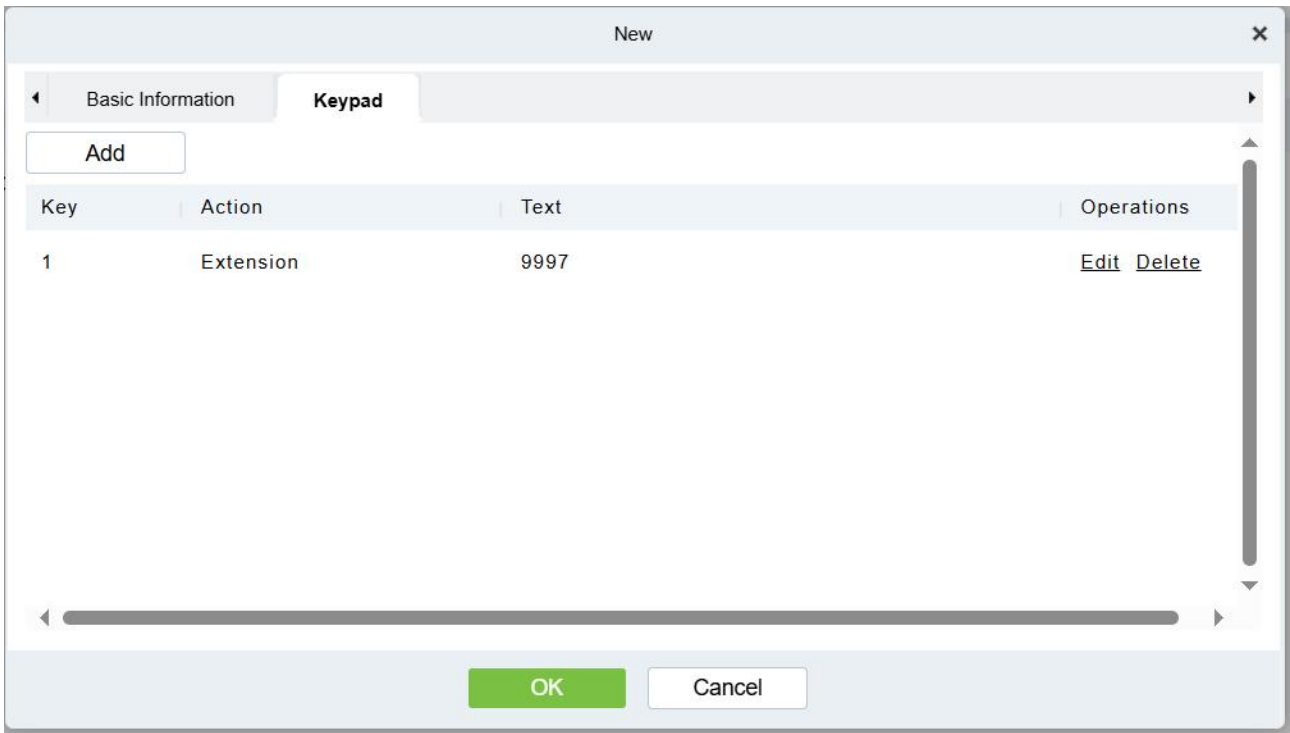
● Basic Information

The PBX Server's IVR feature basic information configuration, with field explanations as follows:

| Parameter   | How to set  |
|-------------|---|
| Device Name | Select PBX Server   |
| Name        | Custom Name: Name this voice interaction                      |
| Number      | Configure IVR Extension: Set the extension number for the IVR |
| Description | Description: Provide a description for this IVR               |

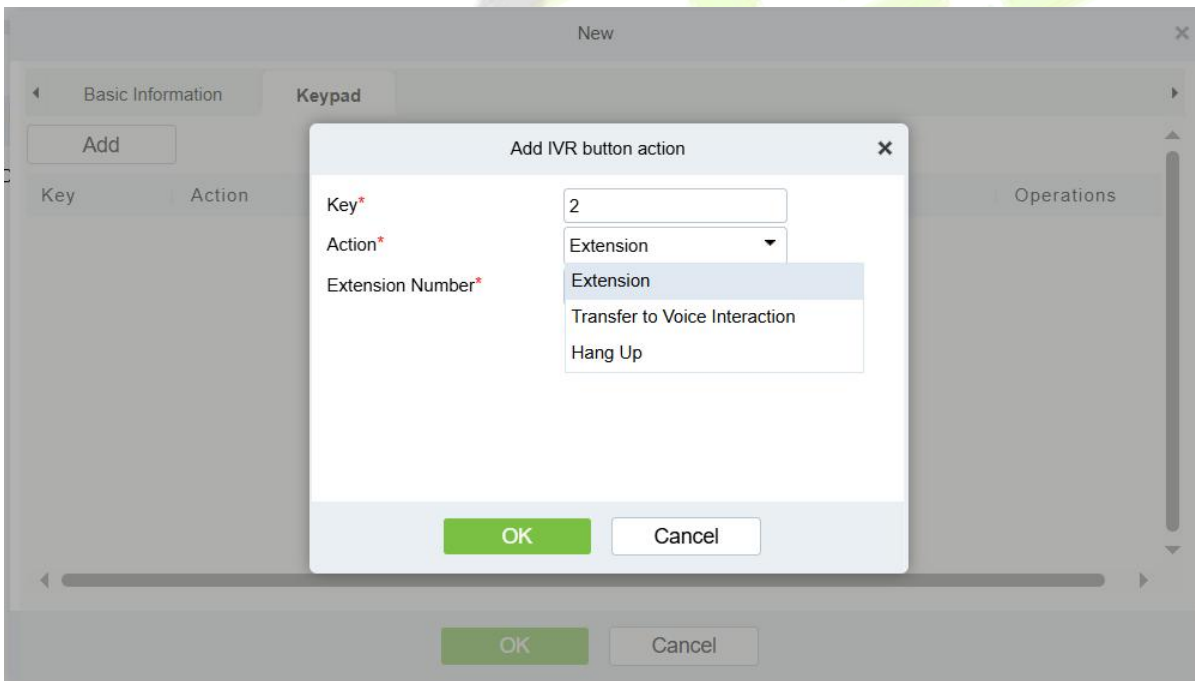
● Keypad

Configure the purpose and actions intended to be achieved by the IVR.



**Figure 4- 41 Keypad**

Click "**Add**" to begin the configuration.



| Parameter | How to set  |
|-----------|---|
| Key       | Keyboard values: 1-9, *, #  |
| Action    | <p>A total of 3 actions are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Extension: Dial an extension number. After selecting this option, you can further choose the extension number.</li> </ul> |

- Transfer to Voice Interaction: Transfer to another IVR. After selecting this option, you can further choose the IVR number.
- Hang Up: End the call.

**Note:** To ensure the normal use of the IVR function, after you have completed the configuration of the above content, you must go to the PBX's Web-IVR page to find the IVR you just saved and edit it to upload the required voice files, as shown in the figure below:

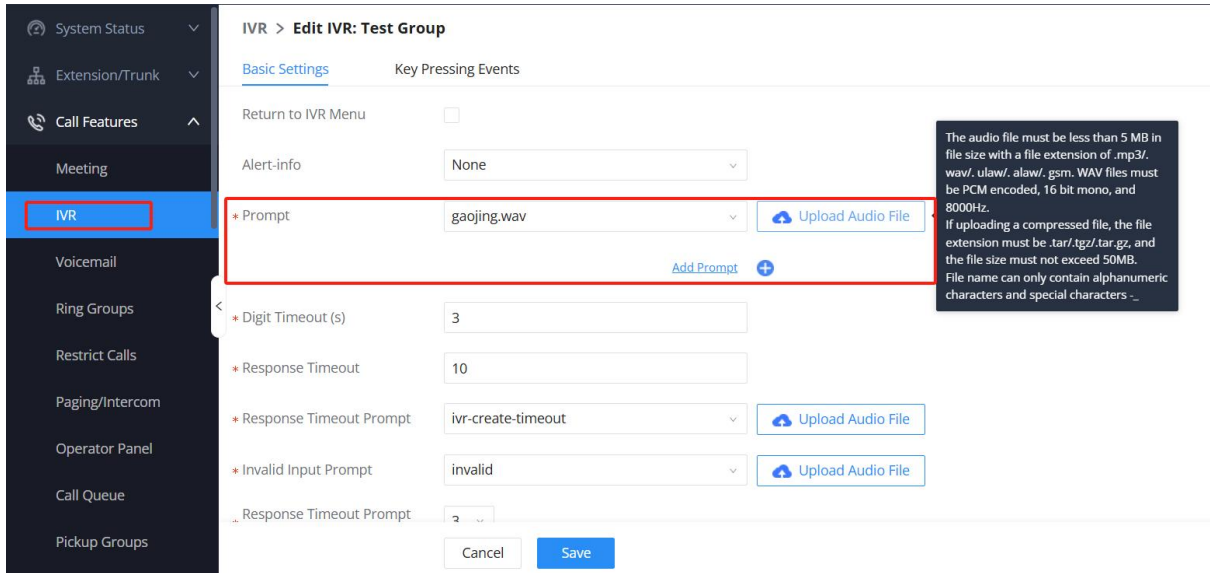


Figure 4- 42 IVR

### 1. Access Control Linkage

Go to **Access > Access Rule > Linkage**, and click on "New" to start configuring the linkage. In the output actions, you can find Video Intercom. You can select the IVR and the extension number you wish to call.

After the configuration is complete, when the triggering conditions are met, the system will automatically call the specified extension number and play the IVR voice, preventing security personnel from missing emergency alerts.

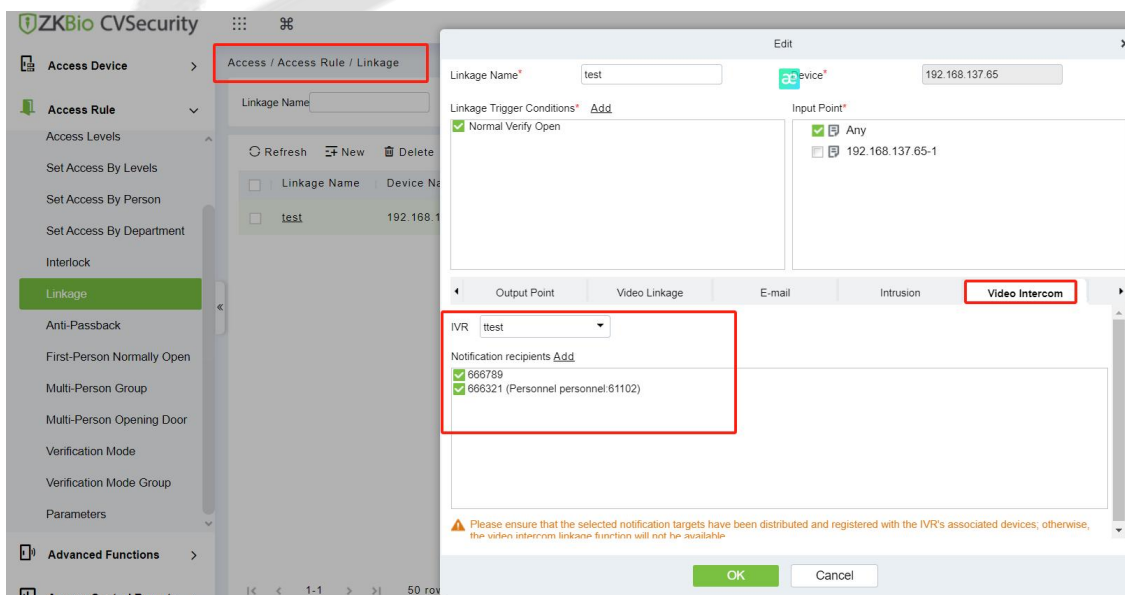


Figure 4- 43 Access Control Linkage

### 4.4.4.2 Obtain IVR

Go to Video Intercom -> Extension Management ->Voice Interaction page, and click on Open IVR the window as shown in the figure below:



| Parameter   | How to set                    |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Device Name | Enter the name of the device. |

## 4.5 Video Intercom Reports

In the video intercom report, you can query all video intercom records, which include call records and unlock records. You have the option to export all records or query specific records. This section describes the Step for querying and exporting reports in ZKBio CVSecurity.

### 4.5.1 Call Records

#### 4.5.1.1 Record Query

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Video Intercom Report > Call Records**”.

**Step 2:** On the call Records interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the icon to complete the query of all records, as shown in figure below.

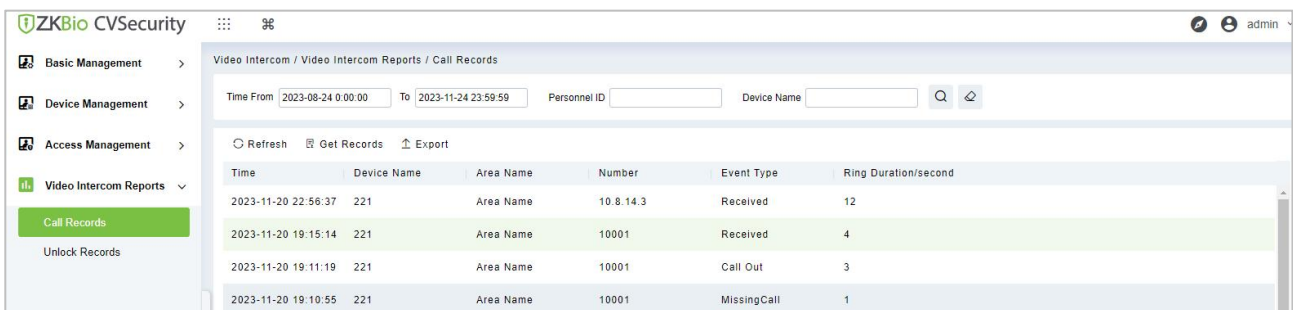


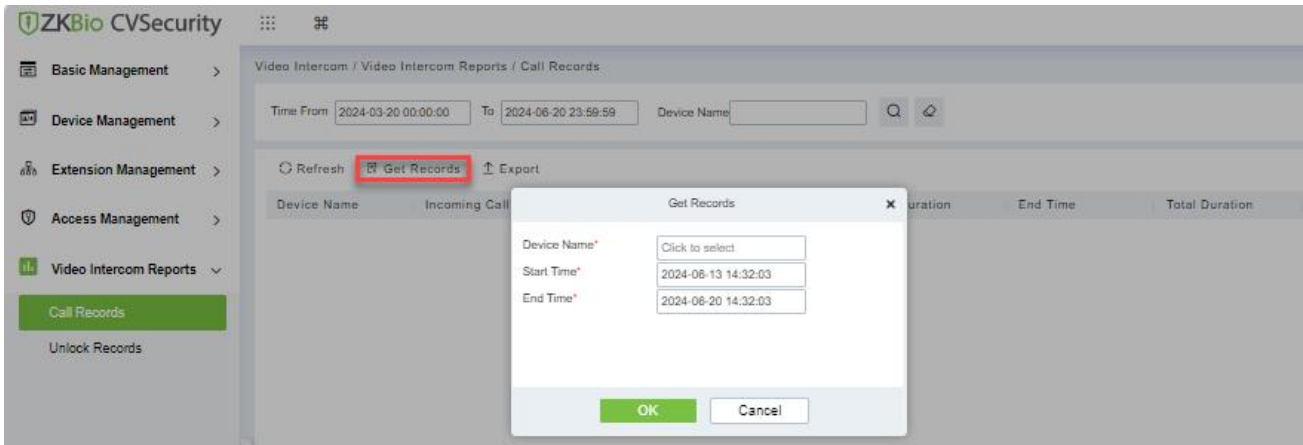
Figure 4- 44 Report Query Page

#### 4.5.1.2 Get Records

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Video Intercom Report > Call Records > Get Records**”.

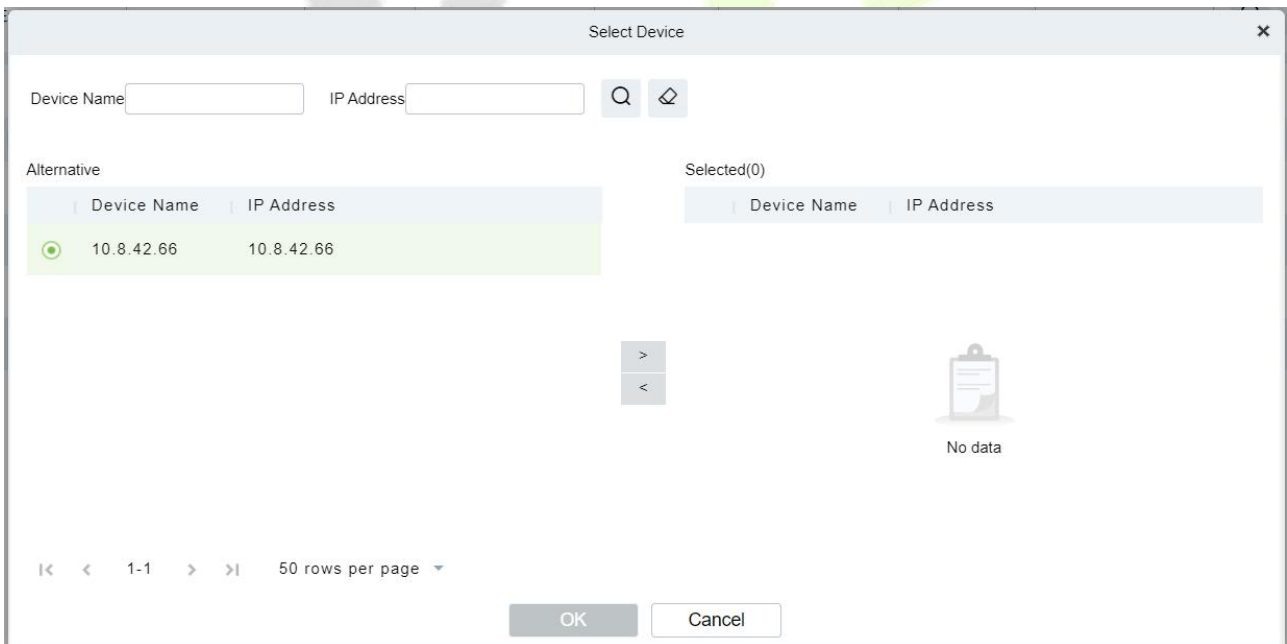
**Step 2:** On the Get Records interface, select the indoor station, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 4- 45 Get Records Page 1**

| Parameter   | Description                         |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Device Name | Select the name of the device.      |
| Start Time  | Enter the start time of the device. |
| End Time    | Enter the end time of the device.   |

**Step3:** On the Select device interface, select the device you need, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 4- 46 Get Records Page 2**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the complete acquisition of device records.

### 4.5.1.3 Export

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and click **OK**.

The 'Export' dialog box contains the following fields and options:

- User Password\*: [Text Input]
- File encryption:  Yes  No
- File encryption password\*: [Text Input]
- File Format: EXCEL (Dropdown)
- Data to Export:  All (max 100000 records)  Selected (max 100000 records)
- Start Position: 1 (Text Input)
- Total Records: 100 (Text Input)
- Buttons: OK, Cancel

Figure 4- 47 Report Export

| Call Records        |             |           |           |            |                 |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------------|
| Time                | Device Name | Area Name | Number    | Event Type | Ring Duration/s |
| 2023-11-20 22:56:37 | 221         | Area Name | 10.8.14.3 |            | 12              |
| 2023-11-20 19:15:14 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 4               |
| 2023-11-20 19:11:19 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 3               |
| 2023-11-20 19:10:55 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 1               |
| 2023-11-20 19:09:56 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 5               |
| 2023-11-20 19:09:46 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 4               |
| 2023-11-20 19:07:27 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 5               |
| 2023-11-20 17:44:48 | 221         | Area Name | 10.8.14.3 |            | 4               |
| 2023-11-20 16:13:06 | 221         | Area Name | 10.8.14.3 |            | 4               |
| 2023-11-16 19:54:01 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 2               |
| 2023-11-16 19:53:52 | 221         | Area Name | 10001     |            | 3               |
| 2023-11-16 19:52:23 | 221         | Area Name | 2010008   |            | 0               |
| 2023-11-16 19:51:49 | 221         | Area Name | 2010008   |            | 0               |
| 2023-11-16 19:51:33 | 221         | Area Name | 2010008   |            | 0               |

Figure 4- 48 Call Report Export

## 4.5.2 Unlock Records

### 4.5.2.1 Record Query

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “Video Intercom Report > Unlock Records”.

**Step 2:** On the unlock Records interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the icon to complete the query of all records, as shown in figure below.

The screenshot shows the 'Unlock Records' interface with the following details:

- Time From: 2023-09-24 0:00:00 To: 2023-11-24 23:59:59
- Personnel ID: [Text Input]
- Device Name: [Text Input]
- Buttons: Refresh, Get Records, Export
- Table Columns: Time, Device Name, Personnel ID, First Name, Last Name, Unlock Met..., Number, Status
- Table Data:
 

|                     |           |  |  |  |          |      |         |
|---------------------|-----------|--|--|--|----------|------|---------|
| 2023-11-23 14:30:46 | 单元门口机-164 |  |  |  | Password | 0000 | Succeed |
| 2023-11-23 14:30:43 | 单元门口机-164 |  |  |  | Password | 789  | Failed  |
| 2023-11-23 14:30:39 | 单元门口机-164 |  |  |  | Password | 0000 | Succeed |
| 2023-11-23 14:29:02 | 单元门口机-164 |  |  |  | Password | 0000 | Succeed |

Figure 4- 49 Report Query Page

### 4.5.2.2 Get Records

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Video Intercom module, choose “**Video Intercom Report > Unlock Records > Get Records**”.

**Step 2:** On the Get Records interface, select the indoor station, as shown in figure below.

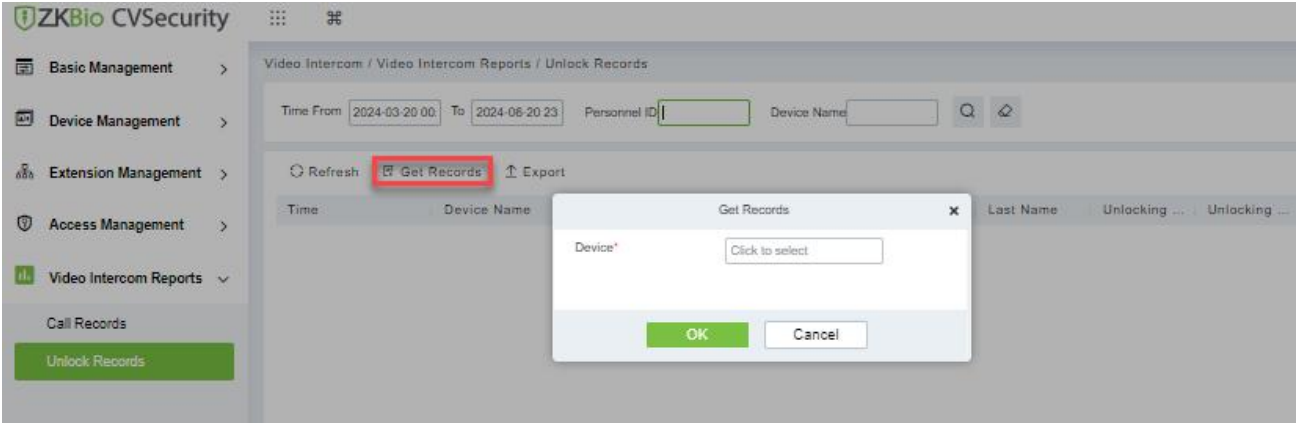


Figure 4- 50 Get Records Page 1

| Parameter   | Description                    |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Device Name | Select the name of the device. |

**Step 3:** On the Select device interface, select the device you need, as shown in figure below.

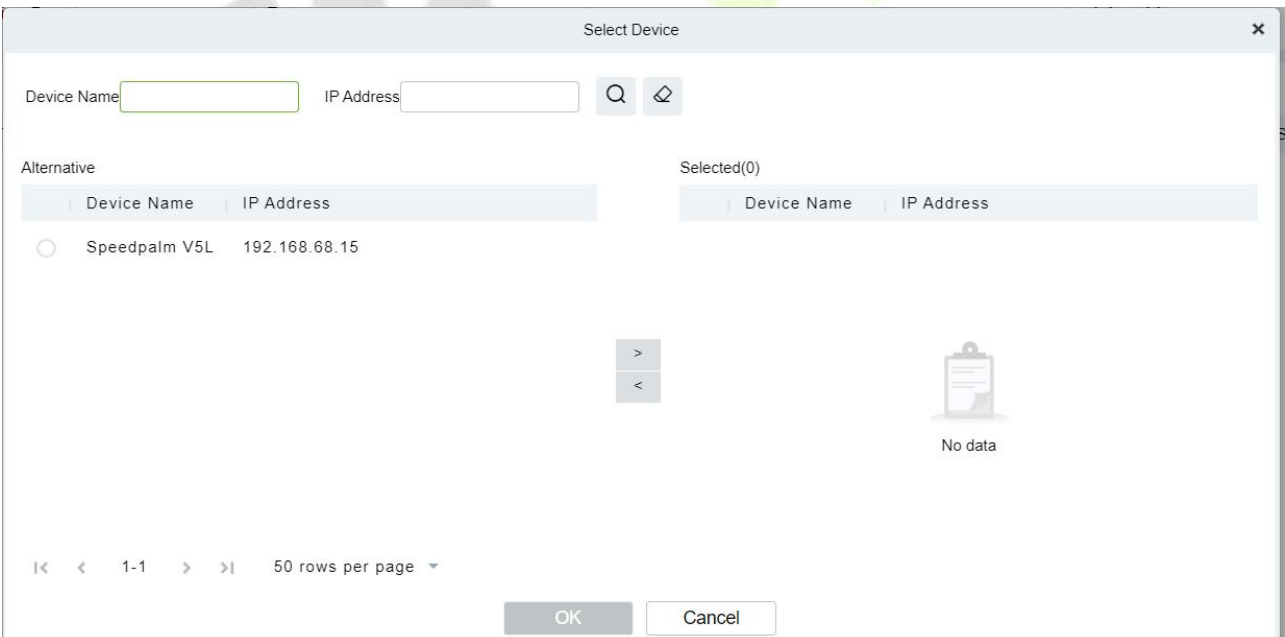


Figure 4- 51 Get Records Page 2

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the complete acquisition of unlock records.

### 4.5.2.3 Export

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and Click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and click OK.

**Export** ✕

User Password\*

File encryption  Yes  No

File encryption password\*

File Format EXCEL ▾

Data to Export  All (max 100000 records)  
 Selected (max 100000 records)

Start Position

Total Records

OK
Cancel

**Figure 4- 52 Report Export**

| Unlock Records      |             |              |            |           |               |        |         |  |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------|------------|-----------|---------------|--------|---------|--|
| Time                | Device Name | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Unlock Method | Number | Status  |  |
| 2023-11-23 14:30:46 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |
| 2023-11-23 14:30:43 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 789    |         |  |
| 2023-11-23 14:30:39 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |
| 2023-11-23 14:29:02 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |
| 2023-11-23 14:28:58 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 9999   |         |  |
| 2023-11-23 14:28:52 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 99     |         |  |
| 2023-11-23 14:28:49 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |
| 2023-11-22 17:40:54 | -164        |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |
| 2023-11-22 08:57:44 | -116        |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-22 08:57:13 | -116        |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-22 07:02:27 | -116        |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-22 07:00:39 | -116        |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-22 07:00:17 | -116        |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-22 06:47:40 | 116         |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-21 09:37:00 | 16          |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-21 09:35:36 | 16          |              |            |           | Face          |        |         |  |
| 2023-11-20 22:37:26 | 34          |              |            |           | Password      | 123456 |         |  |
| 2023-11-20 22:37:08 | 34          |              |            |           | Password      | 11     |         |  |
| 2023-11-20 19:08:09 | 34          |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |
| 2023-11-20 19:08:05 | 34          |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |
| 2023-11-20 19:06:09 | 34          |              |            |           | Password      | 0000   | Succeed |  |

**Figure 4- 53 Unlock Report Export**

## 5 Smart Video Surveillance

### 5.1 Device Management

#### 5.1.1 Device (Add Device)

● Scene Description:

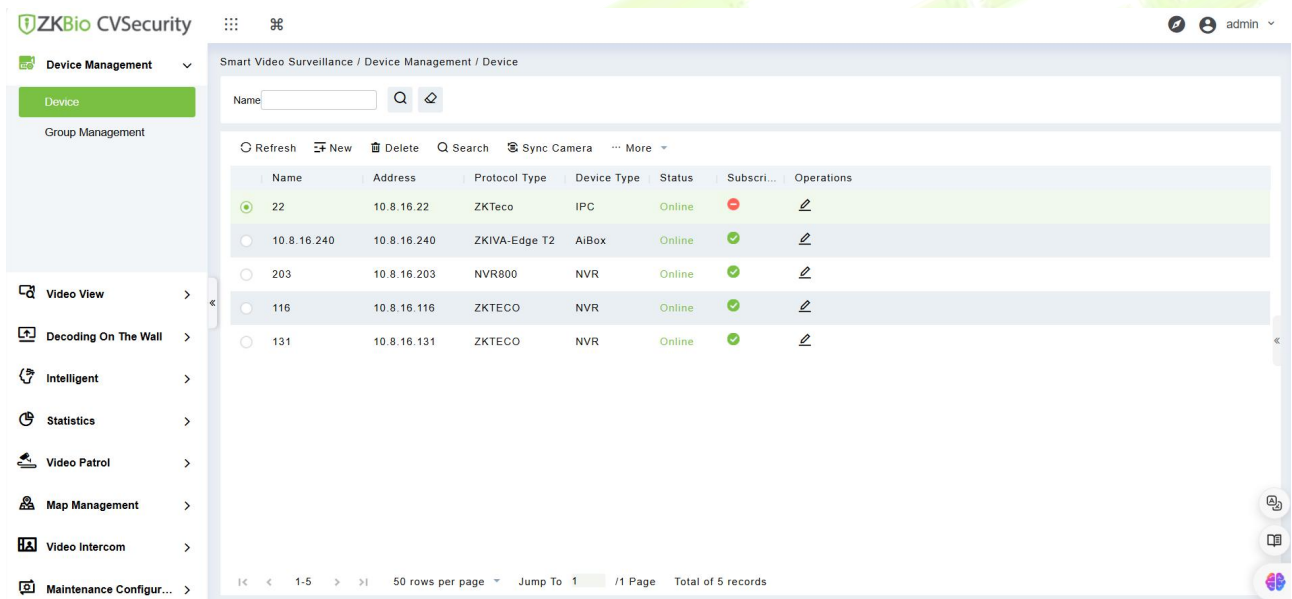
This operation is used to instruct users how to connect NVR to the platform and cameras, so that the platform can manage the connected devices uniformly, such as viewing the live and video recordings of cameras.

##### 5.1.1.1 Manual Add NVR

Maximum supports 1024 video channels, support 64 channels preview and 16 channels real-time playback simultaneously.

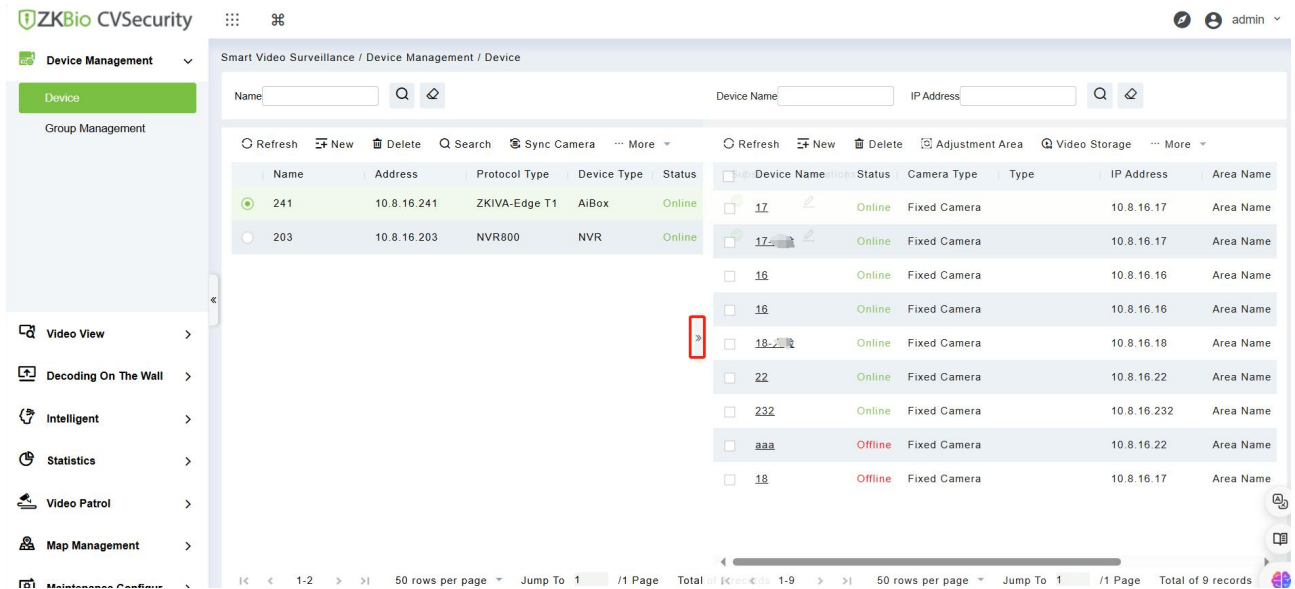
● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Under the Smart Video Surveillance module, select **Device Management > Device**.

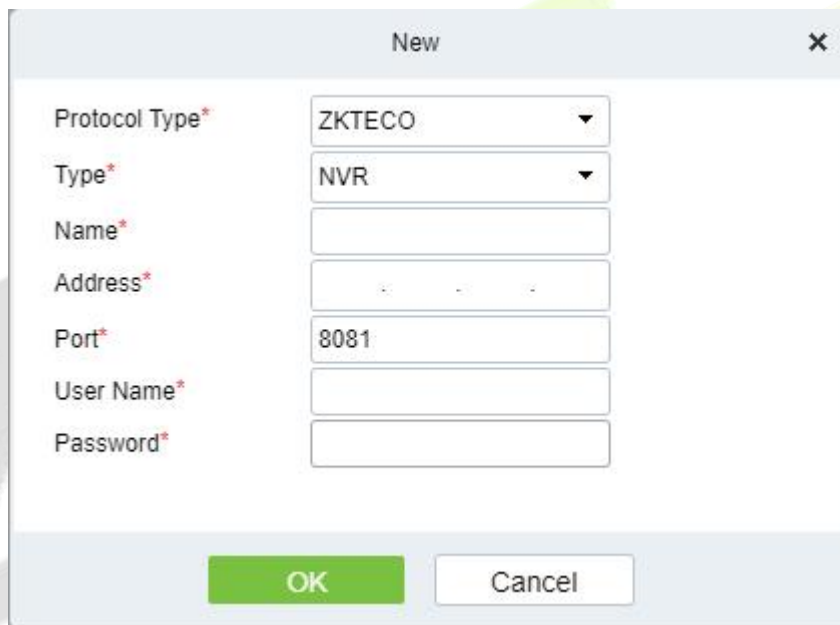


**Note:** The default page only shows the master device, if you want to see the cameras added to the

master device, please click the icon  on the far right side to see them.



**Step 2:** Click **New** under the main device list to display the adding interface as shown in figure below, and the description of each parameter is shown in Table 4-1.



**Figure 5- 1 New Master Device**

● Scene Description:

There are 7 types you can select (IVS1800/NVR800/ZKTECO/TD NVR3000/ONVIF/ZKIVA-Edge T1/ZKIVA-Edge X1). If the purchased device is ZKNVR, select "NVR" for the type. If you want to add ZKIPC, click Type and select "IPC".

| Parameters/Buttons | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Type               | Select the device type.   |
| Protocol Type      | Select the type of protocol.  |
| Name               | Customize the device name.  |
| Port               | Configure the device port.ZKNVR default is 8081.  |
| Address            | Configure the device address. The format is: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, for example: 192.168. 6.5 |
| Username &         | The NVR'S user name and password.   |

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| Password | Note: For ZKNVR, the default account is (admin,123456)<br>ForIVS1800, you should to login the web page to add a new account. |
|----------|--|

**Table 5- 1 Adding Device Parameters or Function Description**

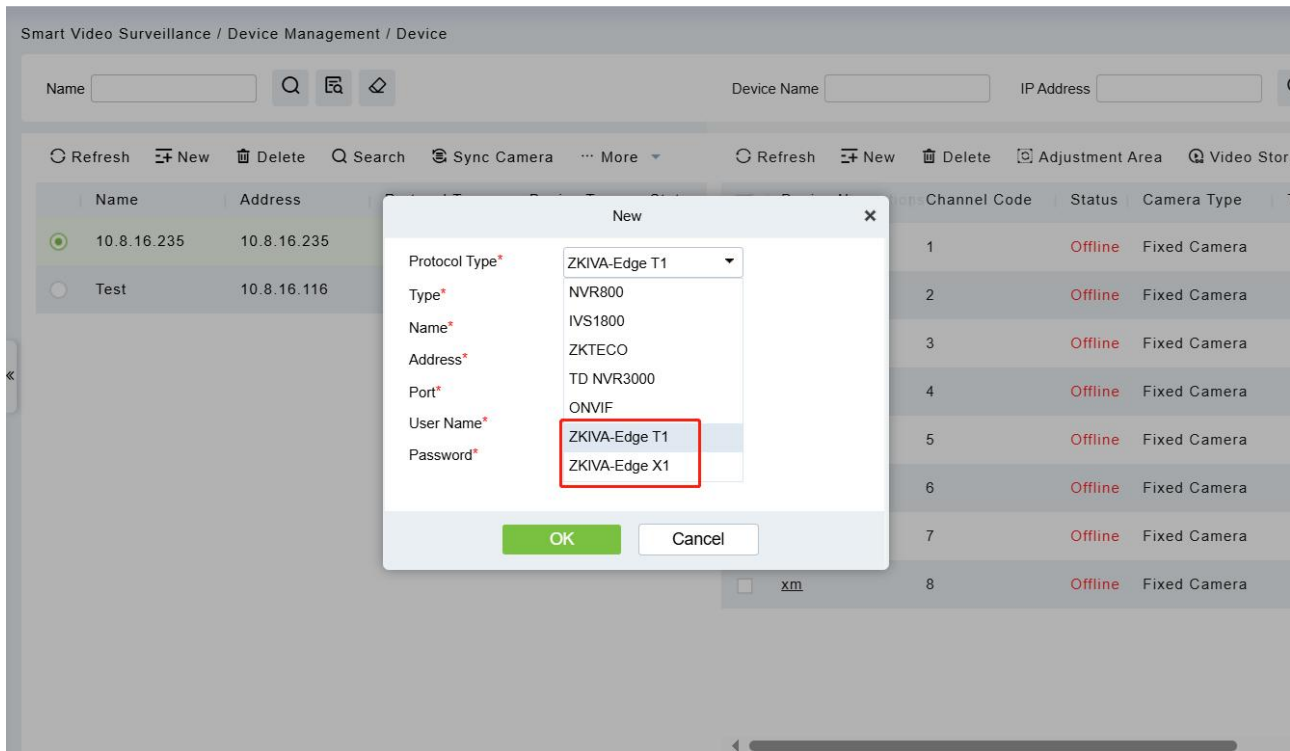
**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

### 5.1.1.2 Manual Add ZKIVA-Edge

To add a ZIVA-Edge T1/X1, click 'New.' Currently, the ZKIVA-Edge T1/X1 device only supports adding devices through this method and does not support adding devices via search.

#### Operation Steps

**Step 1:** Go to **Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Device**, and click New. Select your device model; if the device is a ZKIVA-Edge T1, choose that model.




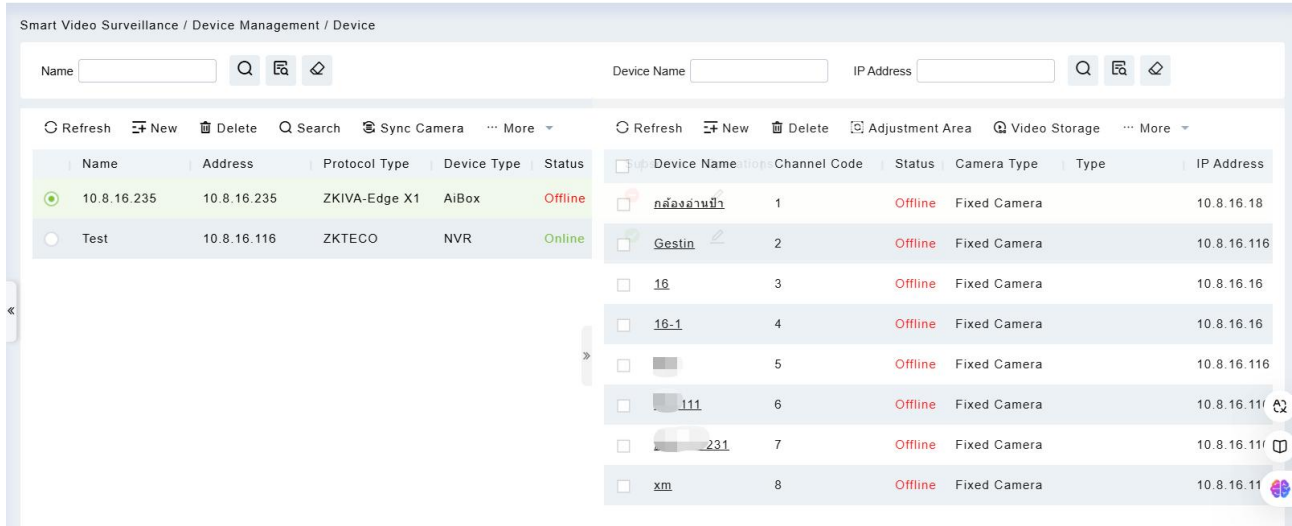
The table below provides a description of the parameters:

| Parameter     | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Protocol Type | Select the protocol type to be added: ZKIVA-Edge T1/X1.                                 |
| Type          | Select the type of device to be added: The default type for ZKIVA-Edge T1/X1 is AiBox.  |
| Name          | Customize the device name.  |
| Address       | Configure the device address. The format is: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, for example: 192.168.6.5. |
| Port          | Configure the device port: The default port value is "80".                              |
| Username      | The username and password for logging into the Web of the                               |

| Parameter | Description              |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| Password  | ZKIVA-Edge T1/X1 device. |

**Step 2:** Add the camera to the ZKIVA-Edge.

Select ZKIVA-Edge from the list, and then click  on the expand/collapse window.



**Step3:** Click **New** to add a new camera to ZKIVA-Edge.

New ✕

Channel Name\*

UserName

Password

Main stream\*

Area Name\* ZKTeco Building ▼

Save and New
OK
Cancel

Parameter Description is as follows in the table:

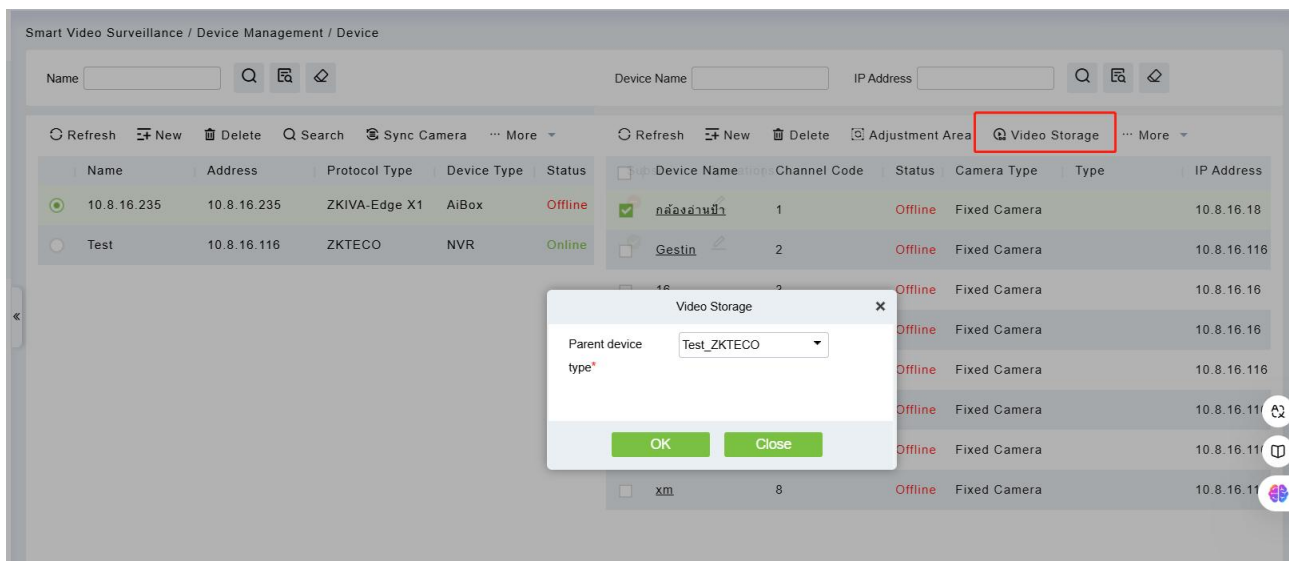
| Parameter    | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Channel Name | Distinguish channels by setting camera names.                         |
| User Name    | The IP address of the connected device (this address must be unique). |
| Password     | Obtain the corresponding main stream after logging into the channel.  |

| Parameter   | Description                                  |
|-------------|--|
| Main Stream | RTSP url of the camera for this channel.     |
| Area Name   | Select the area where the device is located. |

● Video Storage

ZKIVA-Edge supports only algorithmic analysis and has no storage capability, you can bind the camera to an NVR by clicking **Video Storage**. This enables video playback and quickly integrates the camera with the NVR.

**Note:** If a camera is added to both ZKIVA-Edge and an NVR, it will consume license channel counts on both devices. For example, if a camera is already added to ZKNVR1 and then also added to ZKIVA-Edge X1, it will use 2 license channels.



5.1.1.3 Search to add NVR devices

Click Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Device. Note: Search is not supported for IVS1800/TD NVR3000.



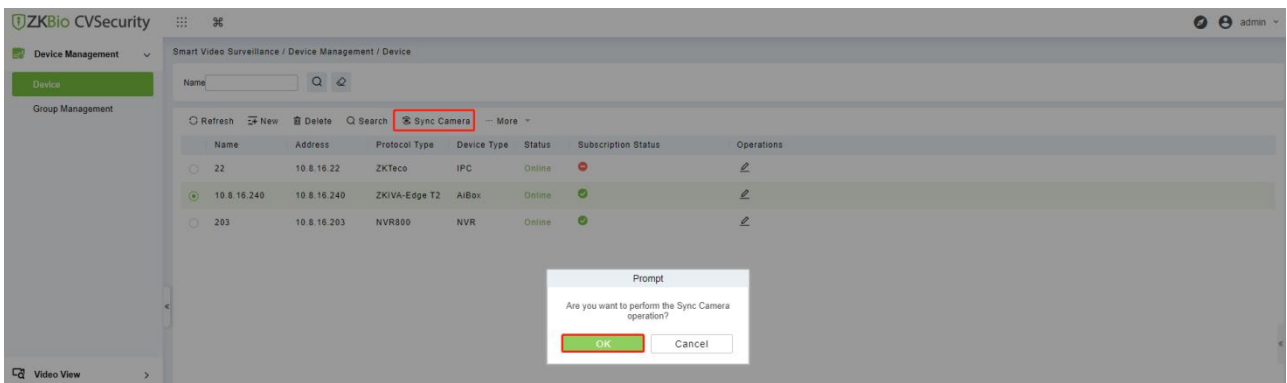
Figure 5- 2 Auto Search

5.1.1.4 Delete

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Device**, then select Delete.

5.1.1.5 Sync Camera

Click Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Device, then select Sync Camera.



### 5.1.1.6 Subscription

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Device**, then click **More > Subscription**.

The NVR will only push alerts to ZKBio CVSecurity after Subscription.

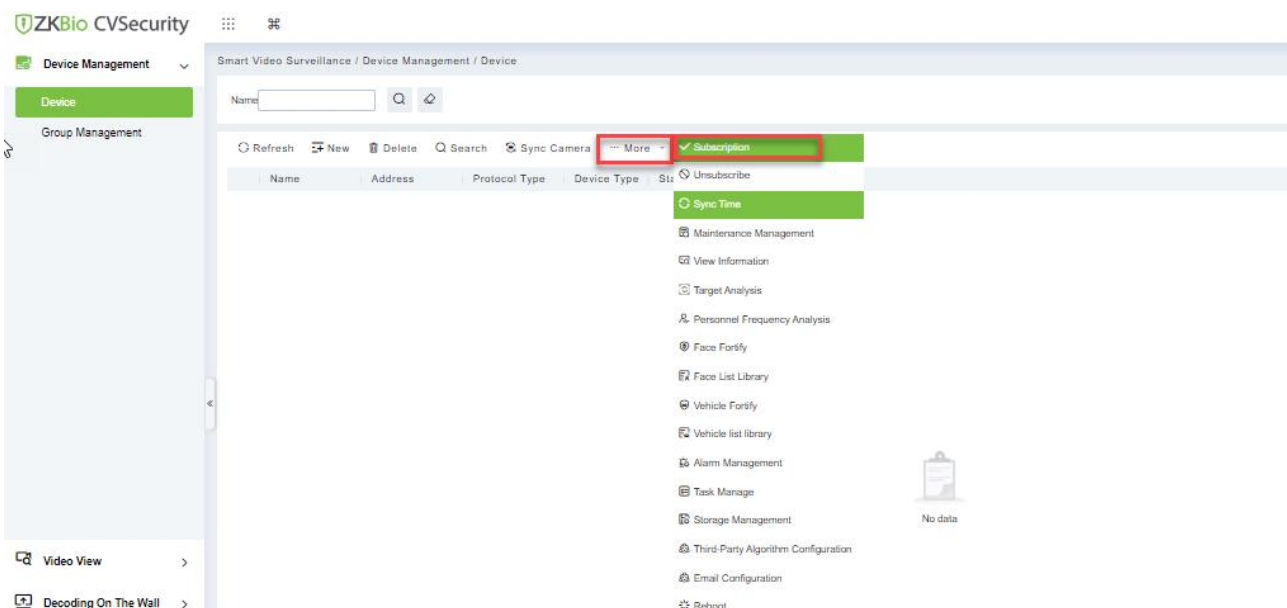


Figure 5-3

### 5.1.1.7 Add Camera

**Step 1:** In the **Smart Video Surveillance** module, select "**Device Management > Device**". Select a NVR device, then click the "**Search**" button on the right.

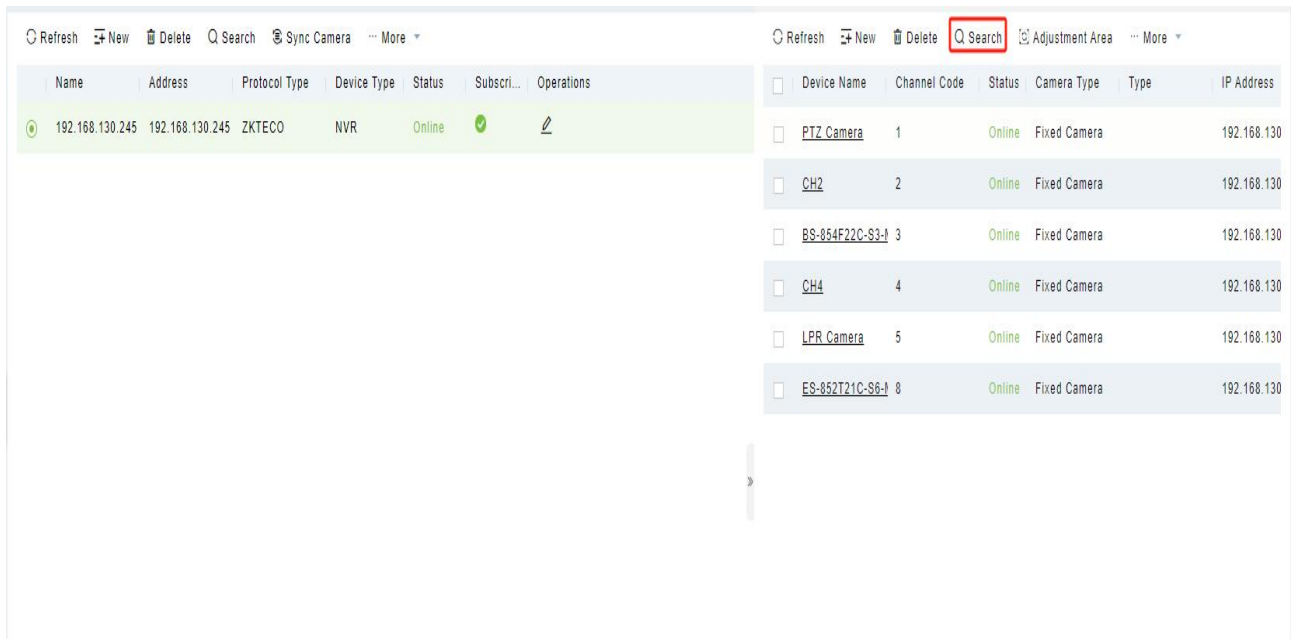


Figure 5- 4 Search Camera

**Step2:** Search for cameras by IP address.

In the search interface, select the protocol type, that is, the protocol type ZKTeco-P, Rtsip, ZKTeco or ONVIF (recommended to use ZKTeco) connected to the camera.

Instruction:

1. Protocol type supports the selection of zkteco-P, Rtsip, zkteco and ONVIF protocols. (Recommended to use zkteco).
2. Using ZKTECO protocol access, all functions can be used normally.
3. The ONVIF protocol is used to access, and the IPC parameter configuration except "camera" and "image parameter" does not take effect.
4. Using ZKTECO-P, Rtsip, protocol access, PTZ control cannot be used, and IPC parameter configuration does not take effect.

Click **Search** to start searching for online cameras.

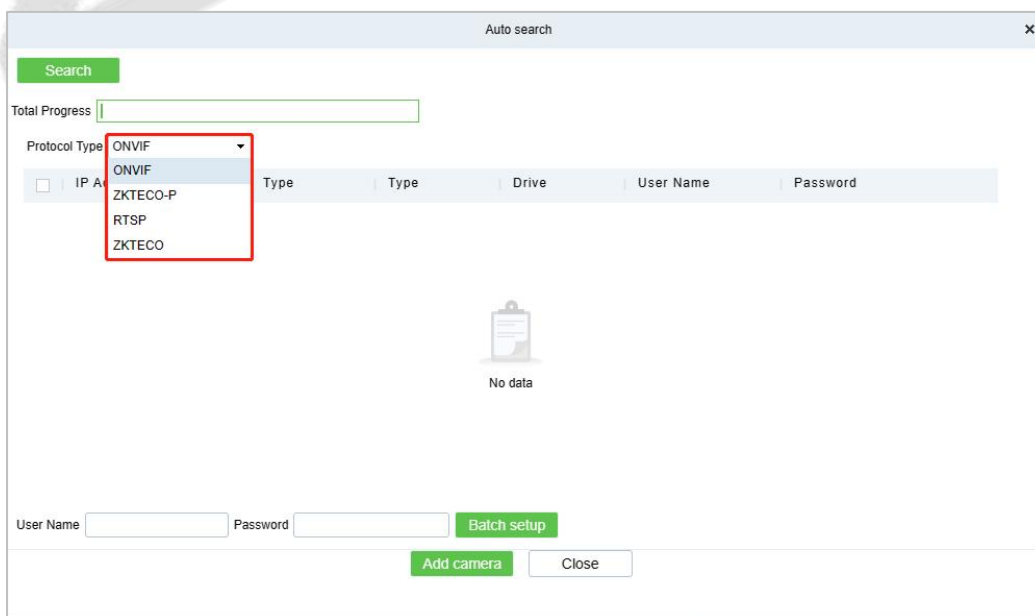
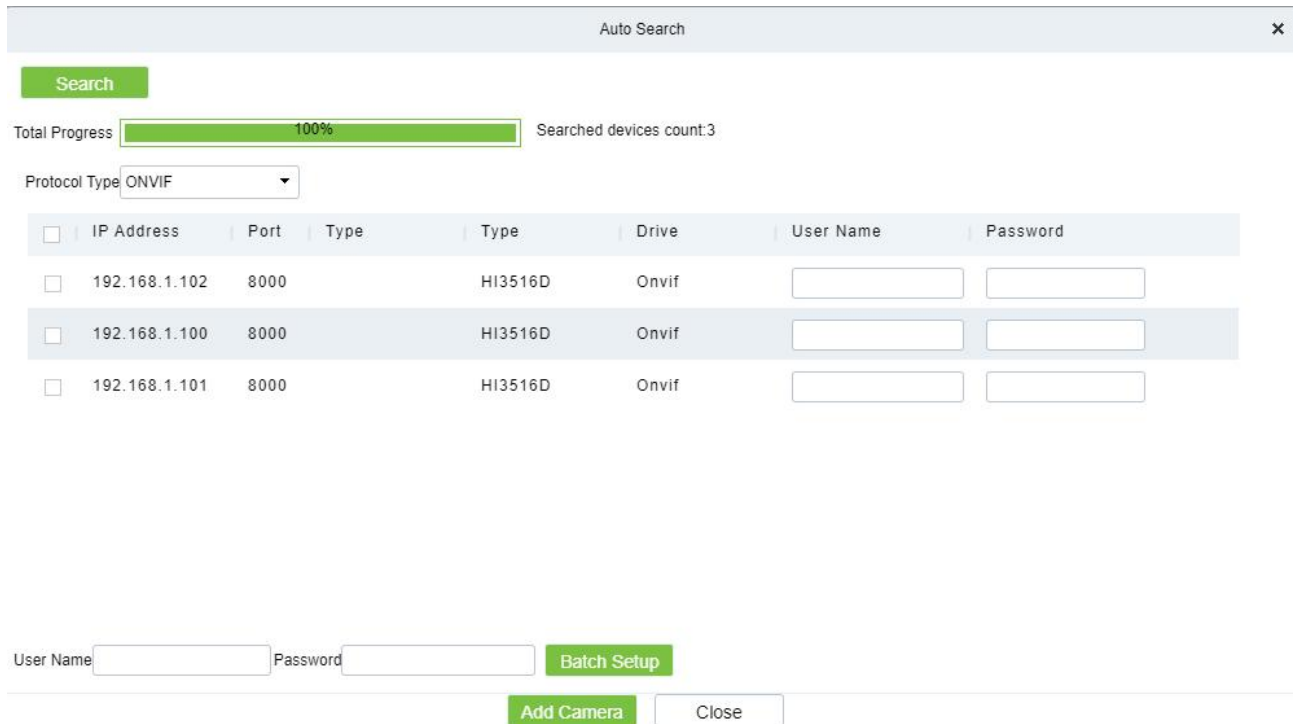


Figure 5- 5 Search Camera

**Step 4:** Account verification.

For the searched cameras, directly check the cameras in the camera list, and then perform account verification (the account number and password are the camera's registered user name and password), as shown in figure below, and parameter descriptions are shown in Table 4-3.



**Figure 5- 6 Search Methods Added**

| Parameter        | Parameter Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Port             | Through zkteco-p, rtsp, zkteco, onvif protocols, the default port is 80.  |
| Account Password | The registered username and password of the camera.<br>If all cameras to be added have the same registered username and the same registered password, you can also use the username and password at the bottom of the search list for batch verification. |

**Table 5- 2 Parameter Description**

**Step 5:** Close the pop-up window to complete the search and addition of cameras.

**Step 6:** The subsequent configuration is shown in Table 4-4.

| Scenes          | Configure   |
|-----------------|---|
| New/Delete      | Click <b>New</b> : Manually add a camera.<br>Click <b>Delete</b> : Select one or more cameras to delete.  |
| Adjustment Area | Under the <b>Camera Device</b> tab, you can select single or multiple cameras, and then click the <b>Adjustment Area</b> button to adjust the area to which the cameras belong. |

**Table 5- 3 Subsequent Configuration Instructions**

**Step 7:** Parameter Setup: Click **More** to get more operation.

| Refresh                  | New             | Delete       | Search | Adjustment Area | More        |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------|-----------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Device Name     | Channel Code | Status | Camera Type     |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | PTZ Camera      | 1            | Online | Fixed Camera    |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CH2             | 2            | Online | Fixed Camera    |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | BS-854F22C-S3-I | 3            | Online | Fixed Camera    |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CH4             | 4            | Online | Fixed Camera    | 192.168.130 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | LPR Camera      | 5            | Online | Fixed Camera    | 192.168.130 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ES-852T21C-S6-I | 8            | Online | Fixed Camera    | 192.168.130 |

- Reboot
- Basic Configuration
- Linked Capture
- Maintenance Management
- Stream address

Figure 5- 7 More

**Reboot:** Restart the camera.

**Basic Configuration:** Basic camera parameters configuration, including encoding format, image quality, bit rate, pixels, etc.

**Note:** If the added camera is PTZ, you need to switch the camera type to **Ball Machine** in this page below.

Basic configuration

System Parameters | Video channel

Video settings | Image settings

Main stream settings | Secondary stream settings

Encoding format: H265 | Picture quality: High | Bit rate type:  Fixed bitrate  Variable bitrate

Video frame rate: Full frame rate | Bit rate: 2 | I frame interval: 50 | Resolution: 1080P(1920\*1080)

Video settings

Camera Type

- Fixed Camera
- Fixed Camera
- Ball Machine
- Hemisphere
- Tube Machine

OK Cancel

Figure 5- 8 Basic Configuration

### 5.1.2 Group Management

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Group Management**.

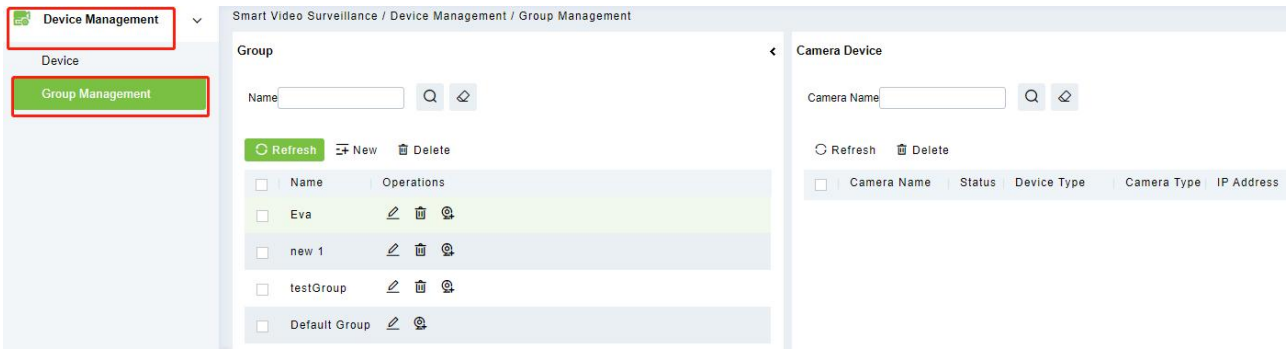


Figure 5- 9 Group Management

### 5.1.2.1 New

Click Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Group Management, then select New.

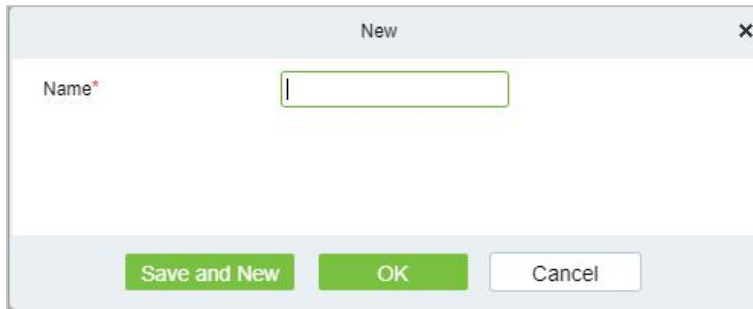


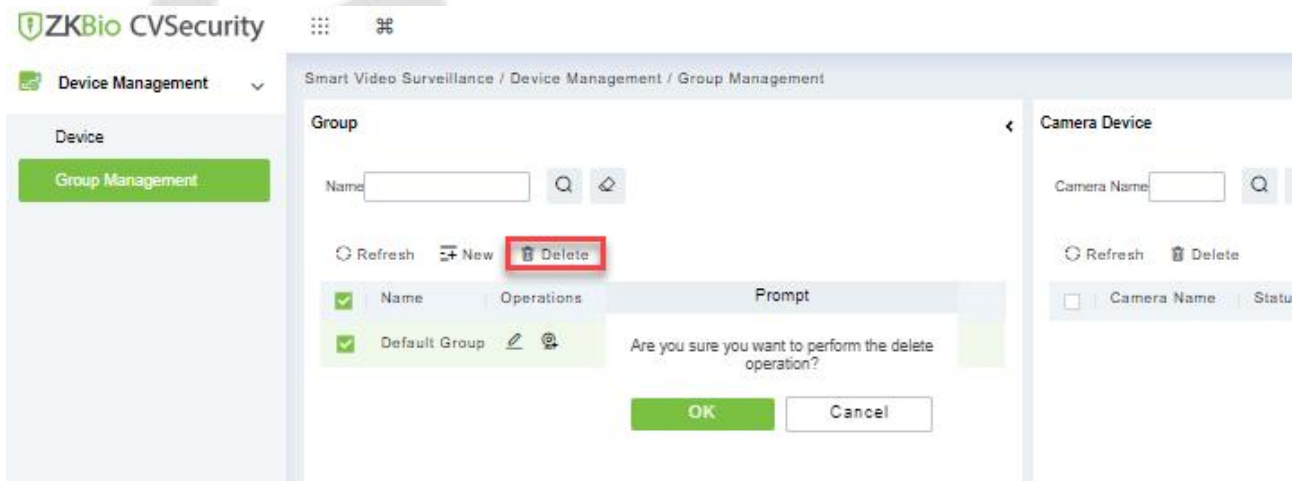
Figure 5- 10 New (Group Management)

| Parameters | Description                  |
|------------|------------------------------|
| Name       | Enter the name of the group. |

Click **OK** to save and exit.

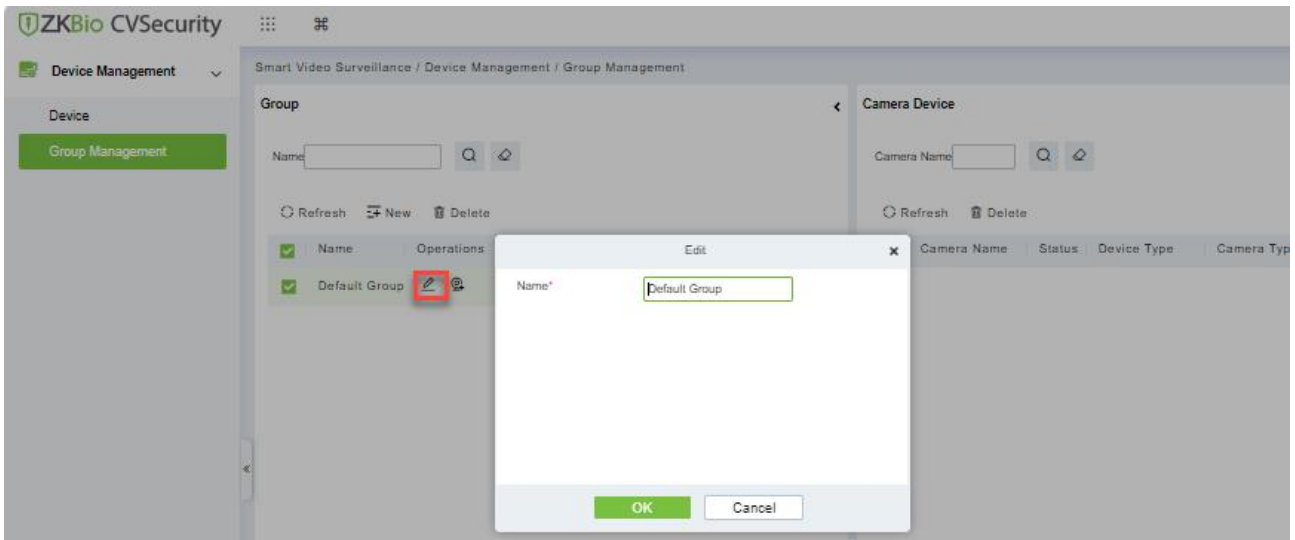
### 5.1.2.2 Delete

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Group Management**, then select Delete.



### 5.1.2.3 Edit

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Group Management**, then click on the Edit  icon to edit the required details.



### 5.1.2.4 Add Camera to Group

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Group Management**, then select Add Camera.

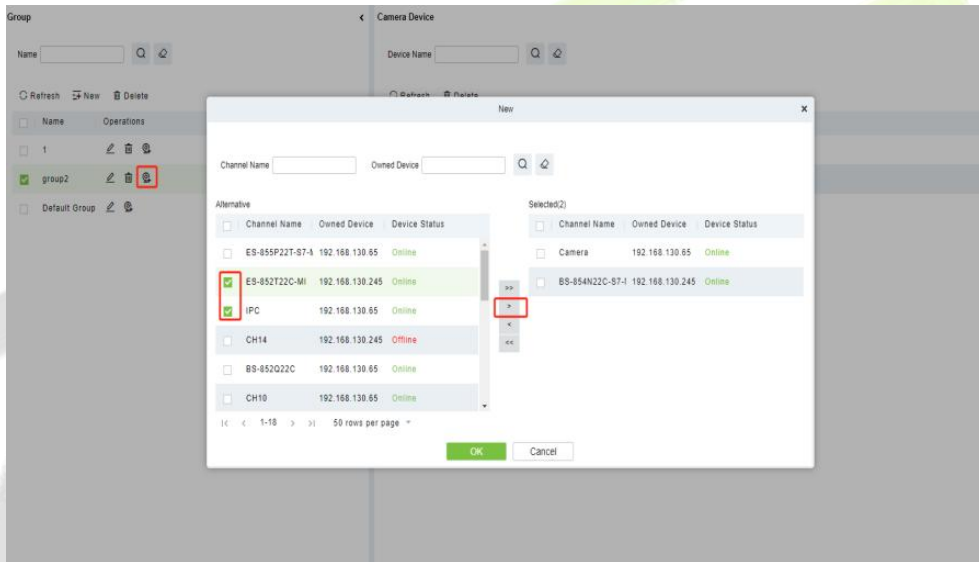


Figure 5- 11 Camera (Group Management)

### 5.1.3 Video View

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Video View**.

In this module you can access the videos as **Video Preview** and **Video Playback**.

### 5.1.4 Video Preview

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Video View > Video Preview**.

You can review recorded videos here.

#### 5.1.4.1 Live Preview

●Description:

When applying video monitoring products, please strictly comply with the applicable laws and regulations for the application and maintenance of video monitoring, recording, snapping and other

services. It is forbidden for enterprises or individuals to install monitoring device in office areas, monitor employees' behaviors, or use video monitoring device to snoop on other people's privacy for illegal purposes.

- Single camera live preview:

**Step 1:** In the Smart Video Surveillance module, select **Video View > Video Preview**.

**Step 2:** In Full Devices, double-click the online camera to the live playback pane to open live preview.

Description:

During live preview, please do not overlap the windows, interfaces, or dialog boxes of other programs on the window that opens live, otherwise it may cause live screen or video playback to become unstreamlined.

- Live preview of group camera:

**Step 1:** In the Smart Video Surveillance module, select "**Device Management > Grouping Management**" to group the cameras.

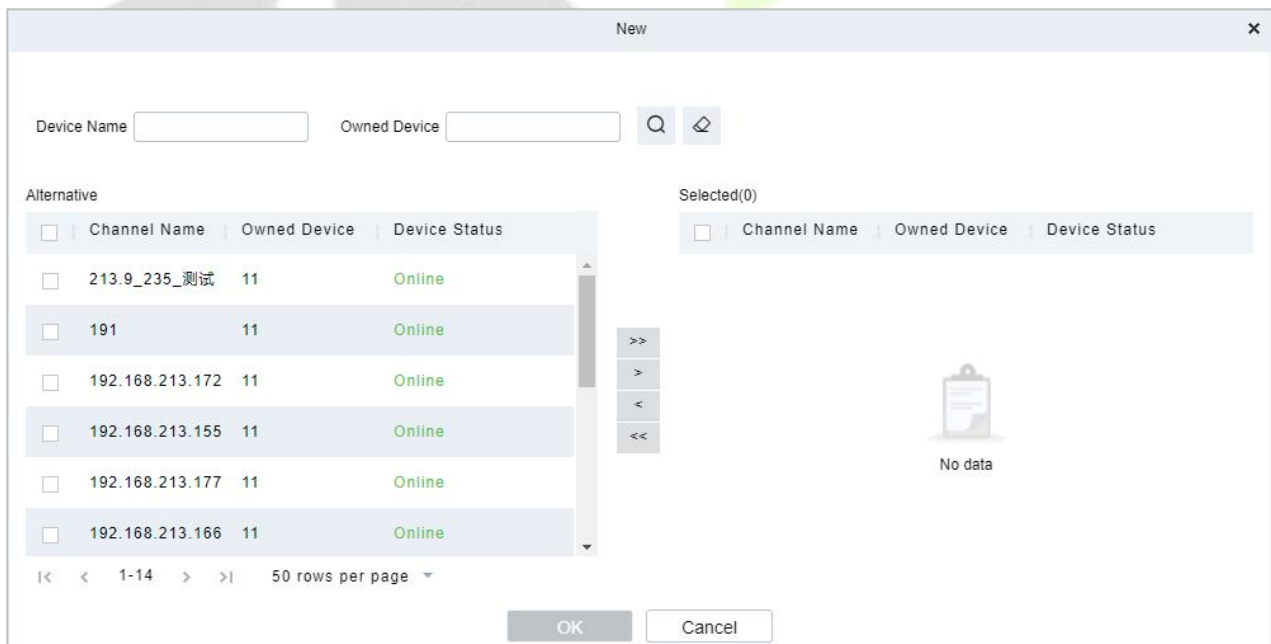
**Step 2:** Click **Add** in the grouping list, enter the grouping name, and click "Confirm" to complete the addition of camera grouping.

**Step 3:** Select the newly created camera group and click "Add Camera" on the right side. Double-click the camera in the new interface that pops up, and click **OK** to add it to the grouping, as shown in figure below.

**Step 4:** In **Intelligent** module, select "**Video View > Video Preview**", and in "**Grouping Devices**", double-click the online camera to the live playback pane to open the live preview.

Description:

During live preview, please do not overlap the windows, interfaces, or dialog boxes of other programs on the window that opens live, otherwise it may cause live screen or video playback to be unsmooth.



**Figure 5- 12 Camera Grouping**

### 5.1.4.2 Video Preview

- Operation scenario:

Using the round patrol function, the user can switch the live pictures monitored by multiple cameras regularly. For example, there are multiple cameras in a scene, and the live situation of all cameras

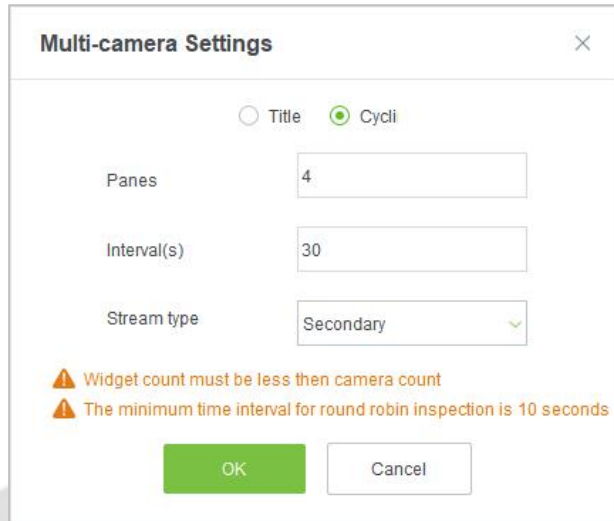
cannot be displayed on a live split screen interface. The administrator can automatically switch the cameras of a scene to monitor the live situation every 30 seconds by using the round patrol function and realize the live browsing of all cameras in batches and time periods.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Smart Video Surveillance** module, select Video View > Video Preview.

**Step 2:** Under the list of grouped devices or full devices, click "⏮" on the right to pop up the "Multiple Camera Operation Settings" page.

**Step 3:** Click "Round Tour" to open the round tour setting window and configure round tour information, as shown in figure below, and the parameter description is shown in Table 4-1.



**Figure 5- 13 New Rotation Training Group**

| Parameter               | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Window number           | The number of round-robin windows must be less than the number of round-robin cameras.   |
| Time interval (seconds) | Set the camera rotation picture residence time under the selected main device.   |
| Stream type             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Main code stream: large code stream, high definition, and high bandwidth occupation.</li> <li>• Auxiliary code stream: The code stream is small, the definition is low, and the bandwidth is small.</li> </ul> Description:<br>When there is bandwidth limitation, it is recommended to select secondary code stream. |

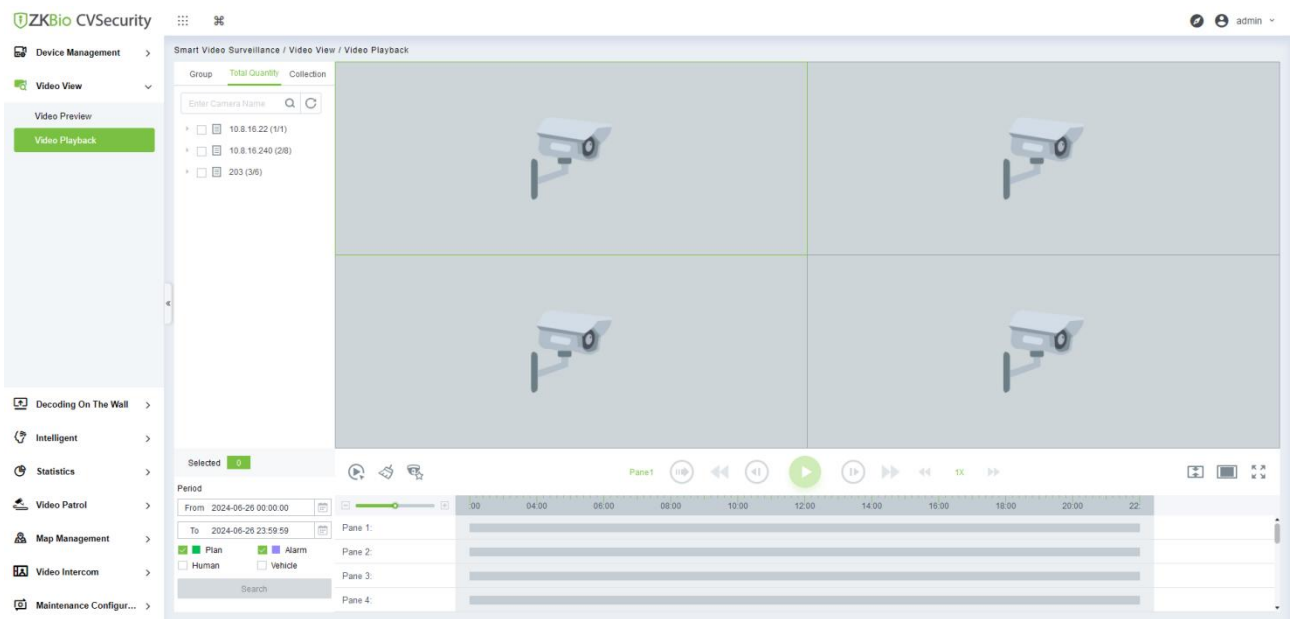
**Table 5- 4 Parameter Description of Round Patrol Configuration**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to start the round tour.

**Step 5:** End the round and click the toolbar below to close all screens.

### 5.1.5 Video Playback

Click Smart Video Surveillance > Video View > Video Playback.



## 5.2 Decoding On the Wall

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Decoding on The Wall.**

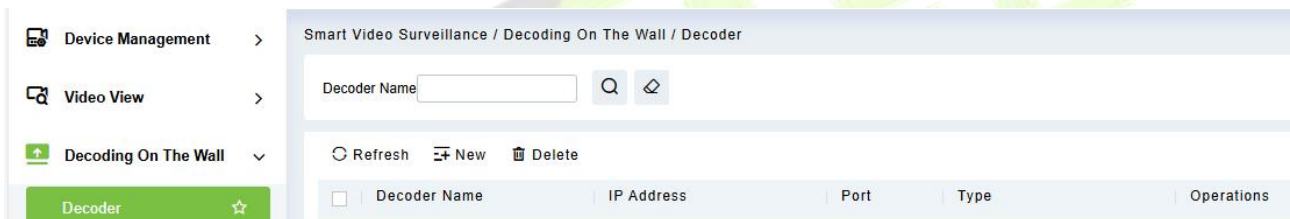


Figure 5- 14 Decoding on the Wall

### 5.2.1 Decoder

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Decoding on the wall > Decoder.**

#### 5.2.1.1 New (Add Decoder)

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Decoding on The Wall**, then select New.



Figure 5- 15 New (Decoding Wall)

| Parameter    | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Decoder Name | Custom decoder name.  |
| IP Address   | IP Address of the decoder   |
| Port         | Default port 10200  |
| Type         | Select the device model to access the decoder<br>Support PEMXP70 and DEC6109 decoder access |
| Username     | Enter the business username   |
| Password     | Enter the business password   |

**Table 5- 5 New**

Click **OK** to save and exit, or click **Save and New** to continue.

## 5.2.2 TV Wall

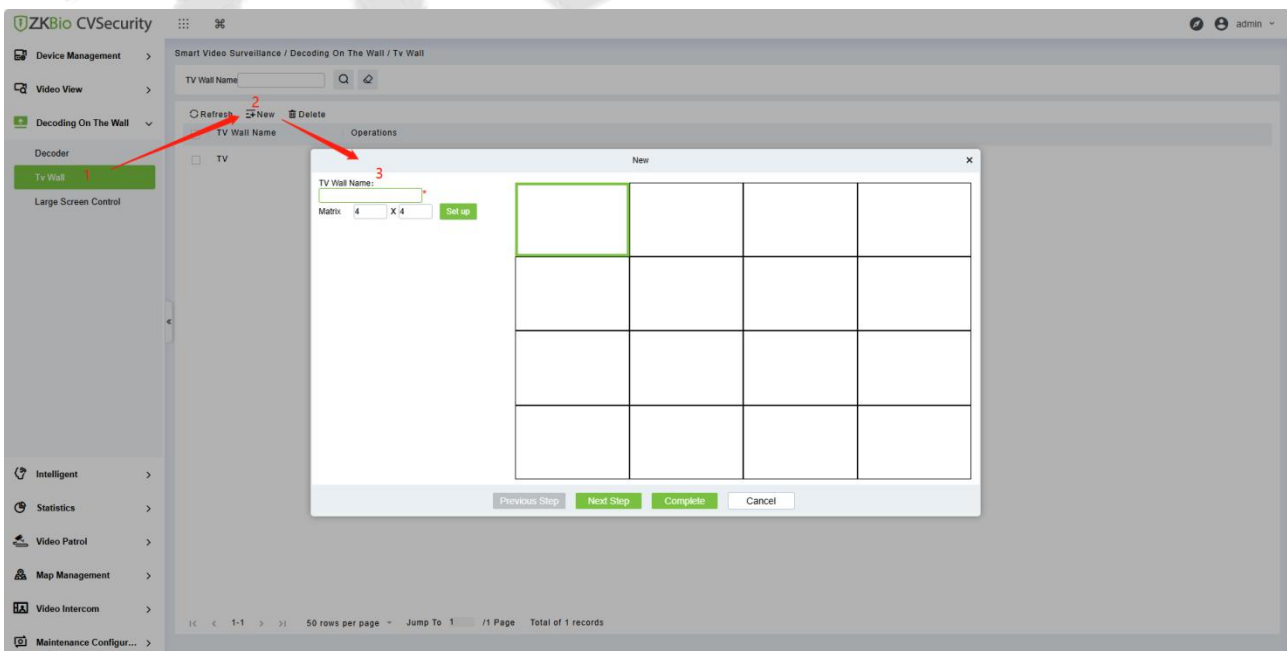
Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Decoding on the wall > TV Wall**.

### 5.2.2.1 New (Create TV Wall)

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Decoding on the wall > TV Wall**, then select New (Create TV Wall).

**Step 1:** In the Smart Video Surveillance module, select "**Decoding Wall > TV Wall**".

**Step 2:** Click **Add** to enter the "**Add TV Wall**" page, as shown in figure below



**Figure 5- 16 Creating Tv Wall Layout**

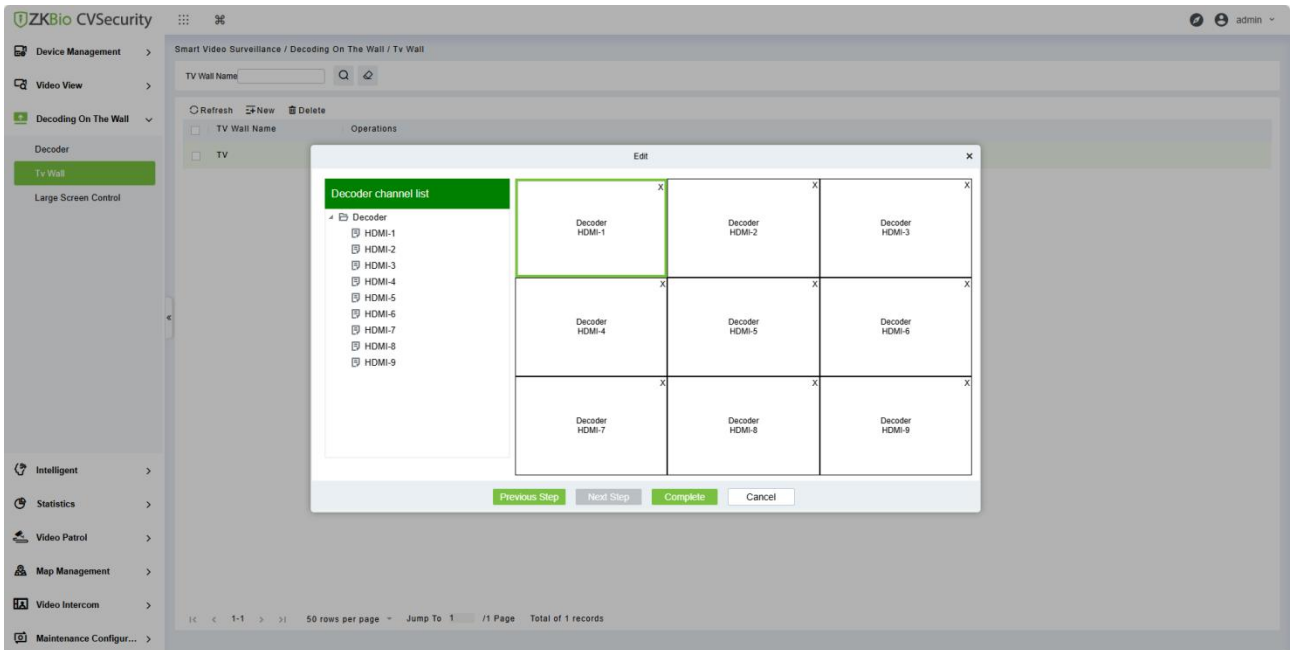
**Step 3:** Enter a custom TV Wall Name.

**Step 4:** In the Matrix Settings box, customize the number of rows and list of input layouts, and click **Settings** to apply the layout.

Description:

Matrix Layout pane settings, supporting a minimum of 1 \* 1 and a maximum of 8 \* 8.

**Step 5:** Click next to enter the TV wall binding decoder interface, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 5- 17 TV Wall Binding Decoder**

**Step 6:** Select the TV wall pane to which you want to add a decoder channel, and then click **Decoder Channel** on the left to complete the binding.

| Parameter    | Description             |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| TV Wall Name | Enter the TV wall name. |

**Step 7:** Click **Finish** to finish adding the TV wall.

### 5.2.2.2 Delete

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Decoding on The Wall > TV Wall**, then select Delete.

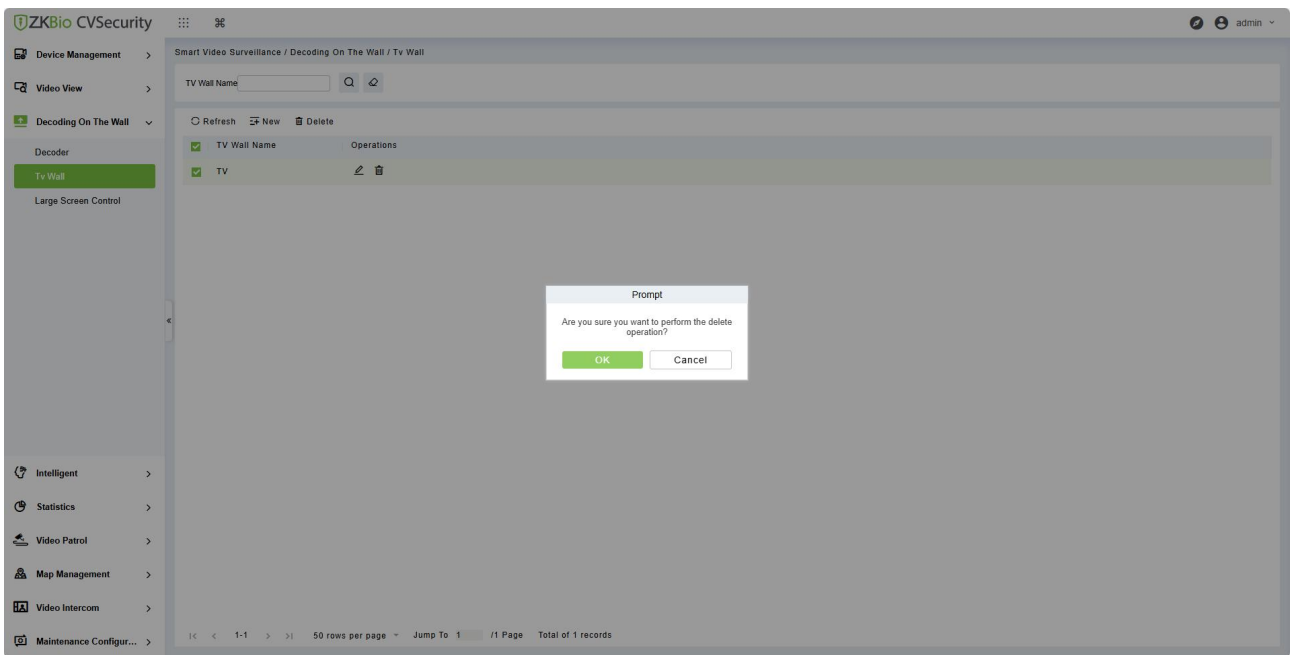


Figure 5- 18 Delete TV Wall

### 5.2.3 Large Screen Control

#### 5.2.3.1 Device

Click **Smart Video Surveillance > Decoding on the wall > Large Screen Control**.

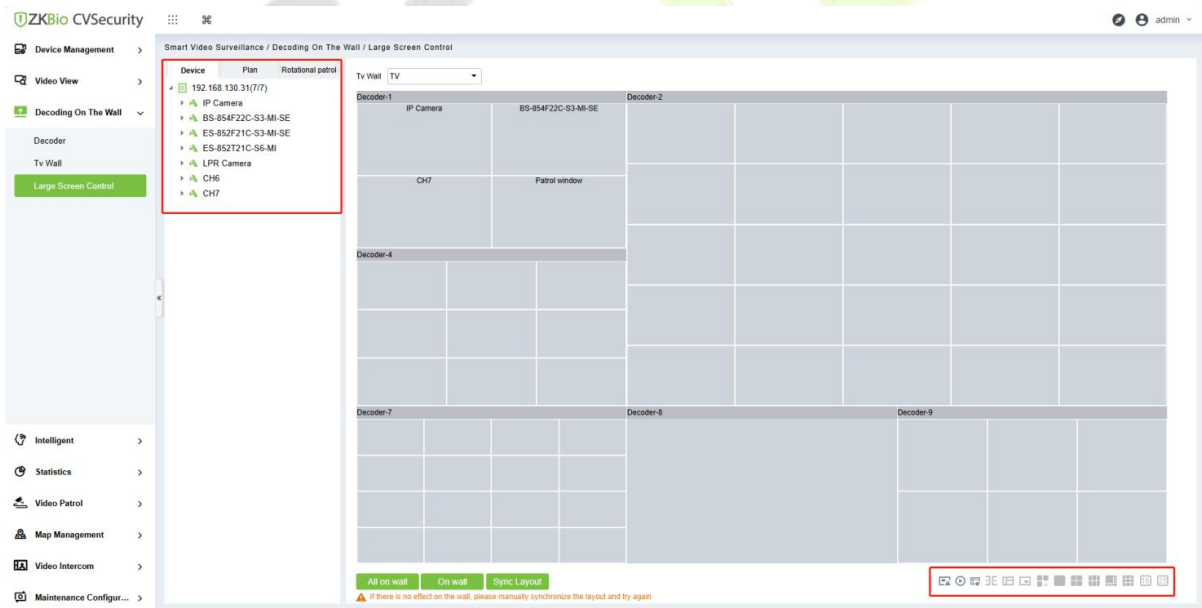













Figure 5- 19 Large Screen Control

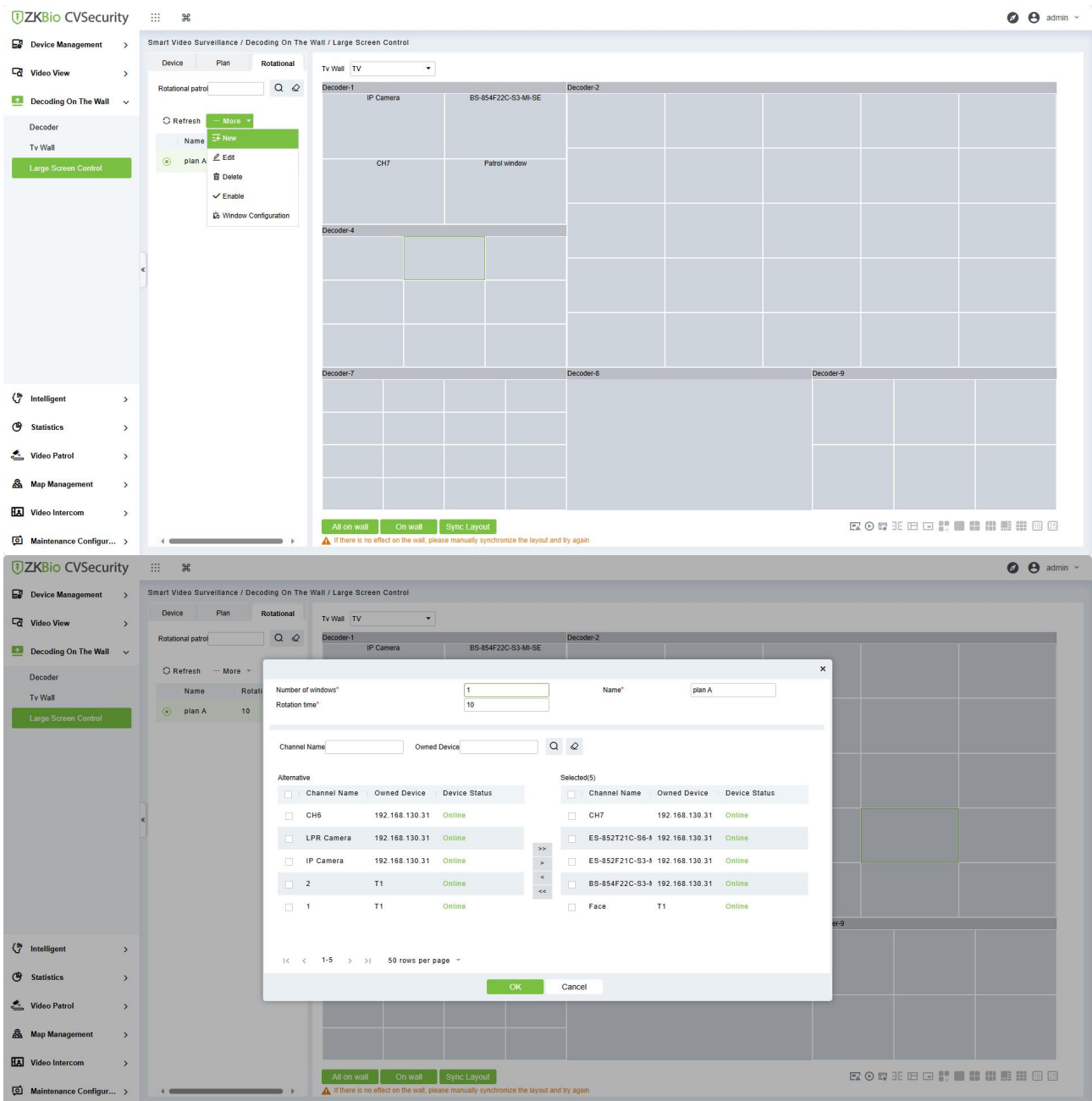
| Icon | Parameter     | Description  |
|------|---------------|--|
|      | Alarm Setup   | Select a screen to show the events of linked alarms. |
|      | Video Preview | Previewing the current screen.                       |

| Icon  | Parameter          | Description                                |
|---|--------------------|--|
|    | Collection of Plan | Join the list of collection profiles.      |
|    | Merged screen      | Merge multiple scattered screens into one. |
|    | Split Screen       | Separate the merged screens.               |
|    | Floating Window    | Floating screen window.                    |
|    | Down Wall          | End on the wall.                           |
|    | 1 Split Screen     | 1 Split Screen.                            |
|    | 4 Split Screen     | 4 Split Screen.                            |
|  | 8 Split Screen     | 8 Split Screen.                            |
|  | 9 Split Screen     | 9 Split Screen.                            |
|  | 16 Split Screen    | 16 Split Screen.                           |
|  | 25 Split Screen    | 25 Split Screen.                           |

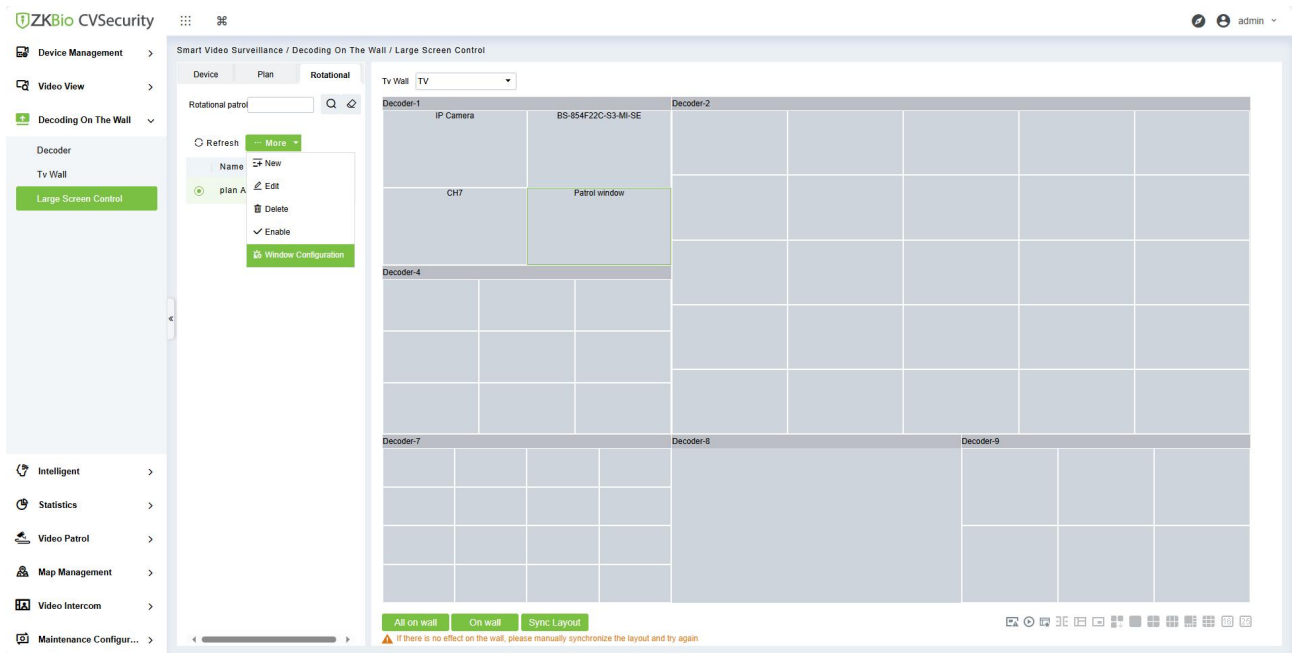
**Table 5- 6 Icon Description**

### 5.2.3.2 Rotational Patrol

**Step 1:** Click **More > New**, Enter the number of Windows, Name and Rotation Time, and select the channel to play, and click OK.



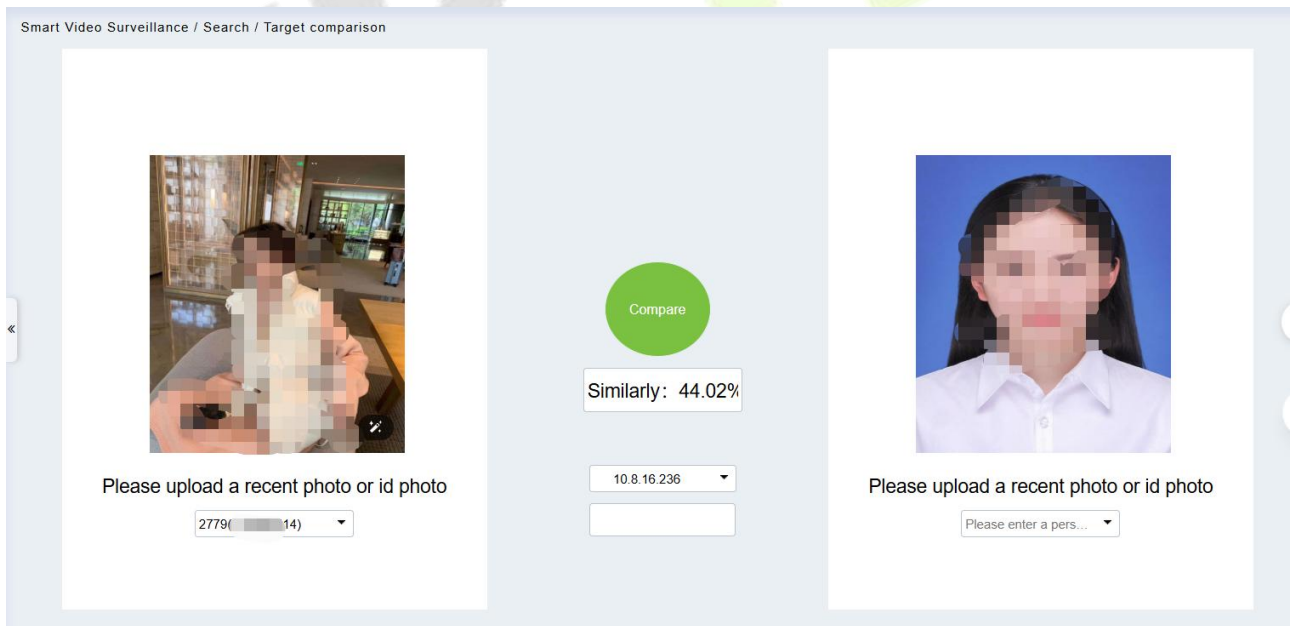
**Step 2:** Select windows, and click **More > Window Configuration > Enable**.



### 5.3 Search

Its function is to use face recognition technology to compare the people in two photos (recent photos or ID photos) by uploading them, and determine whether they are the same person.

**Note:** Currently, this function is only supported by ZKIVA - Edge T1/X1.



### 5.4 Intelligent

#### 5.4.1 Behavior Analysis

Configuration of intelligent functions for behavioral analysis using front-end cameras by ZKBio CVSecurity.

**Note:** The default interface is part of Holowits' functionality.

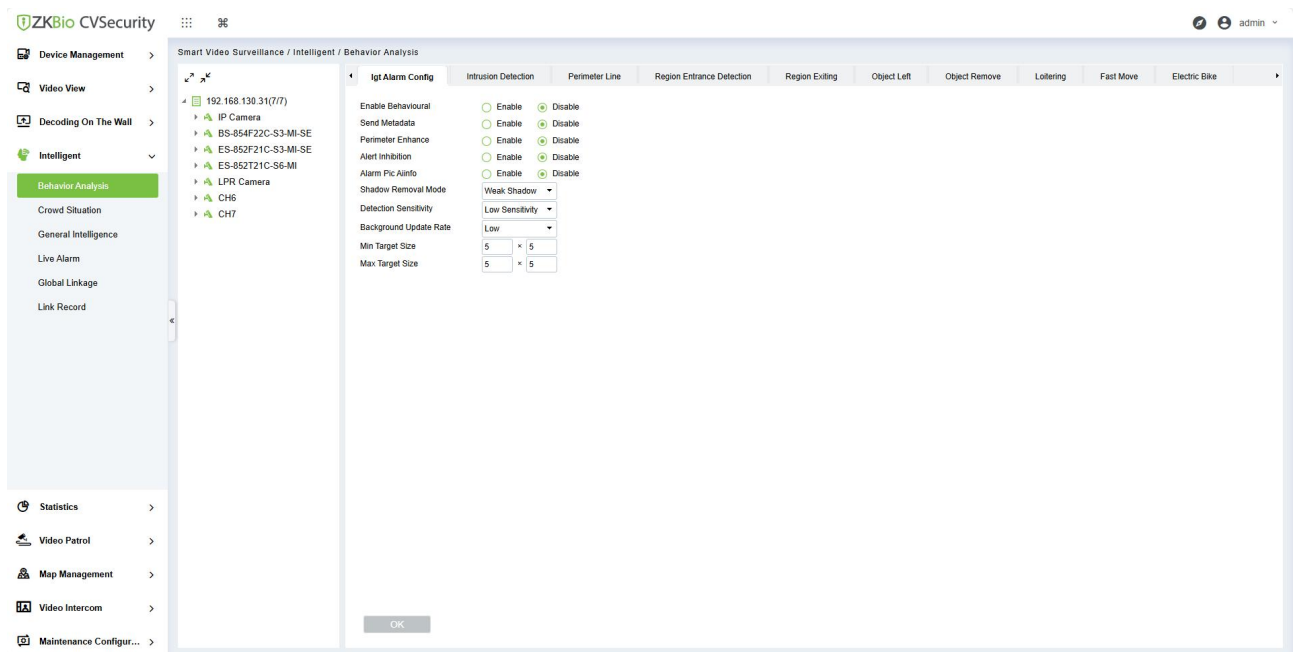


Figure 5- 20 Behavior Analysis

**Step 1:** Select the camera on the left and the software will automatically switch to the menu of smart features supported by that camera.

1) If it's Holowits branch device, after click, the page shown as below:

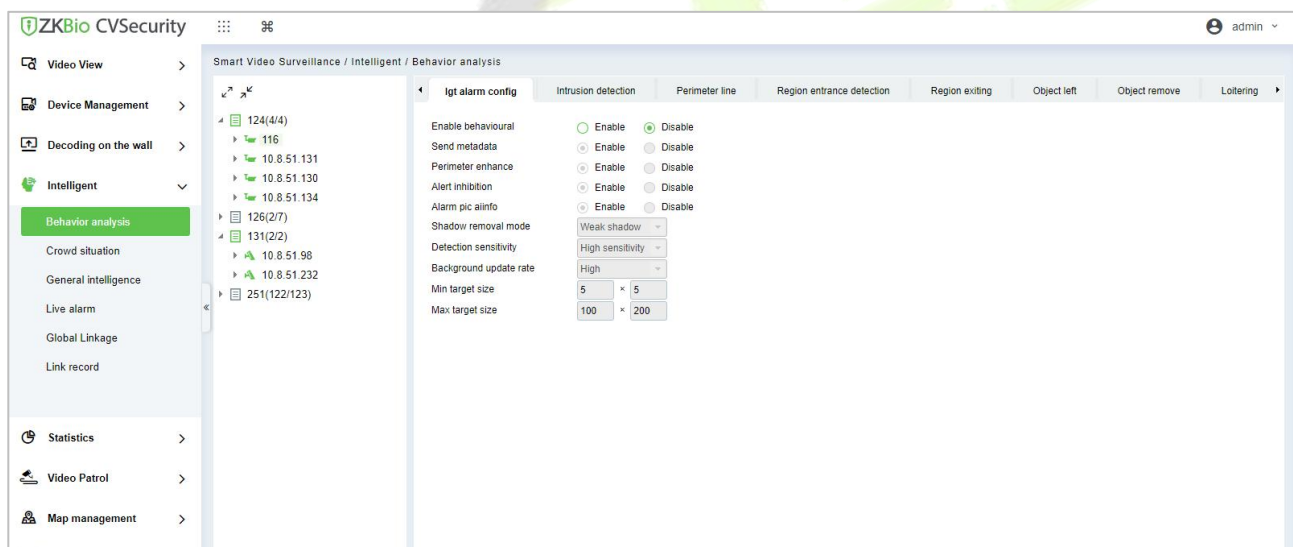


Figure 5- 21 Holowits device page

2) If it's ZKBio Sense device, after click, the page shown as below:

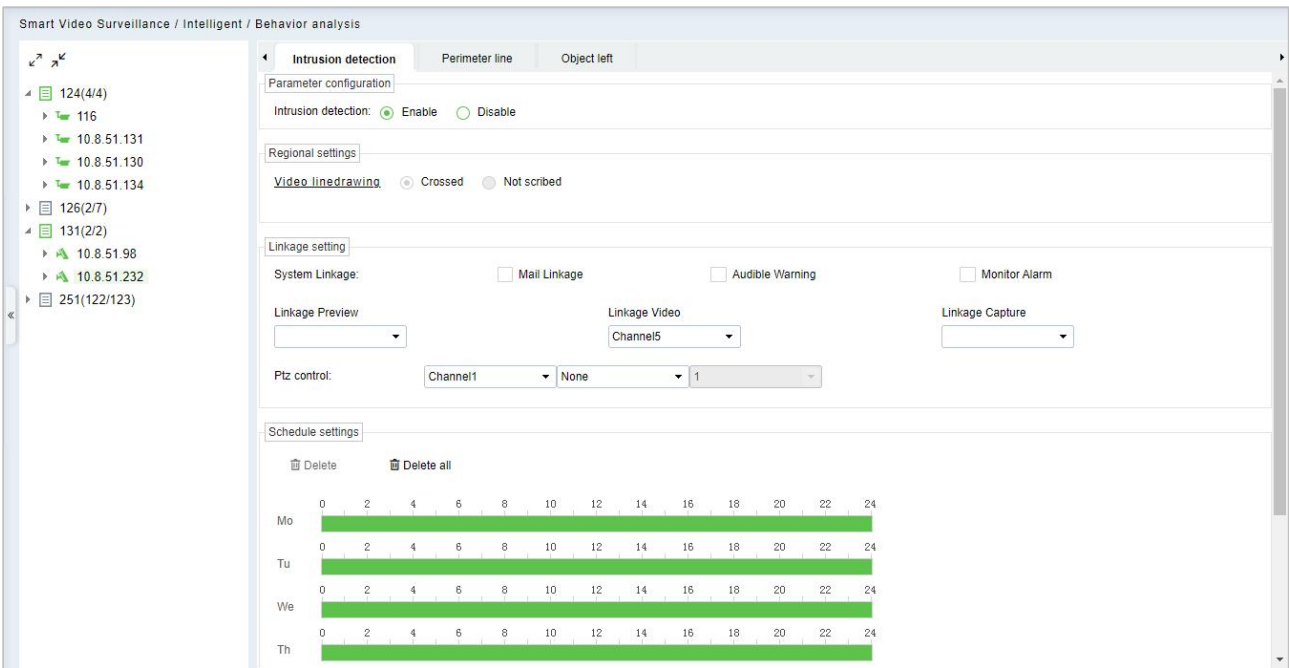


Figure 5- 22 BioSense Series Behavior Analysis

3) If the camera does not support intelligent functions, after click, the page shown as below: No database.

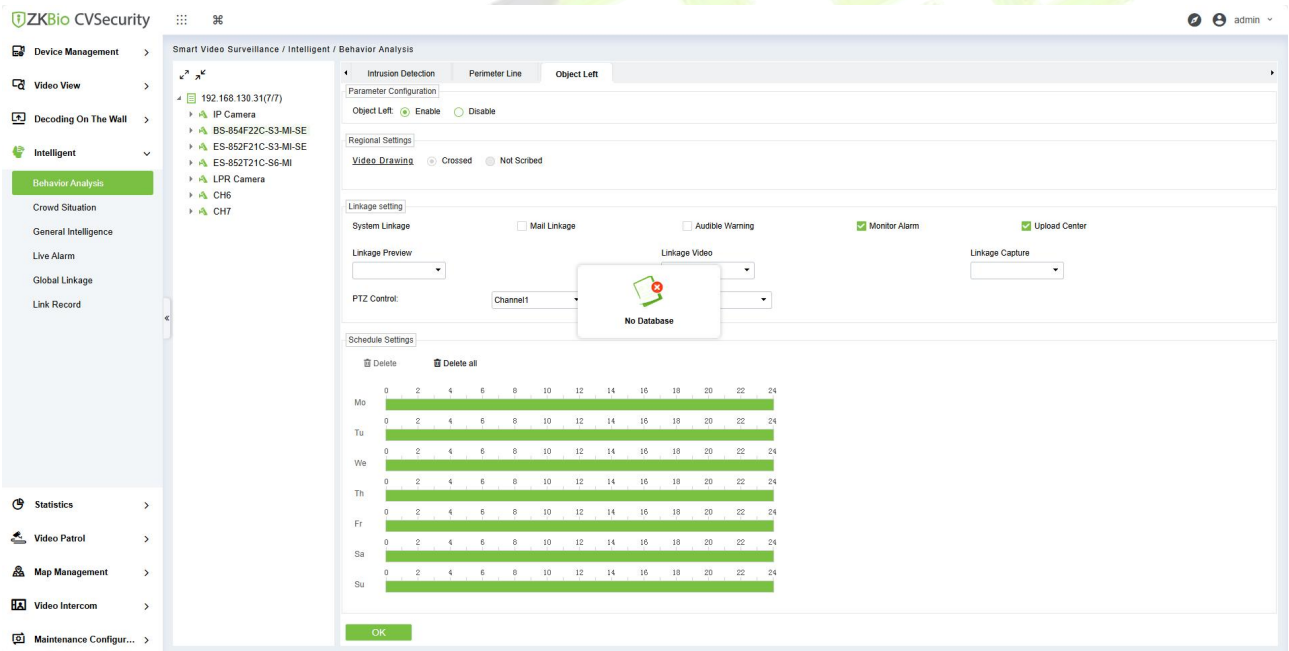


Figure 5- 23 Non-Smart Cameras

The following mainly explains the intelligent function configuration of ZKBio Sense series.

### 5.4.1.1 Intrusion Detection

#### Parameter Configuration

Configure to enable intrusion detection.

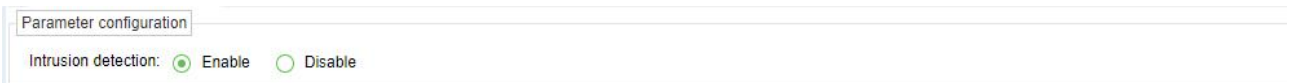


Figure 5- 24 Parameter Configuration

#### Regional Settings

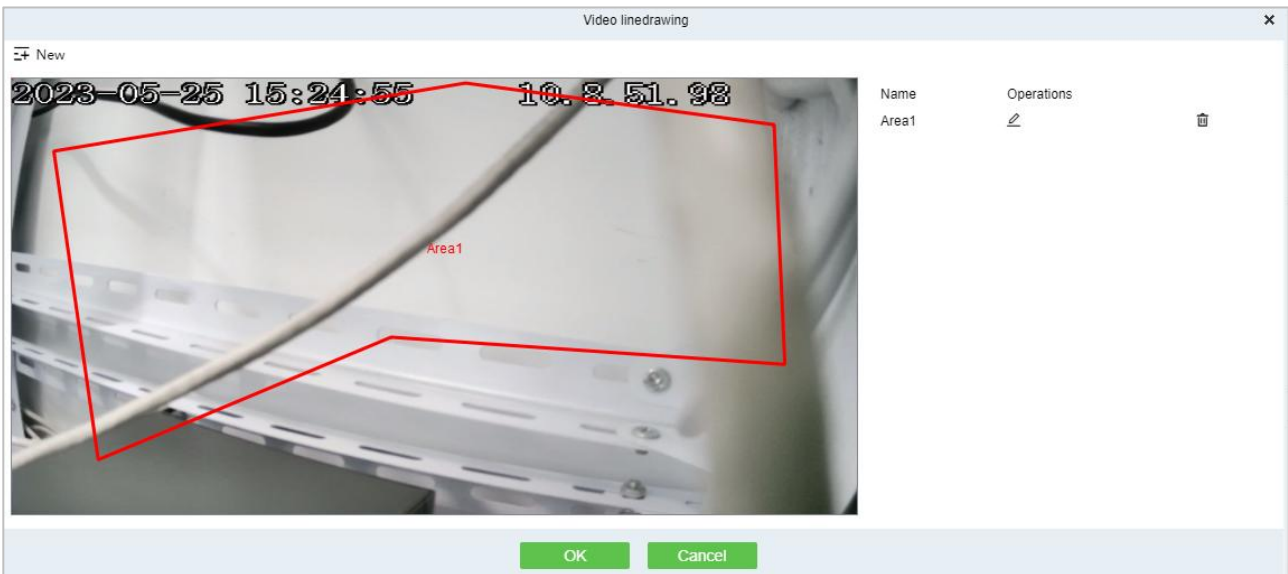


**Figure 5- 25 Regional Setting**

**Crossed:** Indicates that a line is currently drawn for this smart feature.

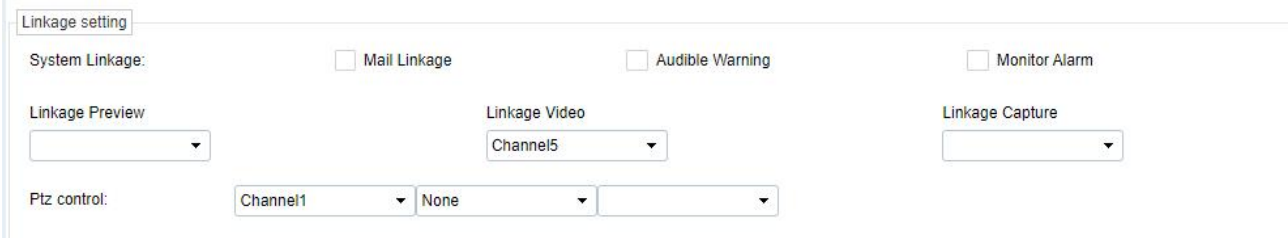
**Not Scribed:** Indicates that a line is currently not drawn for this smart feature.

Click **Video Link Drawing**, draw the detection area.



**Figure 5- 26 Drawing the Detection Area**

### Linkage Setting



**Figure 5- 27 Light Flashing Alarm**

### System Linkage:

- a. Mail Linkage: After select the mail linkage, you need to go to Smart Video Surveillance > Device Management > Device, select the NVR. Click More>Email configuration, to set the sending server and recipient address.

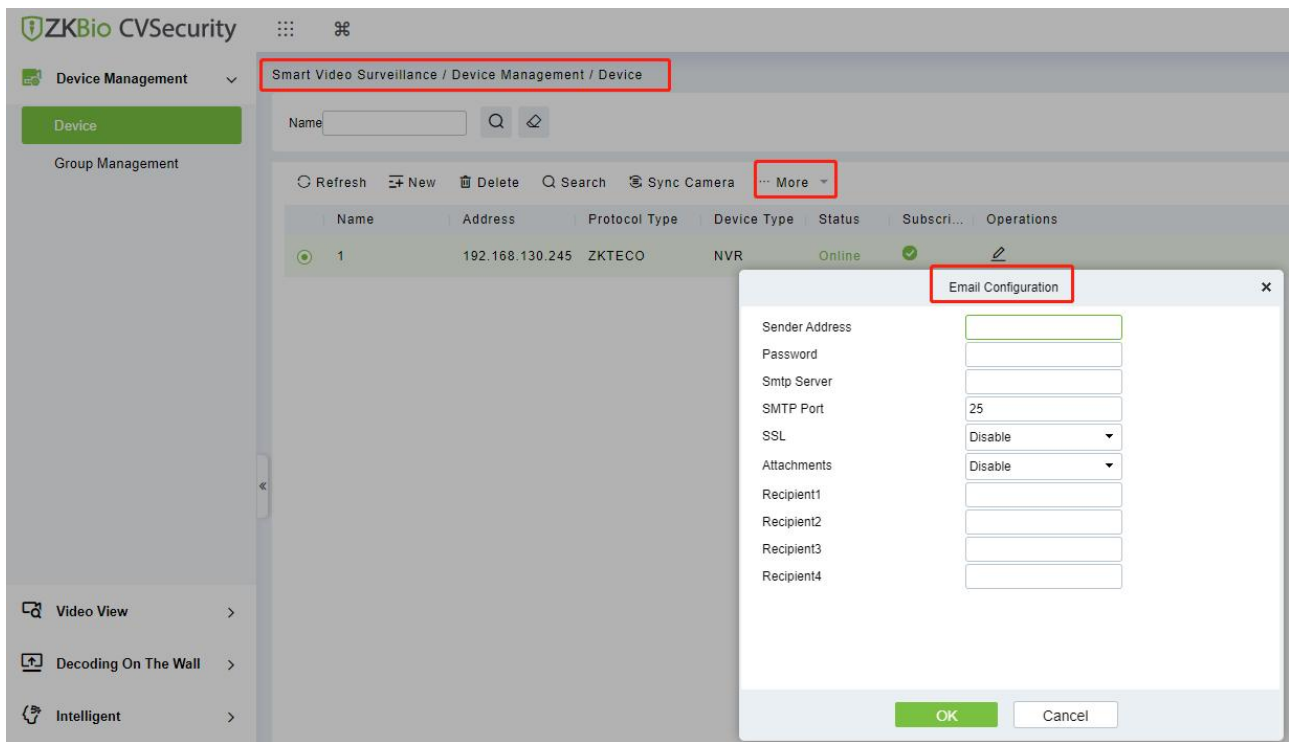


Figure 5- 28

- b. Audible Warning: NVR's buzzer alarm.
- c. Monitor Alarm: Display alarm information in the NVR.
- d. Linkage Preview: A preview of the linked camera is displayed in the NVR.
- e. Linkage Record: Linkage to record.
- f. Linkage Capture: Linkage to snapshot.
- g. PTZ Control: The linkage PTZ executes the preset point and trajectory line.

Schedule Settings:



Figure 5- 29 Schedule Settings

After configuring all the above functions, click **Save**.

### 5.4.1.2 Perimeter Line

Please refer to [Intrusion Detection](#) setup.

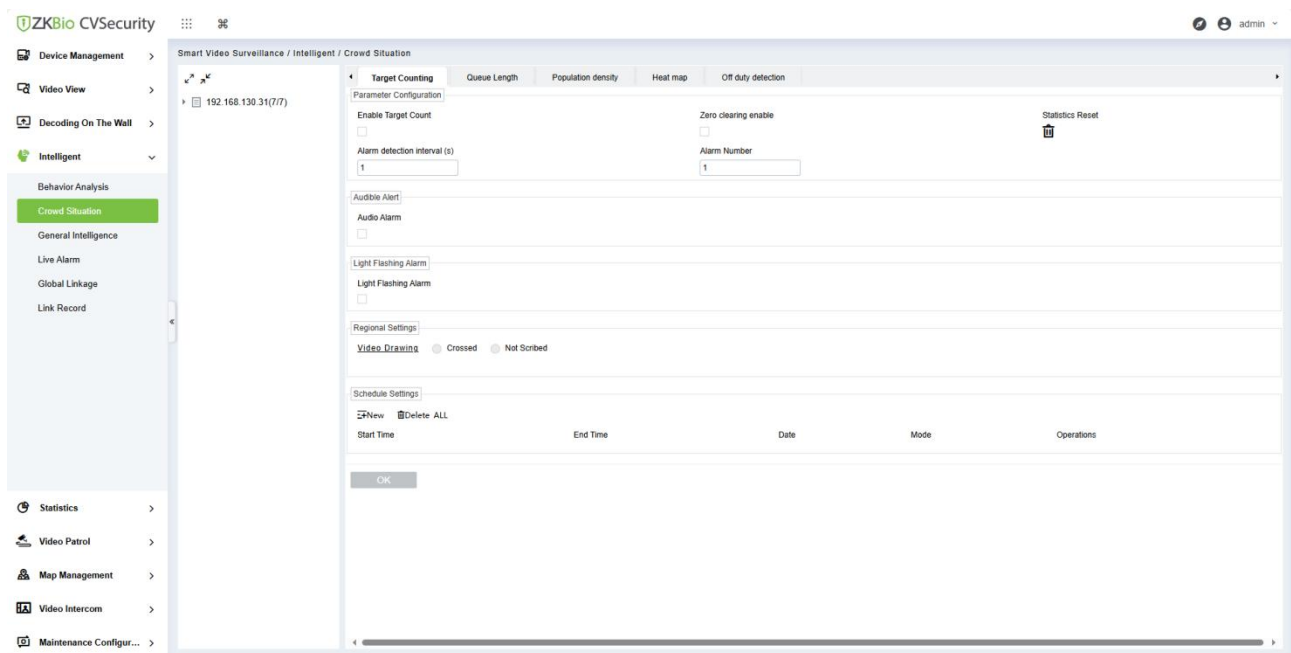
### 5.4.1.3 Object Left

Please refer to [Intrusion Detection](#) setup.

## 5.4.2 Crowd Situation

Configuration of intelligent functions for crowd situation of front-end cameras by ZKBio CVSecurity.

**Note:** The default interface is part of Holowits' functionality.



**Figure 5- 30 Crowd Situation**

**Step 1:** Select the camera on the left and the software will automatically switch to the menu of smart features supported by that camera.

1) If it's Holowits branch device, after click, the page shown as below:

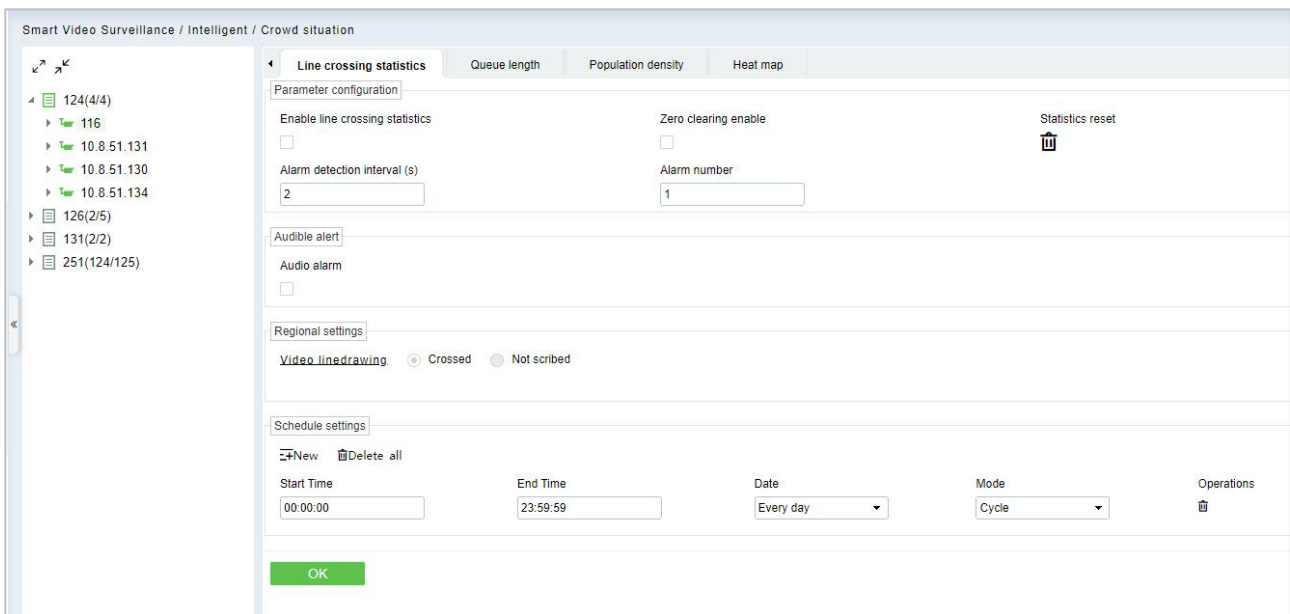


Figure 5- 31 Crowd Situation of Holowits device

2) If it's ZKBio Sense device, after click , the page shown as below:

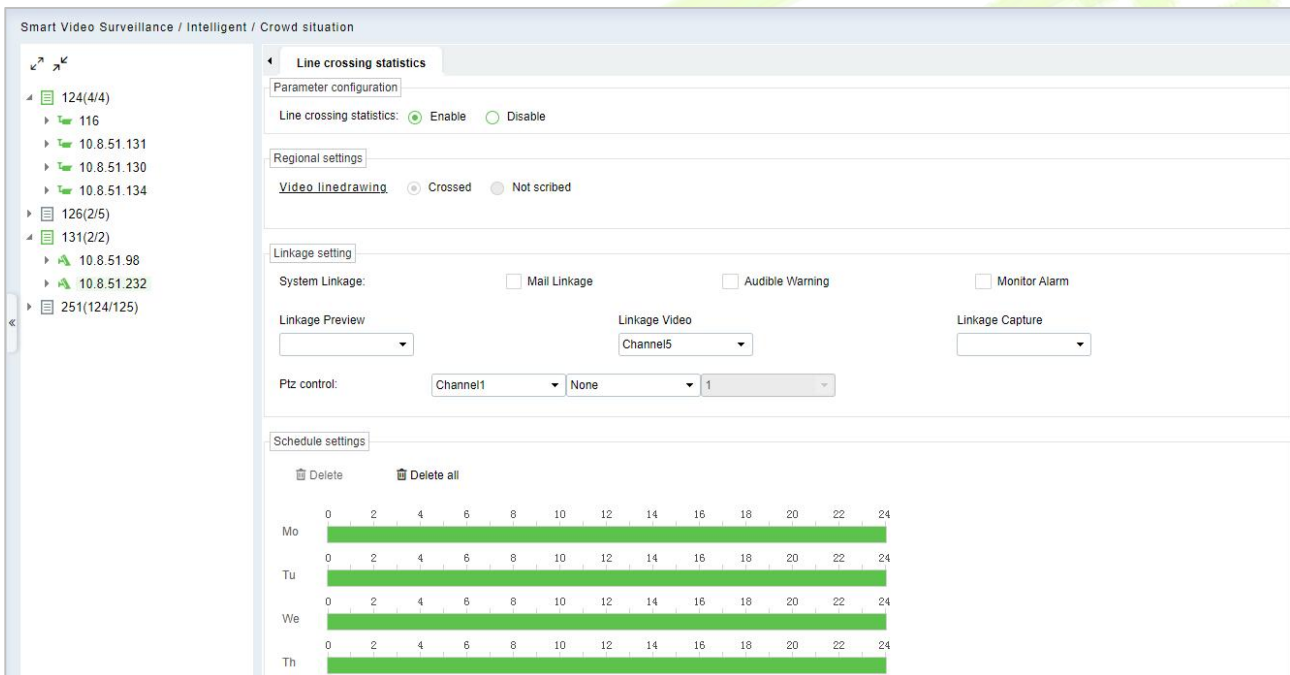


Figure 5- 32 Crowd Situation of ZKBio Sense device

3) If the camera does not support intelligent functions, then after click, the page shown as below: No database.

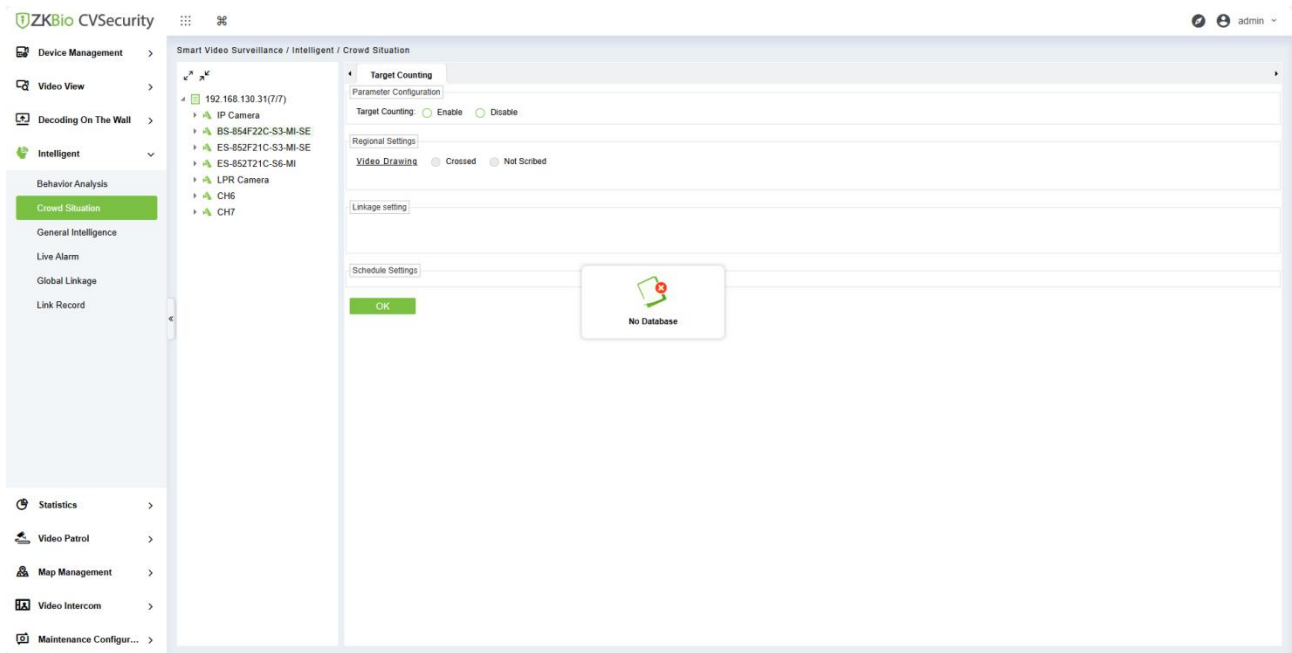


Figure 5- 33 No Database

### 5.4.2.1 Line Crossing Statistics

Please refer to [Intrusion Detection](#) setup.

### 5.4.3 General Intelligence

Configuration of general intelligence functions for front-end cameras by ZKBio CVSecurity.

**Note:** The default interface is part of Holowits' functionality. Different cameras have different intelligences, selecting the camera on the left will display the intelligences according to what the camera has to offer.

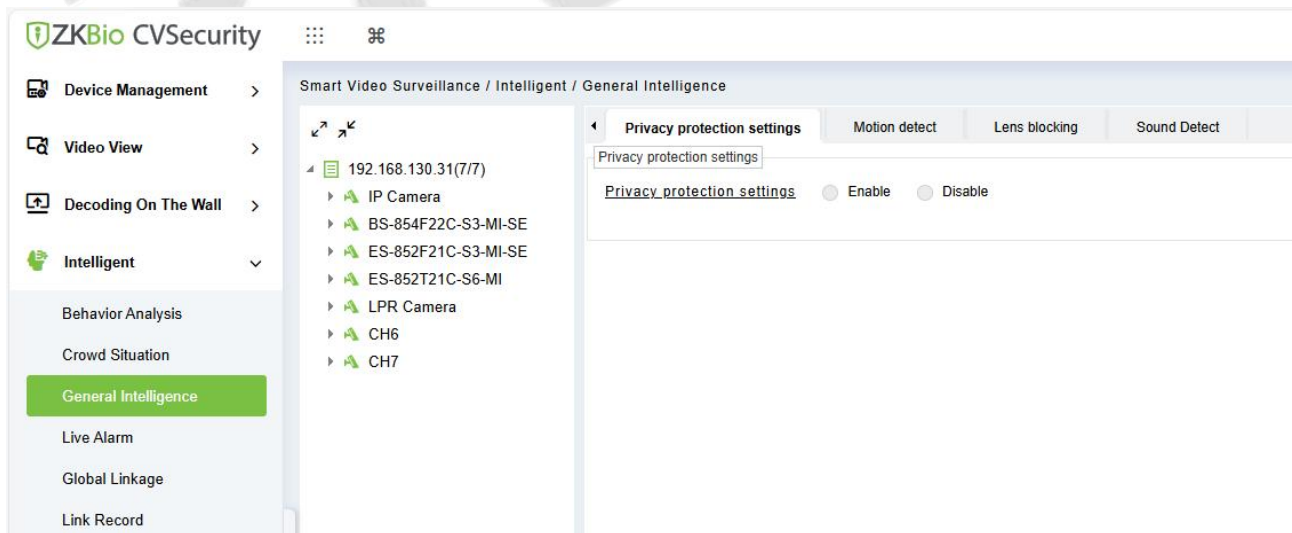


Figure 5- 34 General Intelligence

**Step 1:** Select the camera on the left and the software will automatically switch to the menu of smart features supported by that camera.

1) If it's Holowits branch device, after click, the page shown as below:

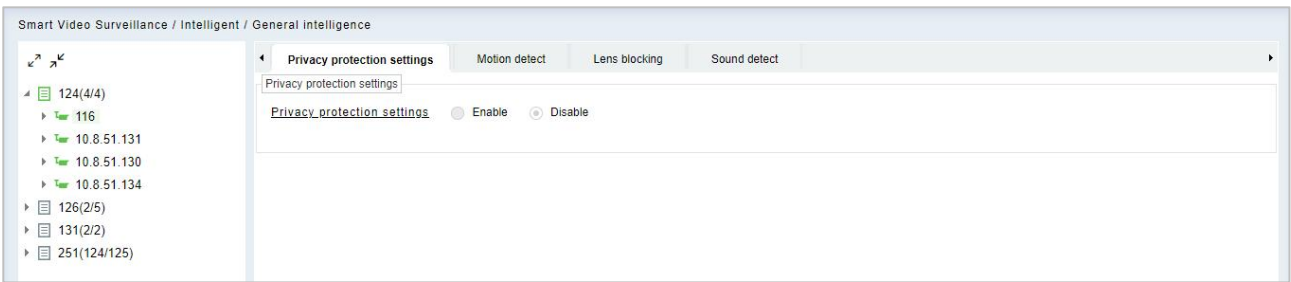


Figure 5- 35 General Intelligence of Holowits Device

2) If it's ZKBio Sense device, after click, the page shown as below:

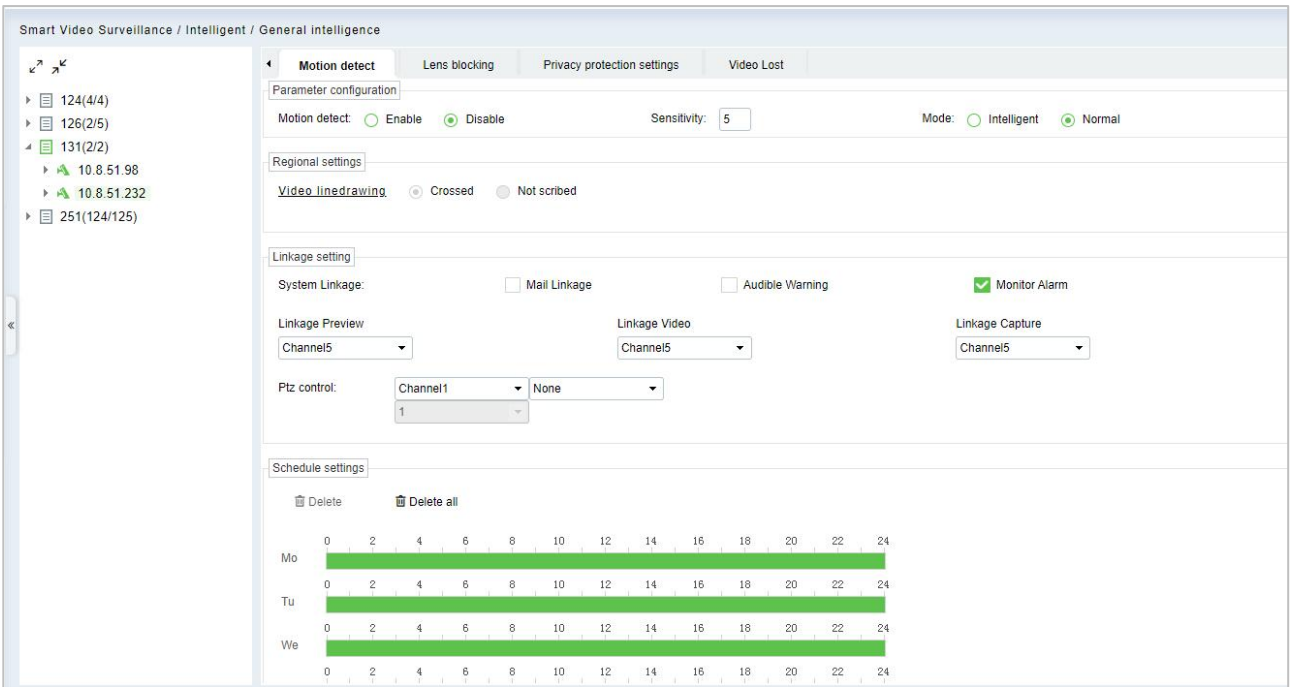


Figure 5- 36 General Intelligence of ZKBio Sense device

### 5.4.3.1 Motion Detection

Please refer to [Intrusion Detection](#) setup.

Parameter Configuration:



Figure 5- 37

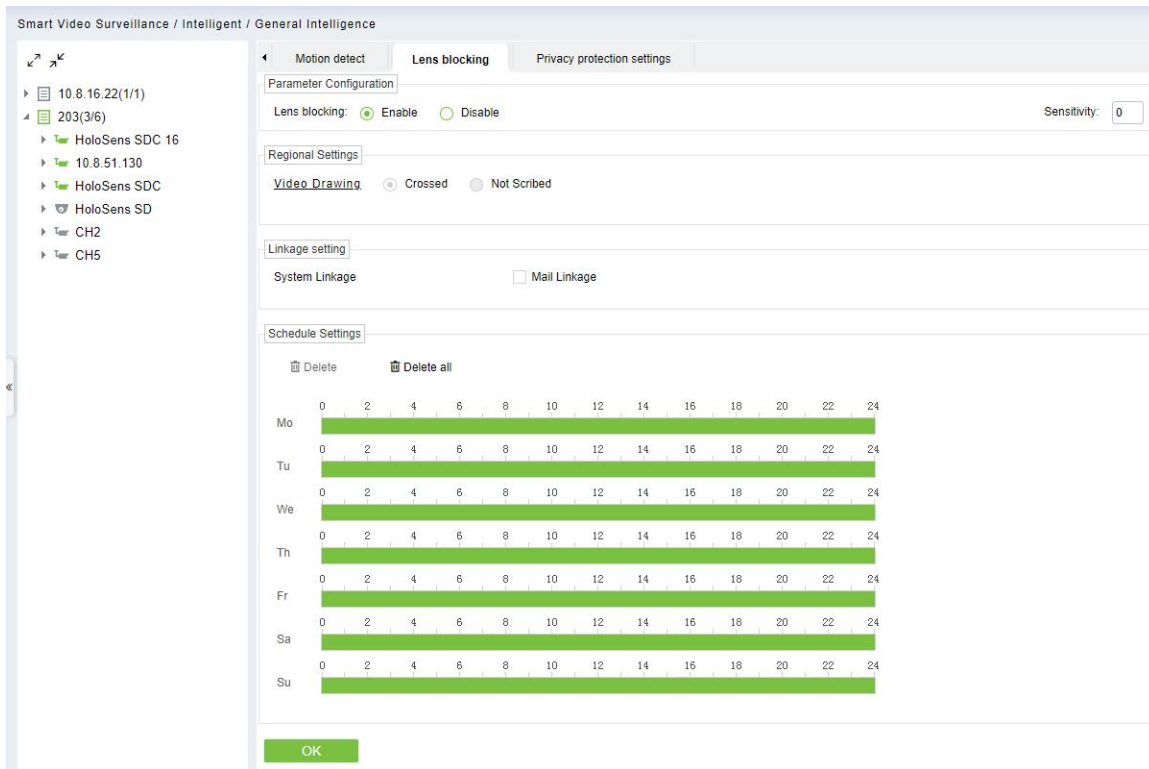
**Sensitivity:** Detection sensitivity.

**Mode: Intelligent:** Can distinguish between human or vehicles.

**Normal:** No distinction between human and vehicles.

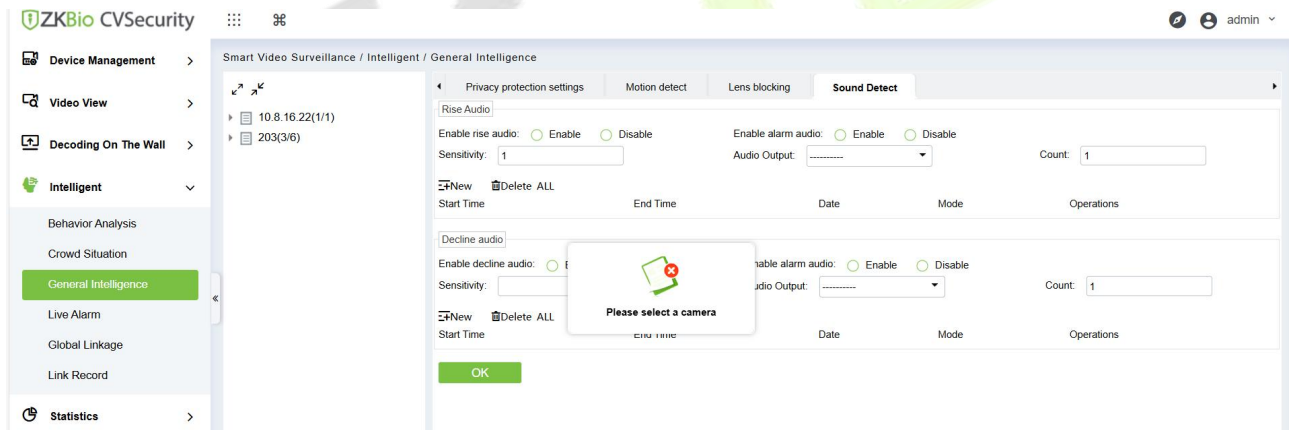
### 5.4.3.2 Lens Blocking

Lens Obstruction Alarm; after clicking **Enable** button to enable, please click **Video Drawing** to configure the detection area.



### 5.4.3.3 Sound Detect

Sound diagnostics; this feature is only available with Holowits Camera.



### 5.4.4 Live Alarm

Real-time video alarm monitoring.

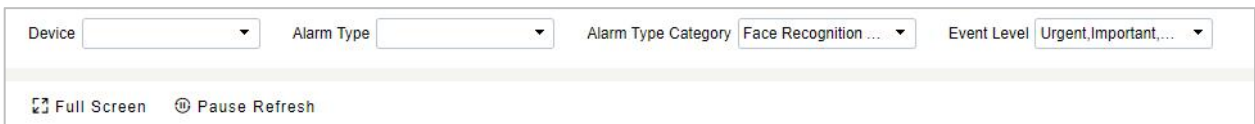


Figure 5- 38 Live Alarm

#### Full Screen

View the video in the full screen.

#### Pause Alarm

This function will help you to pause the alarm.

Double-click the alarm card to view the alarm details, as shown in the figure below.

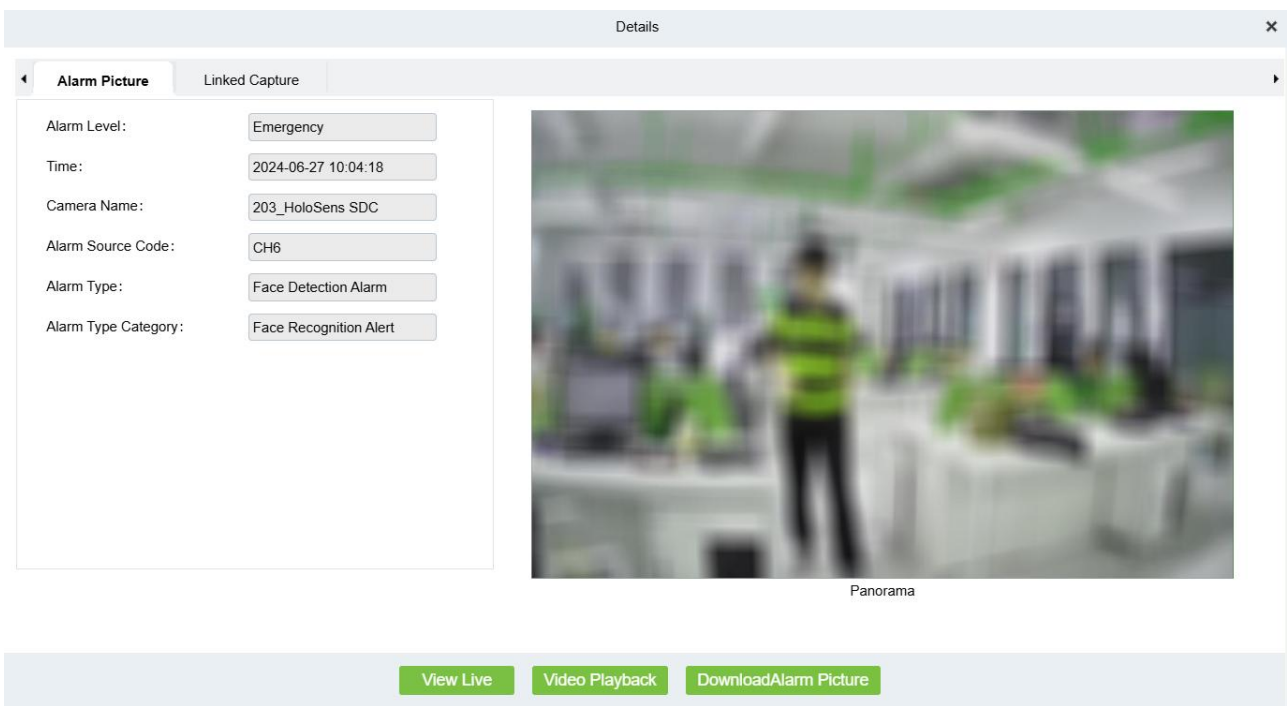


Figure 5- 39 Alarm Detail

● View Live

Click on the **Live View** button to view the live video.

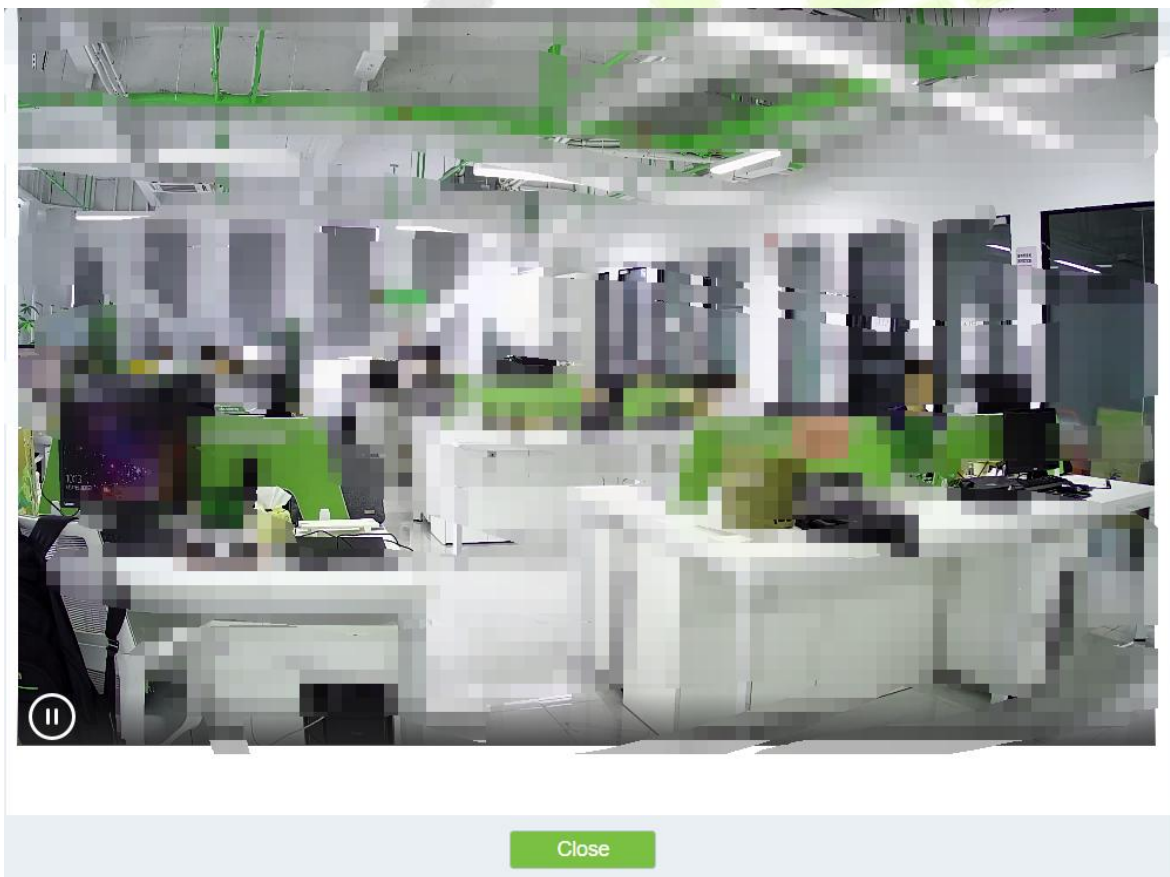


Figure 5- 40 Video Preview

● Video Playback

Click the **Video Playback** button to view the alarm playback in real time.

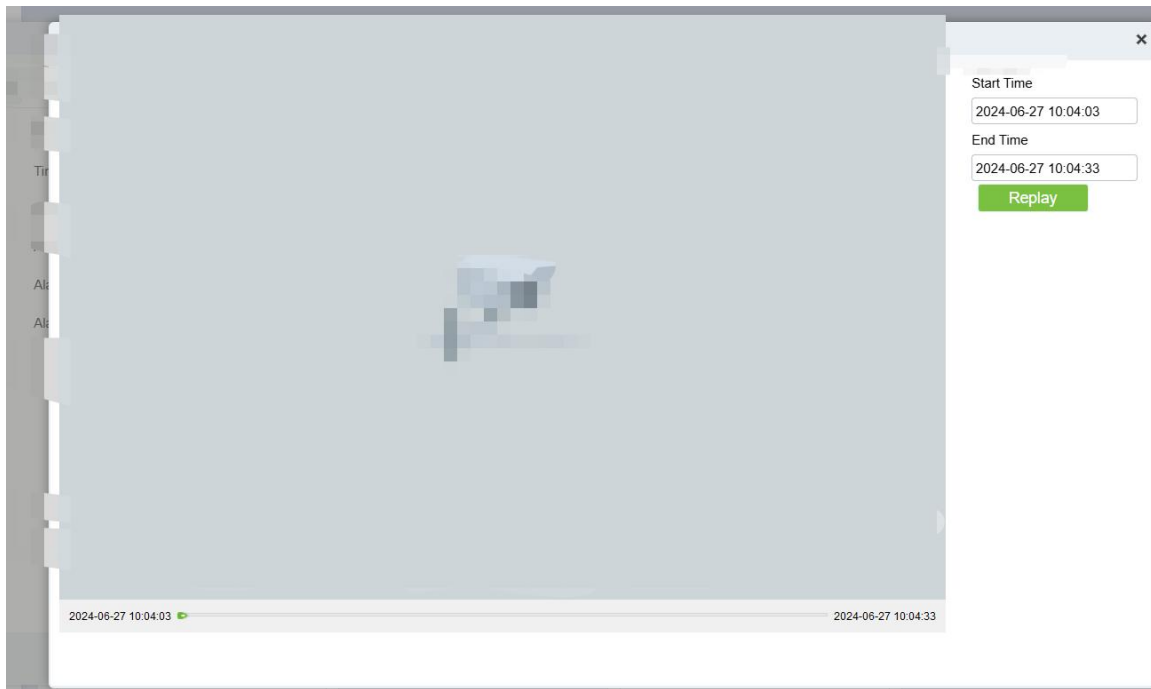


Figure 5- 41 Video Playback

● Download Alarm Picture

Click **Download Alarm Picture** and the browser will download the picture automatically.

### 5.4.5 Global Linkage

Go to **Smart Video Surveillance > Intelligent > Global Linkage**, click New to set the video linkage.

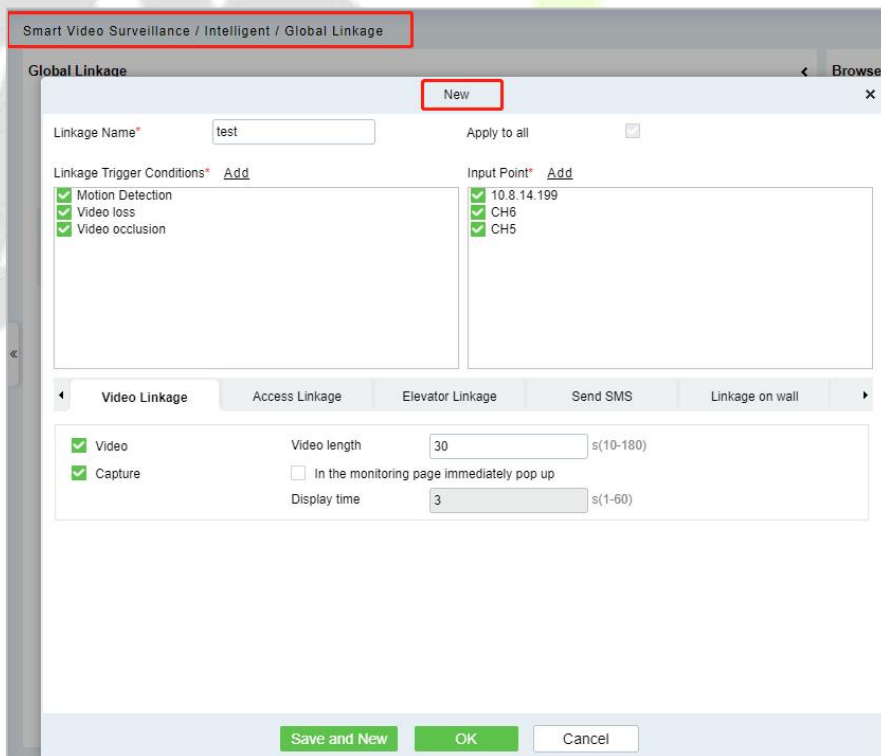
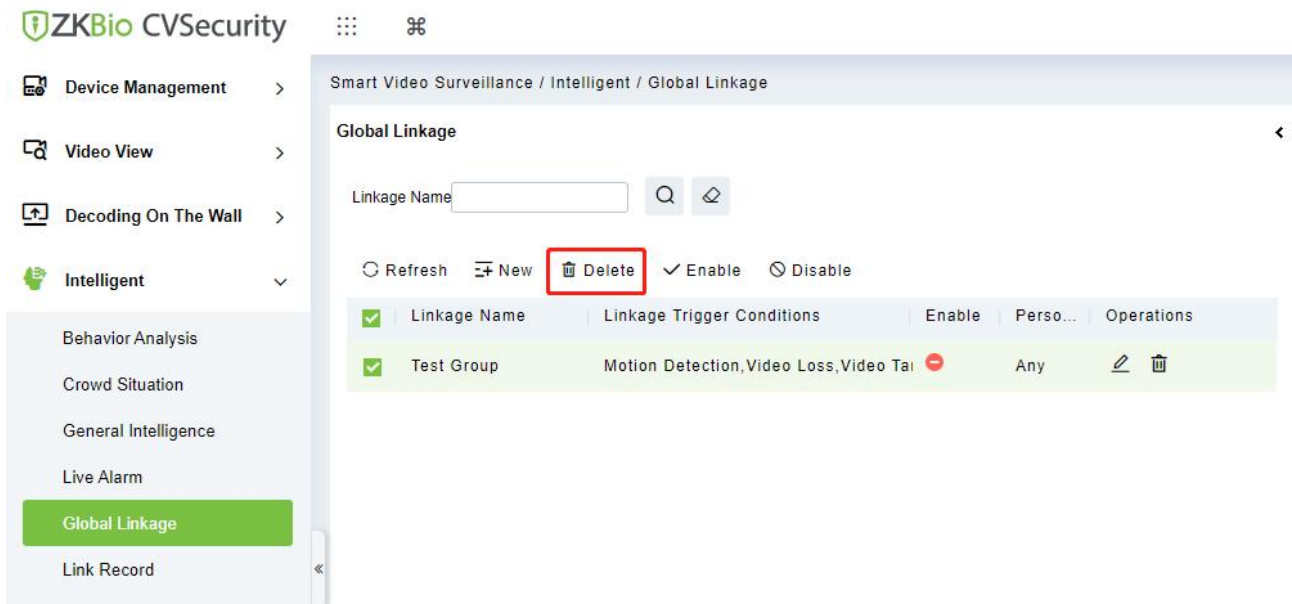


Figure 5- 42 Global Linkage

### 5.4.5.1 Delete

Select the **Linkage Name**, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the linkage details.



### 5.4.5.2 Enable/Disable

Select the **Linkage Name**, click **enable/disable** to either enable or disable the linkage details.

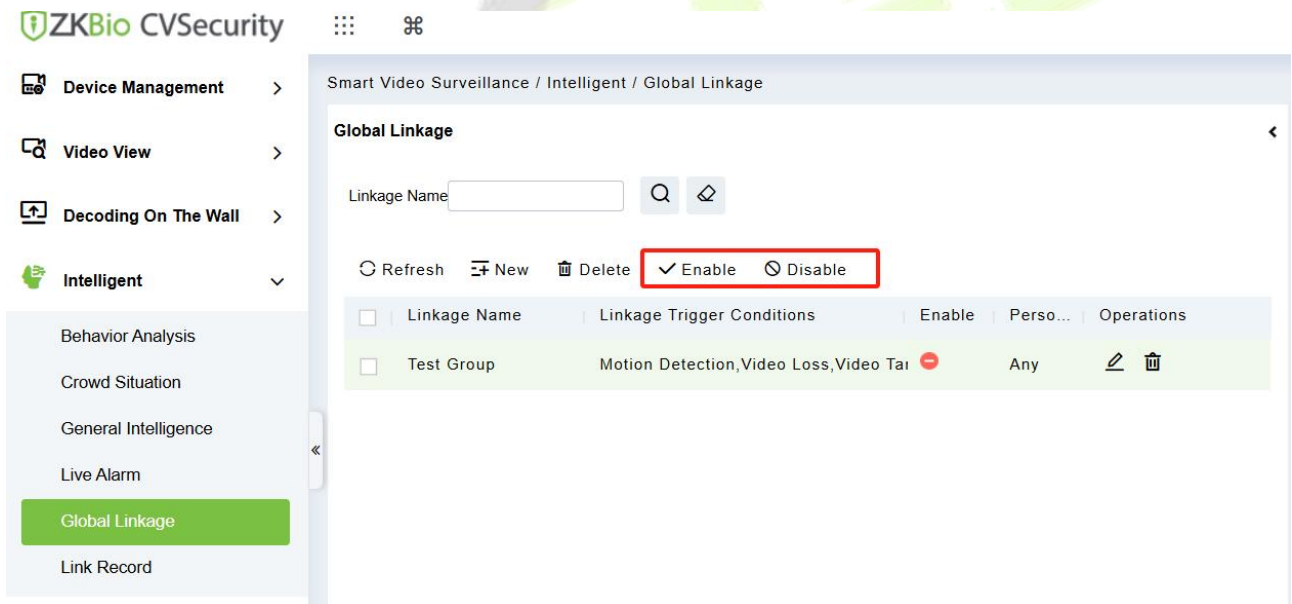


Figure 5- 43 Enable/disable Linkage

## 5.4.6 Link Record

### 5.4.6.1 Clear All Data

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Intelligent > Link Records > Clear All Data** to view clear all records:

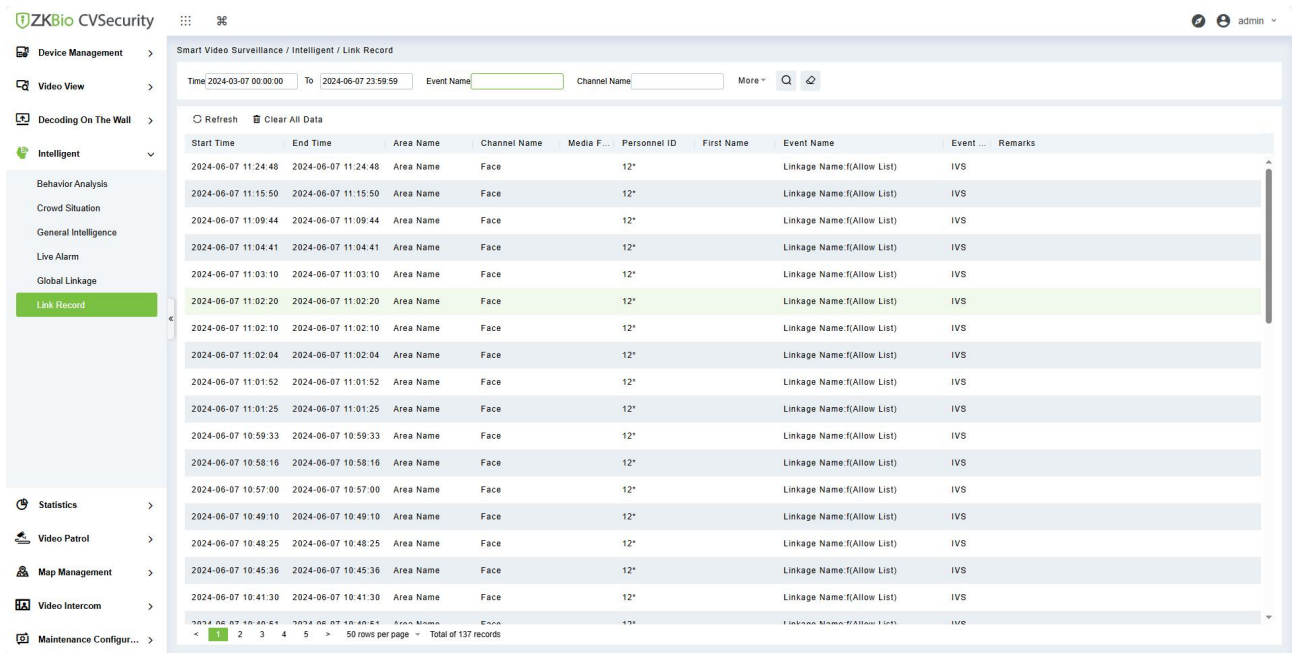


Figure 5- 44 Clear All Records Interface

Step 2: Click **Clear All Data** to pop up prompt and click **OK** to clear all records.

## 5.5 Statistics

### 5.5.1 Alarm Report

Click **Statistics > Alarm Report** then select Alarm Type.

In this module, you can access the data for the type of personnel or person can select the start time and end time the serial number of the video channel, and different alarm types to filter the report.

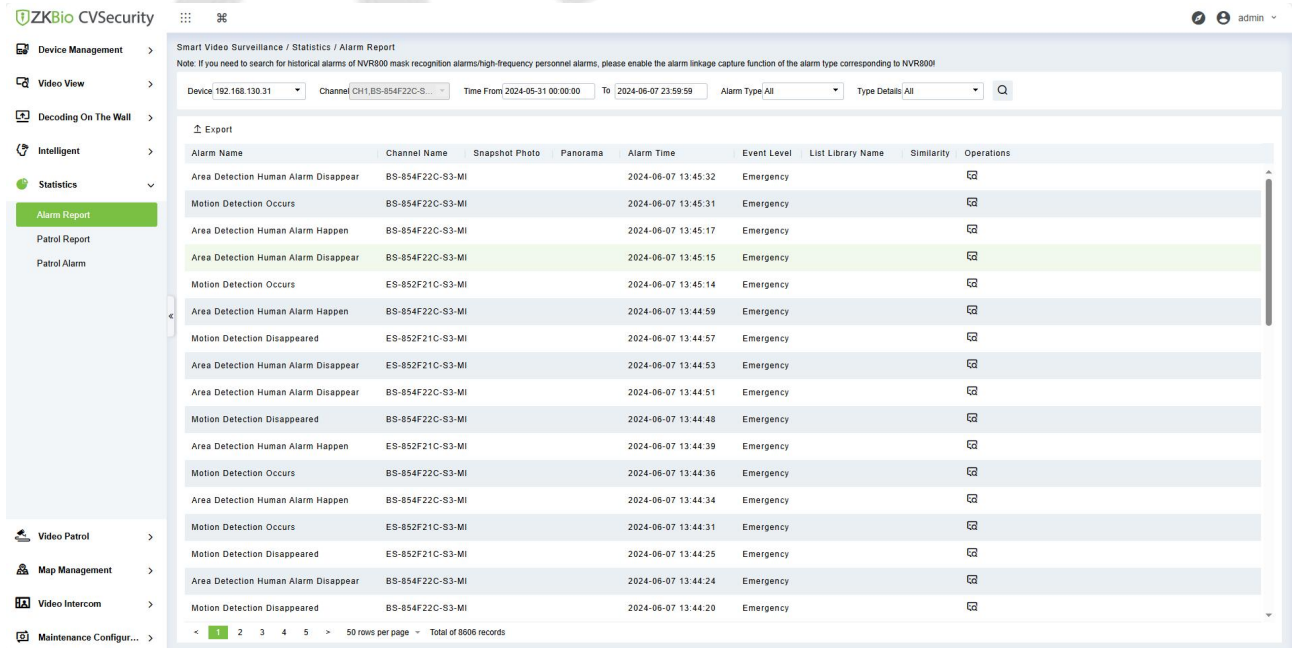


Figure 5- 45 Alarm Report

### 5.5.1.1 Export

Export selected personal information in the area; need enter user password and file encryption; you can export Excel, PDF, CSV or TXT format; Export up to 10000 pieces of data at once.

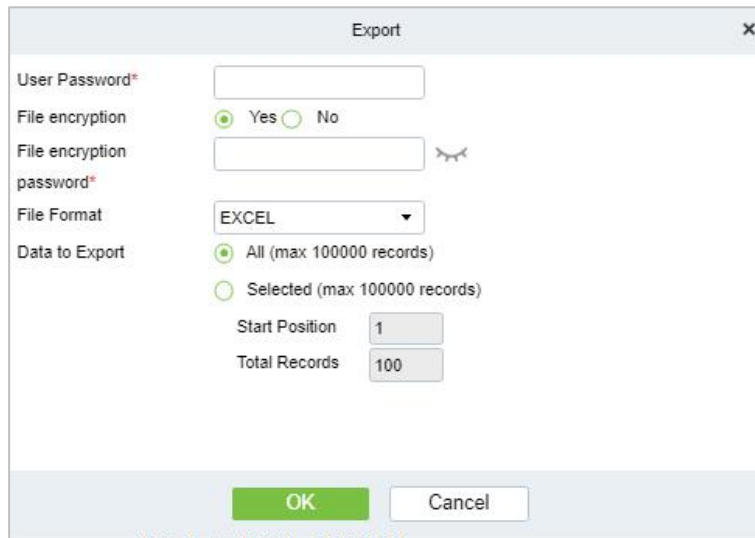


Figure 5- 46 Export

### 5.5.2 Patrol Report

Click Statistics > Patrol Report, then select Plan Name.

In this module, by viewing detailed details, you can see the corresponding channel camera serial number and abnormal captured images.

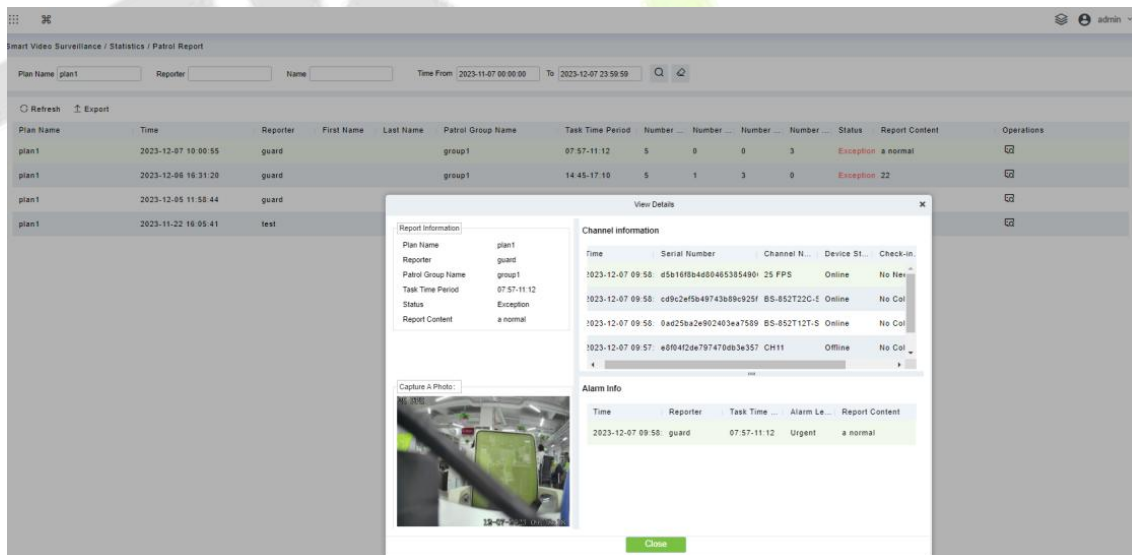


Figure 5- 47 Patrol Report

### 5.5.2.1 Export

Export selected personnel information in the area; you can export Excel, PDF, CSV format.

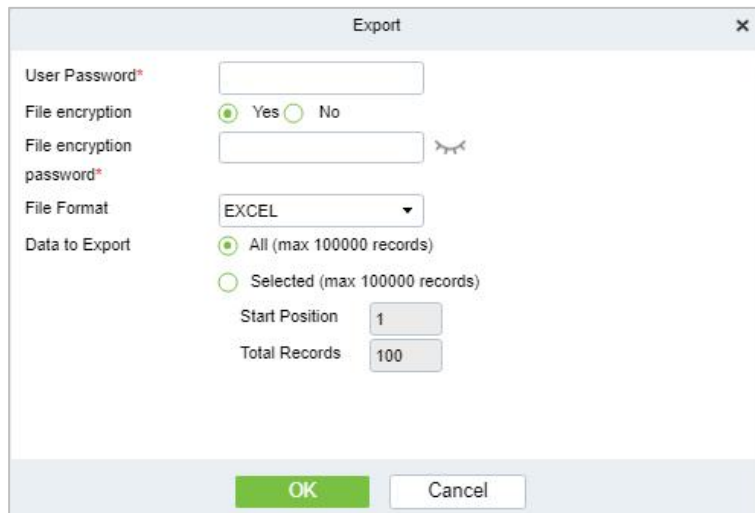


Figure 5- 48 Export

### 5.5.3 Patrol Alarm

Click **Statistics > Patrol Alarm**, then select **Statistical Period** as Daily, Weekly, Monthly, or Quarterly.

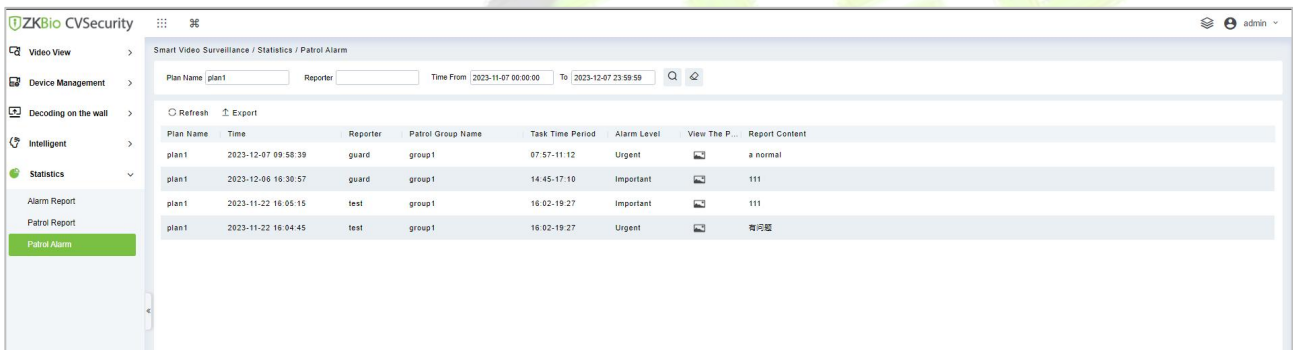


Figure 5- 49 Patrol Alarm

#### 5.5.3.1 Export

Export selected personnel information in the area; you can export Excel, PDF, CSV format.

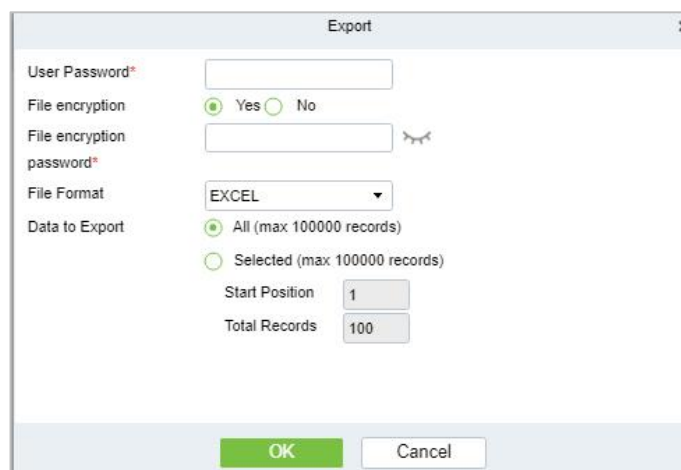


Figure 5- 50 Export

## 5.6 Video Patrol

Click **Video Patrol > Patrol Group**.

On the preset path, you can check the punch-in by a real-time preview of the camera remotely to achieve the same patrol task as the traditional punch-in effect.

### 5.6.1 Patrol Group

Create a patrol group to add patrol personnel.

**Note:**

1. Please go to System > Authority Management > Role to add the role group, Assign video patrol permissions.
2. Create the System user and add in the patrol role.

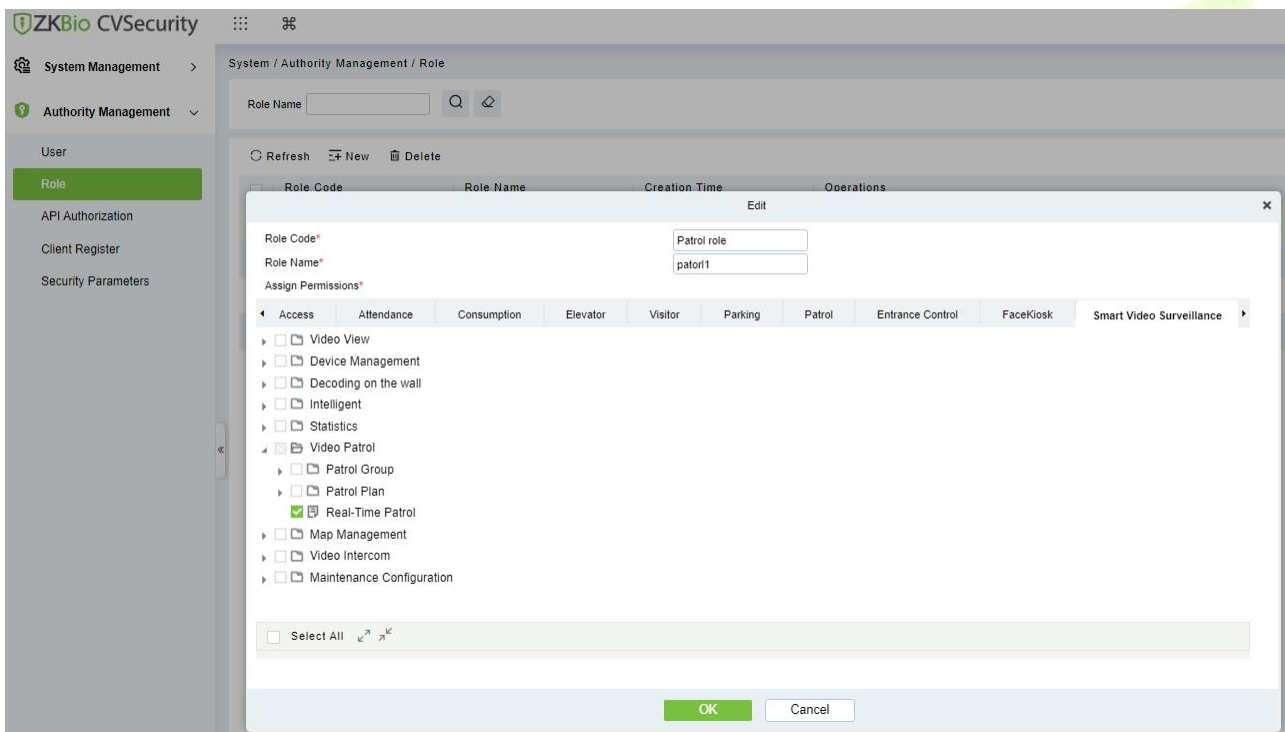


Figure 5- 51 Role Assign Permission

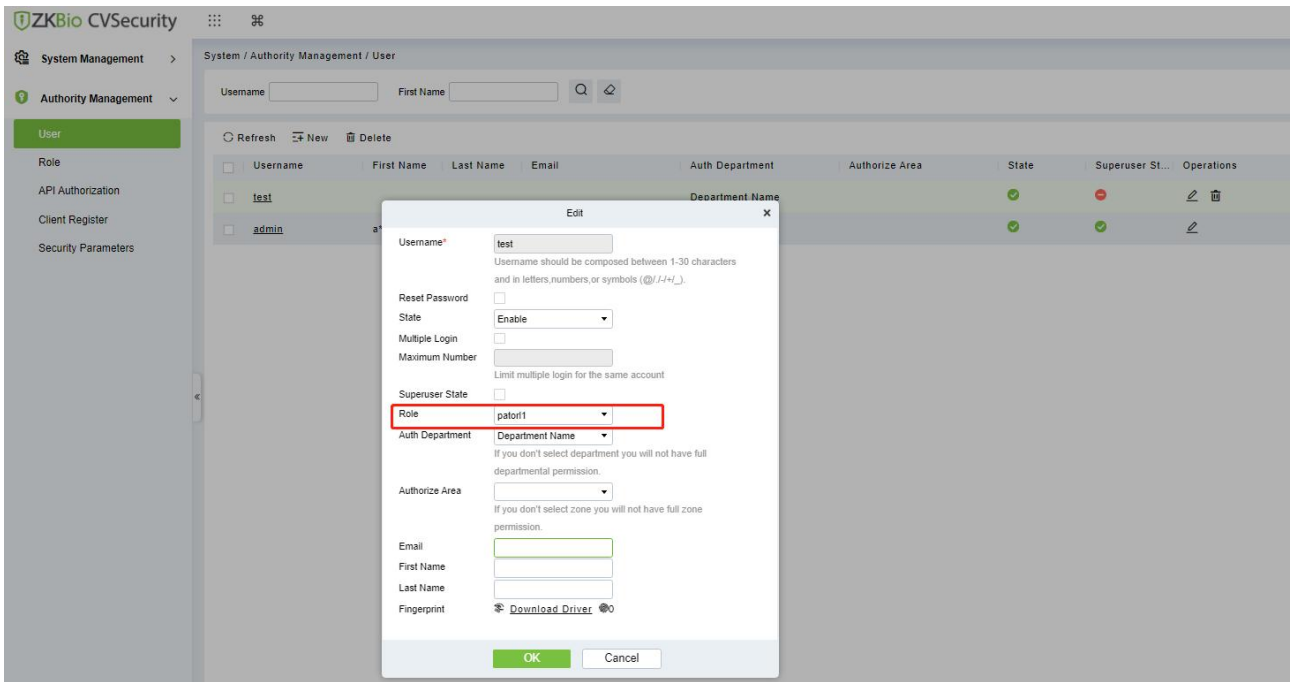


Figure 5- 52 User Select Role

### 5.6.1.1 New

Click **Video Patrol> patrol group> New** to enter the new editing interface:

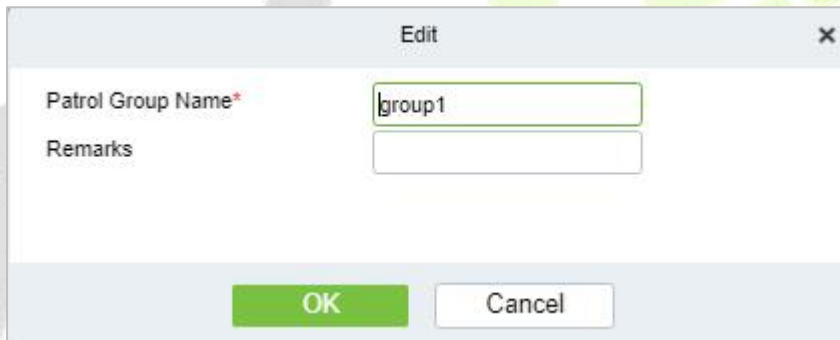



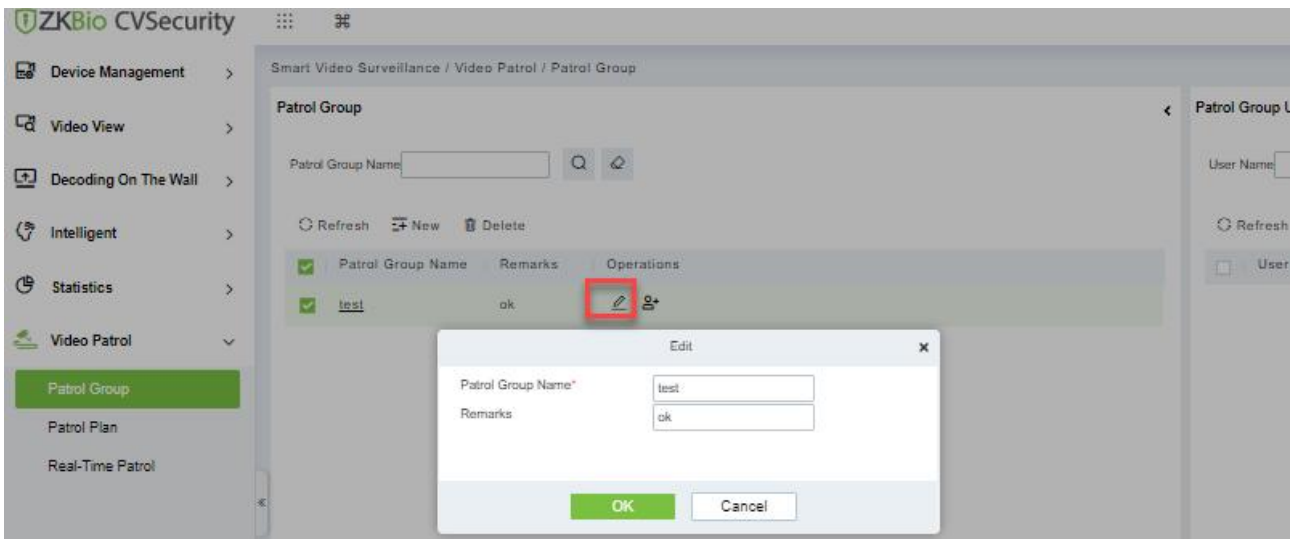
Figure 5- 53 New Patrol Group

**Patrol Group Name:** Enter the name of the patrol group for easy searching and management non-repeatable.

**Remarks:** Text notes of the patrol group.

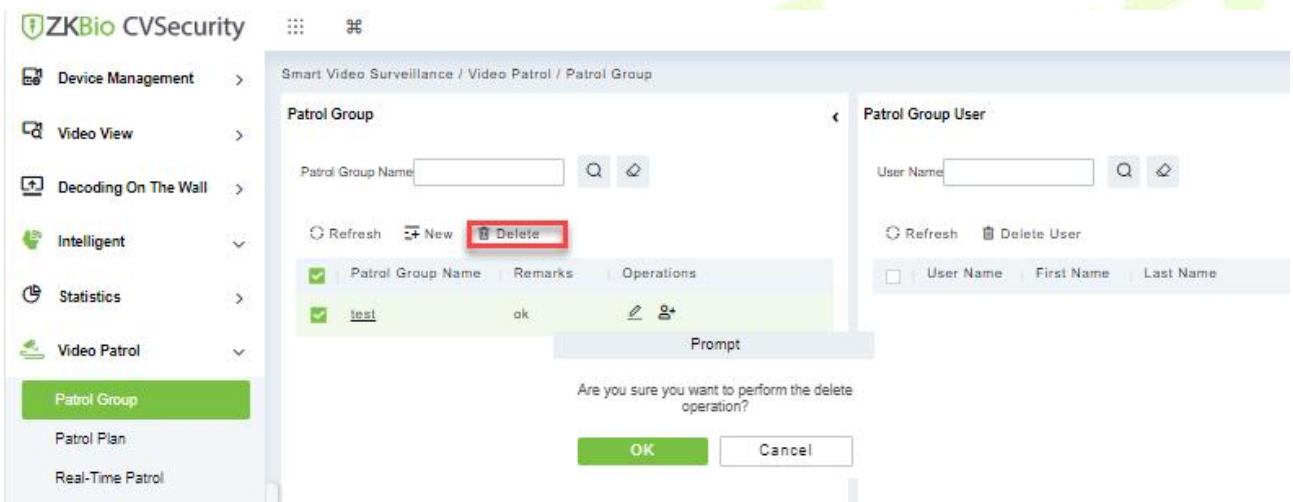
### 5.6.1.2 Edit

Select the edit patrol group name and click edit  icon button to edit the required details and click "OK" to submit.



### 5.6.1.3 Delete User

Select the Username and click this button to delete it.



### 5.6.1.4 Add Patrol Group User

In the patrol group list, click Add User to enter and select to add group members.

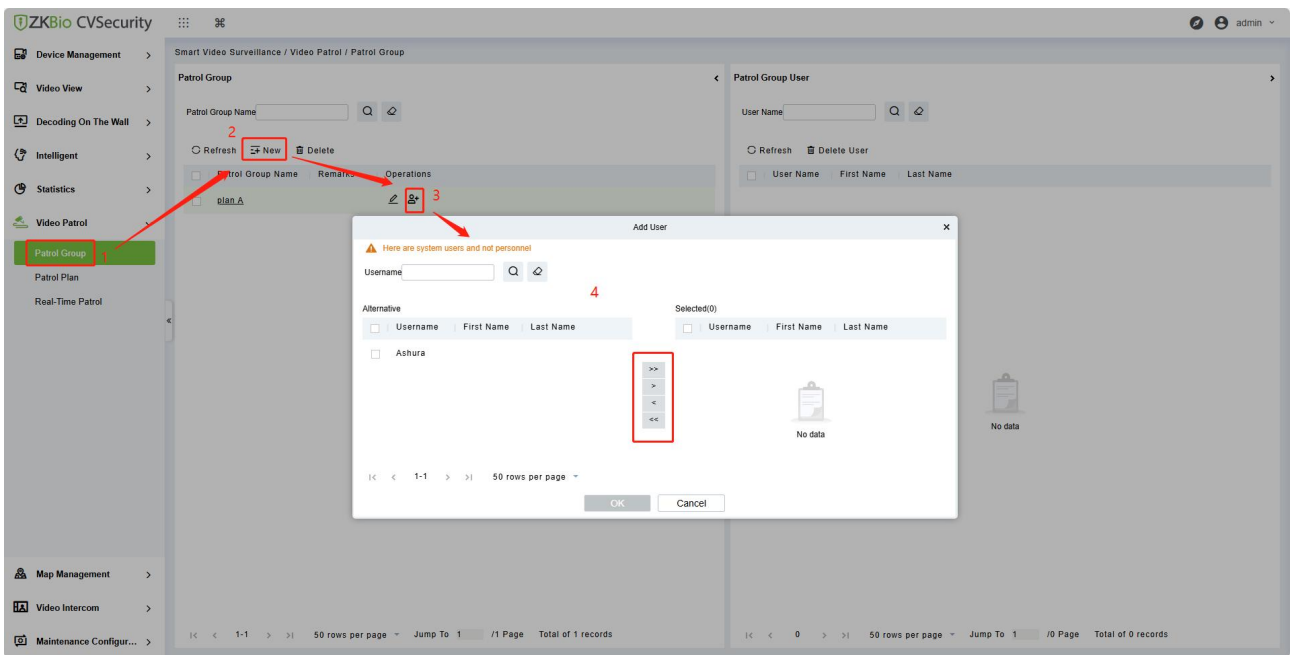


Figure 5- 54 Add Patrol Group User

Select the required patrol users and click the OK button to complete the addition. The added users will be displayed in the group member list on the right.

**Note:** Patrol users are users of the system. For adding users to the system, please refer to Adding Users.

### 5.6.2 Patrol Plan

Set a patrol plan for the patrol team.

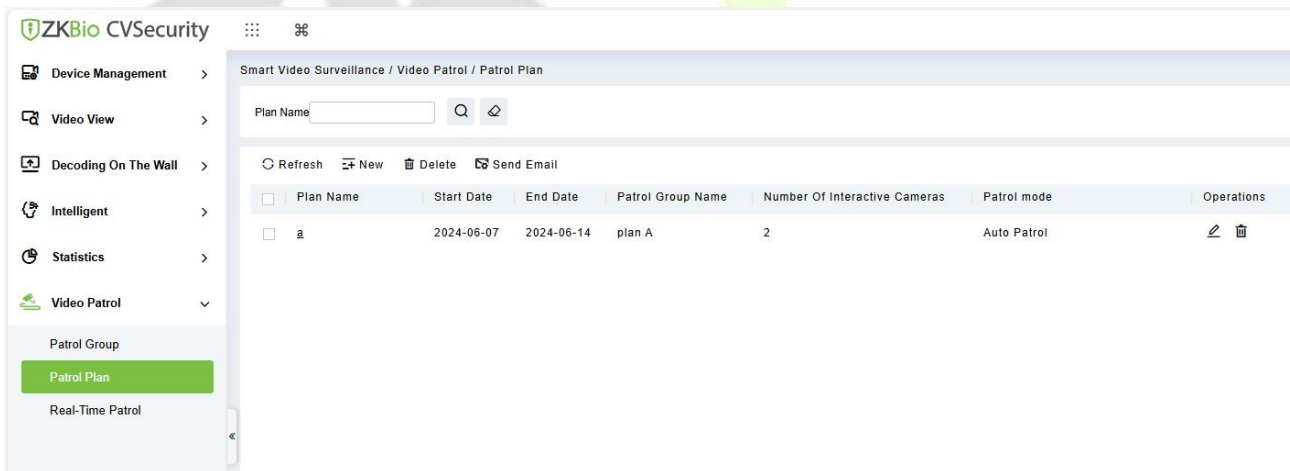


Figure 5- 55 Patrol Plan

#### 5.6.2.1 New

Click **Video Patrol> Patrol Plan> New** to enter the new editing interface:

Edit ✕

**Plan Name\***

**Start Date\***

**Patrol Group\***

**End Date\***

Delete    Delete all

|    |                          |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|--------------------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Mo | 0                        | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|    | [Time bar for Monday]    |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Tu | 0                        | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|    | [Time bar for Tuesday]   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| We | 0                        | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|    | [Time bar for Wednesday] |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Th | 0                        | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|    | [Time bar for Thursday]  |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Fr | 0                        | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|    | [Time bar for Friday]    |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Sa | 0                        | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|    | [Time bar for Saturday]  |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Su | 0                        | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|    | [Time bar for Sunday]    |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |

Next Step
Cancel

**Figure 5- 56 New**

● The fields are described as follows:

| Parameters   | Instructions   |
|--------------|--|
| Plan Name    | Give the plan a name, make it easy to view and find, not repeatable                                    |
| Patrol Group | Optional created patrol group.   |
| Start Date   | Set the start date of the patrol. The start date must not be less than the end date.                   |
| End Date     | Set the end date of the patrol. The start date must not be less than the end date.                     |
| Patrol Time  | Drag the time bar to select the time period that needs to be patrolled. Multiple copies are supported. |

**Table 5- 7 New**

**Edit** [Close]

Plan Name\*  Patrol Group\*

Start Date\*  End Date\*

|    | 0 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 | 22 | 24 |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Mo |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Tu |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| We |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Th |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Fr |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Sa |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Su |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |

Figure 5- 57 New

After editing this page, click Next to enter the camera selection interface:

**Patrol Plan** [Close]

Number Of Interactive Cameras:\*  Map:

Patrol mode:  Patrol Time:

Channel Name

Alternative

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Channel Name      | Patrol ... | IP Address      |
|--------------------------|-------------------|------------|-----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CH7               | 30         | 192.168.130.123 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ES-852F21C-S3-MI- | 30         | 192.168.130.120 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | BS-854F22C-S3-MI- | 30         | 192.168.130.246 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CH1               | 30         | 192.168.130.48  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Face              | 30         | 192.168.130.241 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2                 | 30         | 192.168.130.36  |

Selected(3) [Up] [Down]

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Channel Name     | Patrol ... | IP Address      |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------|-----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | CH6              | 10         | 192.168.130.123 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | LPR Camera       | 10         | 192.168.130.118 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | ES-852T21C-S6-MI | 10         | 192.168.130.241 |

Figure 5- 58 New

**Number of interactive Cameras:** Set the number of cameras that need to be chick-in, (like "3" means

that Chick-in must be completed on 3 cameras during this patrol plan, this number must be less than or equal to the number of cameras you have chosen)

**Channel Name:** Search the channel

**Device List:** Select the equipment on the map that needs to be patrolled. The device list shows only the devices that have been added to the current map, if you want to add a device, go to Device Add

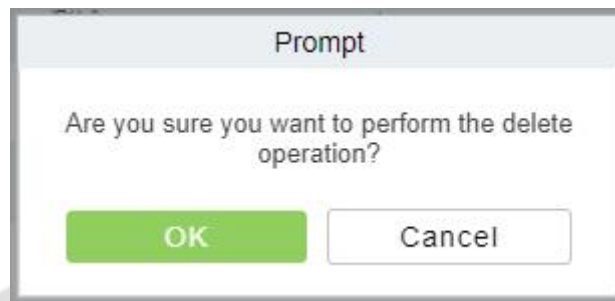
**Map:** Select the map that needs to be patrolled.

Note:

- (1) You can set the length of time you need to watch each camera by clicking on the cruise time, which is 30 seconds by default
- (2) The camera used in the patrol plan needs to be added in the center of the map. The path is Service Center > Map Center > Map Config.

### 5.6.2.2 Delete

Select the Patrol Plan to be deleted and click the **Delete** button

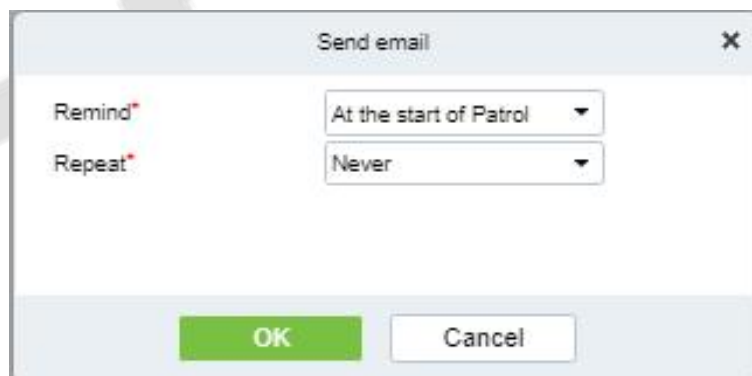


**Figure 5- 59 Prompt**

**Note:** Ongoing or pause plans cannot be deleted, please complete the plan first.

### 5.6.2.3 Send Email

Select Send email button, set remind information and repetitions.



**Figure 5- 60 Send email**

**Note:** Email outgoing configuration requires System Management ->Email configuration ->Outgoing Mail Server Settings.

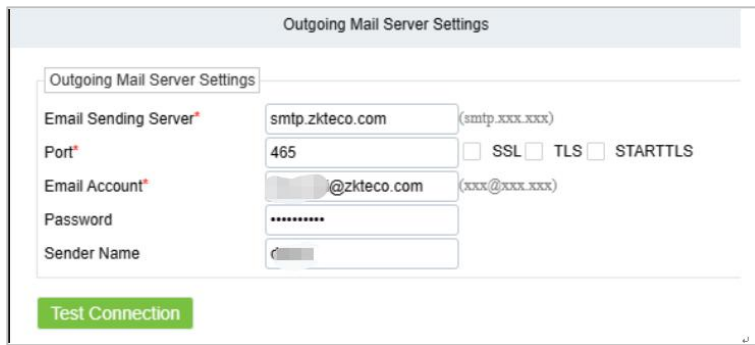


Figure 5- 61 Email Setting

### 5.6.3 Real-Time Patrol

Click **Video Patrol** > **Real-time Patrol**, Online patrols are only available if the patrolman is logged into the system.

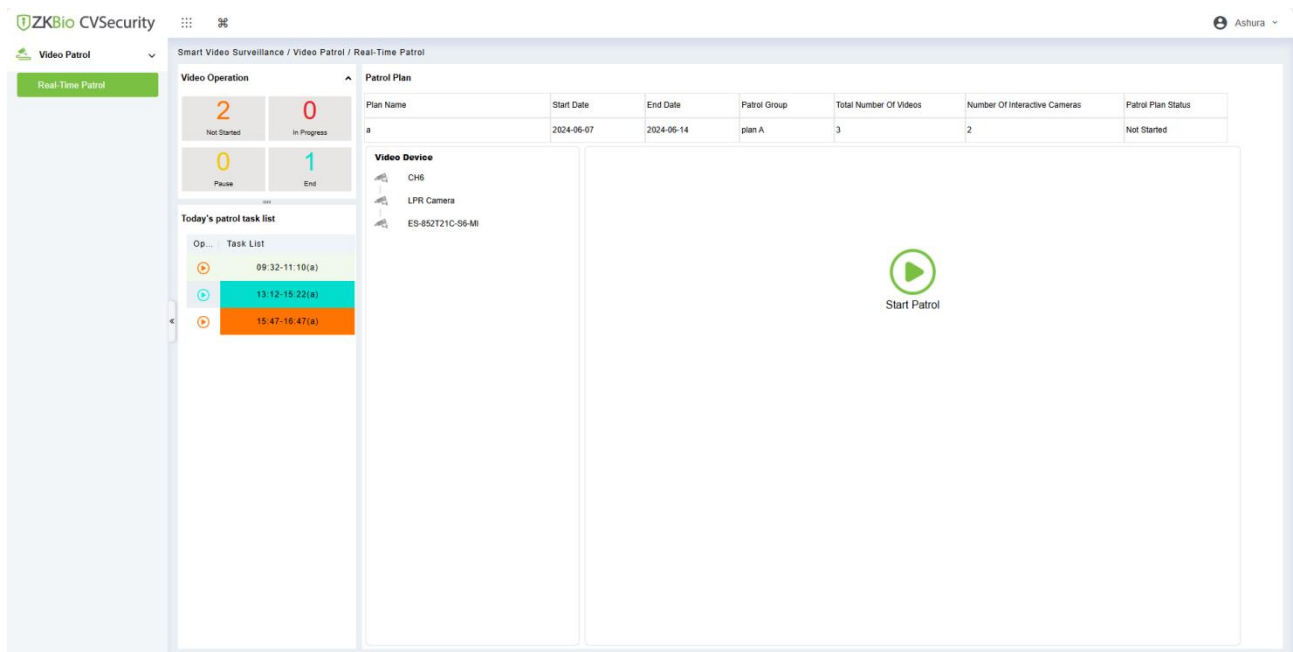


Figure 5- 62 Real-Time Monitoring

● Video Operation:

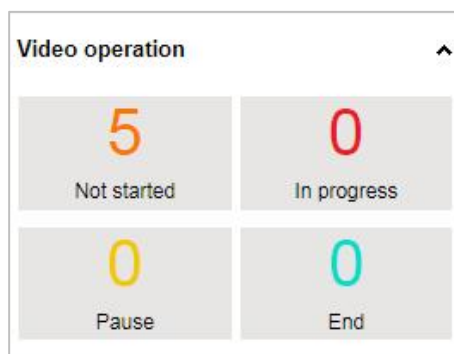


Figure 5- 63 Video Operation

View different states of the Patrol plan.

Today's Patrol Task List:

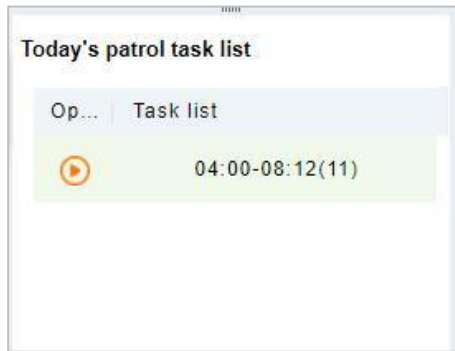



Figure 5- 64 Today's Patrol Task List

Displaying the patrol plan, click  to patrol.

● Patrol Plan:

After clicking **Start Patrol**, the video patrol will start. The map will display all cameras on the patrol route, as shown in the figure below:

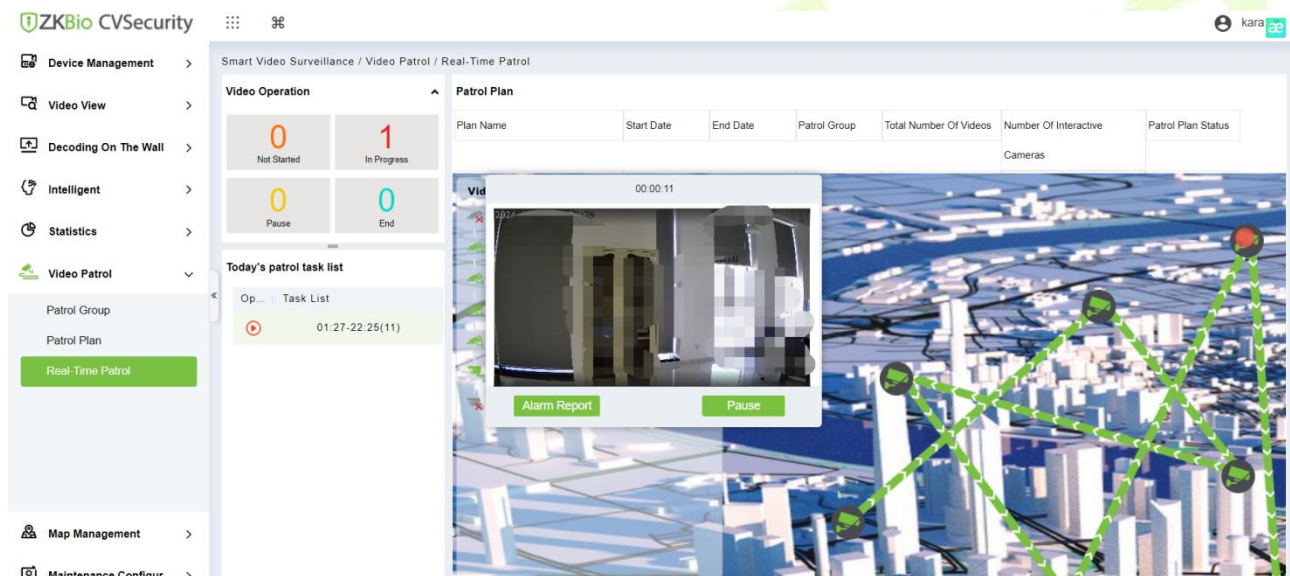



Figure 5- 65 Patrol Plan

 Note:

1. You need to add a camera in the center of the map in advance.
2. The camera points in the list are connected on the map to form a patrol route.
3. A red dot on a camera  indicates a camera on patrol.

● Patrol Window:

When the camera is patrolling, the floating window on the map will display real-time images.



Figure 5- 66 Patrol Window

## 5.7 Map Management

### 5.7.1 Video Map

#### 5.7.1.1 New/ Add Camera

Click **Map Management > Video Map**. Click New to add a E-map.

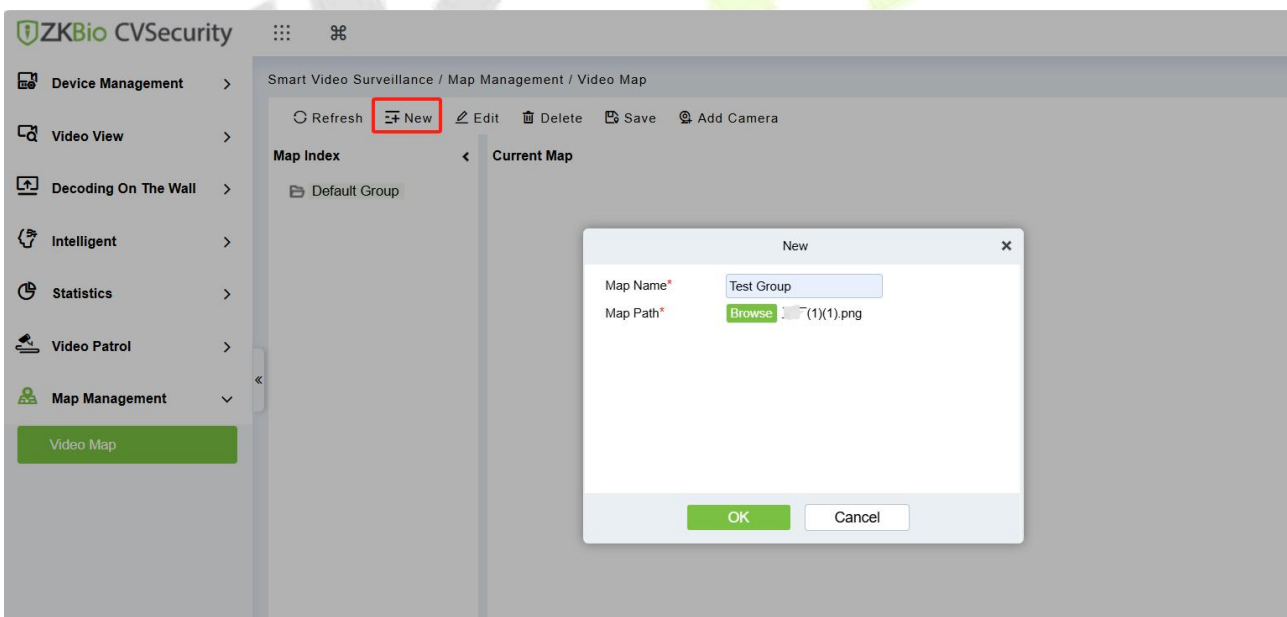


Figure 5- 67 Video Map

Then you can click **Add Camera**. Add the cameras to the map.

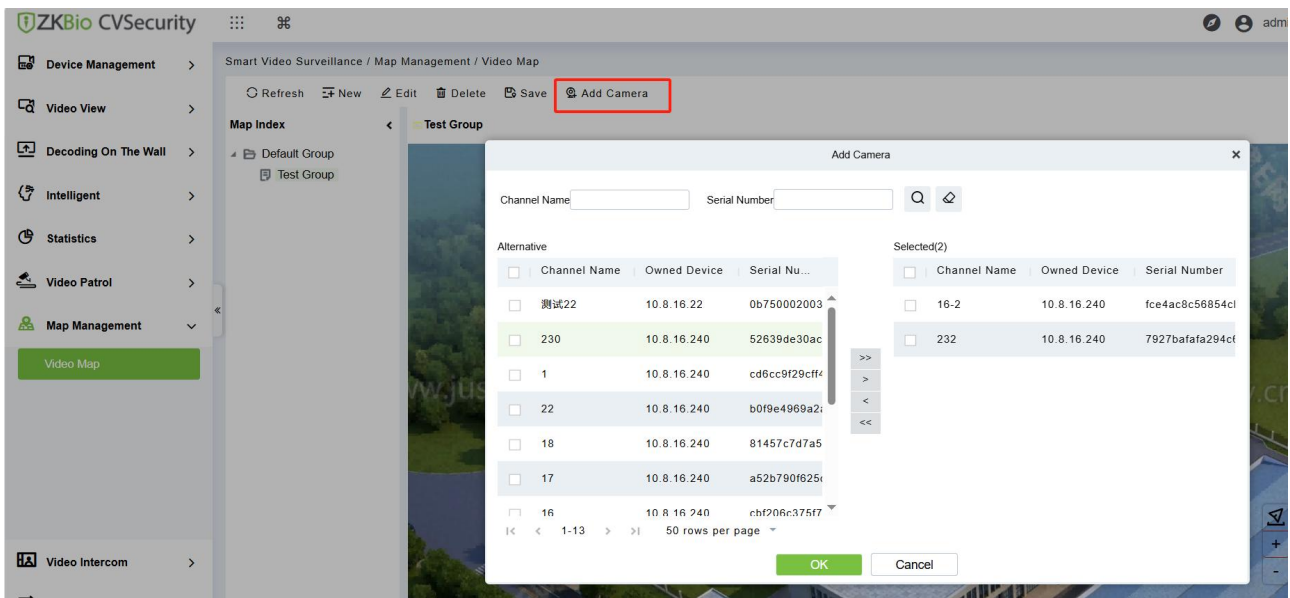


Figure 5- 68 Add Camera

Adjust the position and **Save position**. Click  button and select camera can dimension distance.

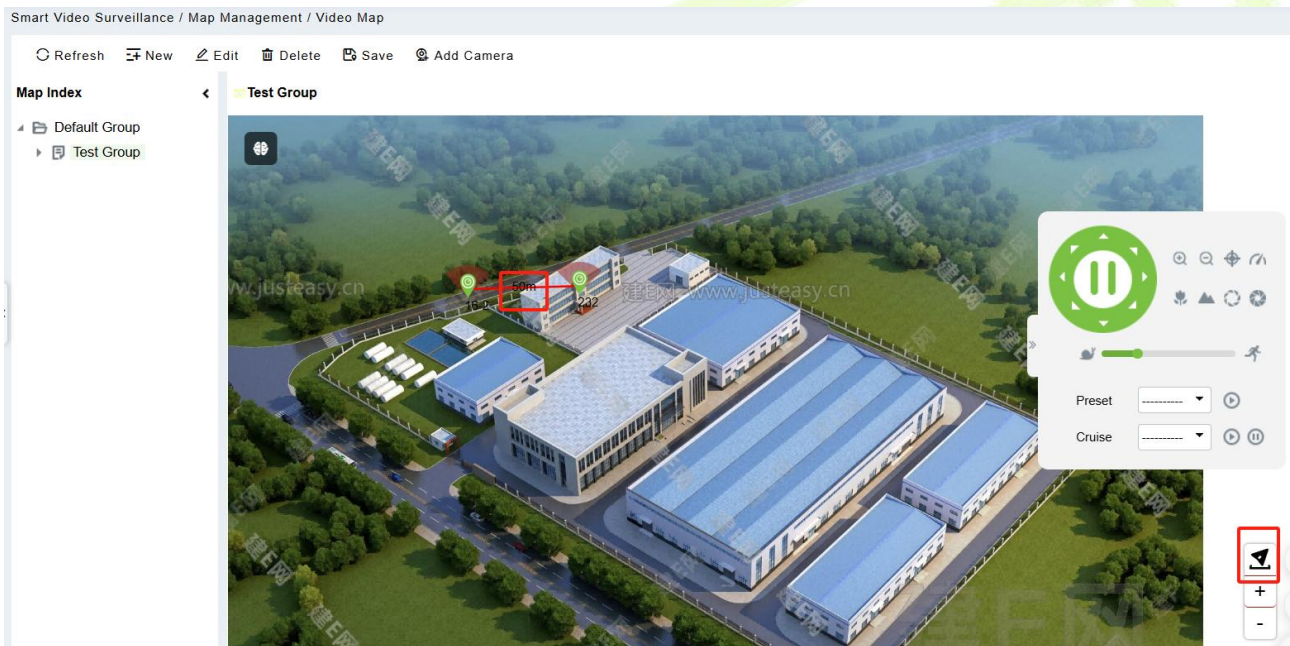


Figure 5- 69 Video Map

The map will be displayed as follows:

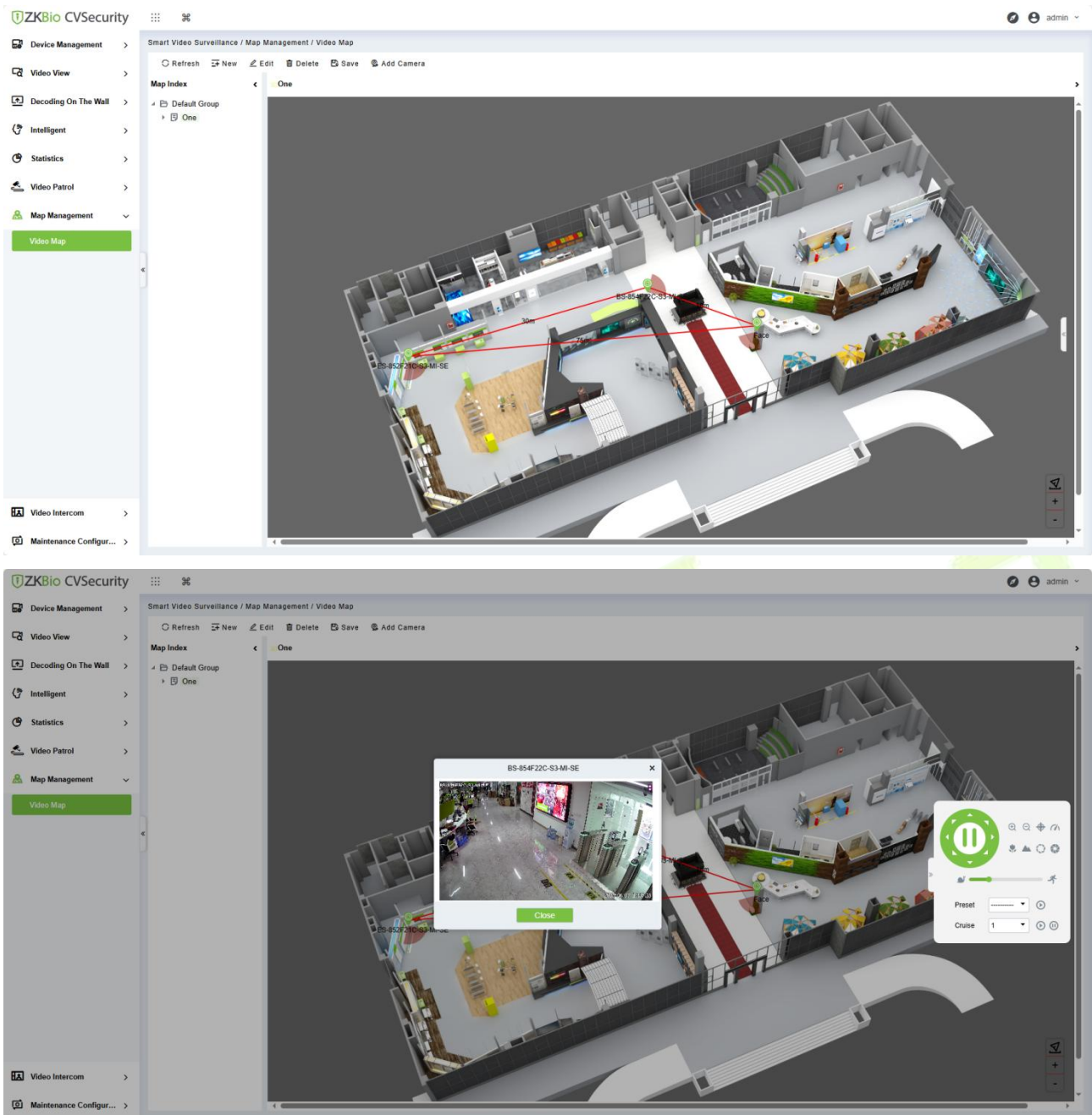



Figure 5- 70 Video Map

### 5.7.1.2 Edit

Click **Map Management** > **Video Map**, select the map details and then click on the **Edit** icon  to edit the required details.

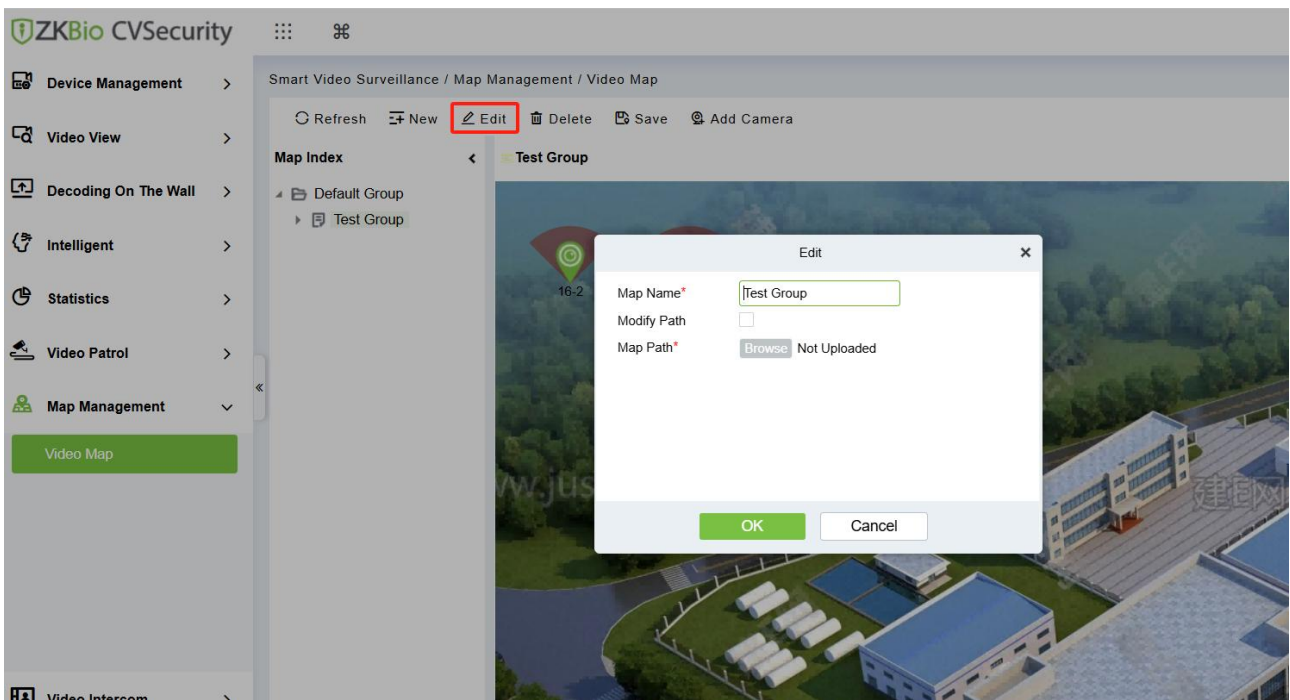


Figure 5- 71 Edit Map

### 5.7.1.3 Delete

Click **Map Management > Video Map** , select the map details and then click on **Delete** to delete the required details.

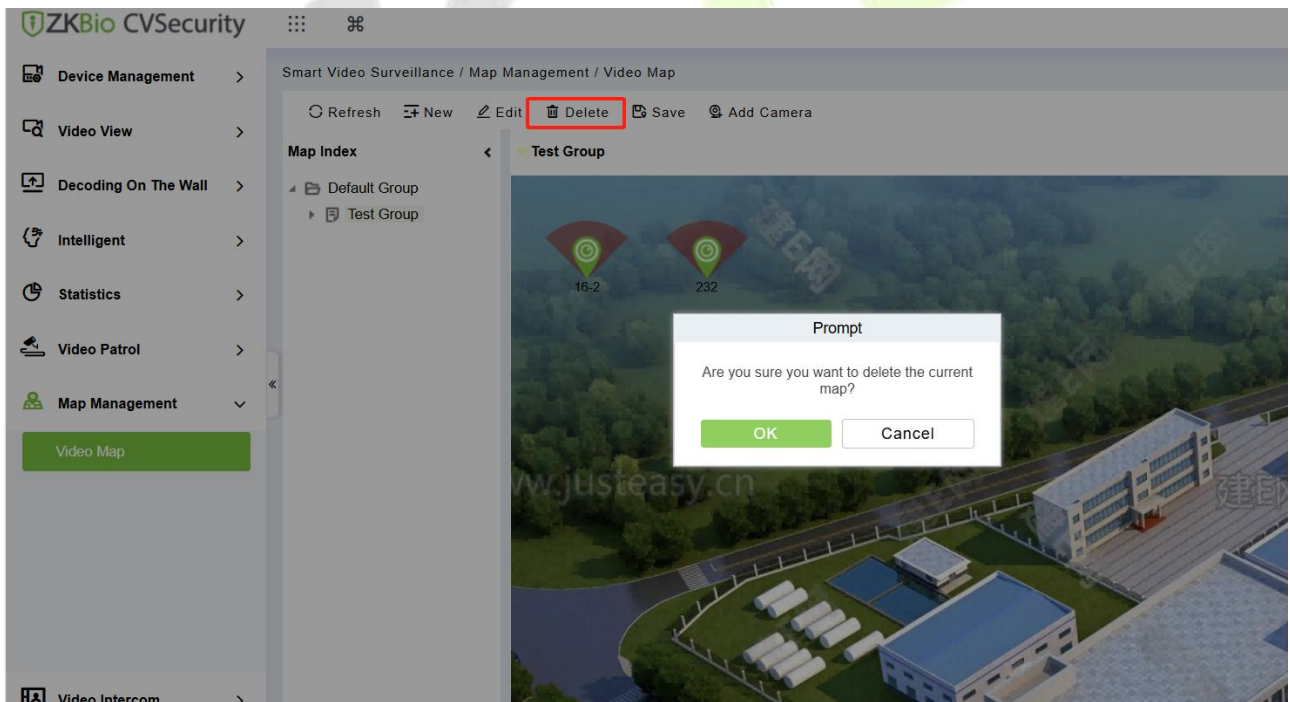


Figure 5- 72 Delete Map

## 5.8 Maintenance Configuration

### 5.8.1 Developer Log

Click Intelligent Video > Maintenance Configuration > Developer Log, then select One-Click Collection.

Users can download all system logs and system information to get Click on the **One-Click Collection** option.

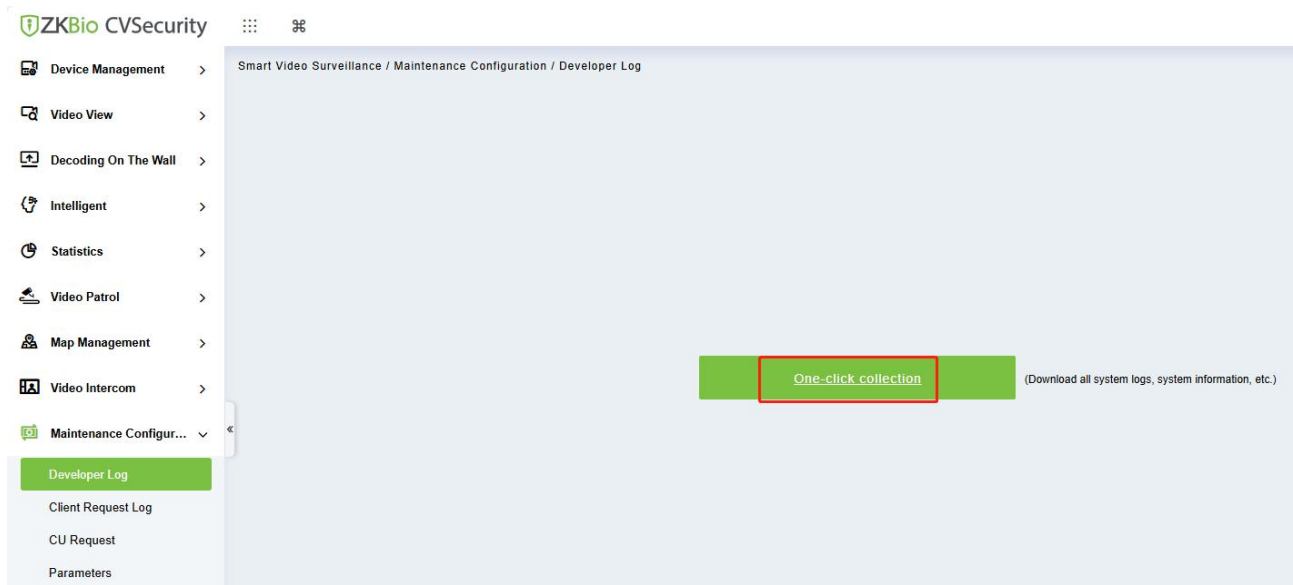


Figure 5- 73 One-Click Collection

### 5.8.2 Client Request Log

#### 5.8.2.1 Clear All Data

Click **Clear All Data** to pop up the prompt and click **OK** to clear all Data Operations.

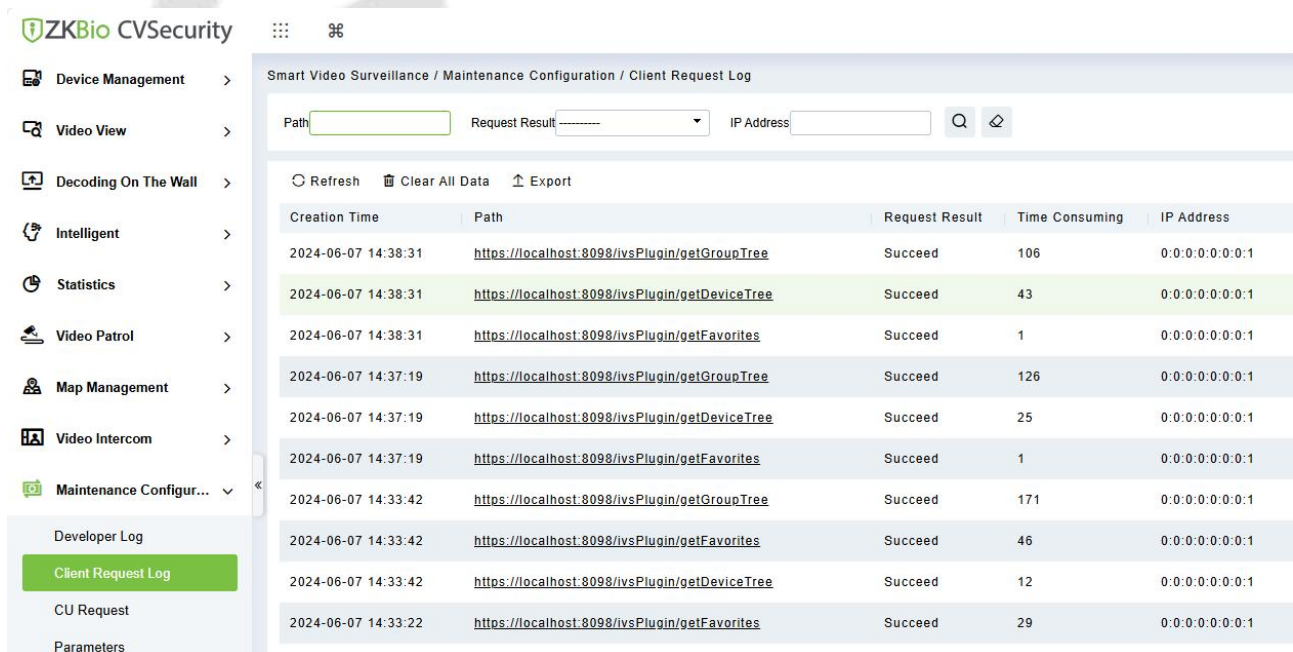


Figure 5- 74 Client Request Log

### 5.8.2.2 Export

Export selected personnel information in the area; you can export Excel, PDF, CSV format.

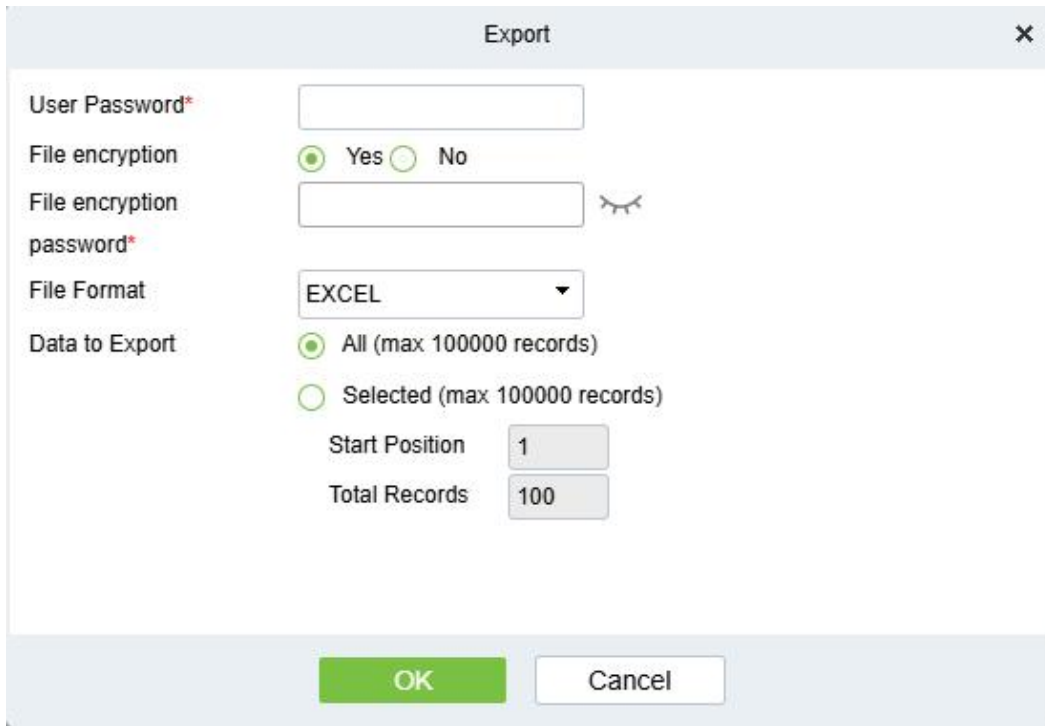


Figure 5- 75 Export

### 5.8.3 CU Request

#### 5.8.3.1 Clear All Data

Click **Clear All Data** to pop up the prompt and click **OK** to clear all Data Operations.

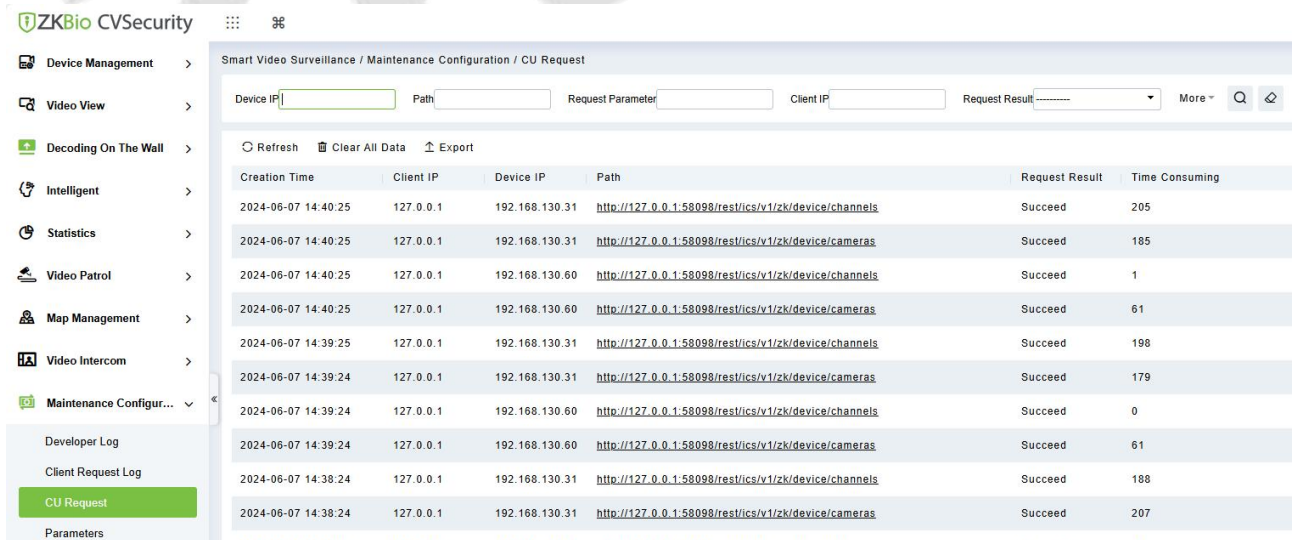


Figure 5- 76 Clear all Data

#### 5.8.3.2 Export

Export selected personnel information in the area; you can export Excel, PDF, CSV format.

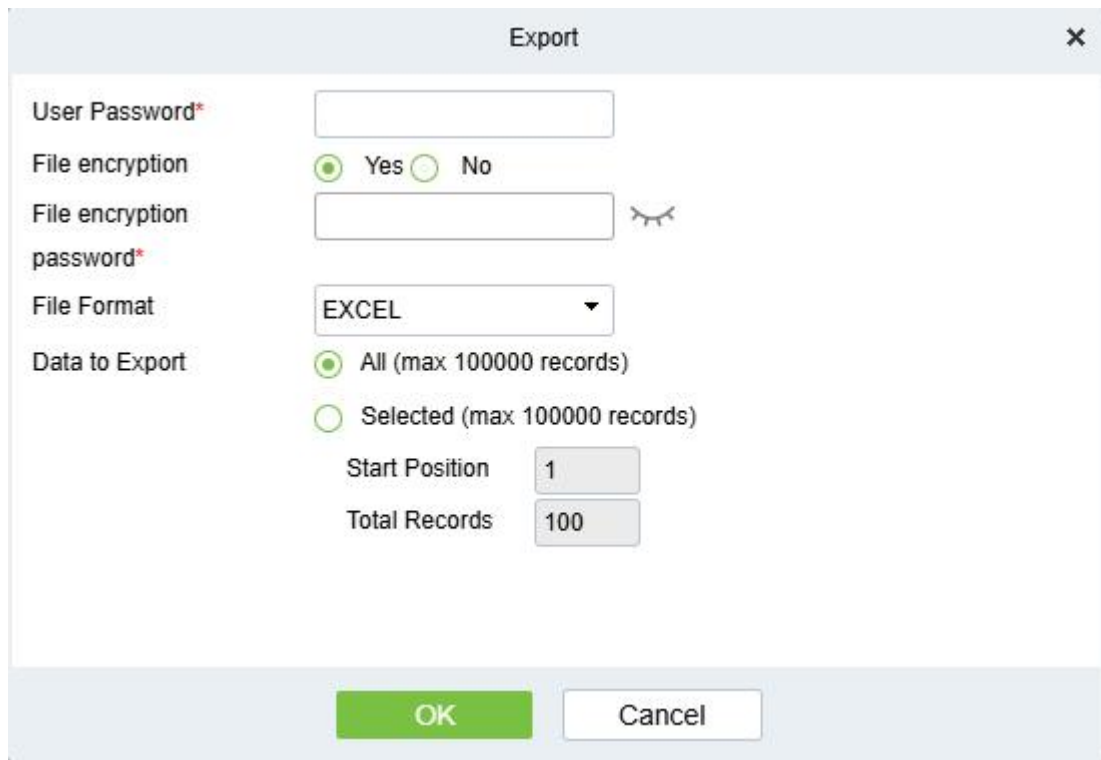


Figure 5- 77 Export

### 5.8.4 Parameters

Click Intelligent Video > Parameters, then Set up all the settings, then Click OK.

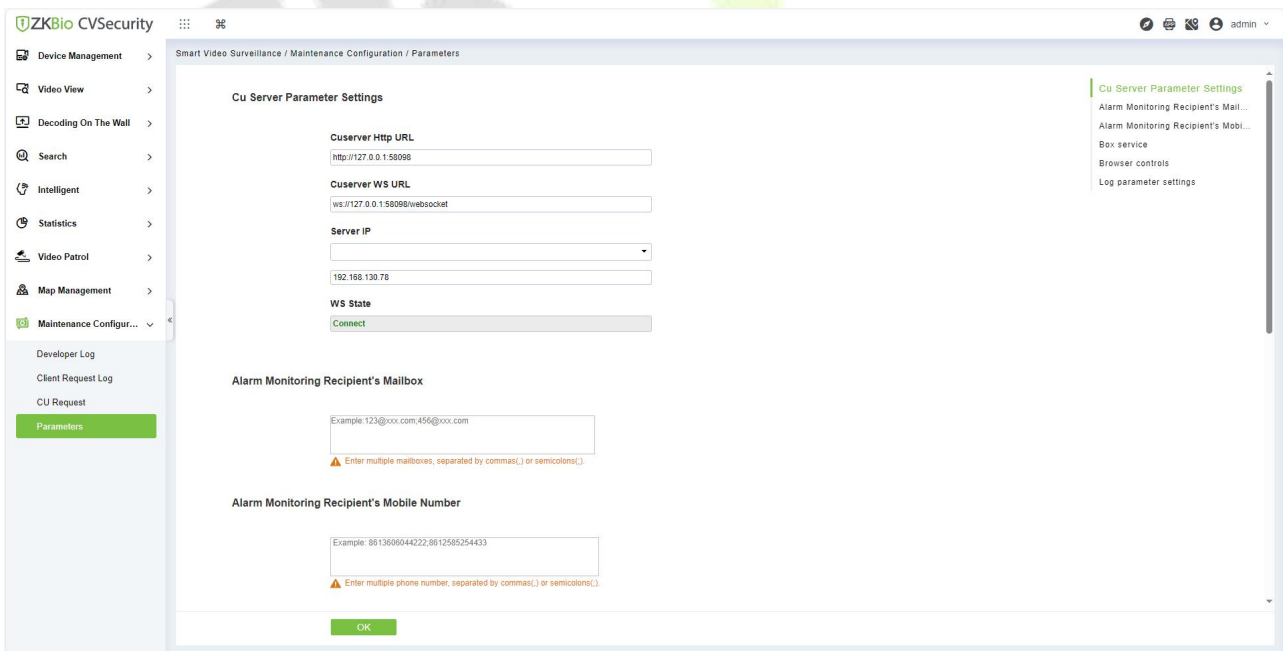


Figure 5- 78 Parameters

| Parameters                   | Instructions   |
|------------------------------|--|
| CU Server Parameter Settings | Set Up CU server HTTP Url and WS Url and enter Server IP address then can view WS state. |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Alarm Monitoring Recipient's Mailbox       | Set the email address to receive alarm.  |
| Alarm Monitoring Recipient's Mobile Number | Set the Mobile Number to receive alarm.  |
| Box service                                | Whether to receive the alarm of the box and select the terminal to receive the stranger's track. |
| Browser Controls                           | Set up the File Storage location and change and restore the path.                                |
| Log Parameter Settings                     | Set Up the debug log and Access log, and select Yes/No.  |

**Table 5- 8 Parameters**

## 5.9 ZKBio Video Client

### 5.9.1 Installing the Client

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click Install package to proceed to the installation process.



**Figure 5- 79 Install Package**

**Step 2:** Select the language to use during the installation, and click **OK**.



**Figure 5- 80 Select Setup Language**

**Step 3:** Select the additional task 'Install IVS\_Client', then click **Next**.

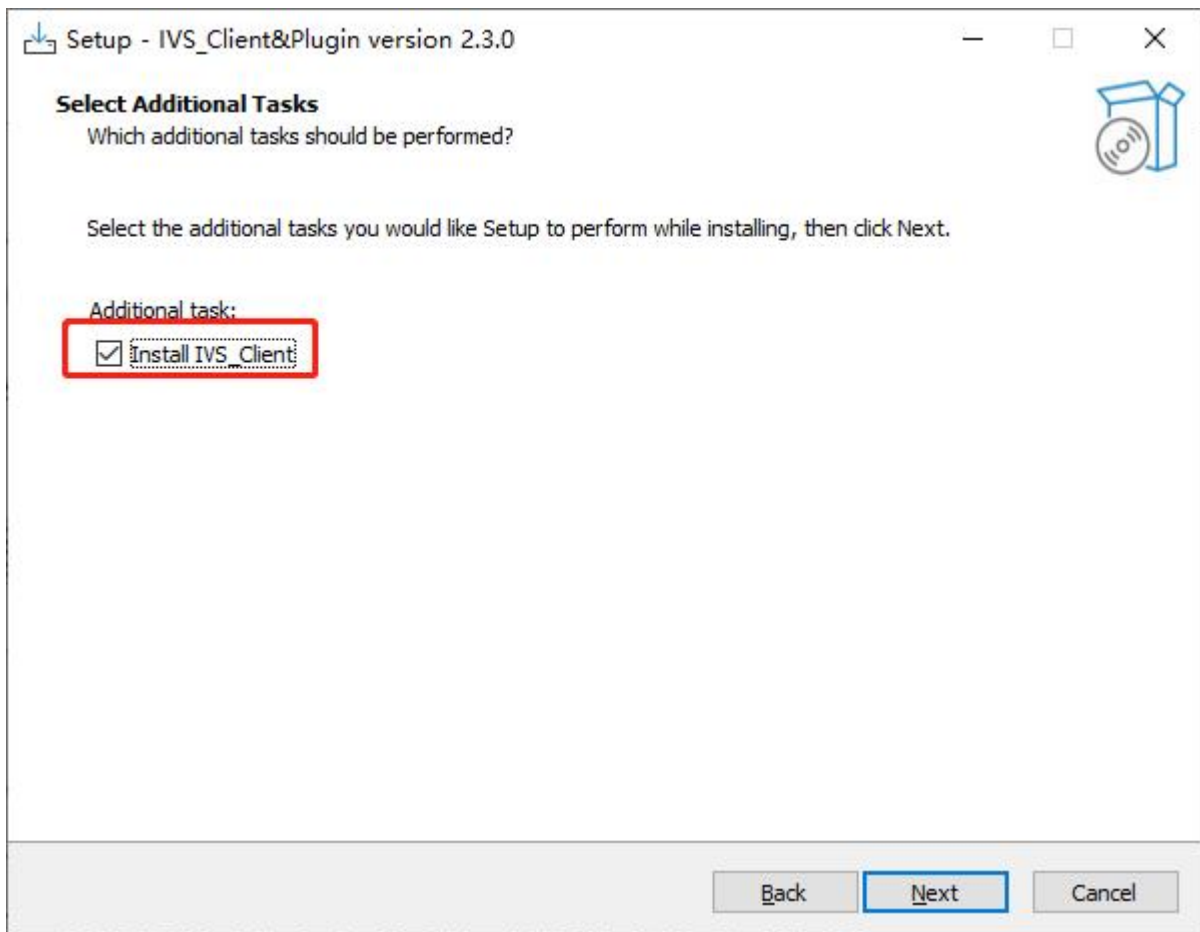


Figure 5- 81 Select Additional Tasks

**Step 4:** Click **Install** to continue with the installation.

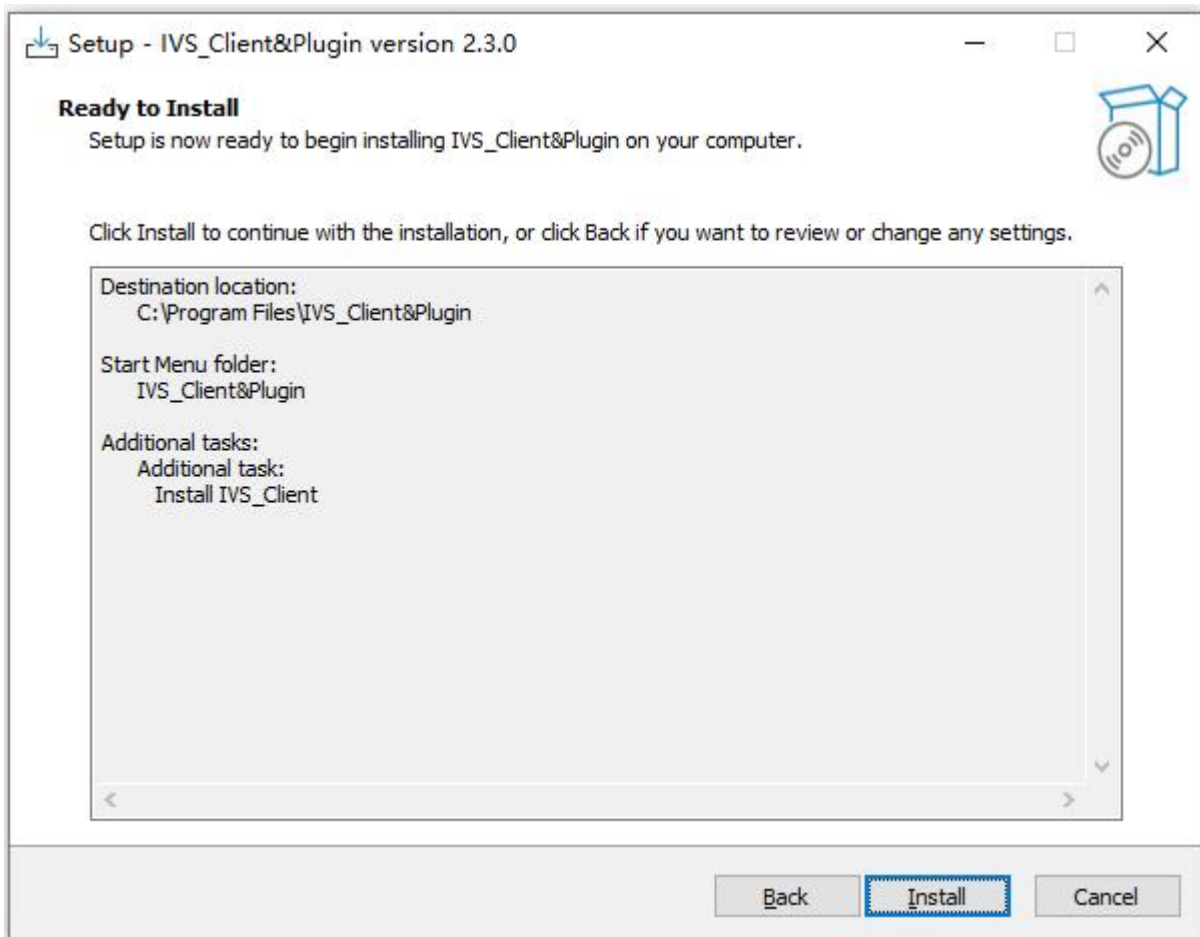


Figure 5- 82 Ready to Install

**Step 5:** Click **Finish** to complete the installation process.

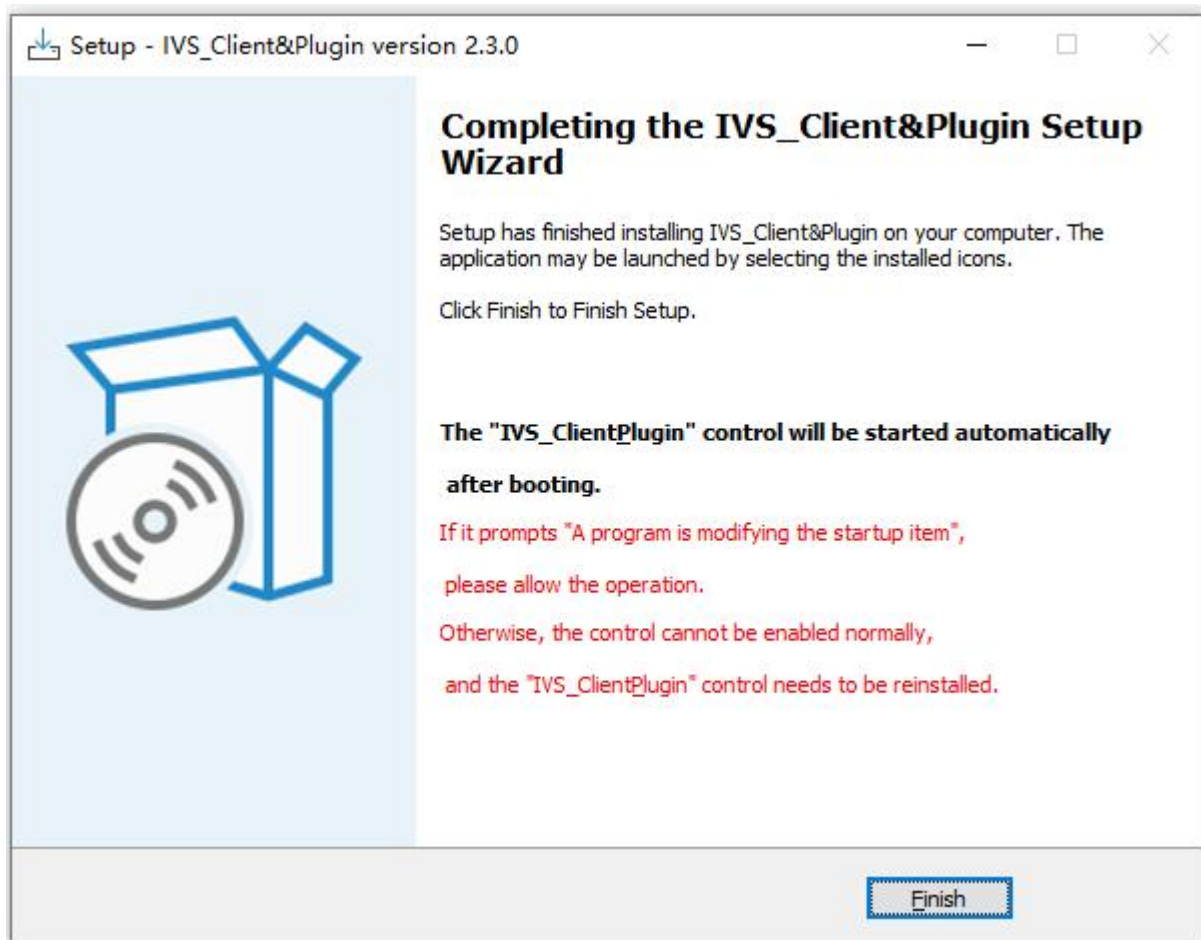


Figure 5- 83 Finish Installation

## 5.9.2 Configuration And Use

### 5.9.2.1 Login

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click the icon of the client to access the client login page.



Figure 5- 84 ZKBio Video Client

**Step 2:** Click **Server Setting** and Configure ZKBioCV Security's server IP and port,enable **TLS** and click **OK**.

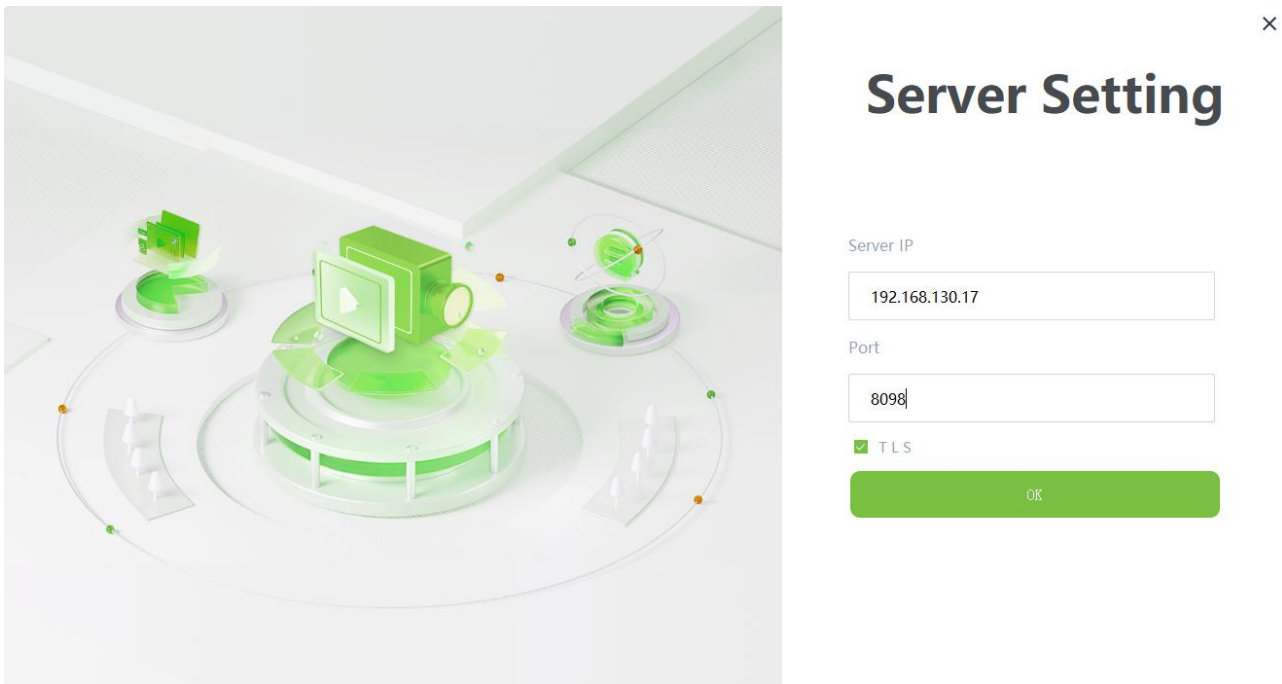


Figure 5- 85 Server Setting

**Step 3:** Select the language of the client,enter ZKBioCV Security’s username and password,then click **Login**.

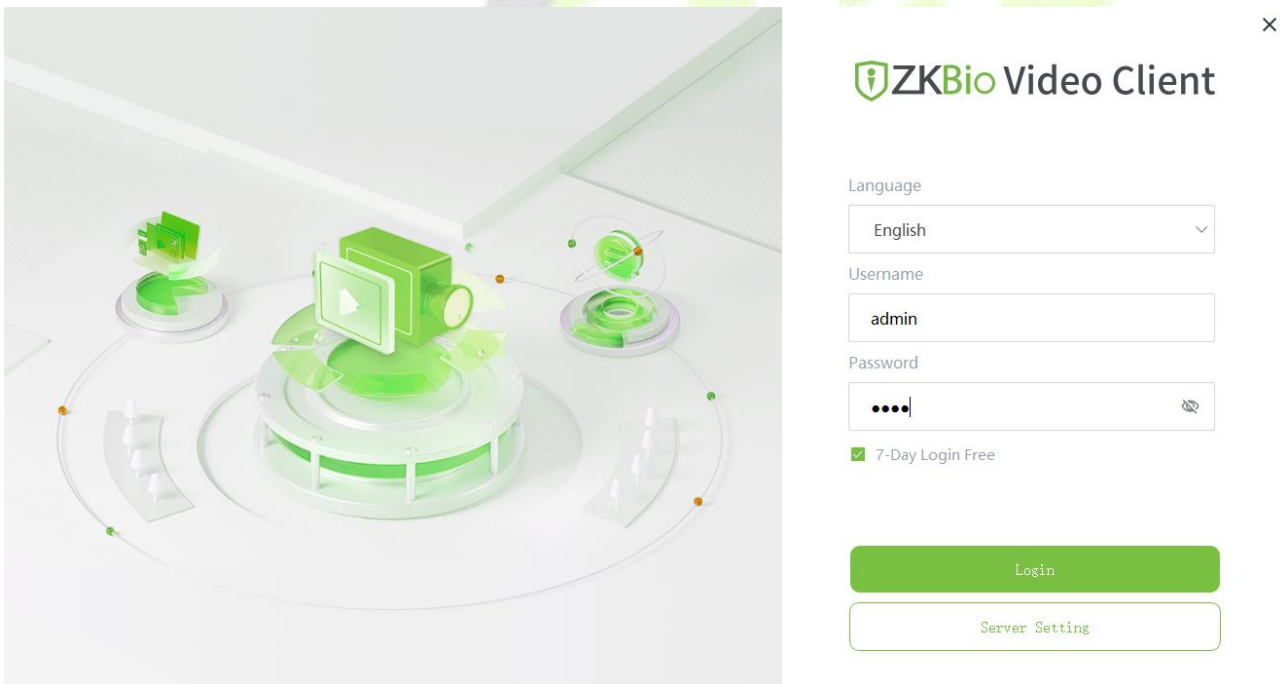


Figure 5- 86 Login

### 5.9.2.2 Homepage

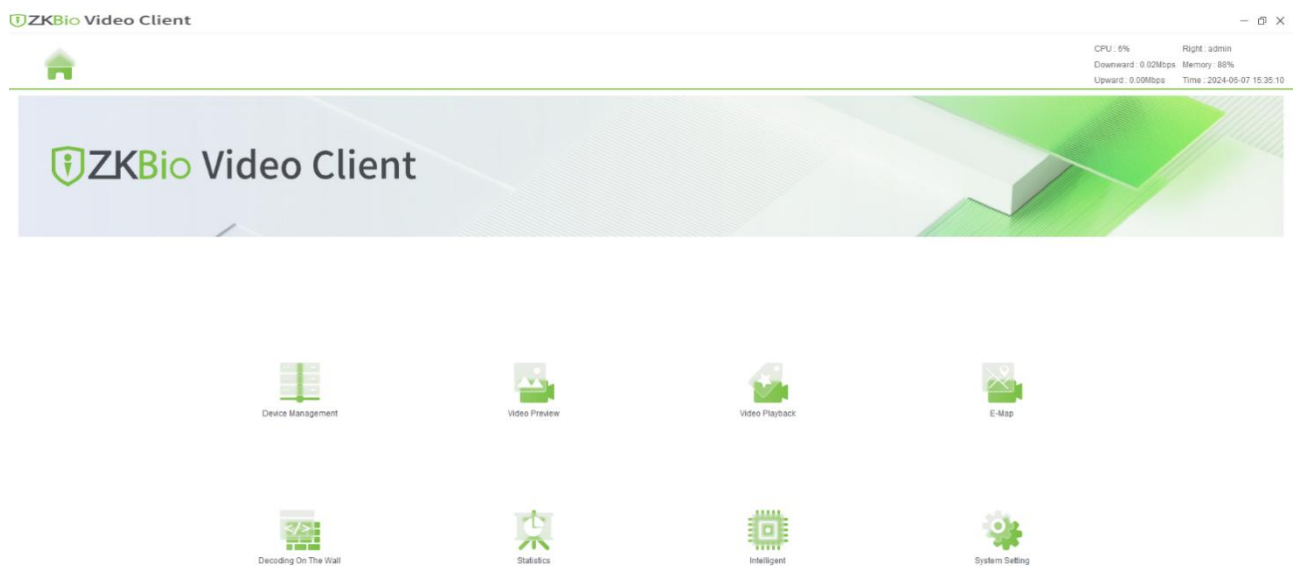


Figure 5- 87 Home Page

### 5.9.2.3 Device Management

Please refer to [4.1](#) setup.

### 5.9.2.4 Video Preview

Please refer to [4.2](#) setup.

### 5.9.2.5 Video Playback

Please refer to [4.2](#) setup.

### 5.9.2.6 E-Map

Please refer to [4.7](#) setup.

### 5.9.2.7 Decoding On The Wall

Please refer to [4.3](#) setup.

### 5.9.2.8 Statistics

Please refer to [4.5](#) setup.

### 5.9.2.9 Intelligent

Please refer to [4.4](#) setup.

### 5.9.2.10 System Setting

Please refer to [4.9](#) setup.

## 6 Time & Attendance Management

### 6.1 Operation Scenario

Attendance, also known as time management, carries out attendance function operations such as scheduling for employees, and helps enterprises effectively collect attendance data of employees, enter abnormal attendance data, and calculate attendance results.

### 6.2 Operation Flow

Introduce the configuration process of attendance management business.

The attendance management business configuration process is shown in figure below.

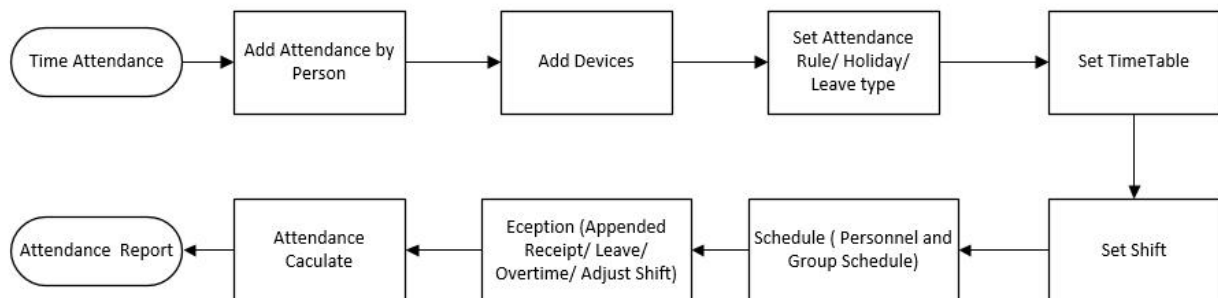


Figure 6- 1 Attendance Configuration Process

### 6.3 Attendance Management

#### 6.3.1 Personnel Verification Method

Administrators can modify attendance verification methods for staff members.

select multiple staff members, click "**Verification Method Setting**" and choose the appropriate verification method for the selected individuals.

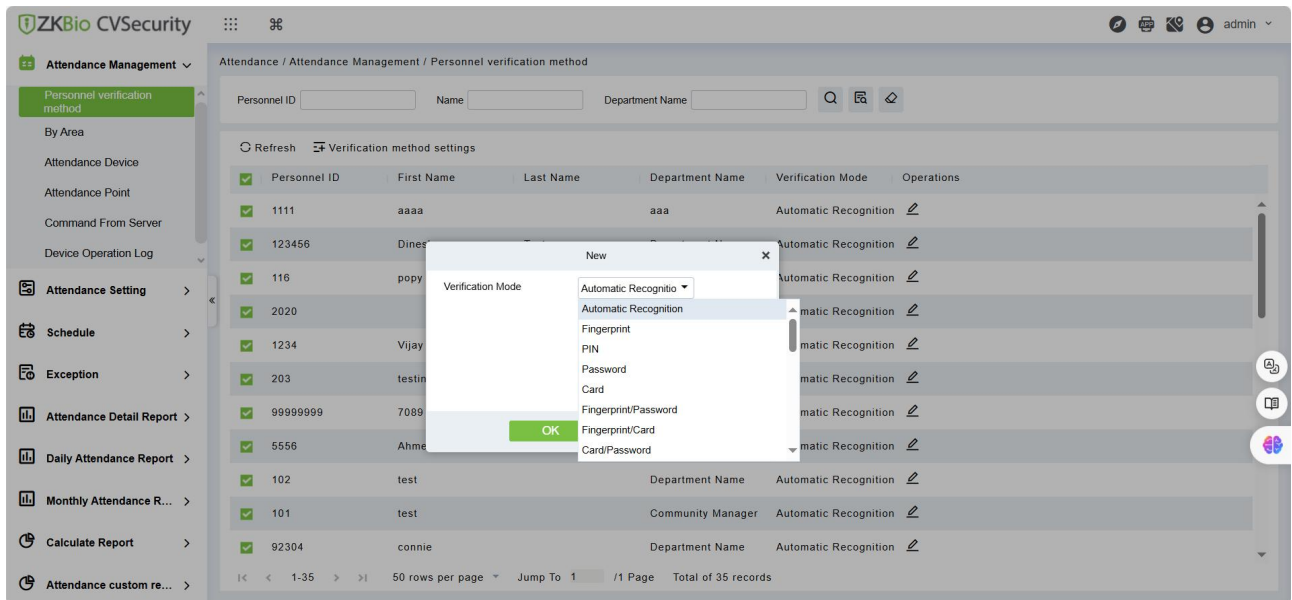


Figure 6- 2 Verification Method

### 6.3.2 By Area

This action is used to define which persons in the Attendance area can be attended. Only those who are added to the area can be attended.

This part introduces the configuration Steps of manually setting regional attendance personnel in.

#### 6.3.2.1 Add Area Personnel

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In **Attendance** module, select "Attendance Management > Setting Personnel by Region", select the region to be set in the list on the left, and then click "Add Regional Personnel" on the right.

**Step 2:** Add personnel information in the pop-up Add Personnel window, as shown in figure below.

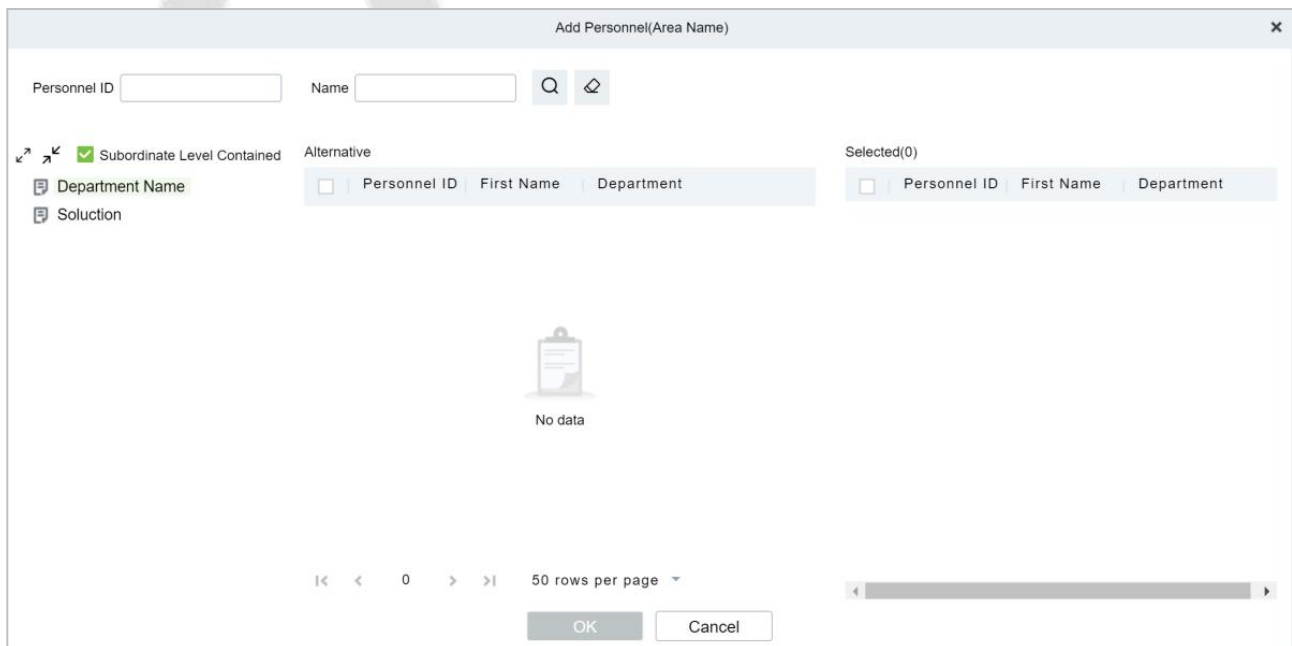


Figure 6- 3 Add by Area

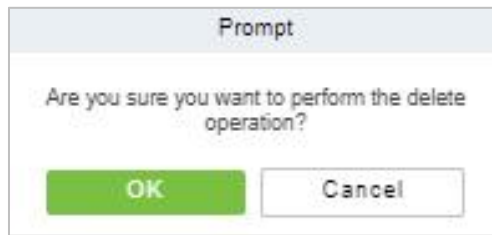
**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the configuration of adding attendance personnel in the area.

### 6.3.2.2 Delete Area Personnel

**Step 1:** On the **Area** interface, select the required ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected ID.

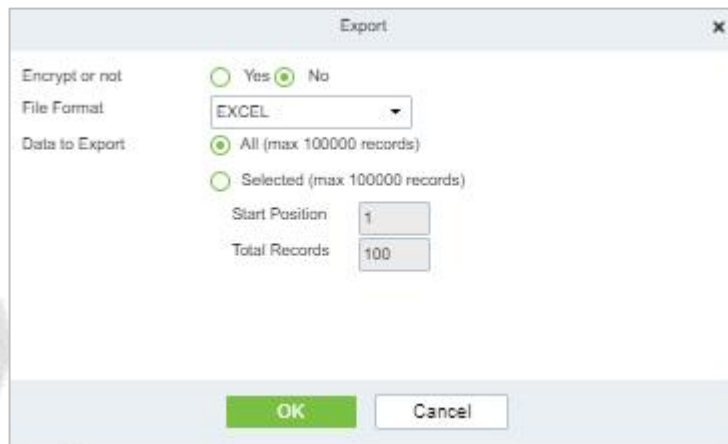
**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected ID from the list.



**Figure 6- 4 Deleting People**

### 6.3.2.3 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

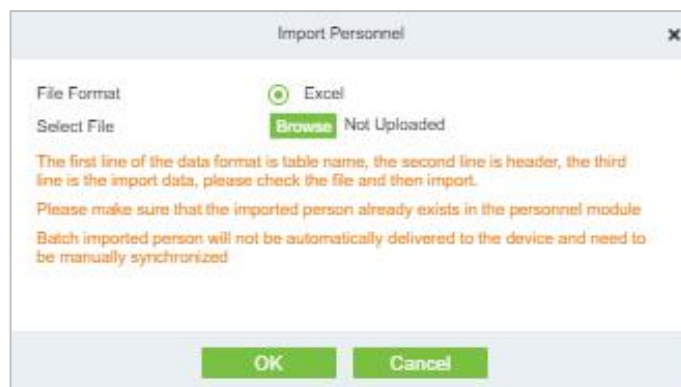


**Figure 6- 5 Export People**

### 6.3.2.4 Import

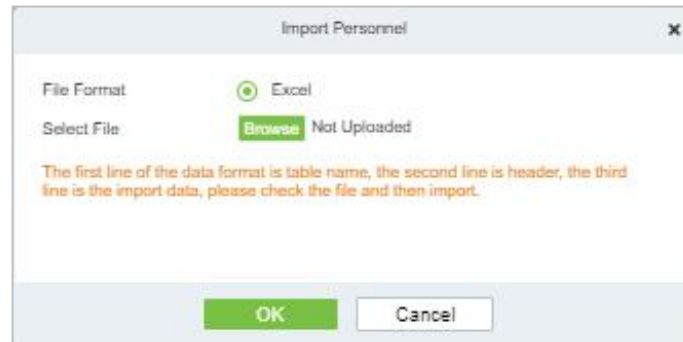
You can import all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

● Import Area Personnel:



**Figure 6- 6 Adding People Import Area**

- Import and Delete Area Personnel:

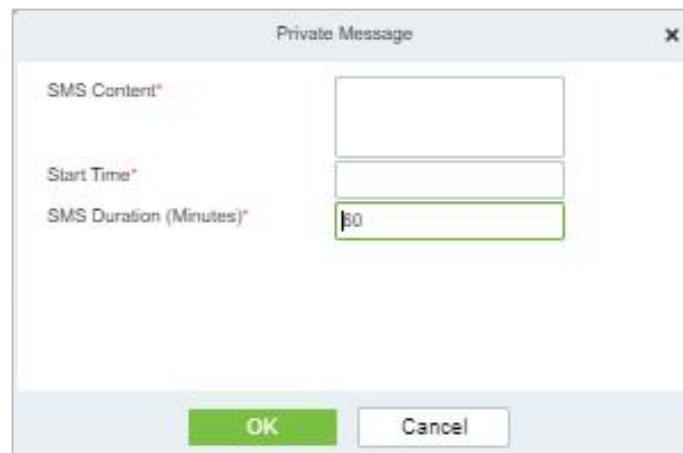


**Figure 6- 7 Import Personnel**

- Download Import Template:

You can download the entire file in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.3.2.5 Private Message



**Figure 6- 8 Private Message**

## 6.3.3 Attendance Device

This part introduces adding attendance device and setting communication parameters of connecting device, including the settings in the system and attendance device. After successful communication, you can view the information of connected devices, monitor the machines remotely, synchronize data and other operations.

Use Attendance Machine as Attendance Data Source.

- Precondition:

You need to set up the communication of the device first:

1. Open "Communication Settings > Network Settings" on the attendance device and configure the device network information in the pop-up "Network Settings" window.
2. Open "Communication Settings > Cloud Service Settings" and configure cloud server information in the pop-up "Cloud Server Settings" window.

### 6.3.3.1 Authorized Device

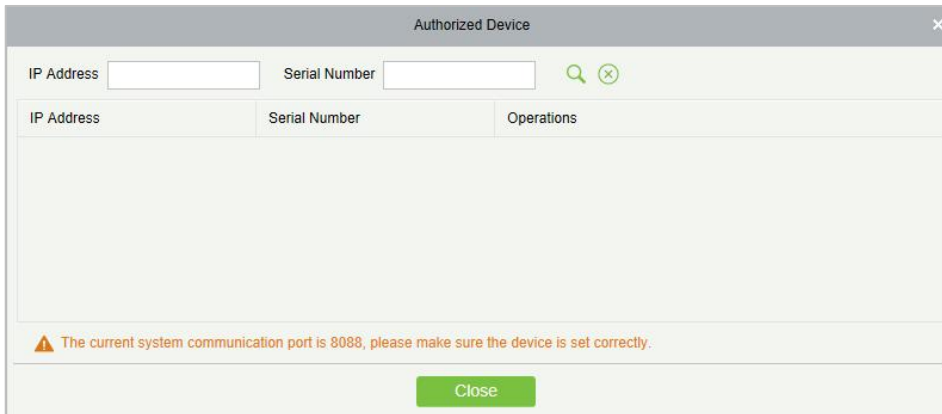
This part introduces the configuration Steps of adding attendance device in by authorization.

- Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Attendance Management > Attendance Device**, and click

"Authorized device".

**Step 2:** In the **Authorized Devices** window that pops up, add attendance devices, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 6- 9 Device Authorization Add Interface**

**Step 3:** In the **Add** window that pops up, configure the device information, as shown in figure below and the key parameters are described in Table 6-1.



**Figure 6- 10 Adding Device Setup Interface**

| Parameter                       | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Attendance Area                 | The device is divided into regions to realize the management of regional data.  |
| Whether To Register the Machine | If it is not checked, the user data uploaded by the device will not be processed (if the attendance record of the device is checked or not, it will be processed); Check, and the user data uploaded by the device will be processed. |

**Table 6- 1 Description of Key Parameters.**

**6.3.3.2 Delete**

**Step 1:** On the **Device** interface, select the required Device Name from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Device.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Device from the list.

**6.3.3.3 Device Control**

**Upgrade Firmware**

Tick the device that needs to be upgraded, click **Upgrade firmware** to enter edit interface, then click

**Browse** to select firmware upgrade file (named emfw.cfg) provided by Access software, and click **OK** to start upgrading.

**Note:** The user shall not upgrade firmware without authorization. Contact the distributor before upgrading firmware or upgrade it following the instructions of the distributor. Unauthorized upgrade may affect normal operations.

### **Reboot Device**

It will reboot the selected device.

### **Public Message**

You can set public message in the device so that the device can display short messages on the page (Not all the devices support this function).

### **Disable/Enable**

Select device, click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

### **Synchronize Software Data to Devices**

Synchronize data of the system to the device. Select device, click **Synchronize All Data to Devices** and click **OK** to complete synchronization.

### **Authorize Area**

It can reach certain areas within a period of time after being authenticated.

## **6.3.3.4 View and Get Information**

### **Get Device Option**

It gets the common parameters of the device. For example, get the firmware version after the device is updated.

### **Get the specified personnel data**

Renew the current number of personnel, fingerprints, finger vein and face templates in the device. The final value will be displayed in the device list.

### **Attendance Data Checking**

Select the device to proofread data, select the proofing date, the software issues a command to proofread the software and device attendance data.

### **Re-Upload Data**

To re-upload the data from the device.

### **View Device Parameters**

To view the parameters and the specification of the device.

## **6.3.3.5 Clear Device Data**

### **Clear unexecuted device commands**

Select the device to be cleared. It clears the unexecuted operation command issued by the software in the setting.

### **Clear the attendance photos**

This function will clear all the attendance photo records from the device.

### **Clear the attendance transactions**

Select the device. This function will clear all the attendance data records from the device.

**Clear equipment personnel**

This function will clear all the equipment personnel records from the device.

**6.3.4 Attendance Point**

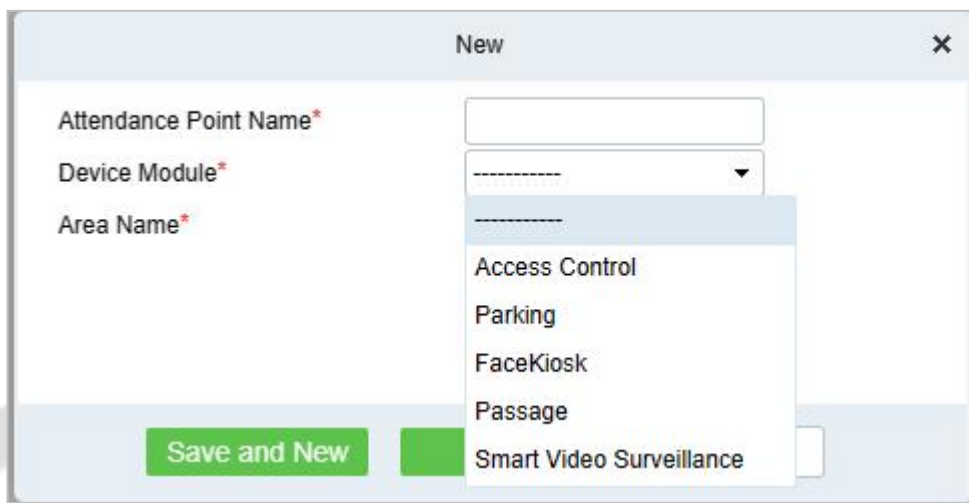
This part introduces the configuration Steps of using **Access Control /parking/facekiosk/passage/ smart video surveillance** machine as attendance data source in.

**6.3.4.1 New**

●Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select Attendance Management > Attendance Points, and click New.

**Step 2:** Add **Access Control** attendance points in the pop-up **Add** window, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 6-2 for explanations of key parameters.



**Figure 6- 11 Adding Attendance Point Interface**

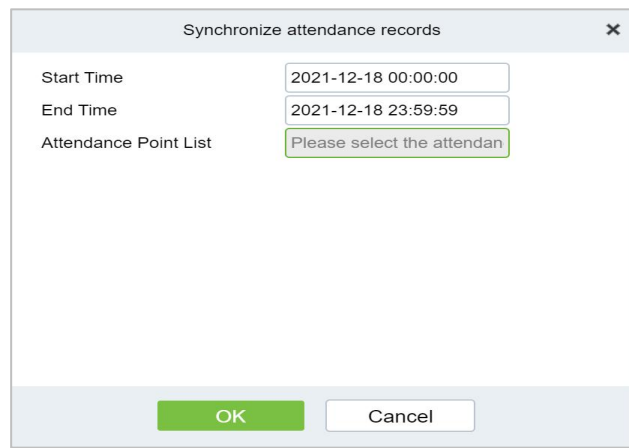
| Parameter     | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Device Module | Device module for setting attendance record source.                     |
| Area Name     | The area to which the device belongs.                                   |
| Door List     | You need to set the door corresponding to the attendance record source. |

**Table 6- 2 Parameter Description**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

**Step 4:** Select "Detailed Report > Original Record Table" and click Synchronous Attendance Point Record.

**Step 5:** Select the time node and attendance point to be synchronized in the pop-up **Synchronize Attendance Point Record** window, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 6- 12 Record of Synchronized Attendance Points**

**Step 6:** Click **OK**.

### 6.3.4.2 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.3.4.3 Delete

**Step 1:** On the **Attendance Point** interface, select the required Attendance Point Name from the list.

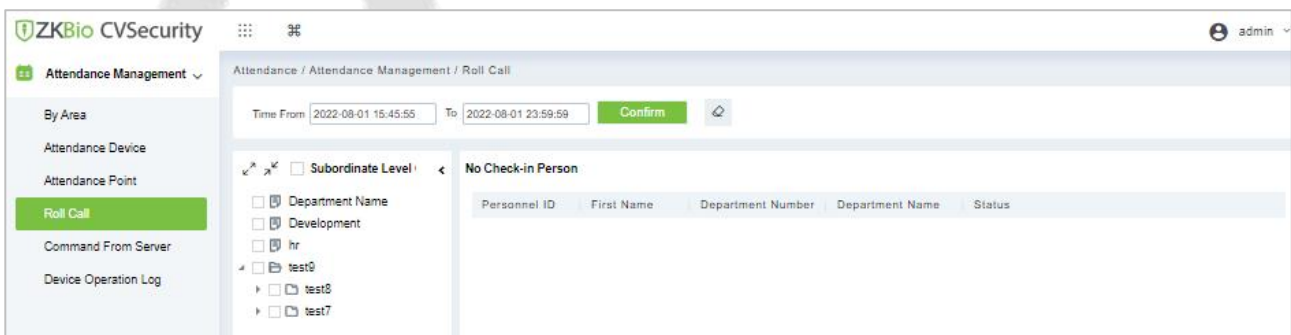
**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Attendance Point.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Attendance Point from the list.

### 6.3.5 Roll Call

The procedure of identifying the availability by calling out a list of names.

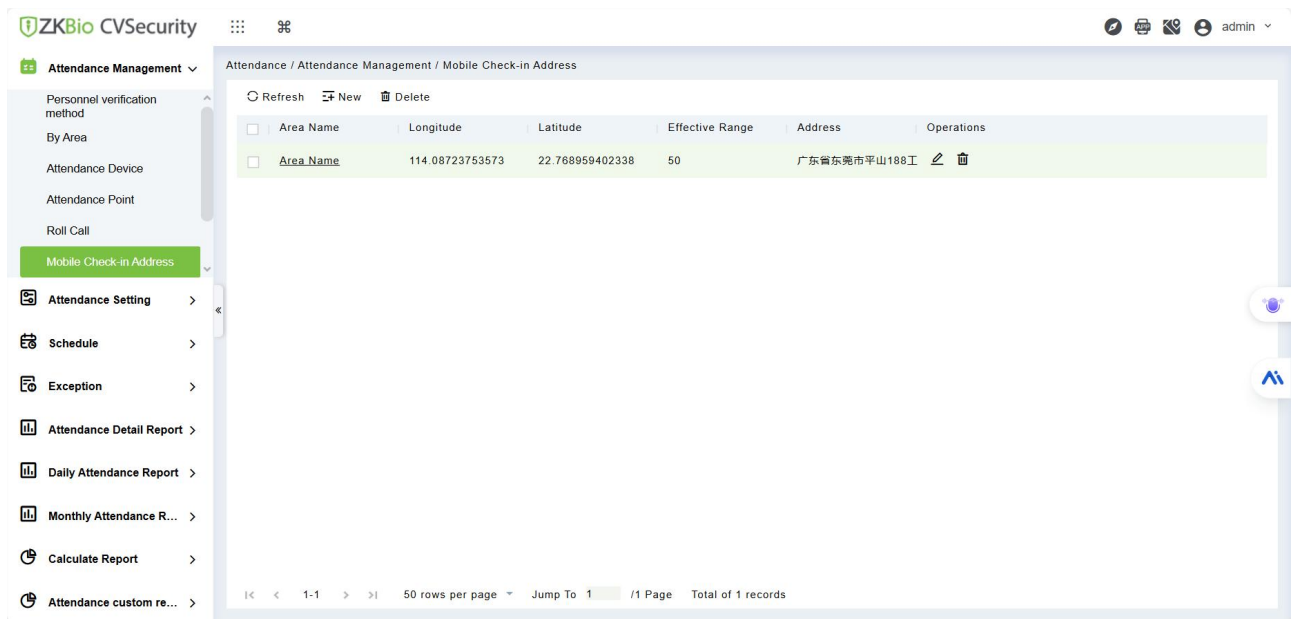
**Note:** To use this feature, please go to Attendance Setting -> Attendance Rules -> Enable Real Time Roll Call first.



**Figure 6- 13 Roll Call**

### 6.3.6 Mobile Check In Address

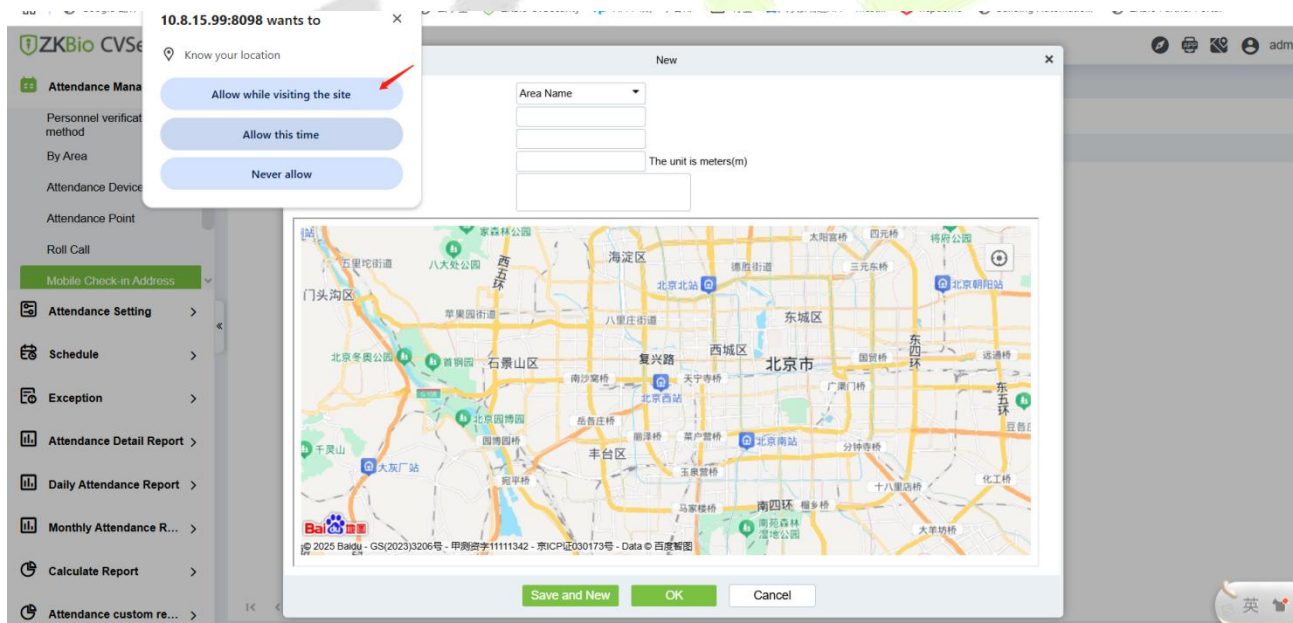
This menu is used to configure the check-in range for mobile attendance by setting up geofences to define valid check-in areas, ensuring the accuracy of attendance data.



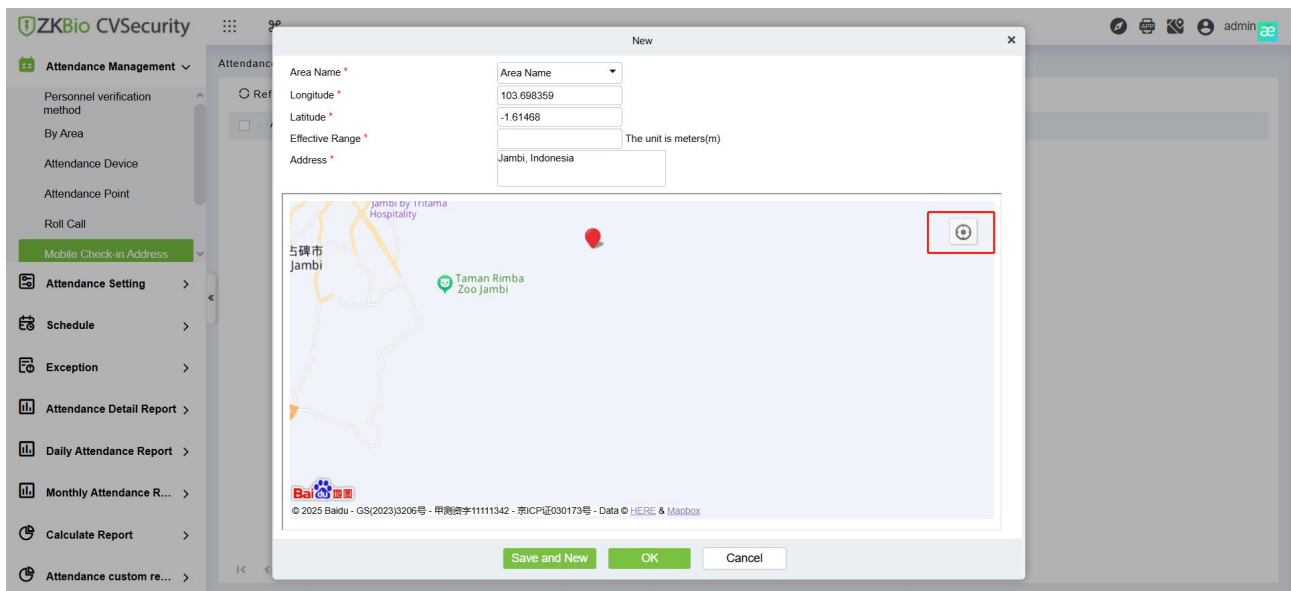
### 6.3.6.1 New

Click "New" to add a new attendance range.

**Note:** Currently, only Baidu Maps is supported, and users are not allowed to input latitude and longitude or specific addresses by themselves. If you want to use this function, it is recommended that users allow the browser to access the location and obtain the detailed current location through the browser. It is shown as follows:



You can also try clicking on Baidu Maps to select an appropriate location. If you need to return to the current location, you can click on "Return to Current Location".



### 6.3.7 Command from Server

#### 6.3.7.1 Clear Command List

**Step 1:** You can clear command as required. Click **Clear Command** after selecting the corresponding ID.

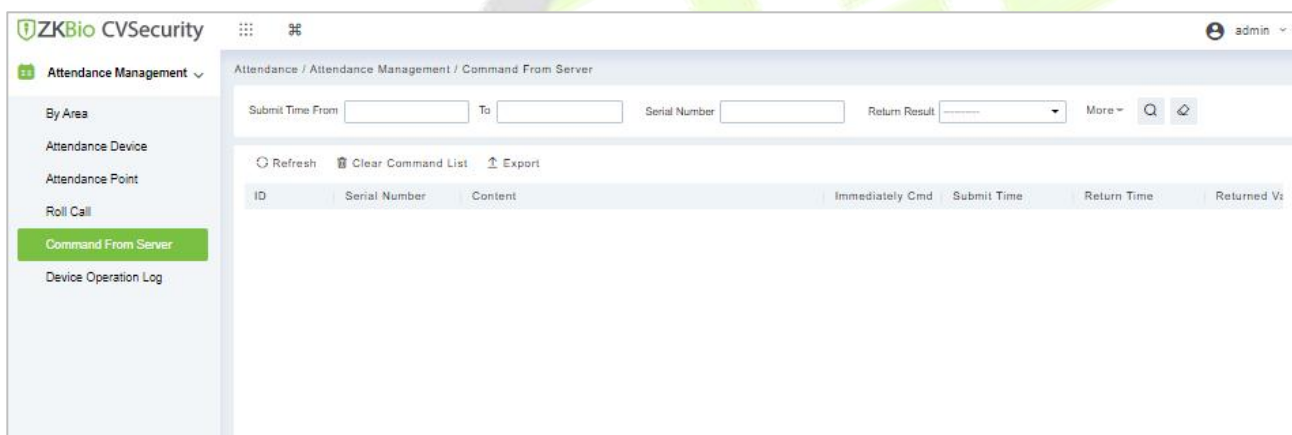


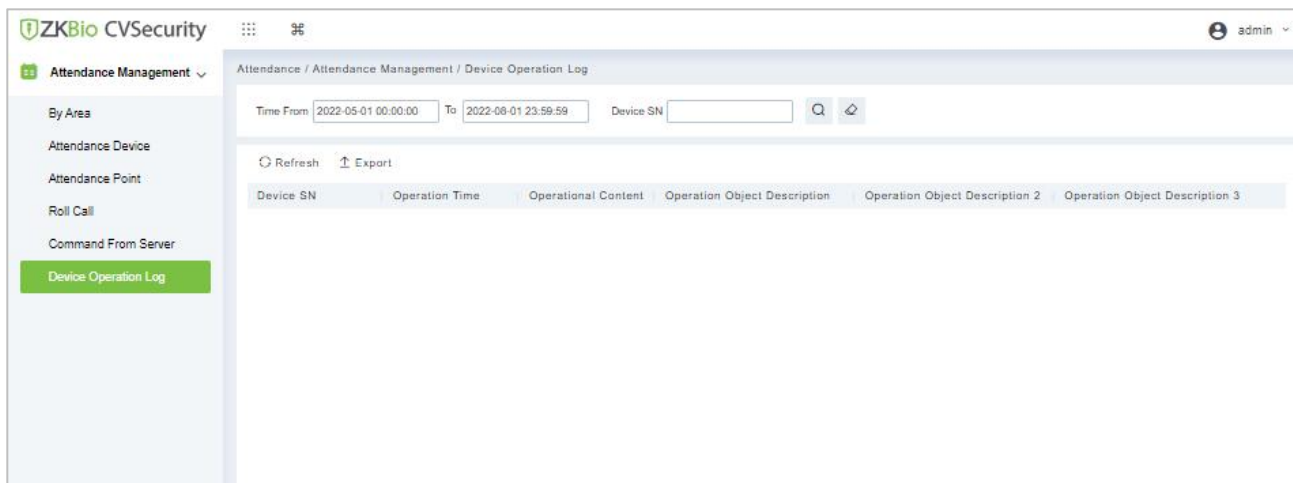
Figure 6- 14 Roll Call Clear Command List

#### 6.3.7.2 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.3.8 Device Operation Log

For communication between the system and device, data uploading, configuration downloading, device and system parameters shall be set. Users can edit access controllers within relevant levels in the current system; users can only add or delete devices in Device Management if needed.



**Figure 6- 15 Device operation Log**

### 6.3.8.1 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

## 6.4 Attendance Setting

Attendance settings affect attendance results, is the core of attendance calculation logic, including attendance rules settings, holiday settings, fake settings.

### 6.4.1 Attendance Rule Setting

Because the attendance system is different in each company, it is necessary to manually set attendance rules to ensure the accuracy of the final attendance calculation. The setting of attendance rules is the main way to reflect the attendance system of enterprises.

This part introduces the configuration Steps of attendance rules in.

#### 6.4.1.1 Basic Rule Setting

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select Attendance Settings > Attendance Rules.

**Step 2:** In the Attendance Rule interface, fill in the attendance rules as required, as shown in figure below, and the basic rule parameter description is shown in Table 6-3.

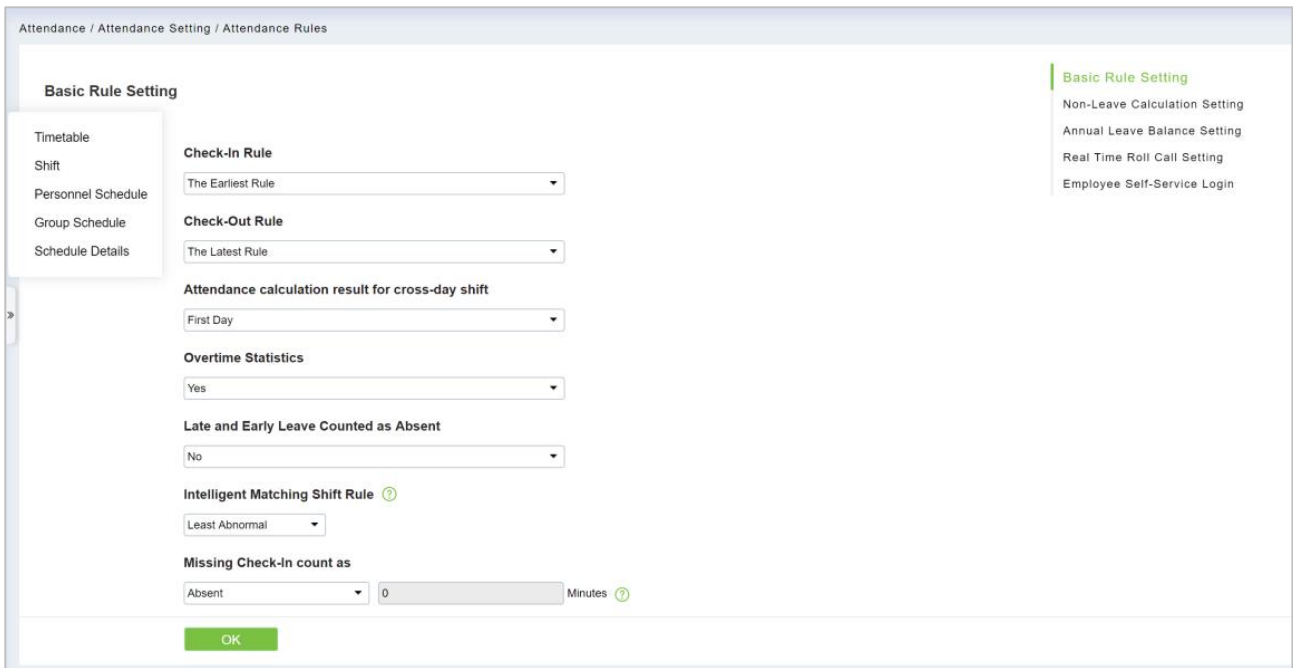


Figure 6- 16 Attendance Rules

### 6.4.1.2 Non-Leave Calculation Setting

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select Attendance Settings > Attendance Rules>Non-Leave Calculation Setting.

**Step 2:** In the Attendance Rule interface, fill in the attendance rules as required, as shown in figure below, and the Non-Leave Calculation description is shown in Table 6-3.

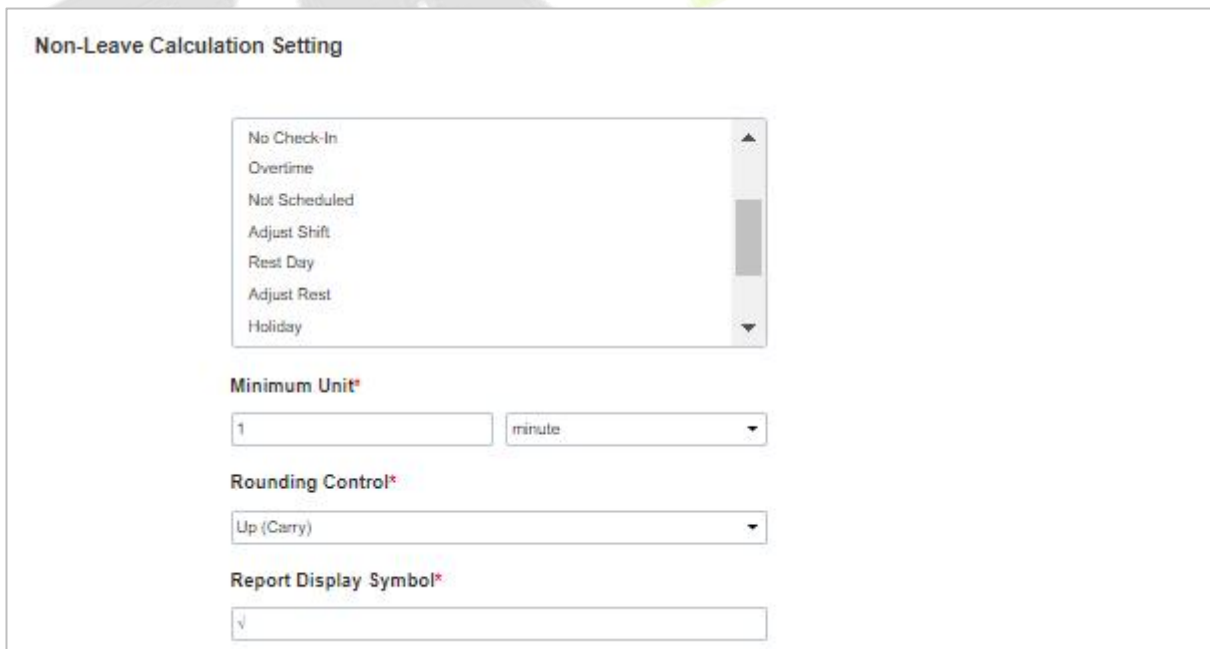


Figure 6- 17 Attendance Rules Settings

### 6.4.1.3 Annual Leave Balance Setting

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Attendance Settings > Attendance Rules>Annual Leave Balance Setting**.

**Step 2:** In the **Attendance Rule** interface, fill in the attendance rules as required, as shown in figure below, and the Annual Leave Balance description is shown in Table 6-3.

**Annual Leave Balance Setting**

⚠ To use the annual leave balance function, you need to set the hire date for each employee; when the hire date is not set, the remaining annual leave of the staff's annual leave balance table is displayed as empty.

⚠ If the current date is greater than the clearing issue date, this modification will take effect the following year; if the current date is less than the clearing issue date, when the clearing issue date is reached, it will be cleared and the annual leave will be reissued.

**Annual Leave Clearing and Issuing Date**

Every year  Month  Day

**Calculate According to Work Time Ratio**

Down (Discard)  rounding  Up (Carry)

**Annual Leave Rule** ⓘ

|   |                                |           |                                |                      |
|---|--------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| Working Years ≤                                     | <input type="text" value="1"/> | Year, Yes | <input type="text" value="1"/> | Days of Annual Leave |
| <input type="text" value="1"/> Year Working Years < |                                |           |                                |                      |
|   | <input type="text" value="2"/> | Year, Yes | <input type="text" value="5"/> | Days of Annual Leave |
| Working Years >                                     | <input type="text" value="2"/> | Year, Yes | <input type="text" value="5"/> | Days of Annual Leave |

**Figure 6- 18 Annual Leave balance Setting**

#### 6.4.1.4 Real Time Roll Call Setting

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Attendance Settings > Attendance Rules>Real Time Roll Call Setting**.

**Step 2:** In the Attendance Rule interface, fill in the attendance rules as required, as shown in figure below, and the Real Time Roll Call description is shown in Table 6-3.

**Real Time Roll Call Setting**

Enable Real Time Roll Call

**Figure 6- 19 Roll Call Real Time**

#### 6.4.1.5 Employee Self-Service Login

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select Attendance Settings > Attendance Rules>Employee Self Service Login Setting.

**Step 2:** In the Attendance Rule interface, fill in the attendance rules as required, as shown in figure below, and the Employee Self Service Login description is shown in Table 6-3.

**Employee Self-Service Login**

Whether to enable employee self-service login

Enable  Disable

**Figure 6- 20 Roll Call Real Time**

| Parameter                         | Specific Parameters   | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| Basic Rule                        | Work check-in and card collection rules   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The earliest (by default, the first punch-in record is taken within the valid card taking range)</li> <li>• Nearby (take the clock-in record closest to working hours within the valid card-taking range).</li> </ul>  |
|                                   | Rules for sign-out and card collection after get off work   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Latest (by default, the last punch-in record is taken within the valid card taking range)</li> <li>• Nearby (take the clock-in record closest to the attendance checking time within the valid card-taking range).</li> </ul>  |
|                                   | The shortest attendance period should be greater than (10 minutes)  | 120 (default); Range: 10 to 999; Required   |
|                                   | The longest attendance period should be less than (1440 minutes)  | 600 (default); Range: 10 to 1440; Required  |
|                                   | The shift time period spans days, and the attendance calculation results  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On the first day, if there is a cross-day, count the working hours in the effective shift on the second day to the first day.</li> <li>• On the second day, if there is a cross-day, the working hours in the effective shift on the first day are counted to the second day.</li> </ul> |
|                                   | Being late and leaving early is absenteeism   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No (default)</li> <li>• If yes, there are cases of being late and leaving early, and this period is recorded as absenteeism.</li> </ul>  |
|                                   | Statistical overtime  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes (default)</li> <li>• No; If the first switch of overtime statistics is set to No, overtime will not be calculated.</li> </ul>  |
|                                   | Minimum overtime time per time (minutes)  | This parameter is applied to overtime rule duration statistics. If overtime duration is less than the set minimum overtime duration, it will not be reflected in attendance statistics.   |
|                                   | Exact number of decimal points  | 1 (default), 2.   |
| Failure to sign in is recorded as | <p>Three ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Absence</li> <li>• Be late</li> <li>• Incomplete</li> </ul> <p>Description:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you are late, you should set the number of minutes you are late.</li> <li>• Absence and incompleteness are not valid attendance,</li> </ul> |   |

| Parameter  | Specific Parameters   | Description   |                                    |   |  |   |                            |  |
|--|---|---|------------------------------------|---|--|---|----------------------------|--|
|  |   | <p>but absence is absenteeism and incompleteness is absenteeism. Statistics attendance by setting basic rules in monthly detailed reports and other related reports.</p> <p>Three ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Absence</li> <li>• Be late</li> <li>• Incomplete</li> </ul> <p>Description</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you are late, you should set the number of minutes you are late.</li> <li>• Absence and incompleteness are not valid attendance, but absence is absenteeism and incompleteness is absenteeism. Statistics attendance by setting basic rules in monthly detailed reports and other related reports.</li> </ul>   |                                    |   |  |   |                            |  |
| Non-Pseudo Class Calculation Settings  | Set up various states of non-fake classes (including being late, leaving early, not signing in, etc.)   | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Minimum unit</td> <td>Calculate the smallest unit of this arix</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Rounding control</td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Down (discard): discard the decimal part, as long as the integer.</li> <li>• Rounding: If the first decimal place is greater than 5, the integer will be added with 1, otherwise, the integer will be taken.</li> <li>• Up (carry): With decimal, discard decimal, integer plus 1</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Report presentation symbol</td> <td>Symbols for associated report presentation</td> </tr> </table>  | Minimum unit                       | Calculate the smallest unit of this arix  | Rounding control   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Down (discard): discard the decimal part, as long as the integer.</li> <li>• Rounding: If the first decimal place is greater than 5, the integer will be added with 1, otherwise, the integer will be taken.</li> <li>• Up (carry): With decimal, discard decimal, integer plus 1</li> </ul> | Report presentation symbol | Symbols for associated report presentation |
| Minimum unit   | Calculate the smallest unit of this arix  |   |                                    |   |  |   |                            |  |
| Rounding control   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Down (discard): discard the decimal part, as long as the integer.</li> <li>• Rounding: If the first decimal place is greater than 5, the integer will be added with 1, otherwise, the integer will be taken.</li> <li>• Up (carry): With decimal, discard decimal, integer plus 1</li> </ul> |   |                                    |   |  |   |                            |  |
| Report presentation symbol   | Symbols for associated report presentation  |   |                                    |   |  |   |                            |  |
| Setting of Annual Leave Balance  | <p>Annual leave cleared and issued date</p> <p>Calculated according to the proportion of working hours</p>  | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Set the annual leave clearing date</td> <td> <p>Description</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using the annual leave balance function requires setting the entry time for each person; When the induction time is not set, the remaining annual leave in the personnel annual leave balance table is displayed as blank.</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>There are three ways to calculate the proportional duration:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Down (discard): discard the decimal part, as long as the integer.</li> <li>• Rounding: If the first decimal place is</li> </ul> </td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the current date is greater than the clearing and issuing date, the revised content will take effect the following year; If the current date is less than the zero-clearing issue date, the annual leave will be cleared and reissued when the zero-clearing issue date is</li> </ul> </td> </tr> </table> | Set the annual leave clearing date | <p>Description</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using the annual leave balance function requires setting the entry time for each person; When the induction time is not set, the remaining annual leave in the personnel annual leave balance table is displayed as blank.</li> </ul> | <p>There are three ways to calculate the proportional duration:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Down (discard): discard the decimal part, as long as the integer.</li> <li>• Rounding: If the first decimal place is</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the current date is greater than the clearing and issuing date, the revised content will take effect the following year; If the current date is less than the zero-clearing issue date, the annual leave will be cleared and reissued when the zero-clearing issue date is</li> </ul>     |                            |  |
| Set the annual leave clearing date   | <p>Description</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using the annual leave balance function requires setting the entry time for each person; When the induction time is not set, the remaining annual leave in the personnel annual leave balance table is displayed as blank.</li> </ul>                                     |   |                                    |   |  |   |                            |  |
| <p>There are three ways to calculate the proportional duration:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Down (discard): discard the decimal part, as long as the integer.</li> <li>• Rounding: If the first decimal place is</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the current date is greater than the clearing and issuing date, the revised content will take effect the following year; If the current date is less than the zero-clearing issue date, the annual leave will be cleared and reissued when the zero-clearing issue date is</li> </ul>     |   |                                    |   |  |   |                            |  |

| Parameter                   | Specific Parameters            | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
|                             |                                | <p>greater than 5, the integer will be added with 1, otherwise, the integer will be taken.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Up (carry): With decimal, discard decimal, integer plus 1</li> </ul>   |
|                             | Rules of annual leave duration | <p>Set annual leave days according to length of service, which can be added by symbols</p> <p>reached.<br/>For example<br/>Sam San joined the company on September 1 last year<br/>Setting of annual leave balance<br/>The clearing and issuing date is January 1 of each year; According to the proportion of work rounded calculation; There are 3 days" annual leave when the length of service is less than or equal to 1 year, and 5 days" annual leave when the length of service is less than or equal to 3 years<br/>Annual leave entitlement calculation<br/>It enjoyed <math>4/12 \times 3 = 1.0</math> days from September 01 to December 31 last year<br/>This year's 01-01 to 12-31 enjoys 4.0 days (this year's 01-01 to 08-31 enjoys <math>8/12 \times 3 = 2.0</math> days + this year's 09-01 to 12-31 enjoys <math>4/12 \times 5 \approx 2.0</math> days)</p> |
| Real-Time Roll Call Setting |                                | Turn on the real-time roll call function, and the sign-in status of personnel will be displayed in the "sign-in Table" under the report.   |
| Employee Self Service Login |                                | The frequency of setting attendance points to obtain records includes (10 seconds/time, 20 seconds/time, 30 seconds/time, 1 minute/time ~ 8 minutes/time).   |

**Table 6- 3 Description of Basic Rule Parameters**

## 6.4.2 Holidays

This part introduces the configuration Steps of manually adding holidays in.

### 6.4.2.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Attendance** module, select "Attendance Settings > Holidays" and click **New**.

**Step 2:** Configure holiday information in the pop-up **Add** window.

The 'New' dialog box has a title bar with 'New' and a close button. It contains four input fields: 'Name\*' (empty), 'Start Time\*' (2021-12-18), 'Number of Days\*' (empty), and 'Remarks' (empty). At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Save and New' (green), 'OK' (green), and 'Cancel' (white).

Figure 6- 21 New Holidays

Step 3: Click OK.

### 6.4.2.2 Delete

**Step 1:** On the **Holiday** interface, select the required Holiday Name from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Holiday list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Holiday from the list.

### 6.4.3 Leave Type

This part introduces the configuration Steps of adding Leave Type.

#### 6.4.3.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Attendance Settings > Leave Type** and click Add.

**Step 2:** Configure fake information in the pop-up **Add** window, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 6-4 for explanations of key parameters.

The 'New' dialog box has a title bar with 'New' and a close button. It contains five input fields: 'Name\*' (empty), 'Whether to subtract work hours\*' (Yes), 'Minimum Unit\*' (minute), 'Rounding Control\*' (Down (Discard)), and 'Report Display Symbol\*' (empty). At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Save and New' (green), 'OK' (green), and 'Cancel' (white).

Figure 6- 22 New Leave Type

| Parameter                       | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Name                            | Character length 30, required.   |
| Whether To Deduct Working Hours | Whether the working hours should be deducted for setting this kind of leave, for example, maternity leave/marriage leave/annual leave are all legal holidays, and the working hours are not deducted.  |
| Minimum Unit                    | Calculate the smallest unit for this alias.  |
| Rounding Control                | Down (discard): discard the decimal part, as long as the integer; Rounding: If the first decimal place is greater than 5, the integer will be added with 1, otherwise, the integer will be taken; Up (carry): There are decimals, decimals are discarded, integers are added by 1. |
| Report Presentation Symbol      | Symbols for the presentation of the associated report.   |

**Table 6- 4 Description of Key Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

#### 6.4.3.2 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Leave Type** interface, select the required Leave from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Leave from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Leave from the list.

### 6.4.4 Automatic Report

The Automatic reporting feature helps you to send the reports to the designated person at the specified time.

#### 6.4.4.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Attendance Settings > Automatic Report** and click **New**.

**Step 2:** Click to **New** to configure all the details.

Figure 6- 23 Automatic Report

### 6.4.4.2 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Automatic Report** interface, select the required File from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required File from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected File from the list.

### 6.4.4.3 Enable/Disabled

Select device, click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

## 6.4.5 Process Settings

To achieve the approval function, it is necessary to maintain the relationship between positions at all levels in the personnel module and assign them to the corresponding personnel. Then setup the approval process for different process types and different positions.

### 6.4.5.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Attendance Settings > Process Settings** and click New.

**Step 2:** Click to **New** to configure all the details.

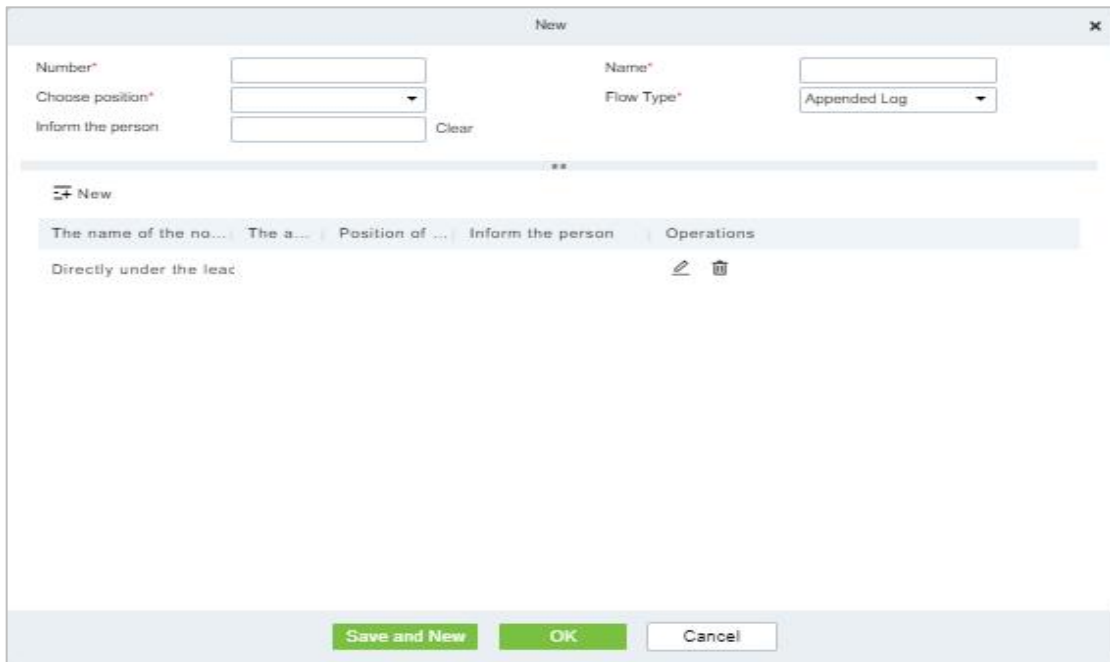


Figure 6- 24 Processing Setting

### 6.4.5.2 Enable/Disabled

Select device, click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

## 6.5 Regular Shift Setting Schedule

Regular shifts can choose one or more normal time periods to form a regular shift according to laws. Regular shifts are often used in regular occasions, such as office buildings, governments, banks, etc.

### 6.5.1 Timetable

#### 6.5.1.1 Add Normal Timetable

This part introduces the configuration Steps of adding normal time period to the regular shift configuration of VAORIDA.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Schedule Management > Time Period** and click Add Normal Time Period.

**Step 2:** Configure the time period information in the **Add Normal Time** Period window, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 6-5 for the explanation of key parameters.

The screenshot shows a 'New' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Name\***: Text input field.
- Check-In Time\***: 09 : 00 (HH:MM)
- Check-Out Time\***: 18 : 00 (HH:MM)
- Before going to Work\***: 60 minutes. Check-In is valid within minutes
- Before Going Off Duty\***: 60 minutes. Check-In is valid within minutes
- After Work\***: 60 minutes. Check-In is valid within minutes
- After Work\***: 60 minutes. Check-In is valid within minutes
- Allow Late(Minutes)**: 0
- Allow Early**: 0
- Leave(Minutes) ?**: 0
- Must Check-In\***: Yes
- Must Check-Out\***: Yes
- Auto Deduct Break Time\***: No
- Work Time (Minutes)\***: 540
- On Duty**:  0. Check-In Minutes ago for Overtime , Minimum Overtime Minutes 30 , Limit the maximum overtime hours 0
- Off Duty**:  0. Start counting overtime minutes later , Minimum Overtime Minutes 30 , Limit the maximum overtime hours 0
- Enable Flexible**:  Can go to work in advance. 0 minutes

Buttons at the bottom: Save and New, OK, Cancel.

**Figure 6- 25 New Time Period**

| Parameter  | Description  |
|--|--|
| Before/after work,<br>Before/after work  | Set the valid range of check-in/check-out for this time period, and the check-in/check-out records outside this range are invalid records. The valid sign-in time after going to work and the valid sign-out time before going off work cannot overlap, which must be filled in. |
| Minutes allowed to be late/leave early   | Refers to how long it is allowed to be late and leave early within the specified time points for going to and from work, and the minutes allowed to be late and leave early must be within the valid time range of sign-in and sign-out before they can take effect.             |
| You must sign in/return  | In the selected time range, set whether you must sign in and sign out when going to and from work.   |
| Whether it is deducted between segments  | When used for attendance calculation, whether to subtract the number of minutes defined by inter-segment deduction for this time period.   |
| Start counting overtime before/after N minutes from work/work, with the shortest overtime minutes and the maximum overtime hours limited | Select whether to record the verification records before and after work as overtime.   |

| Parameter                     | Description  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Enable flexible hours to work | It refers to the flexible working parameter that people who go to work early can get off work early and people who work at night need to get off work late. When checked, you need to set the number of minutes that can be advanced/delayed, and it must be within the valid sign-in/sign-out time range. |

**Table 6- 5 Description of Key Parameters**

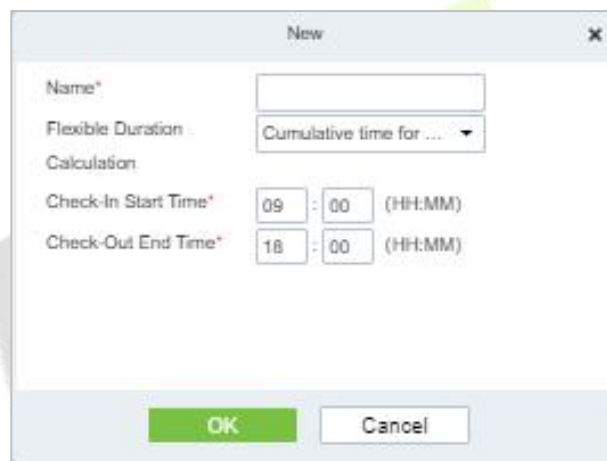
**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

### 6.5.1.2 Add Flexible Timetable

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Schedule Management > Time Period** and click Add Flexible Timetable.


**Step 2:** Configure the time period information in the **Add Flexible Timetable** window.



**Figure 6- 26 Adding Flexible Time Table**

### 6.5.1.3 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Timetable** interface, select the required Type from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Timetable Type from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Type from the list.

### 6.5.1.4 Add Regular Shift

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **'Schedule Management > Shift'** and click "Add Regular Shift".

**Step 2:** Configure shift information in the "Add Regular Shift" window, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 6-6 for explanation of key parameters.

Figure 6- 27 New Shift

| Parameter            | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| Unit                 | <p>Set the unit of the cycle, and the default is "day".</p> <p>There are three types of units:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Day</li> <li>• Week</li> <li>• Month</li> </ul>  |
| Period               | <p>Defines the number of cycles of a shift, and the cycle of the shift = cycle number * units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the unit is "day", the range is 1 to 99.</li> <li>• If the unit is "week", the range is 1 to 15.</li> <li>• If the unit is "month", the range is 1 to 12.</li> </ul>  |
| Period starting type | <p>This field is displayed only when the cycle unit is Day,</p> <p>Description</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is not displayed when the units are "week" and "month".</li> <li>• There is cycle start date and scheduling start date, and the default is cycle start date.</li> <li>• If you select Scheduling Start Date, the start date when scheduling is the first day of the cycle.</li> </ul> |
| Period start date    | <p>This field is displayed only when the cycle start type is Cycle Start Date. Define the start date of the shift, and the date before the start date is not affected by the shift. The default system start date is the current system date.</p>  |
| Type of work         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal work: This shift is a normal work shift</li> <li>• Overtime on rest days: This shift is overtime on rest days</li> <li>• Overtime on holidays: This shift is overtime on holidays.</li> </ul>  |
| Attendance mode      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Swipe the card normally according to the shift: the default item of the system, and punch in normally according to the punch in.</li> </ul>   |

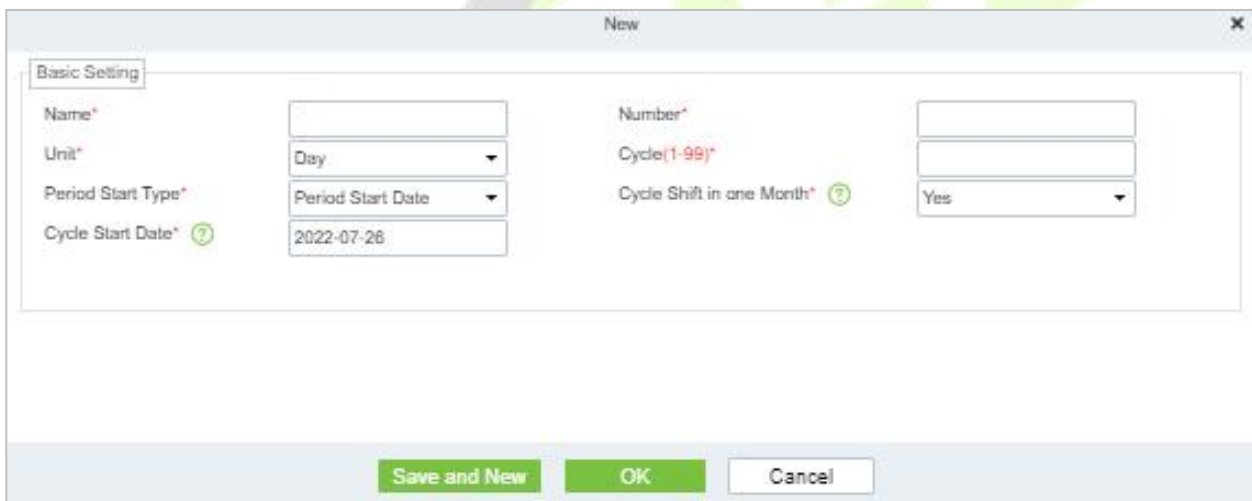
| Parameter     | Description   |
|---------------|---|
|               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Brush a valid card once a day: only need to brush the card once in the swiping interval defined by the time period within one day, even if it is normal to punch in.</li> <li>• Punch-in-free: Setting this shift can avoid punch-in.</li> </ul>   |
| Overtime mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Computer automatic calculation: It is connected with "whether the delay counts overtime" in the time period. When "whether the delay counts overtime" is "no", the delayed overtime is not calculated, and the overtime time of the overtime bill is not calculated at the same time.</li> <li>• Overtime must be applied: delayed overtime is not calculated, only the overtime order shall prevail; When the signing-back time is less than the end time of overtime, the overtime time is not calculated.</li> <li>• Not counting overtime: overtime hours are not counted for delayed overtime or overtime application.</li> </ul> |

**Table 6- 6 Description of Key Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

### 6.5.1.5 Add Flexible Shift


**Step 1:** In the shift interface, click **Set Time Period** under the operation bar of the added regular shift, and configure the time period information in the pop-up **Set Time Period** window.



**Figure 6- 28 Adding Flexible Shift**

### 6.5.1.6 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Shift** interface, select the required Shift Type from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Shift Type from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Shift Type from the list.

### 6.5.1.7 Clear Timetable

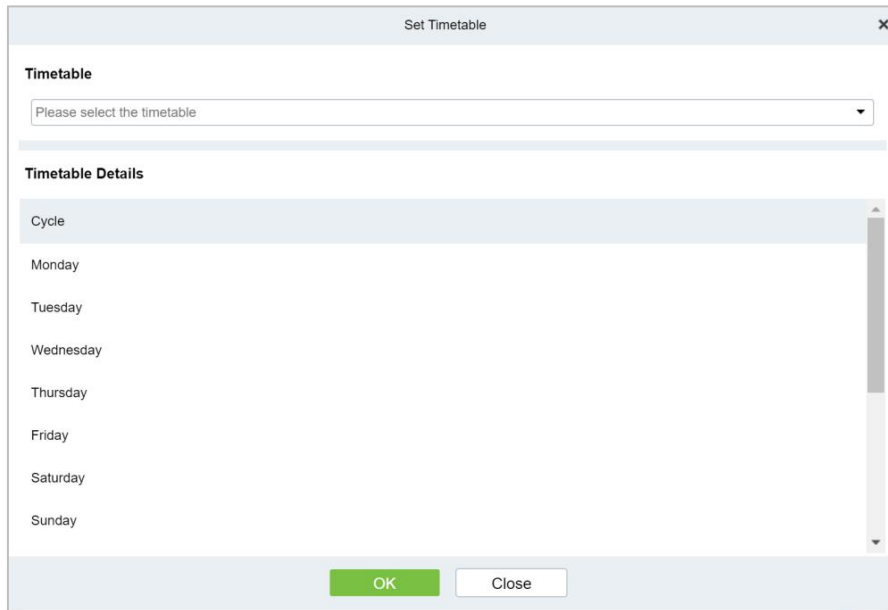


Figure 6- 29 Adding Time Periods

**Step 6:** Click **OK** to complete the addition of time period, and the specific time period is displayed in the time period details on the right.

### 6.5.2 Personnel Schedule

Personnel scheduling operations is completely same as group scheduling, but when scheduling personnel, the object of choice is personnel at the top left corner of the interface.

#### 6.5.2.1 Cycle Schedule

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Schedule Management > Personnel Schedule** and click Cycle Schedule.

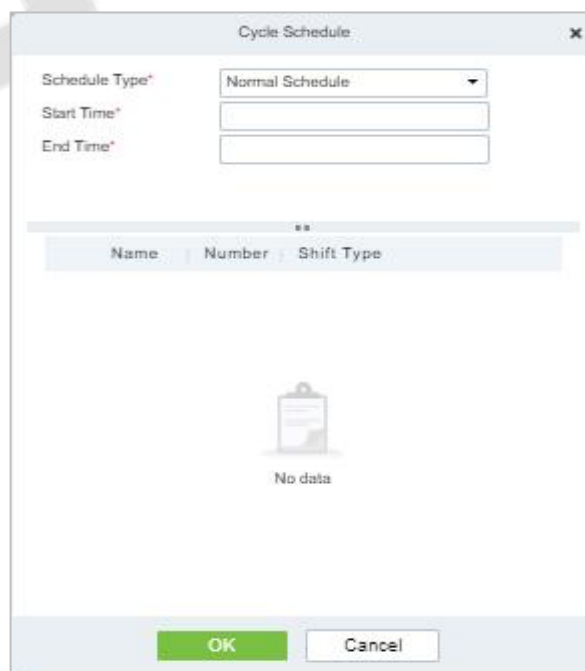


Figure 6- 30 Adding Personnel Schedule

### 6.5.2.2 Temporary Schedule

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Schedule Management > Personnel Schedule** and click Temporary Schedule.

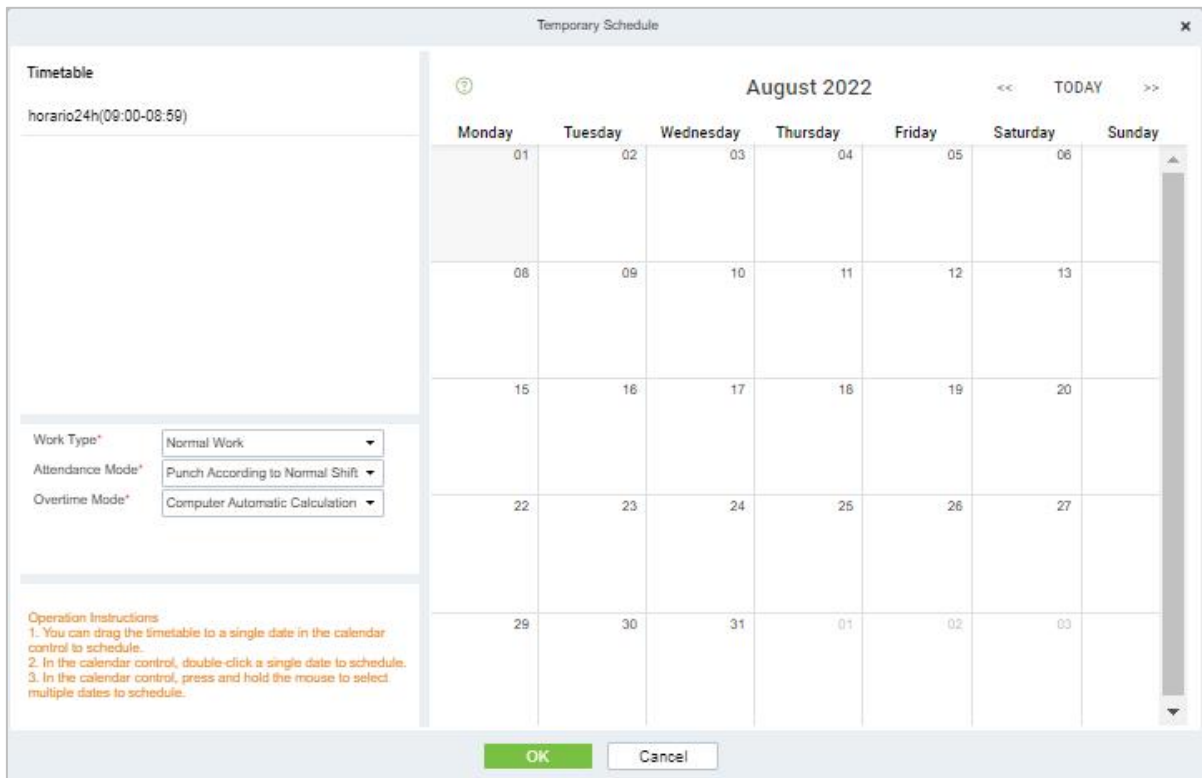


Figure 6- 31 Adding Temporary Schedule

### 6.5.2.3 Clear Cycle Schedule

**Step 1:** In the **Attendance** module, select **Schedule Management > Personnel Schedule** and then click on the Personnel ID that you want to delete, and click **Clear Cycle Schedule**.

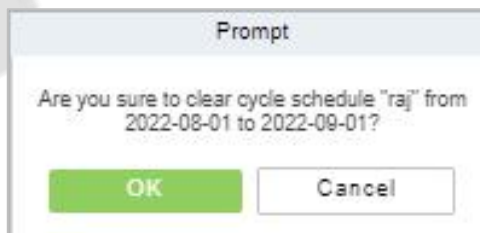


Figure 6- 32 Clear cycle schedule

### 6.5.2.4 Clear Temporary Schedule

**Step 1:** In the **Attendance** module, select **Schedule Management > Personnel Schedule** and then click on the Personnel ID that you want to delete, and click **Clear Temporary Schedule**.

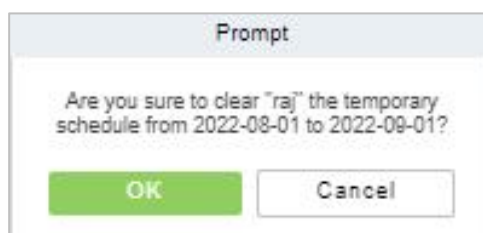


Figure 6- 33 Clear Temporary Schedule

### 6.5.3 Group Schedule

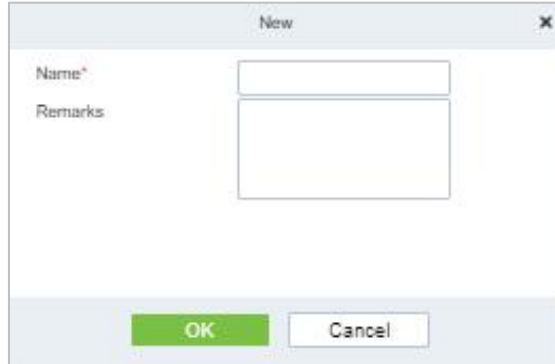
Grouping scheduling means grouping people, and then scheduling people in batches by grouping. This part introduces the configuration Steps of grouping cycle scheduling in.

#### 6.5.3.1 Edit Personnel for Group

New

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Schedule> Group Schedule** and click New.

**Step 2:** Configure the Schedule Name in the **Group Schedule** interface.



**Figure 6- 34 Adding Elastic Time Period**


| Parameter | Description  |
|-----------|--|
| Name      | Can not contain special symbols, period name can not be duplicated, length is 30 characters, required. |
| Remarks   | Mentioning comments.   |

**Table 6- 7 Description of Key Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Schedule** interface, select the required Shift Type from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon.to delete the required Shift Type from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Shift Type from the list.

#### 6.5.3.2 Browse the Group Personnel

##### Delete Personnel

**Step 1:** In the **Schedule** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

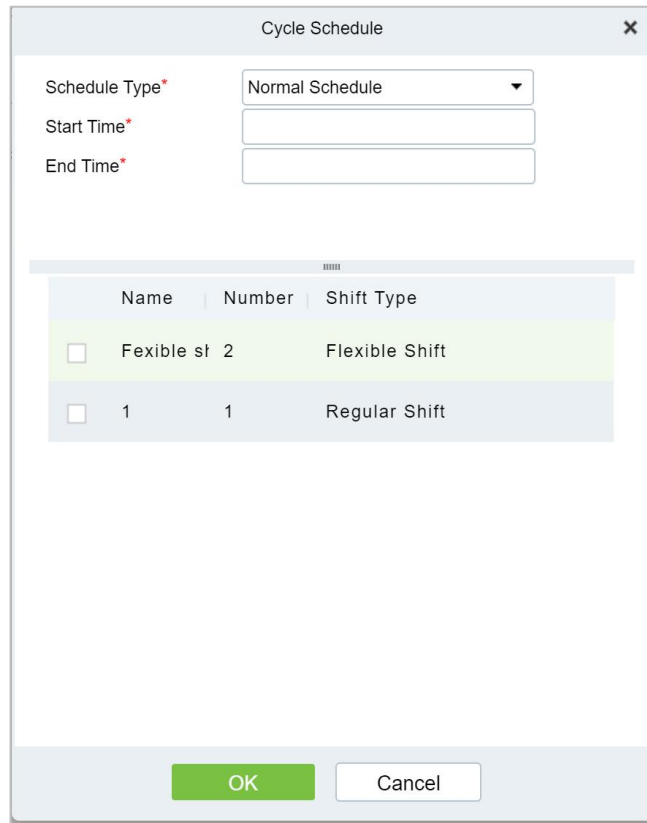
**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon.to delete the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

##### Cycle Schedule

**Step 1:** In the **Attendance** module, select **Scheduling Management > Personnel Scheduling**, check the personnel under the department that needs scheduling or the designated personnel, and click "Periodic Scheduling".

**Step 2:** Configure scheduling information in the pop-up **Cycle Scheduling** window, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 6-8 for parameter description.



**Figure 6- 35 Cycle Scheduling**

| Parameter           | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Scheduling Type     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal Shift Scheduling: Only one shift can be selected for normal shift scheduling</li> <li>• Intelligent scheduling: Intelligent scheduling can select multiple shifts. Select intelligent scheduling, and the software will automatically judge the most suitable shift according to the punch-in record for attendance calculation.</li> </ul> |
| Start Time/End Time | Set which date segment the schedule works on.   |
| Select Shift        | Select the shift to use for scheduling.   |

**Table 6- 8 Description of Key Parameters of Cycle Scheduling**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the configuration of personnel cycle scheduling.

**Temporary Schedule**

**Step 1:** In the **Attendance** module, select '**scheduling Management > Personnel Scheduling**', check the personnel under the department that needs scheduling or the designated personnel, and click "Periodic Scheduling".

**Step 2:** Configure scheduling information in the pop-up **Temporary Schedule** window, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 6-9 for parameter description.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the configuration of temporary personnel scheduling

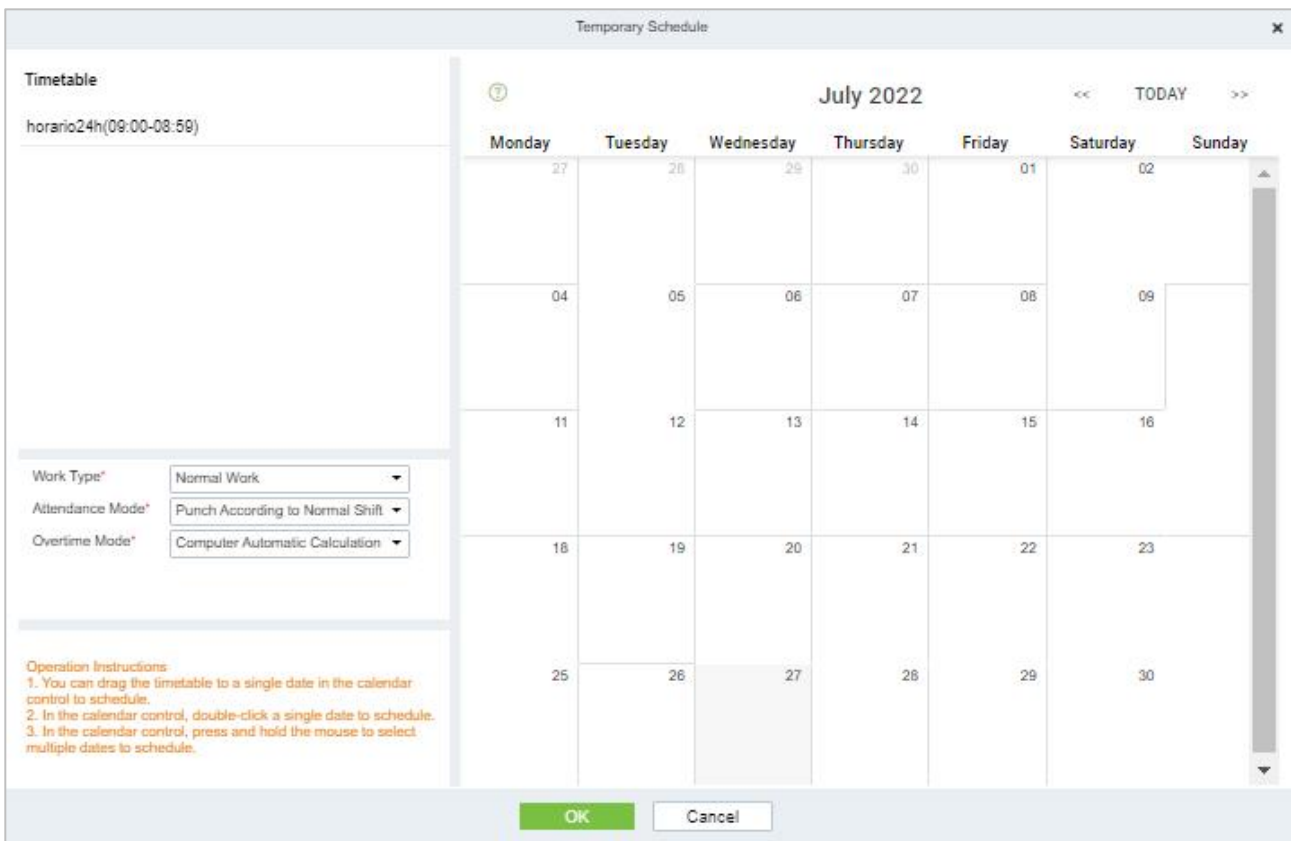


Figure 6- 36 Group Temporary schedule

| Parameter       | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Type of Work    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal work: This shift is a normal work shift.</li> <li>• Overtime on rest days: This shift is overtime on rest days.</li> <li>• Overtime on holidays: This shift is overtime on holidays.</li> </ul>   |
| Attendance Mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Swipe the card normally according to the shift: the default item of the system, and punch in normally according to the punch in</li> <li>• Brush a valid card once a day: only need to brush the card once in the swiping interval defined by the time period within one day, even if it is normal to punch in.</li> <li>• Punch-in-free: Setting this shift can avoid swiping cards.</li> </ul>   |
| Overtime Mode   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Computer automatic calculation: It is connected with "whether the delay counts overtime" in the time period. When "whether the delay counts overtime" is "no", the delayed overtime is not calculated, and the overtime time of the overtime bill is not calculated at the same time.</li> <li>• Overtime must be applied: delayed overtime is not calculated, only the overtime order shall prevail; When the signing-back time is less than the end time of overtime, the overtime time is not calculated.</li> <li>• Not counting overtime: overtime hours are not counted for delayed overtime or overtime application.</li> </ul> |

Table 6- 9 Description of Key Parameters of Temporary Scheduling

## Clear Cycle Schedule

**Step 1:** In the **Attendance** module, select **Scheduling Management > Personnel Scheduling**, check the personnel under the department that needs scheduling or the designated personnel, and click **Periodic Scheduling**.

**Step 2:** Configure scheduling information in the pop-up **Clear Cycle Schedule** window.

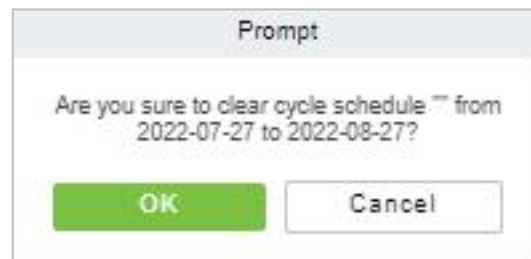



Figure 6- 37 Group Clear cycle Schedule

## 6.5.4 Schedule Details

After setting the attendance time period and shift, you can schedule the personnel.

### 6.5.4.1 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Schedule** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

### 6.5.4.2 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format

## 6.6 Exception

### 6.6.1 Appended Log

In the case of personnel going out on business or forgetting to punch in, the manual supplementary recording of attendance records in the attendance report is called supplementary signing card, which is generally summarized and entered by the management personnel according to the attendance results and the attendance system of the enterprise after the attendance cycle ends.

#### 6.6.1.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Exception Management > Appended Log** and click Add.

**Step 2:** Configure the card replacement information in the pop-up **Add** window, first select the "Department" where the person to be resigned is located, then select the person to be resigned, and finally enter the date and time of the card replacement.

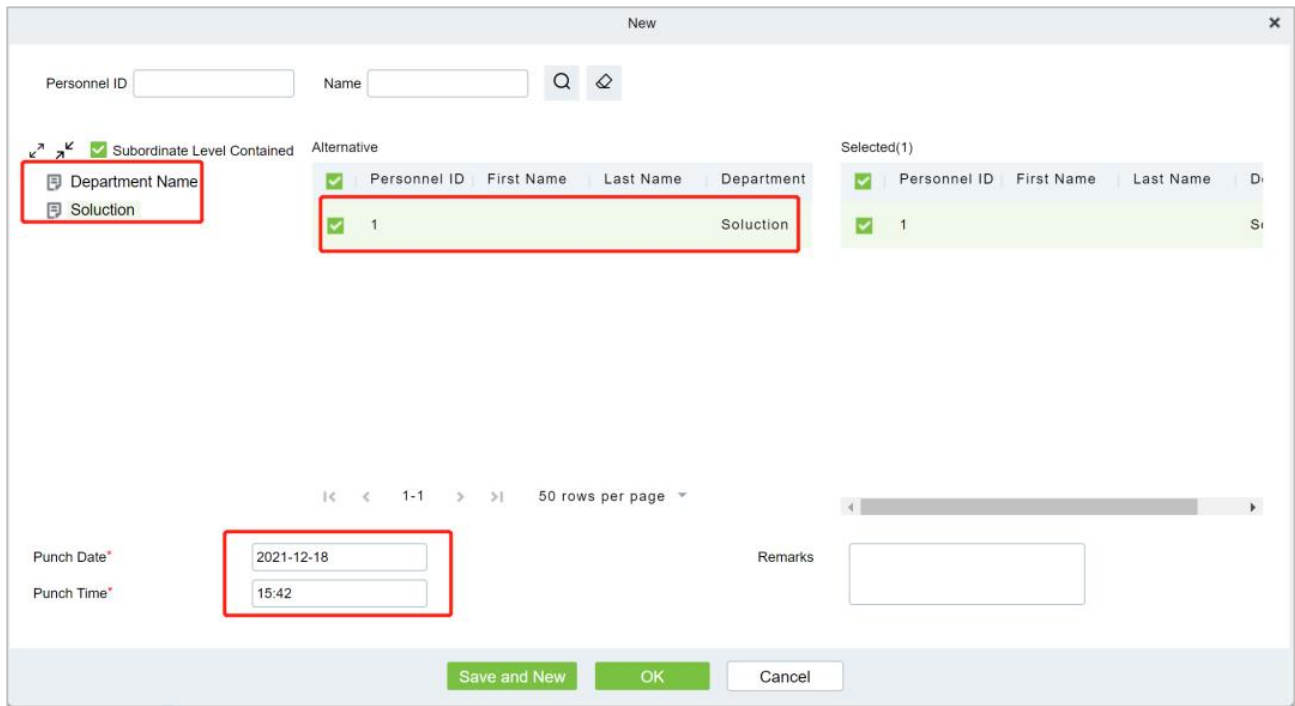



Figure 6- 38 Replacement Card

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

### 6.6.1.2 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Appended Log** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

### 6.6.1.3 Approval

**Passed:** The approval by the Supervisor, and more than a certain number of days approved by the Manager.

**Refused:** The denial of leave by the immediate Supervisor and the Manager.

### 6.6.1.4 Export

You can export all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.6.1.5 Import

You can import all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

## 6.6.2 Ask For Leave

When encountering special circumstances, people may need to take time off for different reasons, and hope that the time off can be displayed in the system statistics.

### 6.6.2.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Exception Management > Leave** and click New.

**Step 2:** Configure the leave form information in the pop-up **Add** window, first select the "Department" where the person to take leave is located, then select the leave person, finally enter the leave time, and

optionally upload the leave attachment.

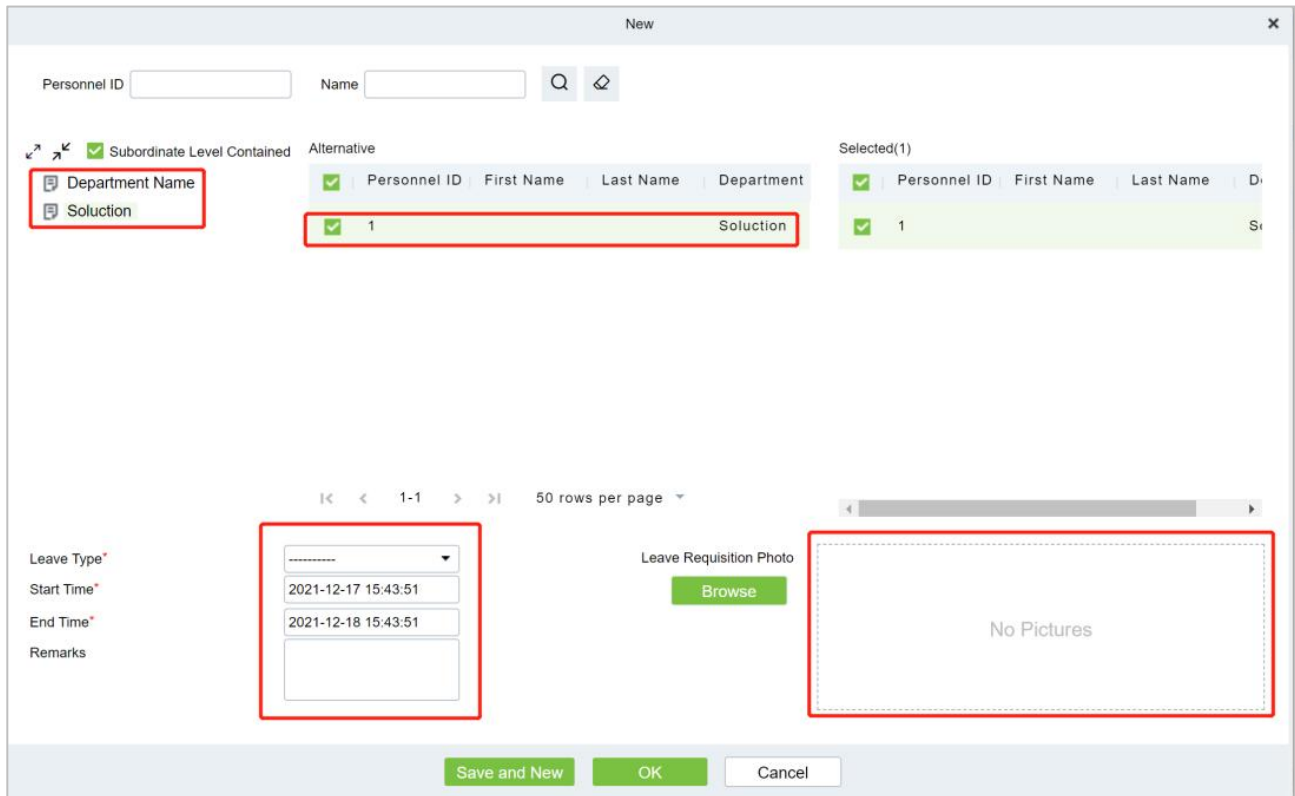



Figure 6- 39 Leave Request Form

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

### 6.6.2.2 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Leave** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

### 6.6.2.3 Approval

**Passed:** The approval by the Supervisor, and more than a certain number of days approved by the Manager.

**Refused:** The denial of leave by the immediate Supervisor and the Manager.

### 6.6.2.4 Export

You can export all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.6.2.5 Import

You can import all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

## 6.6.3 Overtime

### 6.6.3.1 New

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Exception Management > Overtime** and click **New**.

**Step 2:** Configure overtime form information in the pop-up **Add** window, first select the "Department" where the person to work overtime is located, then select the overtime person, and finally enter

overtime hours.

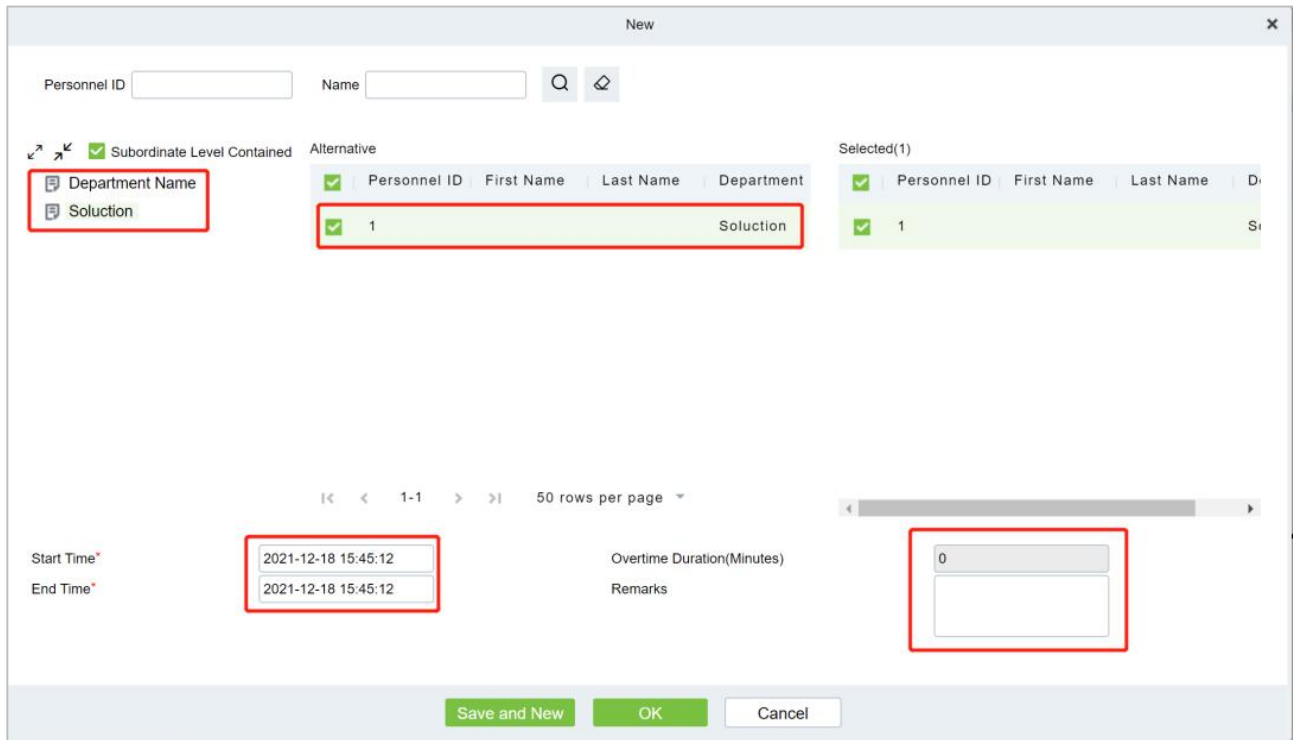



Figure 6- 40 Overtime Form

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

### 6.6.3.2 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Overtime** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

### 6.6.3.3 Approval

**Passed:** The approval by the Supervisor, and more than a certain number of days approved by the Manager.

**Refused:** The denial of leave by the immediate Supervisor and the Manager.

### 6.6.3.4 Export

You can export all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.6.3.5 Import

You can import all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

## 6.6.4 Adjust Rest

### 6.6.4.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Exception Management > Leave Adjustment** and click **New**.

**Step 2:** In the pop-up **Add** window, configure the information of the leave adjustment form, first select the "Department" of the person to be transferred, then select the person to be transferred, and finally

enter the leave adjustment time.

The screenshot shows a web application window titled "New" with a close button (X). At the top, there are two search input fields: "Personnel ID" and "Name", followed by search and refresh icons. Below these are two expandable sections: "Subordinate Level Contained" (checked) and "Alternative". The "Alternative" section contains a table with columns: "Personnel ID", "First Name", "Last Name", "Department", and "Selected(0)". The table has one row with values: "2", "1", "Department", and an empty "Selected(0)" cell. Below the table are navigation icons and a "50 rows per page" dropdown. At the bottom of the form are two input fields: "Adjust Date\*" (containing "2021-12-20") and "Remarks". At the very bottom are three buttons: "Save and New" (green), "OK" (green), and "Cancel" (white).

**Figure 6- 41 Leave Adjustment Form**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

#### 6.6.4.2 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Adjust Rest** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

#### 6.6.4.3 Approval

**Passed:** The approval by the Supervisor, and more than a certain number of days approved by the Manager.

**Refused:** The denial of leave by the immediate Supervisor and the Manager.

#### 6.6.4.4 Export

You can export all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

#### 6.6.4.5 Import

You can import all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.6.5 Shift Adjustment

#### 6.6.5.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Exception Management > Shift Adjustment** and click New.

**Step 2:** In the pop-up **Add** window, configure the shift adjustment list information, first enter the shift adjustment "Personnel Number", then select "shift Adjustment Date", and finally select "shift Adjustment Name".


The screenshot shows a 'New' window for creating a leave adjustment. It contains the following fields: 'Adjust Type' with a dropdown menu showing 'Adjust the personal s...'; 'Personnel ID\*' with the value '1'; 'First Name' with an empty text box; 'Department Name' with the value 'Solution'; 'Adjust Date\*' with the value '2021-12-18'; 'Adjust Shift Name' with a dropdown menu showing '-----'; and 'Remarks' with a large empty text area. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Save and New' (green), 'OK' (green), and 'Cancel' (white).

Figure 6- 42 Leave Adjustment Form

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

### 6.6.5.2 Delete

**Step 1:** In the **Adjust Shift** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

### 6.6.5.3 Approval

**Passed:** The approval by the Supervisor, and more than a certain number of days approved by the Manager.

**Refused:** The denial of leave by the immediate Supervisor and the Manager.

### 6.6.5.4 Export

You can export all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 6.6.5.5 Import

You can import all logs in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

## 6.6.6 Attendance Detail Report

The screenshot shows a dropdown menu for 'Attendance Detail Rep...'. The menu is open, displaying three options: 'Manual Calculate', 'Transactions', and 'Daily Attendance'. The 'Attendance Detail Rep...' header has a small bar chart icon and a downward arrow.

Figure 6- 43

### 6.6.6.1 Manual Calculation

In the Attendance Report, you can review an individual's clock-in record and verify their attendance status through attendance calculation. If the status is accurate, it indicates that the attendance business configuration is complete.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In **Attendance** Module, select **Detailed Report > Manual Calculation**, check the person who needs to perform attendance calculation, and click **Attendance Calculation**.

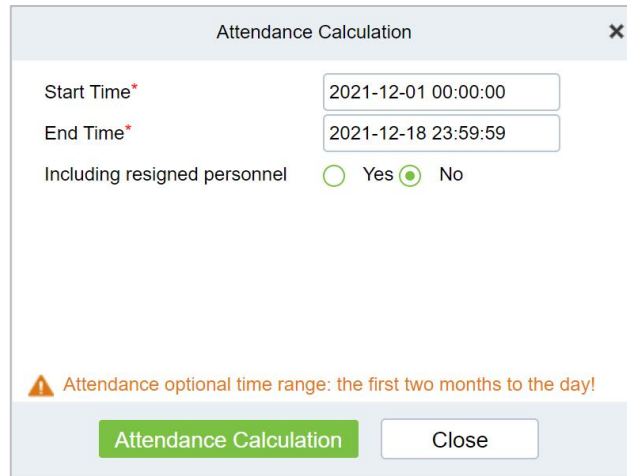


Figure 6- 44 Manual Calculation

### 6.6.6.2 Attendance Transaction

This interface will display attendance records for all employees, including those from uploaded attendance transactions. The original record for a normal punch on the device will be uploaded to the software. When a specific data point is selected, its details will be shown on the right side of the page.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Attendance module, select **Detailed Report > Transaction**.

**Step 2:** In the original record table interface, fill in the corresponding query information, and click the **Query** symbol to complete the query of all record tables.

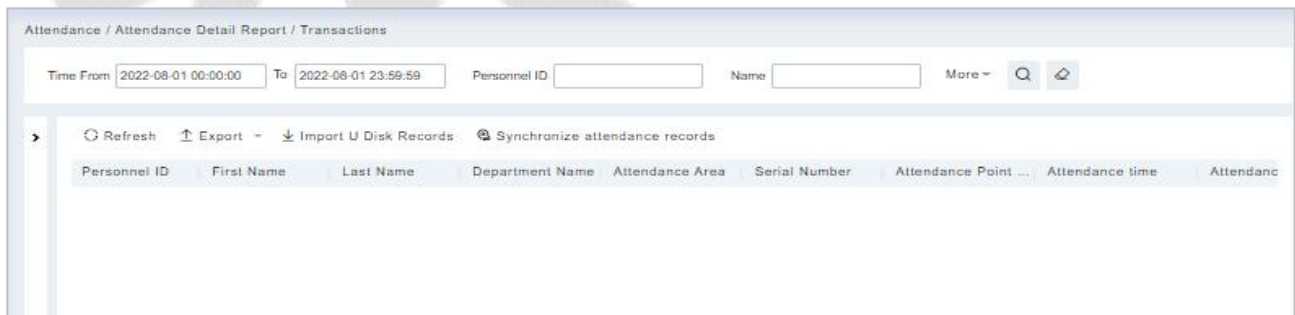


Figure 6- 45 Report Query Interface

**Export:**

**Step 1:** In the original record table interface, click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

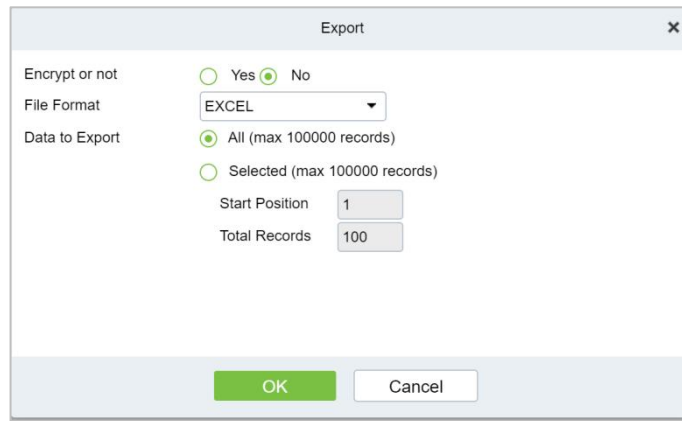


Figure 6- 46 Report Export Interface

**Step 2:** After selecting the address where the corresponding file is stored, the export of the file can be completed.

**Import U Disk Records:**

The “Import U disk record” feature allows you to import the device data (including access control, parking, Facekiosk, Video records) to the transaction table.

**Synchronize Attendance Records:**

The access control records can be synchronized to attendance records through this function. Select the start time and end time to import, check the attendance point list and click **OK**.

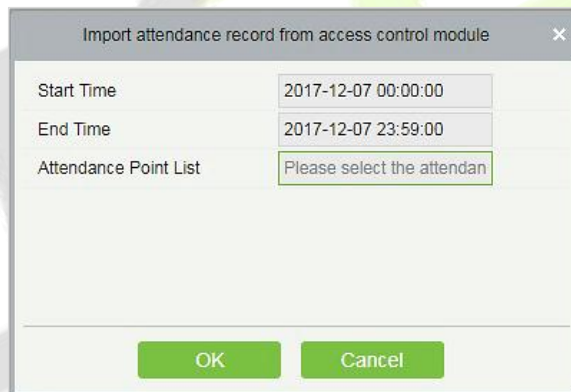


Figure 6- 47 Synchronize Attendance Records

**6.6.6.3 Daily Attendance**

The table shows personnel’s daily attendance status, punch time, the early leaving time, the latest time, the detailed punch time during the selected period.

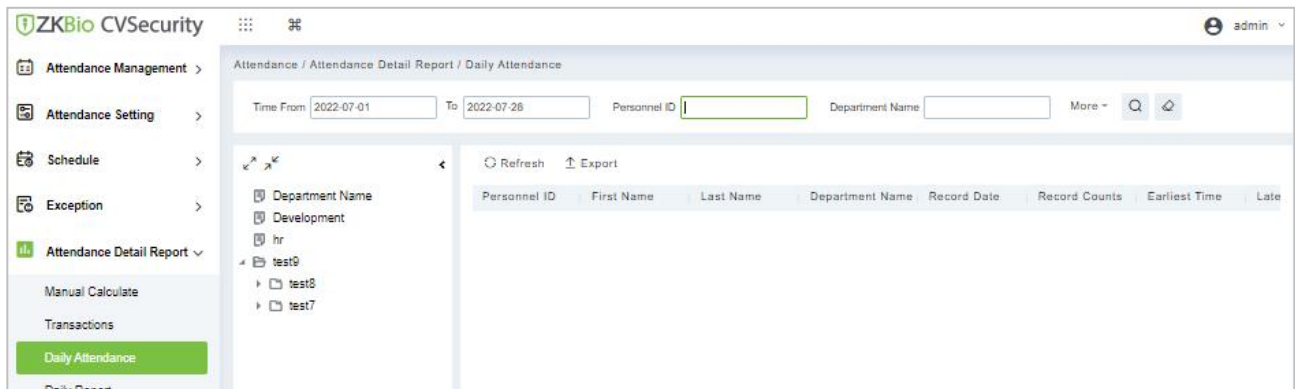


Figure 6- 48 Daily Attendance

### 6.6.7 Daily Attendance Report

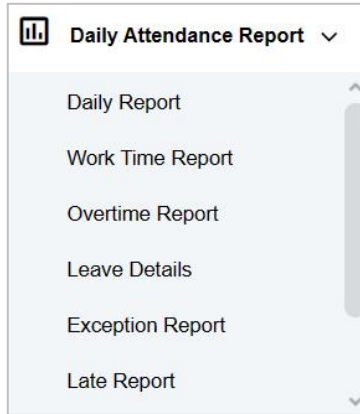


Figure 6- 49 Daily Attendance Report Interface

#### 6.6.7.1 Daily Report

The table shows personnel’s daily attendance status, punch time, the early leaving time, the latest time, the detailed punch time during the selected period.

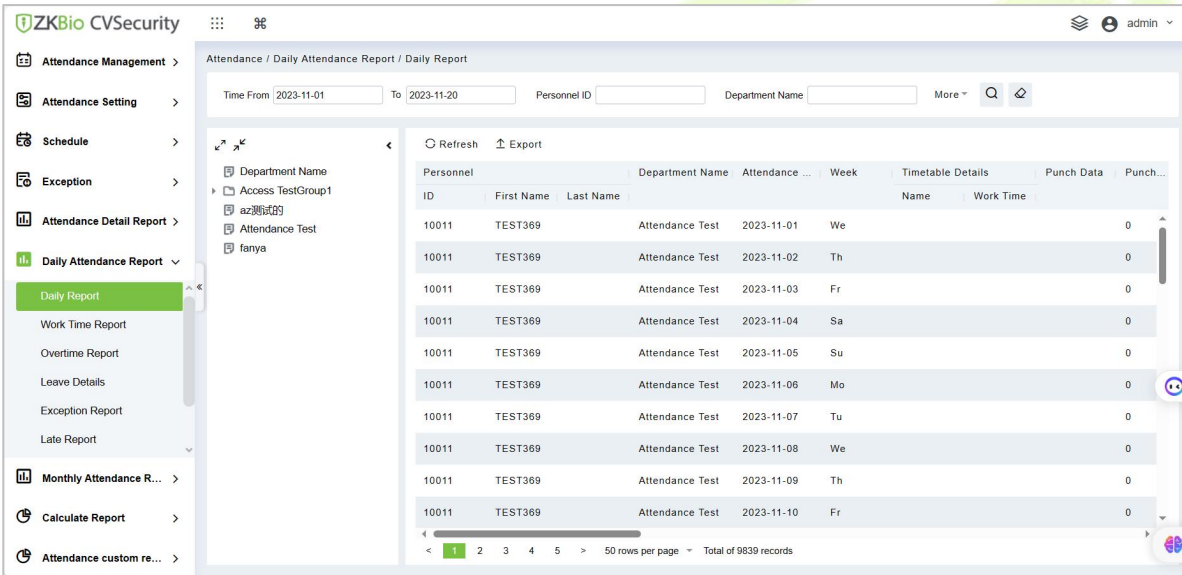


Figure 6- 50 Daily Report Interface

#### Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | Attendance Date | Week | Timetable Details |           | Punch Data | Punch Counts | Expected/Actual/Invalid |          |       |        | Counts | Duration | Total | Early(in/minute) |       |         | Overtime(hour) |         |       | Absent(hour) | Per% |   |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|------|-------------------|-----------|------------|--------------|-------------------------|----------|-------|--------|--------|----------|-------|------------------|-------|---------|----------------|---------|-------|--------------|------|---|
|              |            |           |                 |                 |      | Name              | Work Time |            |              | Counts                  | Duration | Total | Counts |        |          |       | Duration         | Total | Weekday | Weekend        | Holiday | Total |              |      |   |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-01      | Tu   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    |   |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-02      | Th   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-03      | Fr   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-04      | Sa   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-05      | Su   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-06      | Mo   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-07      | Tu   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-08      | We   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-09      | Th   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |
| 10011        | TEST369    | TEST369   | Attendance Test | 2023-11-10      | Fr   |                   |           | 0          | 0            | 0                       | 0        | 0     | 0      | 0      | 0        | 0     | 0                | 0     | 0       | 0              | 0       | 0     | 0            | 0    | 0 |

Figure 6- 51 Report Export Interface

### 6.6.7.2 Work Time Report

These interfaces display the personnel's work data, including actual work time and overtime data, and allow for the export of the data.

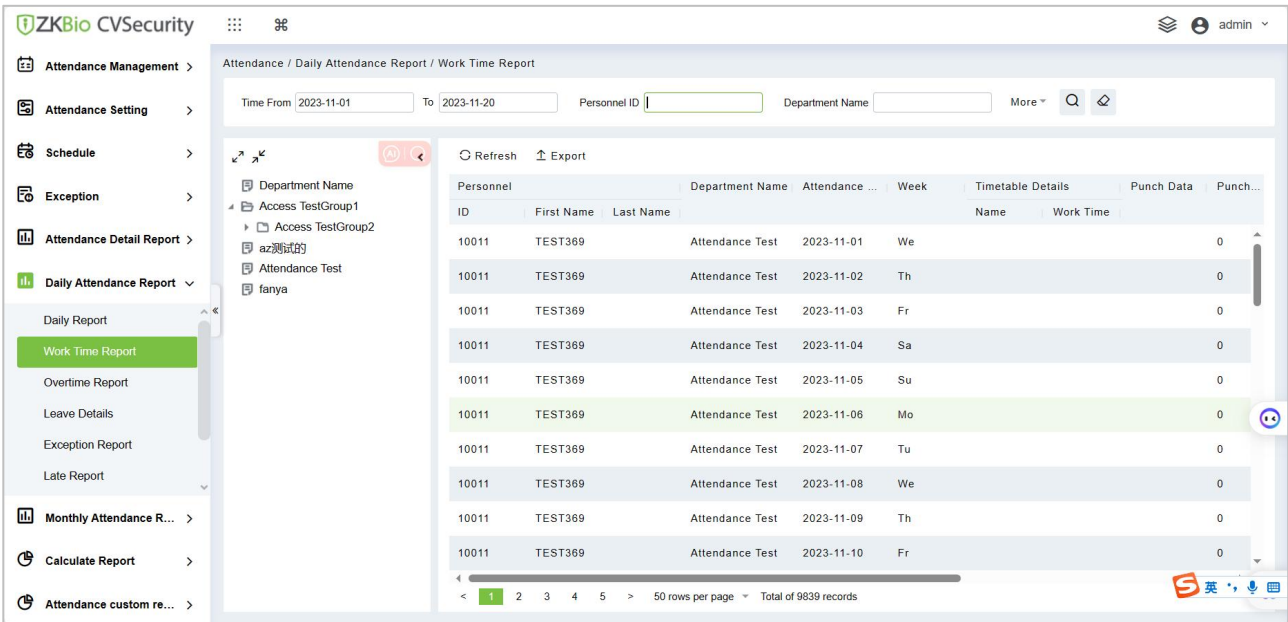


Figure 6- 52 Work Time Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| ID    | Personnel  |           | Department Name | Attendance Date | Week | Timetable Details |           | Punch Data | Punch Counts | Expected/Actual(minute) |        |       | Overtime(hour) |         |         |       |
|-------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|------|-------------------|-----------|------------|--------------|-------------------------|--------|-------|----------------|---------|---------|-------|
|       | First Name | Last Name |                 |                 |      | Name              | Work Time |            |              | Should                  | Actual | Valid | Weekday        | Weekend | Holiday | Total |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-01      | We   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-02      | Th   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-03      | Fr   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-04      | Sa   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-05      | Su   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-06      | Mo   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-07      | Tu   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-08      | We   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-09      | Th   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-10      | Fr   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-11      | Sa   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-12      | Su   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-13      | Mo   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-14      | Tu   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-15      | We   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-16      | Th   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-17      | Fr   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-18      | Sa   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |
| 10011 | TEST369    |           | Attendance      | 2023-11-19      | Su   |                   |           |            | 0            | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0     | 0.0   |

Figure 6- 53 Report Export Interface

### 6.6.7.3 Overtime Report

The Overtime report interface displays the overtime work hours of the personnel and allows for the export of the details.

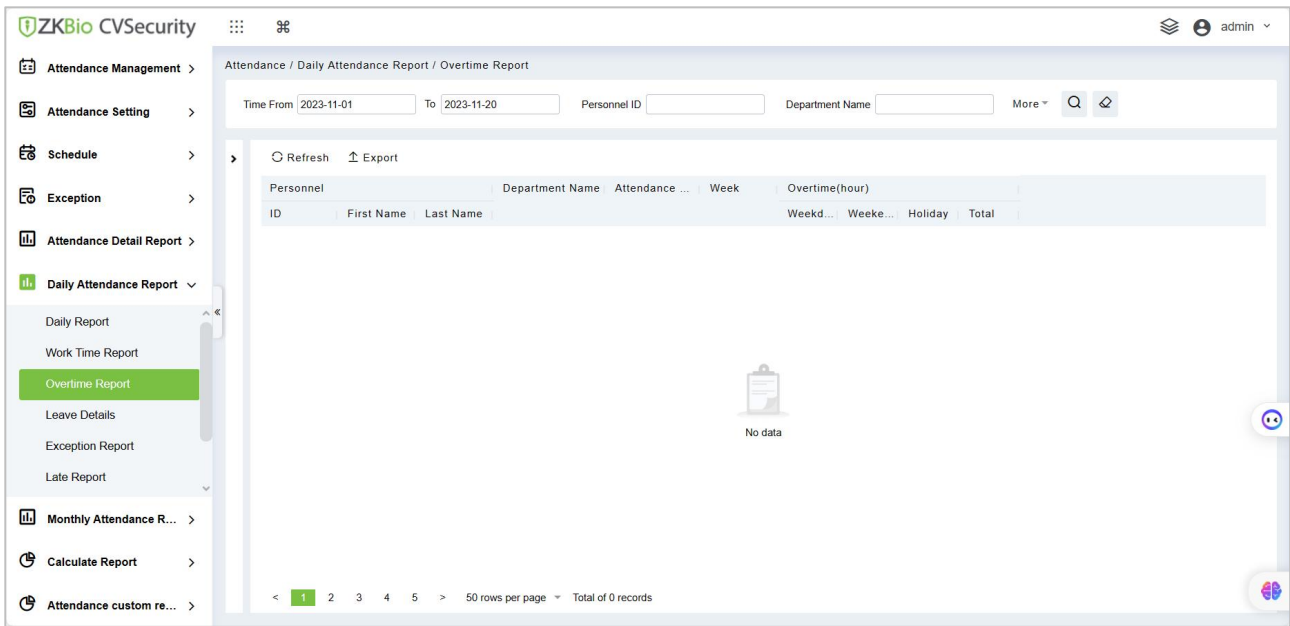


Figure 6- 54 Overtime Perport Interface

Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

### 6.6.7.4 Leave Details

Personnel can apply for leave, and the requests will be displayed here.

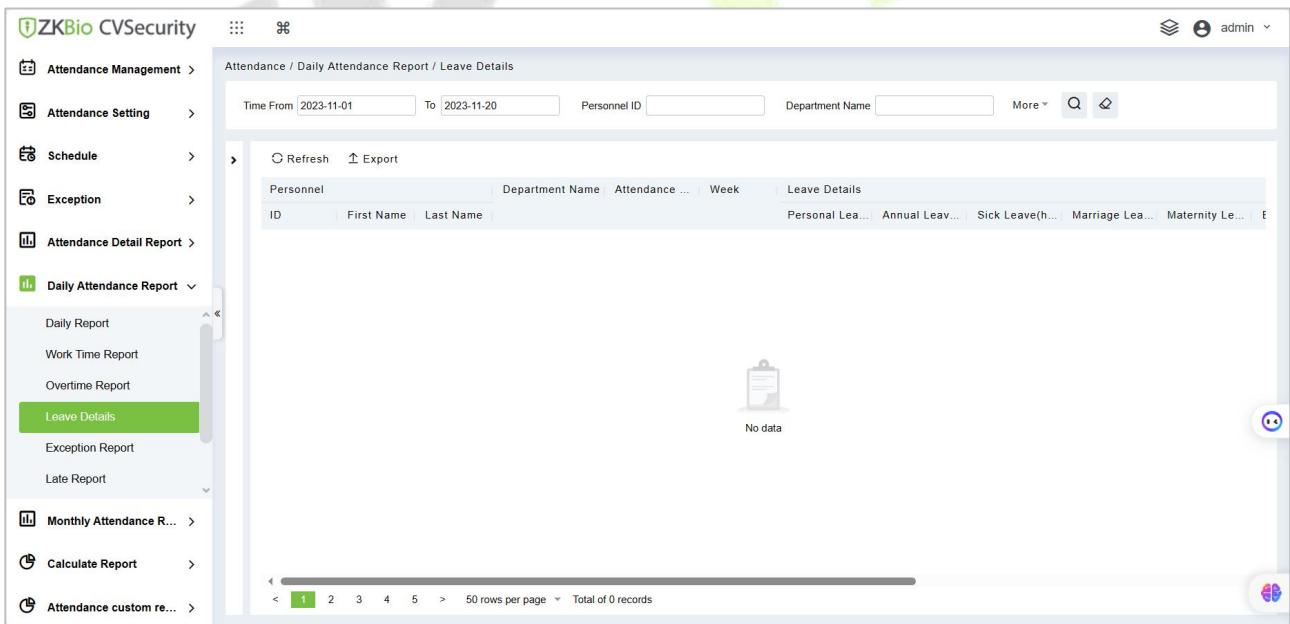


Figure 6- 55 Leave Details Interface

Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

### 6.6.7.5 Exception Report

It displays all the attendance exceptions like misses in and out punches.

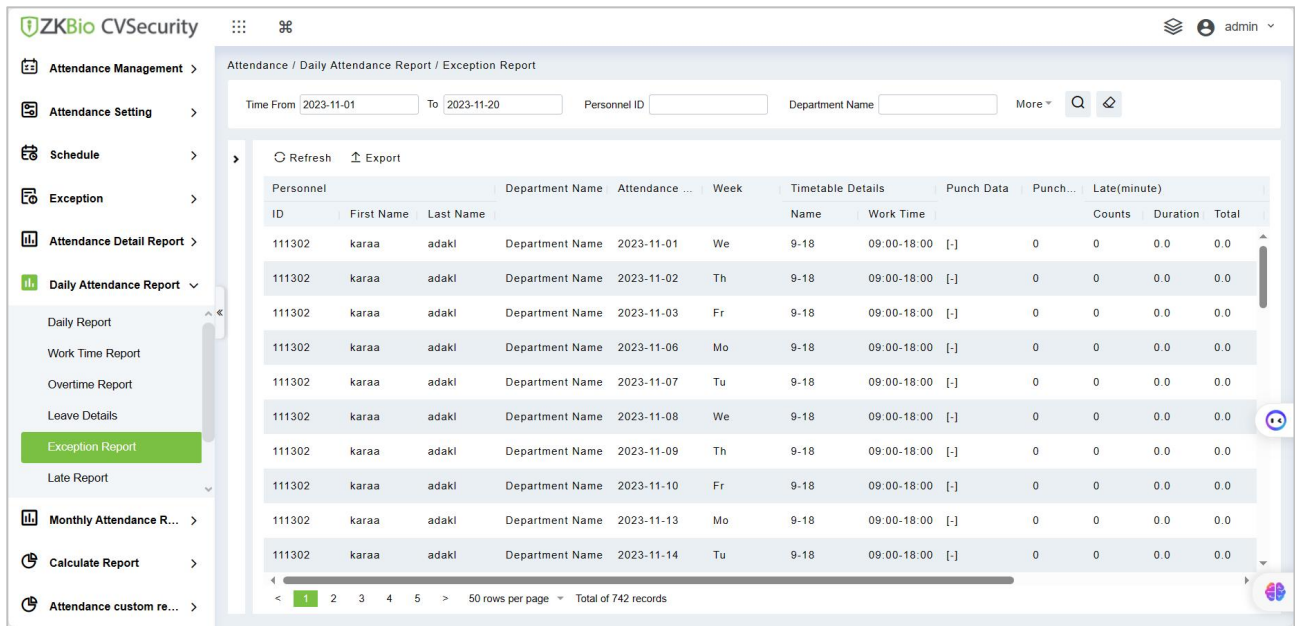


Figure 6- 56 Exception Report Interface

●Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| Exception Report |            |           |                 |                 |      |                   |           |            |             |               |          |       |                |          |       |              |
|------------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|------|-------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|---------------|----------|-------|----------------|----------|-------|--------------|
| ID               | Personnel  |           | Department Name | Attendance Date | Week | Timetable Details |           | Punch Data | Punch Count | Late (minute) |          |       | Early (minute) |          |       | Absent(hour) |
|                  | First Name | Last Name |                 |                 |      | Name              | Work Time |            |             | Counts        | Duration | Total | Counts         | Duration | Total |              |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-01      | We   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-02      | Th   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-03      | Fr   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-06      | Mo   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-07      | Tu   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-08      | We   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-09      | Th   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-10      | Fr   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-13      | Mo   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-14      | Tu   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-15      | We   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-16      | Th   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |
| 111302           | karaa      | adakl     | Department      | 2023-11-17      | Fr   | 9-18              | 09:00-    | [-]        | 0           | 0             | 0.0      | 0.0   | 0              | 0.0      | 0.0   | 9.0          |

Figure 6- 57 Report Export Interface

6.6.7.6 Late Report

The list displays the late arrival time of the employees.

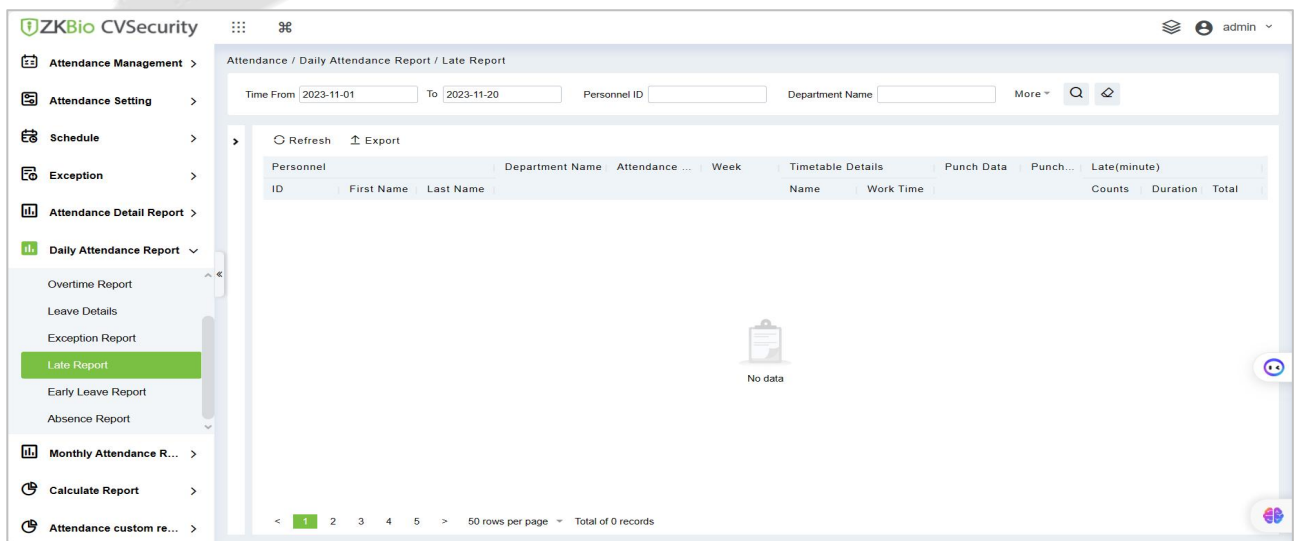


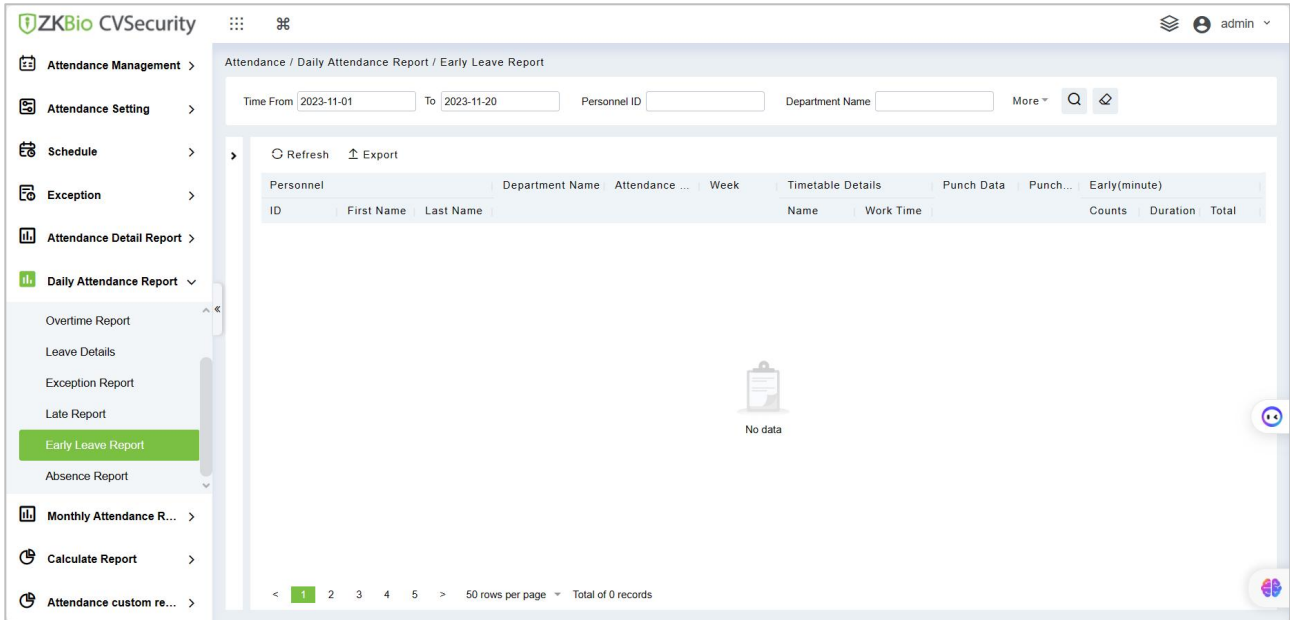
Figure 6- 58 Late Report Interface

**Export:**

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

**6.6.7.7 Early Leave Report**

The list shows the time of the early leave of the employees.



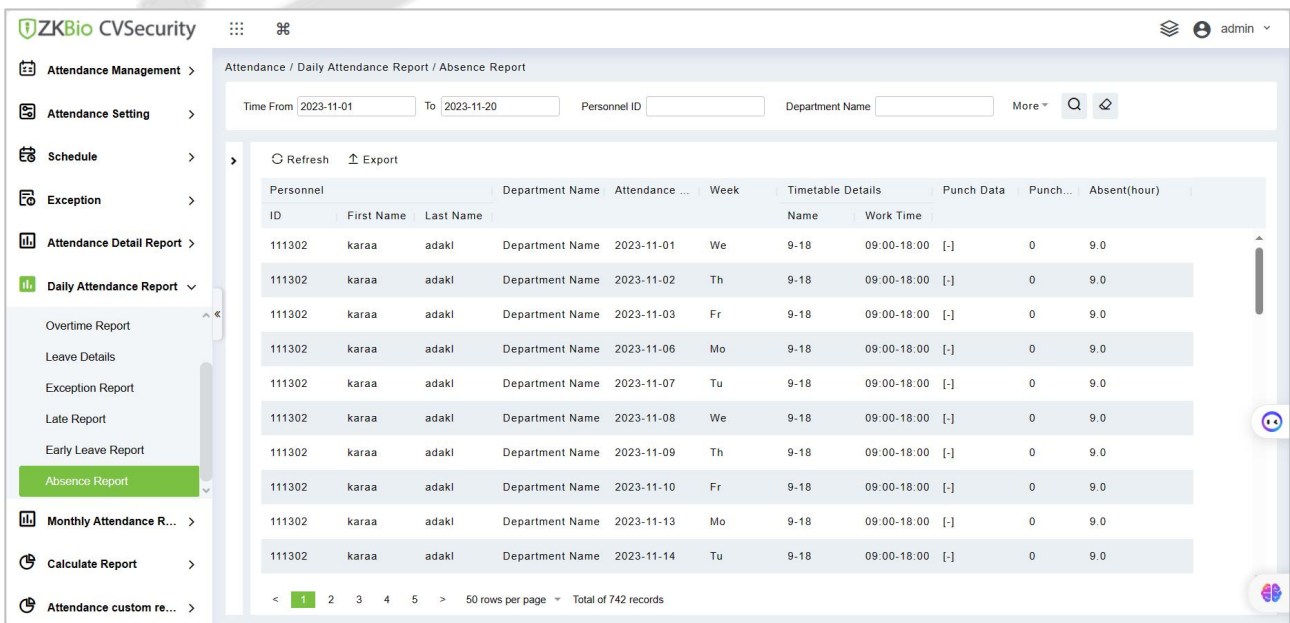
**Figure 6- 59**

**Export:**

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

**6.6.7.8 Absence Report**

The list displays the late arrival, early leave, and absent details of the employees.



**Figure 6- 60 Absence Report Interface**

**Export:**

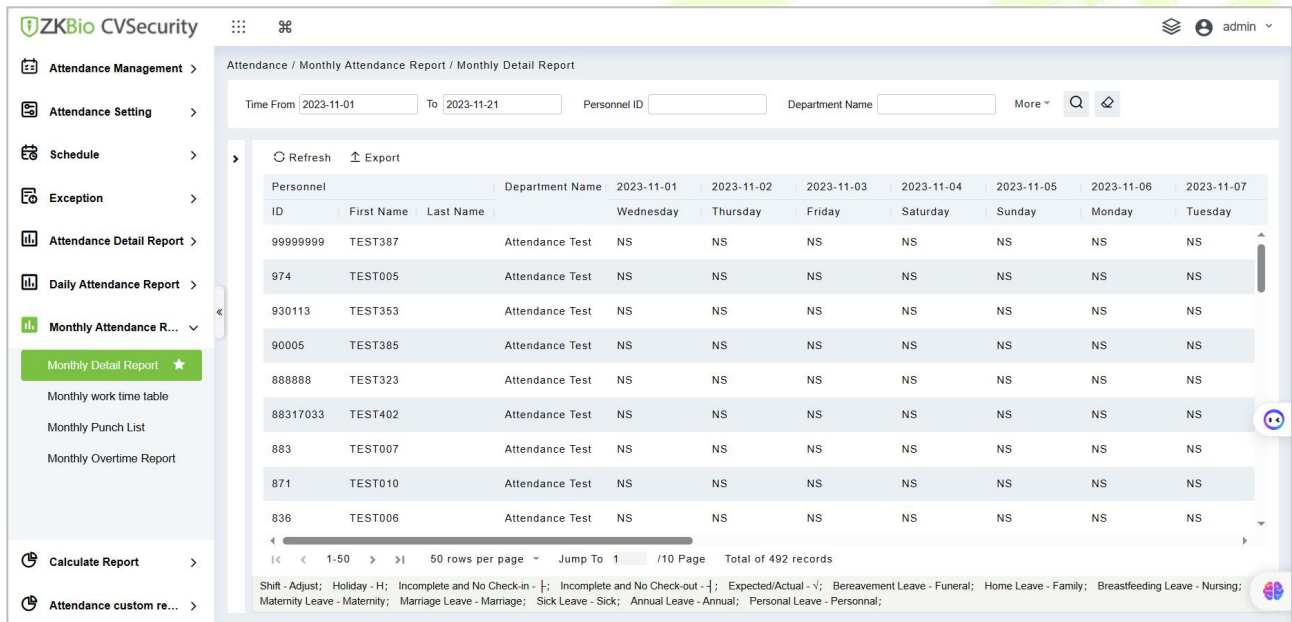
Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

**6.6.8 Monthly Attendance Report**



**6.6.8.1 Monthly Detail Report**

The Monthly Detail Report is used to analyse the entire attendance of all the employees in that month. It includes Present hours, Absent hours, Holidays, Weekly-off and shifts so on



**Figure 6- 61 Monthly Detail Report Interface**

● **Export:**

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| Personnel |            |           |                 | Monthly Detail Report   |                        |                      |                        |                      |                      |                       |                         |                        |   |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---|
| ID        | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | 2023-11-01<br>Wednesday | 2023-11-02<br>Thursday | 2023-11-03<br>Friday | 2023-11-04<br>Saturday | 2023-11-05<br>Sunday | 2023-11-06<br>Monday | 2023-11-07<br>Tuesday | 2023-11-08<br>Wednesday | 2023-11-09<br>Thursday | 2 |
| 99999999  | TEST387    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 974       | TEST005    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 930113    | TEST353    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 90005     | TEST385    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 888888    | TEST323    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 88317033  | TEST402    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 883       | TEST007    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 871       | TEST010    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 836       | TEST006    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 80233     | TEST008    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 8023      | TEST009    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 7777777   | TEST350    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 7658      | TEST352    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |
| 67890     | TEST347    |           | Attendance Test | NS                      | NS                     | NS                   | NS                     | NS                   | NS                   | NS                    | NS                      | NS                     |   |

**Figure 6- 62 Monthly Details Report**

### 6.6.8.2 Monthly Work Time

The monthly work time report gives the details of attendance status, Clock-in time, Clock-out time and the total worked hours.

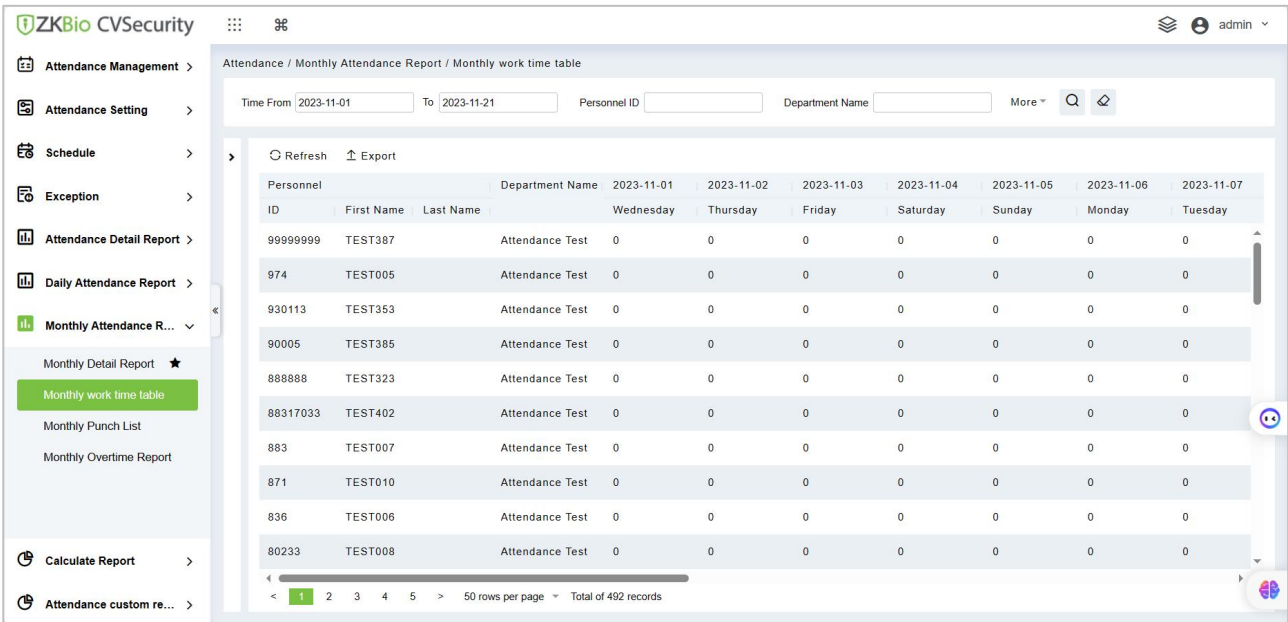


Figure 6- 63 Monthly Work Time Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | Monthly work time table |                        |                      |                        |                      |                      |                       |                         |                        |                      |                        |                      |   |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---|
|              |            |           |                 | 2023-11-01<br>Wednesday | 2023-11-02<br>Thursday | 2023-11-03<br>Friday | 2023-11-04<br>Saturday | 2023-11-05<br>Sunday | 2023-11-06<br>Monday | 2023-11-07<br>Tuesday | 2023-11-08<br>Wednesday | 2023-11-09<br>Thursday | 2023-11-10<br>Friday | 2023-11-11<br>Saturday | 2023-11-12<br>Sunday |   |
| 99999999     | TEST387    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 974          | TEST005    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 930113       | TEST353    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 90005        | TEST385    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 888888       | TEST323    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 88317033     | TEST402    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 883          | TEST007    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 871          | TEST010    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 836          | TEST006    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 80233        | TEST008    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 8023         | TEST009    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 777777       | TEST350    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 7658         | TEST352    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 67890        | TEST347    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 6666666      | TEST391    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 6629         | TEST115    |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60061        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60060        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60059        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60058        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60057        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60056        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60055        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60054        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60053        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |
| 60052        |            |           | Attendance      | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0                    | 0                     | 0                       | 0                      | 0                    | 0                      | 0                    | 0 |

Figure 6- 64 Export Report Interface

### 6.6.8.3 Monthly Punch

The monthly punch Report displays the attendance details namely Status, Clock-in, Clock-out, Early Leave, Late coming, assigned to each employee.

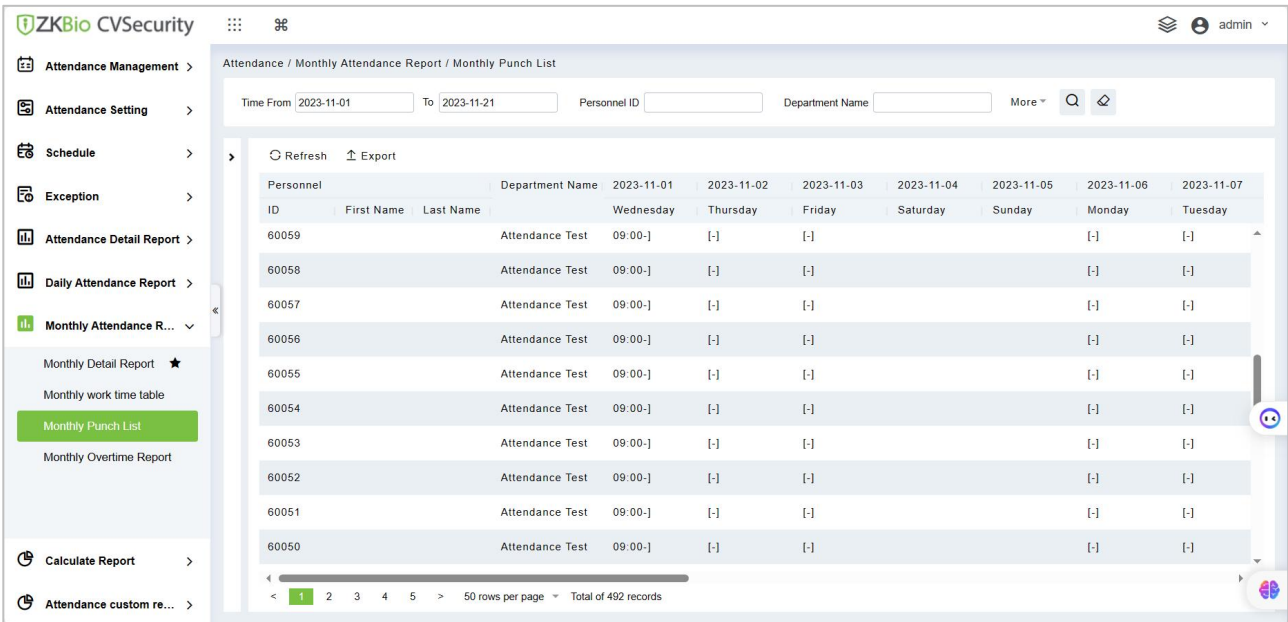


Figure 6- 65 monthly Punch Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| Personnel |            | Department Name | Monthly Punch List |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |
|-----------|------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| ID        | First Name | Last Name       | 2023-11-01         | 2023-11-02 | 2023-11-03 | 2023-11-04 | 2023-11-05 | 2023-11-06 | 2023-11-07 | 2023-11-08 | 2023-11-09 | 2023-11-10 | 2023-11-11 | 2023-11-12 | 2023-11-13 | 2023-11-14 | 2023-11-15 |
|           |            |                 | Wednesday          | Thursday   | Friday     | Saturday   | Sunday     | Monday     | Tuesday    | Wednesday  | Thursday   | Friday     | Saturday   | Sunday     | Monday     | Tuesday    | Wednesday  |
| 99999999  | TEST387    | Attendance      |                    |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |
| 974       | TEST005    | Attendance      |                    |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |
| 930113    | TEST353    | Attendance      |                    |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |
| 90005     | TEST385    | Attendance      |                    |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |
| 888888    | TEST323    | Attendance      |                    |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |
| 88317033  | TEST402    | Attendance      |                    |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |

Figure 6- 66 Export Report Interface

### 6.6.8.4 Monthly Overtime Report

The Overtime Summary Report displays the overtime hours worked by the employees.

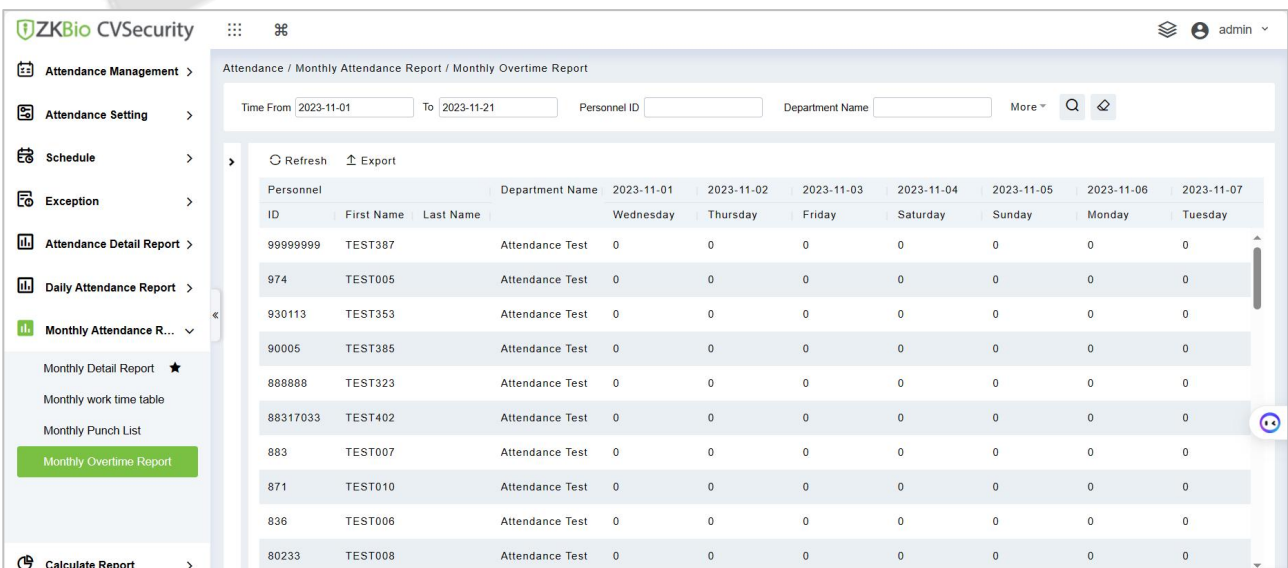


Figure 6- 67 Monthly Overtime Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| Monthly Overtime Report |            |           |                 |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |            |
|-------------------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| ID                      | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | 2023-11-01 | 2023-11-02 | 2023-11-03 | 2023-11-04 | 2023-11-05 | 2023-11-06 | 2023-11-07 | 2023-11-08 | 2023-11-09 | 2023-11-10 | 2023-11-11 | 2023-11-12 | 2023-11-13 | 2023-11-14 | 2023-11-15 |
|                         |            |           |                 | Wednesday  | Thursday   | Friday     | Saturday   | Sunday     | Monday     | Tuesday    | Wednesday  | Thursday   | Friday     | Saturday   | Sunday     | Monday     | Tuesday    | Wednesday  |
| 99999999                | TEST387    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 974                     | TEST005    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 930113                  | TEST353    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 90005                   | TEST385    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 888888                  | TEST323    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 88317033                | TEST402    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 883                     | TEST007    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 871                     | TEST010    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 836                     | TEST006    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 80233                   | TEST008    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 8023                    | TEST009    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 7777777                 | TEST350    |           | Attendance      | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |

Figure 6- 68 Export Report Interface

## 6.6.9 Calculate Report

### 6.6.9.1 Monthly Staff Report

The Attendance Status Summary report is used to analyse the entire attendance status of all the employees in that month. It includes Present hours, Absent hours, Holidays, Weekly-off and so on.

| Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | Expected/Actual(minute) |        |       | Late(minute) |        | Early(minute) |        | Overtime(hour) |         |       | Total | Absent(hour) | Personal L |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------------|--------|-------|--------------|--------|---------------|--------|----------------|---------|-------|-------|--------------|------------|
|              |            |           |                 | Should                  | Actual | Valid | Duration     | Counts | Duration      | Counts | Weekend        | Holiday | Total |       |              |            |
| 99999999     | TEST387    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 974          | TEST005    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 930113       | TEST353    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 90005        | TEST385    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 888888       | TEST323    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 88317033     | TEST402    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 883          | TEST007    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 871          | TEST010    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 836          | TEST006    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |
| 80233        | TEST008    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |

Figure 6- 69 Monthly Staff Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

| Monthly Staff Report |            |           |                 |                         |        |       |              |        |               |        |                |         |       |       |              |            |  |
|----------------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------------|--------|-------|--------------|--------|---------------|--------|----------------|---------|-------|-------|--------------|------------|--|
| ID                   | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | Expected/Actual(minute) |        |       | Late(minute) |        | Early(minute) |        | Overtime(hour) |         |       | Total | Absent(hour) | Personal L |  |
|                      |            |           |                 | Should                  | Actual | Valid | Duration     | Counts | Duration      | Counts | Weekend        | Holiday | Total |       |              |            |  |
| 99999999             | TEST387    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 974                  | TEST005    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 930113               | TEST353    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 90005                | TEST385    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 888888               | TEST323    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 88317033             | TEST402    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 883                  | TEST007    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 871                  | TEST010    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 836                  | TEST006    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 80233                | TEST008    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |
| 8023                 | TEST009    |           | Attendance      | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0      | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0            | 0.0     | 0.0   | 0.0   | 0.0          | 0.0        |  |

Figure 6- 70 Export Report Interface

### 6.6.9.2 Employee Overtime Summary

The Overtime Summary Report displays the overtime hours worked by the employees.

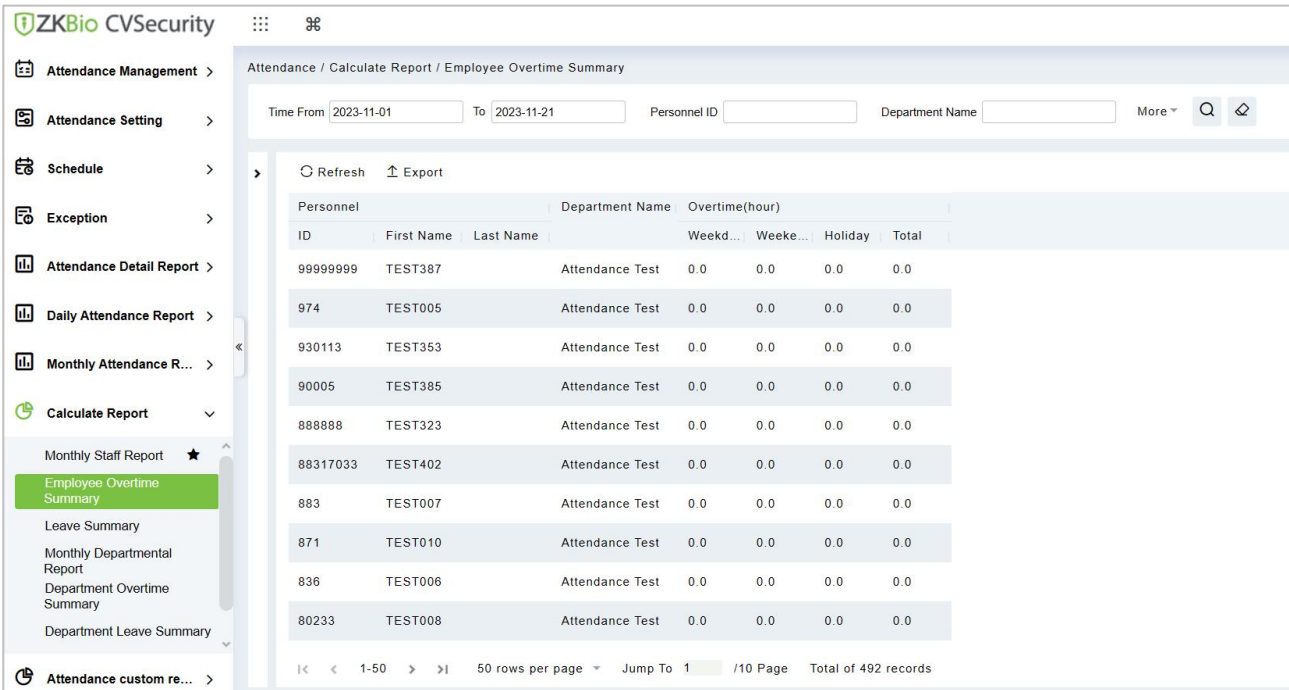


Figure 6- 71 Employee Overtime Summary Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

### 6.6.9.3 Leave Summary

The leave summary displays the total leaves taken by the employees. It includes sick leave, casual leave, parental leave, annual leave, compassionate leave, and more. The procedure to view the leave summary is the same as the Employee Summary

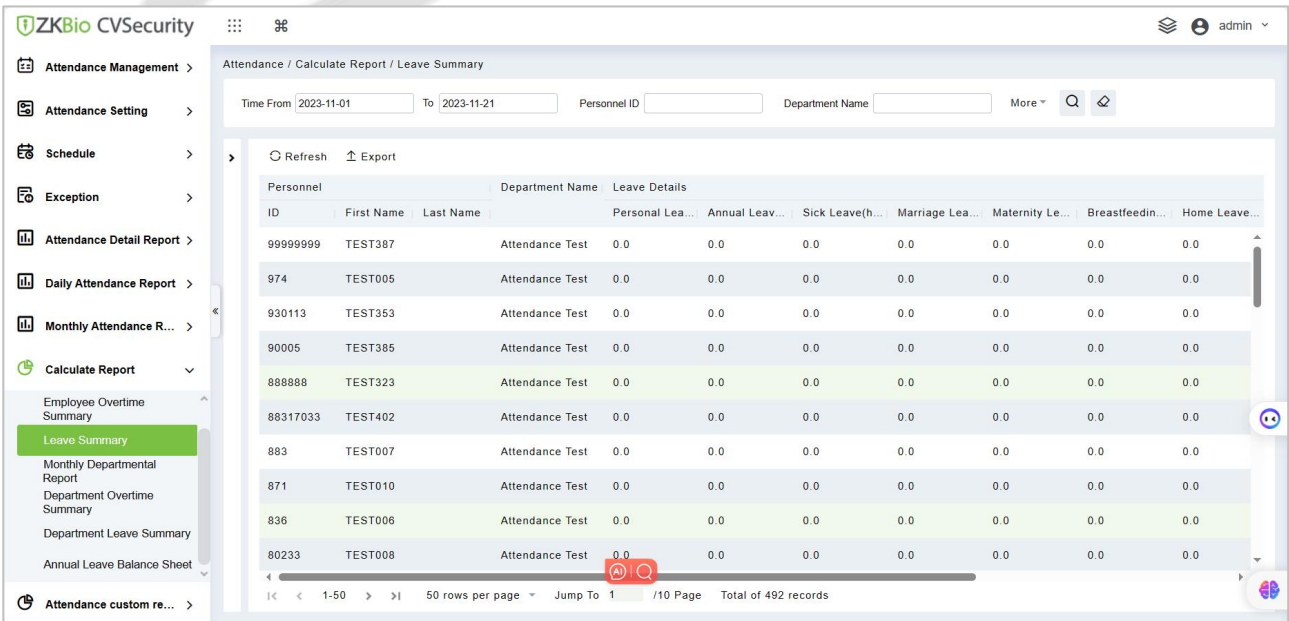


Figure 6- 72 Leave Summary Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

### 6.6.9.4 Monthly Department Summary

The Department Summary displays all the data of a department including the number of employees, late arrivals, leaves, absents, and more(count). The procedure to view the department summary is the same as the Employee Summary.

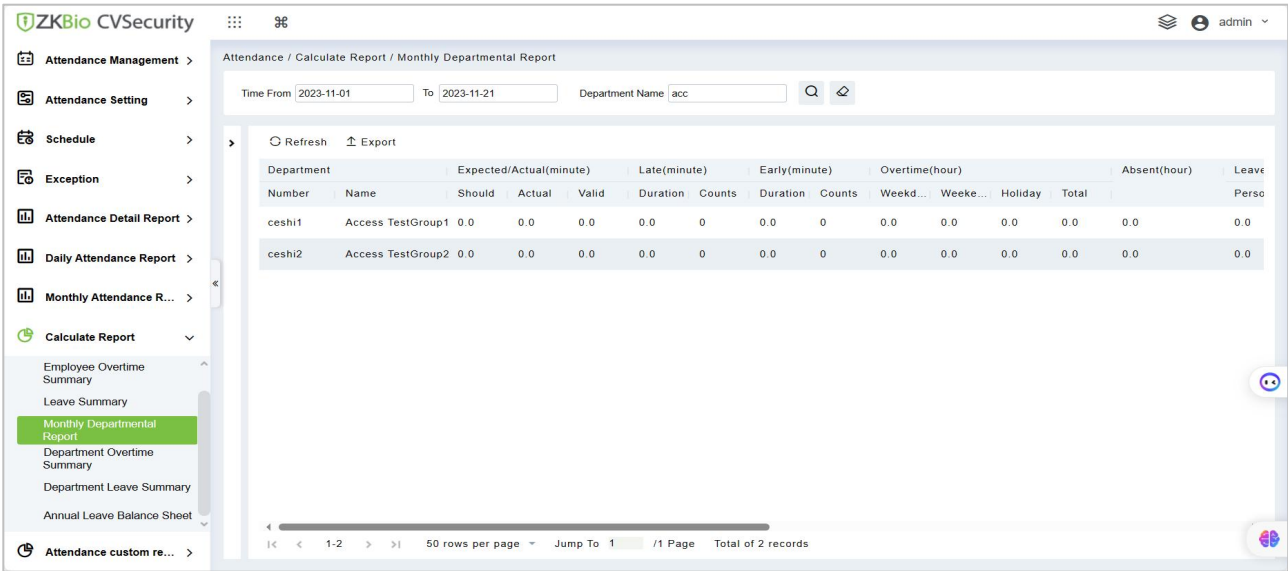


Figure 6- 73 Monthly Department Summary Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

### 6.6.9.5 Department Overtime Summary

The Overtime Summary Report displays the overtime hours worked by the employees in a department.

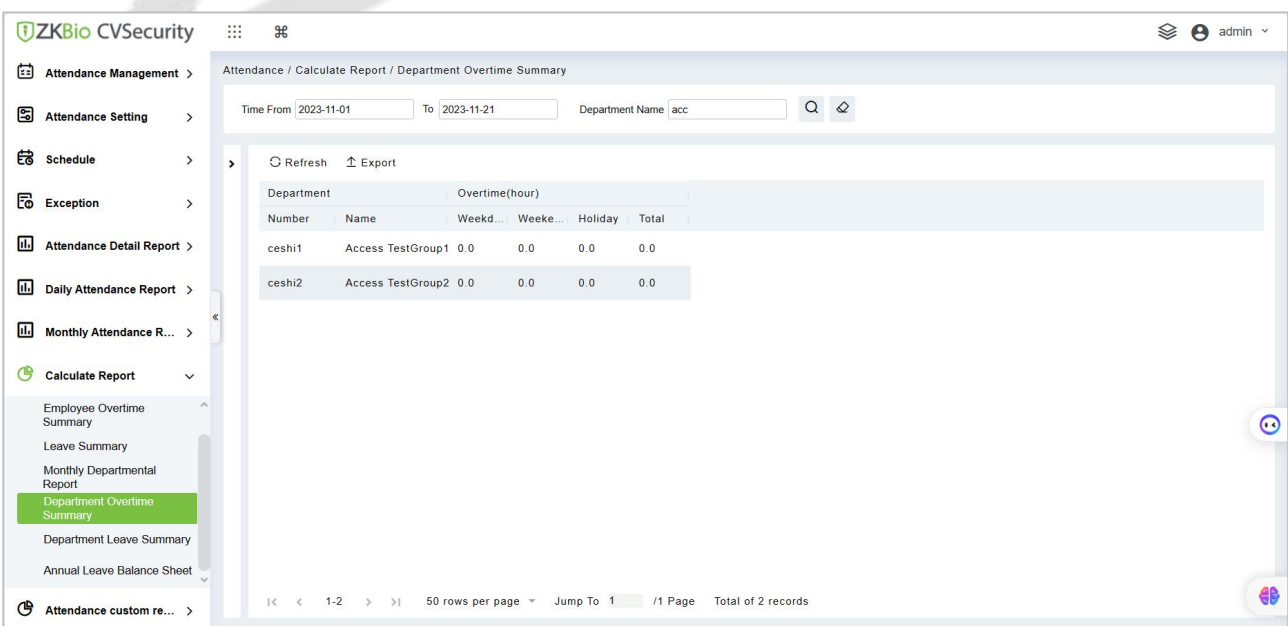


Figure 6- 74 Department Overtime Summary Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

### 6.6.9.6 Department Leave Summary

The department leave summary displays the total leaves taken by the employees in a department. It includes sick leave, casual leave, parental leave, annual leave, compassionate leave, and more.

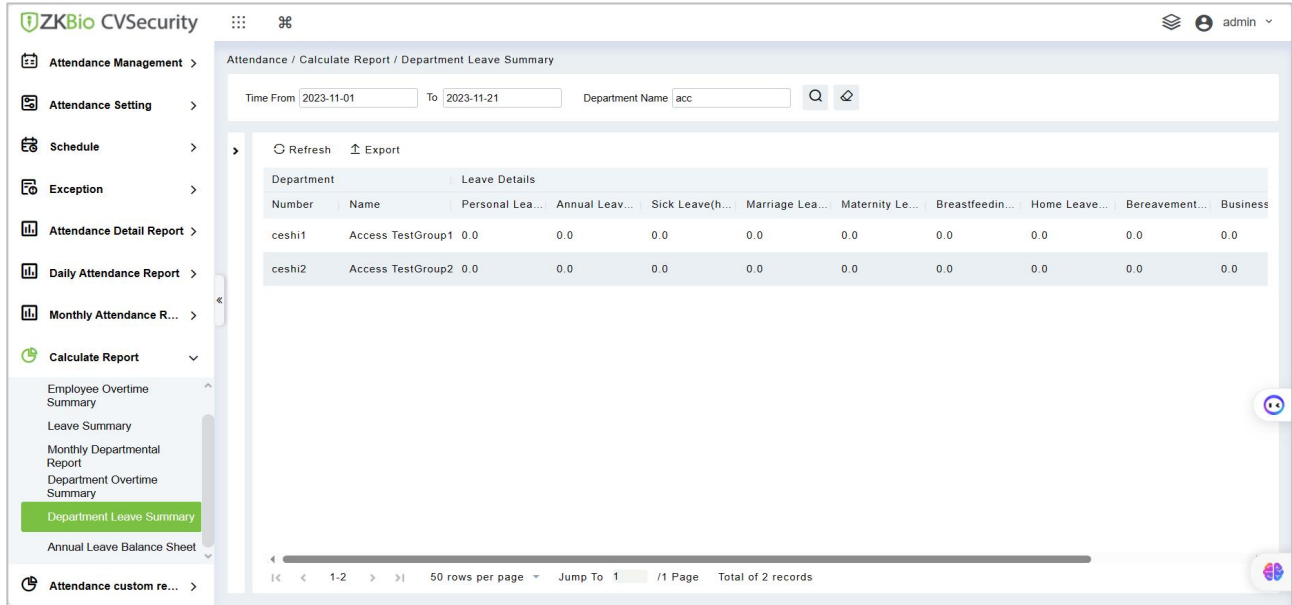


Figure 6- 75 Department Leave Summary Report Interface

● Export:

Click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and click **OK**.

### 6.6.9.7 Annual Leave Balance Summary

The Yearly Summary displays all the data of the employee including the number of late arrivals, leaves, absents, and working (count).

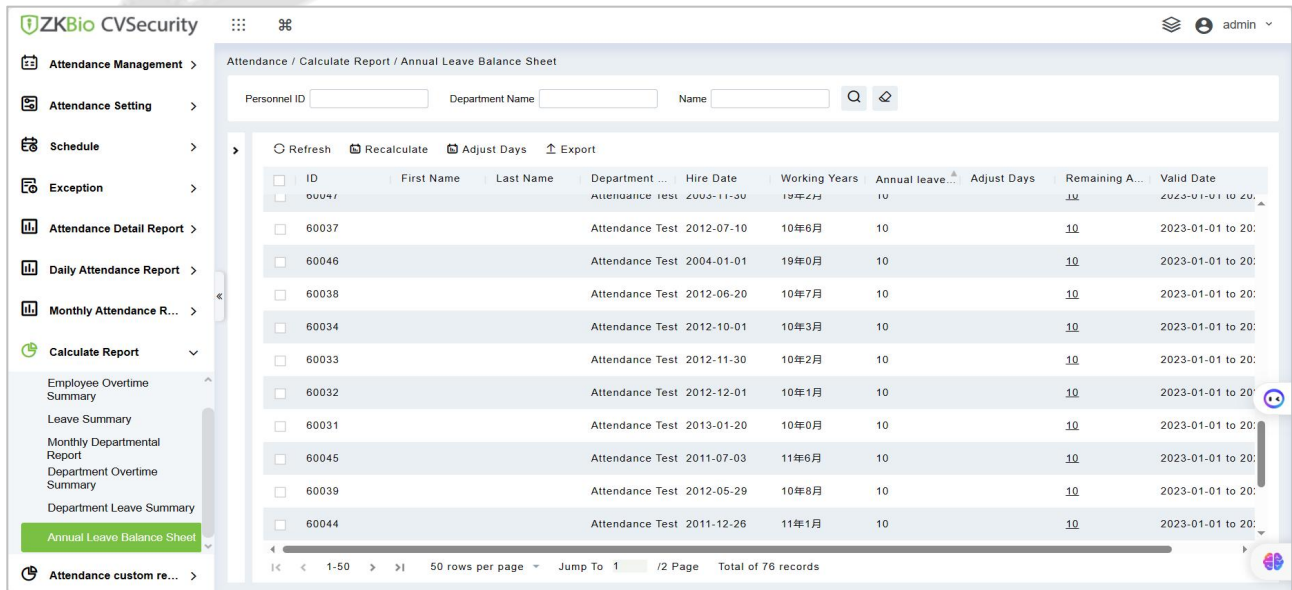


Figure 6- 76 Annual Leave Balance Summary Report Interface

### 6.6.10 Attendance Custom Report

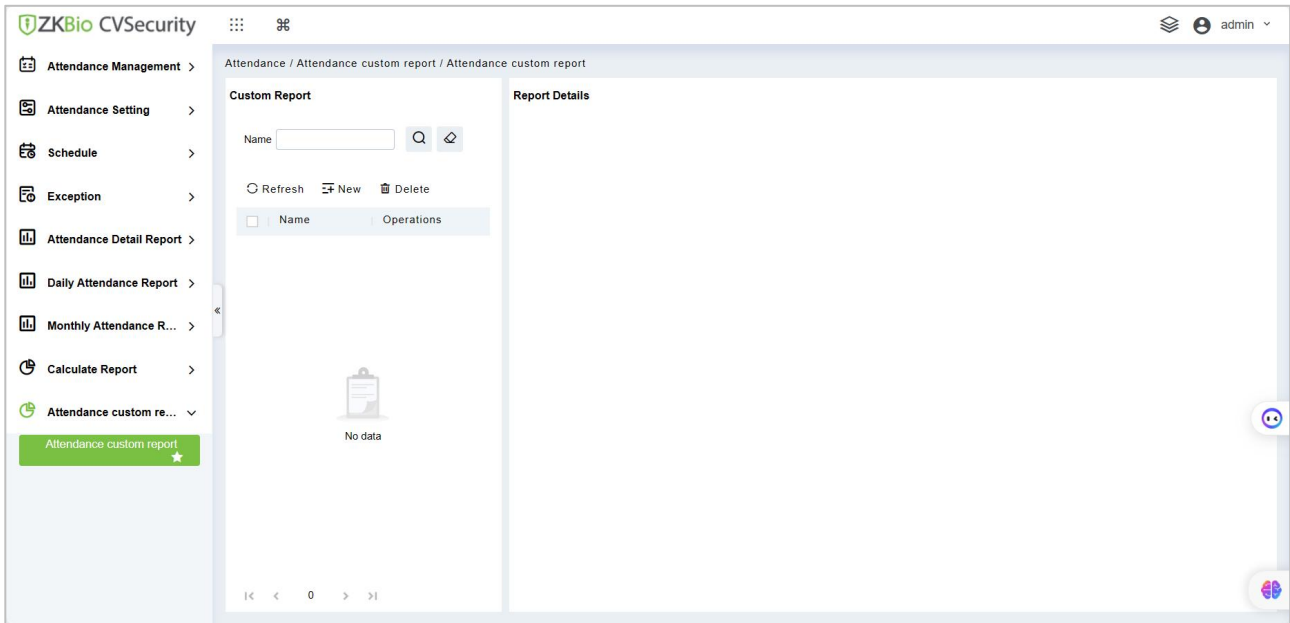


Figure 6- 77

#### 6.6.10.1 New

1. Go to Attendance > Attendance Custom Report, click  New .

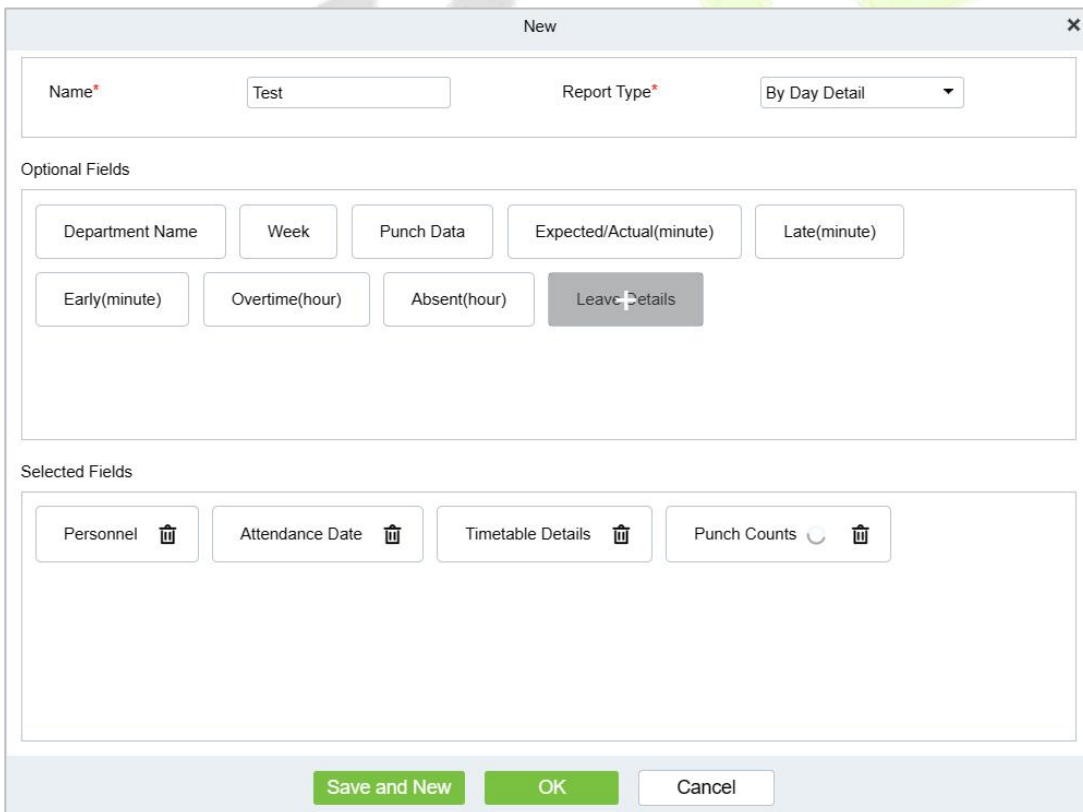


Figure 6- 78

**Name:** The name of your customized report.

**Report Type:** There are 3 types, Summary by Dept, Summary by Person, By Day Detail. Optional fields vary by type.

2. After saving, you can view and export the custom report.

The screenshot displays the 'Attendance custom report' interface. On the left is a navigation menu with options like 'Attendance Management', 'Attendance Setting', 'Schedule', 'Exception', 'Attendance Detail Report', 'Daily Attendance Report', 'Monthly Attendance R...', 'Calculate Report', and 'Attendance custom re...'. The main area is split into two panels: 'Custom Report' and 'Report Details'. The 'Custom Report' panel has a search bar and a table with one row containing 'test'. The 'Report Details' panel shows filters for 'Time From' (2023-11-01) and 'To' (2023-11-21), and a 'Personnel ID' field. Below the filters is a table with the following data:

| Personnel ID | Personnel  |           | Department Name | Expected/Actual(minute) |        |       | Early(minute) |        | Absent(hour) |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------------|--------|-------|---------------|--------|--------------|
|              | First Name | Last Name |                 | Should                  | Actual | Valid | Duration      | Counts |              |
| 99999999     | TEST387    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 974          | TEST005    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 930113       | TEST353    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 90005        | TEST385    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 888888       | TEST323    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 88317033     | TEST402    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 883          | TEST007    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 871          | TEST010    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |
| 836          | TEST006    |           | Attendance Test | 0.0                     | 0.0    | 0.0   | 0.0           | 0      | 0.0          |

At the bottom of the table, there are pagination controls: '50 rows per page', 'Jump To 1 /10 Page', and 'Total of 492 records'.

Figure 6- 79

## 7 Parking Management

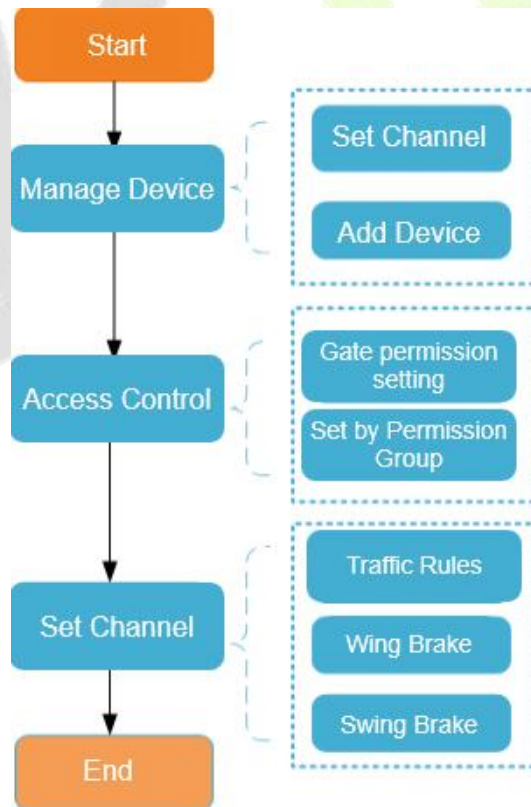
### 7.1 Operation Scenario

In modern parking lot management, vehicle management is an important aspect, especially for special parking lots, parks and communities, it is required to strictly manage all kinds of vehicles in real time, strictly monitor their entry and exit time, and register and identify all kinds of vehicles (including internal vehicles and external vehicles). In a large-scale field, there are many vehicles coming in and out. For example, every vehicle must be judged manually, which is time-consuming and not conducive to management and inquiry, and the security work is difficult and inefficient. In order to improve this management mode, which is not commensurate with modern parking lots, residential areas, etc., It is necessary to realize the authorization and intelligence of vehicle management as soon as possible, and manage it in the form of computer network, so as to monitor and manage all the vehicles at the entrance and exit effectively and accurately. It is required that the system provide corresponding application software to realize the high efficiency and intelligence of parking lot management.

### 7.2 Operation Flow

This part introduces the configuration process of parking management business.

The parking management business configuration process is shown in figure below.



**Figure 7- 1 Parking Configuration Flow**

## 7.3 Basic Parking Setting

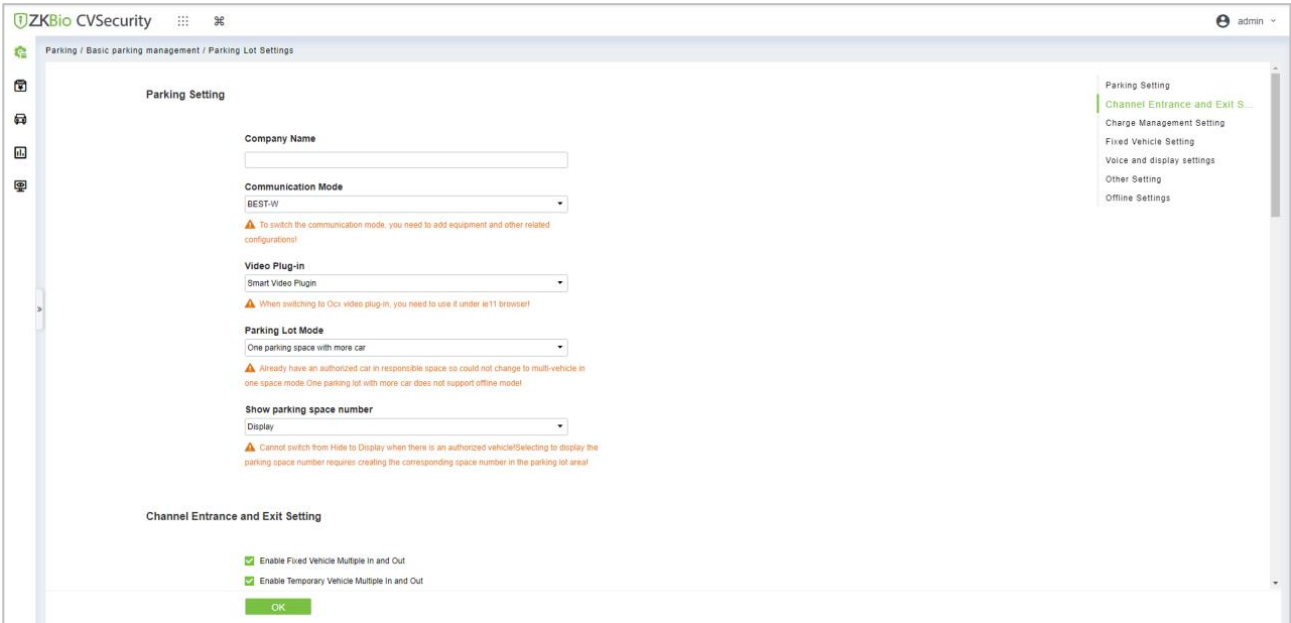
### 7.3.1 Parking Settings

This part introduces the public parameters of the parking lot under.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module”, select "Parking Basic Management > Parking Settings".

**Step 2:** In the Parking setting interface, as shown in figure below, fill in relevant parameters. Please refer to Table 10-1 for parameters.



**Figure 7- 2 Parking Parameter Setting Interface**

| Parameter       | Specific Parameters             | Parameter Description  |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|--|
| Parking Setting | Company Name                    | You can customize the Parking company name, which can be displayed in the billing receipt.   |
|                 | Communication Mode              | Selection according to the communication protocol of the device.   |
|                 | Parking Lot Mode                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One Parking Space with one car: means that only one fixed car can be authorized in one parking space at present.</li> <li>One Parking Space with more car: a parking space that allows multiple fixed cars to be authorized.</li> </ul> |
|                 | Display Parking Space Number    | You can choose whether to display the parking space number or not, and you can specify a certain parking space number.   |
|                 | Real Time Preview Channel Count | The number of videos that can be displayed on the Real Time Monitoring page can be switched from 4/6/8/12/16.  |

| Parameter                      | Specific Parameters  | Parameter Description   |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| Entrance and Exit Lane Setting | Enable the. fixed or temporary vehicles are multiple In and out. | Allow the fixed or Temporary vehicles to the parking area and vehicles are multiple in and out.   |
|                                | Matching Precision of Entrance and Exit                          | Vehicles are allowed by exact match and 5 or 6digits registration numbers to the entrance and exit area of the parking.   |
|                                | Special license plate contains characters                        | Enter the special license plates contains characters wherever required.   |
|                                | Duplicate license plate waiting time                             | In Duplicate license plate waiting time Mention the timings of single channel mode and normal mode  |
| Charge Management Settings     | Enable the fixed car charging standard                           | If the fixed car charging standard has been set in advance, check this setting, and when the fixed car is authorized and postponed, it will be implemented according to this charging standard; If it is not checked, you can only manually enter the extension time and amount.  |
|                                | Print the charge receipt   | If the receipt printer is set and connected, the corresponding receipt will be printed when the charge is successful.   |
|                                | Enable consumption discounts                                     | Set the "Discount Strategy" in advance and then check the Enable Consumption Discount System, and the consumption discount will be carried out.   |
|                                | Unmatched processing mode  | There are two existing ways to deal with mismatches: "free release" and "opening the gate after charging fees"; Manual release is to open the gate directly, and when the gate is opened after charging, a charge confirmation box will pop up during manual release (only for temporary vehicles).                         |
|                                | Synchronize data to the cloud                                    | After opening, offline parking data will be uploaded to the cloud platform synchronously.   |
| Fixed Vehicle Setting          | Statistic parking space of fixed car                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If it is checked, the number of cars will not be deducted after authorization, and the number of cars will be counted in real time when vehicles enter and leave the field.</li> <li>If it is not checked, the number of fixed cars will be deducted after authorization.</li> </ul> |
|                                | Enable fixed vehicles to switch to temporary vehicles            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If this option is checked, the fixed car will be automatically converted into a temporary car after it expires, and the charge will be made according to the temporary charging method.</li> <li>If it is not checked, this option will require manual</li> </ul>                    |

| Parameter                  | Specific Parameters   | Parameter Description  |
|----------------------------|---|--|
|                            |   | release for the fixed car to come out when it expires.   |
|                            | Warning days for fixed vehicles                                   | If the warning days are set to 5 days, it is necessary to prompt the vehicles to postpone the fixed vehicles when entering and leaving the field within 5 days.  |
| Voice And Display Settings | Enable external display   | Checking this parameter will display the relevant parking data on the external display.  |
|                            | The entrance shows the remaining parking spaces                   | Display the remaining parking spaces at the entrance of the parking lot.   |
|                            | Statistics of car Parking area parking spaces in car Parking area | The statistics of the number of cars in the corresponding booth in the big Parking area include the number of cars in the small Parking area.  |
|                            | Vehicle entry and exit broadcast license plate                    | If this parameter is checked, the license plate will be broadcast when the vehicle enters and exits.   |
|                            | Display color   | Set the display color of parking machine.  |
| Other Settings             | Maximum vehicle stay time   | Set the maximum stay time of on-site vehicles. If the on-site vehicles have not left after this time, the records of on-site vehicles will be displayed in the "On-site Stay Timeout Vehicles" report. |
|                            | Save days of snapshot photos                                      | Set snapshot photos saved more than the set number of days photos will be automatically deleted, if you do not want to delete snapshot photos will change the parameter set to 0 days.                 |
|                            | Snapshot Save Path  | You can customize the path where photos are saved.   |

**Table 7-1 Description of Parking Parameters**

**Step 3:** After setting the parameters, Click **OK**.

## 7.3.2 Device

For communication between the system and device, data uploading, configuration downloading, device and system parameters shall be set. Users can edit access controllers within relevant levels in the current system; users can only add or delete devices in Device Management if needed.

### 7.3.2.1 Edit or Delete a Device

**Step 1:** Click Device Name or click **Edit** to access the edit interface.

**Step 2:** Select device, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the device.

### 7.3.2.2 Reboot Device

It will reboot the selected device.

### 7.3.2.3 Synchronize Time

It will synchronize time with server's current time.

### 7.3.2.4 Get Device Parameters

Click Get Device Parameters Users can get device parameters which is they need from the system.

### 7.3.2.5 Delete Device Command

Click Delete Device command, to delete the selected device command' data.

### 7.3.2.6 Get Device Version

Click Device version to get selected device version.

## 7.3.3 Parking Area

This part introduces the Step configuration of and Parking area.

### 7.3.3.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Parking Basic Management > Parking Area**.

**Step 2:** In the **Parking Area** interface, click **Add New** and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-2 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 3 New Interface in Parking Area**

| Parameter            | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| Type Of Parking Area | Set whether the current Parking area is a big Parking or a small Parking. |
| Name Of Parking Area | The name of the Parking area cannot be duplicated.                        |
| Parking Spaces       | Set total number of parking spaces in this area.                          |

| Parameter | Description       |
|-----------|-------------------|
| Remarks   | Text description. |

**Table 7-2 Parameter Description of Parking Area**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of the Parking area.

**7.3.3.2 Edit**

Click a parking area name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

**7.3.3.3 Delete**

Select one or more parking areas and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected parking areas. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single parking area.

**7.3.3.4 Refresh**

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new parking areas.

**7.3.4 Entrance And Exit Area**

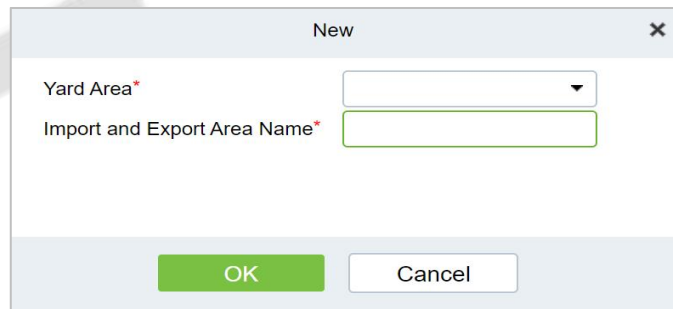
This part introduces the Step configuration of parking entrance and exit area.

**7.3.4.1 Add New**

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "**Parking Basic Management > Entrance and Exit Area**".

**Step2:** In the interface of Entrance and Exit Area, click **Add New** and fill in relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-3 for parameter description.



**Figure 7- 4 Add Interface of Entrance and Exit Area**

| Parameter                      | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Parking Area                   | The name of Entrance and Exit Area cannot be duplicated.      |
| Name Of Entrance and Exit Area | The Parking area to which the Entrance and Exit Area belongs. |

**Table 7-3 Description of Parameters of Entrance and Exit Area**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of Entrance and Exit Area.

### 7.3.4.2 Edit

Click an entrance and exit area name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 7.3.4.3 Delete

Select one or more entrance and exit areas and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected entrance and exit areas. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single entrance and exit area.

### 7.3.4.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new entrance and exit areas.

## 7.3.5 Guard Booth

This part introduces the Step configuration of ZKBio CVSecurity Guard Booth. After the configuration is completed, you can check and monitor the Guard Booth interface and operate the gate opening.

### 7.3.5.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "**Parking Basic Management > Guard Booth**".

**Step 2:** In the **Guard Booth** interface, click **Add New** and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-4 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 5 Added Guard Booth Interface**

| Parameter               | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Name of Guard Booth     | Set the name of the booth.  |
| Guard Booth Computer IP | When the booth mode is browser, the IP address of the booth needs to be set.  |
| Guard Booth Mode        | There are two modes of Guard Booth: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Browser: You need to set the IP of the booth computer</li> </ul> |

| Parameter                           | Description  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
|                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Platform: Automatically generate platform registration code</li> </ul>  |
| Platform Registration Code          | When the booth mode is a platform, it is automatically generated for CS booth registration.  |
| Name Of Entrance and Exit Area      | Entrance and Exit Area to which the booth belongs.   |
| Parking Area                        | After selecting the Entrance and Exit Area, the information of the parking lot area will be read, which is read-only.  |
| Allow Temporary Cars Free of Charge | Set whether the temporary car is free or not, check the interface of opening the billing result of the temporary car, and there will be a "Free" button to allow the temporary car to be free.   |
| Enable Replacement Models           | Set whether the replacement vehicle is enabled or not and check the temporary vehicle charging result interface to change the temporary vehicle type of the vehicle. Different vehicle types have different charging standards, so the charging result will also change.                         |
| Enable Manual Clearance             | Set whether to enable manual release. After checking Enable, you can manually control the gate to open for vehicle release.  |
| Temporary Cars Come Out Quickly     | Set whether to enable the temporary car to come out quickly. If the temporary car does not incur parking fees after checking the enable, the billing result confirmation interface will not pop up, and the gate will be opened and released directly.   |
| Single Channel Mode                 | Set whether to enable the single channel mode. After checking Enable, the previous channel of the current scene application can be used for both entry and exit. However, in terms of logical settings, it is recommended to establish different logical channels to bind different IPC devices. |

**Table 7-4 Parameter Description of Guard Booth**

### 7.3.5.2 Edit

Click a guard booth name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 7.3.5.3 Delete

Select one or more guard booths and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected guard booths. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single guard booth.

### 7.3.5.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new guard booths.

### 7.3.6 Channel

This part introduces the configuration of relevant Steps of parking passage.

#### 7.3.6.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Parking Basic Management > Passage**.

**Step 2:** Click **Add New** in the channel interface and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-5 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 6 New Channel Interface**

| Parameter                                       | Description   |
|---|---|
| Channel Name                                    | You can customize the channel name here   |
| Name of Guard Booth                             | Select the corresponding booth  |
| Import And Export Status                        | Select the channel properties of the entrance and exit of the corresponding booth entrance and exit area  |
| IPC1_IP/IPC1 Corresponds to Video Port Position | The ip address of device 1, and the corresponding video port position is the monitoring position where the device is located  |
| IPC2_IP/IPC2 Corresponds to Video Port Position | The ip address of device 2, and the corresponding video port position is the monitoring position where the device is located  |
| Opening Mode of Fixed Car                       | Direct release (open the gate directly after identifying the license plate)<br>Confirm the release (pop up the confirmation box and click the button manually to open the gate) |
| Temporary Vehicle Opening Mode                  | Pick up and release (open the gate directly after identifying the license plate)  |

| Parameter  | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | Confirm the release (pop up the confirmation box and click the button manually to open the gate) |
| Type of Vehicles Prohibited from Passing in Limited Mode | You can set those car types not to pass here, and you can choose multiple                        |

**Table 7-5 Description of Channel Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the channel setting.

### 7.3.6.2 Edit

Click a channel name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 7.3.6.3 Delete

Select one or more channels and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected channels. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single channel.

### 7.3.6.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new channels.

## 7.3.7 Vehicle Definition

This part introduces the configuration of related Steps of vehicle definition.

### 7.3.7.1 Add New

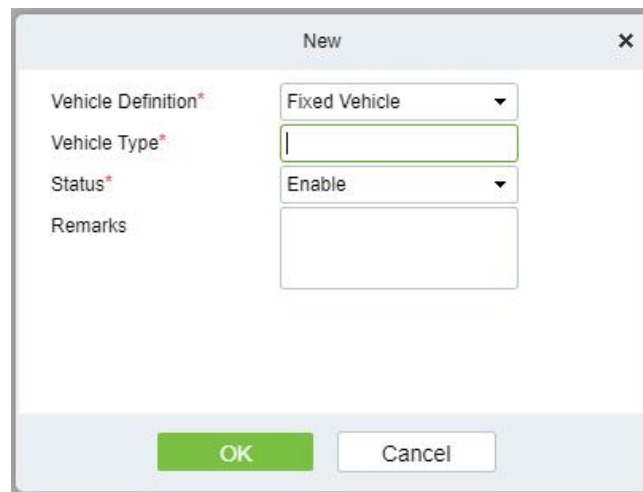
Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Parking Basic Management > Vehicle Definition**.

**Step 2:** Click **Add New** in the vehicle definition interface and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to table below for parameter description.

| Parameter          | Description                                 |
|--------------------|---|
| Vehicle Definition | Select the corresponding. vehicle           |
| Vehicle Type       | Vehicle type of the charging standard       |
| Status             | Select the vehicle status enable or disable |
| Remarks            | Text description                            |

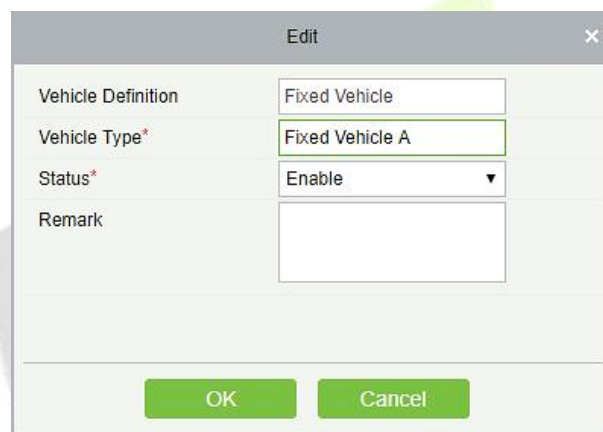
**Table 7-6 Description of vehicle definition Parameters**



**Figure 7- 7 New vehicle definition**

### 7.3.7.2 Editing the Vehicle Type

**Step 1:** Click a vehicle type name or **Edit** in the operation column. The Edit page is displayed.



**Figure 7- 8 Edit vehicle Type**

**Step 2:** Set Vehicle Type, select a Status, and enter the vehicle type description in Remark.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to save and exit.

### 7.3.7.3 Delete

Select one or more channels and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected channels. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a vehicle definition.

### 7.3.7.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new vehicle definitions.

## 7.3.8 Shift Settings

This part introduces the configuration of related Steps of parking shift.

### 7.3.8.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "**Parking Basic Management > Shift Setting**".

**Step 2:** In the **Shift Setting** interface, click **Add New** to fill in relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table below for parameter description.

**Figure 7-9 New Shift Interface**

| Parameter           | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| Shift name          | Distinguish the difference between shifts by setting the device name |
| Name of Guard Booth | Distinguish the differences between booths by setting device names   |
| Start time          | Select the time when the shift starts                                |
| End time            | Select the time when the shift ends                                  |
| Across the sky      | Is the shift time set across days                                    |

**Table 7-7 Shift Parameter Description**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of adding shift settings.

**7.3.8.2 Edit**

Click a channel name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

**7.3.8.3 Delete**

Select one or more channels and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected channels. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a shift setting.

**7.3.8.4 Refresh**

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new shift settings.

**7.3.9 Manual Release Reason**

A manual release reason must be selected when the manual release function is used on the online

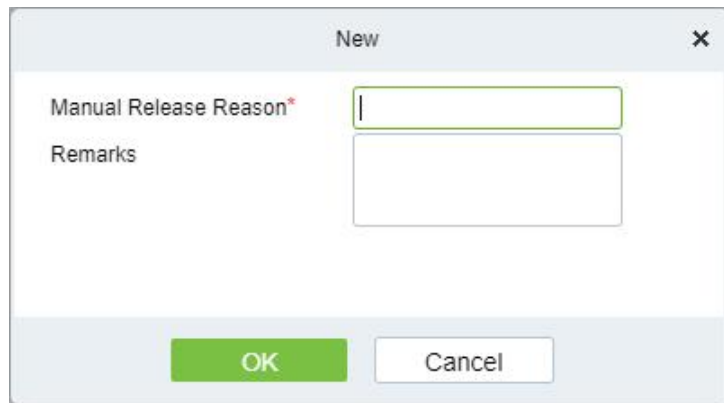
monitoring page.

### 7.3.9.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

Step 1: In the Parking module, select "Parking Basic Management > Manual Release Reason.

**Step 2:** In the **Manual Release Reason** interface, click **Add New** to fill in relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-8 for parameter description.



**Figure 7- 10 New Manual Release Reason Interface**

| Parameter           | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| Shift Name          | Distinguish the difference between shifts by setting the device name |
| Name Of Guard Booth | Distinguish the differences between booths by setting device names   |
| Start Time          | Select the time when the shift starts                                |
| End Time            | Select the time when the shift ends                                  |
| Across the Sky      | Is the shift time set across days                                    |

**Table 7-8 for Manual Release Reason parameter description**

### 7.3.9.2 Edit

Click a channel name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 7.3.9.3 Delete

Select one or more channels and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected channels. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a manual release reason.

### 7.3.9.4 Refresh

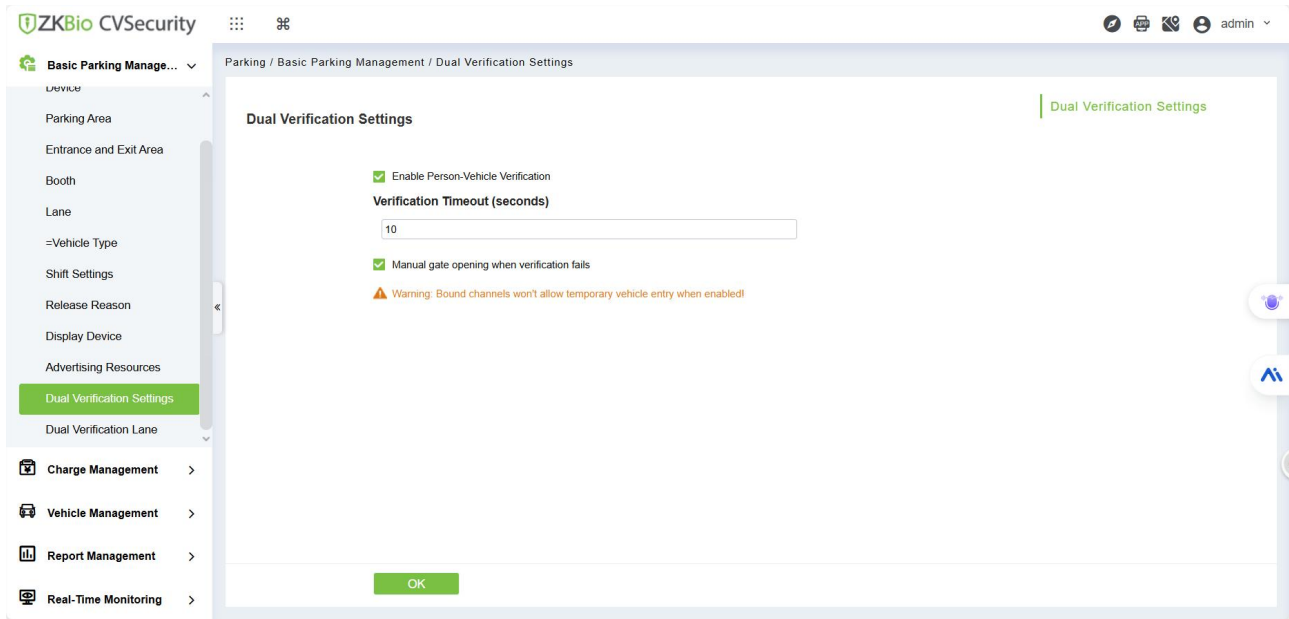
Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new Manual Release Reason.

### 7.3.10 Dual Verification Setting

The dual verification feature combines access control data with license plate recognition, allowing the barrier to open only when both the driver and the license plate information match, providing enhanced security. When a vehicle enters the reading range, the LPR camera scans and identifies the license plate. Simultaneously, the driver must swipe a card or verify their identity via facial recognition/fingerprint on the access control device. If both the license plate number and the driver's identification results match the data in the database, the parking barrier will lift to grant access. Otherwise, entry will be denied.

Enable the **"Enable Parking Lot verification"** option under the menu:**Parking > Basic Parking Management > Double Verification Setting.**

**Note:** The dual verification feature can only be activated after configuring the binding relationship between the access control device and LPR (License Plate Recognition) in 7.3.11 [Dual Verification Lane](#)



**Figure 7- 11 Dual Verification Setting**

The explanation of the corresponding parameters is as follows in the table:

| Parameter   | Description   |
|---|---|
| Enable Parking Lot Verification                           | Configures whether to enable the dual verification feature for parking and access control.              |
| Verification Timeout                                      | Sets the timeout duration for verification between parking and access control devices (10-255 seconds). |
| Enable Manual Gate Opening Upon Dual Verification Failure | Configures whether to allow manual gate opening if dual verification fails.                             |

**Table 7-8 Dual Verification Parameter Description**

### 7.3.11 Dual Verification Lane

Under this menu, you can bind the access control device and LPR (License Plate Recognition) within the same channel.

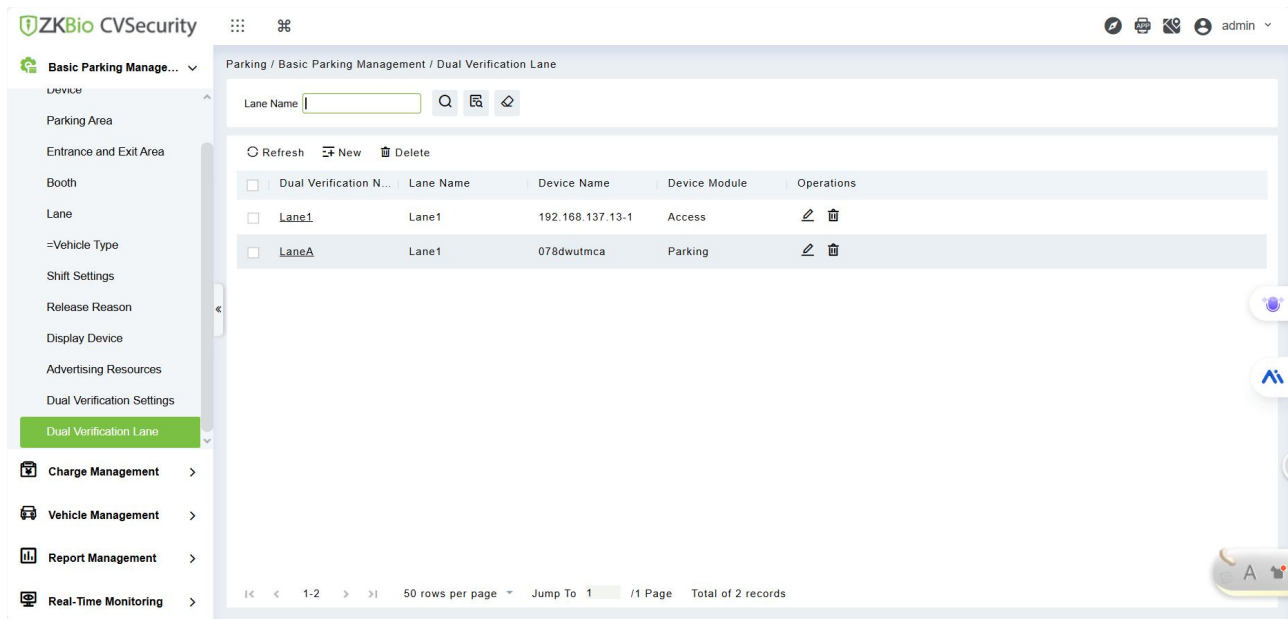


Figure 7- 12 Dual Verification Lane

Under **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Double Verification Lane**, click **New** and select the device from either the access control or parking module.

Figure 7- 13 New Dual Verification

**Note:** When selecting the access control device for a lane for the first time, you must repeat the operation—choose the **same lane** again and then select the LPR (License Plate Recognition) device from the parking module. This binds the access control and parking devices to the same lane.

## Verification Result:

- If both license plate recognition and personnel verification on the access control device are completed **within the set time range**, the software will log a "Normal Gate Opening" record.
- If verification occurs **beyond the set time range**, the system will display the error prompt: "**Dual Verification Timeout.**"

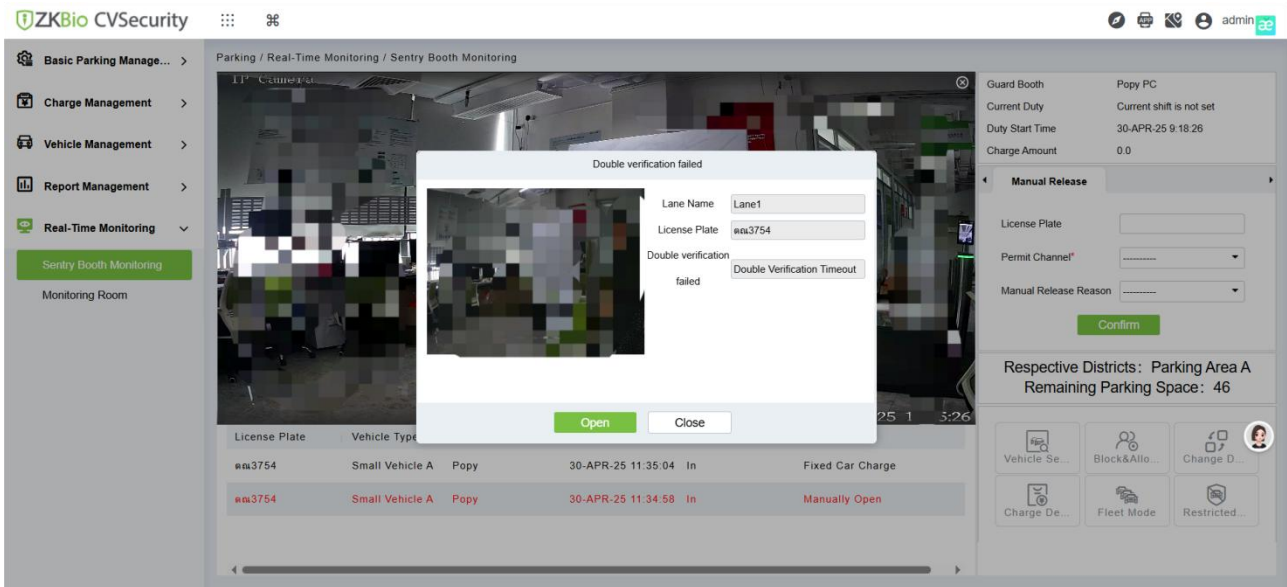


Figure 7- 14 Dual Verification Result

## 7.4 Charge Management

This part introduces the related configuration of parking charge management, mainly setting the charging rules of various car types in the parking lot and the discount strategy of merchants.

### 7.4.1 Fixed Cars Are Charging Rules

This part introduces the operation Steps of periodic charging rules for fixed cars in.

#### 7.4.1.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "**Charge Management > Fixed Car Charge Rules**"

**Step 2:** In the fixed car charging rules interface, click **Add New** and fill in the corresponding parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-9 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 15 Fixed Car Charge Rules Interface**

| Parameter                | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Name of Fixed Car Charge | Set the name of the charging standard for fixed cars, which cannot be repeated.                               |
| Car Type                 | Select the car type corresponding to the fixed car charging standard, and each car type can only be set once. |
| Periodic Type            | Fixed car charging cycle type, monthly/daily.   |
| Period                   | Set the cycle time, that is, the effective time of the fixed car.   |
| Amount                   | Set the amount charged.   |

**Table 7-9 Parameter Description of Fixed Car Charging Rules**

#### 7.4.1.2 Edit

Click a fixed charge name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

#### 7.4.1.3 Delete

Select one or more temporary vehicle charge and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected temporary vehicle charge. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single fixed vehicle charge.

#### 7.4.1.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new fixed vehicle charge.

### 7.4.2 Temporary Car Charging Rules

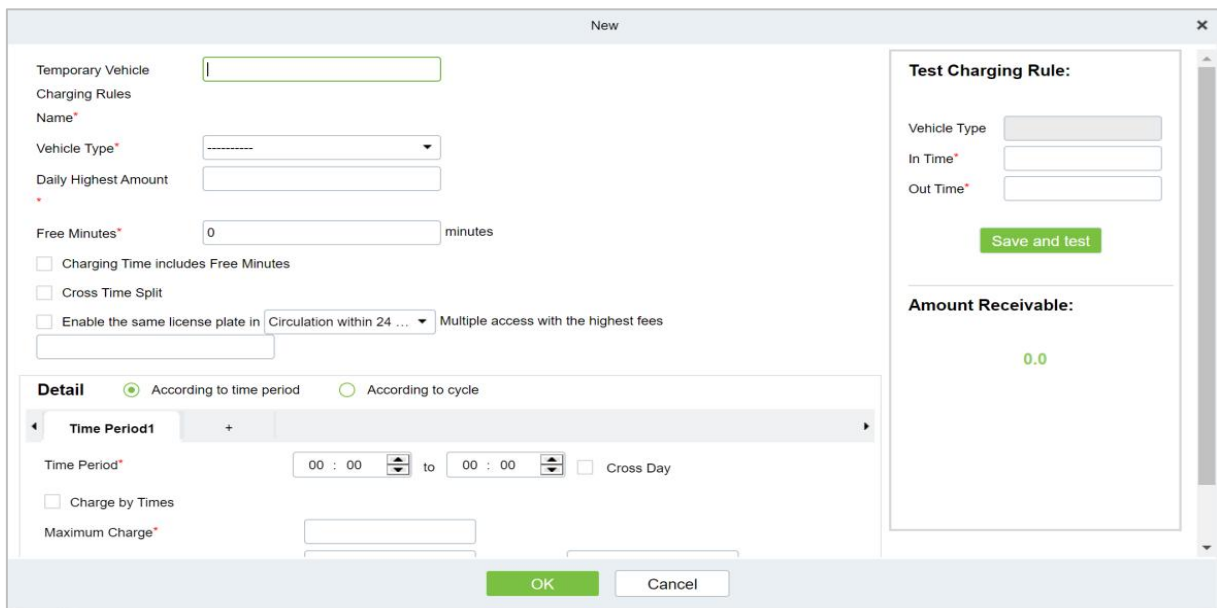
This part introduces the Step configuration of temporary car charging rules in.

#### 7.4.2.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "Parking Charge Management > Temporary Car Charge Rules".

**Step 2:** In the Temporary Car Charge Rules interface, click **Add New**.and fill in the corresponding parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-10 for parameter description.



**Figure 7- 16 Temporary Car Charge Rules Interface**

| Parameter                              | Description  |
|--|--|
| Temporary Vehicles Charging Rules Name | Set the name of temporary car charging rule, which cannot be duplicated.   |
| Vehicle Type                           | Select the vehicle type corresponding to the charging standard.  |
| Daily Highest Amount                   | The maximum charge within one day (for example, 10 yuan per hour, 240 yuan for a full day; If the maximum charge amount for the whole day is set to 100 yuan, just charge 100 yuan).   |
| Free Minutes                           | There is no charge for parking time within this value range.   |
| Charging Time Includes Free Minutes    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check this item, assuming that the free minute is 30 minutes, and the parking time is 31 minutes. If the parking time exceeds the free minute, the parking time will be charged according to 31 minutes at this time.</li> <li>If this item is not checked, assuming that the free minute is 30 minutes and the parking time is 31 minutes, if it exceeds the free minute, the parking time at this time is 1 minute (31 minutes minus 30 minutes).</li> </ul>  |
| Cross Time Splitting                   | <p>Suppose that the charge for period 1 is set at 1 yuan every 15 minutes from 9:00 to 10:00, the charge for period 2 is set at 10 yuan every 15 minutes from 10:00 to 11:00, and the parking time is from 9:43 to 10:30.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If this item is not checked, 1 yuan will be charged from 9:43 to 9:58, and if it is only two minutes and less than 15 minutes from 9:58 to 10:00, it will be supplemented from 10:00 to 10:13, then charged according to time period 2 from 10:13 to 10:28, and so on.</li> <li>If this item is checked, 1 yuan will be charged from 9:43 to 9:58, only two minutes will be less than 15 minutes from 9:58 to 10:00, 1 yuan will be charged according to time period 1, time period 2 will</li> </ul> |

| Parameter  | Description  |
|--|--|
|  | be charged from 10:00 to 10:15, and so on.   |
| Enable The Same License Plate to Enter and Leave the Maximum Charge for Multiple Times in A Cycle of 24 Hours (24 Hours on Natural Days) | That is, rolling charges. If the accumulated fees for the same license plate entering and leaving the parking lot for many times exceed this value, no fees will be charged within the set period. The cycle can be set as 24 hours on a natural day or 24 hours on a cycle: 24 hours on a natural day refers to 0:00-24: 00; Cycle 24 hours refers to the time from the admission time to the next day.   |
| By Time Period   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Time period: Set the charging standards for different time periods, and check the cross-day, but to ensure that the cumulative sum of all time periods is 24 hours, multiple time periods can be added, and the time periods remain continuous.</li> <li>• Charge by time: If this item is checked, the first time charge, the amount of unit time charge cannot be filled in, only the highest charge is charged, and the fee set in "Maximum Charge" is charged every time; If this item is not checked, the fee will be charged according to the first time charge, and the remaining time exceeding the first time charge setting will be charged according to the unit time; If the first time charge is not set, the charge will be charged directly according to the unit time, and the unit minute must be a multiple of 15. If the charge exceeds the charge set in the "Maximum Charge", it will be charged according to the maximum charge amount.</li> <li>• First time charge: Set the first time within how many minutes, the amount of charge.</li> <li>• Maximum charge: the maximum amount of charge in the setting period.</li> <li>• Charge amount per unit time: Set the charge amount for how many minutes in this time period.</li> </ul> |
| Periodically   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cycle: From the admission time, the next 1440 minutes (24 hours) can be divided into multiple cycle charging standards.</li> <li>• Charge by time: set whether to charge by time in the cycle. After checking, you can only set the maximum charge amount in the cycle, but you cannot set the charge amount per unit time.</li> <li>• Maximum charge: the maximum amount of charge in the setting period.</li> <li>• Charge amount per unit time: Set the charge amount for how many minutes within the minutes of the cycle.</li> </ul>   |

**Table 7-10 Parameter Description of Temporary Car Charging Rules**

**7.4.2.2 Edit**

Click a temporary charge name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

**7.4.2.3 Delete**

Select one or more temporary vehicle charge and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected temporary vehicle charge. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single temporary vehicle charge.

### 7.4.2.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new temporary vehicle charge.

## 7.4.3 Overtime Charging Rules

This part introduces the operation Steps of charging rules when vehicles time out in.

### 7.4.3.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Parking Charge Management > Overtime Charge Rules**.

**Step 2:** In the **Overtime Charge** Rule interface, click **Add New** and fill in the corresponding parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-11 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 17 Interface of Timeout Charging Rules**

| Parameter                | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Overtime Charge Standard | Set the name of timeout charging standard, which cannot be duplicated.  |
| Status                   | Select whether to enable the charging standard.   |
| Detailed Settings        | Set the allowed detention time of each temporary vehicle type after the central payment and the charging standard after exceeding the time.   |
| Allowable Residence Time | The detention time allowed in the garage after the central payment; In case of overtime, you need to charge again.  |
| Including Residence Time | Assume that the allowed detention time is 30 minutes, and the detention time is 31 minutes after payment. If this item is checked, it will be charged according to the timeout of 31 minutes; If this item is not checked, it will be charged according to the timeout of 1 minute. |

| Parameter               | Description  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Overtime Charging Rules | The billing standard for exceeding the allowable residence time. |

**Table 7-11 Parameter Description of Overtime Charge Rules**

**7.4.3.2 Edit**

Click a name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

**7.4.3.3 Delete**

Select one or more temporary vehicle charge and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected temporary vehicle charge. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a time charging rules.

**7.4.3.4 Refresh**

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new over time charging rules.

**7.4.4 Discount Strategy**

This part introduces the Step configuration of parking discount strategy for parking discount.

**7.4.4.1 Add New**

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Parking Charge Management > Discount Strategy**.

**Step 2:** In the discount policy interface, click **Add New** and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-25 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 18 New Discount Policy Interface**

| Parameter     | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Policy Name   | Set the name of discount policy, which cannot be duplicated.  |
| Discount Type | Select the discount type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Free, no charge.</li> <li>• The amount of reduction and exemption, the cost is directly deducted from the fixed amount.</li> <li>• Reduce minutes, subtract minutes from parking time and then charge.</li> <li>• Percentage of reduction and exemption, percentage of expense deduction.</li> </ul> |

| Parameter        | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Amount of Relief | At present, the discount type is reduction amount, and the corresponding field name is reduction amount; If it is another type, it corresponds to the corresponding unit. When the discount type is free, this item is not filled in. |

**Table 7-12 Discount Strategy Parameter Description**

#### 7.4.4.2 Edit

Click a name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

#### 7.4.4.3 Delete

Select one or more discount policies and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected discount policies. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single discount strategy.

#### 7.4.4.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new discount policies.

### 7.4.5 Business Management

This part introduces the operation Steps of merchant management in.

#### 7.4.5.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "**Parking Charge Management > Business Management**".

**Step 2:** In the **Business Management** interface, click **Add New** fill in the corresponding parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-13 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 19 Business Management New Interface**

| Parameter       | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Merchant Name   | Set the merchant's name, which cannot be duplicated. |
| Discount Method | Choose a discount strategy.                          |

| Parameter                 | Description                             |
|---------------------------|---|
| Contact Person            | Set up merchant contacts.               |
| Merchant Telephone Number | Set the contact number of the merchant. |
| Merchant Address          | Set the merchant contact address.       |

**Table 7-13 Description of Business Management Parameters**

### 7.4.5.2 Edit

Click a name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 7.4.5.3 Delete

Select one or more vendors and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected vendors. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single vendor.

### 7.4.5.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new vendors.

## 7.4.6 Financial Reconciliation

This part introduces the operation Steps of accounting reconciliation in.

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "**Parking Charge Management > Financial Reconciliation**".

**Step 2:** In the account reconciliation interface, click **Reconciliation**, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-14 for parameter description

**Figure 7- 20 Accounting Reconciliation New Interface**

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

| Parameter                          | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Duty Officer Name                  | Duty officer name   |
| Duty Officer Id                    | Duty officer ID   |
| Duty Starts Time                   | Duty starts time  |
| Duty End Time                      | Duty end time   |
| The Number of Free Release Vehicle | Number of vehicles released free of charge                  |
| The Number of Manual Releases      | Number of vehicles released manually                        |
| Confirmor                          | Reconciliation personnel                                    |
| Advance Amount                     | Amount prepaid to the guard booth (for changes).            |
| Turnover                           | Paid amount   |
| The Total Amount                   | Advance amount + Turnover                                   |
| The Actual Amount                  | Amount entered by the duty officer during the shift change. |
| Confirm Time:                      | Current time  |
| Confirm Amount:                    | Amount confirmed by the reconciliation personnel            |
| Remark                             | Remark to be added.   |

**Table 7-14 Parameter Description of Accounting Reconciliation**

## 7.5 Vehicle Management

### 7.5.1 License Plate Registration

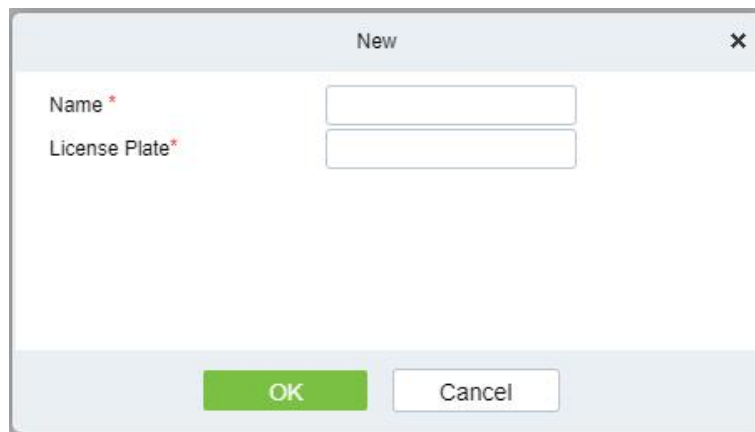
This part introduces the operation Steps of License. Plate Registration.

#### 7.5.1.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select "**Vehicle Management > License Plate Registration**".

**Step 2:** In the License. Plate Registration interface, click **Add New**, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-15 for parameter description



**Figure 7- 21 License Plate Registration New Interface**

| Parameter     | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Name          | Enter the person’s name                            |
| License Plate | License Plate numbers to be added for registration |

**Table 7-15 Parameter Description of License Plate Registration**

**7.5.1.2 Edit**

Click **Edit** at the end of each line or click the corresponding Personnel ID and modify personnel license plate registration information in the Edit dialog box.

**7.5.1.3 Delete**

Select one or more license plate registration information and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected registration information. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single registration information.

**7.5.1.4 Download License Plate Import Template**

This function will help you to download the licence plate import template.

| A                                    | B   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <b>License Plate Import Template</b> |   |
| Personnel ID                         | License plate number (multiple license plates, separated) |

**Figure 7- 22 License Plate Download Template**

**7.5.1.5 License Plate Import**

This function will help you to upload the licence plate import template.

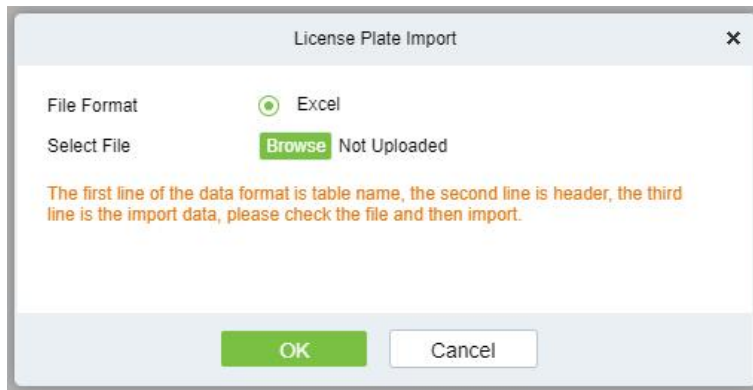


Figure 7- 23 License Plate Registration Import Interface

## 7.5.2 Vehicle Authorization

This part introduces the configuration of vehicle authorization Steps in. Only authorized vehicles can normally use the parking module process.

### 7.5.2.1 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Vehicle Management > Vehicle Authorization**.

**Step 2:** Click **Add** and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-16 for parameter description.

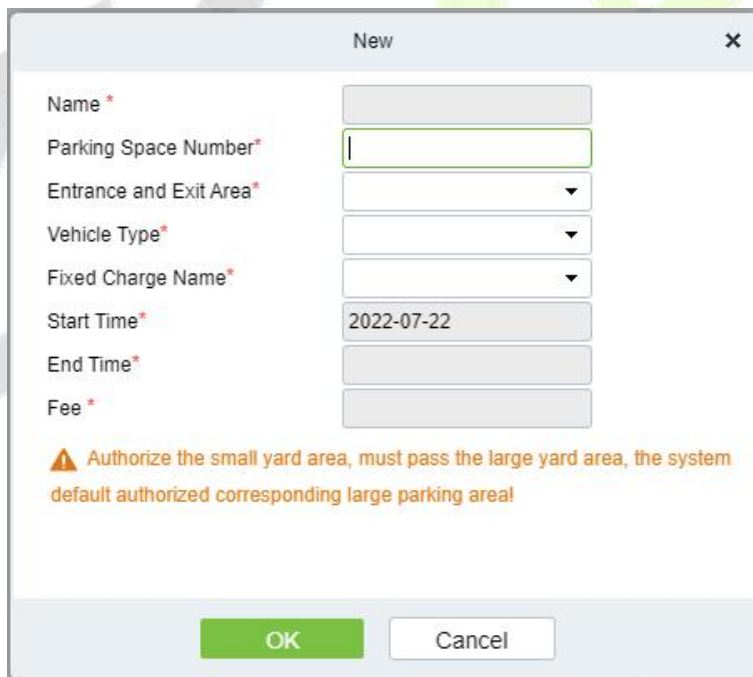


Figure 7- 24 Vehicle Authorization Interface

| Parameter            | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| Name                 | In the input box, enter one or more characters contained in the name or number of the owner, and you can find the owner vaguely. |
| Parking Space Number | Enter the total number of parking spaces in this area  |

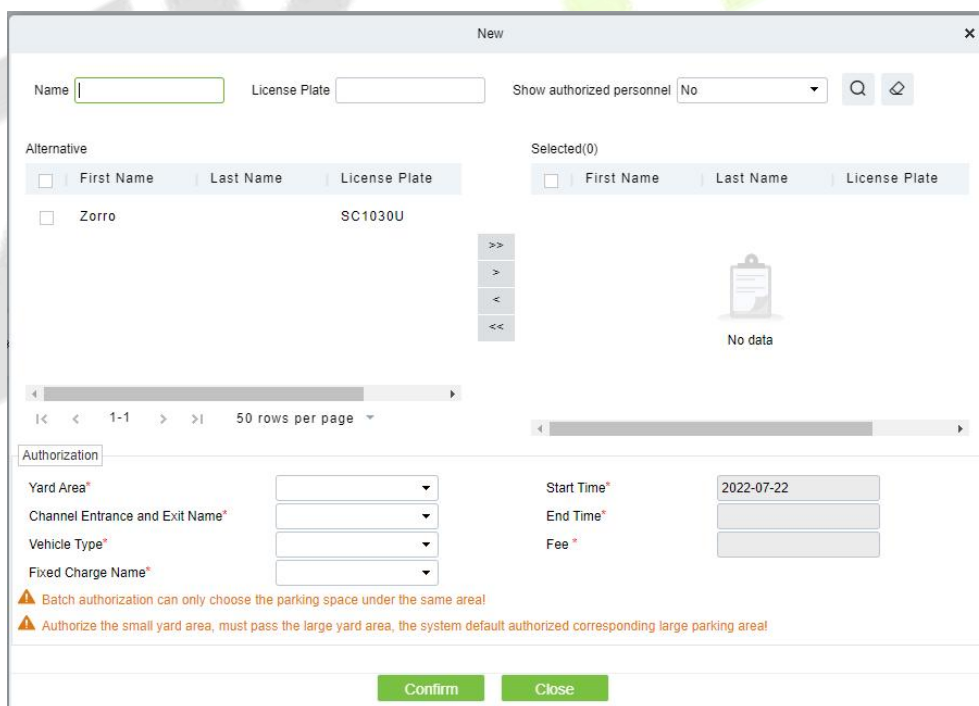
| Parameter              | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| Entrance And Exit Area | Set the Entrance and Exit Area where this license plate can pass. After selecting the parking space number, filter and only display the Entrance and Exit Area of the parking lot area to which the parking space number belongs. |
| Car Type               | Select the vehicle type to which the vehicle belongs.   |
| Fixed Charge Name      | Unique name of a fixed vehicle charge   |
| Start Time/End Time    | Refers to the time/deadline for authorizing the license plate to take effect. If the fixed car charging standard is enabled, this parameter is filled in by default.  |
| Amount Collected       | Record the fees charged for this authorization; If the fixed car charging standard is enabled, this parameter is filled in by default.  |

**Table 7-16 Description of Vehicle Authorization Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of vehicle authorization.

### 7.5.2.2 Fixed vehicle Batch Authorization

On the Vehicle Management page, click Fixed vehicle Batch Authorization. The Fixed vehicle Batch Authorization page is displayed as in the following figure:



**Figure 7- 25 Fixed vehicle Batch Authorization New Interface**

Select one or more license plates to be authorized from the list on the left. Click > in the middle to add the license plate to the list on the right. Enter the vehicle type, entrance, and exit area, fee, start time and end time in the Authorization area, and click OK to save the information and authorize fixed vehicles in batches.

### 7.5.2.3 Temporary Vehicle Authorization

On the **Vehicle Management** page, click **Temporary Vehicle Authorization**, the Temporary Vehicle Authorization page is displayed as shown in the following figure. Only the entrance and exit areas to be authorized need to be selected.

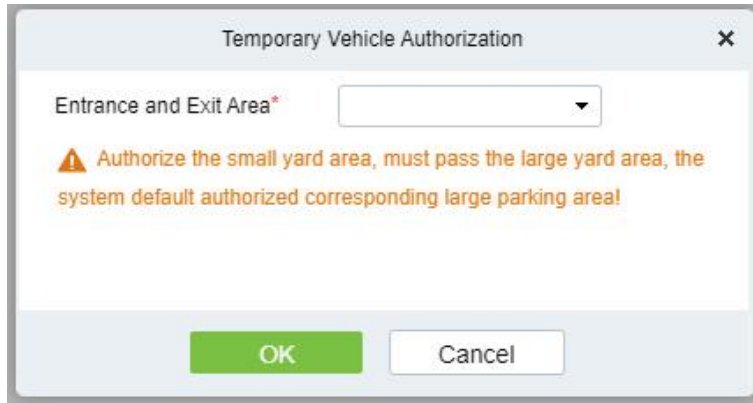


Figure 7- 26 Temporary vehicle Authorization Interface

### 7.5.2.4 Fixed Vehicle Authorization: Delete

Select multiple check boxes in the first column of the license plate list and click Delete to cancel license plates in batches or click Delete at the end of each line to cancel a single license plate.

### 7.5.2.5 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

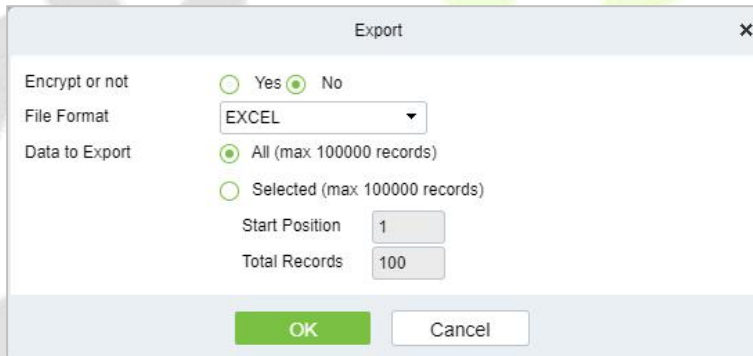


Figure 7- 27 Fixed vehicle Authorization Export

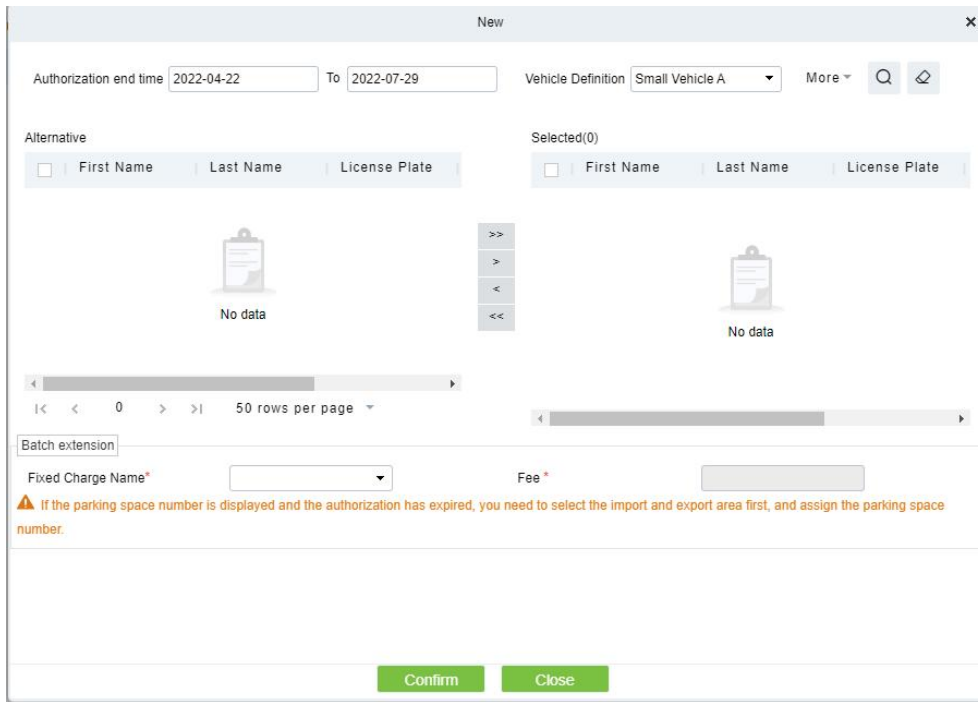
## 7.5.3 Fixed Vehicle Extension

### 7.5.3.1 Fixed Vehicle Authorization: Delete

Select multiple check boxes in the first column of the license plate list and click **Delete** to cancel license plates in batches or click **Delete** at the end of each line to cancel a single license plate.

### 7.5.3.2 Batch Extension

Select a fixed license plate for which the valid time needs to be extended and click **Batch Extension** at the end of a fixed license plate. The **Batch Extension** page is displayed.



**Figure 7- 28 Fixed vehicle Authorization Batch Extension**

Set Extended Deadline and Fee. Click OK to save and exit.

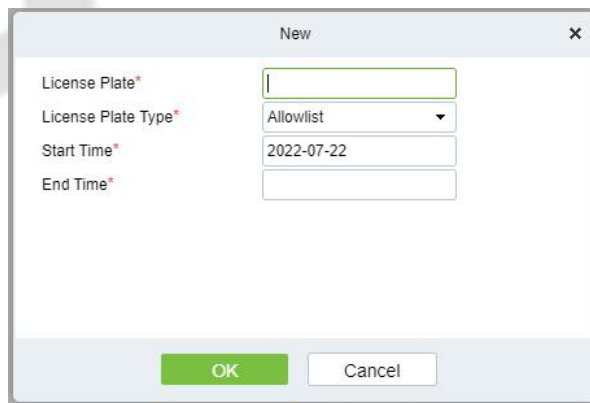
### 7.5.4 Block&Allow List Management

#### 7.5.4.1 Add New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Vehicle Management > Block&Allow List Management**.

**Step 2:** Click **Add New** and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-17 for parameter description.



**Figure 7- 29 Block&Allow List Management New Interface**

| Parameter          | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| License Plate      | License plate numbers to be added to the blacklist or allowlist |
| License Plate Type | The value can be block list or allowlist                        |

| Parameter           | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Start Time/End Time | Time when the allowlist takes effect & expires (This parameter is not available for the blocklist). |

**Table 7-17 Description of Block&Allow List Management Parameters**

#### 7.5.4.2 Edit

Click a **license plate** number or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

#### 7.5.4.3 Delete

Select one or more license plate numbers and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected license plate numbers. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single license plate number.

#### 7.5.4.4 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load the latest blocklist and Allowlist.

#### 7.5.4.5 Synchronize Blocklist

Click **Synchronize Blocklist**, click **OK** to synchronize all blocklists, click **Cancel** to cancel.

When the device is off-line, the device will automatically synchronize blocklist and broadcast voice. It should be noted that the device must be equipped with an SD card.

#### 7.5.4.6 Synchronize Allowlist

Click **Synchronize Allowlist**, click **OK** to synchronize all Allowlists, click **Cancel** to cancel.

When the device is off-line, the device will identify the Allowlist synchronized and automatically open the gate. It should be noted that the device must be equipped with an SD card.

## 7.6 Report Management

### 7.6.1 Vehicle Inside

#### 7.6.1.1 Remove

Remove from Device function lets you to remove or eliminate the transmitted Work Codes from the Device.

#### 7.6.1.2 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

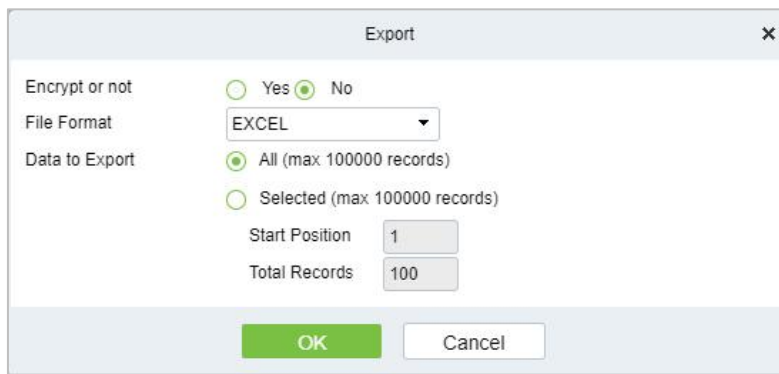


Figure 7- 30 vehicle Inside Export Interface

### 7.6.1.3 License Plate Correction

Make modifications of the License Plate Number.

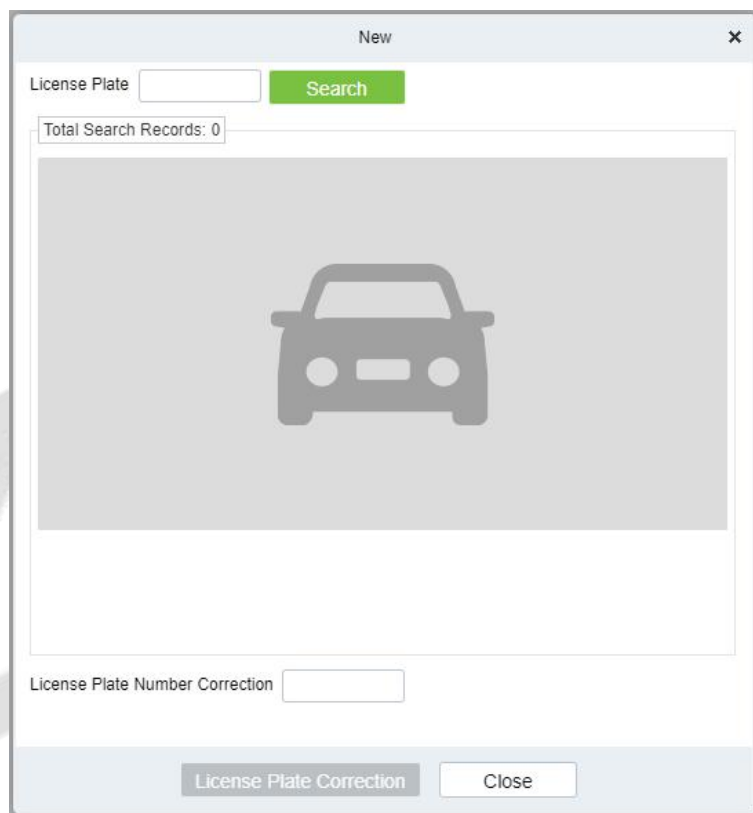


Figure 7- 31 License Plate Correction

## 7.6.2 Entry Record

It will provide the details of the vehicle which entered into the parking.

Click **Report Management** > **Entry Record**. Select the desired time period, vehicle owner and license plate number, and click to query Entry records. Click **More** to query based on other conditions.

### 7.6.2.1 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

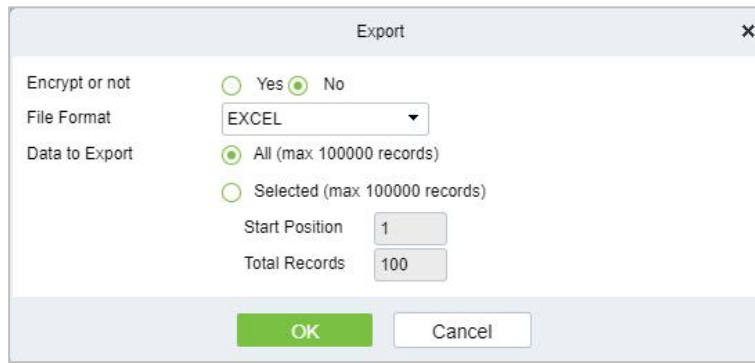



Figure 7- 32 Entry Record of Export Interface

### 7.6.3 Exit Record

It will provide the details of the vehicle which exited out of the parking.

Click **Report Management** > **Exit Record**. Select the desired time period, vehicle owner and license plate number, and click  to query Exit records. Click **More** to query based on other conditions.

#### 7.6.3.1 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

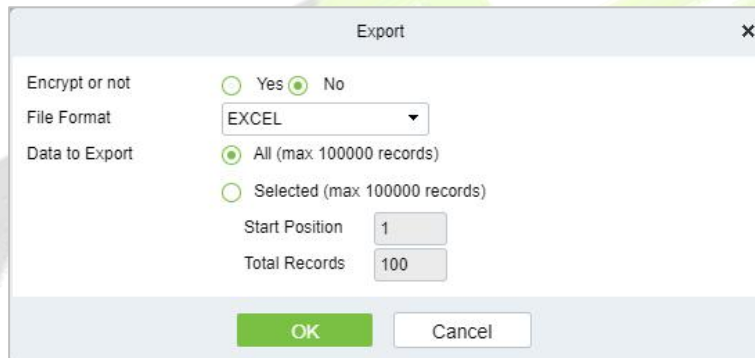


Figure 7- 33 Exit Record of Export Interface

### 7.6.4 Charge Record

The Charge Record Details module provides reports of charging information of all exit vehicles (records with fee of 0 are also generated for fixed vehicles and charging-free temporary vehicles).

#### 7.6.4.1 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

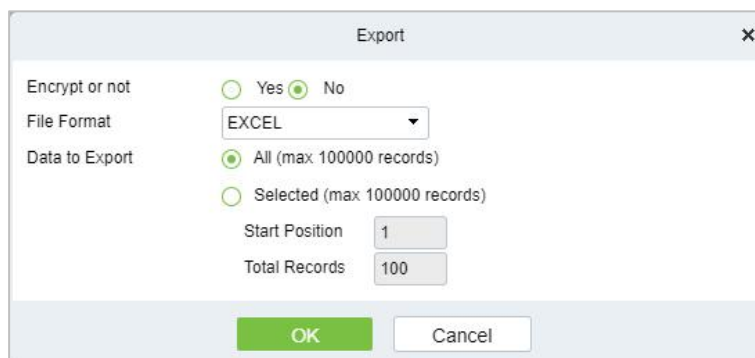


Figure 7- 34 Export interface for Charge Record

Choose **Report Management > Charge Details**. Select the desired time period and operator name and click \ to query charging details. Click **More** to query based on other conditions. The page is shown in the following figure.

### 7.6.5 Expired Vehicle

#### 7.6.5.1 Incoming Unusual Vehicles

It will provide the details of the vehicle which incoming unusually of the parking.

Click **Report Management > Incoming Unusual Vehicles**. Select the desired time period, vehicle owner and license plate number, and click 🔍 to query Exit records. Click **More** to query based on other conditions.

#### 7.6.5.2 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

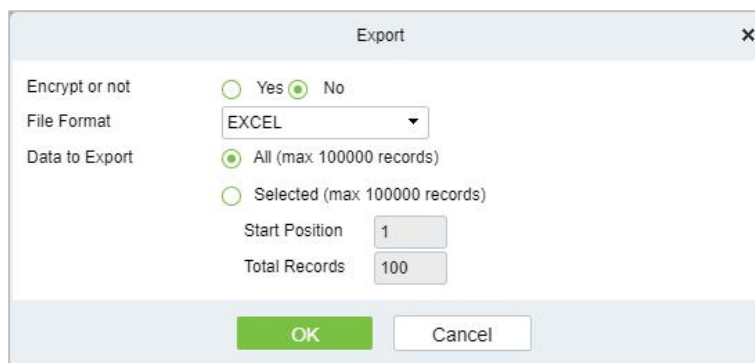


Figure 7- 35 Incoming Unusual Vehicles of Export Interface

### 7.6.6 Fixed Vehicle Authorization Record

It will provide the details of the vehicle which fixed authorization records of the parking.

Click **Report Management > Fixed vehicle Authorization Record**. Select the desired time period, vehicle owner and license plate number, and click 🔍 to query Exit records. Click **More** to query based on other conditions.

#### 7.6.6.1 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

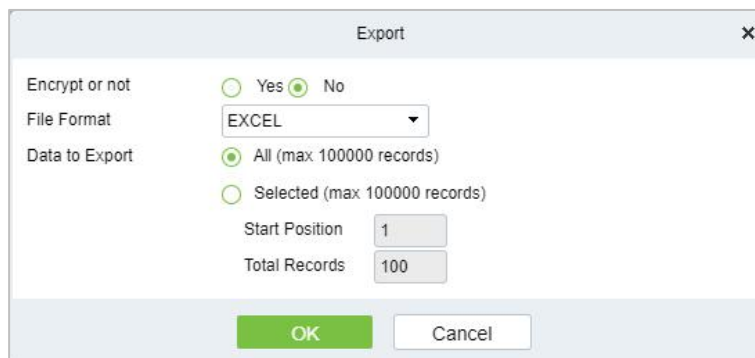


Figure 7- 36 Fixed vehicle Authorization Record of Export Interface

### 7.6.7 Device Operation Record

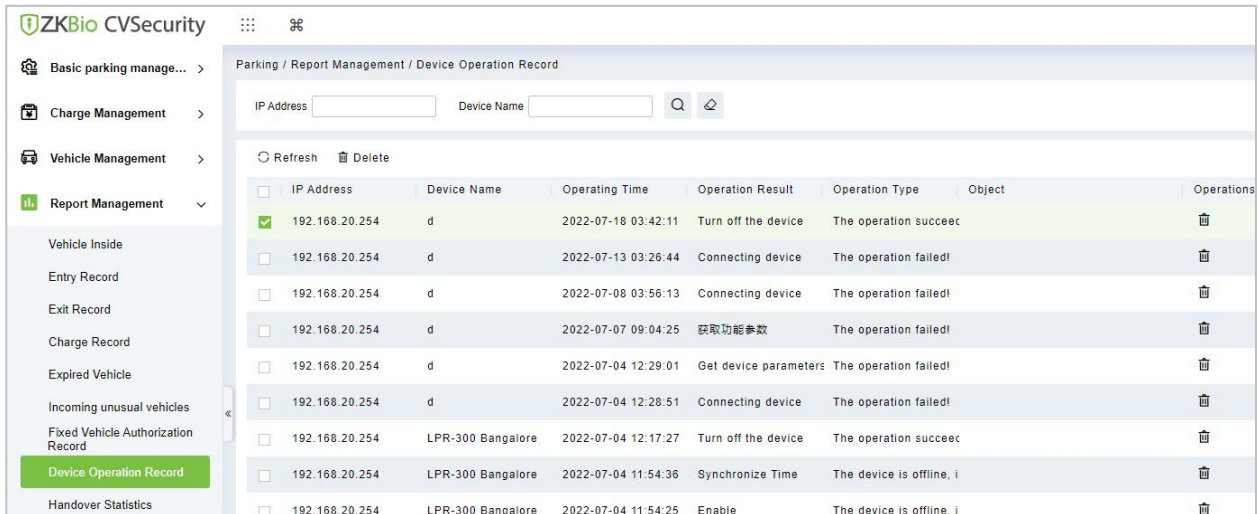


Figure 7- 37 Device Operation Record Interface

#### 7.6.7.1 Delete

Select one or more device operation record and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected device operation record. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single device operation record.

### 7.6.8 Handover Statistics

The Handover Record provides reports of handover records.

Choose **Report Management > Handover Statistics**. Select the desired time period and operator name and click \ to query handover records. Click **More** to query based on other conditions. The page is shown in the following figure.

#### 7.6.8.1 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

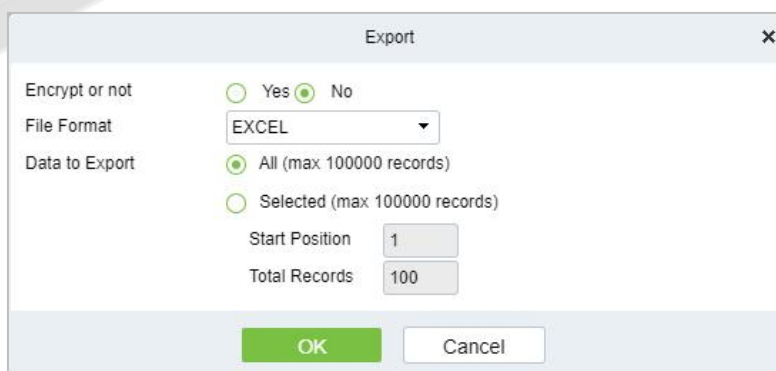


Figure 7- 38 Hand Over Statistics of Export Interface

### 7.6.9 Daily Income Statistics

The Daily Report provides reports of the total amount of charges per day for each shift in each duty guard booth.

Choose **Report Management > Daily Reports**. Select the desired time period and click \ to query the total amount of charges for each shift in each duty guard booth. The page is shown in the following

figure.

### 7.6.9.1 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

Figure 7- 39 Daily Income Statistics of Export Interface

## 7.6.10 Monthly Income Statistics

The Monthly Report provides statistics of parking fees for each day of the month.

Choose **Report Management > Monthly Reports**. Select the desired time period and click **1A** to query the parking fees the page is shown in the following figure.

### 7.6.10.1 Export

Device information can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

Figure 7- 40 Export Interface of Monthly Income Statistics

## 7.7 Real-Time Monitoring

This part introduces the configuration of real-time monitoring in parking module and can view the monitoring dynamics in real time in this interface.

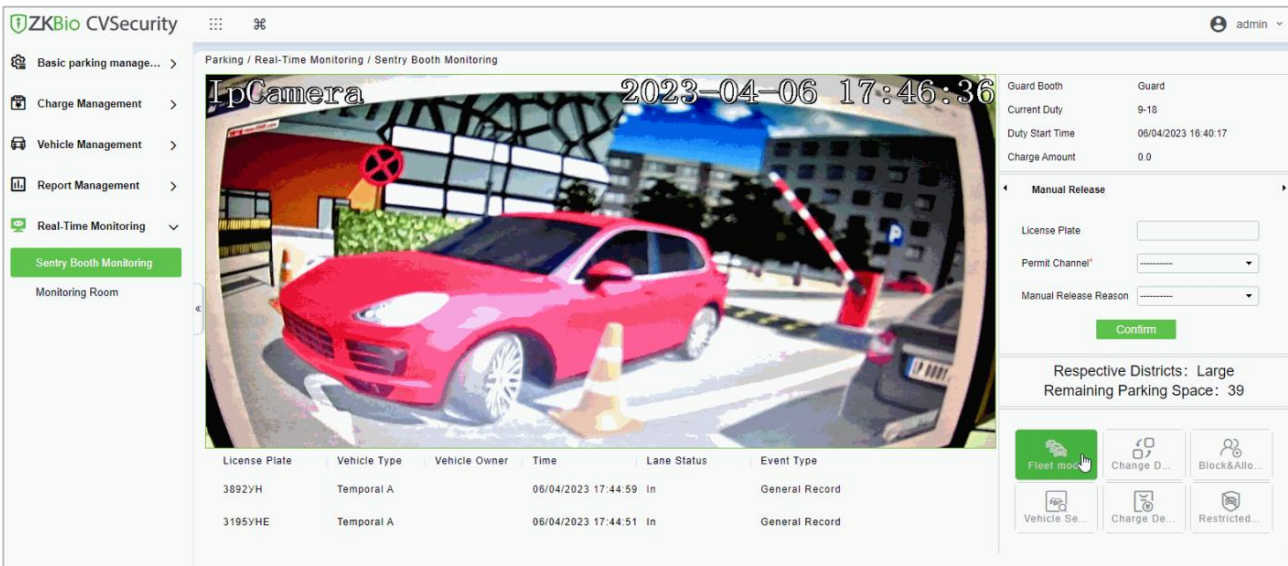
### 7.7.1 Sentry Booth Monitoring

This part introduces that the configuration of monitoring related information can be viewed in the booth monitoring interface in, and the administrator can view the monitoring dynamics in the booth monitoring interface.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, click "**Parking Real-time Monitoring > Sentry Booth Monitoring**".

**Step 2:** In the booth monitoring interface, you can view related monitoring videos and events, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 7- 41 Guard Booth Monitoring Interface**

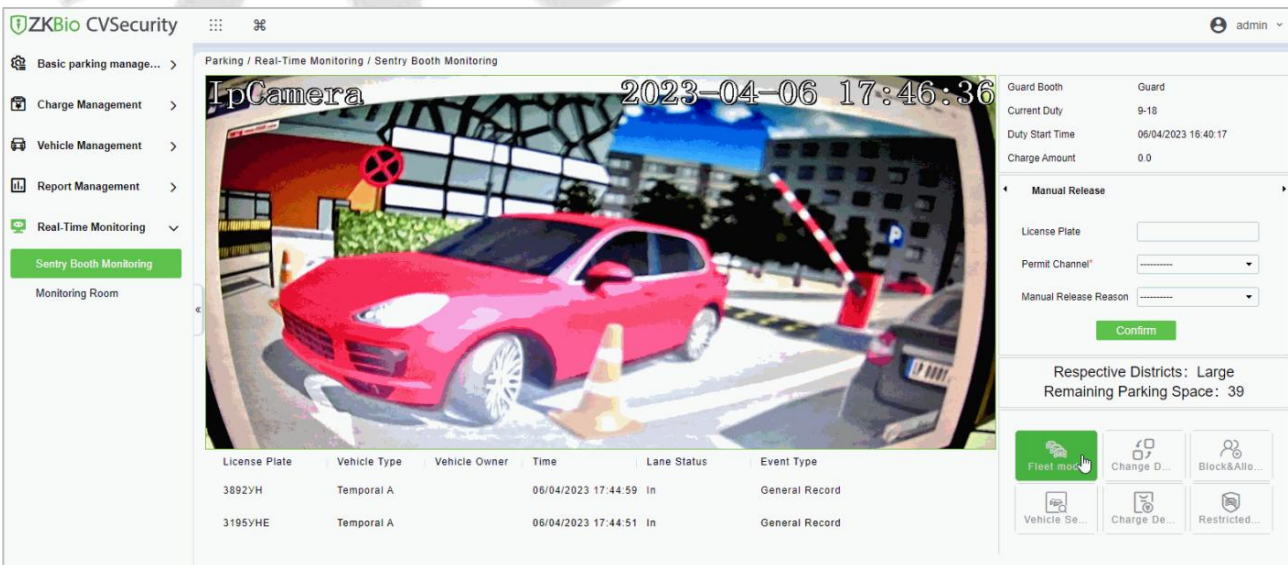
### 7.7.1.1 Manual Release

This part introduces the manual release function of Guard Booth monitoring, and the administrator can operate the vehicle release in this interface.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, click "**Parking Real-time Monitoring > Box Monitoring > Manual Release**".

**Step 2:** Under manual release, the administrator can operate vehicle release here, and when the vehicle is not recognized, manual release can be performed, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 7- 42 Manual Pass Interface**

### 7.7.1.2 Change Shifts

This part introduces the information configuration of personnel shift change in, where you can view the data information of shift change handover when exchanging shifts.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, click "**Parking Box Monitoring > Shift Change**".

**Step 2:** Set the relevant shift information, as shown in figure below, and refer to Table 10-18 for parameter description.

**Figure 7- 43 Shift Change Interface**

| Parameter                                  | Description   |
|--|---|
| Name of Duty Officer                       | Show the name of the person on duty                           |
| Working Hours                              | Show the working hours of the personnel on duty               |
| attendance Checking Hours                  | Display the attendance checking time of the attendant         |
| Number of Vehicles Released Free of Charge | Number of vehicles allowed to be released free of charge      |
| Number of Manual Switches                  | Number of times of manual release through manual gate opening |
| Advance Amount                             | Such as reserve amount, such as reserve for change            |
| Preferential Amount                        | Amount of parking discount                                    |
| Turnover                                   | Business amount generated by parking lot charges              |
| Total Amount                               | Total amount of car park revenue                              |
| Actual Amount                              | Actual amount of parking lot income (net income)              |

Table 7-18 Description of Shift Change Parameters

**Step 3:** Enter the account number and password of the shift changer.

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of booth shift change.

### 7.7.2 Monitor Room

This part introduces that the configuration of monitoring related information can be viewed in the monitoring room interface in, and the administrator can view the monitoring dynamics in the

monitoring room interface.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, click "**Parking Real-Time Monitoring > Monitor Room**".

**Step 2:** You can view relevant monitoring videos and data statistics in the monitoring room interface, as shown in figure below.

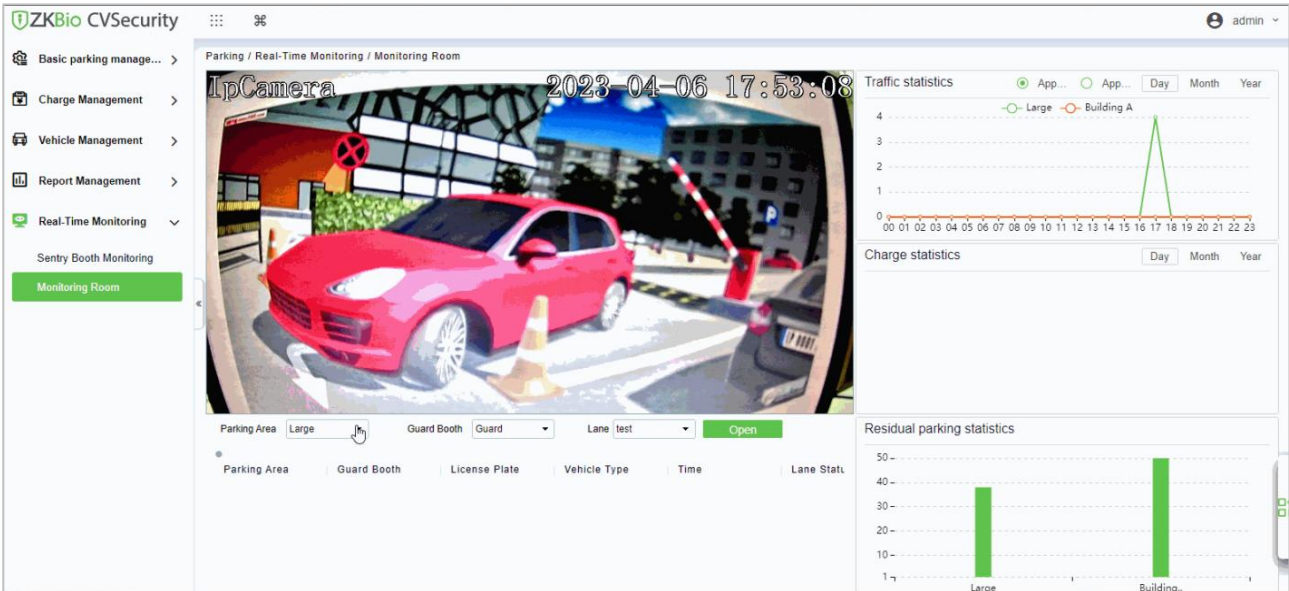


Figure 7- 44 Monitoring Room Interface

### 7.7.2.1 Manual Barrier Opening

This part introduces the Step configuration that the administrator can open the Barrier manually, which can be used to open the Barrier manually when the vehicle is not recognized.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, click "**Parking Real-time Monitoring > Monitor Room**".

**Step 2:** In the monitor room interface, click "Open Gate-Enter License Plate Number-Confirm Open Gate", as shown in figure below.

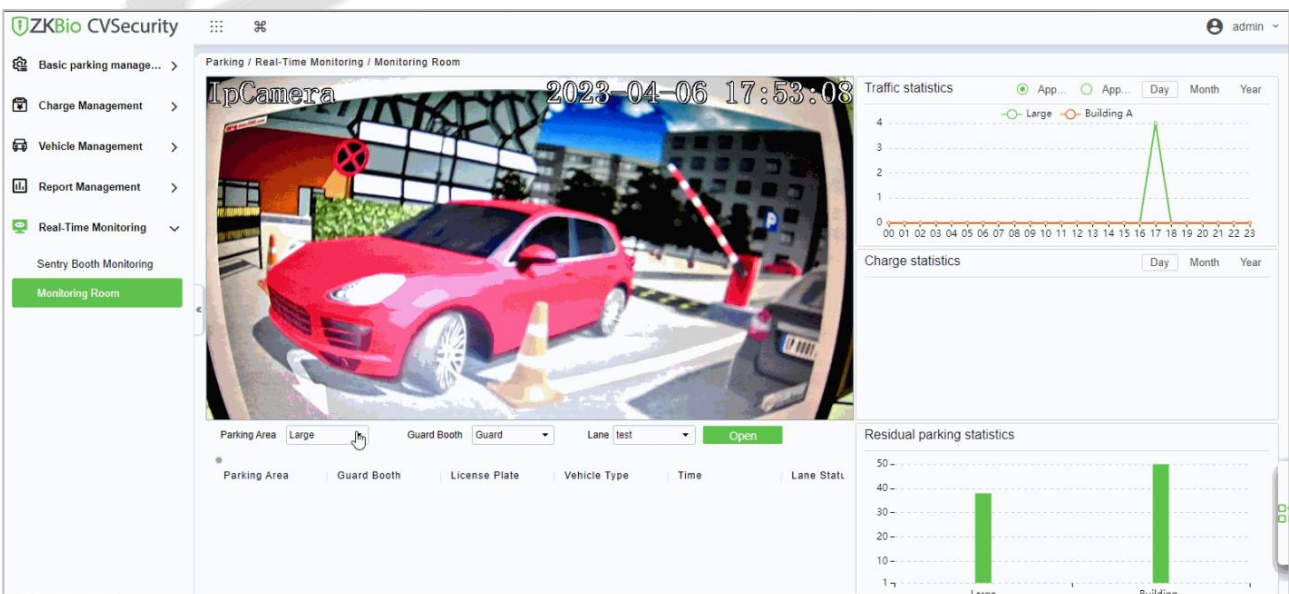


Figure 7- 45 Switch Interface

## 7.8 Ticket Dispenser Management

A parking lot ticket dispenser is a form of gate that allows pedestrians to pass through a designated area one at a time. They are typically installed in parking areas that are unattended.

### 7.8.1 Authorized Products (BEST-W Protocol)

Obtain Best-W protocol secret key and upload it to the ticket dispenser for authorization binding.

● Operation:

**Step 1:** Click **System > Communication Management > Product > New**, Add a product.

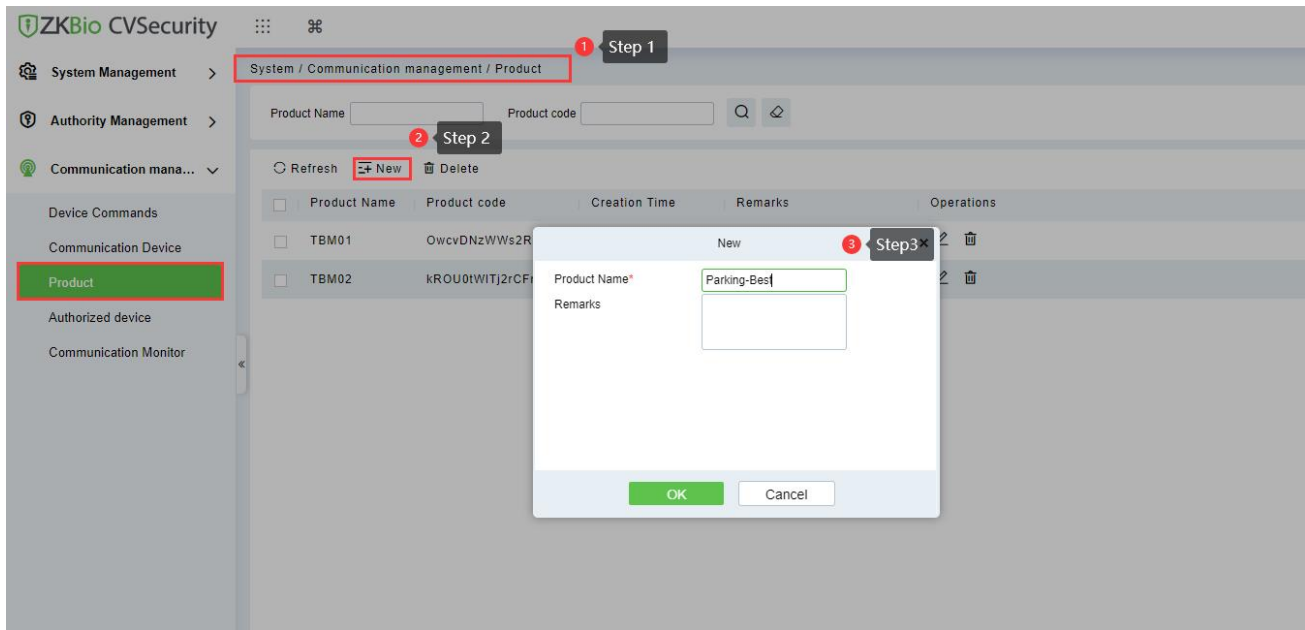


Figure 7- 46 Add a product

**Step 2:** Click **System > Communication Management > Authorized device > New**, enter the device serial number to generate the secret key.

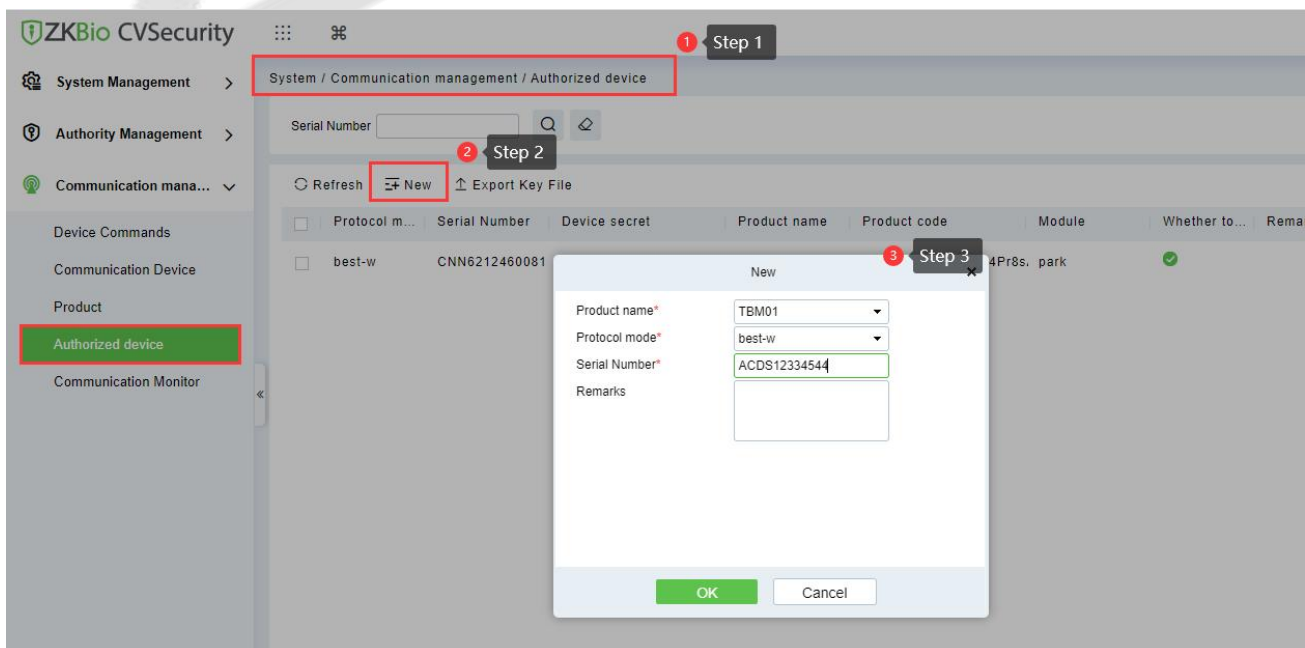
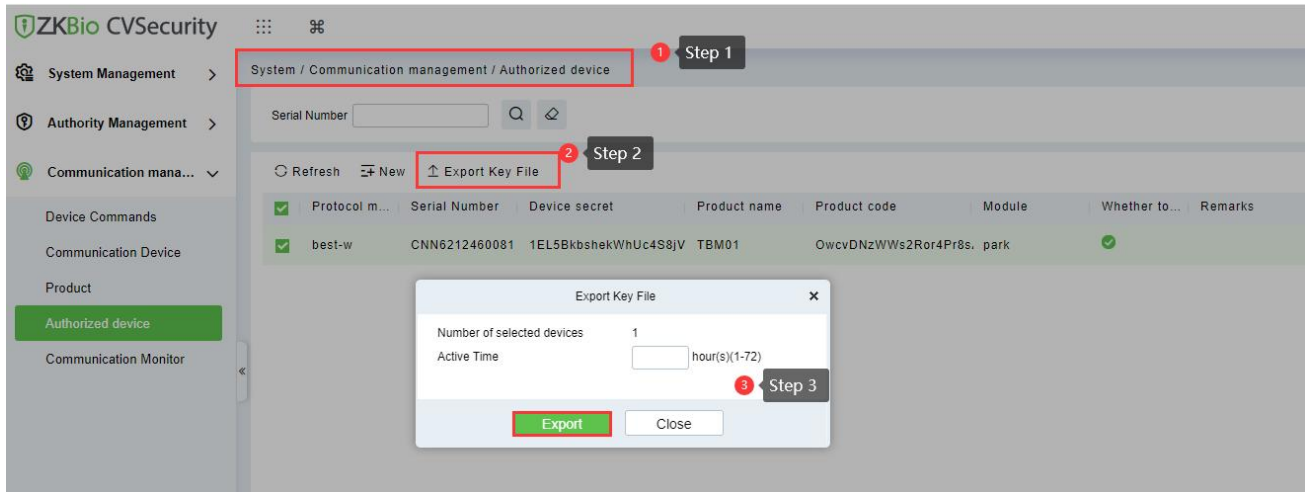


Figure 7- 47 Authorized Device

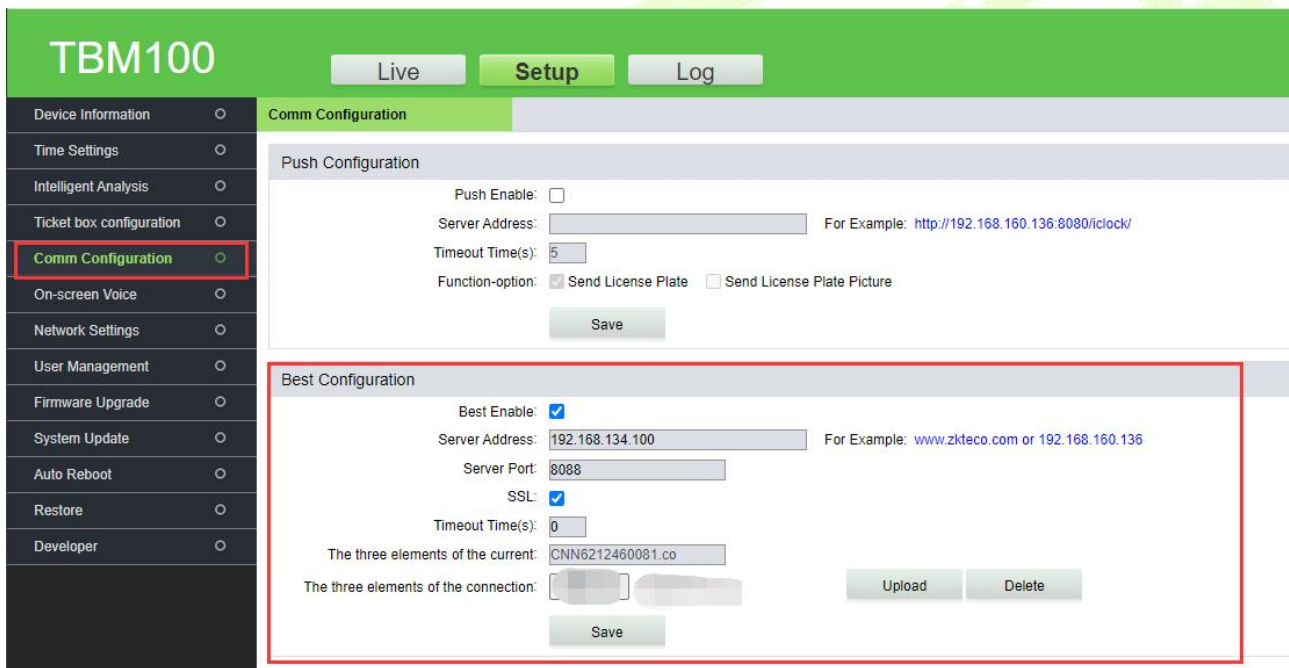
Select the product, click **Export Key File**, enter the activation time and click **Export**.



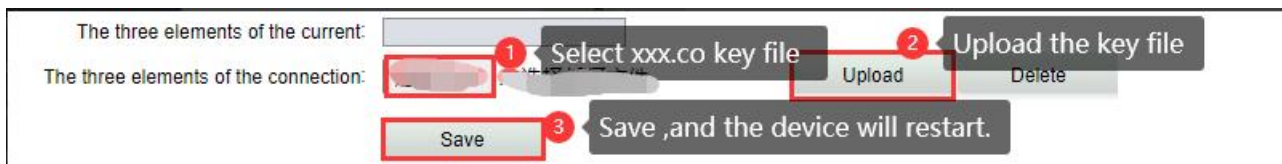
**Figure 7- 48 Export Key File**

**Active Time:** The secret key activation time range, after that, the secret key cannot be used again.

Step 3: Login in TBM01 web page, click Setup > Comm Configuration > Best Configuration and Enable Best.



**Figure 7- 49 TBM01 Web Page**



**Figure 7- 50 Import Key File**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter      | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Server Address | Server address of the connected ZKBio CVSecurity .                             |
| Server Port    | The port for the device to communicate with ZKBio CVSecurity, default is 8088. |

| Parameter                            | Description  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| SSL                                  | Whether the ZKBio CVSecurity server is encrypted or not, and if it is HTTPS then Enable SSL.   |
| Timeout Time(s)                      | Communication timeout connection time.   |
| The three elements of the current    | The secret key exported from ZKBio CVSecurity and decompressed; the key format is "SNXXXXX.co" |
| The three elements of the connection | Select the Key of "SN.co", click Upload, then <b>Save</b> and the device will restart.         |

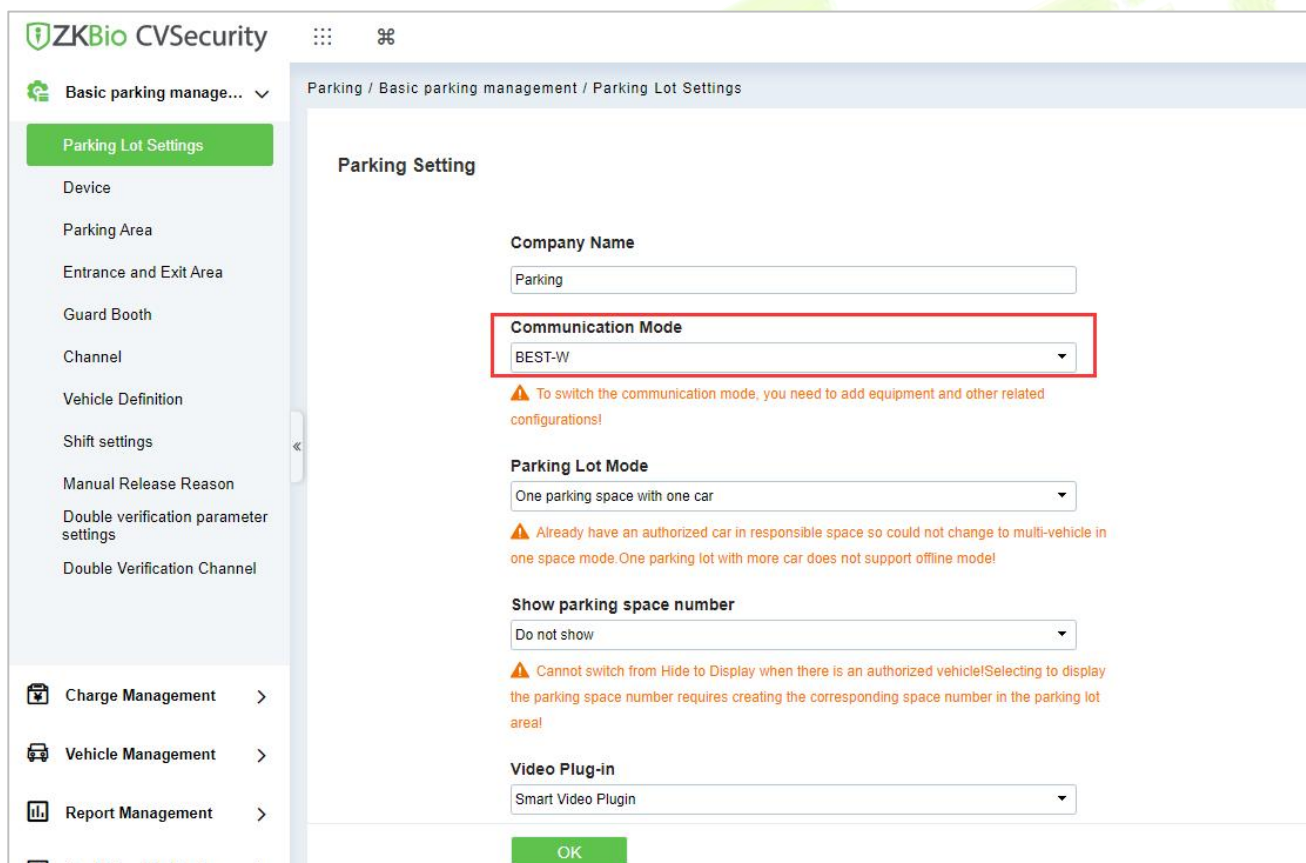
**Table 7-19 Comm setting**

**Note:** The firmware of ticket dispenser should be higher than "V9.2.4.20221223.16".

### 7.8.2 Set Parking Parameter

Enabling BEST protocol and ticket dispenser for ZKBio CVSecurity.

**Step 1:** Go to ZKBio CVSecurity Parking Module, click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting > Communication Mode**, select BEST-W.



**Figure 7- 51 Enable BEST-W**

#### 7.8.2.1 Entrance and Exit Lane Setting

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting > Entrance and Exit Lane Setting > Enable Ticket box**.

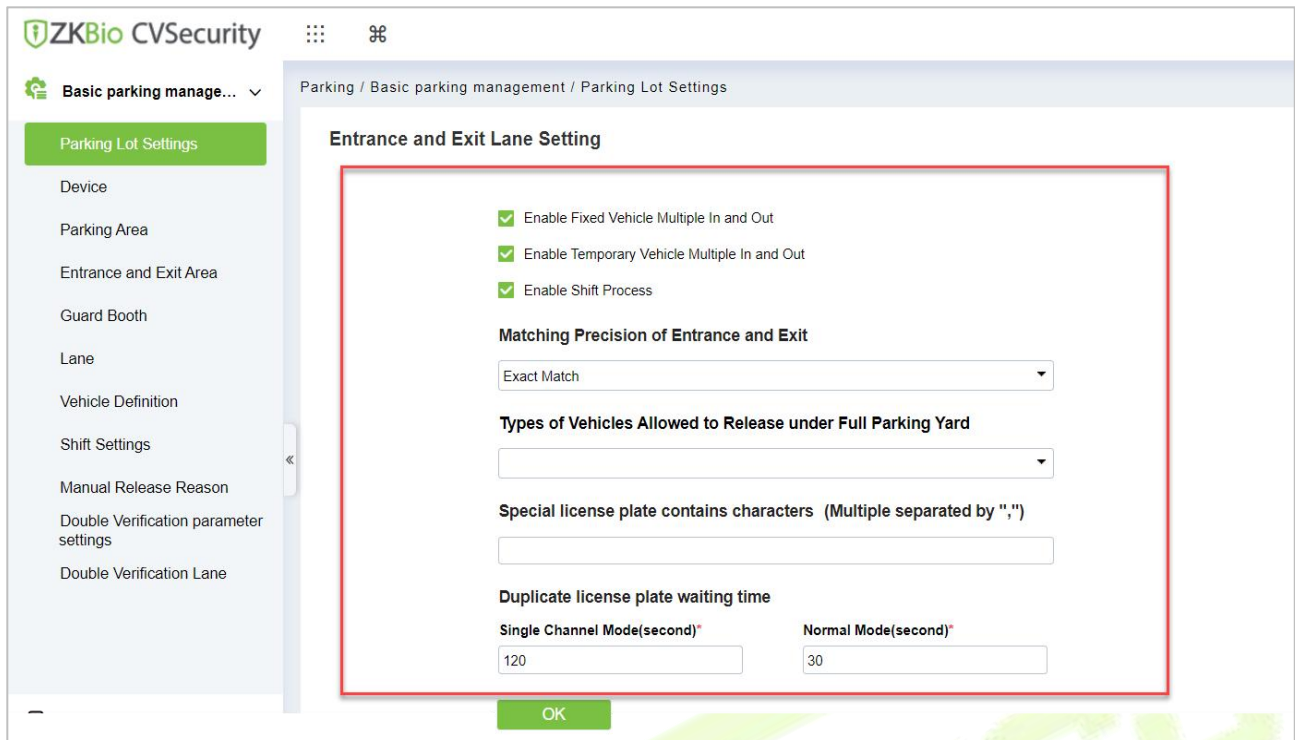


Figure 7- 52

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter                      | Description   | Parameter   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|
| Entrance and Exit Lane Setting | Enable the fixed or temporary vehicles are multiple In and out. | Allow the fixed or Temporary vehicles to the parking area and vehicles are multiple in and out.                         |
|                                | Matching Precision of Entrance and Exit                         | vehicles are allowed by exact match and 5 or 6digits registration numbers to the entrance and exit area of the parking. |
|                                | Types of Vehicles Allowed to Release under Full parking Yard    | vehicles are allowed like small size, larger or medium vehicle.   |
|                                | Special license plate contains characters                       | Enter the special license plates contains characters wherever required.   |
|                                | Duplicate license plate waiting time                            | In Duplicate license plate waiting time Mention the timings of single channel mode and normal mode                      |

Table 7-20

### 7.8.2.2 Charge Management Setting

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting> Charge Management Setting > Enable Ticket box.**

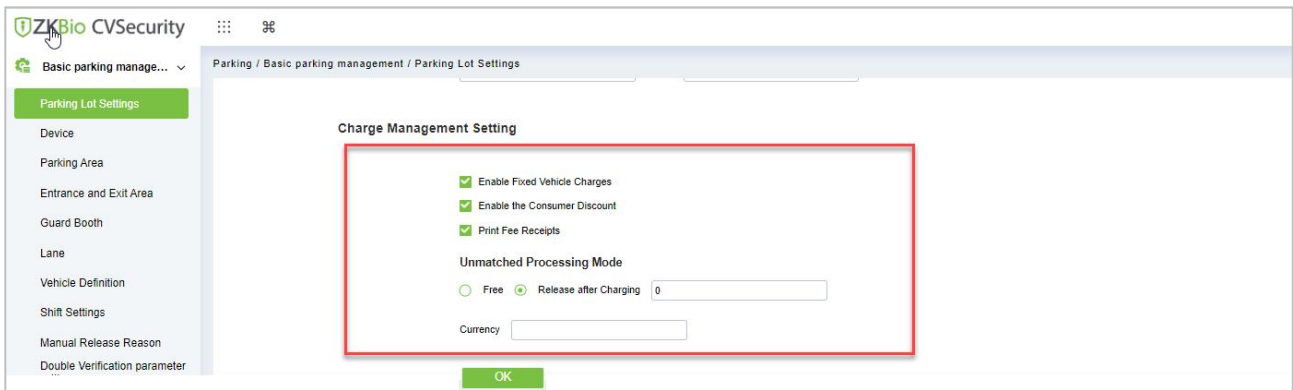


Figure 7- 53

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter                  | Specific Parameters              | Parameter Description   |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| Charge Management Settings | Enable the fixed Vehicle charges | If the fixed vehicle charging standard has been set in advance, check this setting, and when the fixed vehicle is authorized and postponed, it will be implemented according to this charging standard; If it is not checked, you can only manually enter the extension time and amount.            |
|                            | Print the fee receipt            | If the receipt printer is set and connected, the corresponding receipt will be printed when the charge is successful.   |
|                            | Enable consumption discounts     | Set the "Discount Strategy" in advance and then check the Enable Consumption Discount System, and the consumption discount will be carried out.   |
|                            | Unmatched processing mode        | There are two existing ways to deal with mismatches: "free release" and "opening the gate after charging fees"; Manual release is to open the gate directly, and when the gate is opened after charging, a charge confirmation box will pop up during manual release (only for temporary vehicles). |

Table 7-21

### 7.8.2.3 Fixed Vehicle Setting

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting> Fixed Vehicle Setting > Enable Ticket box.**

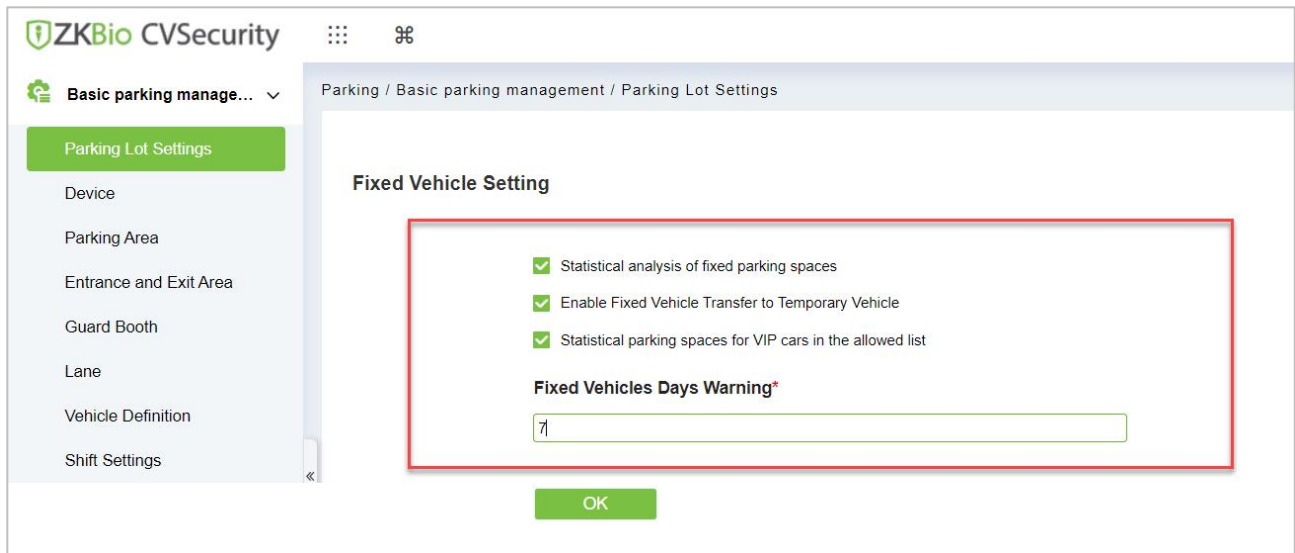


Figure 7- 54

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter             | Specific Parameters   | Parameter Description  |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| Fixed Vehicle Setting | Statistical analysis of fixed parking spaces                | If it is checked, the number of vehicles will not be deducted after authorization, and the number of vehicles will be counted in real time when vehicles enter and leave the field.If it is not checked, the number of fixed vehicles will be deducted after authorization.  |
|                       | Enable fixed vehicle transfer to temporary vehicles         | If this option is checked, the fixed vehicles will be automatically converted into a temporary vehicles after it expires, and the charge will be made according to the temporary charging method.<br>If it is not checked, this option will require manual release for the fixed vehicles to come out when it expires. |
|                       | Statistical parking spaces for VIP cars in the allowed list | Only for VIP vehicles to park in the allowed specific area space.  |
|                       | Warning days for fixed vehicles                             | If the warning days are set to 5 days, it is necessary to prompt the vehicles to postpone the fixed vehicles when entering and leaving the field within 5 days.  |

Table 7-22

### 7.8.2.4 Voice and Display Setting

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting> Voice and Display Setting > Enable Ticket box.**

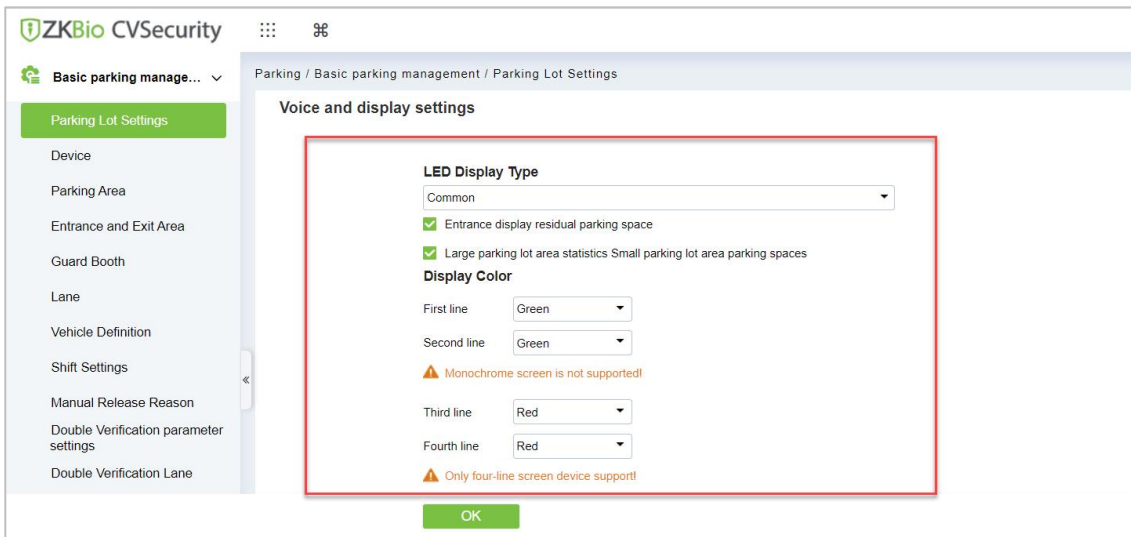


Figure 7- 55

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter                  | Specific Parameters   | Parameter Description   |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| Voice and display settings | The entrance shows the remaining parking spaces                   | Display the remaining parking spaces at the entrance of the parking lot.  |
|                            | Statistics of car Parking area parking spaces in car Parking area | The statistics of the number of cars in the corresponding booth in the big Parking area include the number of cars in the small Parking area. |
|                            | Display color   | Set the display color of parking machine.   |

Table 7-23

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting> Ticket Dispenser setting > Enable Ticket box.**

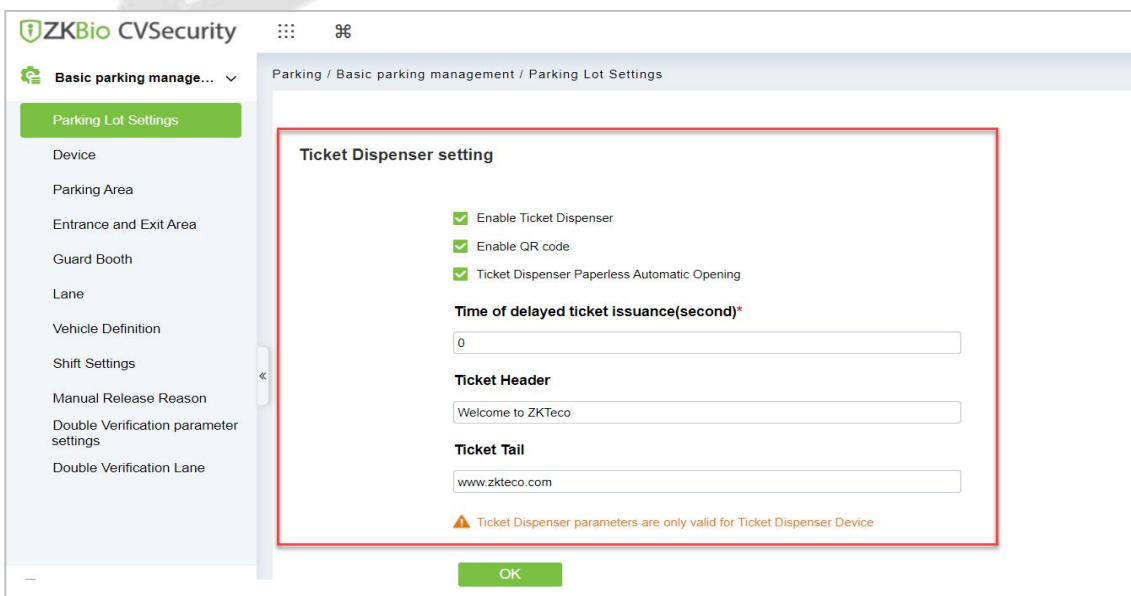


Figure 7- 56 Enable Ticket Dispenser

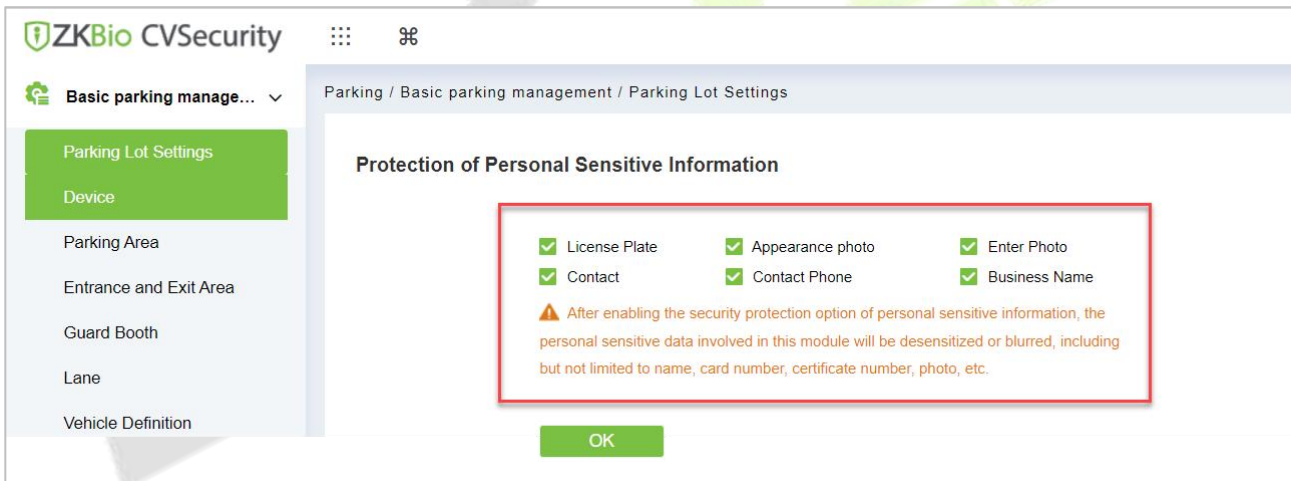
Fields are as follows:

| Parameter                 | Specific Parameters                          | Parameter Description  |
|---------------------------|--|--|
| Ticket Dispenser Settings | Enable Ticket Dispenser                      | Enable the platform's ticket dispenser function.   |
|                           | Enable QR Code                               | Enable QR Code function. Print barcode if unchecked.   |
|                           | Ticket Dispenser Paperless Automatic Opening | After setting, if there is no printing paper in the ticket dispenser, the barrier will open. |
|                           | Time of delayed ticket issuance(second)      | Ticket dispenser delays printing after the vehicle is detected.                              |
|                           | Ticket Header                                | What is displayed in the header of the ticket.   |
|                           | Ticket Tail                                  | What is displayed in the tail of the ticket.   |

**Table 7-24 Enable Ticket Dispenser**

### 7.8.2.5 Protection of Personal Sensitive Information

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting> Protection of Personal Sensitive Information > Enable Ticket box.**



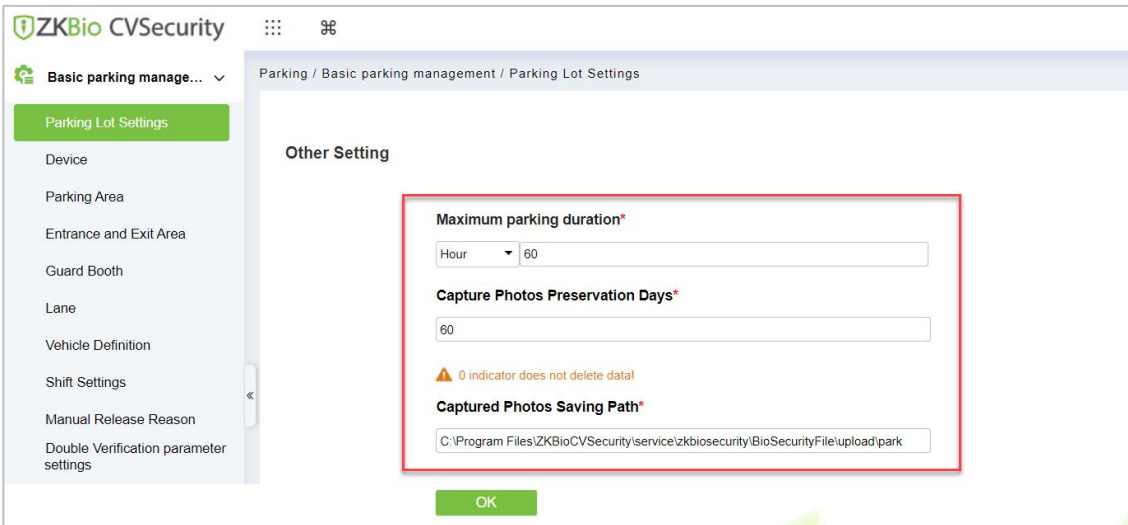
**Figure 7- 57**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter                                    | Specific Parameters                   | Parameter Description   |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| Protection of personal sensitive information | Enable personal sensitive information | Enable the License Plate, Appearance photo, Enter photo, Contact/phone, Business Name, for security protection. |

### 7.8.2.6 Other Setting

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting> Other Setting > Enable Ticket box.**



**Figure 7- 58**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter      | Specific Parameters          | Parameter Description  |
|----------------|------------------------------|--|
| Other Settings | Maximum parking duration     | Set the maximum stay time of on-site vehicles. If the on-site vehicles have not left after this time, the records of on-site vehicles will be displayed in the "On-site Stay Timeout Vehicles" report. |
|                | save days of captured photos | Set captured photos saved more than the set number of days photos will be automatically deleted, if you do not want to delete captured photos will change the parameter set to 0 days.                 |
|                | captured photos Saving Path  | You can customize the path where photos are saved.   |

**Table 7-25**

### 7.8.2.7 Offline Setting

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Parking Lot Setting> Offline Setting > Enable Lifeline Mode.**

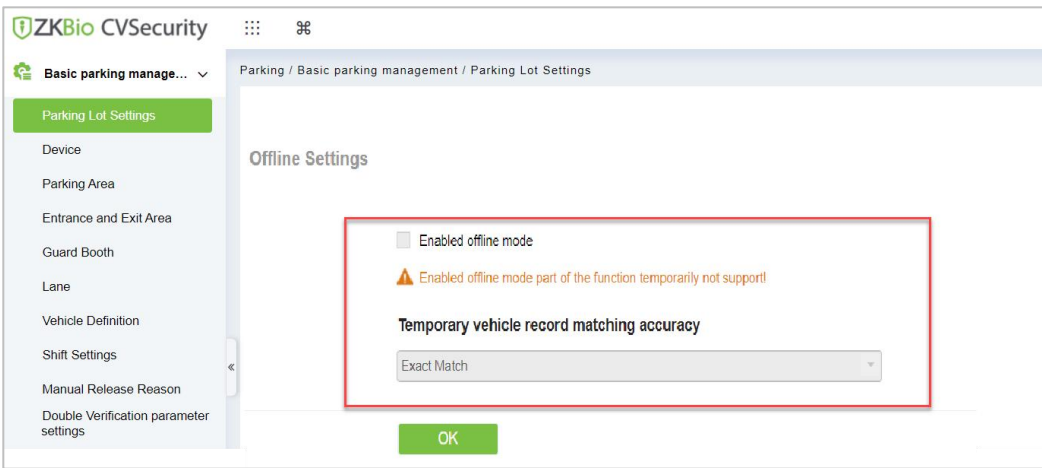


Figure 7- 59

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter       | Specific Parameters               | Parameter Description   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| Offline Setting | Enable offline mode               | Enable the License Plate, Appearance photo, Enter photo, Contact/phone, Business Name, for security protection.         |
|                 | Temporary vehicle record matching | vehicles are allowed by exact match and 5 or 6digits registration numbers to the entrance and exit area of the parking. |

Table 7-26

### 7.8.3 Add Ticket Dispenser

Add ticket dispenser to ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 7.8.3.1 Search

Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Device > Search**, search and add the ticket dispenser.

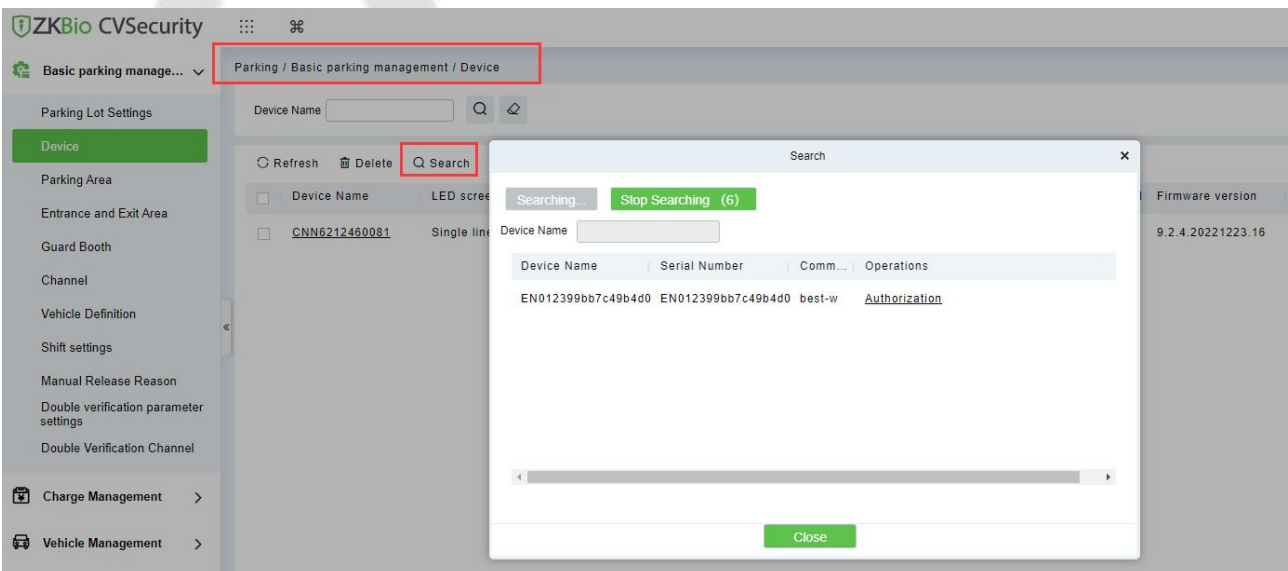


Figure 7- 60 Search device

After searching, click **Authorization**.

**Figure 7- 61 Add device**

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter          | Description                                |
|--------------------|--|
| Device Name        | The name of your ticket dispenser device   |
| Serial Number      | The serial number of devices               |
| Device Model       | Select ZK-TBM100                           |
| Communication Mode | Use BEST-W Protocol.                       |
| Username           | Login name, default is admin.              |
| Password           | Login password, the default is 123456      |
| LED Screen Type    | Types of LED screens for ticket dispenser. |

**Table 7-27 Add device**

### 7.8.3.2 Add New

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Parking module, select **Parking Basic Management > Device**.

**Step 2:** In the **Device** interface, click **Add New** and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below.

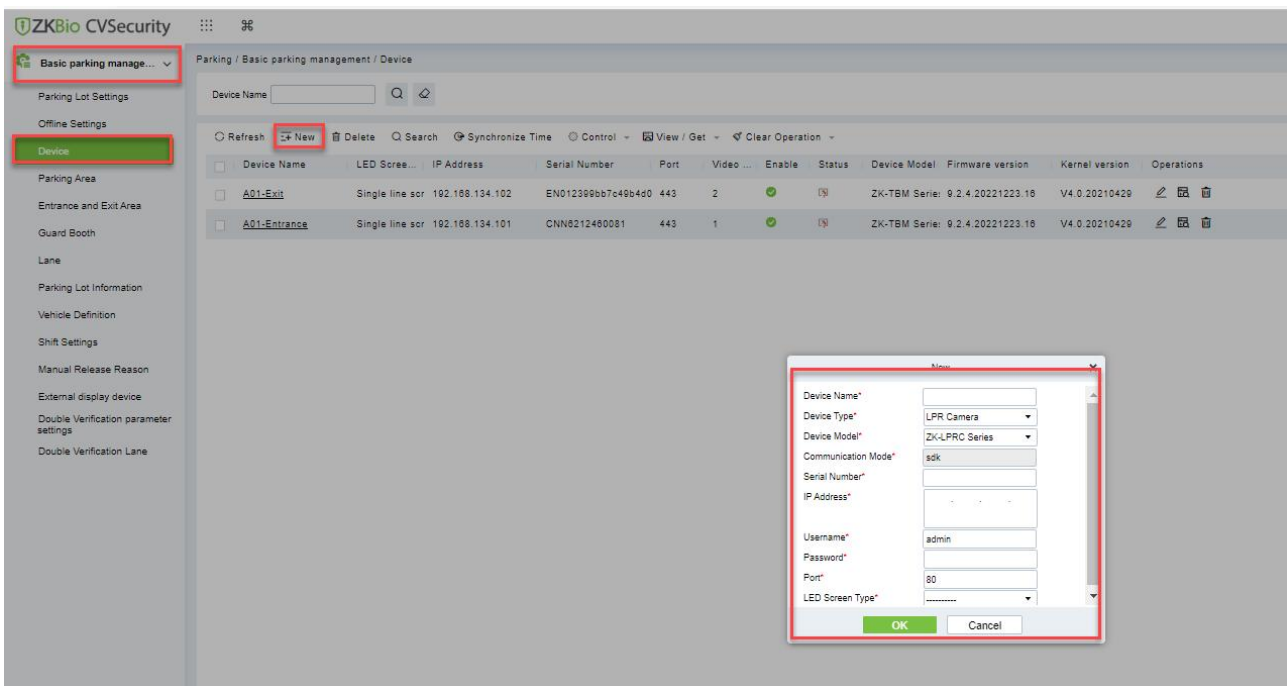


Figure 7- 62

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter          | Description                                |
|--------------------|--|
| Device Name        | The name of your ticket dispenser device   |
| Device Type        | The type of the device.                    |
| Serial Number      | The serial number of devices               |
| Device Model       | Select ZK-TBM100                           |
| Communication Mode | Use BEST-W Protocol.                       |
| IP Address         | The IP address of your device.             |
| Username           | Login name, default is admin.              |
| Password           | Login password, the default is 123456      |
| LED Screen Type    | Types of LED screens for ticket dispenser. |

Table 7-28

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of the Parking area.

### 7.8.3.3 Refresh

Refresh the current page.

### 7.8.3.4 Delete

Select **device**, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the device.

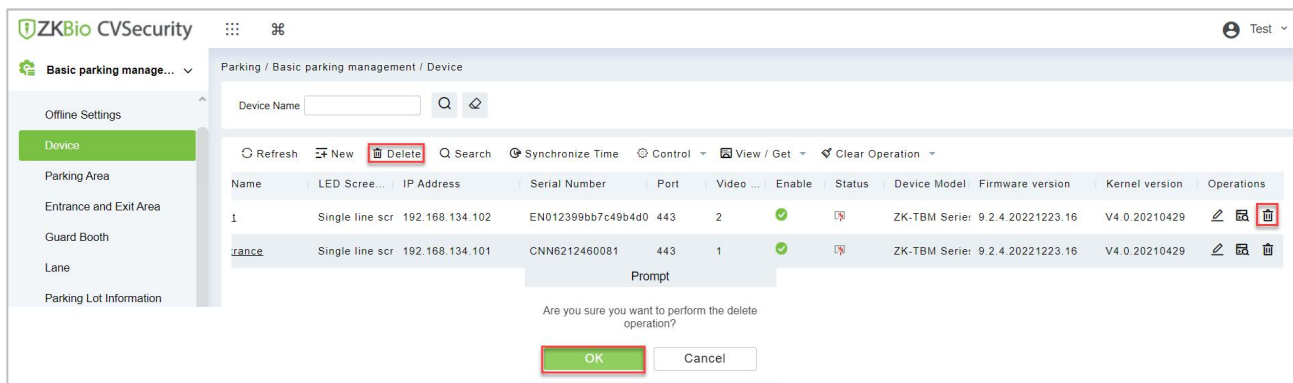


Figure 7- 63 Delete device

### 7.8.3.5 Synchronize Time

It will synchronize device time with server's current time.

### 7.8.3.6 Control

**Reboot Device:** After clicking on it, the device will restart.

### 7.8.3.7 View/Get

**Get device parameters:** Get the device parameters, such as IP Address, and video port, etc.

**Get device version:** Get the firmware version of device.

### 7.8.3.8 Clear Operation

**Clear blacklist:** Clear blacklisted license plates.

**Clear allowlist:** Clear allowlist license plates.

**Clear fixed vehicle:** Clear the fixed vehicle.

### 7.8.3.9 Operations



: Edit the selected device.



: View all commands for the device.



: Delete the selected device.

## 7.8.4 Lane Setting

**Preconditions:** Refer to 9 Parking Module to configure the parking area, entrance and exit area, guard booth.

Operation Step

**Step 1:** Click **Parking > Basic parking management > Lane**. Add the ticket dispenser device to the channel.

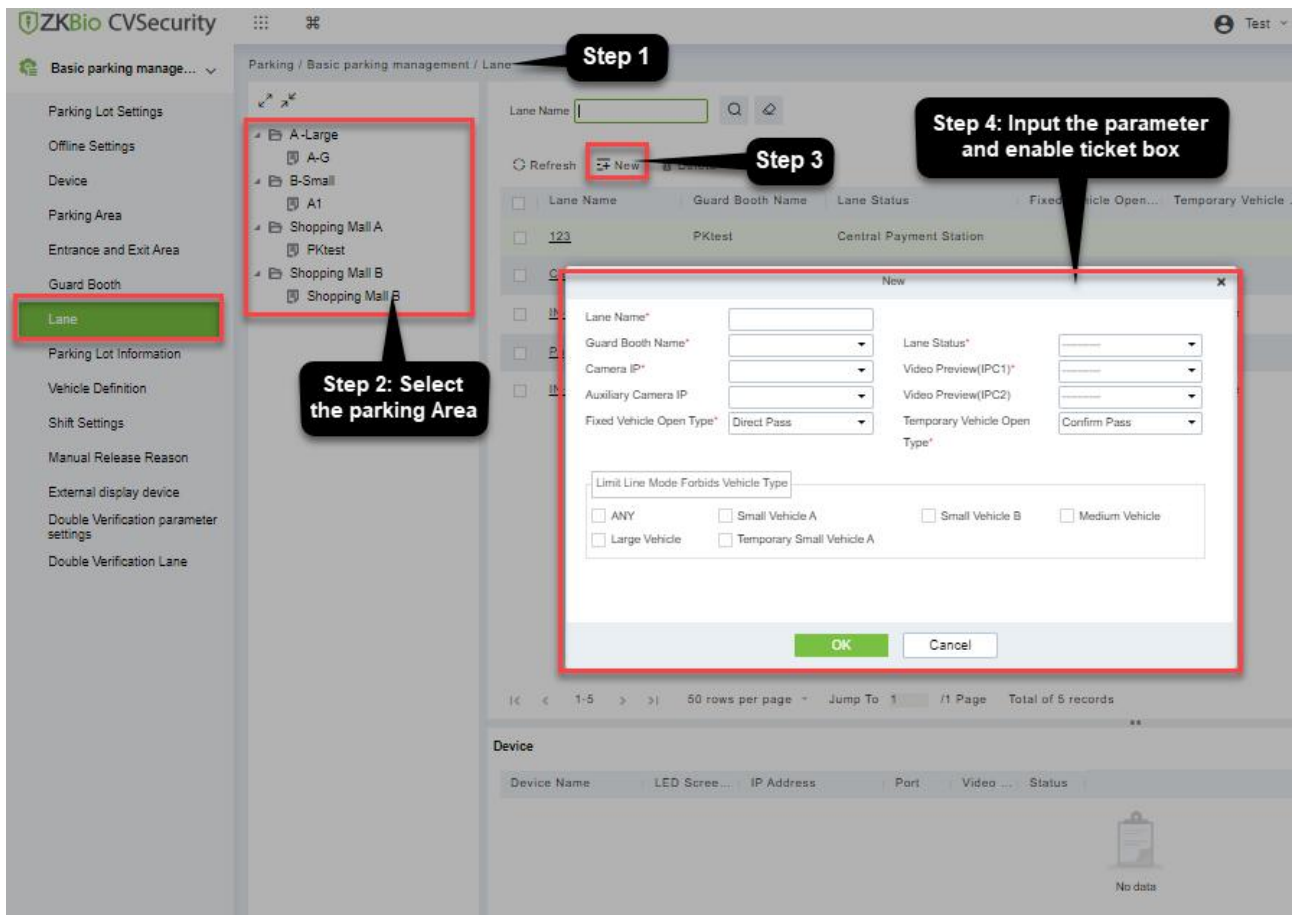


Figure 7- 64 Add channel

Fields are as follows:

| Parameter                   | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Lane Name                   | You can customize the lane name here   |
| Guard Both Name             | Select the corresponding booth   |
| Lane Status                 | Select the channel properties of the entrance and exit of the corresponding booth entrance and exit area   |
| Camera IP                   | The ip address of device 1, and the corresponding video port position is the monitoring position where the device is located   |
| Auxiliary Camera IP         | The ip address of device 2, and the corresponding video port position is the monitoring position where the device is located   |
| Video Preview Windows (IPC) | Windows for real-time monitoring of booth  |
| Fixed Vehicle Open Type     | Direct pass: card identification successfully opens the barrier.<br>Confirm pass: after successful card identification, booth confirmation is required before opening the door |
| Temporary Vehicle Open Type | Direct pass: after Printing ticket open the barrier.<br>Confirm pass: if the temporary vehicle need to charged, select "Confirm pass"  |

Table 7-29 Lane Setting

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the lane setting.

### 7.8.4.1 Edit

Click a channel name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Modify and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 7.8.4.2 Delete

Select one or more channels and click Delete at the upper part of the list and click OK to delete the selected channels. Click Cancel to cancel the operation or click Delete in the operation column to delete a single channel.

## 7.8.5 Vehicle Authorization

### 7.8.5.1 Fixed Vehicle Authorization

Vehicles for internal personnel in the case of using the ticket box, vehicles of internal personnel must swipe their cards to enter and exit.

Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Personnel** > **Personnel** > **Person** > **New**, add a new person, register card and license plate.

The screenshot displays the 'New' form for adding personnel in the ZKBio CVSecurity system. The form is divided into several sections:

- Personnel ID:** A text input field containing the value '2642'.
- Department:** A dropdown menu with '技術部' selected.
- Name:** Fields for First Name and Last Name.
- Gender:** A dropdown menu.
- Certificate Type:** A dropdown menu.
- Biometrics Type:** A dropdown menu.
- Card Number:** A text input field with a 'Browse' button next to it, highlighted with a red box.
- License Plate:** A text input field, highlighted with a red box.
- Other fields:** Mobile Phone, Certificate Number, Email, Position Name, Device Verification Password, and WhatsApp.

At the bottom of the form, there are buttons for 'Save and New', 'OK', and 'Cancel'. The background shows a table of personnel with columns for Personnel ID, First Name, Last Name, Department Name, Card Number, Verification Mode, Create Time, and Operations.

Figure 7- 65 Add personnel

**Step 2:** Click **Parking** > **Vehicle Management** > **Vehicle Authorization** > **Fixed Vehicle Batch Authorization**, select the personnel and authorization.

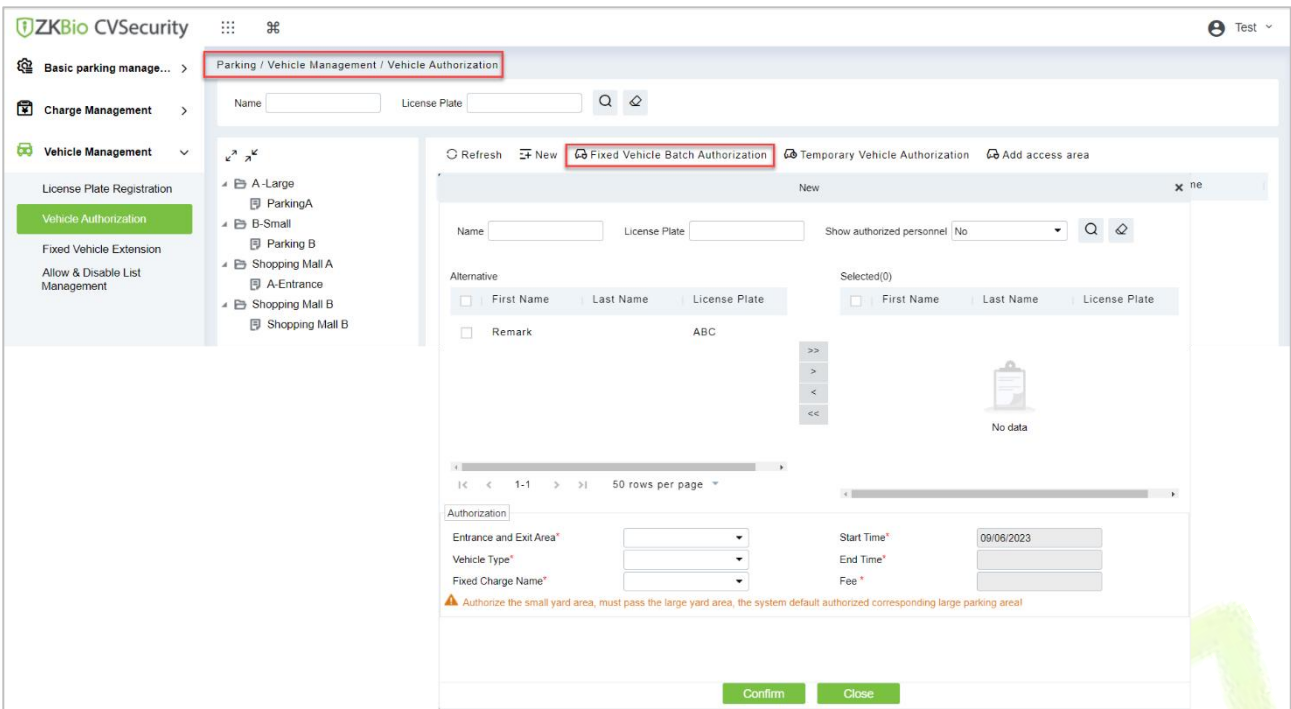


Figure 7- 66 Fixed vehicle Batch Authorization

Step 3: Successfully authorized vehicles will be displayed in the list.

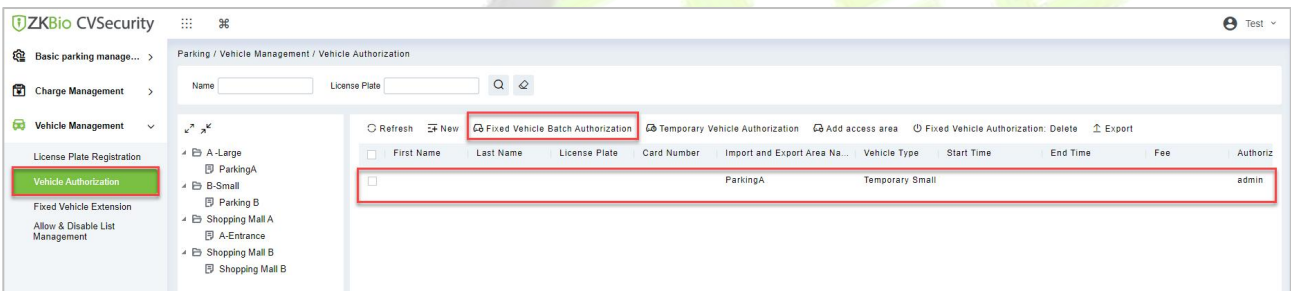


Figure 7- 67 Authorization list

### 7.8.5.2 Temporary Vehicle Authorization

Temporary cars print tickets at the entrance ticket dispenser and exit after scanning the QR code and charging.

Operation Step:

Step 1: Click **Parking > Vehicle Management > Vehicle Authorization> Temporary Vehicle Authorization**. Authorize access areas for temporary vehicles.

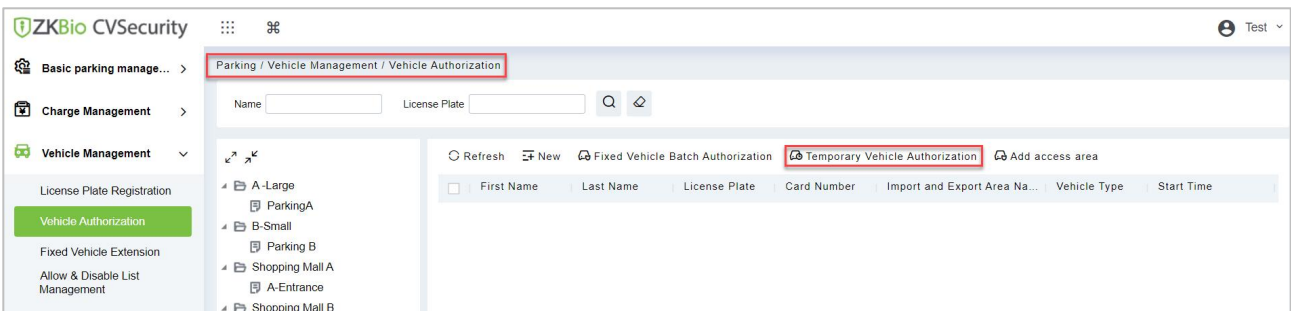


Figure 7- 68 Temporary Vehicle Authorization

Step 2: Successfully authorized vehicles will be displayed in the list.

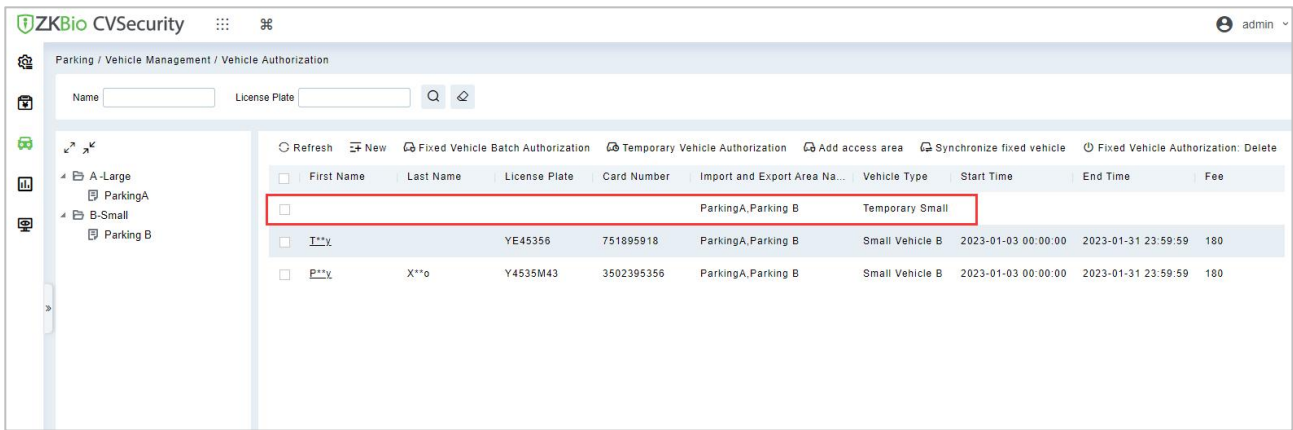


Figure 7- 69 Authorization list

## 7.8.6 Result Verification

### 7.8.6.1 Vehicle Entrance

Click Parking > Real-time Monitoring > Sentry Booth Monitoring, to check the vehicle access events.

**Fixed Vehicle:** Fixed vehicle swipe card on the ticket dispenser to enter, the booth real-time monitoring can view the record.

**Temporary Vehicle:** The vehicle sensor detects the vehicle and activates the ticket dispenser, the temporary vehicle enters after printing the ticket.

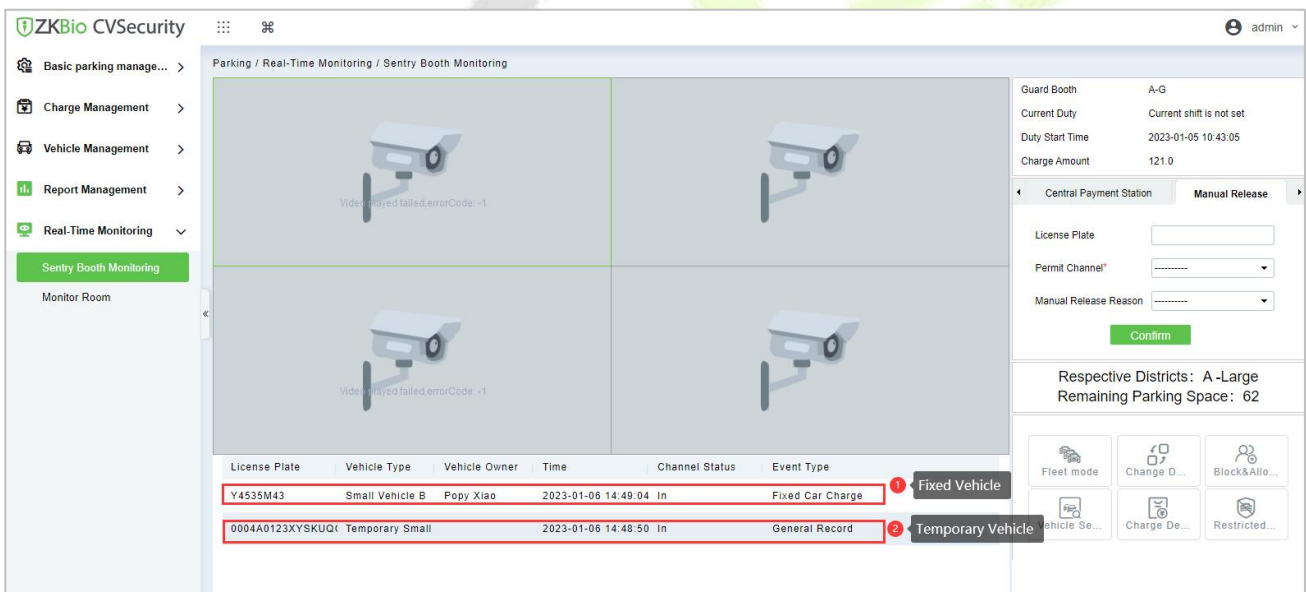


Figure 7- 70 Vehicle Entrance

### 7.8.6.2 Vehicle Exit

Click Parking > Real-time Monitoring > Sentry Booth Monitoring, to check the vehicle access events.

**Fixed Vehicle:** Fixed vehicle swipe card on the ticket dispenser to exit, the booth real-time monitoring can view the record.

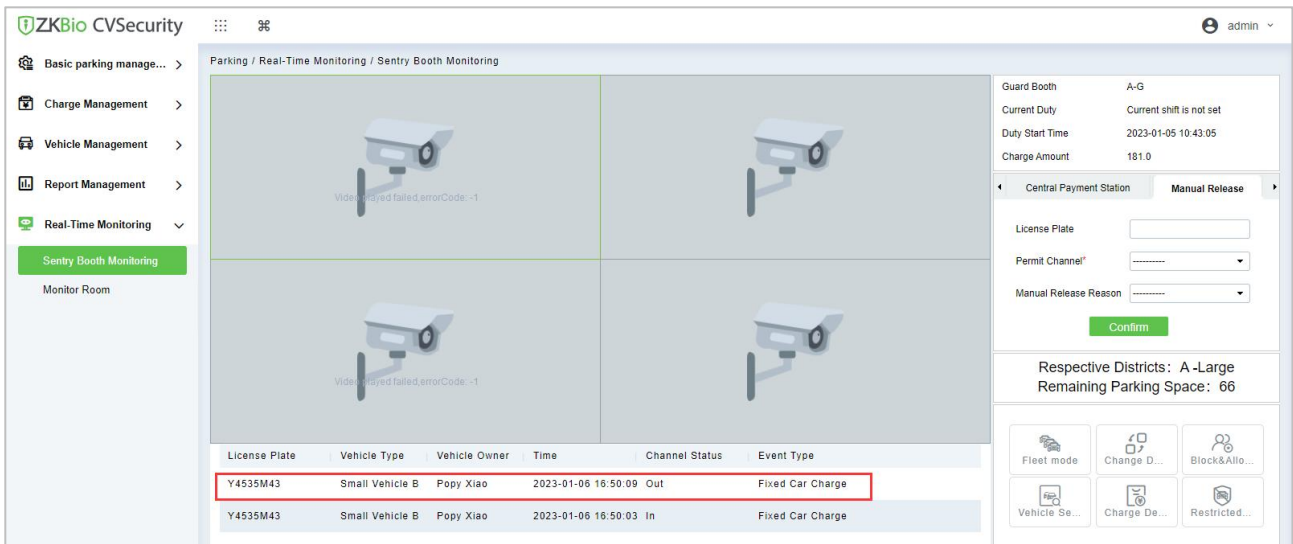


Figure 7- 71 Sentry Booth Monitoring

**Temporary Vehicle:** At the exit, after the ticket box scans the QR code, the system starts billing, check the picture below;

After charging, you can click **print the bills** or **open** the barrier.

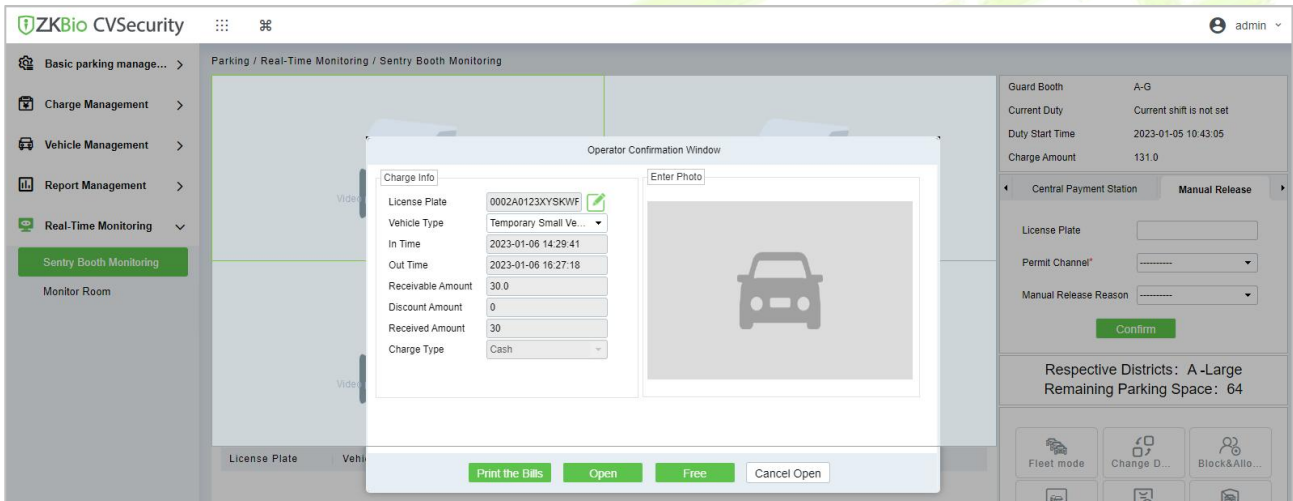


Figure 7- 72 Sentry Booth Monitoring

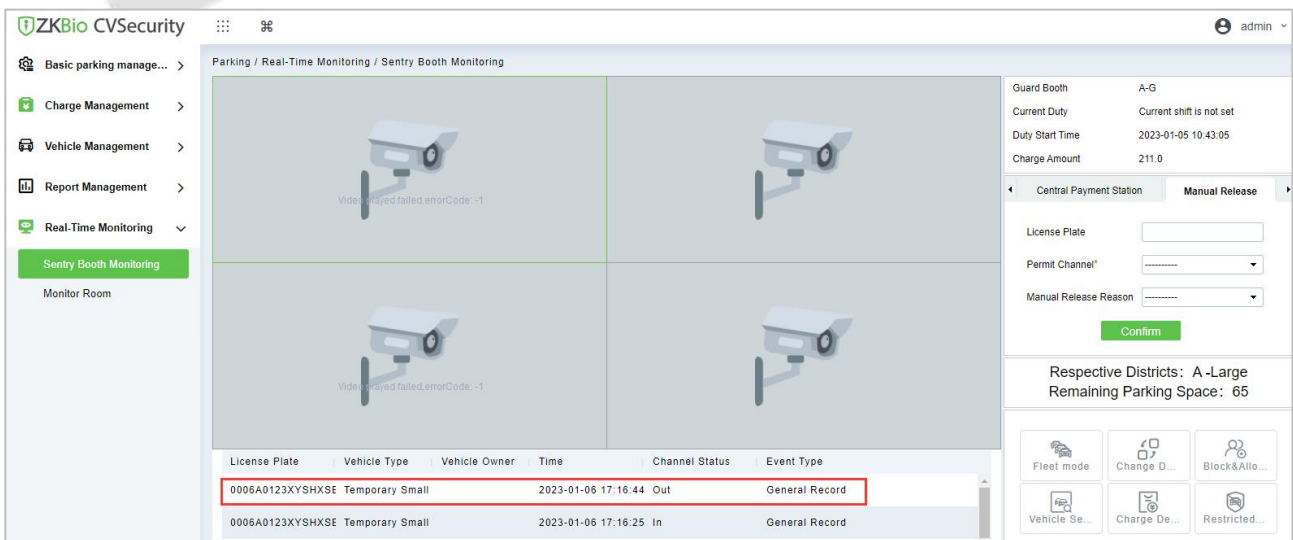


Figure 7- 73 Sentry Booth Monitoring

### 7.8.7 Central Payment Station

When the exit is far from the post, the central payment station can be activated; when charging at the station, the vehicle can stay for a period before leaving the site.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Lane > New**, add a channel and set to “Central Payment Station”.

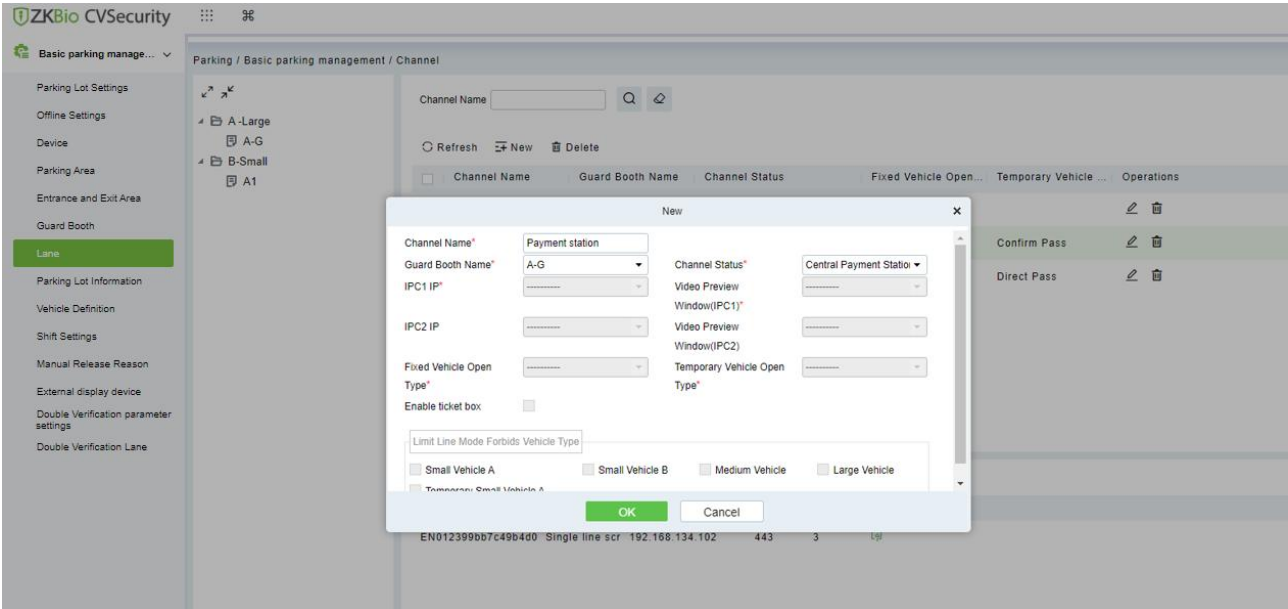


Figure 7- 74 Channel Setting (1)

**Step 2:** Click **Parking > Basic Parking Management > Lane > New**, add a channel and set to “Central Payment Exit”.

When charging at the central payment station, you need to exit at this designated "central payment exit".

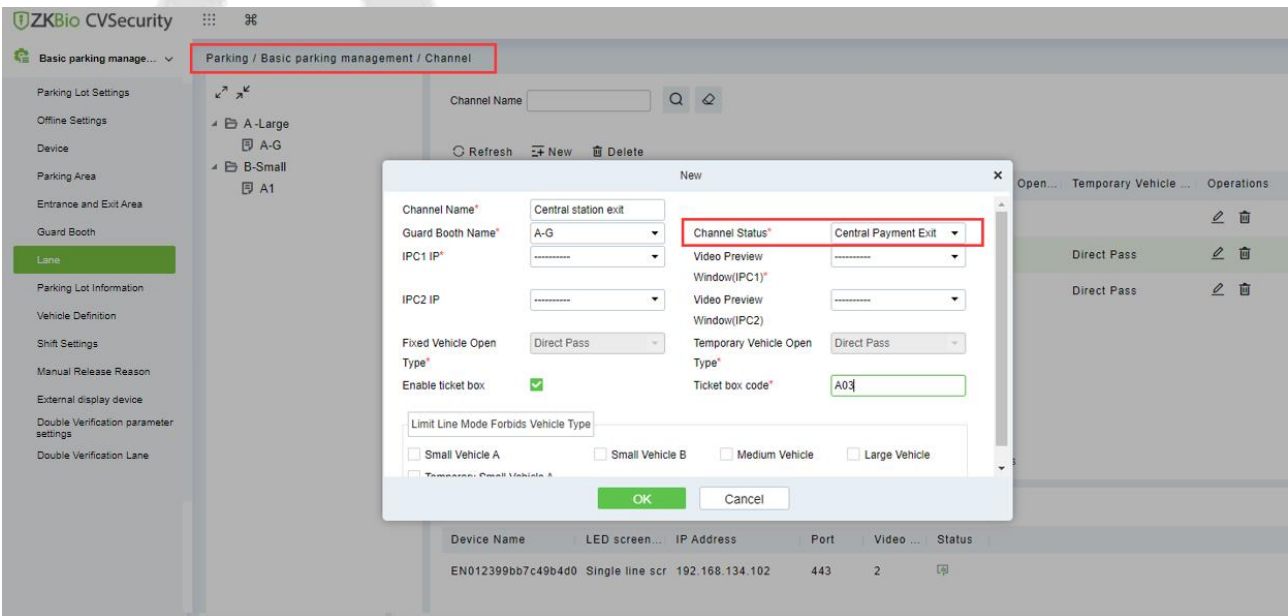


Figure 7- 75 9-65 Channel Setting (2)

**Step 3:** Click **Parking > Charge Management > Overtime Charge Rules > New**, New vehicle overstay charge rule.

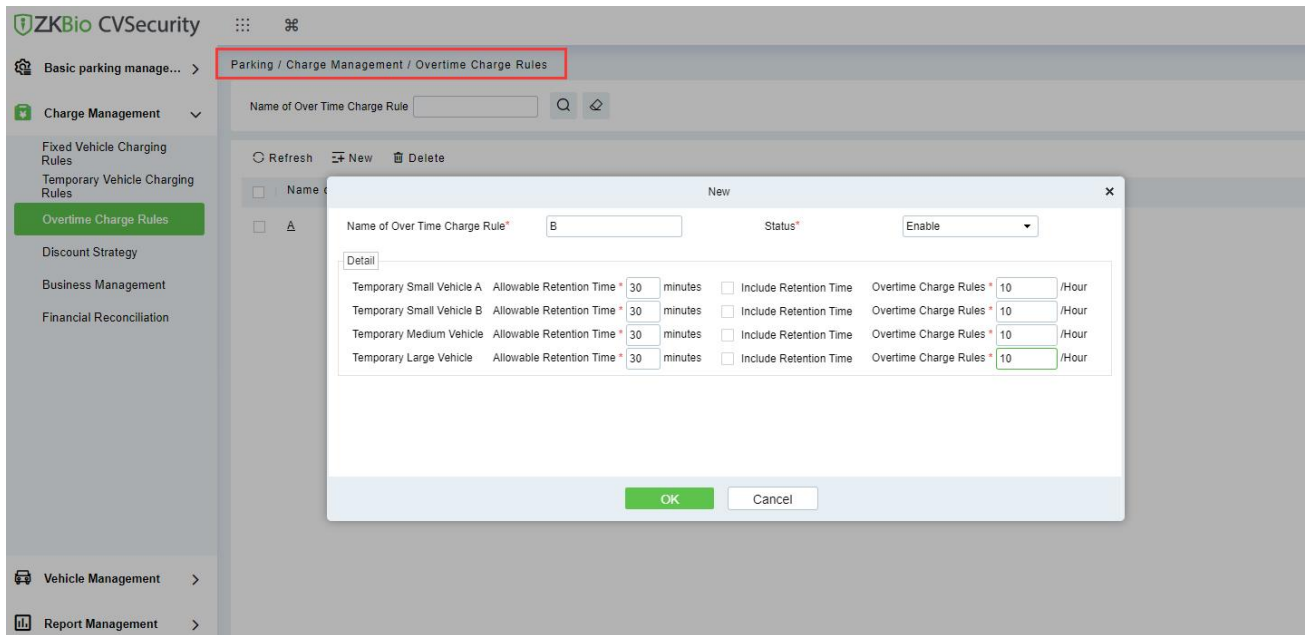




Figure 7- 76 Overstay rule

**Edit**  : Edit the selected device.

**Delete**  : Delete the selected device.

**Step 4:** Click **Parking > Real-time Monitoring > Sentry Booth Monitoring**.

When the vehicle arrives at the central payment station, the administrator uses Barcode Scanner to scan the entrance QR code and the system starts billing.

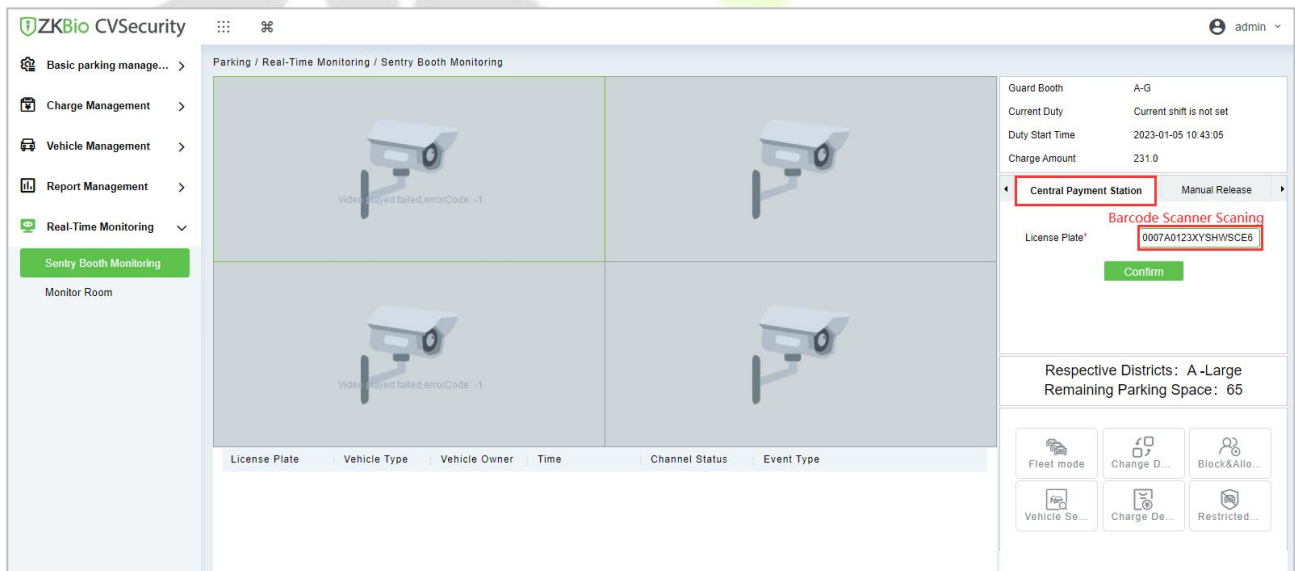


Figure 7- 77 Overstay Rule

After click **Confirm**, the charge window will pop up, after paid,you can click **Print the bills** or **Charge**.

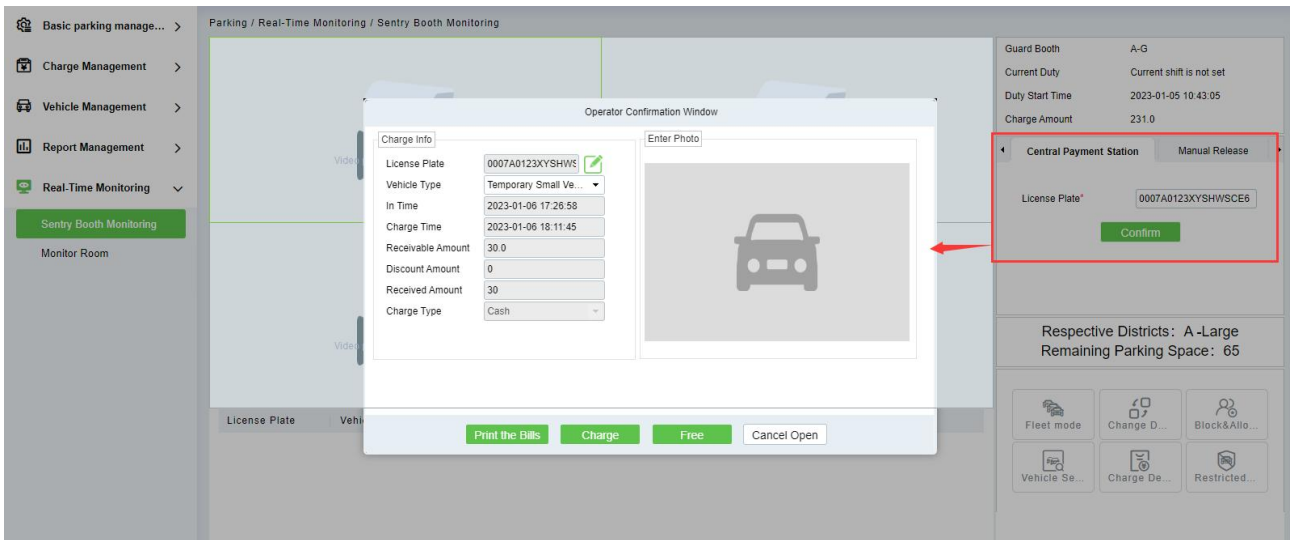


Figure 7- 78 Overstay Rule (2)

After successful payment, the vehicle can continue to stay or exit, overtime stay is charged according to the set rules.

When the time limit is exceeded, ZKBio CVSecurity will prompt "Please go to the central payment station to pay for the overtime stay" when the ticket dispenser at the central payment exit is scanning.

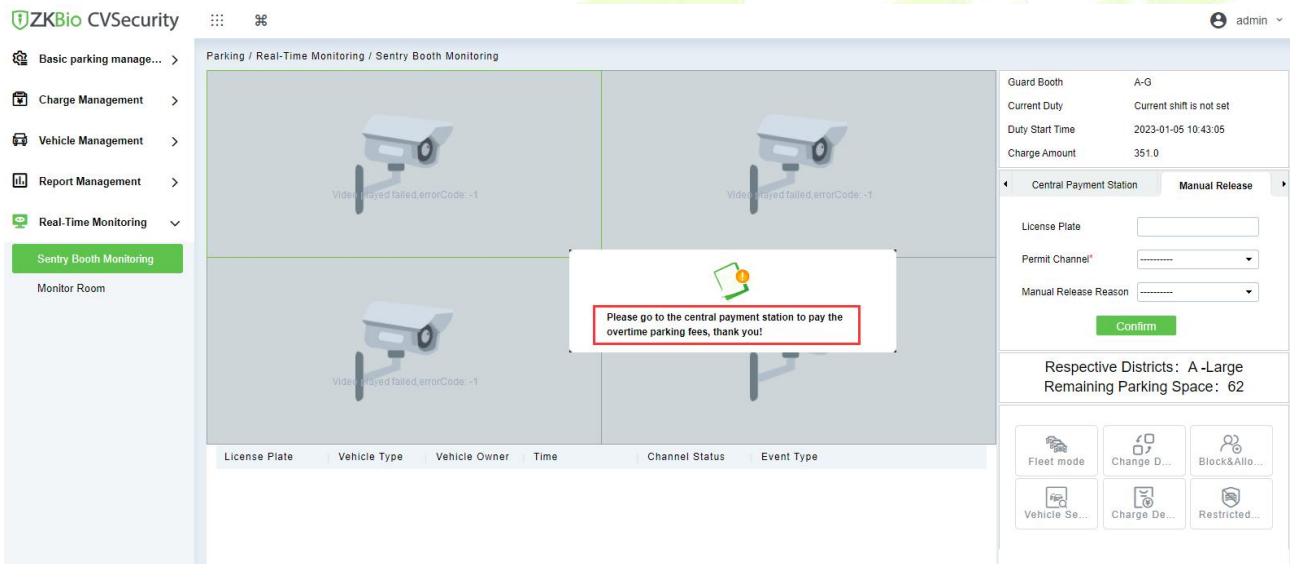


Figure 7- 79 Overstay Fee

### 7.8.8 Annex 1



Figure 7- 80 Barcode Ticket

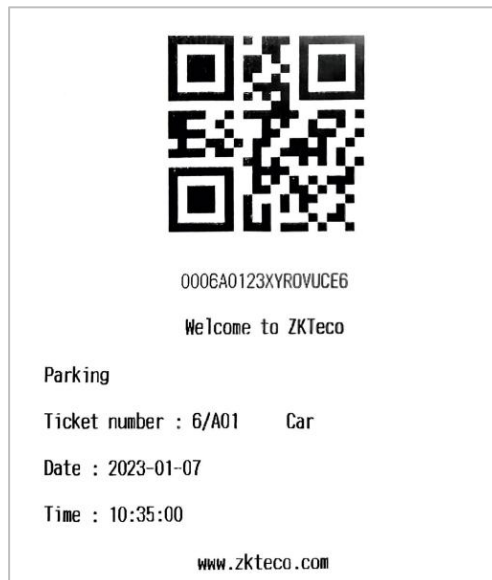


Figure 7- 81 QR code Ticket

**Bills**

Parking  
2023-01-07 10:35:54

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| Guard Booth       | A-G                    |
| License Plate     | 0006A0123XYRO<br>VUCE6 |
| In Time           | 2023-01-07 10:34:59    |
| Out Time          | 2023-01-07 10:35:54    |
| Parking Time      | 00:00:55               |
| User              | admin                  |
| Receivable Amount | 10.0                   |
| Discount Amount   | 0                      |
| Received Amount   | 10                     |

Figure 7- 82 Receipts printed at the central payment station

## 8 Visitor Management

### 8.1 Operation Scenario

By registering visitor's certificates, photos and other effective ways, and issuing corresponding Access Control/Elevator control/passage/witness authority, visitors can be managed safely and efficiently.

### 8.2 Operation Flow

Introduces the configuration process of visitor management business.

The business configuration process of the visitor management business is shown configure below.

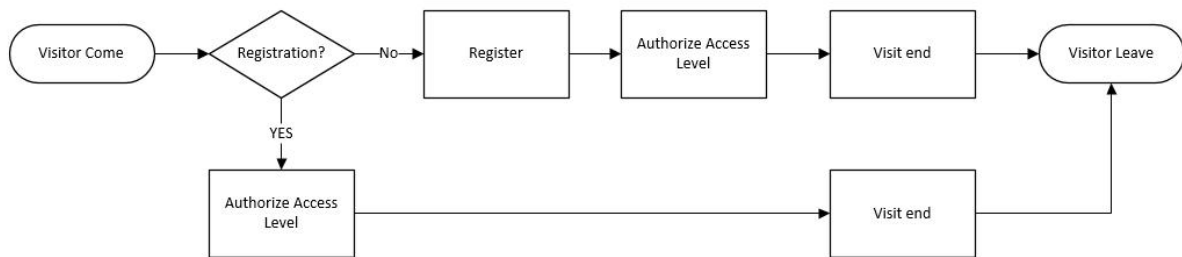


Figure 8- 1 Visitor Configuration Process

### 8.3 Visitor Registration

#### 8.3.1 Entry Registration

##### 8.3.1.1 Entry Registration

There are two ways to register visitors:

1. PC side (computer)
2. Visiting the passenger plane (ZKBio CVSecurity visits and logs in)

PC-Side Registration (Direct Registration)


This part introduces the configuration Steps of PC registration (Direct registration) in.


● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Registration > Entry Registration**.

**Step 2:** In the Entry registration interface, click **Visit Registration** to enter the registration interface for visitor registration, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 8- 2 Direct Register Visitor Interface**

| Parameter          | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Host/Visited       | Select the visited personnel. Click the input box to filter the query according to the input characters or click the query button to pop up the list of the visited personnel to select the visited personnel.  |
| Visit Department   | Select the department the visitor will visit.   |
| Visit Reason       | Select the visit reason. You can also input a new reason, and the reason will be added in the Visit Reason list in the <b>Visit Reason of Basic Management</b> .  |
| Certificate Type   | Passport, Driving License, ID Card, and Others are available to choose from the drop-down list. If the ID Scan OCR function is activated, visitor information will display automatically after clicking  icon. |
| Entrance           | Select the entry place for the visitor. You can add an entry place in the <b>Entry Place of Basic Management</b> .  |
| Certificate No.    | The numbers and letters are legal; the max length is 20.  |
| First Name         | Enter the first name of the visitor.  |
| Visitor Quantity   | Enter the number of visitors.   |
| Start and End Time | Enter the start and end times of the visit.   |

| Parameter         | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| Personnel Details | Enter the personnel details.  |
| Capture           | The captured photo and certificate photo can be taken separately or at the same time (which can be set in Parameter Settings). If there is a camera (High-Speed Portable HD Doc Scanner) connected to the server, you can click <b>Capture</b> to take the visitors' photos. The browser may block the camera to access, please click  in the IP address bar to select the camera and change the setting to allow access to this page. |

**Table 8- 1 Description of Parameters of Entry Registration**

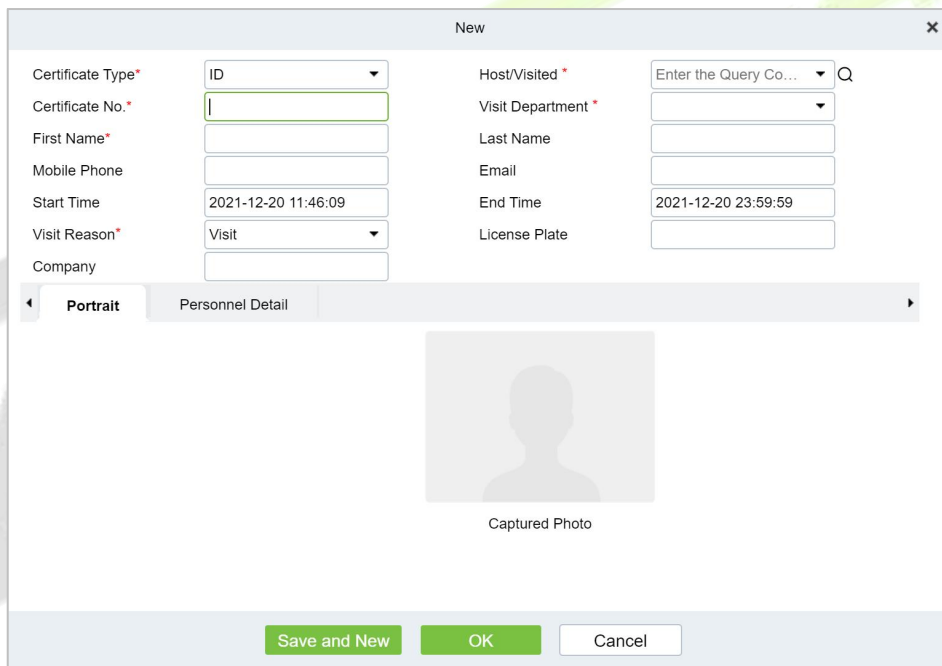
PC Registration (Second-Generation Id Card Reservation Registration)

This part introduces the configuration Steps of Registration through the Visitor Reservation.

● Operating Steps:



**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Reservation > Visitor Reservation**.

**Step 2:** In the visitor reservation interface, click **New** to complete the reservation registration before visitors visit, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 8- 3 Reservation Interface**

| Parameter        | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Host/Visited     | Select the visited personnel. Click the input box to filter the query according to the input characters or click the query button to pop up the list of the visited personnel to select the visited personnel. |
| Visit Department | Select the department the visitor will visit.  |
| Visit Reason     | Select the visit reason. You can also input a new reason, and the reason will be added in the Visit Reason list in the <b>Visit Reason of Basic Management</b> .   |



| Parameter          | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Certificate Type   | Passport, Driving License, ID Card, and Others are available to choose from the drop-down list. If the ID Scan OCR function is activated, visitor information will display automatically after clicking  icon.   |
| Certificate No.    | The numbers and letters are legal; the max length is 20.  |
| First Name         | Enter the first name of the visitor.  |
| Start and End Time | Enter the start and end times of the visit.   |
| Personnel Details  | Enter the personnel details.  |
| Portrait           | The captured photo and certificate photo can be taken separately or at the same time (which can be set in Parameter Settings). If there is a camera (High-Speed Portable HD Doc Scanner) connected to the server, you can click <b>Capture</b> to take the visitors' photos. The browser may block the camera to access, please click  in the IP address bar to select the camera and change the setting to allow access to this page. |

**Table 8- 2 Description of Parameters Reservation**

**Step 3:** Select **Visitor Registration > Entry Registration > Entry Registration** to enter the registration interface for visitor registration. Enter the **First Name** to directly obtain the ID number, thus displaying the visitor information of reservation registration, then select the visitor authority, and click **OK** to complete the visit registration, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 8- 4 Second Generation Identity Registration Interface**

| Parameter    | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| Host/Visited | Select the visited personnel. Click the input box to filter the query according to the input characters or click the query button to pop up the list of the visited personnel to select the visited personnel. |

| Parameter          | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Visit Department   | Select the department the visitor will visit.   |
| Visit Reason       | Select the visit reason. You can also input a new reason, and the reason will be added in the Visit Reason list in the <b>Visit Reason of Basic Management</b> .  |
| Certificate Type   | Passport, Driving License, ID Card, and Others are available to choose from the drop-down list. If the ID Scan OCR function is activated, visitor information will display automatically after clicking  icon.   |
| Entrance           | Select the entry place for the visitor. You can add an entry place in the <b>Entry Place of Basic Management</b> .  |
| Certificate No.    | The numbers and letters are legal; the max length is 20.  |
| First Name         | Enter the first name of the visitor.  |
| Visitor Quantity   | Enter the number of visitors.   |
| Start and End Time | Enter the start and end times of the visit.   |
| Personnel Details  | Enter the personnel details.  |
| Capture            | The captured photo and certificate photo can be taken separately or at the same time (which can be set in Parameter Settings). If there is a camera (High-Speed Portable HD Doc Scanner) connected to the server, you can click <b>Capture</b> to take the visitors' photos. The browser may block the camera to access, please click  in the IP address bar to select the camera and change the setting to allow access to this page. |

**Table 8- 3 Description of Parameters of Second Generation Identity Registration**

**Notes:**

For different browsers, the contents of tips are different, the actual browser display prevails, just choose the shared camera, and allow the system to access the camera.

If the entry place supports a network camera, scanner, high camera, it will not pop up this tip.

You can select card number, fingerprint, password, or code scanning for registration (set in the parameter setting).

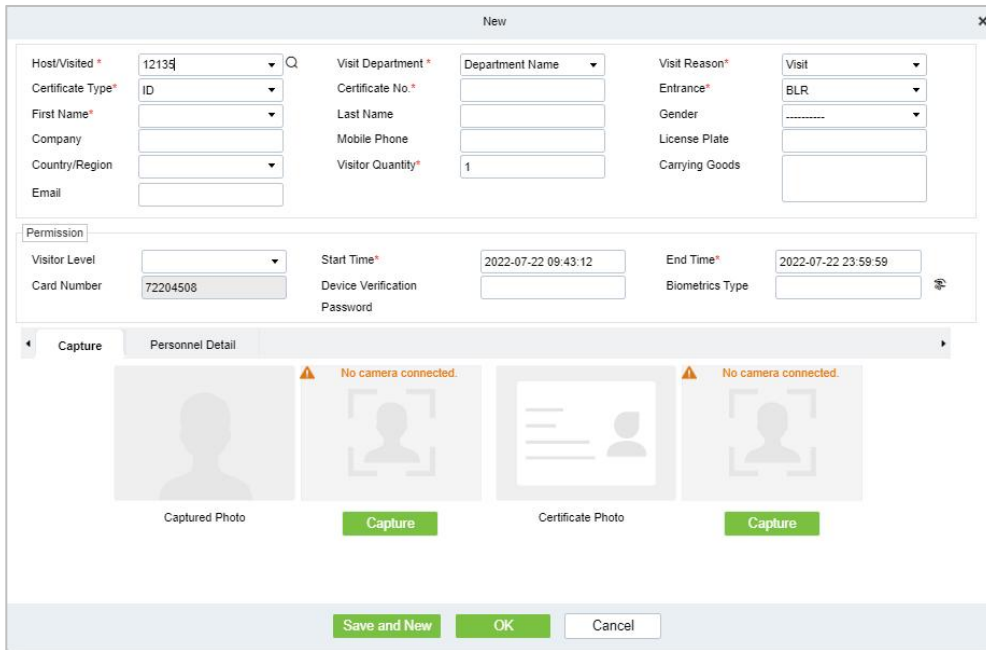
### 8.3.1.2 Visitor Cloning

Application scenario: Similar to an entourage copying some information from the previous person, visitors only need to show their credentials and snap photos to complete the registration. It mainly includes the following attributes: Host, visit department, visit reason, Entrance, company, country, visitor level, start time, end time.


● Operating Steps:


**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Registration > Entry Registration**.

**Step 2:** In the visitor registration interface, click **Visitor Cloning** to enter the registration interface for visitor cloning.



**Figure 8- 5 Visitor Cloning interface**

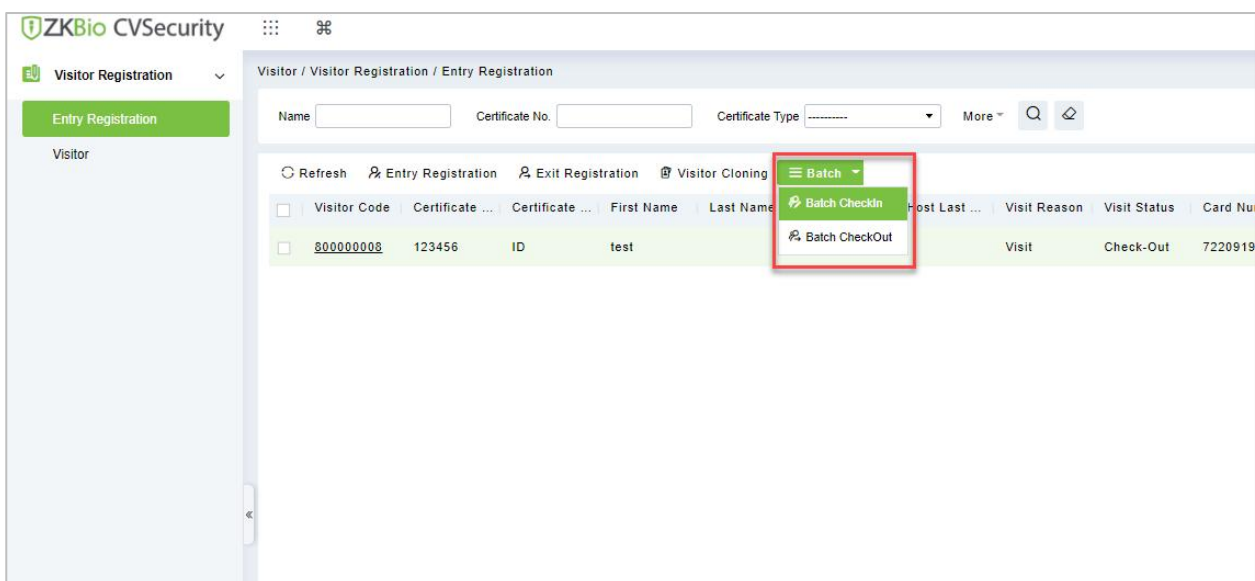
| Parameter          | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Host/Visited       | Select the department the visitor will visit.   |
| Visit Department   | Select the department the visitor will visit.   |
| Visit Reason       | Select the visit reason. You can also input a new reason, and the reason will be added in the Visit Reason list in the <b>Visit Reason</b> of <b>Basic Management</b> .   |
| Certificate Type   | Passport, Driving License, ID Card, and Others are available to choose from the drop-down list. If the ID Scan OCR function is activated, visitor information will display automatically after clicking  icon. |
| Entrance           | Select the entry place for the visitor. You can add an entry place in the <b>Entry Place</b> of <b>Basic Management</b> .   |
| Certificate No.    | The numbers and letters are legal; the max length is 20.  |
| First Name         | Enter the first name of the visitor.  |
| Visitor Quantity   | Enter the number of visitors.   |
| Start and End Time | Enter the start and end times of the visit.   |

| Parameter         | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| Personnel Details | Enter the personnel details.  |
| Capture           | The captured photo and certificate photo can be taken separately or at the same time (which can be set in Parameter Settings). If there is a camera (High-Speed Portable HD Doc Scanner) connected to the server, you can click <b>Capture</b> to take the visitors' photos. The browser may block the camera to access, please click  in the IP address bar to select the camera and change the setting to allow access to this page. |

**Table 8- 4 Description of New Parameters for Positions**

### 8.3.1.3 Batch

**Batch** option will help you to do multiple check-in and check-out at a time.



**Figure 8- 6 Batch Interface**

#### Batch Check-in

**Batch Check-in** option will help you to do multiple check-in at a time. For that you need to create a reservation for the visitors. Then you can be able to see details in the **Batch Check in** option for multiple check-ins at a time.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, select **Visitor Reservation > Visitor Reservation**. In the reservation interface, click **New** to complete the reservation registration.

**Step 2:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Registration > Entry Registration**.

**Step 3:** In the Entry Registration interface, select the visitor to do the check-ins and click **Batch > Batch check in** to do multiple check-in of visitors at a time.

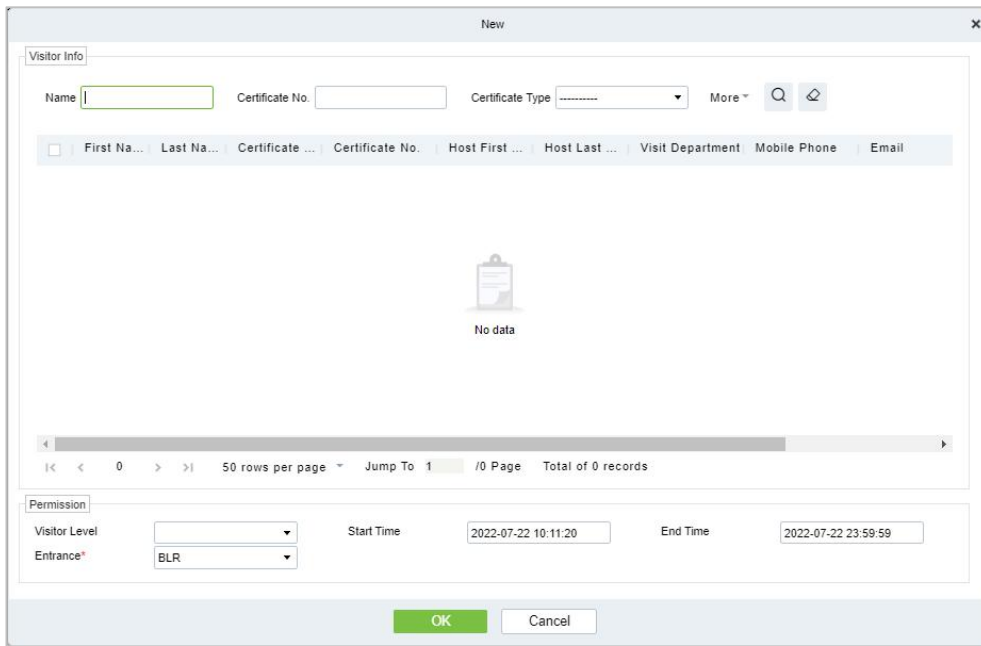


Figure 8-7 Batch Check in interface

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to check in the selected visitors.

### Batch Check Out

**Batch check in** option will help you to do multiple check out of visitors at a time.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Registration > Entry Registration**.

**Step 2:** In the Entry Registration interface, select the visitor to do the checkouts and click **Batch > Batch checkout** to do multiple checkouts of visitors at a time.

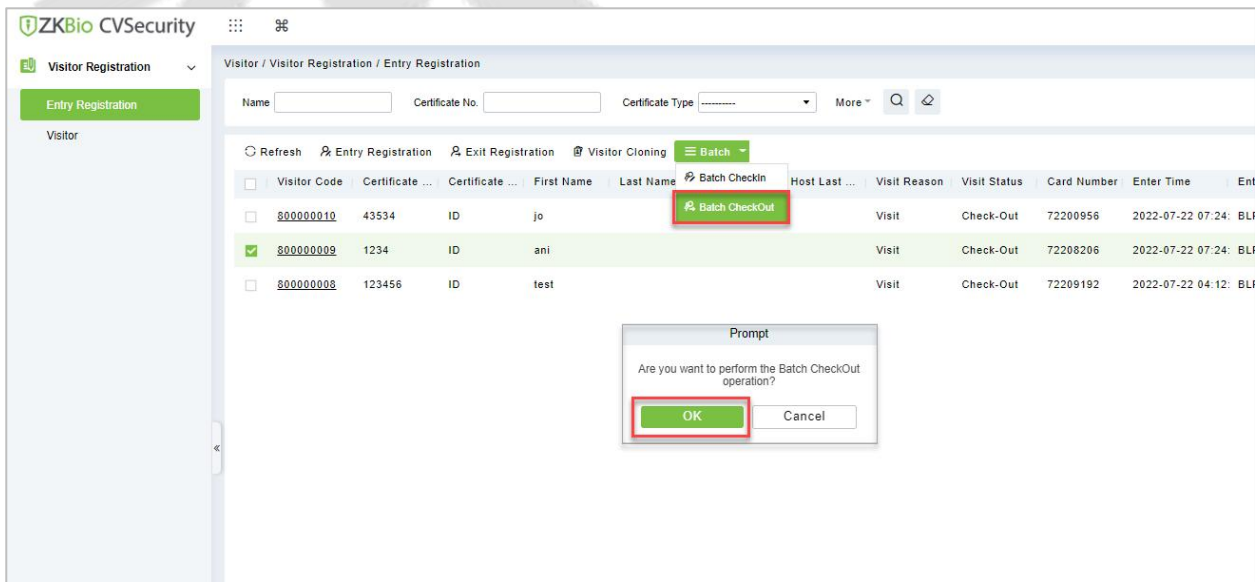


Figure 8-8 Batch Check out interface

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to check-out the selected visitors.

### 8.3.2 Visitor

Visitor interface provides the complete details about the registered visitors such as Visitor Code, First Name, Last Name, Certificate Type, Certificate No., Company etc. You can delete, disable or enable and export the selected visitor.

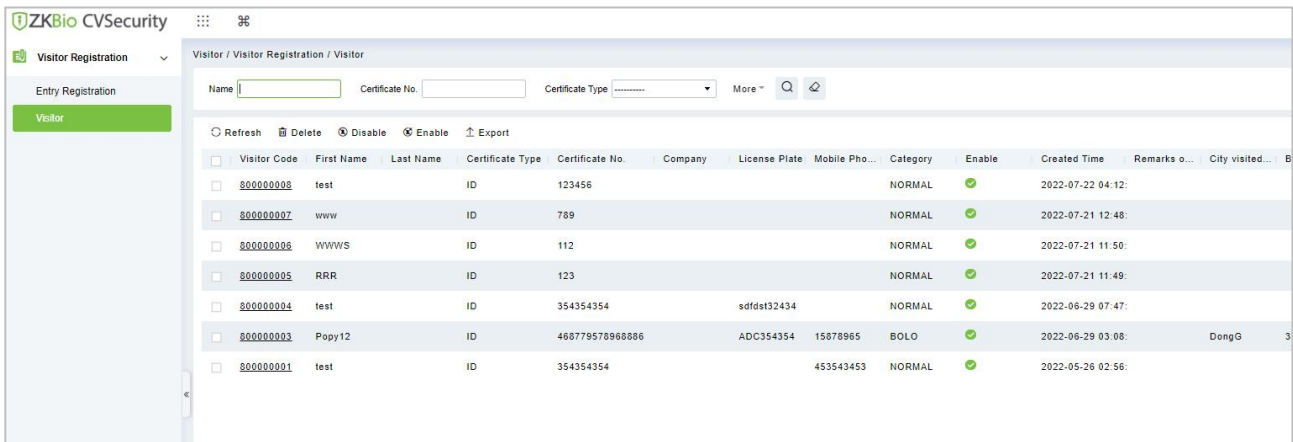


Figure 8- 9 Visitor Interface

#### 8.3.2.1 Deleting a Visitor (Delete)

In **Visitor** module click **Visitor Registration > Visitor**, select a visitor, and click **Delete**.

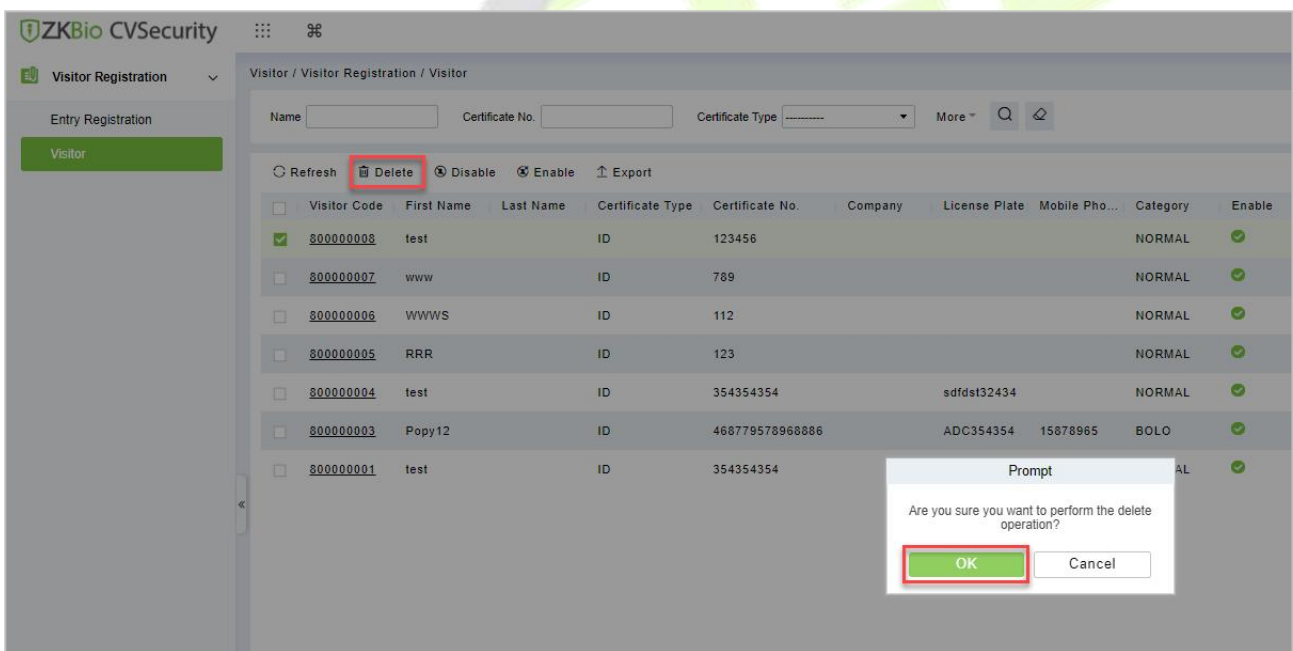


Figure 8- 10 Deleting Visitor

Click **OK** to delete the selected visitor.

### 8.3.2.2 Disabling a Visitor (Disable)

In **Visitor** module Click **Visitor Registration** > **Visitor**, select a visitor, and click **Disable**.

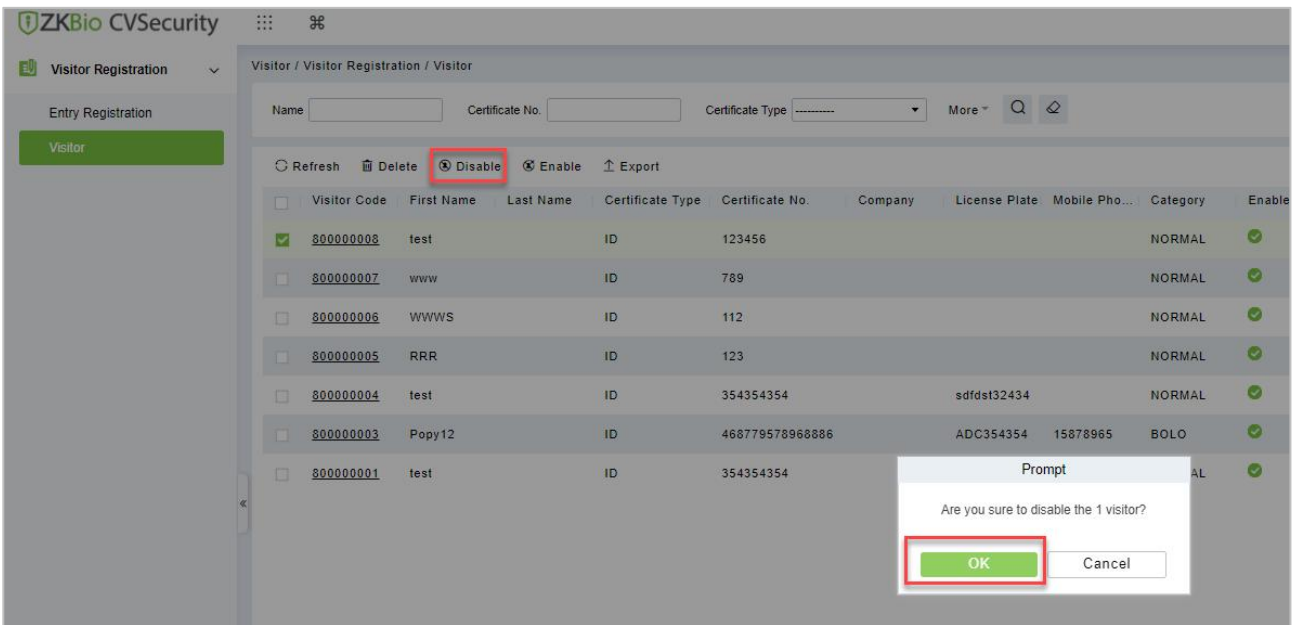


Figure 8- 11 Disabling Visitor

Click **OK** to block the visitor. The enable entry for the corresponding selected visitor will show  indicates the visitor is blocked.

### 8.3.2.3 Enabling a Visitor (Enable)

In **Visitor** module click **Visitor Registration** > **Visitor**, select a blocked visitor, and click **Enable**.

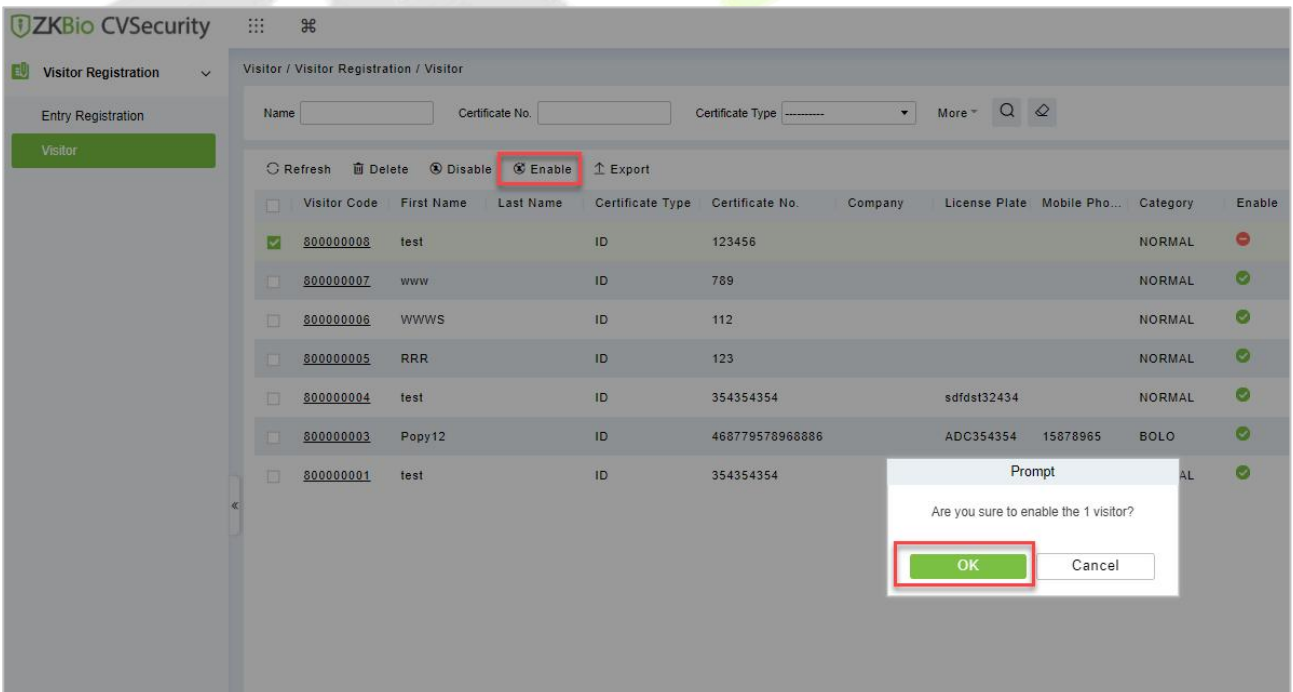



Figure 8- 12 Enabling Visitor

Click **OK** to enable the visitor. The enable entry for the corresponding selected visitor will show  indicates the visitor is enabled.

### 8.3.2.4 Export

You can export visitor details into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure10-20.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In **Visitor** module click **Visitor Registration > Visitor > Export** to export the visitor records to Excel sheet or PDF or CSV. Enter the User password in the prompt.

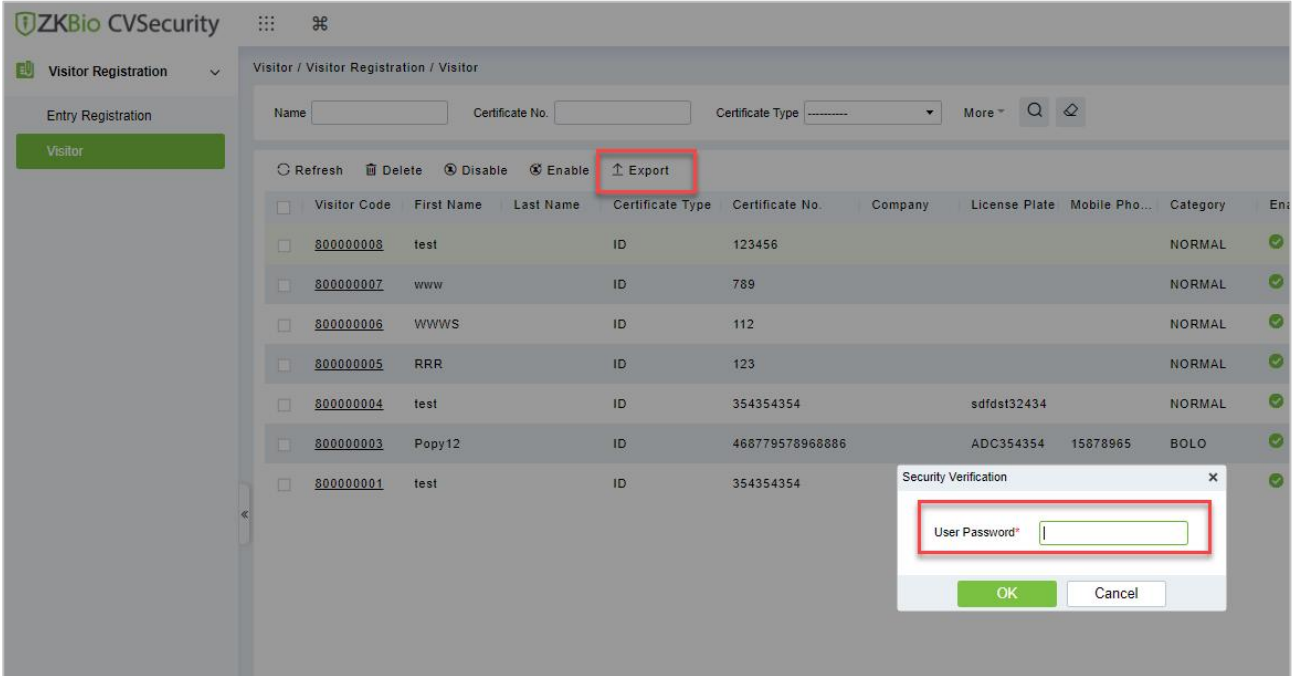


Figure 8- 13 Export Interface

**Step 2:** Select the file format and click **OK**.

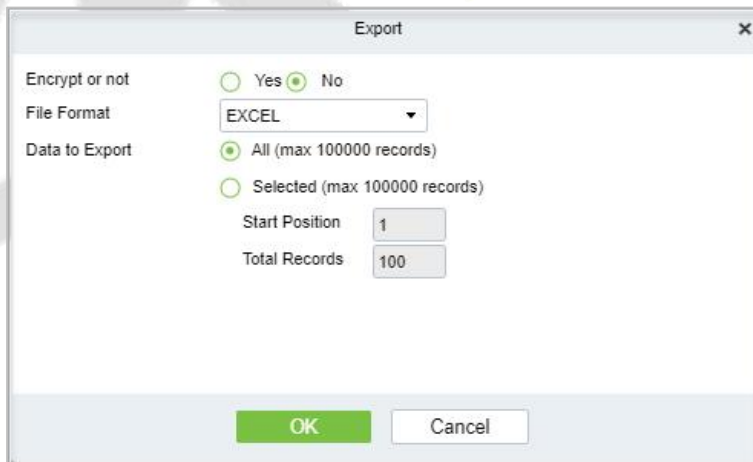


Figure 8- 14 Export Interface

## 8.4 Visitor Reservation

### 8.4.1 Visitor Reservation

Visitor Reservation helps you to do reservations before the visitor’s visit.

#### 8.4.1.1 Adding a Visitor Reservation (New)


Creating new Reservations for Visitors.


● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Reservation > Visitor Reservation**.

**Step 2:** In the reservation interface, click **New** to complete the reservation registration before the visitor’s visit.

**Figure 8- 15 Reservation Interface**

| Parameter        | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Host/Visited     | Select the visited personnel. Click the input box to filter the query according to the input characters or click the query button to pop up the list of the visited personnel to select the visited personnel.  |
| Visit Department | Select the department the visitor will visit.   |
| Visit Reason     | Select the visit reason. You can also input a new reason, and the reason will be added in the Visit Reason list in the <b>Visit Reason</b> of <b>Basic Management</b> .   |
| Certificate Type | Passport, Driving License, ID Card, and Others are available to choose from the drop-down list. If the ID Scan OCR function is activated, visitor information will display automatically after clicking  icon. |

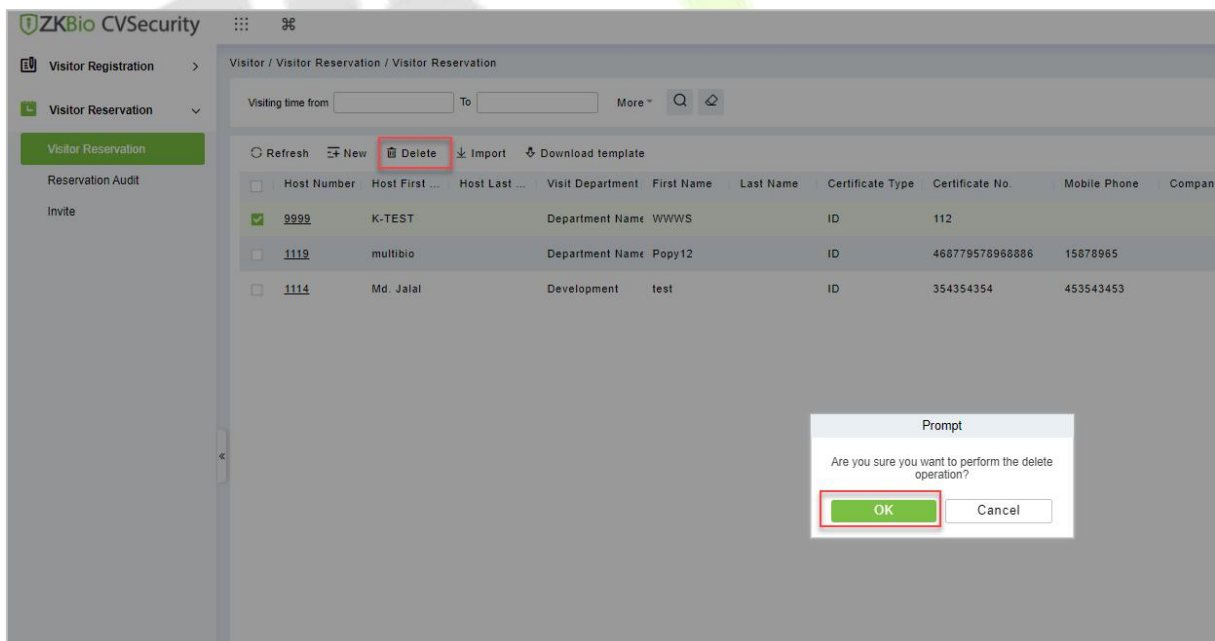
| Parameter          | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Certificate No.    | The numbers and letters are legal; the max length is 20.  |
| First Name         | Enter the first name of the visitor.  |
| Start and End Time | Enter the start and end times of the visit.   |
| Personnel Details  | Enter the personnel details.  |
| Portrait           | The captured photo and certificate photo can be taken separately or at the same time (which can be set in Parameter Settings). If there is a camera (High-Speed Portable HD Doc Scanner) connected to the server, you can click <b>Capture</b> to take the visitors' photos. The browser may block the camera to access, please click  in the IP address bar to select the camera and change the setting to allow access to this page. |

**Table 8- 5 Description of Parameters of Adding a Visitor Reservation**

After the reservation visitors can complete the visit registration using Entry Registration option to know more about the registration process.

### 8.4.1.2 Deleting a Visitor Reservation (Delete)

In the **Visitor** module, select **Visitor Reservation > Visitor Reservation**, select a visitor reservation and click **Delete**.



**Figure 8- 16 Deleting Visitor Reservation**

Click **OK** to delete the selected visitor reservation.

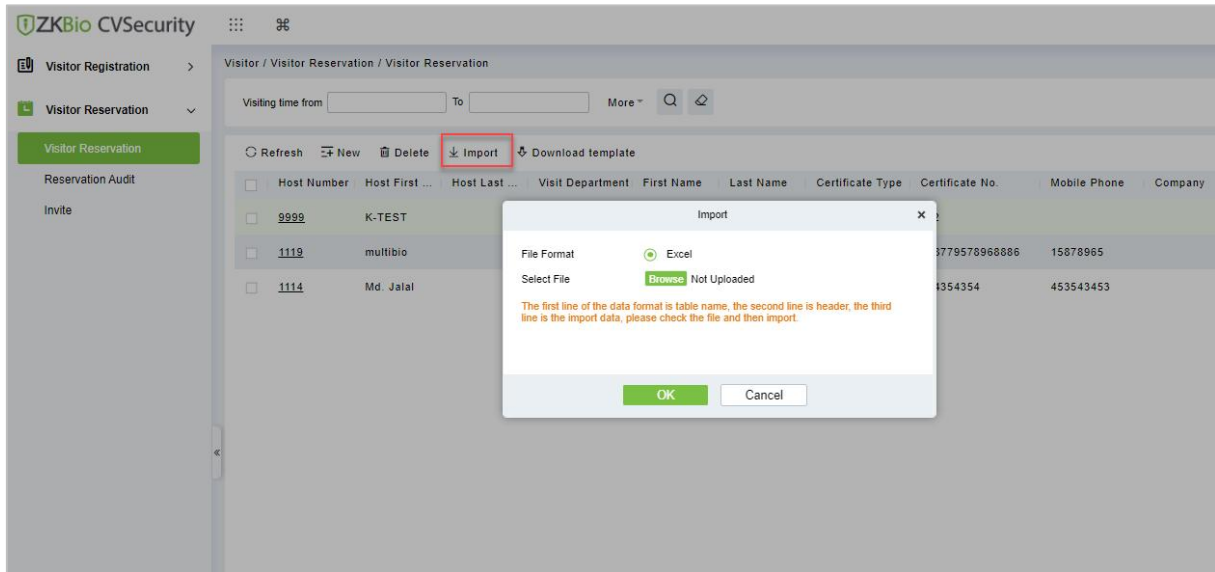
### 8.4.1.3 Import

You can import visitor reservation details into the software as in Excel format. See the following Figure10-17.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, select **Visitor Reservation > Visitor Reservation**, select a visitor reservation and click **Import**.

**Step 2:** Click the **Browse** button to import the visitor reservation template data (You can download the template from the software by clicking **Download Template**) into the system, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 8- 17 Import Visitor Reservation**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**, and the interface displays the result of importing and adding visitor reservations.

**Step 4:** Click **Close** to complete the import and addition of visitor reservations.

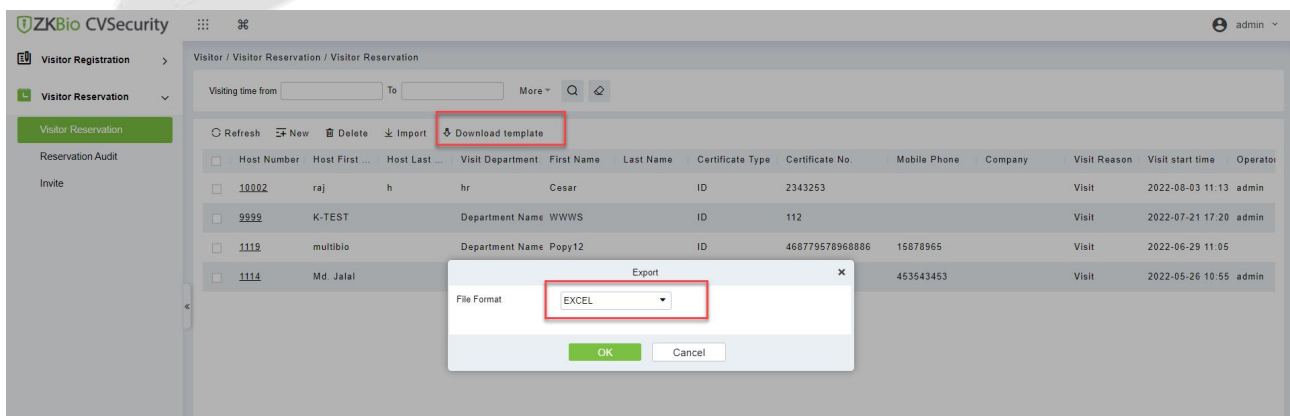
### 8.4.1.4 Download Template

You can download template visitor reservation details into the software as in Excel format.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, select **Visitor Reservation > Visitor Reservation** select a visitor reservation and click **Download Template**.

**Step 2:** Click **OK**, and the interface displays the result of importing and adding visitor reservations.



**Figure 8- 18 Import Visitor Reservation**

## 8.4.2 Reservation Audit

Allow the administrator to review and block the employee’s self-reservation visitors.

### 8.4.2.1 Review

Allow the administrator to review the employee’s self-reservation visitors.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Reservation > Reservation Audit**.

**Step 2:** In the **Reservation** interface, select the visitor to be reviewed and click **Review** to review the visitor.

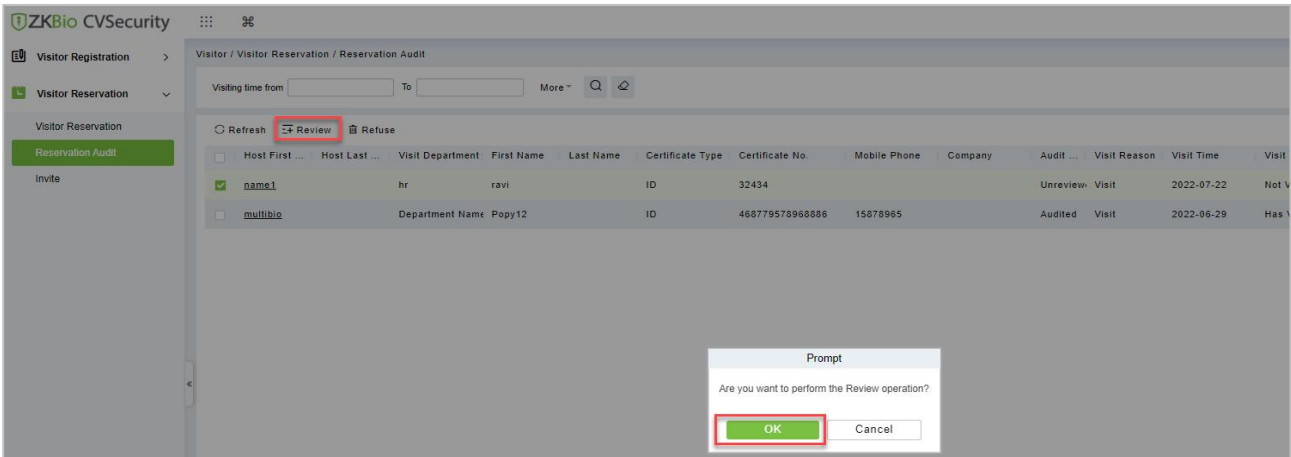


Figure 8- 19 Review Visitor Reservation

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the review operation.

### 8.4.2.2 Refuse

Allow the administrator to block the employee’s self-reservation visitors.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Reservation > Reservation Audit**.

**Step 2:** In the **Reservation** interface, select the visitor to be reviewed and click **Refuse** to block the visitor.

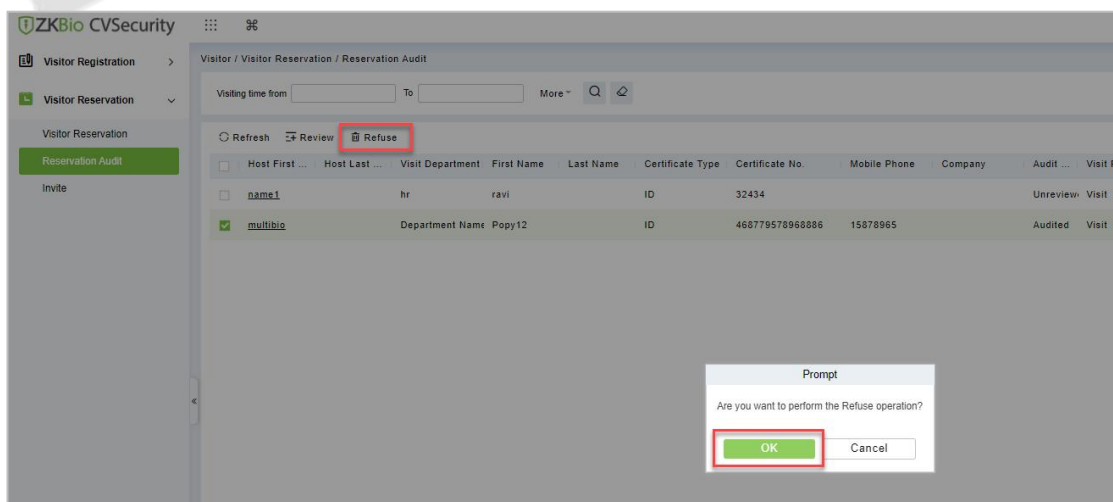


Figure 8- 20 Refuse Visitor Reservation

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the refuse operation.

### 8.4.3 Invite

#### 8.4.3.1 Sending Invitations (New)

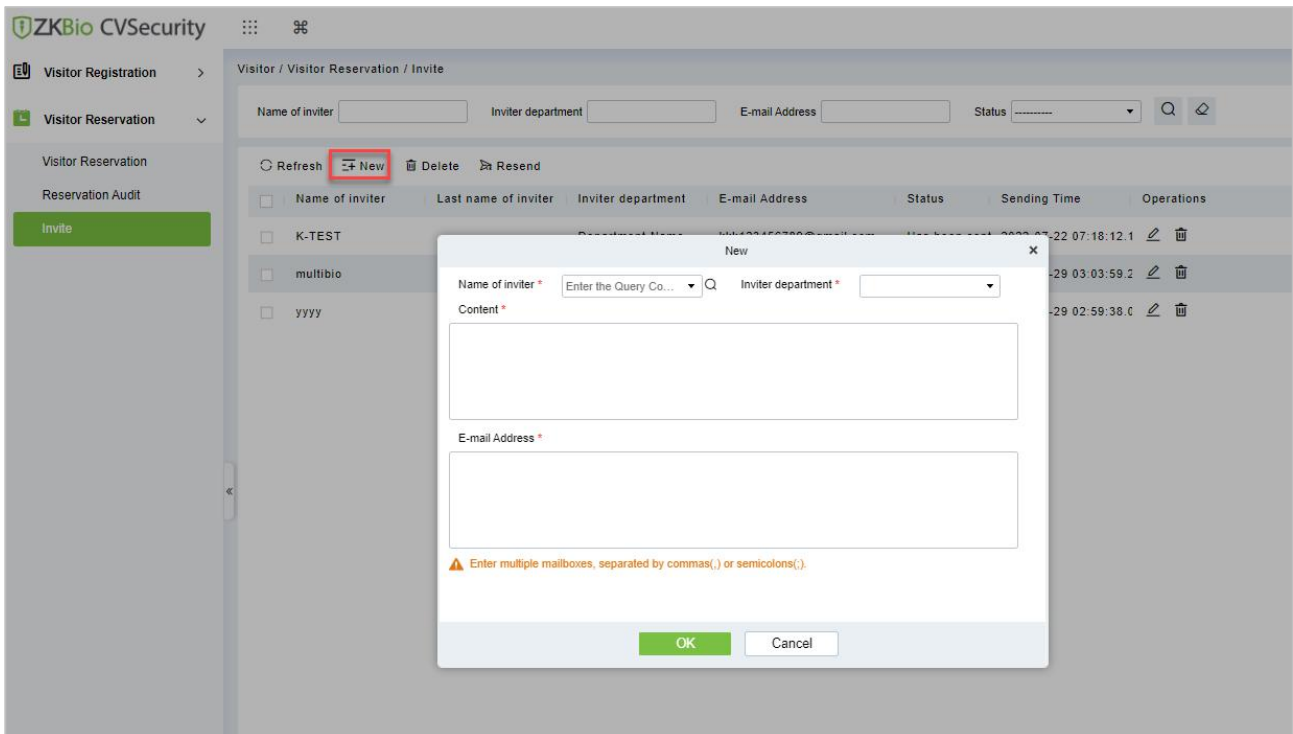
You can send invitations to the needed visitors by using this option.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Visitor Reservation > Invite**.

**Step 2:** In the **Invite** interface, click **New** to send the invitation to the visitors and the details as shown in figure below.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to send the invitation.



**Figure 8- 21 Invite Interface**

| Parameter           | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| Name of the Inviter | Select the visited personnel. Click the input box to filter the query according to the input characters or click the query button to pop up the list of the visited personnel to select the visited personnel. |
| Inviter Department  | Select the department of the inviter.  |
| Content             | Enter the content or reason of the invitation.   |
| Email Address       | Enter the Email address.   |

**Table 8- 6 Description of Parameters of Invite Visitors**

● Results Validation:

Visitors will receive an email and can scan the QR code to complete the appointment.

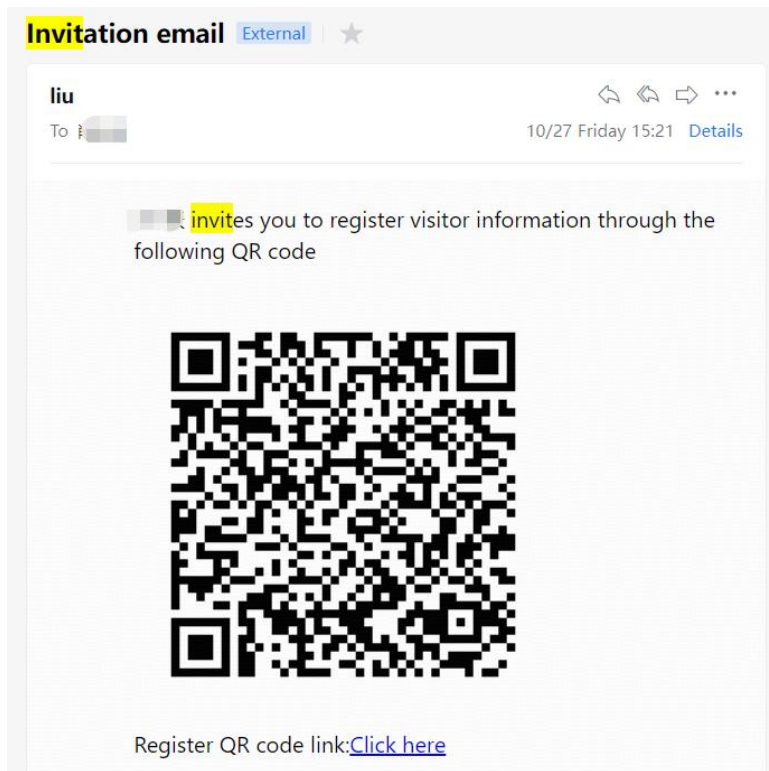


Figure 8- 22 Invitation Email

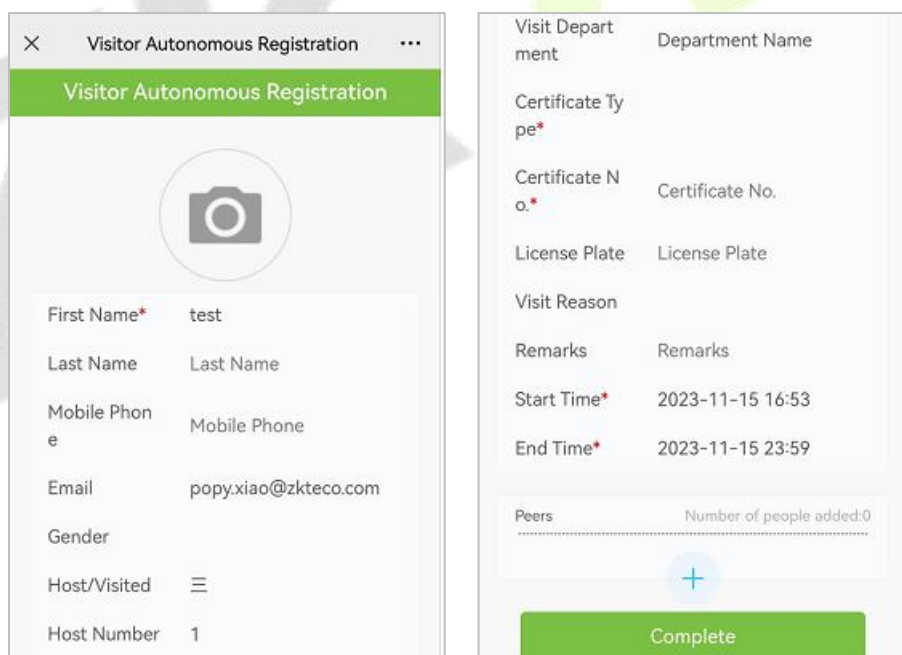


Figure 8- 23 Visitor Pre -registration page

8.4.3.2 Delete Invitations

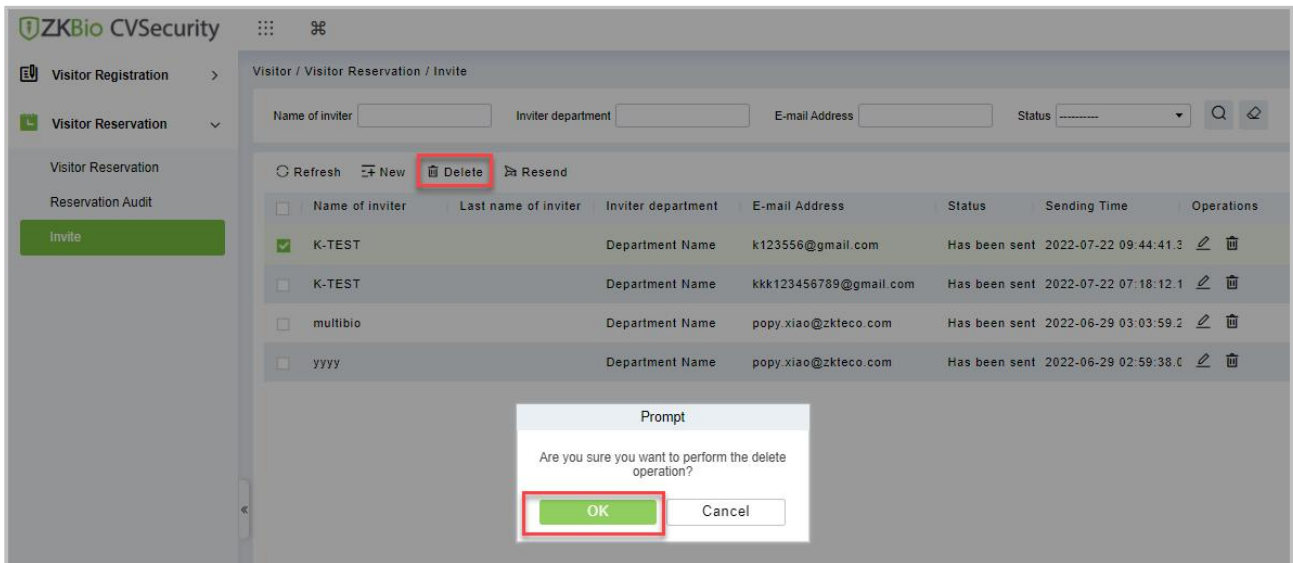
To delete the visitor invitations.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In Visitor module click **Visitor Reservation > Invite**.

**Step 2:** In the invite interface select the invitation to be deleted and click **Delete**.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to delete the invitation.



**Figure 8- 24 Delete Invitations**

### 8.4.3.3 Resend Invitation

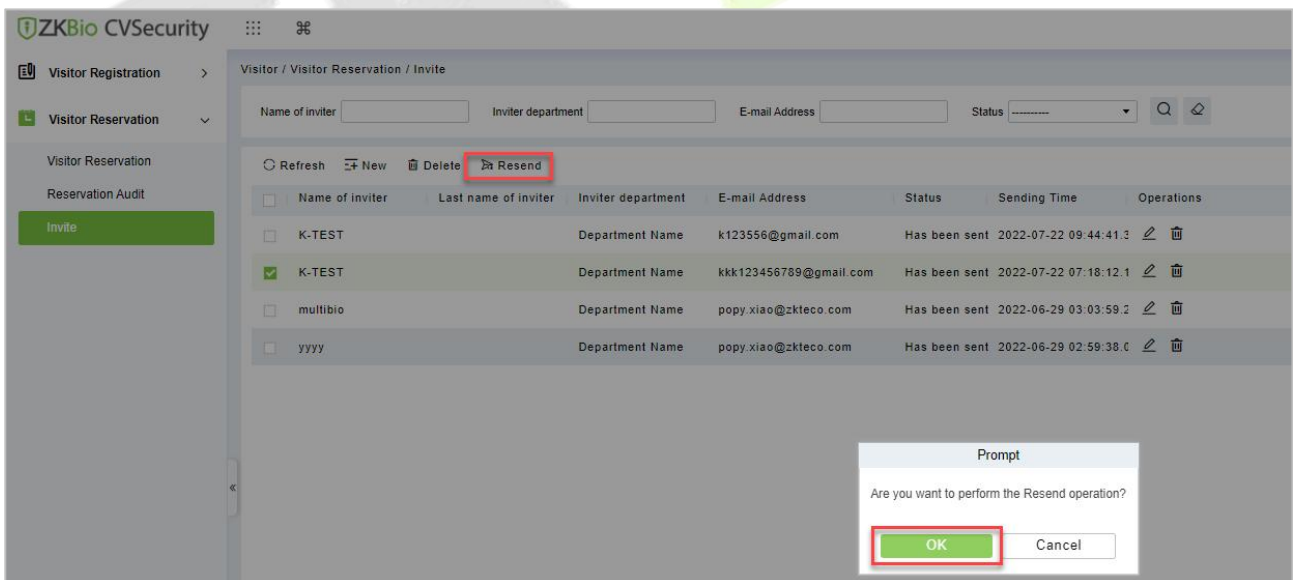
To Resend the visitor invitations.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In Visitor module click **Visitor Reservation > Invite**.

**Step 2:** In the invite interface select the invitation to be resend and click **Resend**.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to resend the invitation.



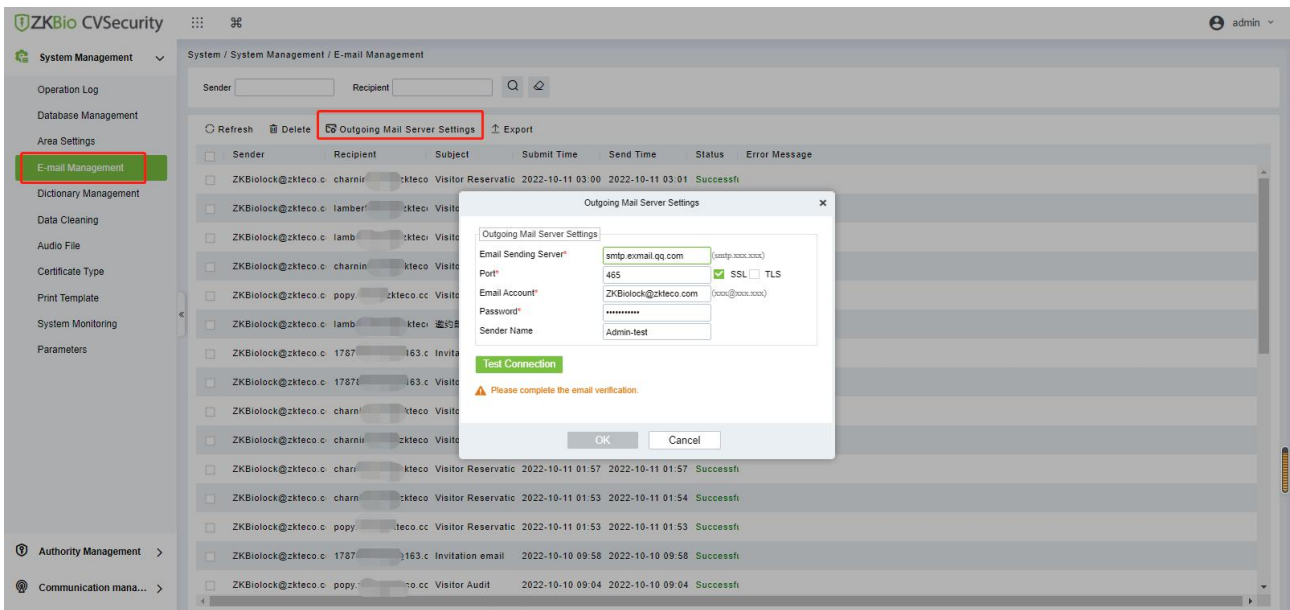
**Figure 8- 25 Resend Invitations**

### 8.4.4 Respondent Self-Approval

Optimize the visitor process, after sending the visitor invitation email, ZKBio CVSecurity will send an audit email to the host. The host can complete the operation of "Review or Reject" by clicking on the audit link of the email, then quickly complete the review.

● Set the Outgoing Mail Server Settings:

**Step 1:** In System Management module, click **Email Management > Outgoing Mail Server Settings:**



**Figure 8- 26 Outgoing Mail Server Settings**

**Step 2:** Set the Outgoing Mail Server Settings as Table 2.5-1.

| Parameter                   | How to set up  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Email server address/port   | You can customize the email server address and port. The email products that provide the SMTP server can be used |
| Email username and password | Enter the user's name and password for the mailbox.  |
| Name of sender              | Sets the name of the sender on the received message.   |

**Table 8- 7 Outgoing Mail Server Settings**

**Step 3:** After setting, click **Test Connection** to receive the email, indicating that the test has passed.

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to finish setting email parameters.

**Note:** The domain name of E-mail address and E-mail sending server must be identical. For example, the Email address is test@gmail.com, and the E-mail sending server must be smtp.gmail.com.

● Set Visitor Parameters:

**Step 1:** In Visitor module, Click **Basic Management > Parameters.**

**Step 2:** Select **No** for the **Enable automatic review of guest appointments**, so that the visitors' reservations need to be approved.

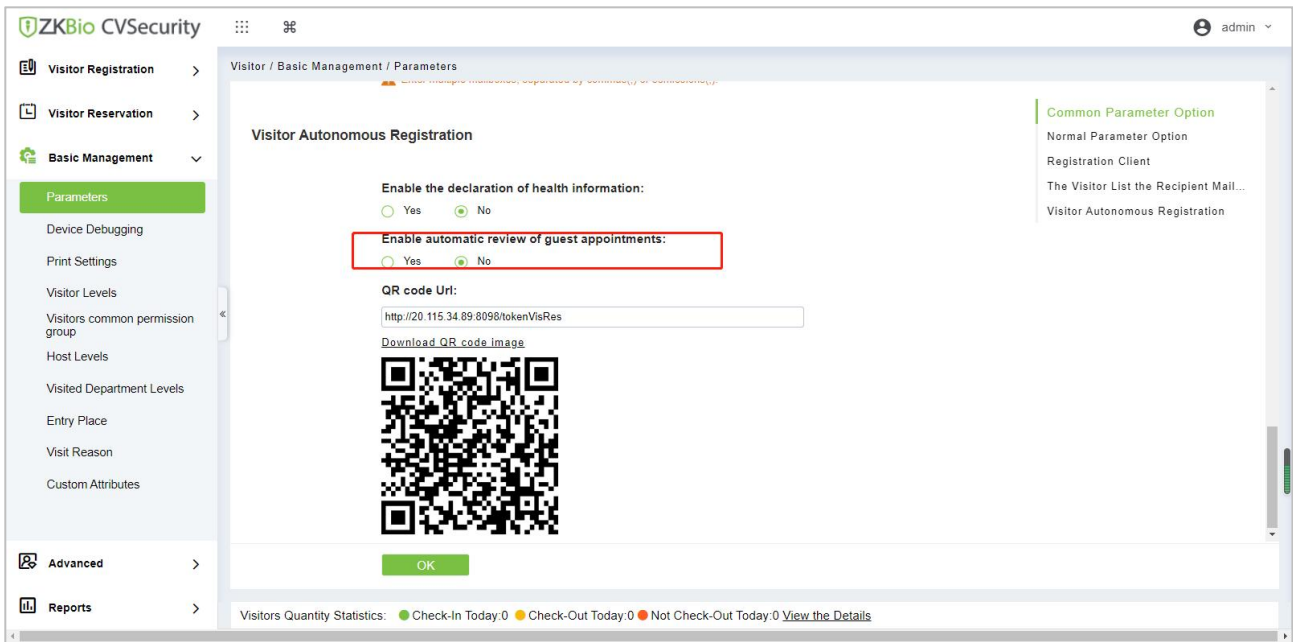


Figure 8- 27 Enable automatic review of guest appointments

● Set the Host Levels:

In the **Visitor** module, click **Visitor > Host Levels > +New**, select the corresponding personnel, click **>**, set the host Level for the corresponding personnel.

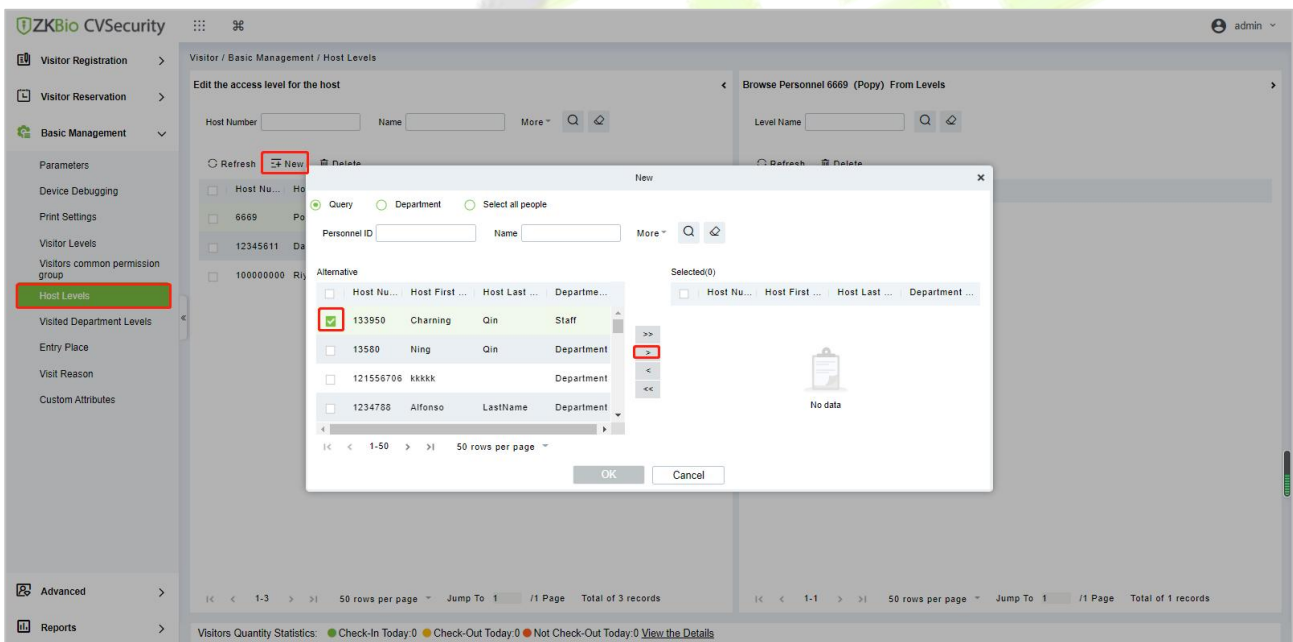


Figure 8- 28 Adding Host Levels 1

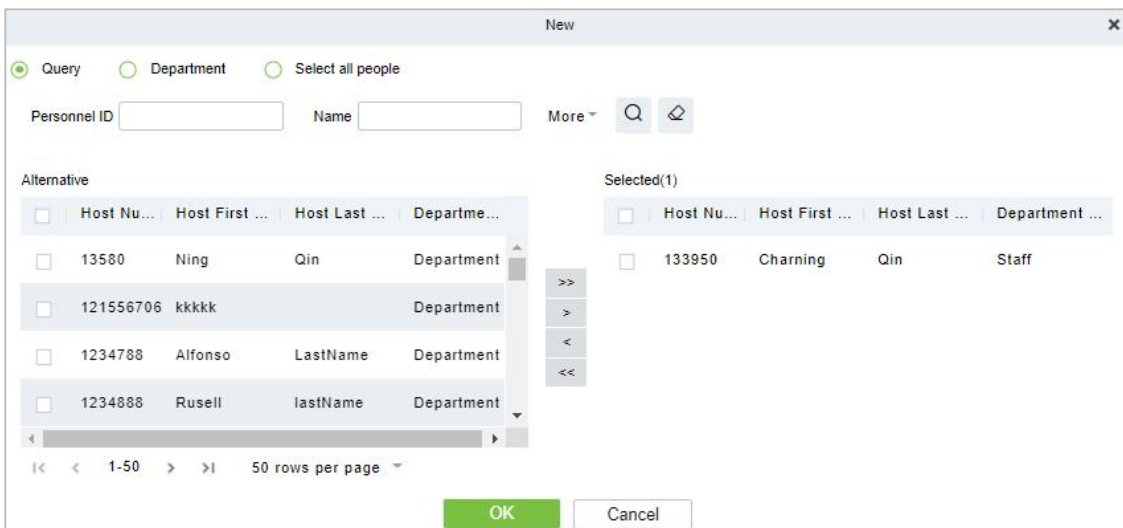


Figure 8- 29 Adding Host Levels 2

● Set the Linkage:

**Step 1:** Add an alert template.

Click **Visitor > Advanced > Alert Template > +New**, and fill in the template information.

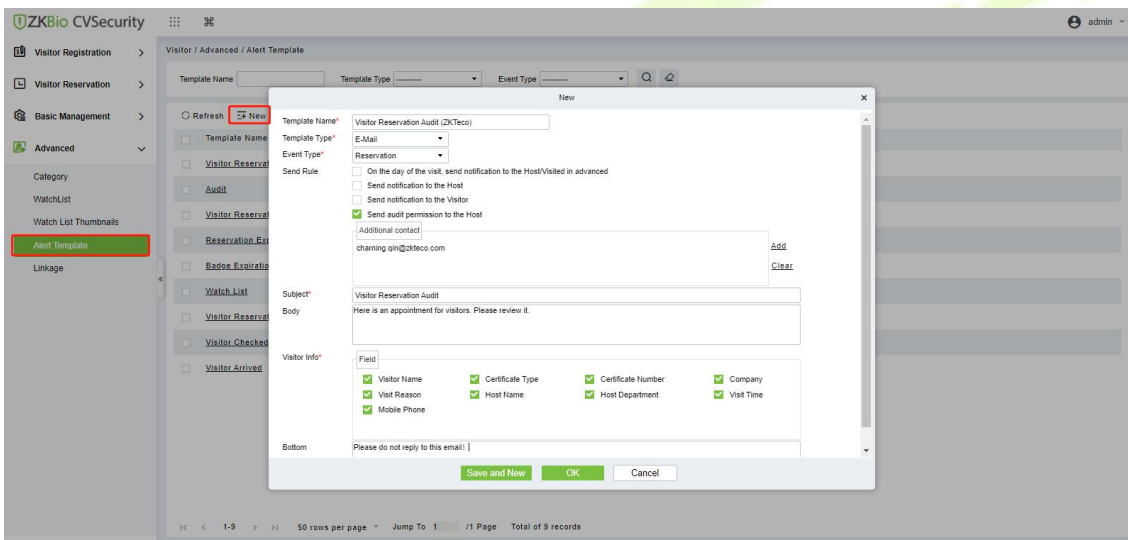


Figure 8- 30 Add an Alert Template.

| Parameter     | How to set up   |
|---------------|---|
| Template Type | E-Mail  |
| Event Type    | Reservation   |
| Send Rule     | Select Send audit permission to the Host<br>Fill in the Additional Contact with the host email. |
| Subject       | Fill in the subject and the body content.   |
| Visitor Info  | Select the visitor content to be audited.   |

Table 8- 8 Add an Alert Template.

**Step 2:** Add a linkage.

Click **Visitor > Advanced > Linkage > +New**, and here we select the E-mail template *Visitor Reservation Audit(ZKTECO)* added in Step 1.

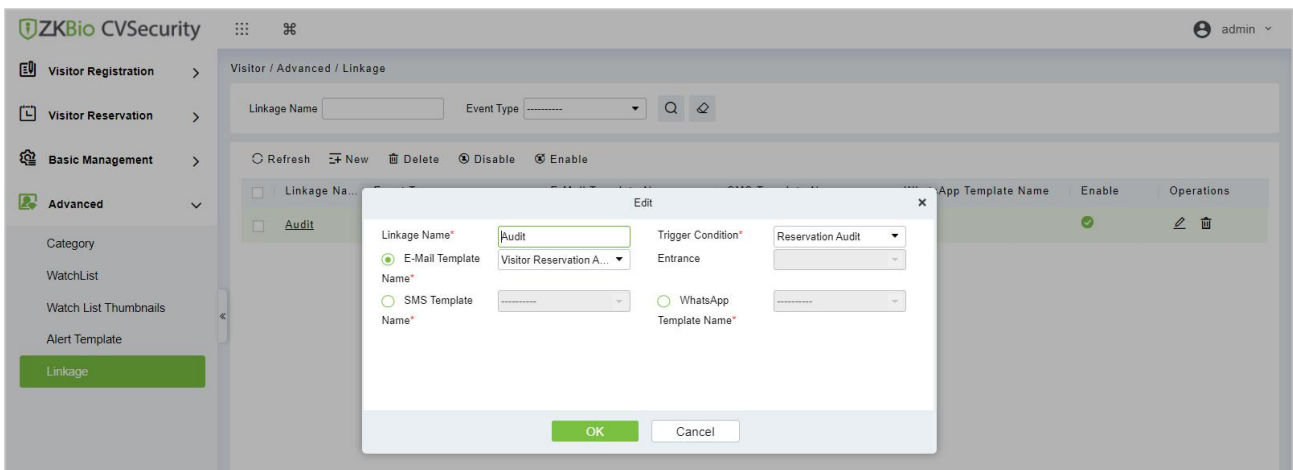


Figure 8- 31 Add a Linkage

● Send an invitation E-mail:

**Step 1:** Click **Visitor > Visitor Reservation > Invite > +New**, fill in the correct information and save.

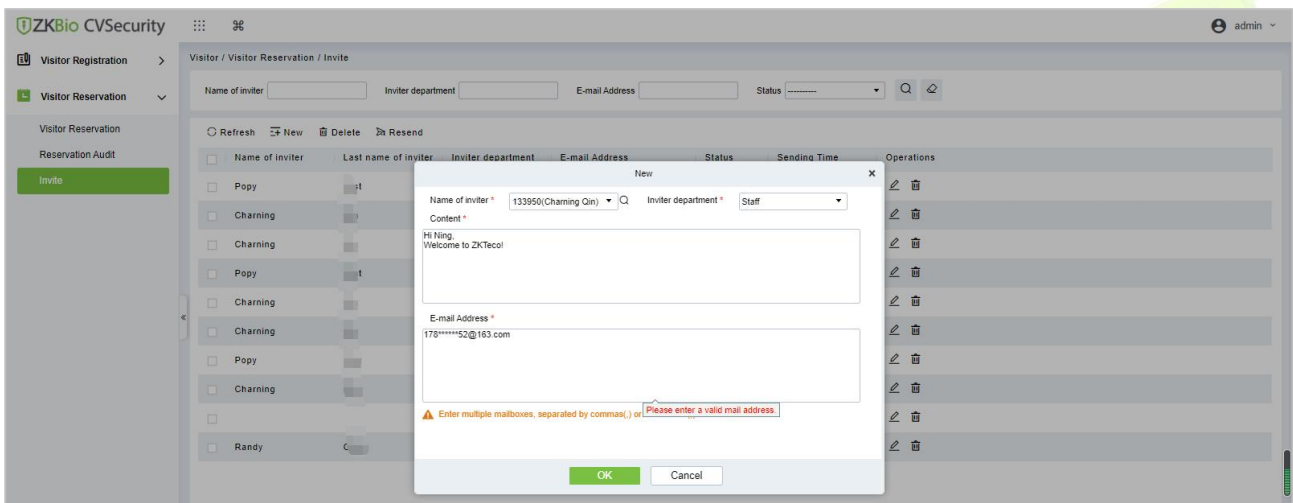


Figure 8- 32 Send an invitation E-mail 1

**Step 2:** We can view the record of this invitation email. If the status of the email is Has been sent, the email is sent successfully.

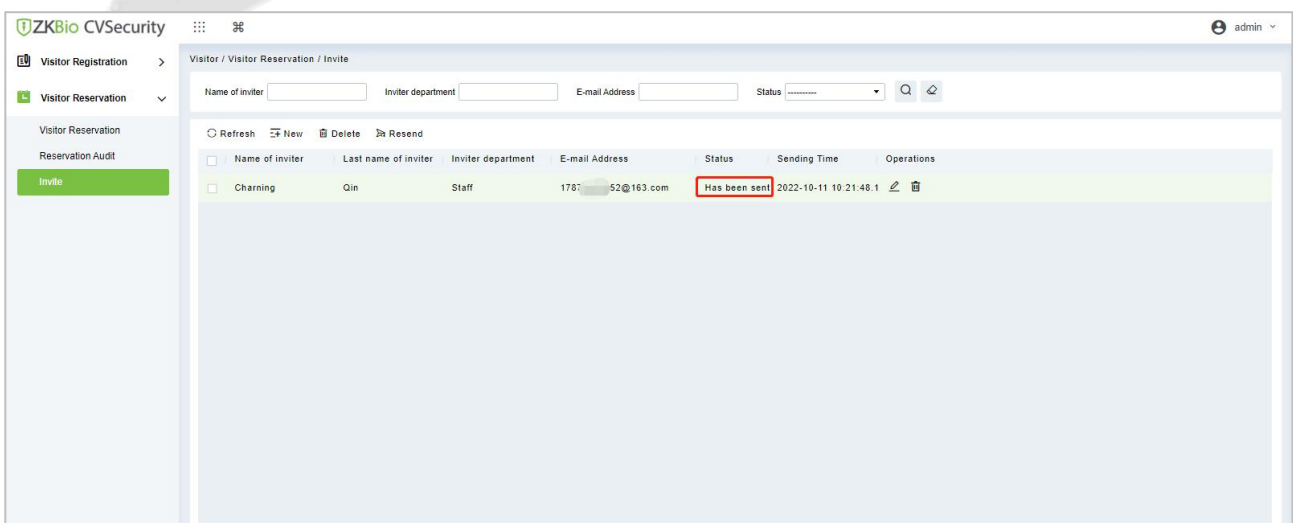


Figure 8- 33 Send an invitation E-mail 2

● Visitor Registration:

Visitors who have received the invitation will receive an email as follows, then the visitor click **Click here** to register as a visitor.



Figure 8- 34 Invitation E-mail

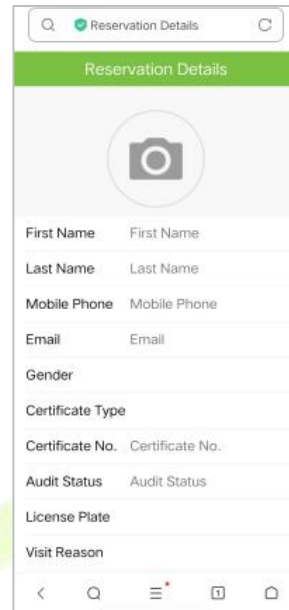


Figure 8- 35 Visitor Registration

● Visitor Reservation Audit:

When a visitor submits registration information, host will receive a review email as shown below:

Click **Review** if you agree to make an appointment;

Click **Refuse** if you refuse the appointment.

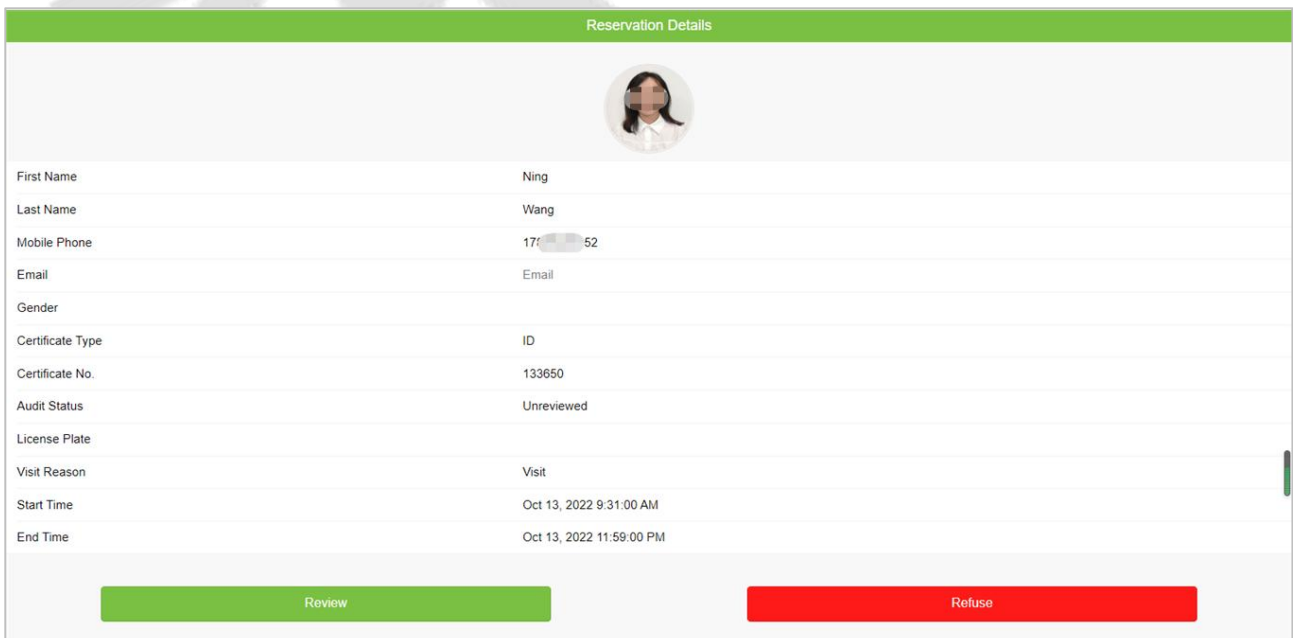


Figure 8- 36 Visitor Reservation Audit

# 8.5 Basic Management

## 8.5.1 Parameters

In **Visitor** module Click **Basic Management** > **Parameter** to set the parameters.

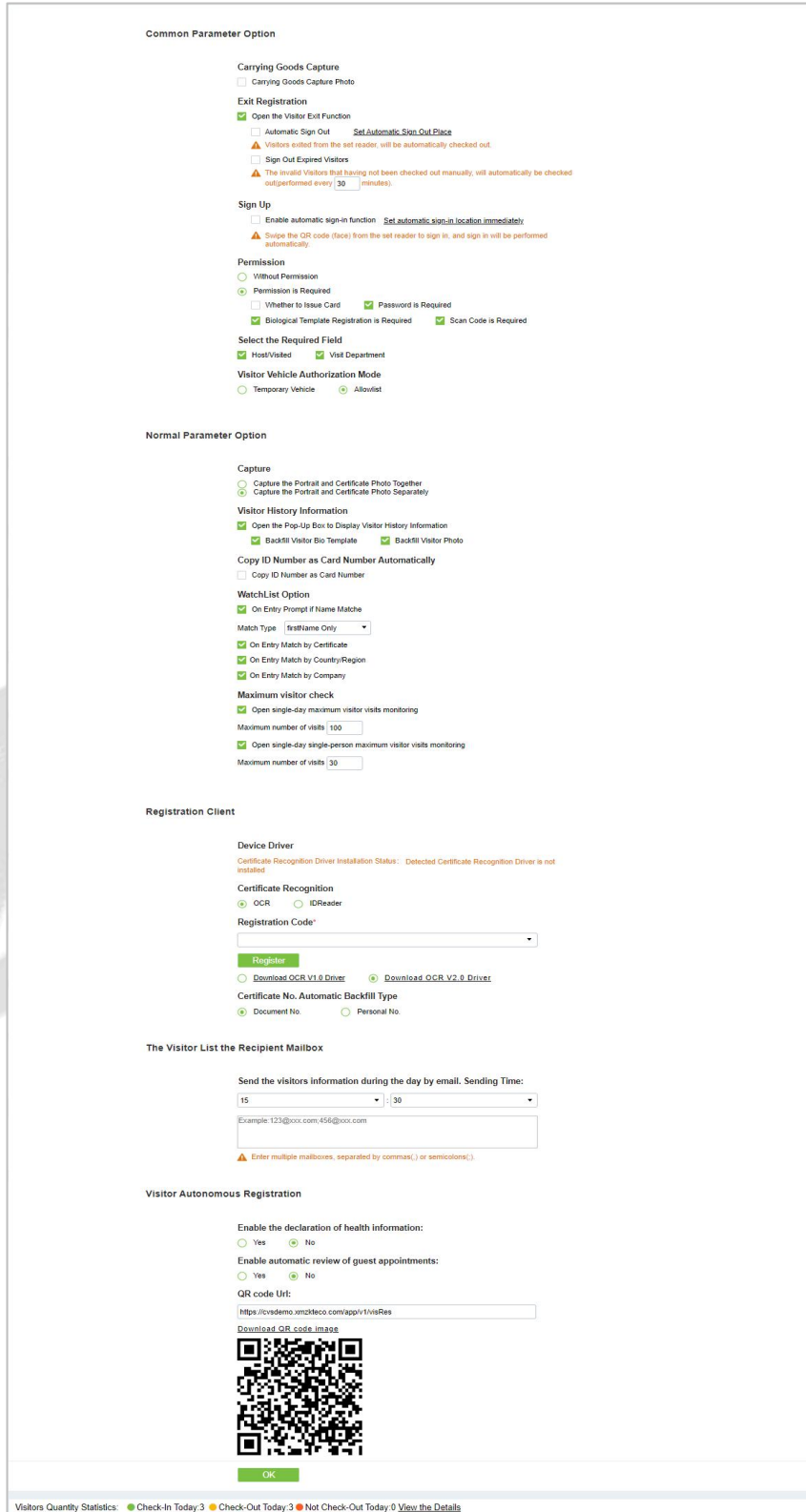


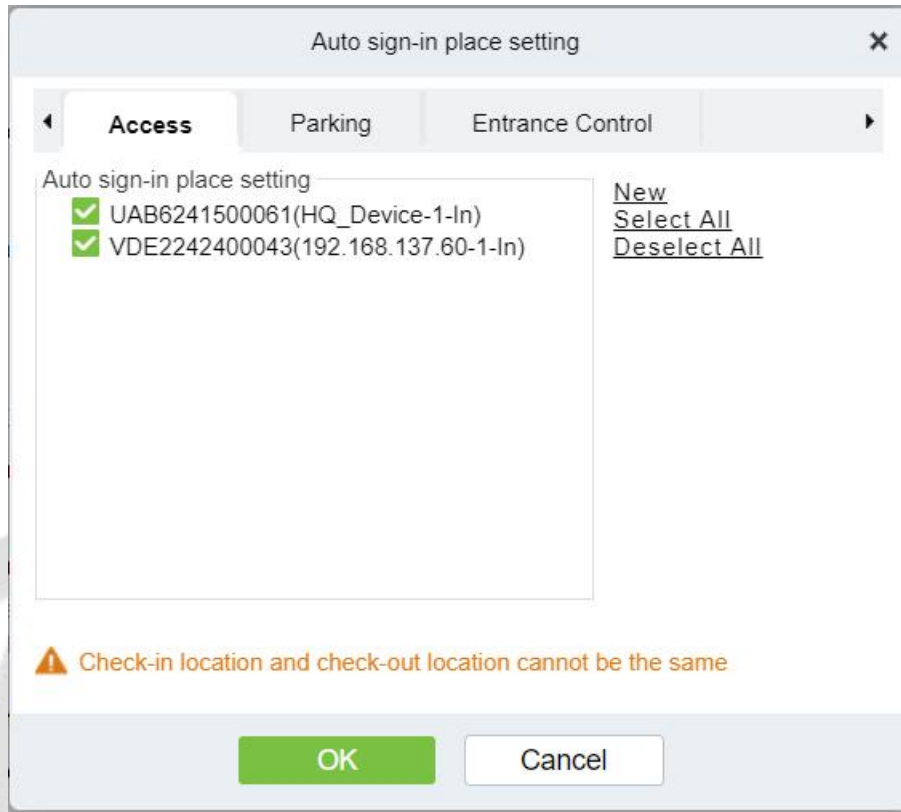
Figure 8- 37 Parameter

● Common Parameter Option:

**Enable automatic review of guest appointments:**After selecting "Yes," the system automatically approves the visitor's reservation information.

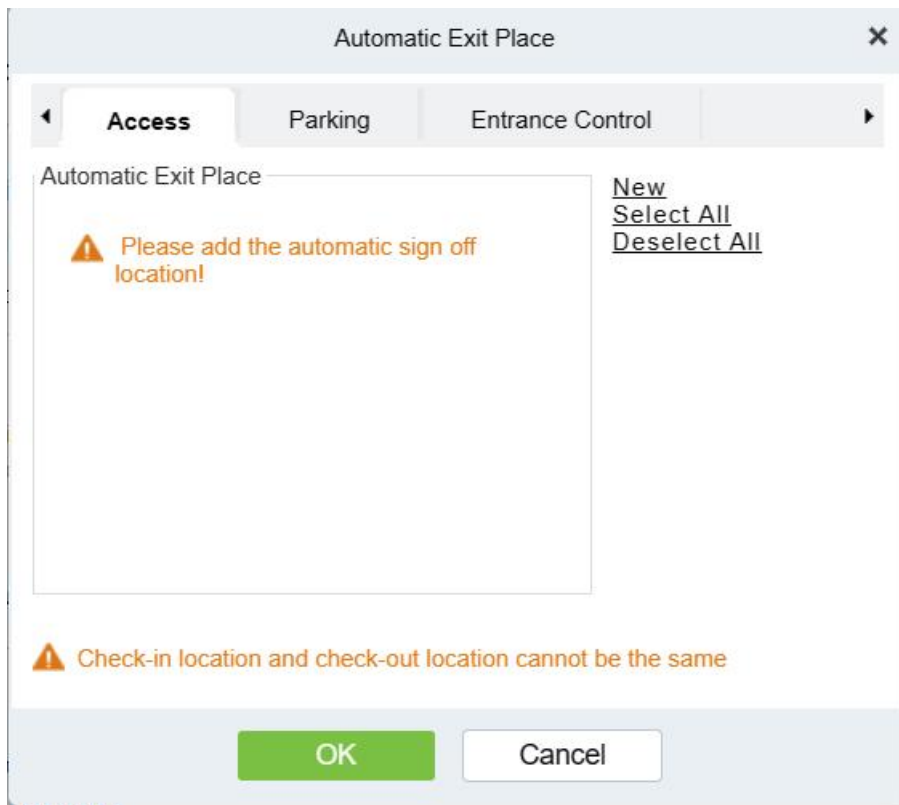
**Sign Up:**

- Enable software automatic check-in function: After selecting the checkbox, visitors can use the issued check-in QR code to complete their check-in and gain access on designated devices.
- Click Set automatic sign-in location immediately, to Configurable access control, parking, or passageway devices can be used as automatic check-in points.
- Click Set Automatic Sign-In Location Immediately to configure access control, parking, or passageway devices as automatic check-in points.



**Figure 8- 38 Auto Check-in Point**

**Exit Registration:** Enable or disable the auto sign-off function. Auto sign-out means a visitor leaves by directly punching a card or using his/her fingerprint at the preset auto sign-out place, without performing the Exit Registration operation in the software. Setting automatic sign-out place means specifying some readers as the auto sign-out place. Click **Set Automatic Sign Out Place**. Then click **OK** to finish.



**Figure 8- 39 Automatic Exit Place**

- **Sign Out Expired Visitors:** Expired visitors who have not been manually signed out will be automatically signed out after a specified interval.
- **Visitor Vehicle Authorized Mode :** Define the attributes of visitor vehicles, with options for temporary vehicles or the allowed list. Different vehicle attributes need to comply with the vehicle management rules of the Parking module.



● **Permission:**

- **Without permission :** There is no need to grant access control permissions to visitors.
- **Permission is required:** Grant access control permissions to visitors, and further select the method for visitor verification as shown below.

**Whether to Issue Card:** Whether to issue card for the visitor.

**Password is required:** If selected, it will make password mandatory.

**Biological Template Registration is Required:** Whether to register the fingerprint/palm/finger vein for the visitor.

**Scan Code is Required:** If selected, it will code scan mandatory

**Enable Visitor Defense:** If "Yes" is selected, the visitor's registered information will be automatically added to the allowed list database for camera recognition.

● **Device and Page Parameter Setting:**

- **Select the Required Field:** You can set whether the Host (Personnel) and visited departments would be required in the registration page and the reservation page.

- **Carrying Goods Capture:** When enabled, visitors will be required to take photos of the goods, upload them, and save them during registration.

**Capture:** Whether to capture the portrait and certificate photo simultaneously during visitor registration.

#### Capture

- Capture the Portrait and Certificate Photo Together
- Capture the Portrait and Certificate Photo Separately

**Visitor History Information:** You can select the display parameters of the visitor history. Selecting the Open the Pop-Up Box to Display Visitor History Information check box displays the visitor information with photo and fingerprint of the visitor (These two will be auto-selected).

#### Visitor History Information

- Open the Pop-Up Box to Display Visitor History Information
- Backfill Visitor Bio Template       Backfill Visitor Photo

**Copy ID Number as Card Number Automatically:** Enable this if you want to use the same ID number as the Card number.

**Watch List Option:** Select the matching rules for the Watch List. If a match is successfully made according to the set rules, a reminder will be given for the Watch List after the reception desk registers the visitor. The optional matching rules are shown in the figure below.

#### WatchList Option

- On Entry Prompt if Name Matche

Match Type

- On Entry Match by Certificate
- On Entry Match by Country/Region
- On Entry Match by Company

**Maximum visitor check:** You can define the parameters to limit the number of visitors and the number of visit times.

#### Maximum visitor check

- Open single-day maximum visitor visits monitoring

Maximum number of visits

- Open single-day single-person maximum visitor visits monitoring

Maximum number of visits

**Note:** When the number of visitors reaches the default upper limit set on the day, a prompt will pop up when entering the registration page:

- Registration Client:

**Step 1:** If there is no driver installed in the system, the **Download Driver** link is displayed. Click the link

to download and install the driver.

Registration Client

Device Driver

Certificate Recognition Driver Installation Status: Detected Certificate Recognition Driver is not installed

Card Printer Driver Installation Status: Detected Card Printer Driver is not installed

Signature drive installation: Detected Signature drive is not installed

Certificate Recognition

OCR  IDReader

Registration Code\*

Register

Download OCR V1.0 Driver  Download OCR V2.0 Driver

Certificate No. Automatic Backfill Type

Document No.  Personal No.

Card Printing

Registration Code\*

Register

[Download Driver](#)

Signature

Registration Code\*

Register

[Download Driver](#)

Figure 8- 40 Registration Client

**Step 2:** Enter the corresponding registration code and click **Register**.

**Note:** The Registration code can only be obtained after purchasing the corresponding license. After activating the license, you can check it at **System > Authority Management > Client Register** to view the **registration code**.

● The Visitor List the Recipient Mailbox:

Configure the recipient's mailbox and the time for system to send the list of visitors.

The Visitor List the Recipient Mailbox

Send the visitors information during the day by email. Sending Time:

15 : 30

Example: 123@xxx.com;456@xxx.com

Enter multiple mailboxes, separated by commas(,) or semicolons(,).

Figure 8- 41 Visitor List the Recipient Mailbox

● Visitor Autonomous Registration:

Visitors can use the self-service registration link. If you have already installed and activated the

ZKBio CVConnect Client, you can click on "use cloud visitor link," and it will automatically fill in the cloud visitor link.

**Note:** You can download the ZKBio CVConnect Client and enable cloud settings under System -> System Management -> Cloud Settings.

### Visitor Autonomous Registration

QR code Url:

<https://hybrid.minervaiot.com/cvapp/visRes/8a8882df8ced0f62018d5876fa571246>

[Use cloud registration link](#)

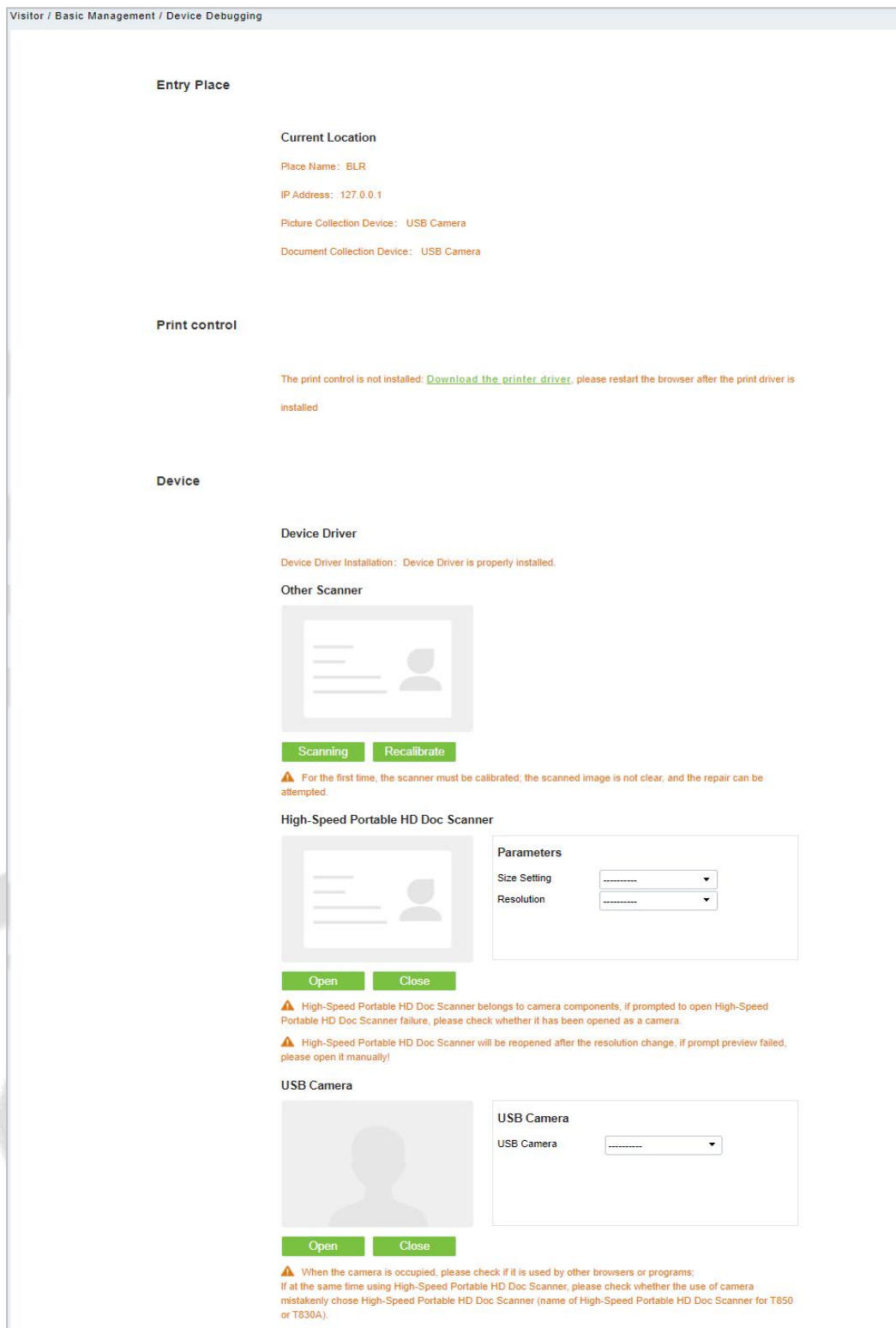
[Download QR code image](#)



#### 8.5.1.1 Device Debugging

Device Debugging option will provide information about Entry Place, Print installation, Device Driver installation, and USB Camera.

In **Visitor** module Click **Basic Management** > **Device Debugging** to know about the current location details (including IP address), Printer-driver installation information, device driver installation, calibrate the scanners, and USB camera information.



**Figure 8- 42 Device Debugging Interface**

| Parameter     | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Entry Place   | Displays the information of the current entry place, such as the name of the entry place, IP, Mode of picture/document collection. |
| Print Control | It shows the Printer-driver installation information   |

| Parameter | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| Device    | Display device driver installation, you can debug, calibrate the scanner. Set the High-Speed Portable HD Doc Scanner parameters, and information of USB camera. (IE browser does not display USB device debugging). |

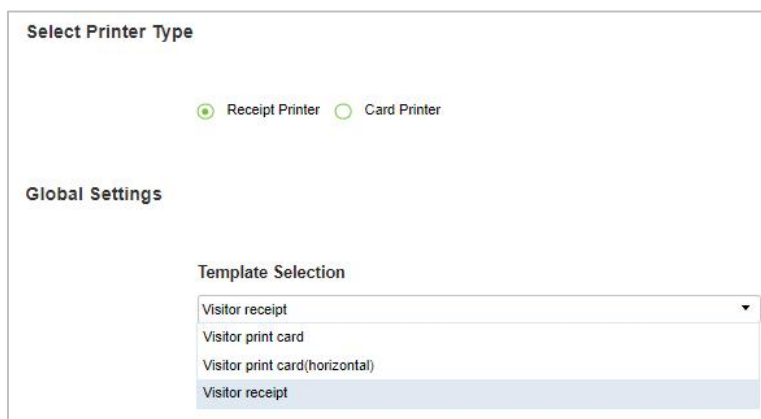
**Table 8- 9 Description of Parameters of Device Debugging**

### 8.5.1.2 Print Settings

In **Visitor** module Click **Basic Management** > **Print Setting** to go to the printer settings.

● **Global Settings (Receipt Printer):**

Select **Receipt Printer** to set the global setting of the printer.



**Figure 8- 43 Global Settings of Printer**

| Parameter          | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| Template Selection | Select a template to print the template, if the template does not meet the print content, you can add or edit the template (the default template cannot be edited, deleted).<br>Available Templates are Visitor Receipt, Visitor Print Card and Visitor Print Card (Horizontal). |

**Table 8- 10 Description of Parameters of Printer Setting**

● **Local Settings (Receipt Printer):**

You can set the options for the printer, the type of paper to be printed, or the custom paper size, and view the effect by clicking Print Preview / Direct Print. At last, you can save the current setting for the printout of the visitor badge.

**Local Settings**

**Print control**  
 The print control is not installed: [Download the printer driver](#), please restart the browser after the print driver is installed

**Use Printer**

Select Paper Type

**Paper Type**

⚠ The paper type can only use the system default types. Please check in the print preview to see if it will work.

Custom Paper Size

**Custom Paper Width**  
 mm

**Custom Paper Height**  
 mm

Custom Paper Width, Highly Adaptive

**Custom Paper Width**  
 mm

⚠ The setting width of the paper is greater than the actual width of the paper, will affect the print effect.

**Figure 8- 44 Local Settings of Printer**

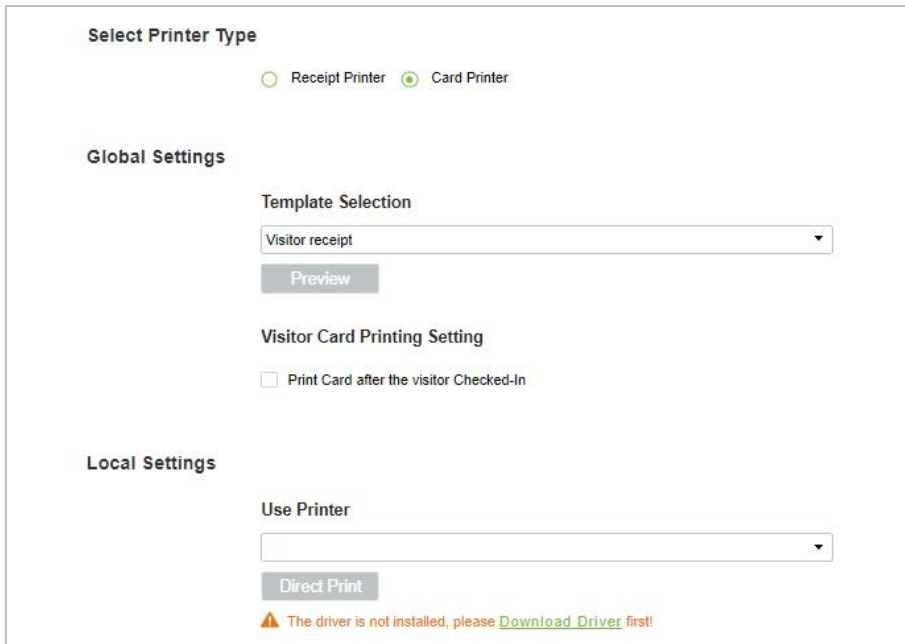
| Parameter         | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| Use Printer       | Select the printers from the available list of printers.      |
| Paper Type        | Select the Paper Type   |
| Custom Paper Size | You can customize the paper size like paper height and width. |

**Table 8- 11 Description of Parameters of Local Settings of Printer**

● **Card Printing:**

In the parameter setting interface, you can set the parameters of card. Initially, define the template

(refer to personnel card printing), and then set the card printing function. If the automatic card printing is selected, printer connection is required. After the visitor registration is completed, user can print the card directly.



**Figure 8- 45 Printer Setting of Card Printer**

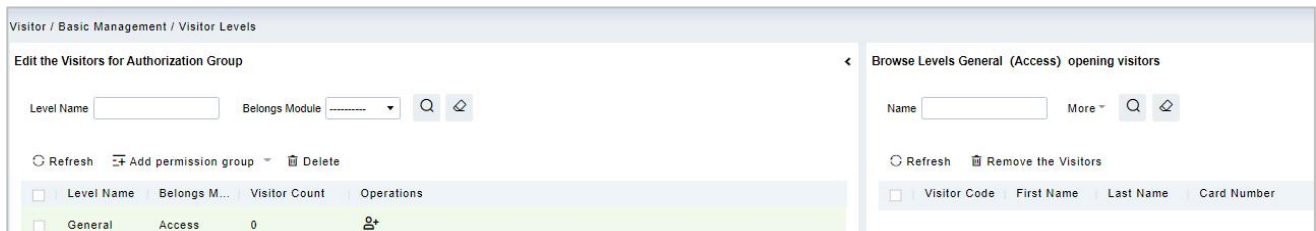
| Parameter                     | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Template Selection            | Select a template to print the template, if the template does not meet the print content, you can add or edit the template (the default template cannot be edited, deleted). Available Templates are Visitor Receipt, Visitor Print Card and Visitor Print Card (Horizontal). |
| Visitor Card Printing Setting | Select the visitor card printing settings (like after visitor check in)   |
| Use Printer                   | Select the printer from the available list of printers.   |

**Table 8- 12 Description of Parameters of Printer Setting of Card Printer**

### 8.5.1.3 Visitor Levels

The visitor can be allocated Access or Elevator levels within registration after the visitor level has been set.

In Visitor interface Click **Basic Management > Visitor Levels:**



**Figure 8- 46 Visitor Level Interface**

#### 8.5.1.3.1 Add Permission Group

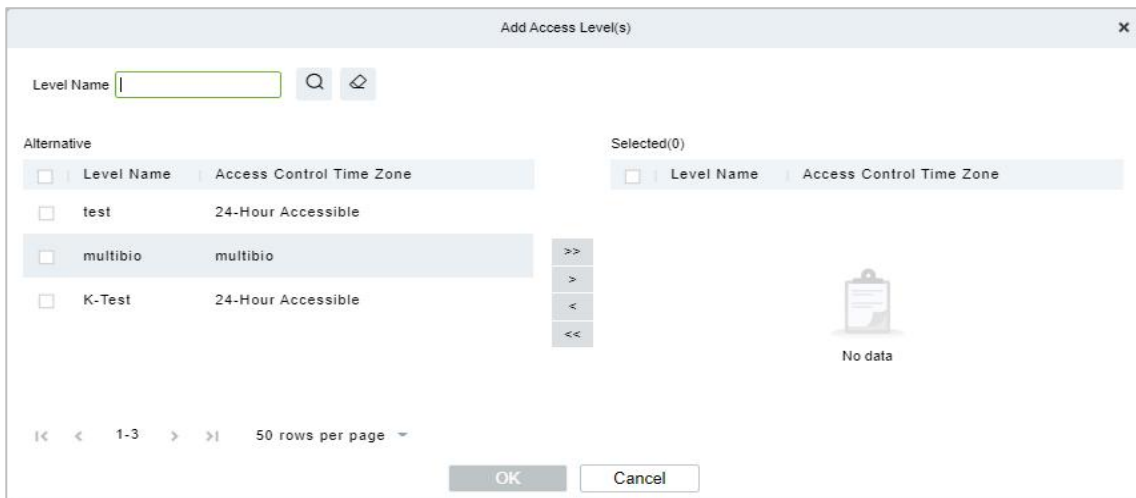
In this option you can give access, elevators, and entrance control permissions to the visitors.

### Add Access Levels

To add Access Levels.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor Module, click **Basic Management > Visitor Levels > Add Access Levels**



**Figure 8- 47 Add Access Level Interface**

**Step 2:** Set a visitor level name, select one or more access levels, click **>** or **>>** to move into the Selected menu. Click **OK**.

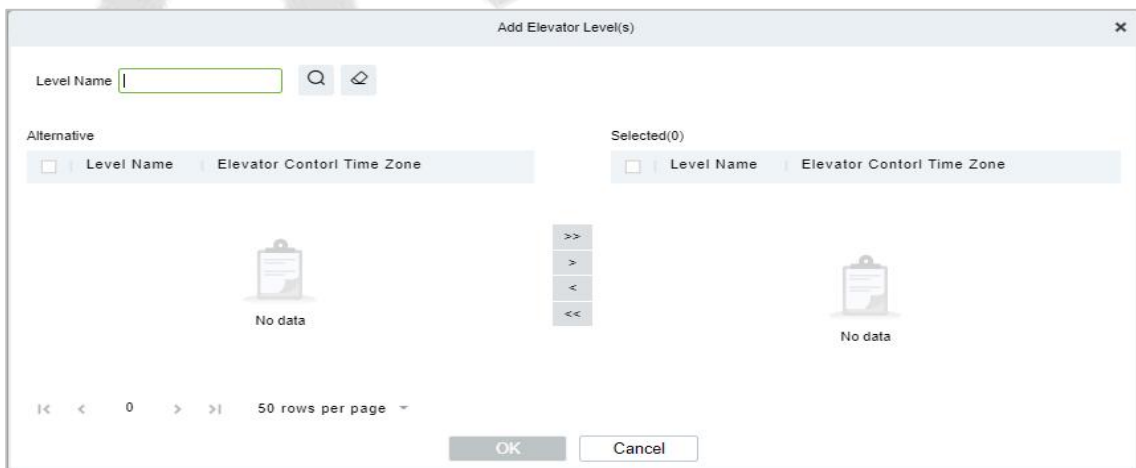
**Step 3:** Allocate the Access levels for the visitor when registering.

### Add Elevator Levels

To add Elevator Levels.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor Module, click **Basic Management > Visitor Levels > Add Elevator Levels**.



**Figure 8- 48 Add Elevator Level Interface**

**Step 2:** Set a visitor level name, select one or more access levels, click **>** or **>>** to move into the Selected menu. Click **OK**.

**Step 3:** Allocate the Elevator levels for the visitor when registering.

### Add Entrance Control Level

To add Entrance Control Levels.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor Module, click **Basic Management > Visitor Levels > Add Entrance Control Level**

**Step 2:** Set a visitor level name, select one or more access levels, click **>** or **>>** to move into the Selected menu. Click **OK**.

**Step 3:** Allocate the Elevator levels for the visitor when registering.

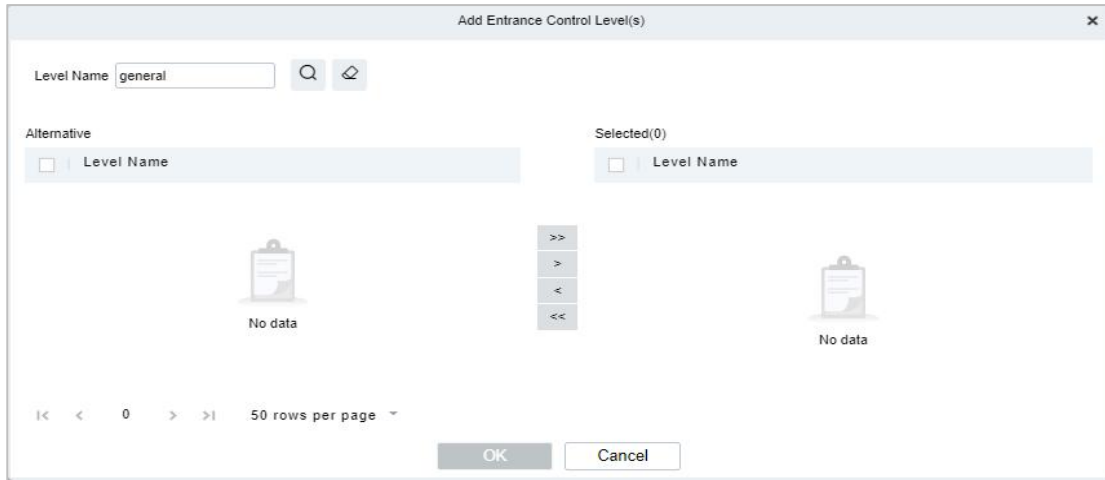


Figure 8- 49 Add Entrance Control Level Interface

### 8.5.1.3.2 Delete Levels

In the **Visitor** module, click **Basic Management > Visitor Levels**, select a visitor level and click **Delete** to delete the visitor level.

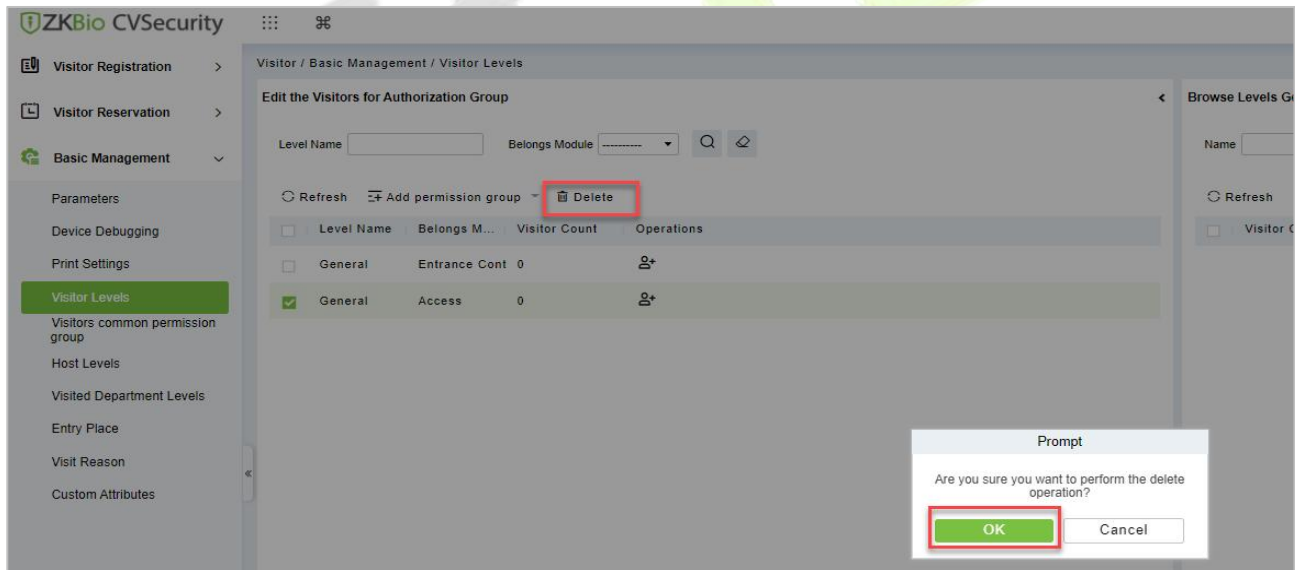


Figure 8- 50 Delete Level Interface


Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.5.1.3.3 Add Visitors to Levels (Browse Level)

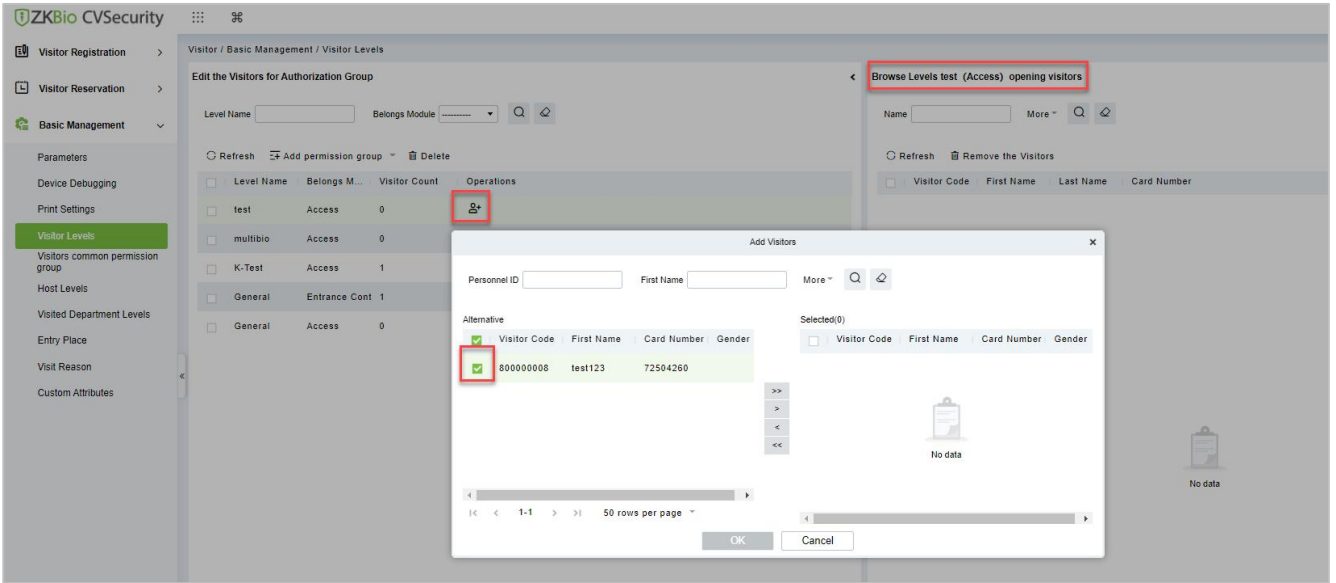
Adding visitors to levels.

#### Operating Steps

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, click **Basic Management > Visitor Levels**.

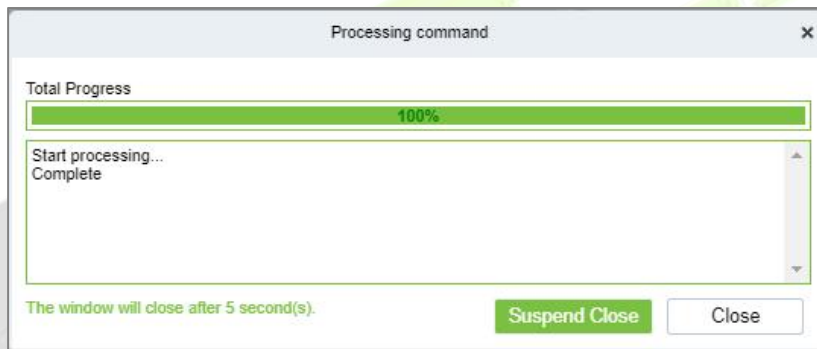
**Step 2:** Select the Visitor name click on the icon  under the operation categories.

**Step 3:** Select one or more visitors, click **>** or **>>** to move into the Selected menu. Click **OK**.



**Figure 8- 51 Add Visitor Interface**

**Step 4:** After clicking **OK** the processing window will appear like figure below shows below.



**Figure 8- 52 Processing Command Interface**

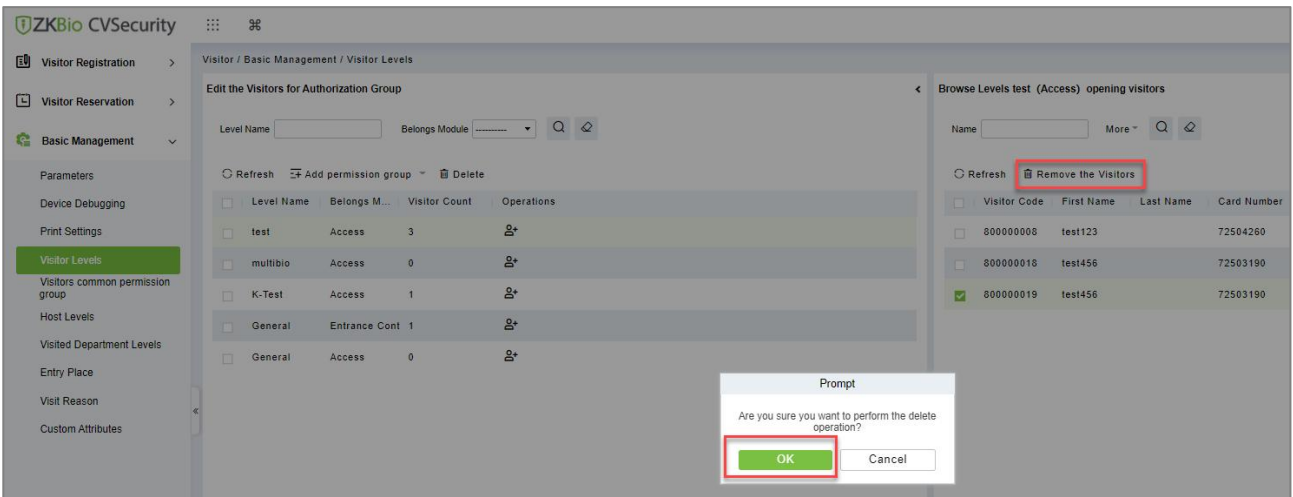
### 8.5.1.3.4 Remove Visitors from Browse Level

Removing visitors from the levels.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor Module, click **Basic Management > Visitor Levels**

**Steps 2:** Select the visitor details to be deleted, Click **Remove the Visitor** as shown in figure below.



### Figure 8- 53 Remove Visitors from Browse Level

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

#### 8.5.1.4 Visitor Common Permission Group

This interface displays a list of all visitor permission groups in the visitor system. After setting up the visitor permission group, you can assign access control/passage/witness permission to visitors when registering visitors.

##### 8.5.1.4.1 Add Permission Group

In this option you can give access, elevators, and entrance control permissions to the visitors.

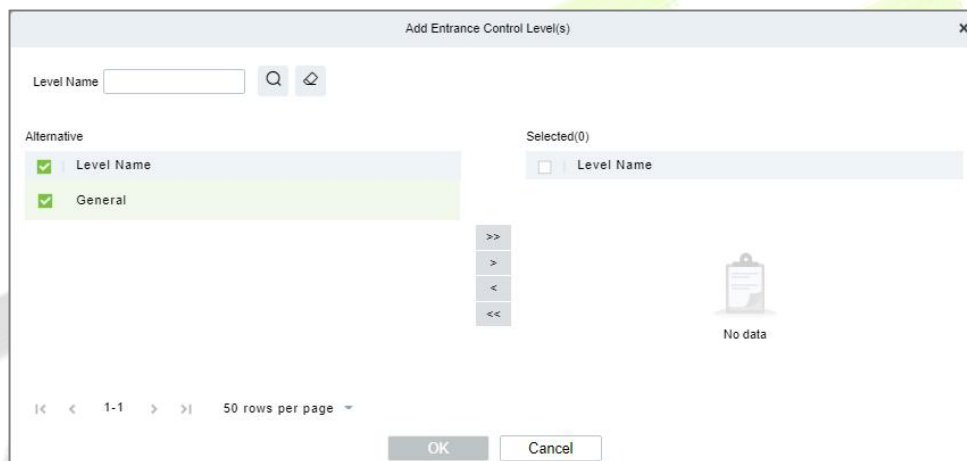
##### Add Access Level

To add Access Level Group

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Basic Management > Visitor Common Permission Group**.

**Step 2:** In the Visitor Permission Group interface, click **Add Permission Group**, select **Add Access Level**, and then add the corresponding permissions.



**Figure 8- 54 Visitor Permission Group Adding Interface**

Set a visitor level name, select one or more access levels, click **>** or **>>** to move into the Selected menu. Click **OK**.

**Step 3:** In the **Visitor** module, select **Visitor Registration > Entry Registration** interface, and click **Entry Registration** to assign personnel visitor permissions.

Figure 8- 55 Visitor Add Visitor Permission Interface

**Add Elevator Level**

To add Access Level Group

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Basic Management > Visitor Common Permission Group**.

**Step 2:** In the Visitor Permission Group interface, click **Add Permission Group**, select **Add Elevator Level**, and then add the corresponding permissions.

Figure 8- 56 Visitor Permission Group Adding Interface

Set a visitor level name, select one or more access levels, click **>** or **>>** to move into the Selected menu. Click **OK**.

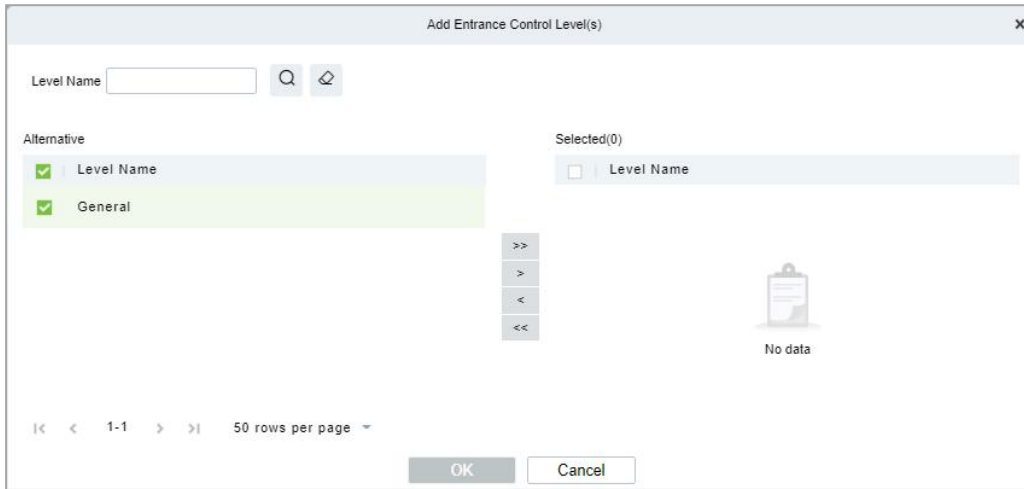
**Add Entrance Control Level**

To add Access Level Group.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Basic Management > Visitor Common Permission Group**.

**Step 2:** In the Visitor Permission Group interface, click **Add Permission Group**, select **Add Entrance Control Level**, and then add the corresponding permissions.

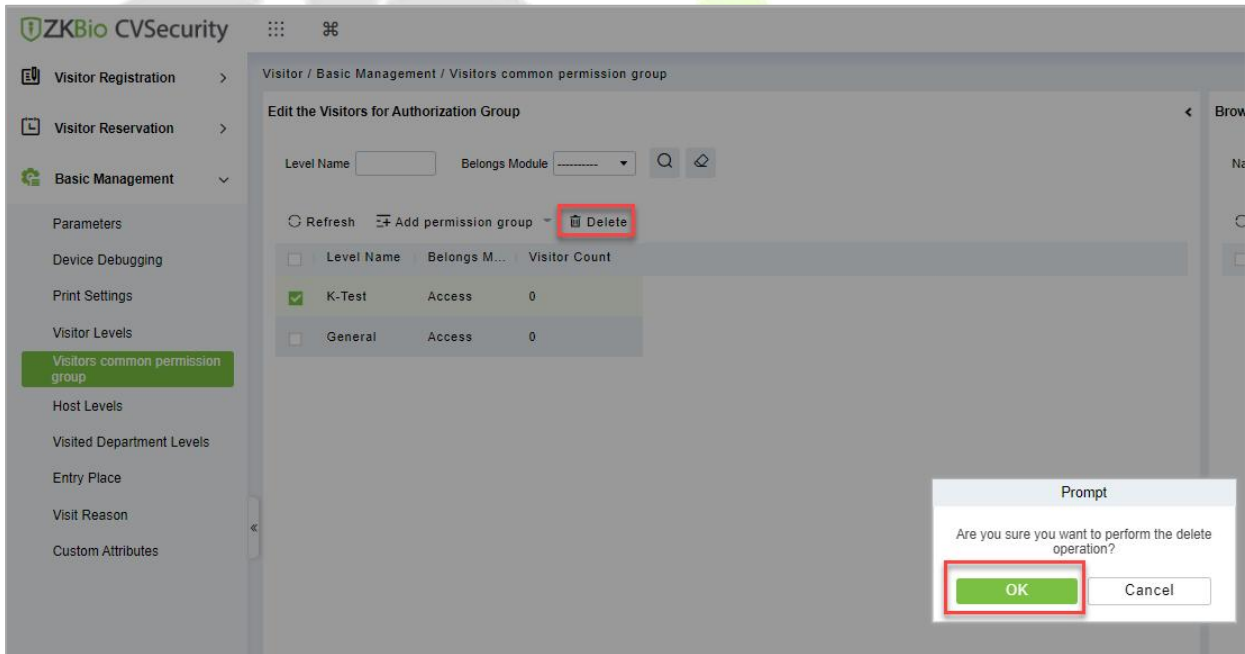


**Figure 8- 57 Visitor Permission Group Adding Interface**

Set a visitor level name, select one or more access levels, click **>** or **>>** to move into the Selected menu. Click **OK**.

**8.5.1.4.2 Delete Levels**

In the **Visitor Module**, click **Basic Management > Visitor Common Permission Group**, select a visitor level and click **Delete** to delete the visitor level.



**Figure 8- 58 Delete Level Interface**

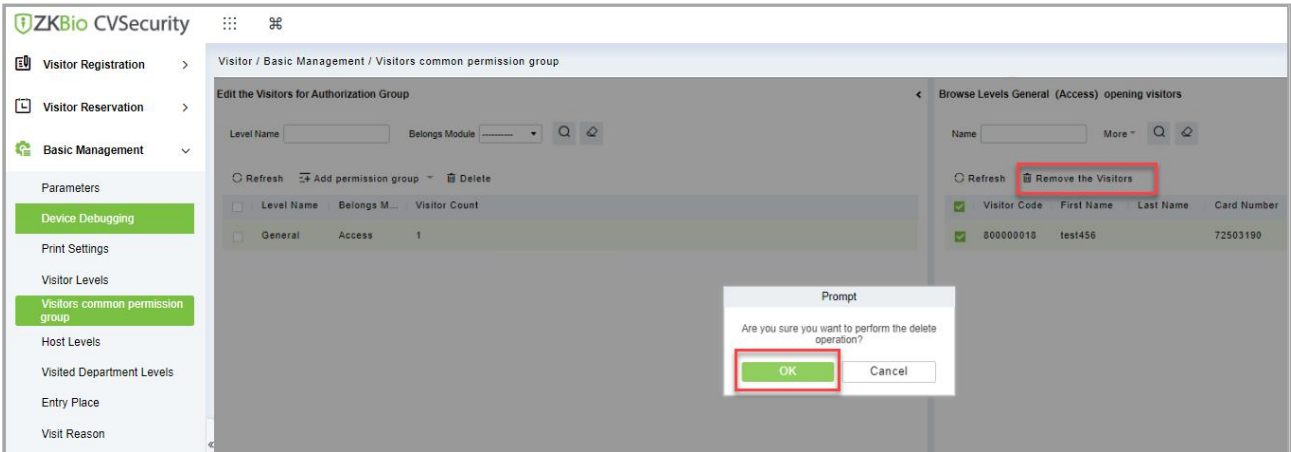
Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

**8.5.1.4.3 Remove Visitors from Browse Level**

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor Module, click **Basic Management > Visitor Common Permission Group**.

**Step 2:** Select the visitor details to be deleted, Click **Remove the Visitor**.



**Figure 8- 59 Remove Visitors from Browse Level**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.5.1.5 Host Level

After setting up the visitor permission group, you can set the visitor permission group according to the visited person or department in the Personnel module. After setting up, visitors who visit the visited person or department have this assigned permission by default.

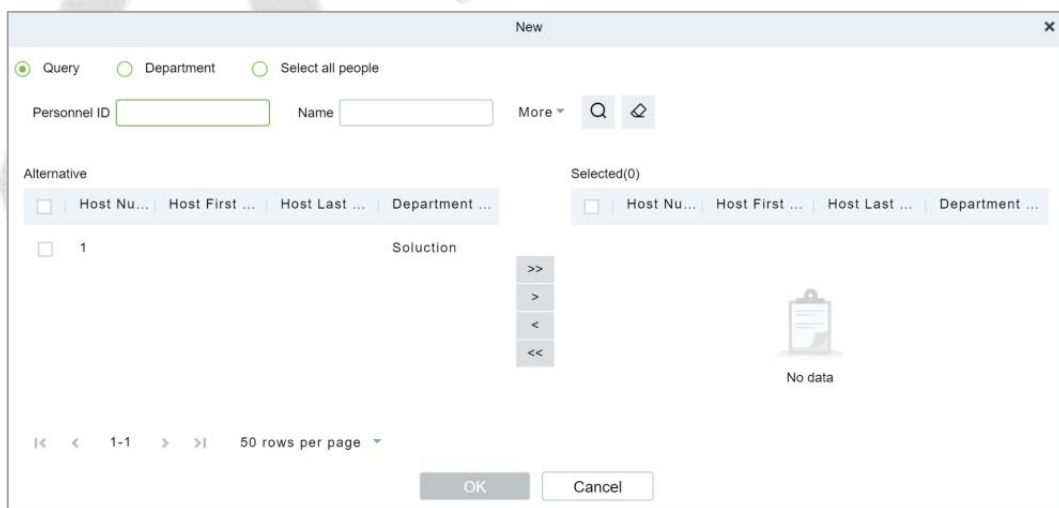
#### 8.5.1.5.1 Set Up Permission Groups by Interview (New)

This part introduces the configuration Steps of setting permission groups according to the interview in.


● Operating Steps:

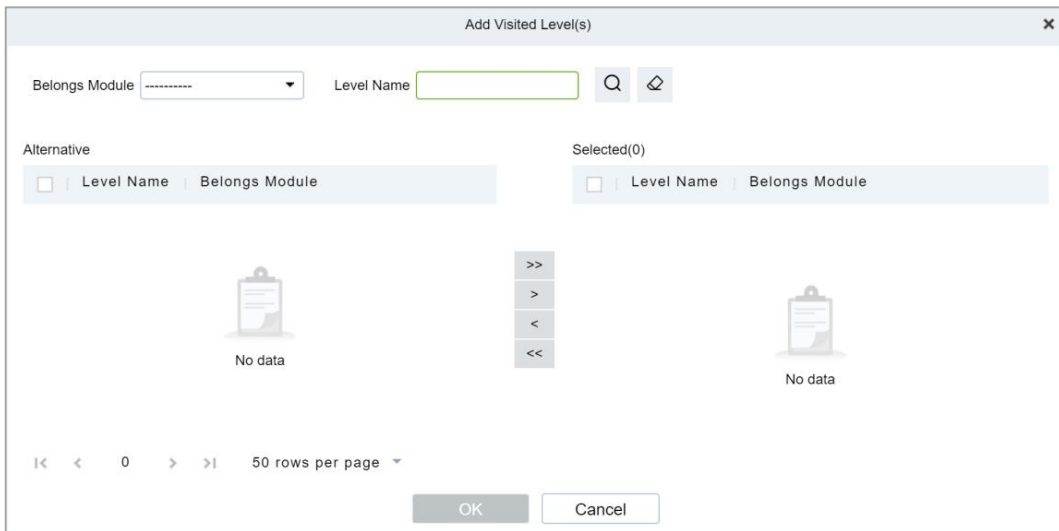
**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Basic Management > Host Level**.

**Step 2:** In the Setting Permission Group by Interviewee interface, click **New** to add interviewee information.



**Figure 8- 60 New Interface for Interviewee**

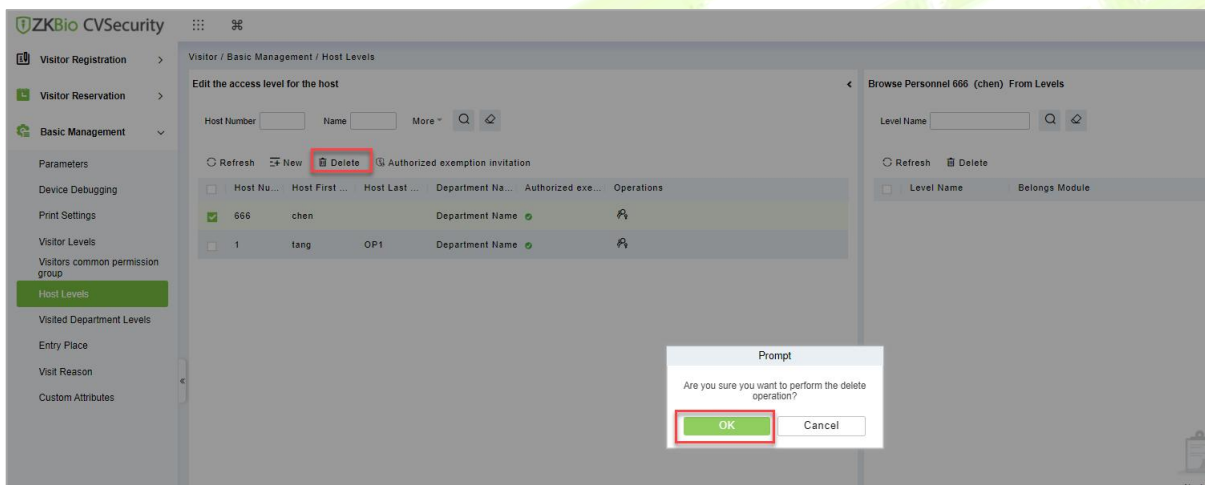
**Step 3:** After the new information is successfully added, click **Add Visited Levels**  under operations. After the respondent adds the corresponding permissions, this permission group will be distributed to the visitor when the visitor registers, and the visitor will have the permissions possessed by this permission group.



**Figure 8- 61 Add Visitor Permissions Interface**

### 8.5.1.5.2 Delete Levels

In the **Visitor** module, click **Basic Management > Host Level**, select a Host and click **Delete** to delete the Host level.



**Figure 8- 62 Delete Level Interface**

Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.5.1.5.3 Authorized Exemption Invitation

To send authorized exemption invitation to the interviewee.

● **Operating Steps:**

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Basic Management > Host Level**, select Interviewee

**Step 2:** Click **Authorized Exemption Invitation** and select **Yes** or **No** from the drop-down list as shown in figure below.

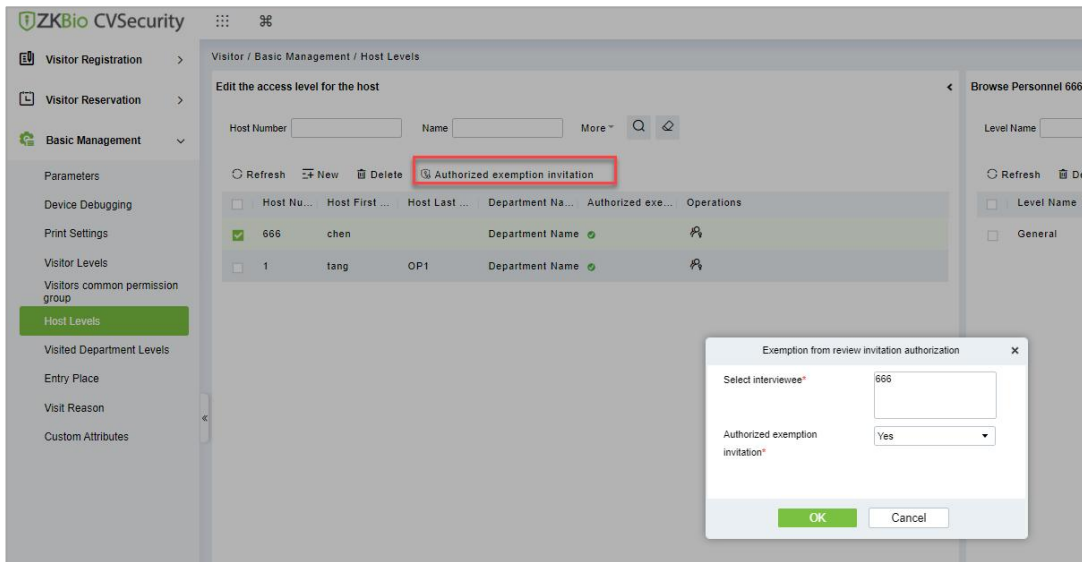


Figure 8- 63 Authorized Exemption Invitation Interface

Step 3: Click OK to send authorized exemption invitation to the interviewee.

### 8.5.1.6 Remove Visited Host Level from Browse Level (Delete)

Removing visitors from the levels.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, click **Basic Management** > Host Level.

**Step 2:** Select the visited level details to be deleted, click **Delete**.

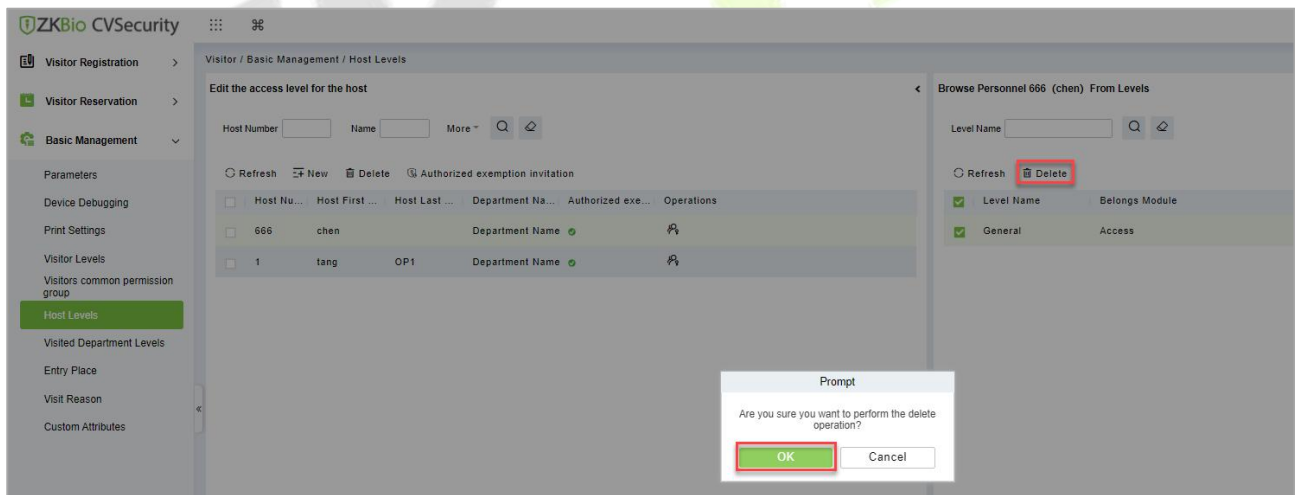


Figure 8- 64 Remove Visited Level from Browse Level

Step 3: Click OK to perform the delete operation.

### 8.5.2 Set Up Permission Groups by Visited Department (Visited Department Level)

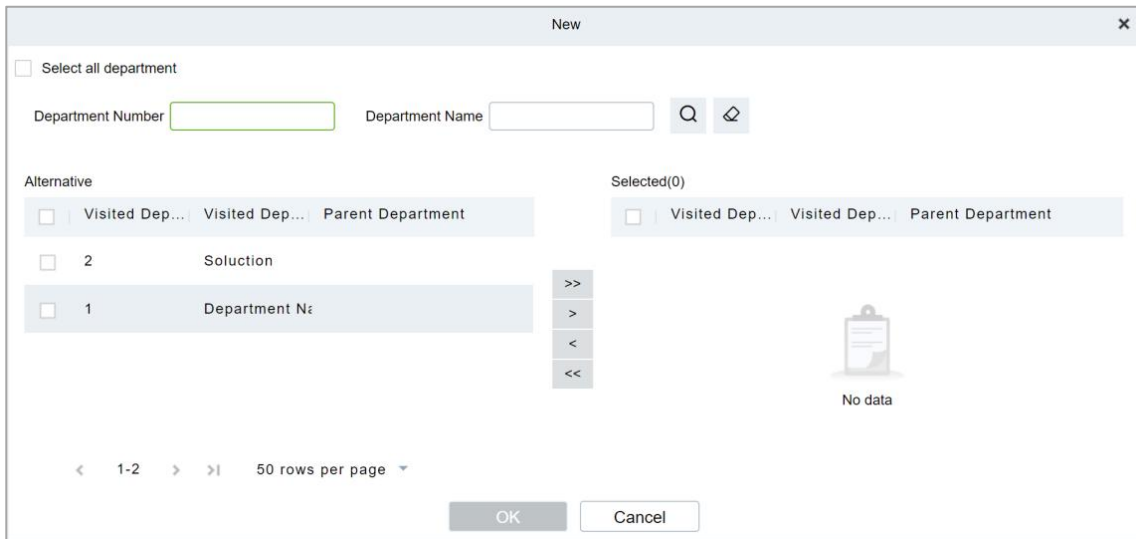
This part introduces the configuration Steps of setting permission groups by department in.

#### 8.5.2.1 Add Permission Group by Visited Department (New)


● Operating Steps:

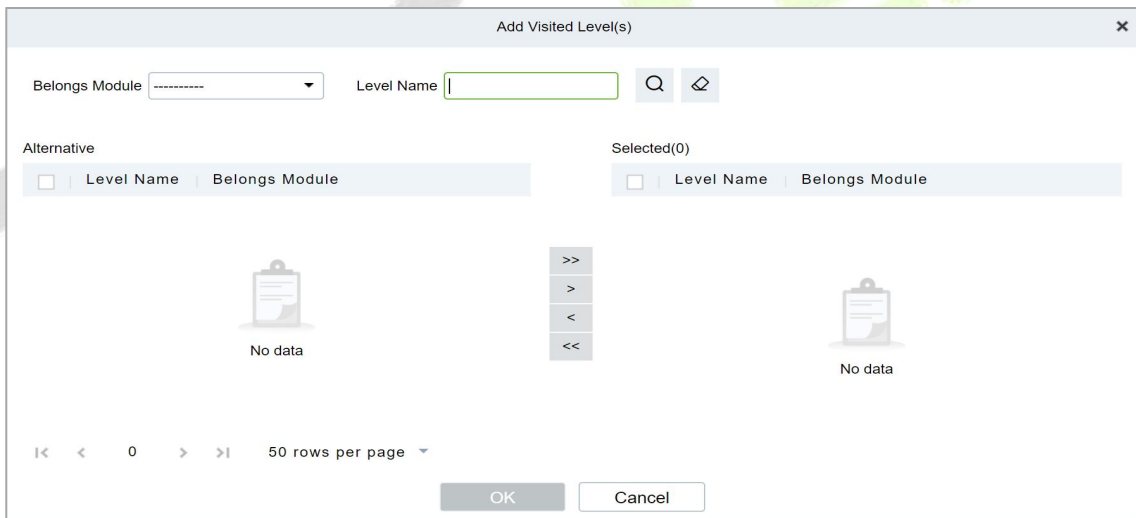
**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Basic Management** > **Visited Department**.

**Step 2:** In the Setting Permission Group by Visited Department interface, click **New** to add the visited department.



**Figure 8- 65 Add Department Interface**

**Step 3:** In the interface of editing permission group for visited department, click **Add Visited Level**  under Operation. After adding the corresponding permission, when the visitor registers, this permission group will be distributed to the visitor, and the visitor... will have the permission of this permission group.



**Figure 8- 66 Add Department Permission Interface**

### 8.5.2.2 Delete Levels

In the **Visitor** module, click **Basic Management > Host Level**, select a visited department and click **Delete** to delete the Host level.

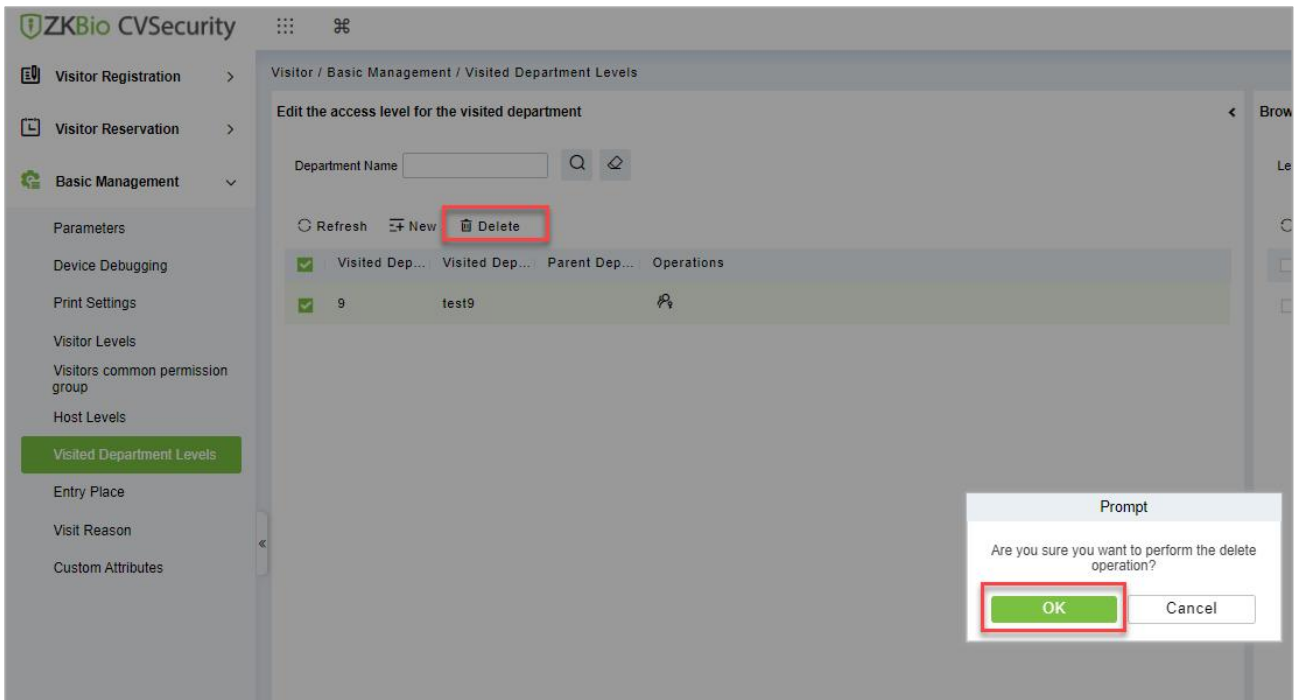


Figure 8- 67 Delete Visited Department Interface

Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.5.2.3 Remove Visited Department Level from Browse Level (Delete)

Removing visitors from the levels.

Operating Steps

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, click **Basic Management > Host Level**.

**Steps 2:** Select the visited Level details to be deleted, click **Delete**.

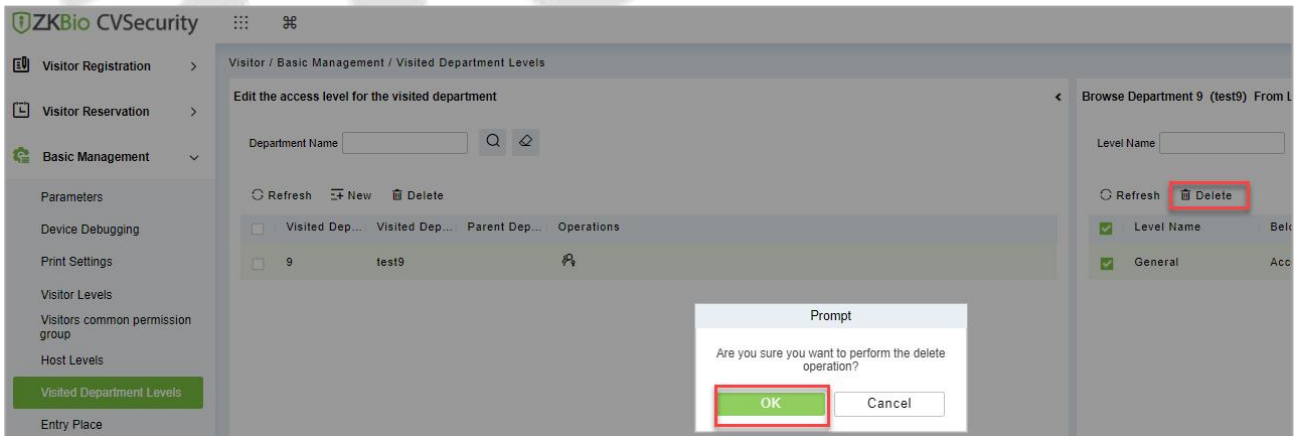


Figure 8- 68 Remove Visited Level from Browse Level

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.5.3 Entry Place

Only the registered platform (including PC platform and visitor plane) can register and sign off visitors.

This interface displays a list of all registered places in the visitor system. Displays fields such as enlistment location name, IP address, area name, and so on.

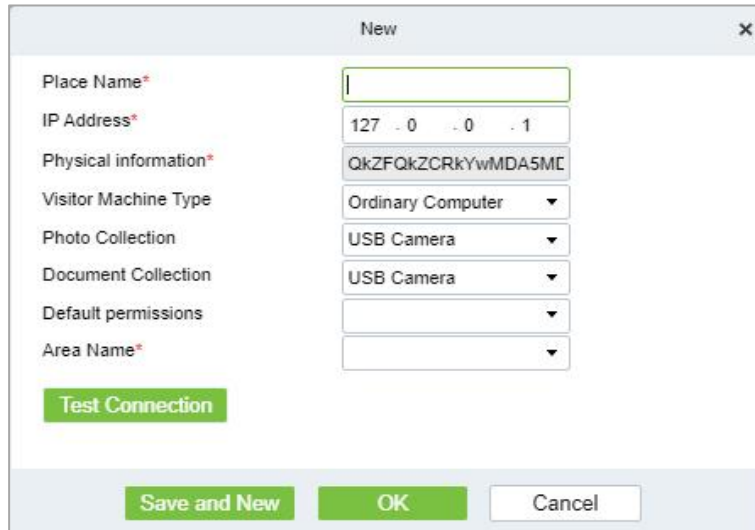
### 8.5.3.1 Entry Place (New)

Introduces the configuration Steps of registering locations in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Basic Management > Entry Place**.

**Step 2:** In the registration location interface, click **New** and select **Ordinary Computer** as the visitor machine type, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-12 for parameter description.



**Figure 8- 69 Ordinary Computer Entry Place Interface**

| Parameter                  | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Name of Registration Place | Any character, no more than 50, not repeatable.  |
| IP Address                 | Register the IP address of the computer used by the platform of visitor information and read the IP address of the local computer by default, which can be edited.   |
| Physical Information       | The physical information of the computer used by the platform for registering visitor information is automatically filled in by default and cannot be edited.  |
| Type of Visitor Machine    | By default, it is an ordinary computer. When connecting the visitor machine, select the visitor machine type: desktop visitor machine second generation, ID2000.   |
| Photo Collection           | Select the type of camera installed by customers, which is divided into USB camera, webcam, and dual-camera altimeter.<br>Description:<br>The server side of the box does not currently support external "dual camera high camera".                  |
| Certificate Collection     | Select the certificate collection equipment installed by customers, which is divided into USB camera, altimeter, scanner, and dual-camera altimeter.<br>Description:<br>The box server does not support external "altimeter, scanner and dual-camera |

| Parameter           | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
|                     | altimeter" for the time being.   |
| Default Permissions | Select the default access rights for visitors registered at this level of location.  |
| Area Name           | Add the name of the area to which the registration place belongs, and the visiting registration record of each registration place will be filtered according to the area of the registration place |

**Table 8- 13 Description of Entry Place Parameters**

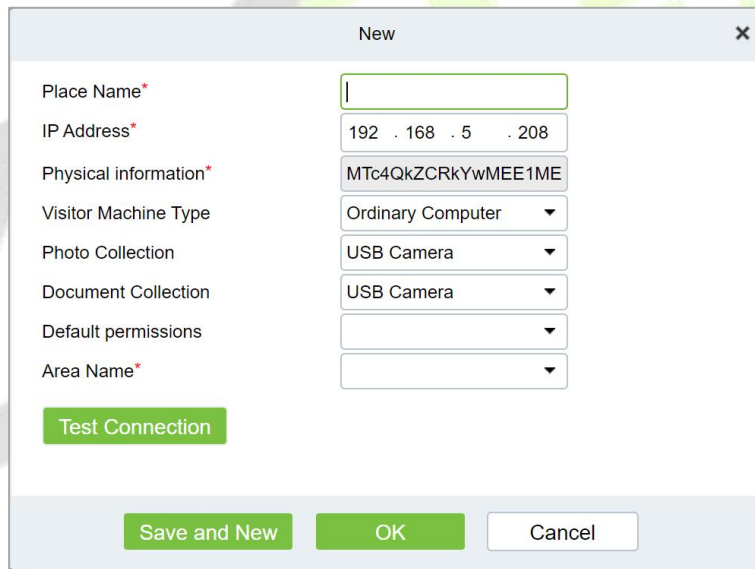
**8.5.3.2 Use of Visitor Machine**

Introduces the configuration Steps of registering locations in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, select **Basic Management > Entry Place**.

**Step 2:** In the registration location interface, click **New**, and select the visitor type as **Desktop Visitor Second Generation, ID2000**, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 10-12 for parameter description.



**Figure 8- 70 Interface of Visiting Passenger Airline Entry Place**

| Parameter                  | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Name of Registration Place | Any character, no more than 50, cannot repeat.   |
| IP Address                 | Register the IP address of the computer used by the platform of visitor information and read the IP address of the local computer by default, which can be edited. |
| Physical Information       | The physical information of the computer used by the platform for registering visitor information is automatically filled in by default and cannot be edited.      |

| Parameter               | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Type of Passenger Plane | By default, it is an ordinary computer. When connecting the visitor, select the visitor type: desktop visitor second generation, ID2000.  |
| Photo Collection        | Select the type of camera installed by customers, which is divided into USB camera, webcam, and dual-camera altimeter.<br>Description:<br>The server side of the box does not support the external "dual-camera altimeter" equipment for the time being.                            |
| Certificate Collection  | Select the certificate collection equipment installed by customers, which is divided into USB camera, altimeter, scanner, and dual-camera altimeter.<br>Description:<br>The box server does not support external "altimeter, scanner and dual-camera altimeter" for the time being. |
| Default Permissions     | Select the default access rights for visitors registered at this level of location.   |
| Area Name               | Add the name of the area to which the registration place belongs, and the visiting registration record of each registration place will be filtered according to the area of the registration place  |

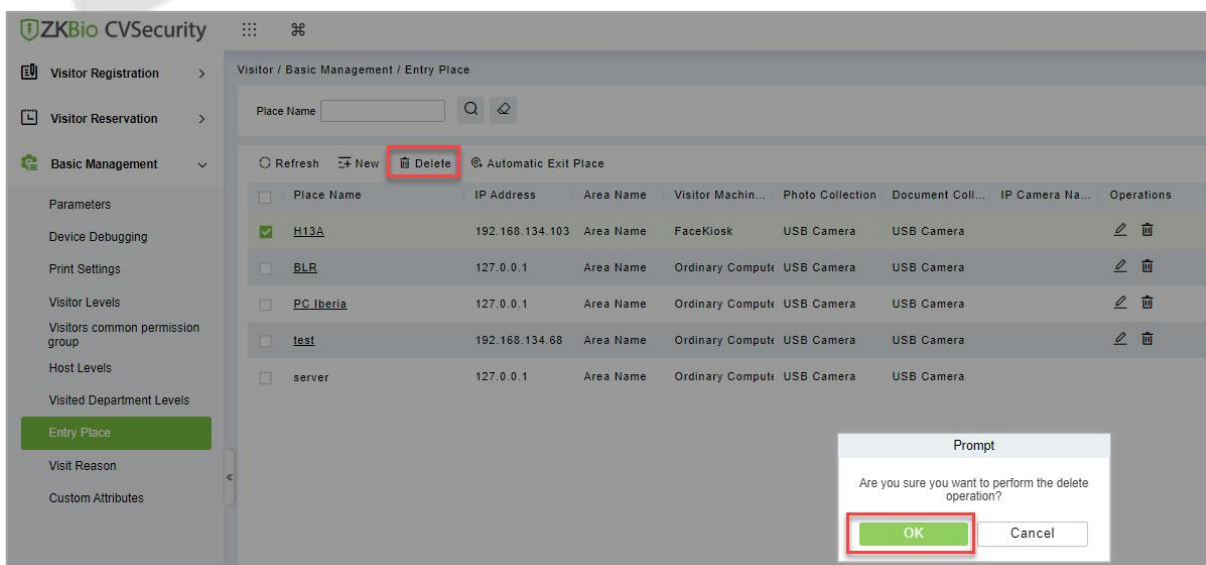
**Table 8-12 Description of Registration Location Parameters**

### 8.5.3.3 Delete

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor Module, click **Basic Management > Entry Place**, select the place name to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected place.



**Figure 8-71 Interface of Visiting Passenger Airline Entry Place**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

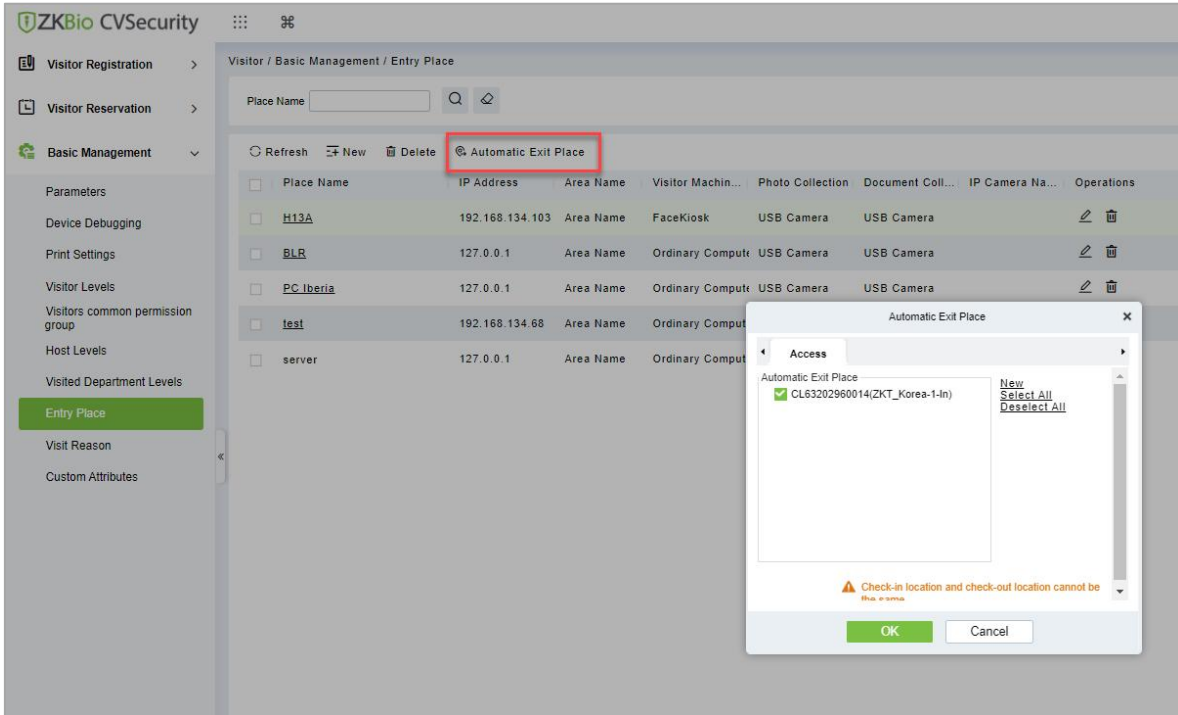
### 8.5.3.4 Automatic Exit Place

To set automatic Exit place.

● Operation Steps:

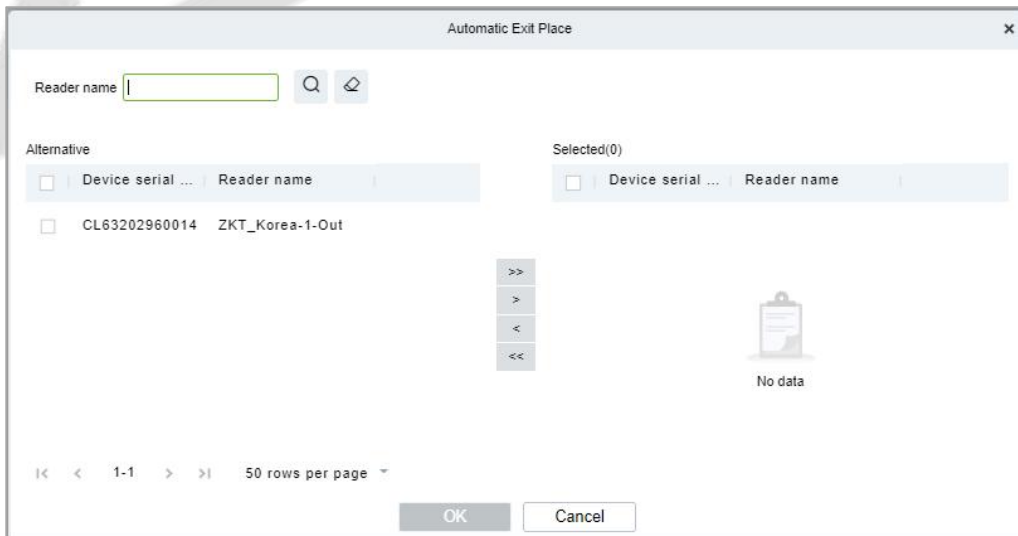
**Step 1:** In the Visitor Module, click **Basic Management > Entry Place**, click Automatic Exit Place option.

**Step 2:** Select the place to be set as automatic exist place and click **OK**.



**Figure 8- 72 Automatic Exit Place Interface**

**Step 3:** Click **New** to add place as automatic exit place and select the place reader name (Device place) from the appeared window. Click **OK** to save the data.



**Figure 8- 73 Add Place as Automatic Exit Place**

**Step 4:** Repeat the step 2 to set the newly added place as automatic exit place.

## 8.5.4 Visit Reason

You can Add, Delete or Edit visit reason in this interface, so that you can select either from them at the entry registration page.

### 8.5.4.1 To Add Visit Reason (New)

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Visitor module, click **Basic Management > Visit Reason > New**.



Figure 8- 74 Add Place as Automatic Exit Place

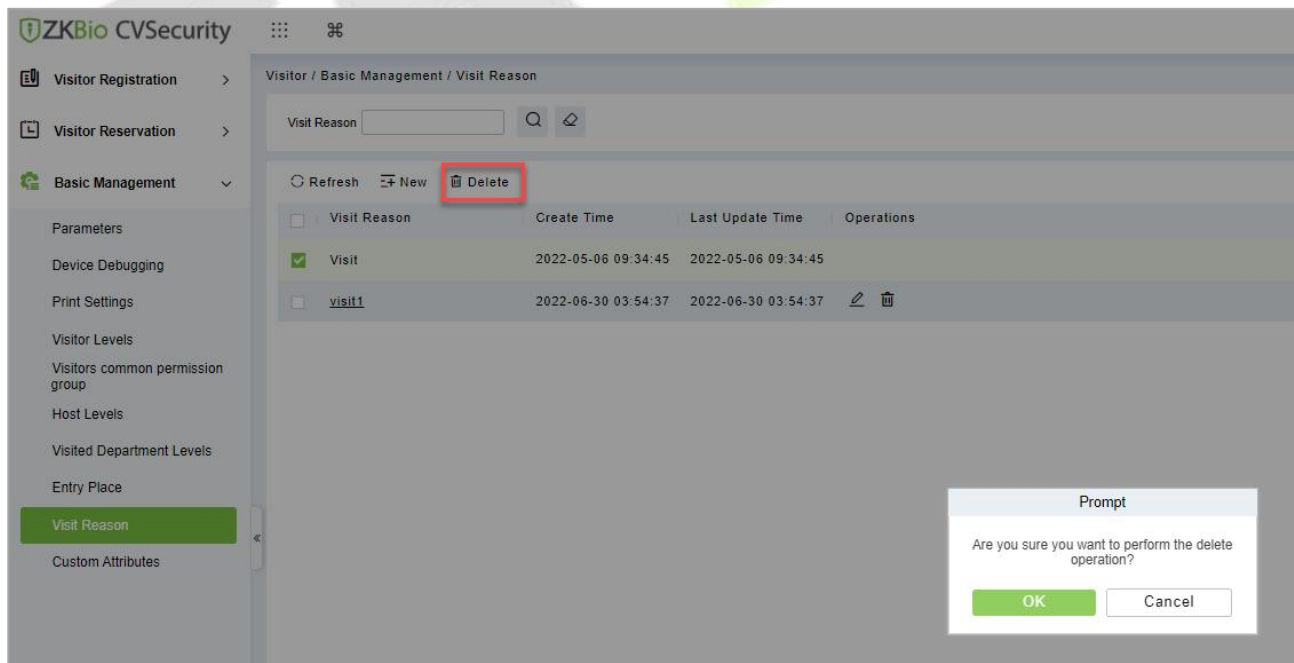
**Step 2:** Click **OK** to finish.

### 8.5.4.2 Delete

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Basic Management > Visit Reason**, select visit reason to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected visit reason.



| Visit Reason                              | Create Time         | Last Update Time    | Operations |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visit | 2022-05-06 09:34:45 | 2022-05-06 09:34:45 |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> visit1           | 2022-06-30 03:54:37 | 2022-06-30 03:54:37 |            |

Figure 8- 75 Delete Visit Reason

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.5.5 Custom Attributes

If you want to add or delete a specific field on the registration page, then you can use this function.

#### 8.5.5.1 To Add Custom Attributes (New)

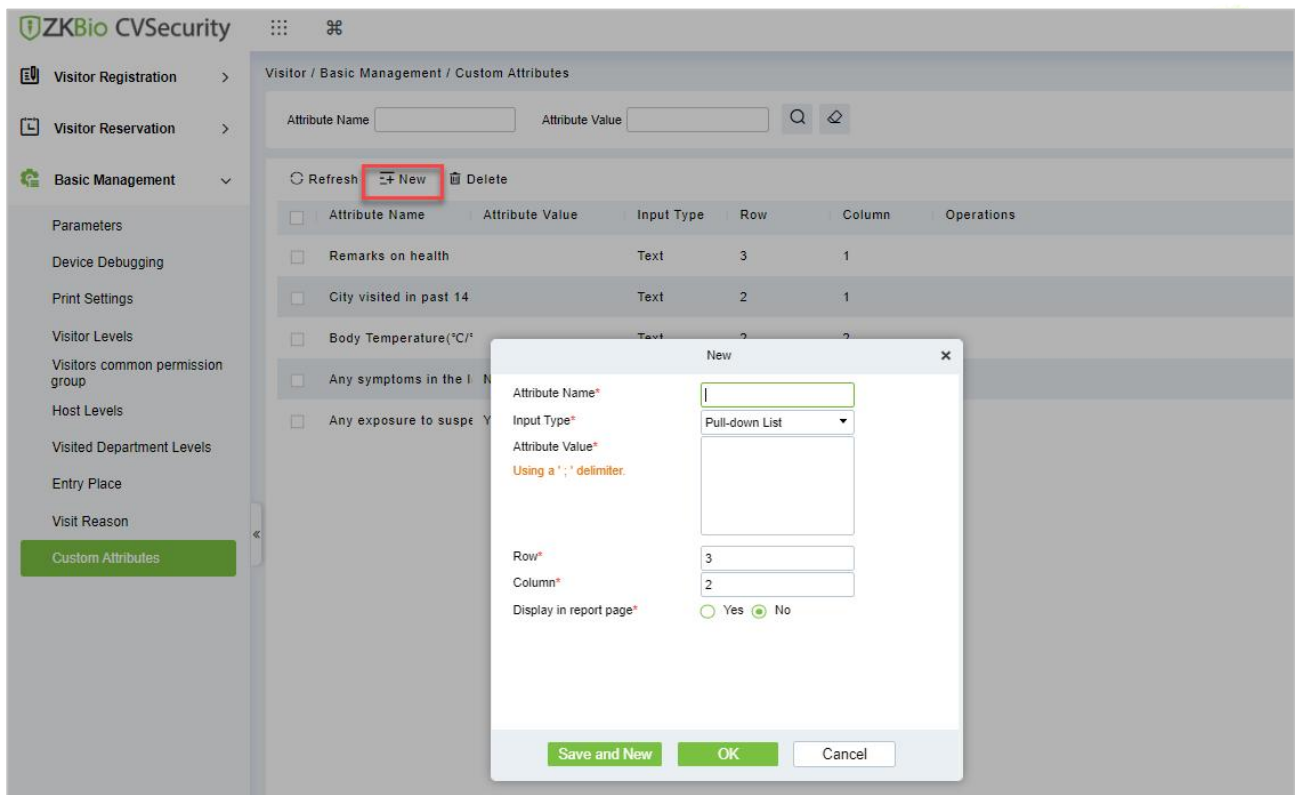
In this interface you can add any specific field on the registration page.

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor Module**, click **Basic Management > Custom Attributes**, click **New** to add a specific field on the registration page.

**Step 2:** Enter the Attribute name, select the field type as Pull down, Multiple Choice, Single Choice or Text.

If you select any of the type except Text, then you have to mention the attribute value(s). Use a semicolon to separate the values. Enter Row and Column as required and choose Yes or No according with requirement.



**Figure 8- 76 Custom Attribute Interface**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to add the attribute.

| Parameter       | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Attribute Name  | Enter the attribute name.  |
| Input Type      | Select the input type from the drop-down list such as Pull down, Multiple Choice, Single Choice or Text. |
| Attribute Value | Enter the attribute value. n attribute has multiple values, you can separate them with a semicolon.      |

| Parameter              | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
|                        | If you select text as input type of the attribute, then no need to add the attribute value.           |
| Row                    | Enter the row number as required.   |
| Column                 | Enter the column number as required.  |
| Display in Report Page | If an attribute should be displayed on report pages, select <b>Yes</b> . Otherwise select <b>No</b> . |

**Table 8- 14 Description of Entry Place Parameters**

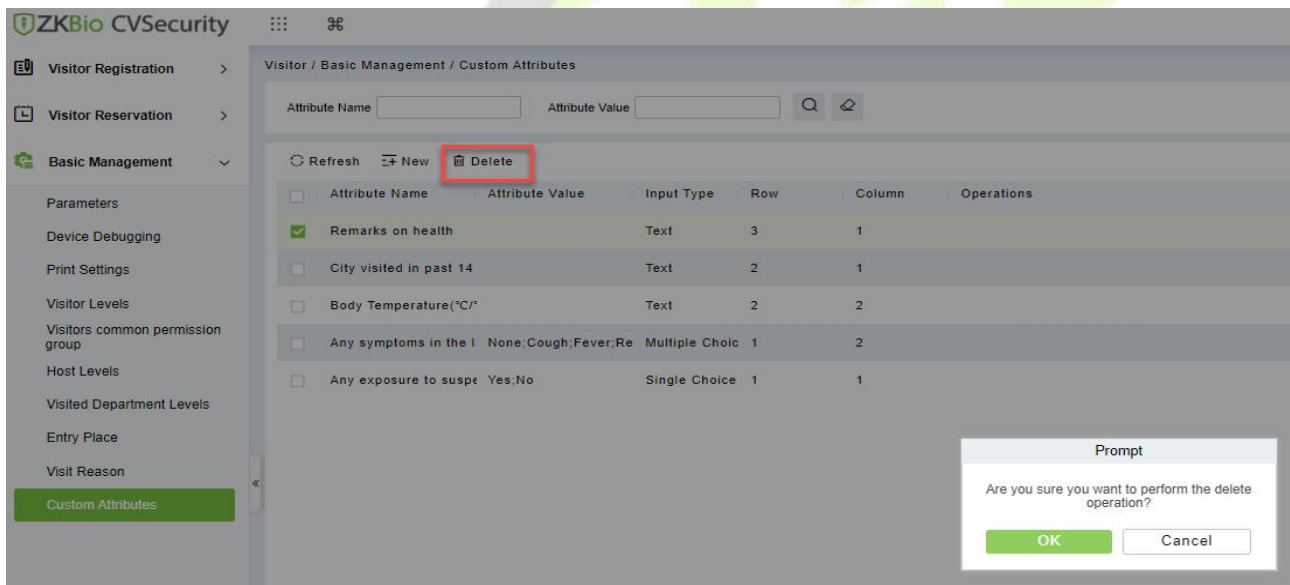
### 8.5.5.2 Delete Custom Attributes

To delete customized attributes.

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Basic Management > Custom Attributes** and select the attribute to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete a specific field on the registration page.



**Figure 8- 77 To Delete Custom Attribute**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

## 8.6 Advanced

### 8.6.1 Category

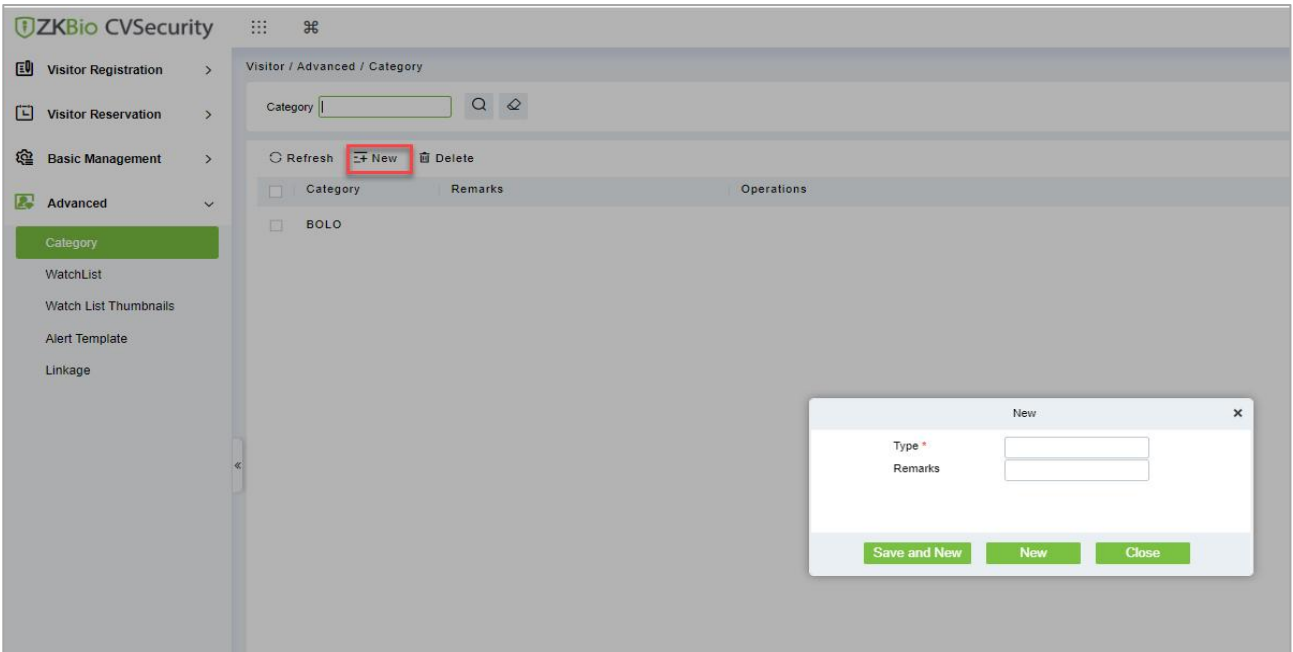
This interface allows you to add or delete the visitor category.

### 8.6.1.1 To Add New Visitor Category

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > Category** and click **New** to add a new category.

**Step 2:** Enter the type of category and remarks as shown in figure below.



**Figure 8- 78 Category Interface**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to save the data.

| Parameter | Description                                      |
|-----------|--|
| Type      | Enter the type of category.                      |
| Remarks   | Enter the remarks about the category (Optional). |

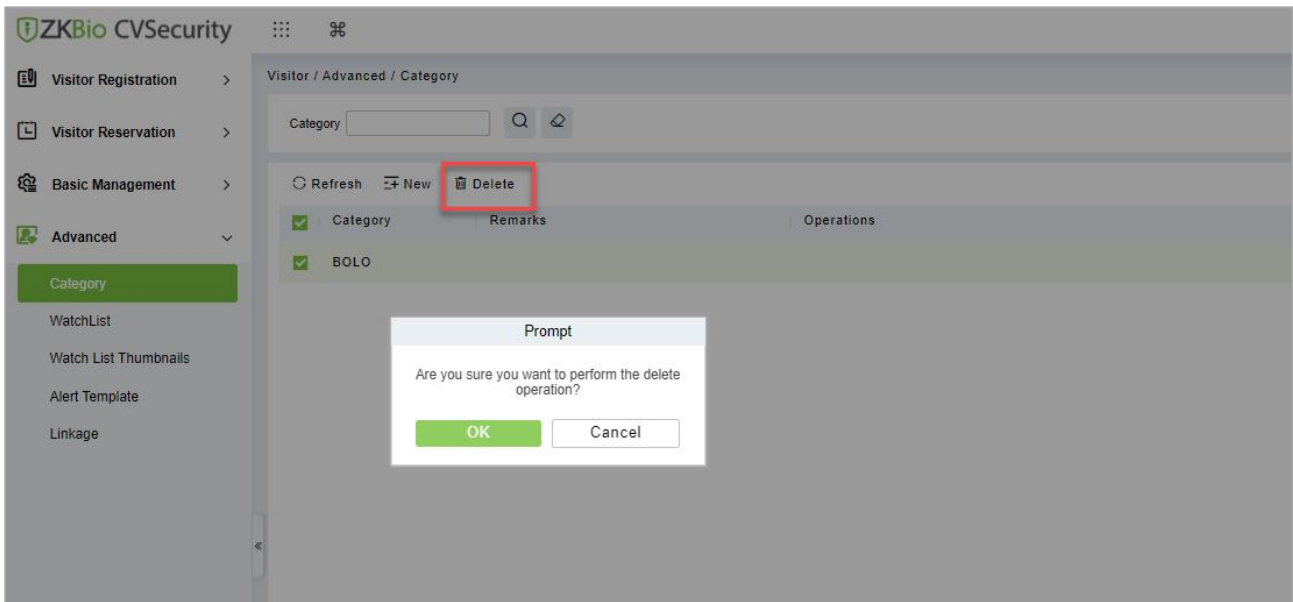
**Table 8- 15 Description of Category Parameters**

### 8.6.1.2 To Delete Category

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > Category** and select the category to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** and then click **OK** to perform the delete operation.



**Figure 8- 79 To Delete Category**

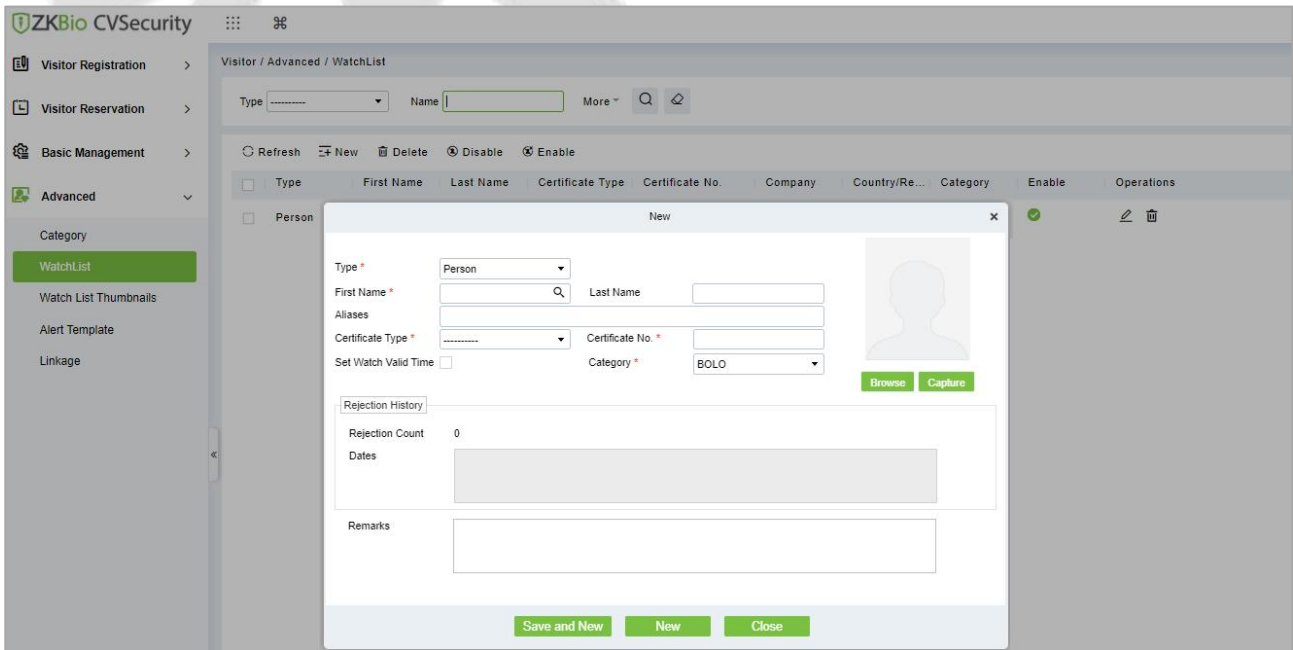
## 8.6.2 WatchList

Watch List interface displays the list of visitor information, and you can Add, Delete, Enable, or Disable the visitors.

### 8.6.2.1 To Add Visitor (New)

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > WatchList** and click **New** to add visitor.


**Step 2:** Enter the Visitor details such as Type, Full Name, Category, Certificate Type and Certificate Number.



**Figure 8- 80 Watchlist Interface**

**Step 3:** Click **Save and New** to save the details.

| Parameter | Description   |
|-----------|---|
| Type      | Select type from the drop-down list; Available types are Person, Company, |

| Parameter                  | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|
|                            | Category/Country.   |
| First and Last Name        | Select visitor name using search icon. If you selected company as type, then enter the company name.  |
| Aliases                    | You can enter the more familiar name of visitor if it needed.   |
| Certificate Type           | Passport, Driving License, ID Card, and Others are available to choose from the drop-down list. If the ID Scan OCR function is activated, visitor information will display automatically after clicking  icon. |
| Certificate No.            | The numbers and letters are legal; the max length is 20.  |
| Category                   | Select the visitor category from the drop-down list.  |
| Set Watch Time             | You can set watch time for the selected visitor by clicking on the check box. Then enter the Start Date and end Date.   |
| Rejection counts and Dates | Displays how many times the business rejected the visitor and rejected dates.   |

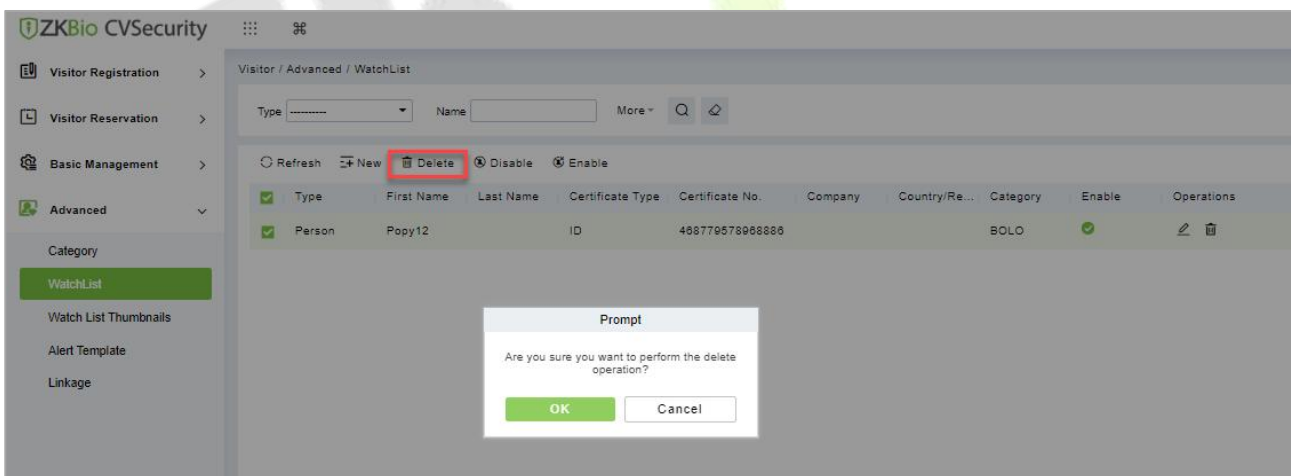
**Table 8- 16 Description of WatchList Parameters**

### 8.6.2.2 Delete WatchList

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > WatchList** and select the visitor watch list to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected watch list.



**Figure 8- 81 To Delete WatchList**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.6.2.3 Enable WatchList

In **Visitor** module Click **WatchList > Advance**, select a blocked visitor, and click **Enable**.

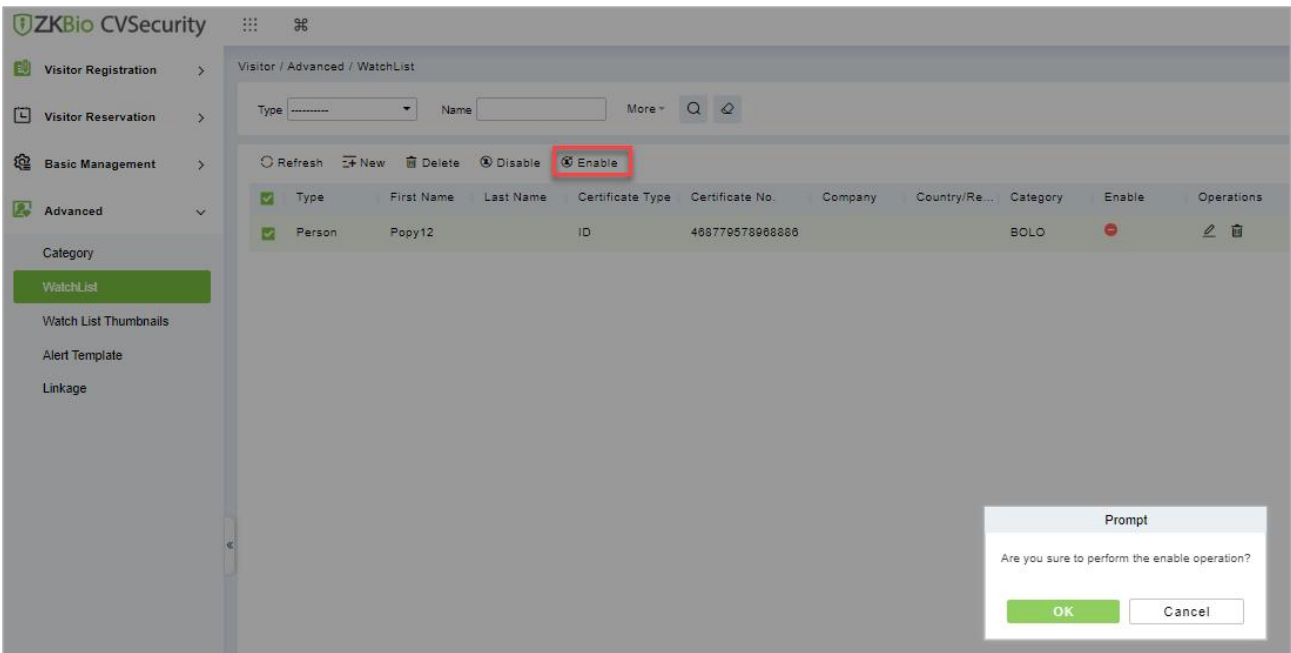


Figure 8- 82 Enabling WatchList

Click **OK** to enable the visitor. The enable entry for the corresponding selected visitor will show  indicates the visitor’s Watch list is enabled.

### 8.6.2.4 Disable WatchList

In **Visitor** module Click **WatchList** > **Advance**, select a visitor, and click **Disable**.

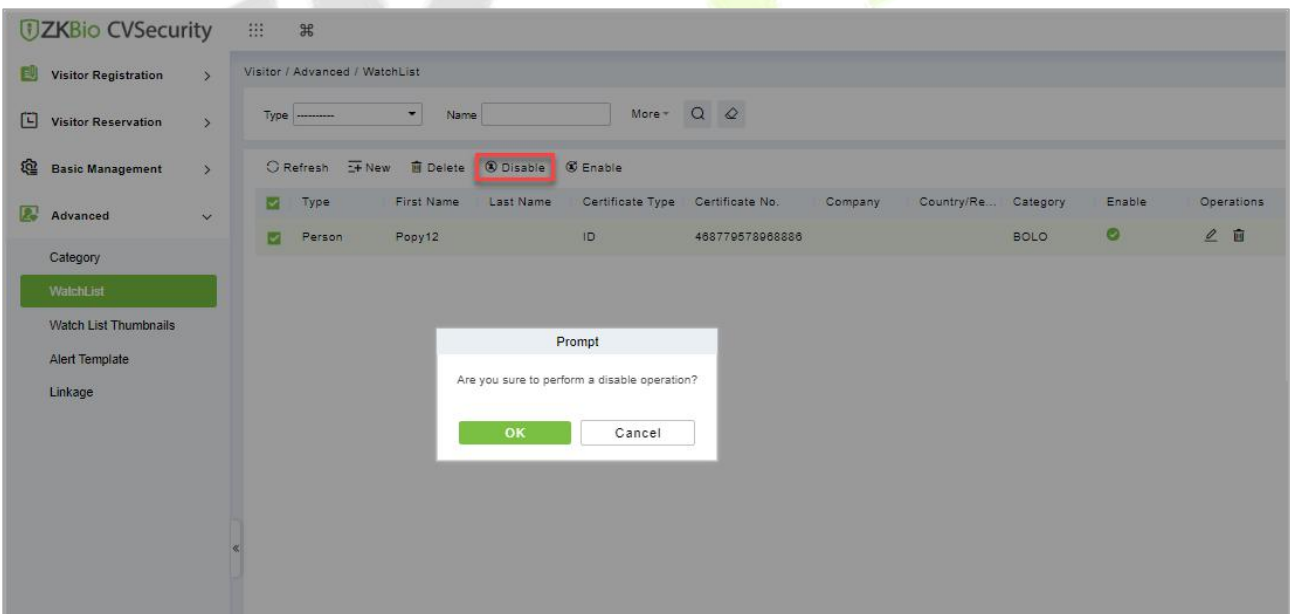



Figure 8- 83 Disabling WatchList

Click **OK** to block the visitor. The enable entry for the corresponding selected visitor will show  indicates the visitor’s Watch list is blocked.

### 8.6.3 Watch List Thumbnails

Displays the thumbnail of watchlist person’s image.

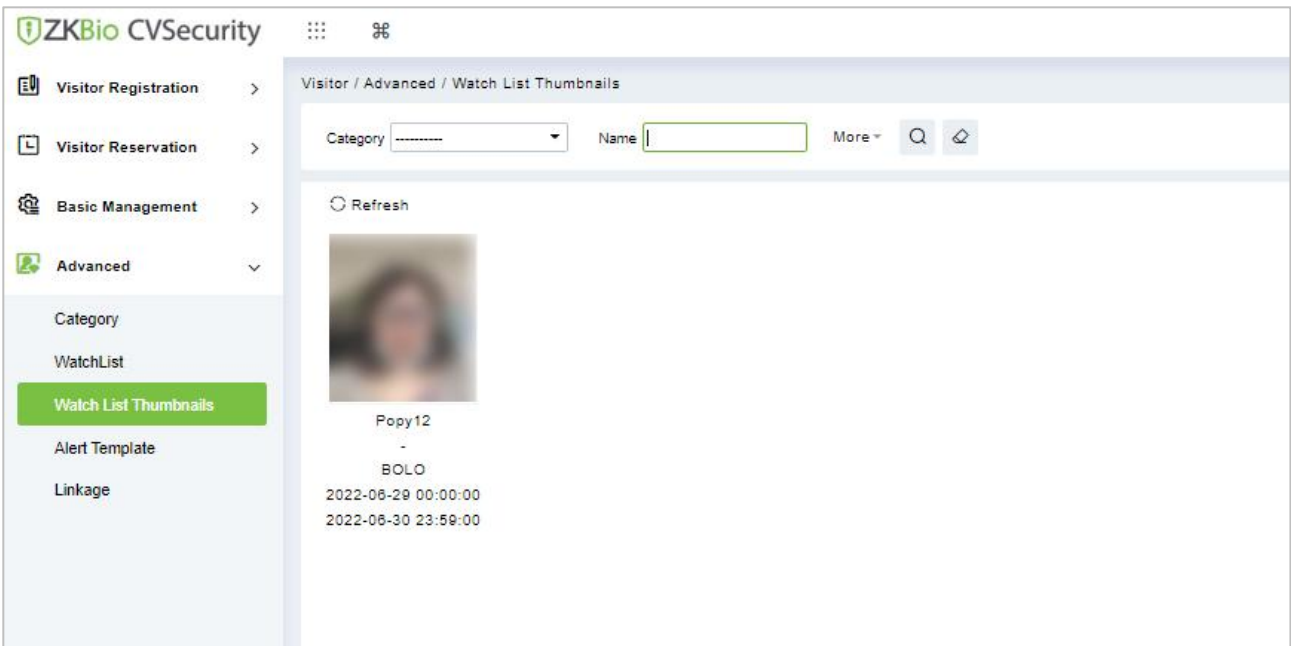


Figure 8- 84 WatchList Thumbnails Interface

### 8.6.4 Alert Template

This feature can add, edit the message templates. Different events have different template types. When a visitor reserved, checked in, checked out, reserved timeout, and visited timeout, the system will alert the visitor and the host via email or SMS.

#### 8.6.4.1 To Add Alert Template (New)

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > Alert Template** and click **New** to add Alert Template.

**Step 2:** Enter the Details such as Template Name, Template Type, Event Type and Visitor Information.

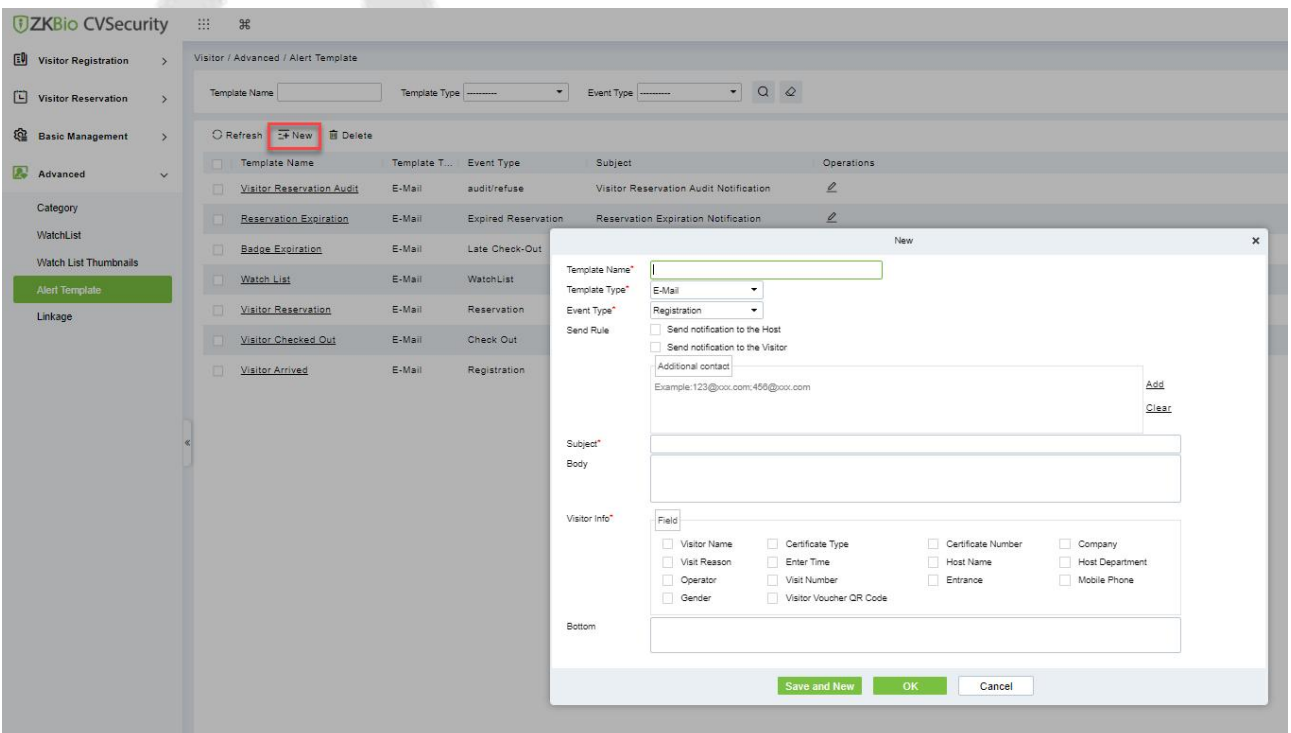


Figure 8- 85 Alert Template Interface

**Step 3:** Click **Save** and New to save the alert template.

| Parameter        | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Template Name    | Enter the Template Name  |
| Template Type    | Select template type such as E-mail or SMS.  |
| Event Type       | Select the event type from the drop-down list such as Registration, Reservation, Check-out, Watch List etc.  |
| Send Rule        | You can set the send rule by clicking on check boxes. By using this option admin can send notification to the Host as well as visitor about the events (like Registration, Check Out Timing, etc.). Admin can add additional Email in Additional Contact column. |
| Subject And Body | Enter the template's subject and message to send to the host or visitor.   |
| Visitor Info     | Admin can add visitor information like Visitor Name, Visit Reason, Certificate Type etc. by clicking on the check boxes.   |

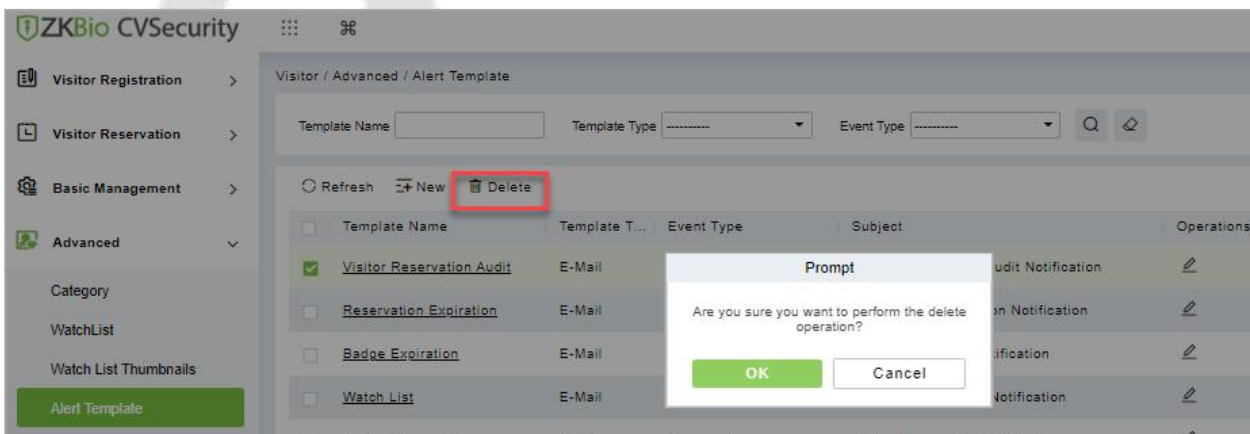
**Table 8- 17 Description of Alert Template Parameters**

### 8.6.4.2 Delete Alert Template

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor Module**, click **Advanced > Alert Template** and select the template to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected template.



**Figure 8- 86 To Delete Alert Template**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

## 8.6.5 Linkage

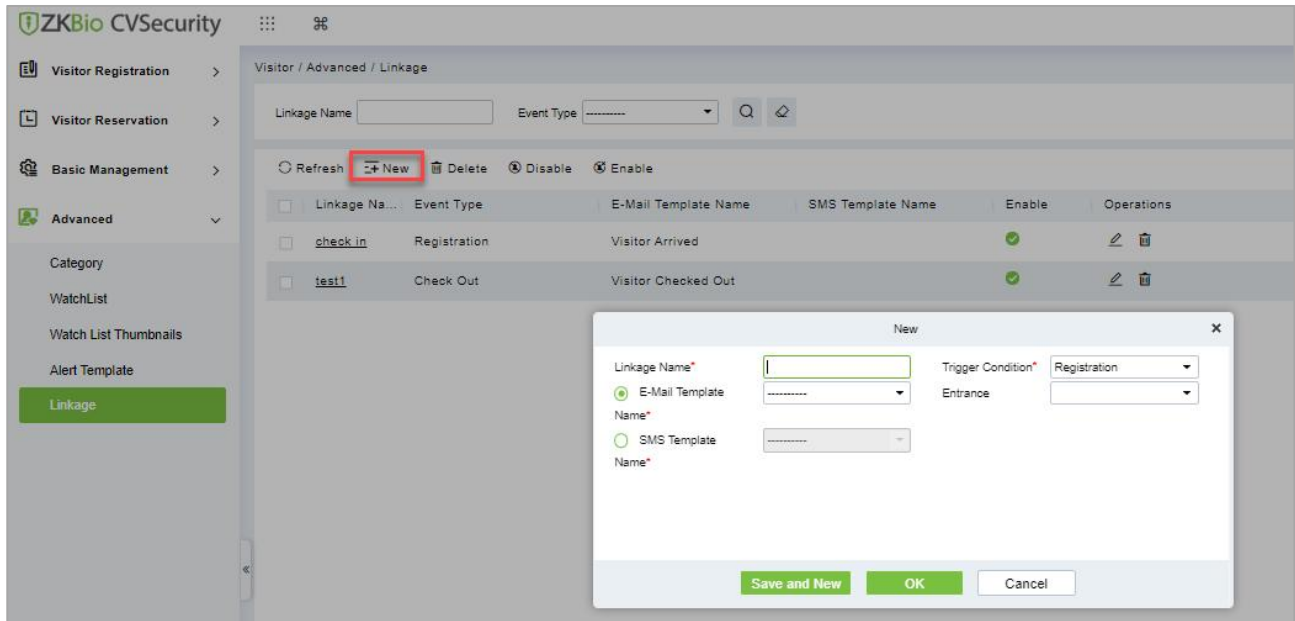
This feature allows you to create a linkage function for each event. You can select the event, entrance and the Email template.

### 8.6.5.1 To Add Linkage

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > Linkage** and click **New** to add linkage.

**Step 2:** Enter Linkage name and select Entrance, SMS Template and E-mail Template.



**Figure 8- 87 Linkage Interface**

**Step 3:** Click **Save and New** to save the details.

| Parameter         | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Linkage Name      | Enter the Linkage Name.  |
| Trigger Condition | Select trigger condition such as registration, reservation, check out etc. |
| Email Template    | Select E-mail template from drop-down list.                                |
| SMS Template      | Select SMS template from drop-down list.                                   |
| Entrance          | Select the Entry place.  |

**Table 8- 18 Description of Linkage Parameters**

**8.6.5.2 Delete Linkage**

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > Linkage** and select the linkage to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected linkage.

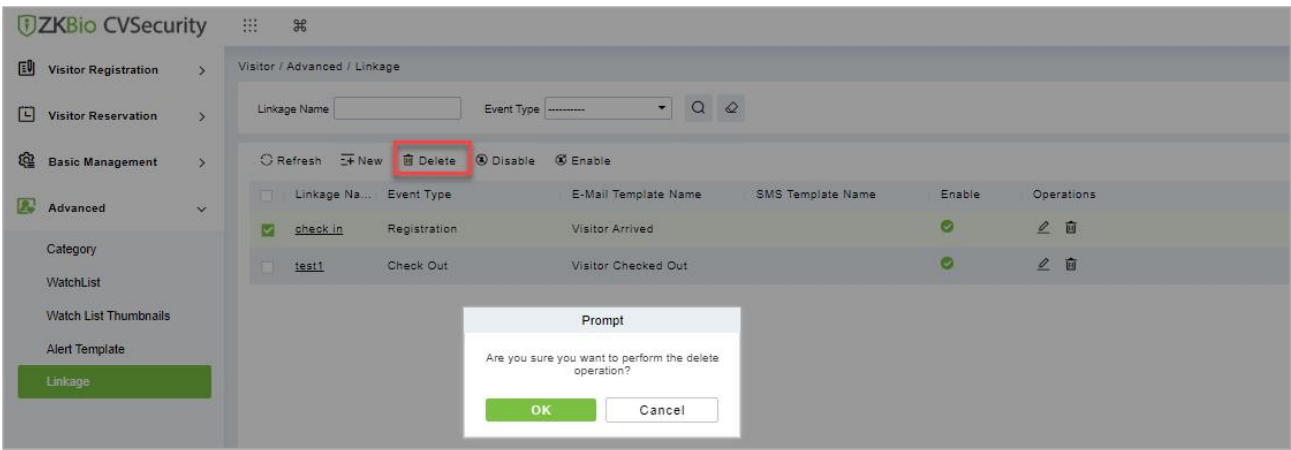


Figure 8- 88 To Delete Linkage

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 8.6.5.3 Enable Linkage

In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > Linkage**, select a blocked Linkage to enable that, and click **Enable**.

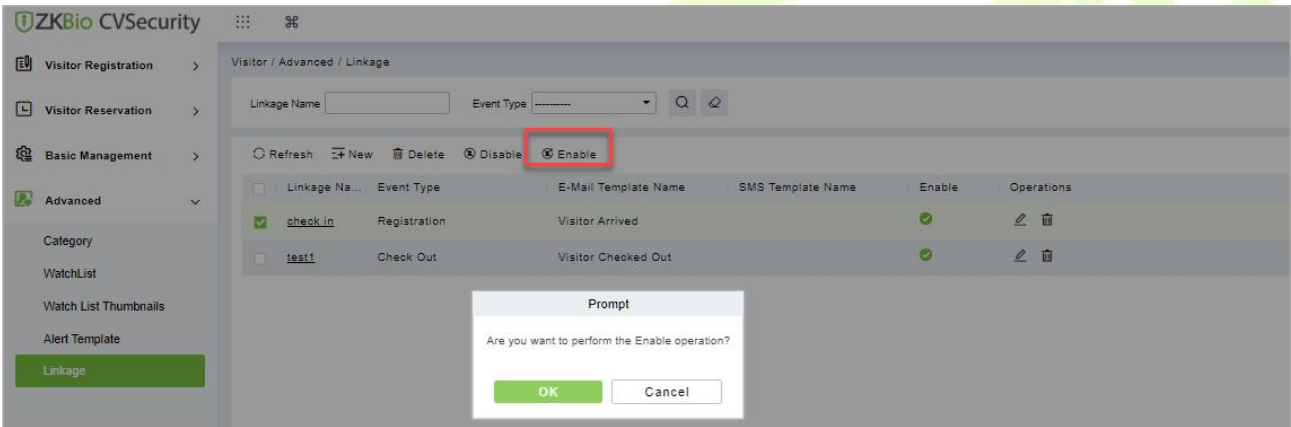



Figure 8- 89 Enabling Linkage

Click **OK** to enable the linkage. The enable entry for the corresponding selected linkage will show  indicates the linkage is enabled.

### 8.6.5.4 Disable Linkage

In the **Visitor** module, click **Advanced > Linkage**, select linkage to be disable, and click **Disable**.

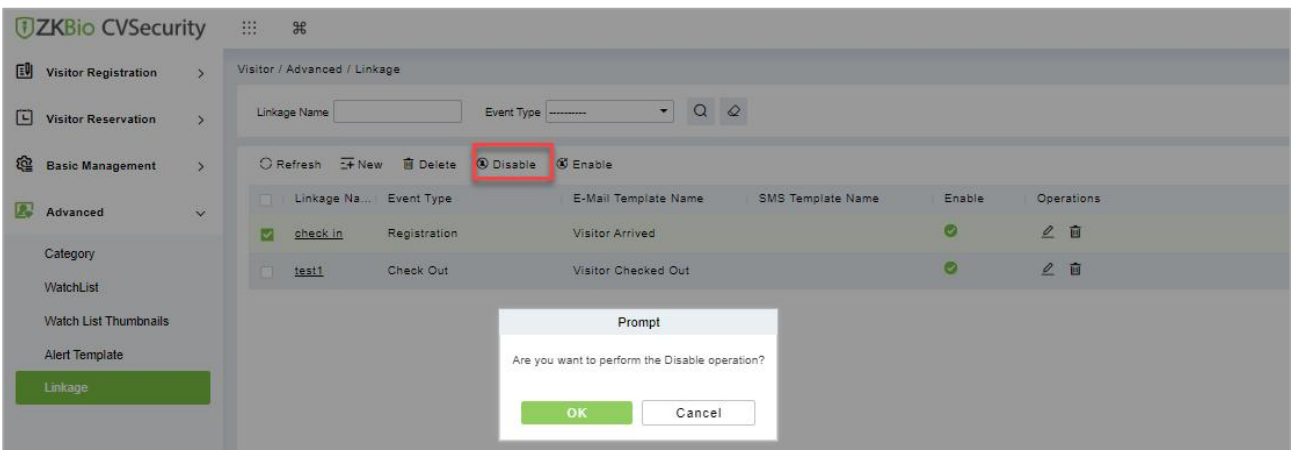



Figure 8- 90 Disabling Linkage

Click **OK** to block the linkage. The enable entry for the corresponding selected linkage will show  indicates the linkage is blocked.

## 8.7 Visitor Reports

### 8.7.1 Last Visited Location

In the **Visitor** module, click **Reports** > **Last Visited Location** to view the reports. The reports can be filtered by different conditions.

You can export the data into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure by clicking **Export** option.

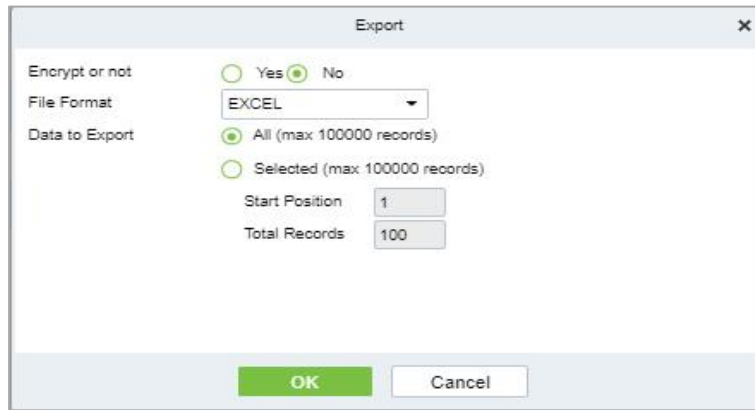


Figure 8- 91 Export Option

Select file format and data to be export, then click **OK**.

| Last Visited Location |            |           |                        |                        |               |                       |                      |                   |              |           |
|-----------------------|------------|-----------|------------------------|------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Visitor Code          | First Name | Last Name | Event Date             | Enter Time             | Event Point   | Event Description     | Reader Name          | Verification Mode | Area         | Stay Time |
| 80000020              | usuop      | sss       | 2022-07-27<br>09:42:13 | 2022-07-27<br>09:41:24 | 10.10.20.73-1 | Normal Verify<br>Open | 10.10.20.73-1-<br>In | Only Pin          | Area<br>Name | 00:00:48  |

Figure 8- 92 Last Visited Location Record

### 8.7.2 Visitor History Record

In the **Visitor Module**, click **Reports** > **Visitor History Record** to view the reports. The reports can be filtered by different conditions.

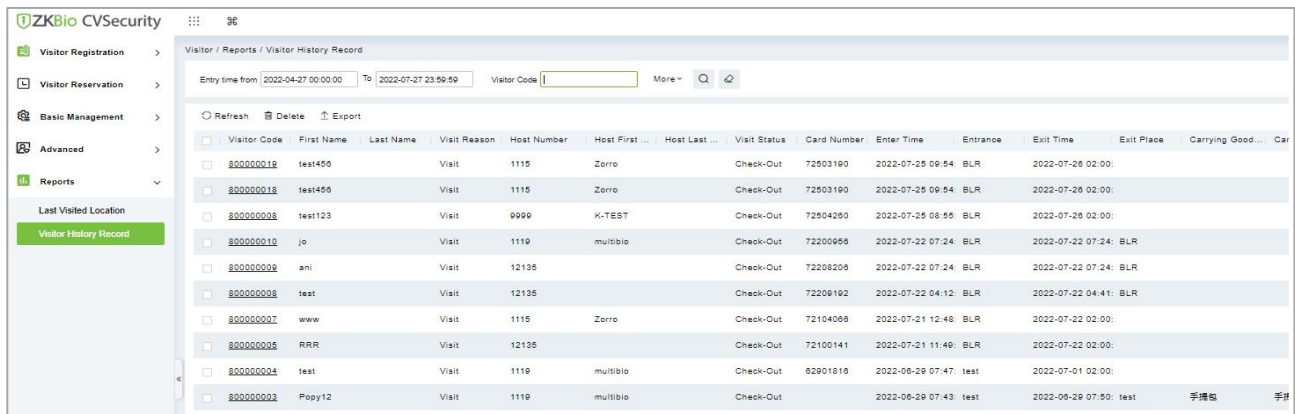
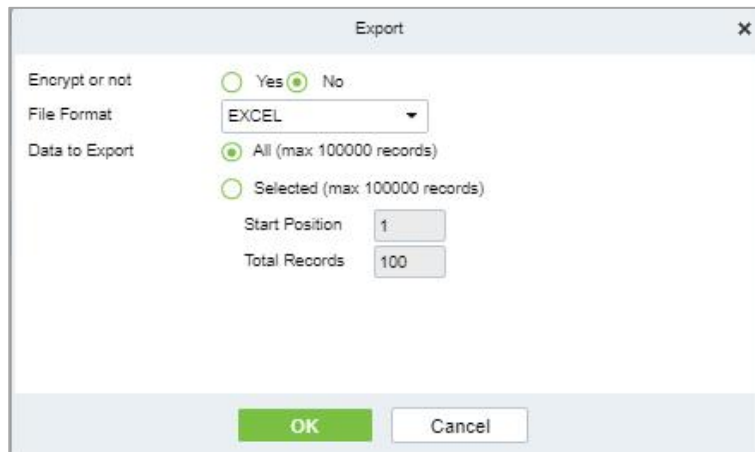


Figure 8- 93 Visitor History Record Interface

### 8.7.2.1 Export

You can export the records into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure by clicking **Export**.



**Figure 8- 94 Export Option**

Select file format and data to be export, then click **OK**.

| Visitor Code | First Name | Last Name | Visit Reason | Host Number | Host First Name | Host Last Name | Visit Status | Card Number | Enter Time          | Entrance | Exit Time           | Exit Place | Carrying Goods In | Carrying Goods Out | Remarks on health | City visited in past 14 days | Body Temperature(°C/°F) | Any symptoms in the last 14 days | Any exposure to suspected cases |
|--------------|------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------------|----------|---------------------|------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 800000019    | test456    |           | Visit        | 1115        | Zorro           |                | Check-Out    | 72503190    | 2022-07-25 09:54:03 | BLR      | 2022-07-26 02:00:02 |            |                   |                    |                   |                              |                         |                                  |                                 |
| 800000018    | test456    |           | Visit        | 1115        | Zorro           |                | Check-Out    | 72503190    | 2022-07-25 09:54:01 | BLR      | 2022-07-26 02:00:02 |            |                   |                    |                   |                              |                         |                                  |                                 |
| 800000008    | test123    |           | Visit        | 9999        | K-TEST          |                | Check-Out    | 72504260    | 2022-07-25 08:55:34 | BLR      | 2022-07-26 02:00:02 |            |                   |                    |                   |                              |                         |                                  |                                 |
| 800000010    | jo         |           | Visit        | 1119        | multibio        |                | Check-Out    | 72200956    | 2022-07-22 07:24:36 | BLR      | 2022-07-22 07:24:49 | BLR        |                   |                    |                   |                              |                         |                                  |                                 |
| 800000009    | ani        |           | Visit        | 12135       |                 |                | Check-Out    | 72208206    | 2022-07-22 07:24:18 | BLR      | 2022-07-22 07:24:49 | BLR        |                   |                    |                   |                              |                         |                                  |                                 |
| 800000008    | test       |           | Visit        | 12135       |                 |                | Check-Out    | 72209192    | 2022-07-22 04:12:48 | BLR      | 2022-07-22 04:41:36 | BLR        |                   |                    |                   |                              |                         |                                  |                                 |

**Figure 8- 95 Visitor History Record**

### 8.7.2.2 Delete Visitor History

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Visitor** module, click **Reports > Visitor History Record** and select the visitor’s history to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the visitor history.

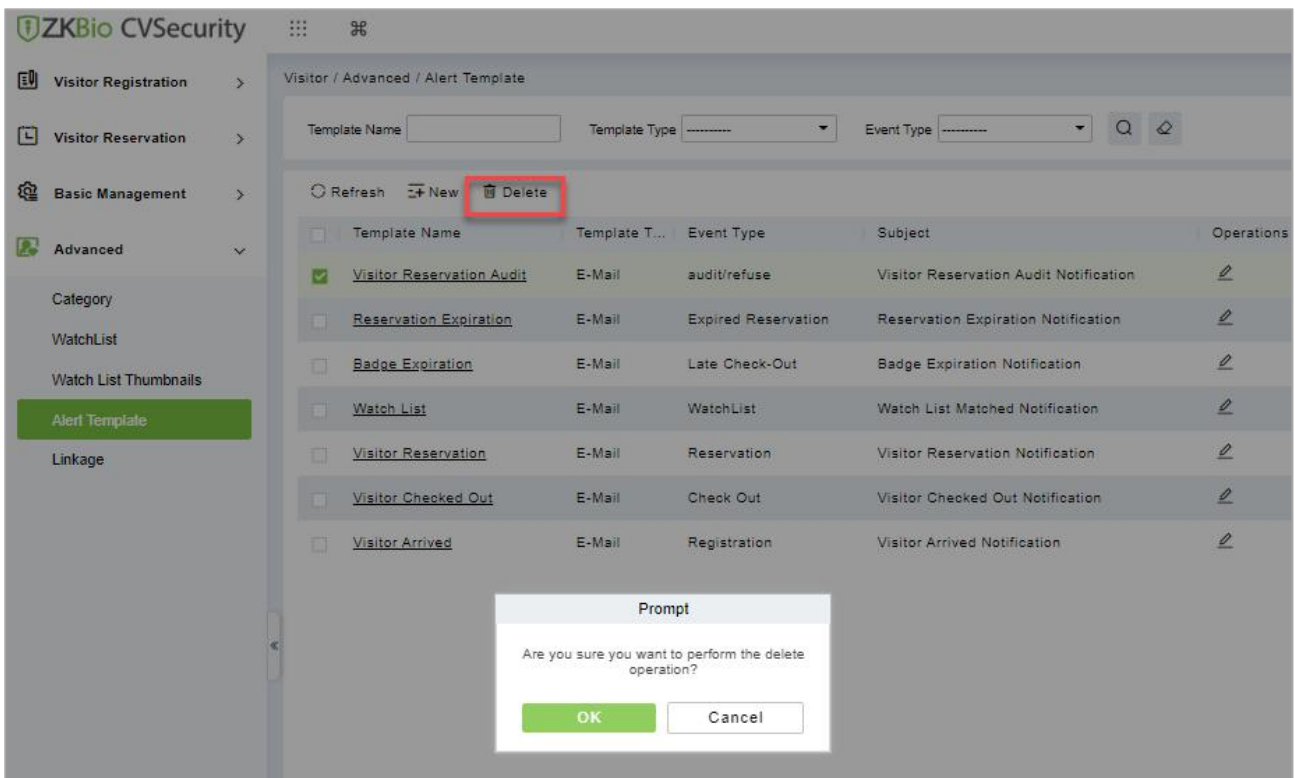
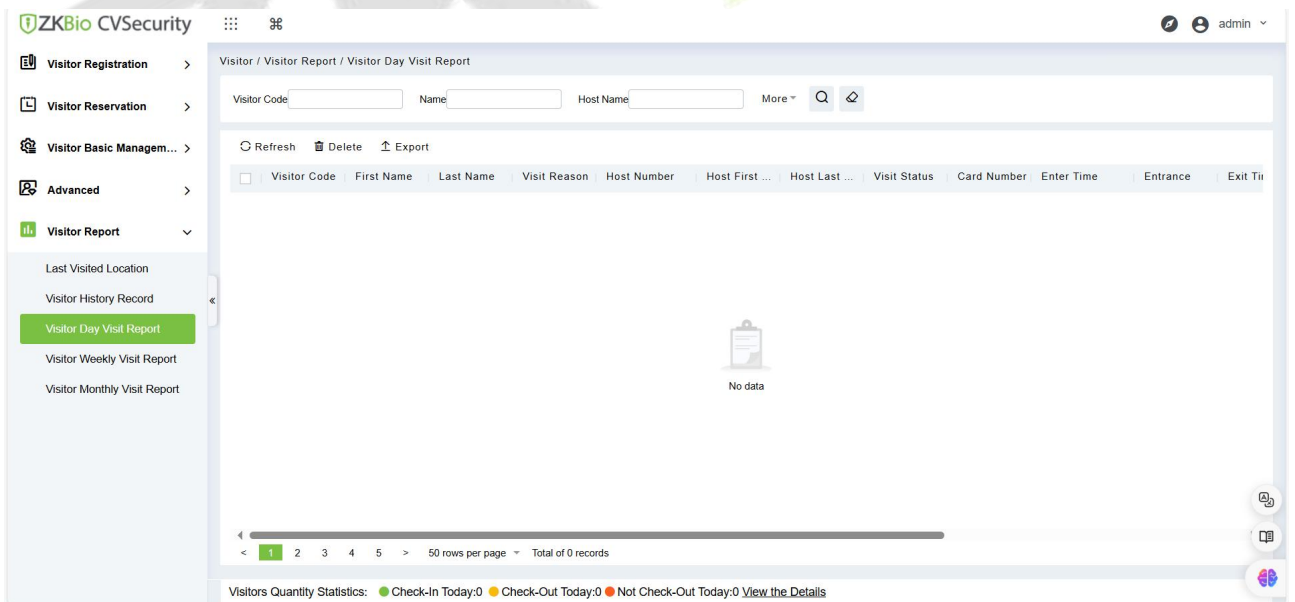


Figure 8- 96 To Delete Alert Template

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

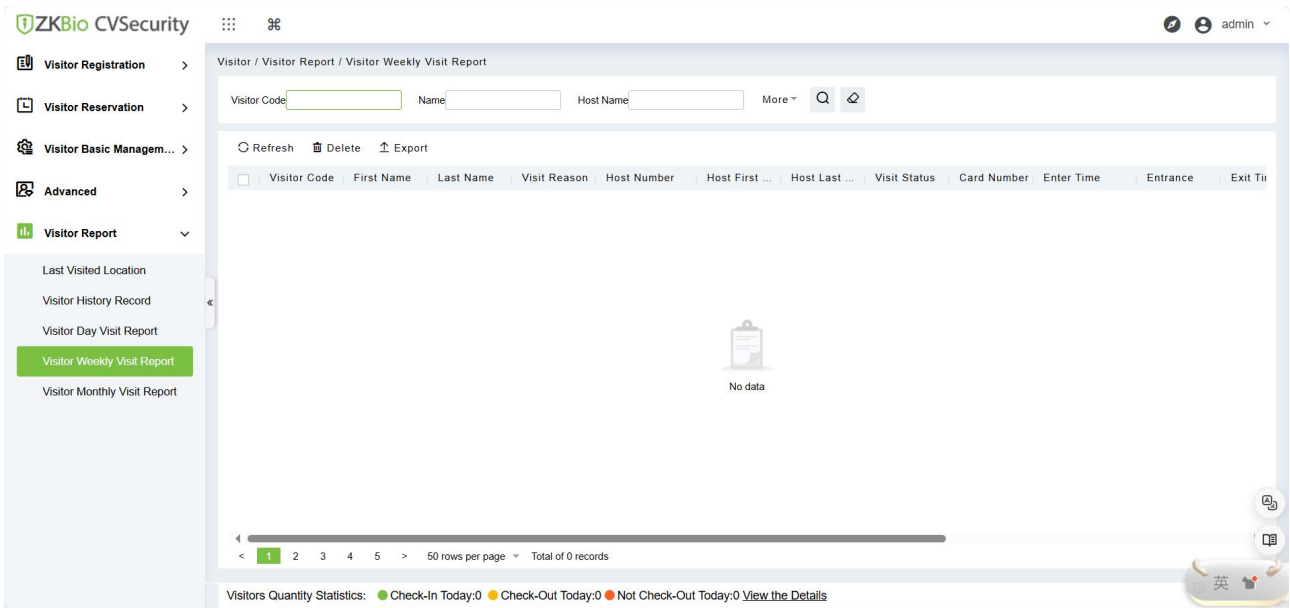
### 8.7.3 Visitor Daily Visit Report

View and export today's visitor visit history.



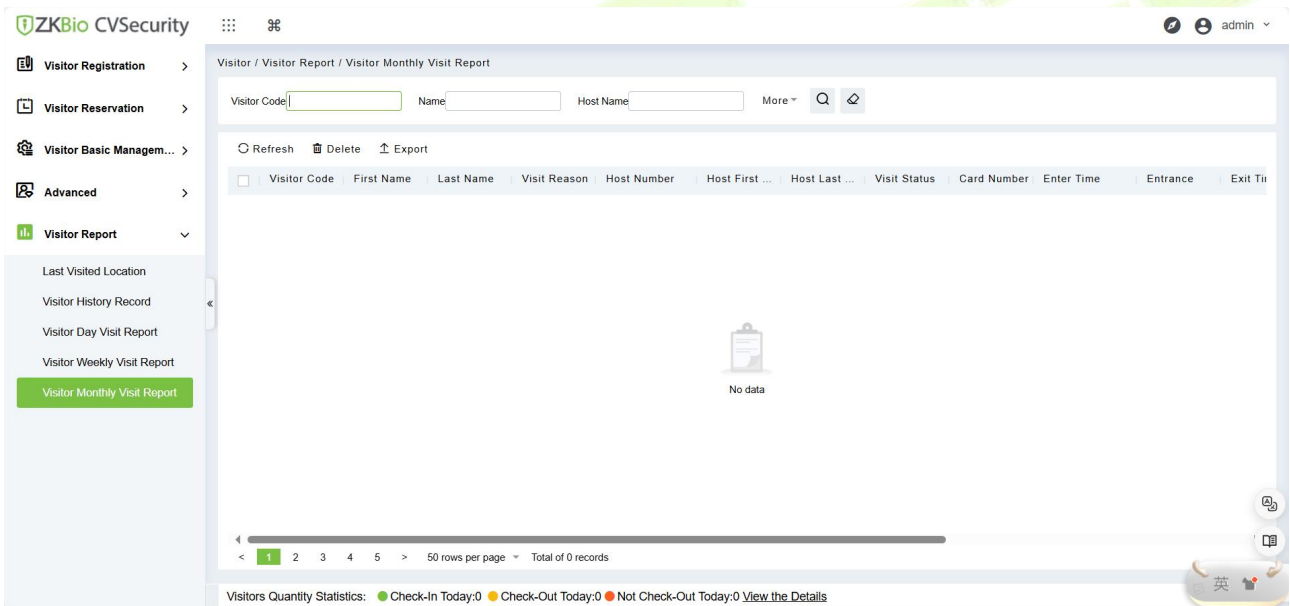
### 8.7.4 Visitor Weekly Visit Report

View and export this week's visitor visit history.



### 8.7.5 Visitor Monthly Visit Report

View and export this monthly's visitor visit history.



## 9 Space Management

The ZKBio CVSecurity Space Management Module is a comprehensive space management platform designed to help users efficiently manage space resources, including meeting rooms, Rest rooms, rehearsal rooms, etc. Through this module, users can manage devices, manage spaces, manage reservations, and view statistical reports, as well as make space reservations and manage them through the APP.

The ZKBio CVSecurity Space Management Module is a comprehensive platform for efficiently managing space resources, such as meeting rooms, restrooms, and rehearsal spaces. It allows users to manage devices, spaces, reservations, and view reports, as well as make and manage reservations via the app.

### 9.1 Device Management

The Device Management module allows user can manage devices effectively.

The screenshot displays the 'Device Management' interface within the ZKBio CVSecurity application. The main content area shows a table of devices with the following data:

| Device Name    | Serial Number | Area Name | IP Address  | Status  | Device Model  | Firmware Version | Operations      |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 10.8.51.2      | CS173120006   | Area Name | 10.8.51.2   | Offline | FaceKiosk-H10 | 2.4.51           | [Edit] [Delete] |
| 10.8.16.252-az | 500152110018  | Area Name | 10.8.16.252 | Offline | FaceKiosk-H10 | 2.4.51           | [Edit] [Delete] |

The interface also features a sidebar with navigation options: Space Management, Reservation Management, and Statistics Report. The top navigation bar includes the ZKBio CVSecurity logo and a user profile dropdown for 'admin'.

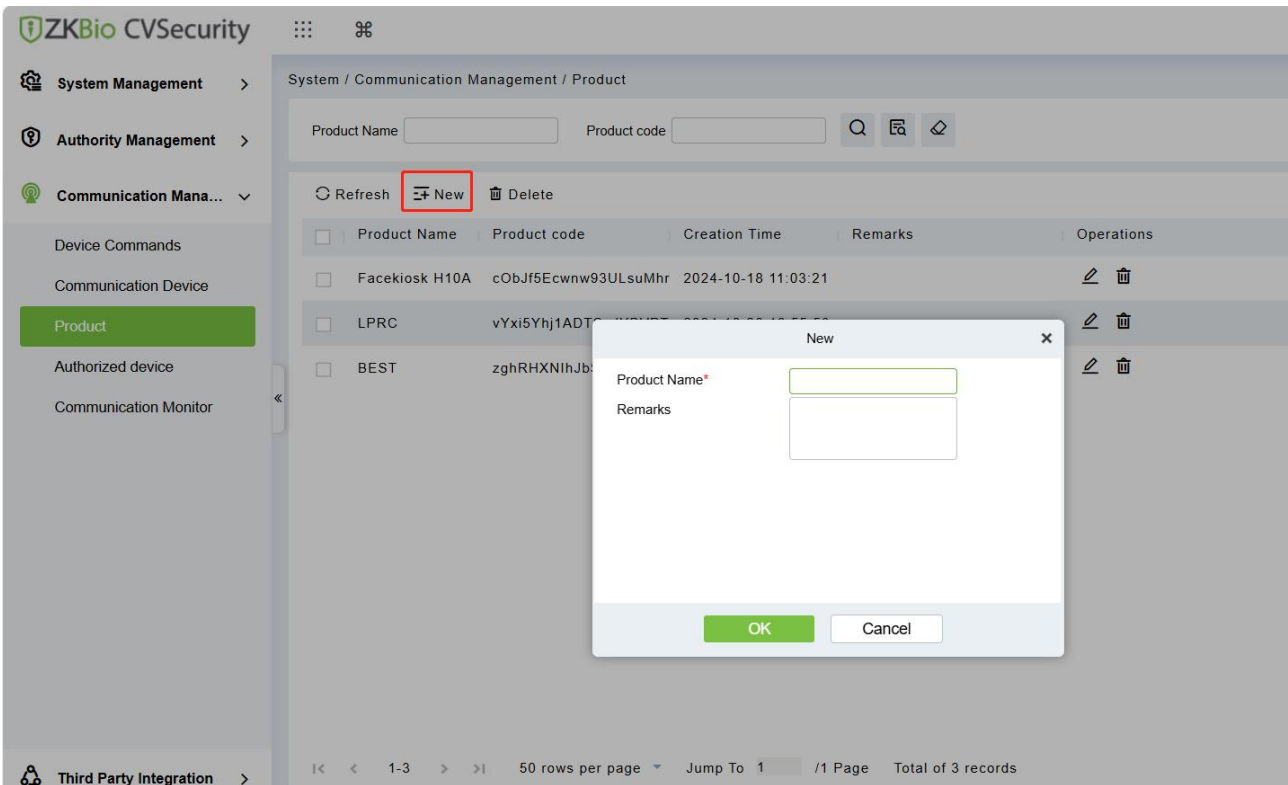
#### 9.1.1 Search and Add Device

The module enables the search and registration of Facekiosk-H10A devices.

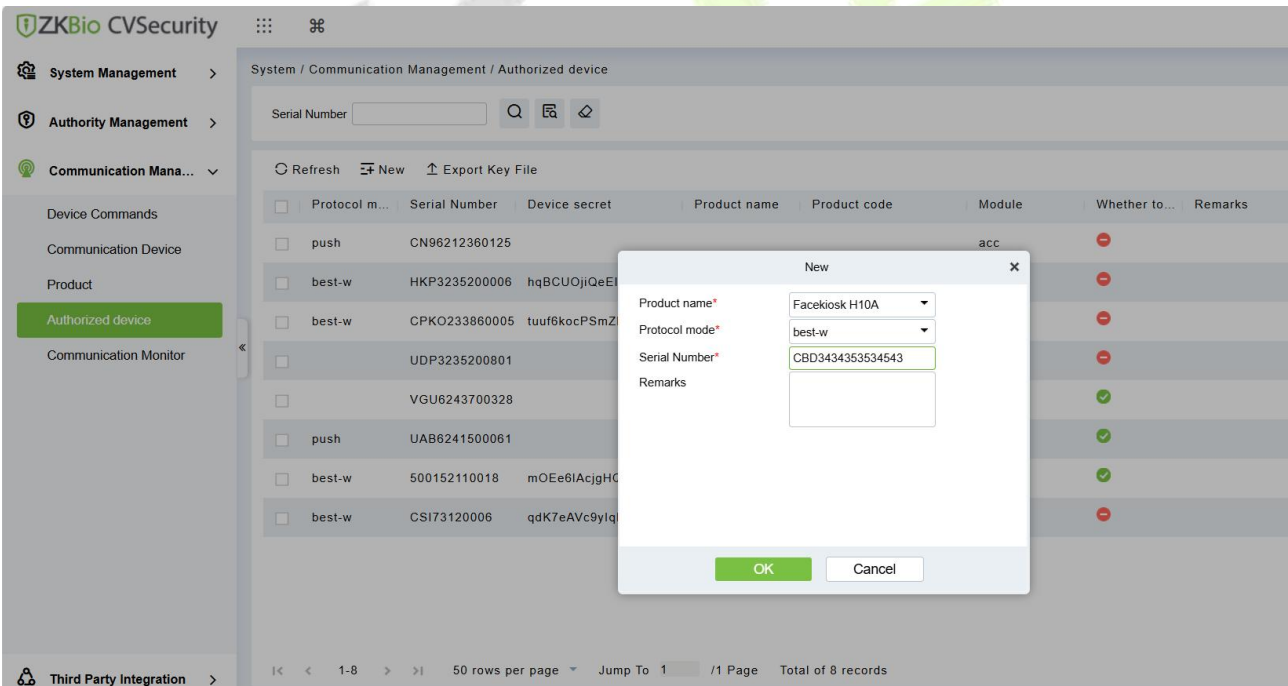
##### Prerequisites:

- 1) Facekiosk-H10A devices. (Device version requirement: ZKBio Meet Version 2.4.51 or higher)
- 2) **Device Authorization:** Before use, user must authorize the Facekiosk-H10A device. Follow these steps to complete the authorization process:

Step 1: Click on **System -> Communication Management -> Product menu** and click **New** to add a new product type, you can customize the product name.



Step2: Click on System -> Communication Management -> Authorized Device ,and click New to authorized device.



Enter the required information and then click **OK** to finish authorizing the device.

**Product Name:** Select the product type you have defined.

**Product Mode:** Choose BEST-W.

**Serial Number:** Enter the serial number of the device.

Step 3: For Facekiosk H10A, go to **Communication Setting -> Cloud Server Setting** to configure the ZKBio CVSecurity server address. Please ensure that the **Domain Name** is enabled, and then enter the correct ZKBio CVSecurity server address in the format shown in the figure below.

< Cloud Server Setting

Please enter server type ZKBioSecurity >

Domain Name Server 🟢

Please enter server address https://10.8.14.114:8088 ✎

Once the prerequisites are met, you can proceed to search for and add devices.

Go to **Space Management -> Device Management -> Device**, click Search, and after the search, click Add Device to add the device to your system.

ZKBio CVSecurity

Device Management

Device

Search

Total Progress  100% Searched devices count:1  
Number of devices added:1

IP Address  Device Type  Serial Number

| IP Address  | MAC Address       | Subnet Mask   | Gateway Add... | Serial Number | Device Type   | Set Server | Operations                 |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|------------|----------------------------|
| 10.8.53.104 | 8C:FC:A0:07:B4:33 | 255.255.255.0 | 10.8.53.254    | 500152110018  | FaceKiosk-H10 |            | This device has been added |

⚠ The current system communication port is 8088, please make sure the device is set correctly.

Close

## 9.1.2 Delete

Click to delete the device.

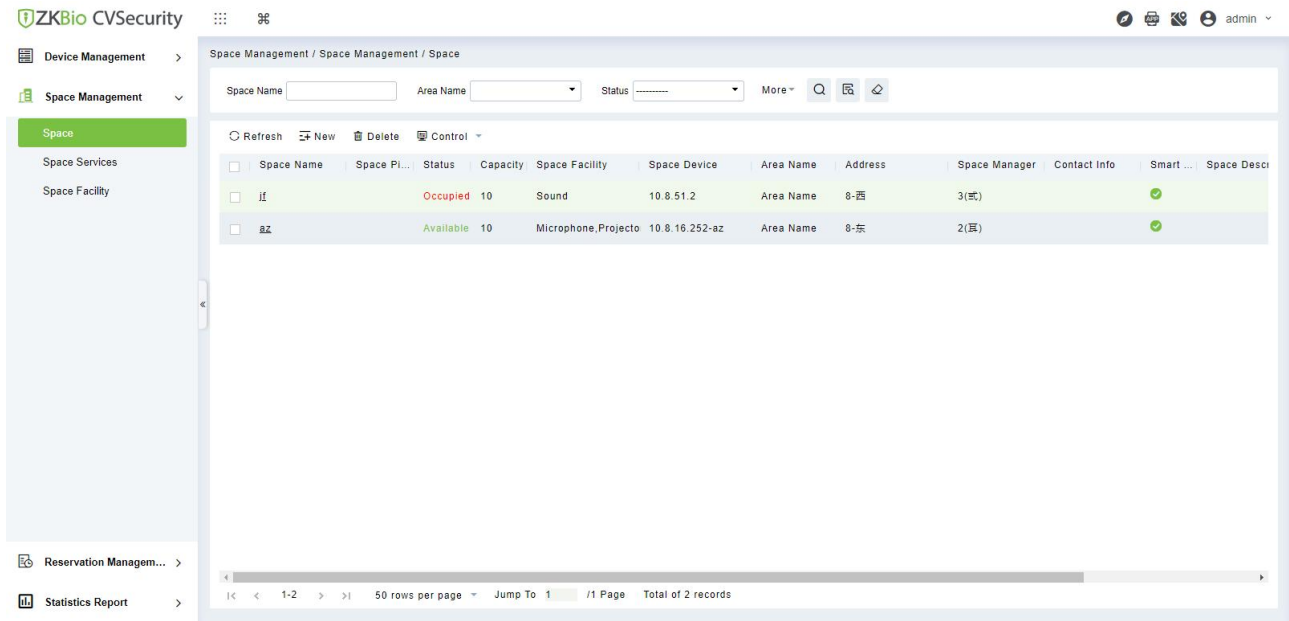
## 9.1.3 Control

Includes operations such as Synchronize Time, Reboot Device, and Clear Information.

## 9.2 Space Management

### 9.2.1 Space

Click on the **Space Management > Space**, you can start creating spaces and space usage rules.



### 9.2.1.1 Add Space

Click **[Space Management]** > **[Space]** > **[+New]** to add new devices to the Space Management Module.

New ✕

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Space Name*              | <input type="text" value="F601"/>   |
| Space Picture            | <span style="background-color: #66bb6a; color: white; padding: 2px 5px;">Browse</span> Not Uploaded |
| Capacity*                | <input type="text" value="50"/>   |
| Space Facility           | <input type="text" value="Projector,Electronic ..."/>   |
| Area*                    | <input type="text" value="Tower A Gate"/>   |
| Space Device*            | <input type="text"/>  |
| Address                  | <input type="text" value="No.188 Street,Dongguan C"/>   |
| Space Manager*           | <input type="text" value="678(Poppy Test)"/>  |
| Contact Info             | <input type="text" value="1354524531264"/>  |
| Space Description        | Space Rule:<br>1.xxxxxxxxxx<br>2.xxxxxxx<br>3.any problem ,please                                   |
| Retention Time (Minutes) | <input type="text" value="15 Minutes"/>   |
| Smart Space              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |

⚠ If this space has been configured with smart IoT devices and needs to support the scenario-linkage function, you can set it as a smart space for quick identification and screening.

OK
Cancel

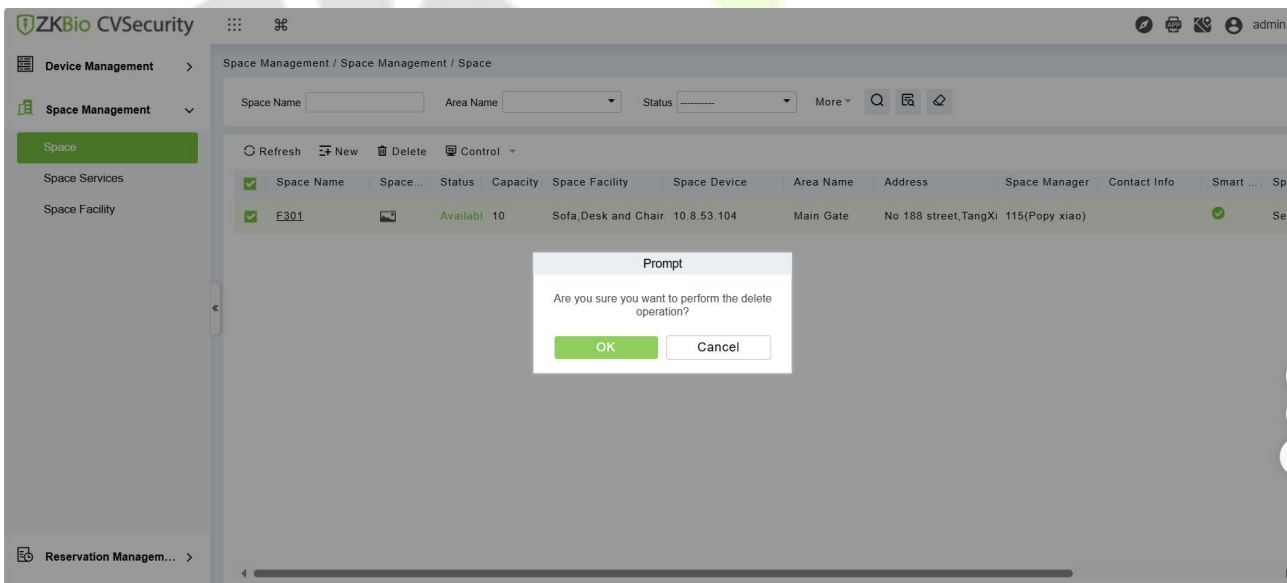
Fields are as follows:

| Parameter  | Description                 |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| Space Name | Enter the name of the Space |

| Parameter           | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Space Picture       | Upload the Image of the Space   |
| Capacity            | Define the capacity of the space to indicate the number of people it can accommodate, facilitating filtering during the reservation process.  |
| Space Facility      | List the amenities available in the space to provide information that can aid in the reservation process.   |
| Area                | Choose the area, as the area is linked to the space.  |
| Space Device        | Select the device to be associated with the space within the space management module.   |
| Address             | Address of the Space  |
| Space Manager       | Person in Charge of the Space   |
| Contact Info        | Fill in the contact information of the space manager.   |
| Space Description   | Description of the Space  |
| Retention (Minutes) | Time<br>Reservation Retention Time; for example, if a meeting is scheduled from 9:00-12:00 and the retention period is set to 30 minutes, the system will automatically end the meeting if no one checks in after 9:30. |
| Smart Space         | You can choose whether to enable Smart Spaces, which can be used for quick filtering during the reservation process.  |

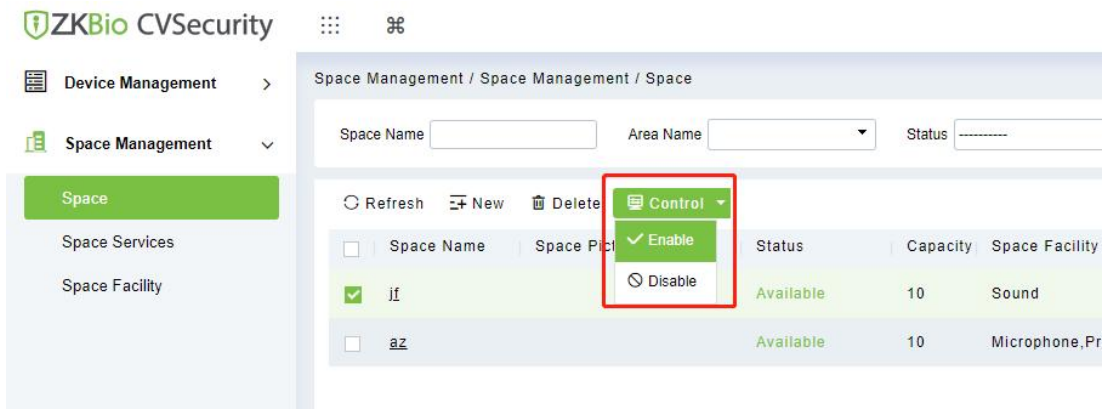
### 9.2.1.2 Delete

To delete a selected space, click **[Space Management] > [Space] > [Delete]**.



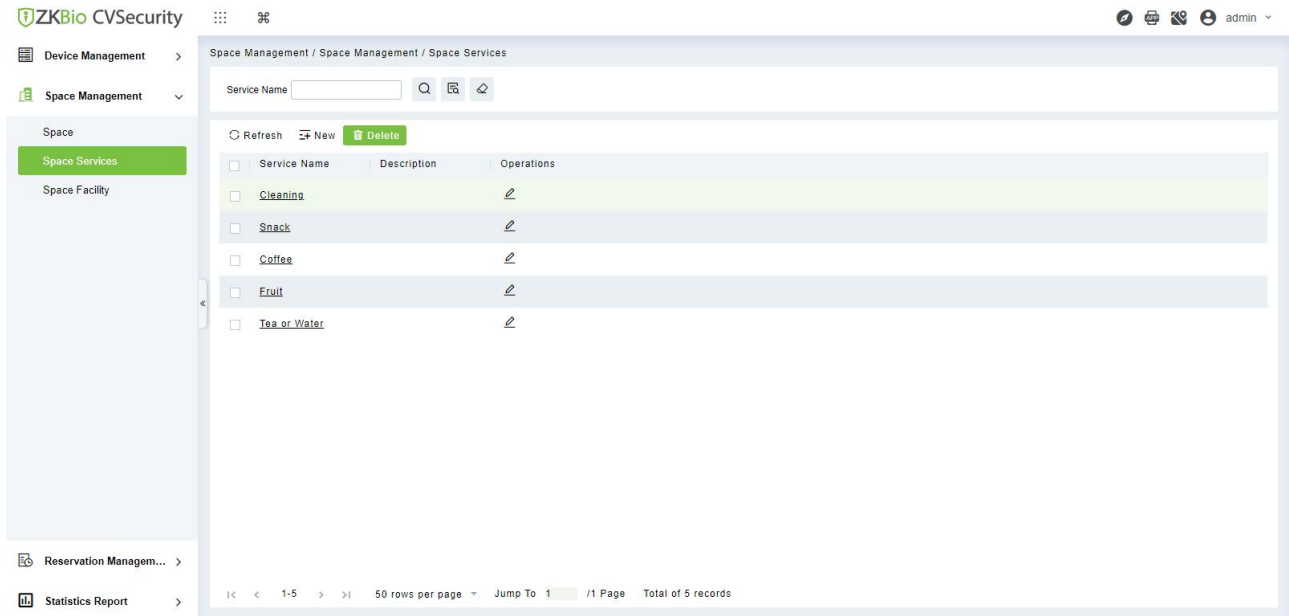
### 9.2.1.3 Control

First, select the space, then, choose to either enable it, setting the status to **[Available]**, or disable it, which will update the status to **[Disabled]**.

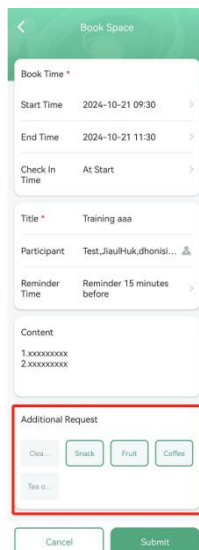


### 9.2.2 Space Services

Space Services allow for defining the scope of services within a space, covering a variety of standard services such as cleaning, tea, coffee, and more. Additionally, customized services can be added to meet the specific needs of the space.

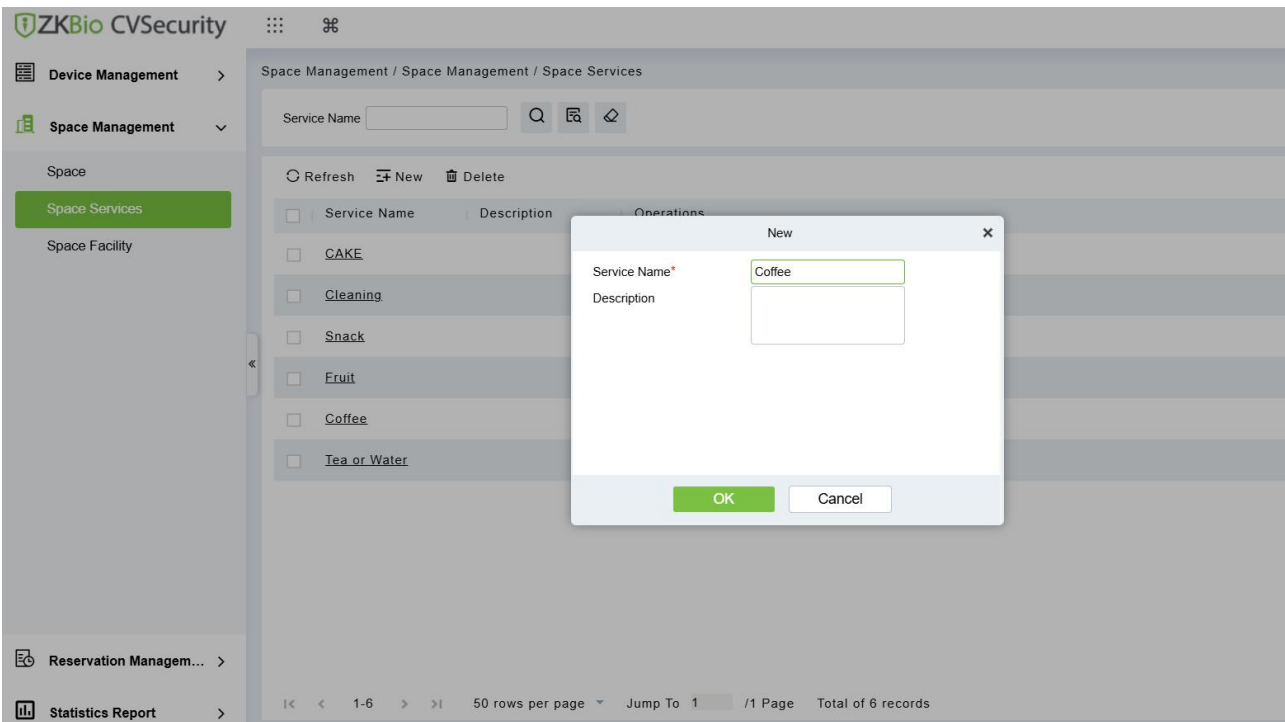


After services are defined, personnel can select needed services when booking a space through the app, as shown in the figure below.



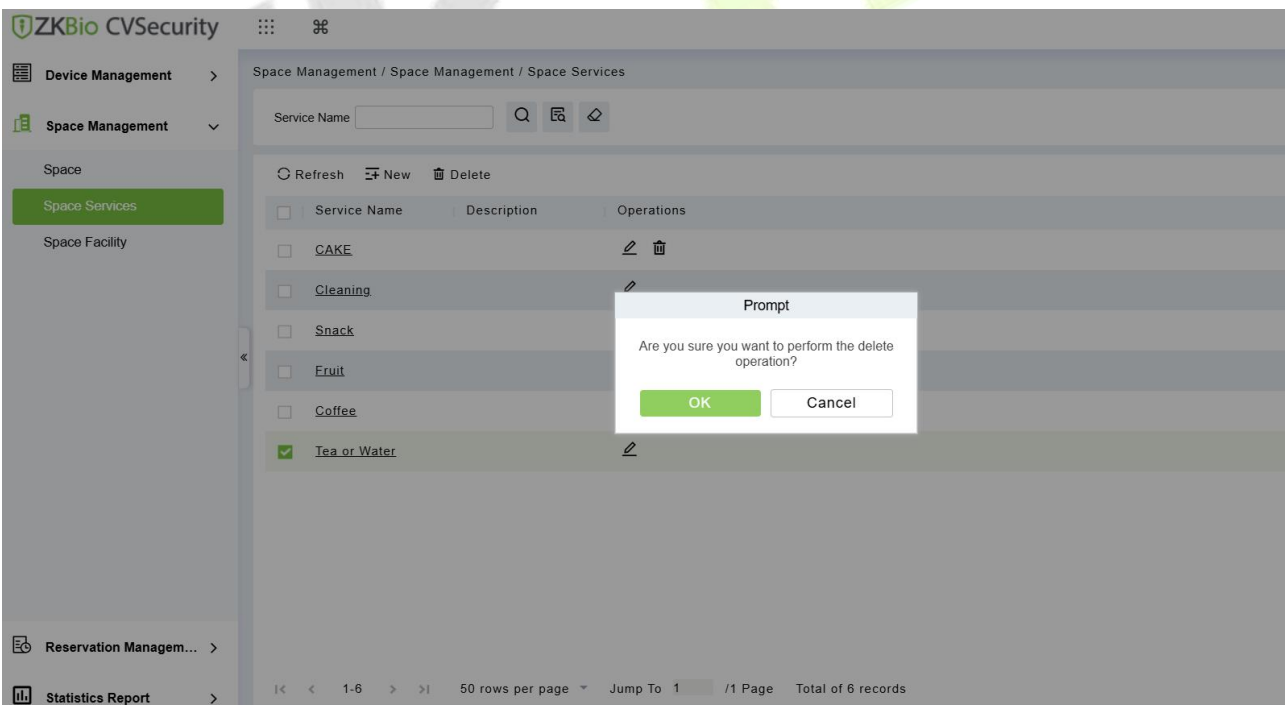
● New

Click [**Space Management**] > [**Space Service**] > [**+New**] to add a new customized service.



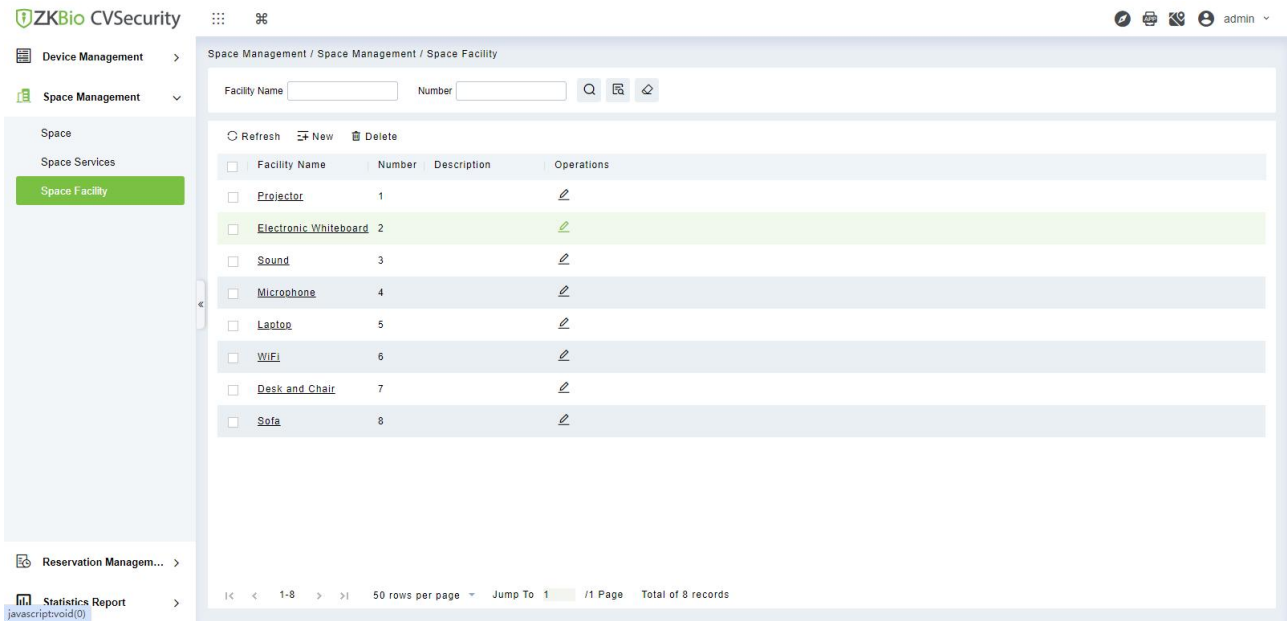
● Delete

Click [**Space Management**] > [**Space Service**] > [**Delete**] to delete added service.



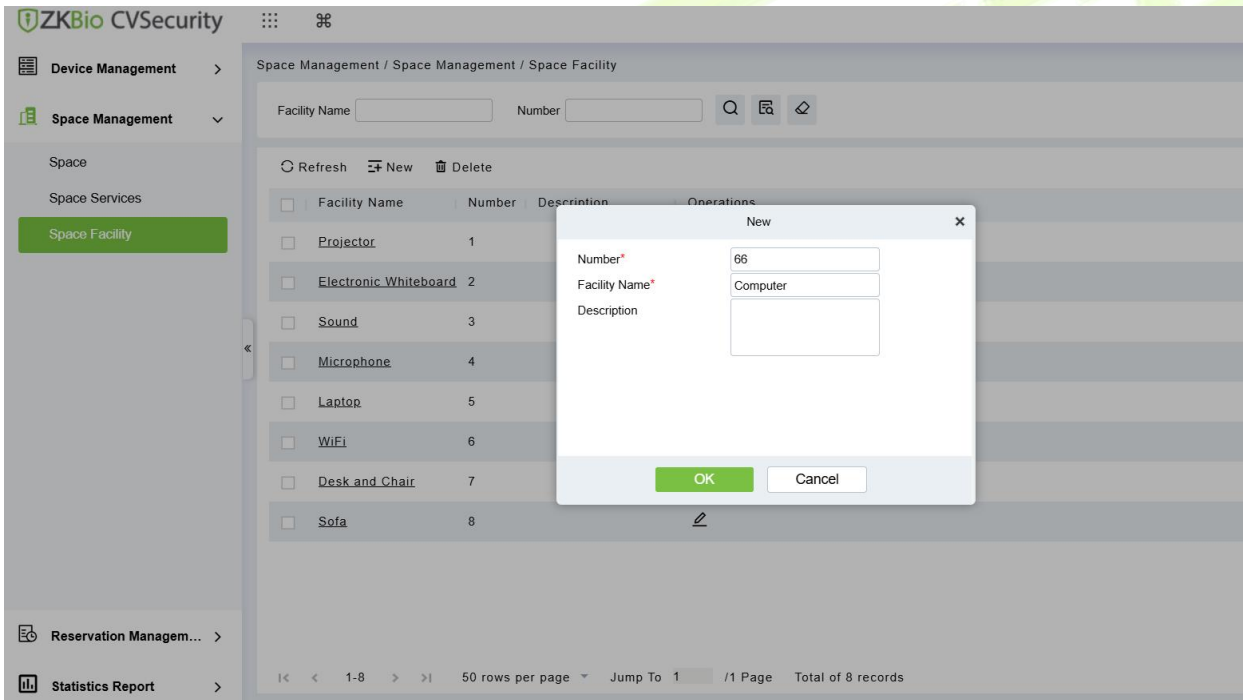
### 9.2.3 Space Facility

Manage the service facilities within the space, with the flexibility to customize and add additional facilities as needed. This capability enables a tailored approach to space management, ensuring that the space is equipped with the precise services and amenities required to accommodate a diverse range of events and occupant needs.



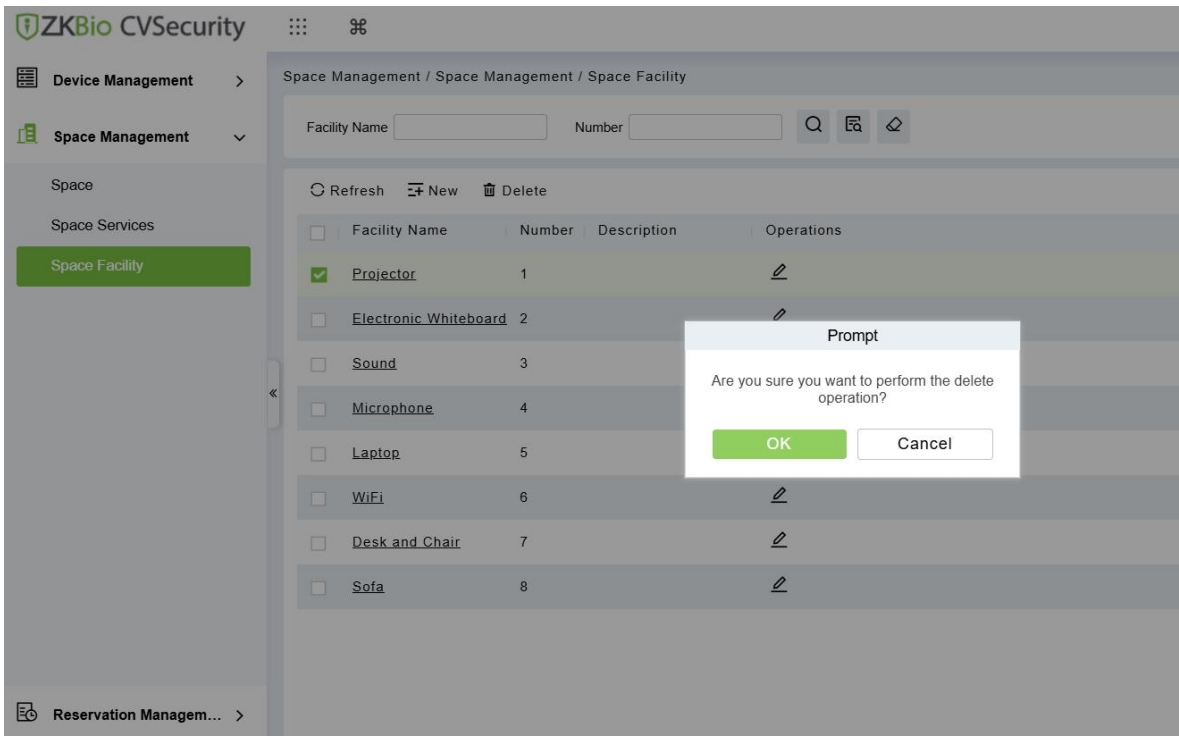
● Add New

Click **[Space Management]** > **[Space Facility]** > **[+New]** to add a new space facility.



● Delete

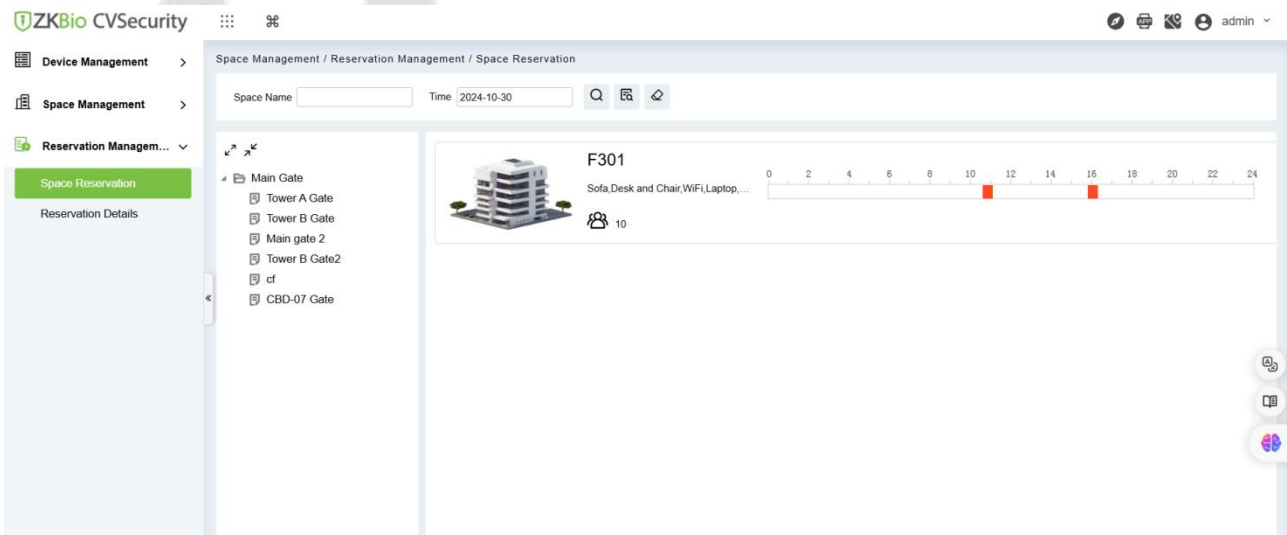
Click **[Space Management]** > **[Space Facility]** > **[Delete]** to delete added space facility.



## 9.3 Reservation Management

### 9.3.1 Space Reservation

The Space Reservation module provides an intuitive interface displaying the occupancy status of all spaces for the current day, allowing users to filter by area or search for specific spaces by name. This module enables seamless reservation operations, including selecting the desired date and time, adding the applicant and participants, choosing from a range of space services, and setting up notifications to stay informed about upcoming reservations.



Administrators can click on the space card to enter the space reservation interface.

Space Reservation ✕

Reservation Details

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Applicant's Name* <input type="text" value="99(molins lastName)"/> | Applicant's Email* <input type="text" value="prueba1@molins.es"/> |
| Start Time* <input type="text" value="2024-10-31 13:51:00"/>       | End Time* <input type="text" value="2024-11-01 13:51:00"/>        |
| Start Sign-in Time* <input type="text" value="At Start"/>          |   |
| Space Name* <input type="text" value="F301"/>                      |   |
| Subject* <input type="text" value="Testing Meeting1"/>             |   |
| Content <input type="text" value="XXXXXXXXXXXX"/>                  |   |

Participants

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Person's Name* <input type="text" value="99(molins lastName) x 1234567891234567(max lastName) x 5556(MS Dhoni) x"/> | ✚ |
|---|---|

Space Services

|   |
|---|
| Demand <input type="text" value="CAKE,Cleaning,Snack,Fruit,Coffee,Tea or Water"/> |
|---|

Notification

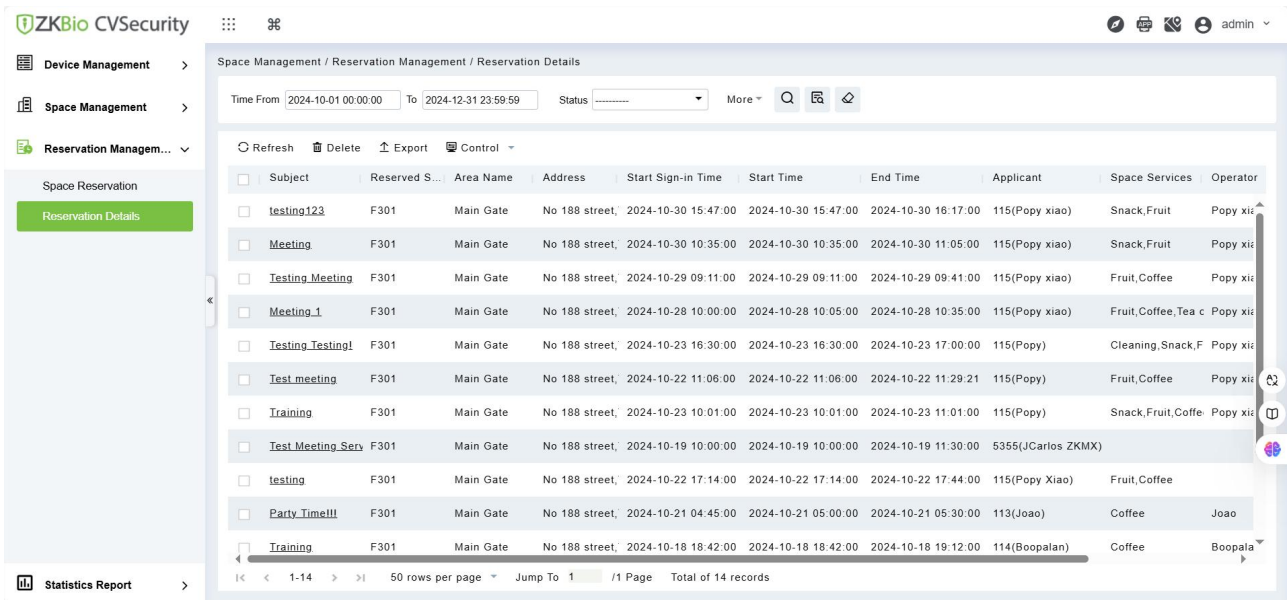
|   |
|---|
| Remind Time* <input type="text" value="Reminder 5 minutes before"/> |
|---|

**Fields are as follows:**

| Parameter           | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| Applicant's Name    | Name of the applicants  |
| Applicant's Email   | Email of the applicants   |
| Start Time/End Time | Set the start time and end time for the reservation space.  |
| Start Sign-in Time  | Allowed to start check-in time on the device: At Start, 5 minutes before the start, 15 minutes before the start, 30 minutes before the start. |
| Space Name          | Name of the Space.  |
| Subject             | Subject of the space.   |
| Content             | Content of the Space  |
| Person's Name       | Select participants for the meeting space.  |
| Demand              | Select the services required for the space.   |
| Remind Time         | Select the reminder time for the space reservation. Notifications will be sent to the participants via email or APP.                          |

### 9.3.2 Reservation Details

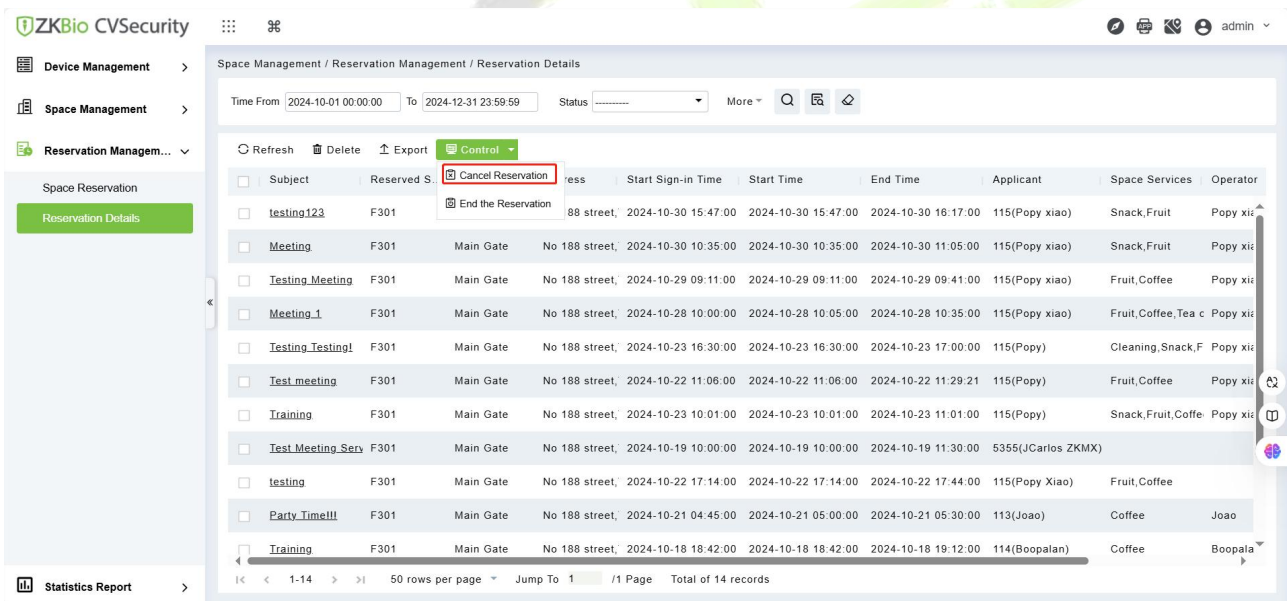
Click **[Space Management] > [Reservation Management] > [Reservation Detail]** to enter the reservation details, where we can view the specific appointment situation.



● Cancel Reservation

Click [Space Management] > [Reservation Management] > [Reservation Detail] > [Control] > [Cancel Reservation], we can cancel a previously booked space.

**Note:** Only events with the status [Pending Start] can be canceled. Clicking [Cancel] will release the entire reserved time slot back to an available state.



● End the Reservation

Click [Space Management] > [Reservation Management] > [Reservation Detail] > [Control] > [End the Reservation], we can conclude the event for the space that is currently in use.

**Note:** Only meetings that are currently in progress can be ended. For meetings that have not yet started, it is not possible to perform an [End the Reservation] operation, but we can cancel the reservation for that space.

Space Management / Reservation Management / Reservation Details

Time From 2024-10-01 00:00:00 To 2024-12-31 23:59:59 Status [dropdown] More [search] [refresh] [export]

Control [dropdown]

| Subject           | Reserved S... | ress       | Start Sign-in Time  | Start Time          | End Time            | Applicant          | Space Services     | Operator |
|-------------------|---------------|------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------|
| testing123        | F301          | 88 street, | 2024-10-30 15:47:00 | 2024-10-30 15:47:00 | 2024-10-30 16:17:00 | 115(Popy xiao)     | Snack,Fruit        | Popy xia |
| Meeting           | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-30 10:35:00 | 2024-10-30 10:35:00 | 2024-10-30 11:05:00 | 115(Popy xiao)     | Snack,Fruit        | Popy xia |
| Testing Meeting   | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-29 09:11:00 | 2024-10-29 09:11:00 | 2024-10-29 09:41:00 | 115(Popy xiao)     | Fruit,Coffee       | Popy xia |
| Meeting_1         | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-28 10:00:00 | 2024-10-28 10:05:00 | 2024-10-28 10:35:00 | 115(Popy xiao)     | Fruit,Coffee,Tea c | Popy xia |
| Testing_Testing!  | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-23 16:30:00 | 2024-10-23 16:30:00 | 2024-10-23 17:00:00 | 115(Popy)          | Cleaning,Snack,F   | Popy xia |
| Test meeting      | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-22 11:06:00 | 2024-10-22 11:06:00 | 2024-10-22 11:29:21 | 115(Popy)          | Fruit,Coffee       | Popy xia |
| Training          | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-23 10:01:00 | 2024-10-23 10:01:00 | 2024-10-23 11:01:00 | 115(Popy)          | Snack,Fruit,Coffe  | Popy xia |
| Test Meeting Serv | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-19 10:00:00 | 2024-10-19 10:00:00 | 2024-10-19 11:30:00 | 5355(JCarlos ZKMX) |                    |          |
| testing           | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-22 17:14:00 | 2024-10-22 17:14:00 | 2024-10-22 17:44:00 | 115(Popy Xiao)     | Fruit,Coffee       |          |
| Party Time!!!     | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-21 04:45:00 | 2024-10-21 05:00:00 | 2024-10-21 05:30:00 | 113(Joao)          | Coffee             | Joao     |
| Training          | F301          | Main Gate  | 2024-10-18 18:42:00 | 2024-10-18 18:42:00 | 2024-10-18 19:12:00 | 114(Boopalan)      | Coffee             | Boopata  |

50 rows per page | Jump To 1 | /1 Page | Total of 14 records

## 9.4 Statistics Report

### 9.4.1 Space Usage Statistics

The Space Usage Report provides an overview of space utilization.

Space Management / Statistics Report / Space Usage Statistics

Time From 2024-07-31 00:00:00 To 2024-10-31 23:59:59 Space Name [input] Subject [input] [search] [refresh] [export]

| Space Name | Subject           | Start Time          | End Time            | Should ... | Actually... | Be late | Attenda... | Applicant's ... | Name of the applicant's department |
|------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------|-------------|---------|------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| F301       | testing123        | 2024-10-30 15:47:00 | 2024-10-30 16:17:00 | 2          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Meeting           | 2024-10-30 10:35:00 | 2024-10-30 11:05:00 | 6          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Testing Meeting   | 2024-10-29 09:11:00 | 2024-10-29 09:41:00 | 3          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Meeting 1         | 2024-10-28 10:05:00 | 2024-10-28 10:35:00 | 3          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Testing Testing!  | 2024-10-23 16:30:00 | 2024-10-23 17:00:00 | 7          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Test meeting      | 2024-10-22 11:06:00 | 2024-10-22 11:29:21 | 3          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Training          | 2024-10-23 10:01:00 | 2024-10-23 11:01:00 | 4          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Test Meeting Serv | 2024-10-19 10:00:00 | 2024-10-19 11:30:00 | 0          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | JCarlos         |                                    |
| F301       | testing           | 2024-10-22 17:14:00 | 2024-10-22 17:44:00 | 2          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Popy            |                                    |
| F301       | Party Time!!!     | 2024-10-21 05:00:00 | 2024-10-21 05:30:00 | 3          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Joao            |                                    |
| F301       | Training          | 2024-10-18 18:42:00 | 2024-10-18 19:12:00 | 1          | 0           | 0       | 0%         | Boopalan        |                                    |

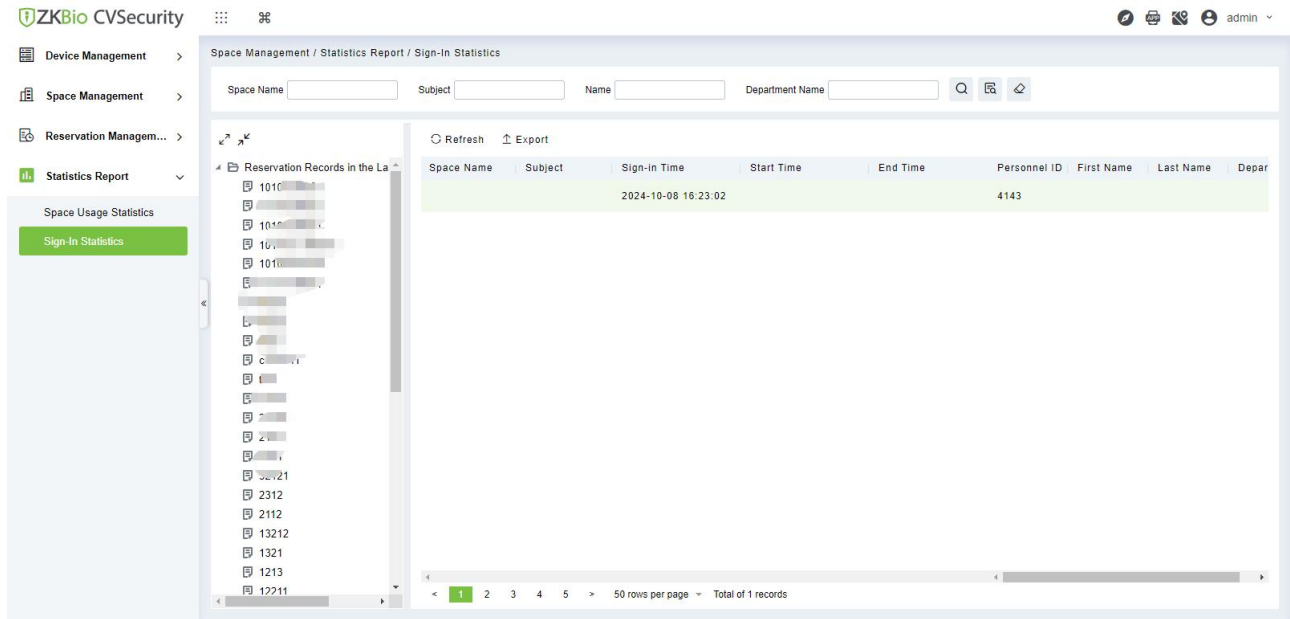
50 rows per page | Total of 14 records

Click **Export**, then you can export the report.

| Space Name | Subject                       | Start Time          | End Time            | Should arrive | Actually arrive | Be late | Attendance rate | Applicant's Name | Name of the applicant's department |
|------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------|-----------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| F301       | testing123                    | 2024-10-30 15:47:00 | 2024-10-30 16:17:00 | 2             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Meeting                       | 2024-10-30 10:35:00 | 2024-10-30 11:05:00 | 6             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Testing Meeting               | 2024-10-29 09:11:00 | 2024-10-29 09:41:00 | 3             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Meeting 1                     | 2024-10-28 10:05:00 | 2024-10-28 10:35:00 | 3             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Testing Testings!             | 2024-10-23 16:30:00 | 2024-10-23 17:00:00 | 7             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Test meeting                  | 2024-10-22 11:06:00 | 2024-10-22 11:29:21 | 3             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Training                      | 2024-10-23 10:01:00 | 2024-10-23 11:01:00 | 4             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Test Meeting Service Solution | 2024-10-19 10:00:00 | 2024-10-19 11:30:00 | 0             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | JCarlos          |                                    |
| F301       | testing                       | 2024-10-22 17:14:00 | 2024-10-22 17:44:00 | 2             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |
| F301       | Party Time!!!                 | 2024-10-21 05:00:00 | 2024-10-21 05:30:00 | 3             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Joao             |                                    |
| F301       | Training                      | 2024-10-18 18:42:00 | 2024-10-18 19:12:00 | 1             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Boopalan         |                                    |
| F301       | Meeting                       | 2024-10-19 14:39:00 | 2024-10-19 15:09:00 | 1             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Boopalan         |                                    |
| F301       | Meeting                       | 2024-10-18 15:39:00 | 2024-10-18 16:09:00 | 3             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Jessica          |                                    |
| F301       | ZKBio CVACCESS Training       | 2024-10-18 13:35:00 | 2024-10-18 14:05:00 | 0             | 0               | 0       | 0%              | Popy             |                                    |

## 9.4.2 Sign-In Statistics

The Check-in Report allows us to view the check-in status of individuals within the space.



Click **Export**, then you can export the report.

| Sign-in Statistics |                   |                     |                     |                     |              |            |                 |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|
| Space Name         | Subject           | Sign-in Time        | Start Time          | End Time            | Personnel ID | First Name | Department Name |
| F301               | Testing Meeting1  | 2024-10-09 15:25:32 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy1      | Testing         |
| F302               | Testing Meeting2  | 2024-10-09 15:19:39 | 2024-10-09 13:47:01 | 2024-10-09 14:43:01 | 4142         | Popy2      | Testing         |
| F303               | Testing Meeting3  | 2024-10-09 15:15:07 | 2024-10-09 13:47:02 | 2024-10-09 14:43:02 | 4142         | Popy3      | Testing         |
| F304               | Testing Meeting4  | 2024-10-09 14:28:07 | 2024-10-09 13:47:03 | 2024-10-09 14:43:03 | 4142         | Popy4      | Testing         |
| F305               | Testing Meeting5  | 2024-10-09 14:19:48 | 2024-10-09 13:47:04 | 2024-10-09 14:43:04 | 4142         | Popy5      | Testing         |
| F306               | Testing Meeting6  | 2024-10-09 14:00:47 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy6      | Testing         |
| F307               | Testing Meeting7  | 2024-10-09 13:48:31 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4145         | Popy7      | Testing         |
| F308               | Testing Meeting8  | 2024-10-09 13:48:21 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy8      | Testing         |
| F309               | Testing Meeting9  | 2024-10-09 13:48:19 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy9      | Testing         |
| F310               | Testing Meeting10 | 2024-10-09 13:48:06 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy10     | Testing         |
| F311               | Testing Meeting11 | 2024-10-09 13:48:04 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy11     | Testing         |
| F312               | Testing Meeting12 | 2024-10-09 13:47:54 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy12     | Testing         |
| F313               | Testing Meeting13 | 2024-10-09 13:47:52 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy13     | Testing         |
| F314               | Testing Meeting14 | 2024-10-09 13:47:50 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy14     | Testing         |
| F315               | Testing Meeting15 | 2024-10-09 13:47:15 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy15     | Testing         |
| F316               | Testing Meeting16 | 2024-10-09 13:47:14 | 2024-10-09 13:47:00 | 2024-10-09 14:43:00 | 4142         | Popy16     | Testing         |
| F317               | Testing Meeting17 | 2024-10-09 13:45:14 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy17     | Testing         |
| F318               | Testing Meeting18 | 2024-10-09 13:45:12 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy18     | Testing         |
| F319               | Testing Meeting19 | 2024-10-09 13:44:53 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy19     | Testing         |
| F320               | Testing Meeting20 | 2024-10-09 12:27:52 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy20     | Testing         |
| F321               | Testing Meeting21 | 2024-10-09 12:26:21 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy21     | Testing         |
| F322               | Testing Meeting22 | 2024-10-09 11:57:51 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy22     | Testing         |
| F323               | Testing Meeting23 | 2024-10-09 11:57:49 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy23     | Testing         |
| F324               | Testing Meeting24 | 2024-10-09 11:57:47 |                     |                     | 4142         | Popy24     | Testing         |

## 9.5 Notification

Administrators can go to **Service Center -> Notification Center -> Notification Records** to view historical notification records.

| title                   | Notification Type | Source Mo... | Value   | Create Time         | Operations |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------|---|---------------------|------------|
| Reservation is about to | Notify Message    | Space Manage | The 2024-10-30 15:47:00 - 2024-10-30 15:47:00 F301 testin                   | 2024-10-30 15:32:00 | [Icon]     |
| Space Reservation       | Notify Message    | Space Manage | Popy xiao has successfully booked 2024-10-30 15:47:00 - 2024-10-30 14:48:02 | 2024-10-30 14:48:02 | [Icon]     |
| Reservation is about to | Notify Message    | Space Manage | The 2024-10-30 10:35:00 - 2024-10-30 10:35:00 F301 Meetin                   | 2024-10-30 10:33:30 | [Icon]     |
| Space Reservation       | Notify Message    | Space Manage | Popy xiao has successfully booked 2024-10-30 10:35:00 - 2024-10-30 10:33:22 | 2024-10-30 10:33:22 | [Icon]     |
| Reservation is about to | Notify Message    | Space Manage | The 2024-10-29 09:11:00 - 2024-10-29 09:11:00 F301 Testin                   | 2024-10-29 08:56:00 | [Icon]     |
| Reservation is about to | Notify Message    | Space Manage | The 2024-10-28 10:05:00 - 2024-10-28 10:05:00 F301 Meetin                   | 2024-10-28 09:50:00 | [Icon]     |
| Space Reservation       | Notify Message    | Space Manage | Popy xiao has successfully booked 2024-10-29 09:11:00 - 2024-10-28 09:11:31 | 2024-10-28 09:11:31 | [Icon]     |
| Space Reservation       | Notify Message    | Space Manage | Popy xiao has successfully booked 2024-10-28 10:05:00 - 2024-10-28 09:10:10 | 2024-10-28 09:10:10 | [Icon]     |
| Reservation is about to | Notify Message    | Space Manage | The 2024-10-23 16:30:00 - 2024-10-23 16:30:00 F301 Testin                   | 2024-10-23 16:15:00 | [Icon]     |
| Space Services          | Notify Message    | Space Manage | Space administrator 115(Popy) has responded to Popy's serv                  | 2024-10-23 16:11:38 | [Icon]     |
| Space Reservation       | Notify Message    | Space Manage | Popy has successfully booked 2024-10-23 16:30:00 - 2024-10-23 16:10:15      | 2024-10-23 16:10:15 | [Icon]     |

After the applicant books a meeting, the applicant, attendees, and space manager will all receive corresponding emails or app push notifications. The content of the email notification is as follows:

**Space Service Reminder** 9 ★

**ZKBioCVSecurity Demo**  
To: Popy  
Tuesday 8:56 [Details](#)

Hi

Popy xiao has applied for Testing Meeting which will start after 2024-10-29 09:11:00. Here are the details of the event:

Subject: Testing Meeting

Content: content 1111

Reserved Time: 2024-10-29 09:11:00 - 2024-10-29 10:11:00

Space: F301

Address: No 188 street, TangXia

Applicant: Popy xiao

Please participate in time, thank you.

---

**ZKBioCVSecurity D...** Hi Popy xiao has applied for Meeting 1 which will start after 2024-10-28 10:05:00. Here are the det Monday 9:50 AM

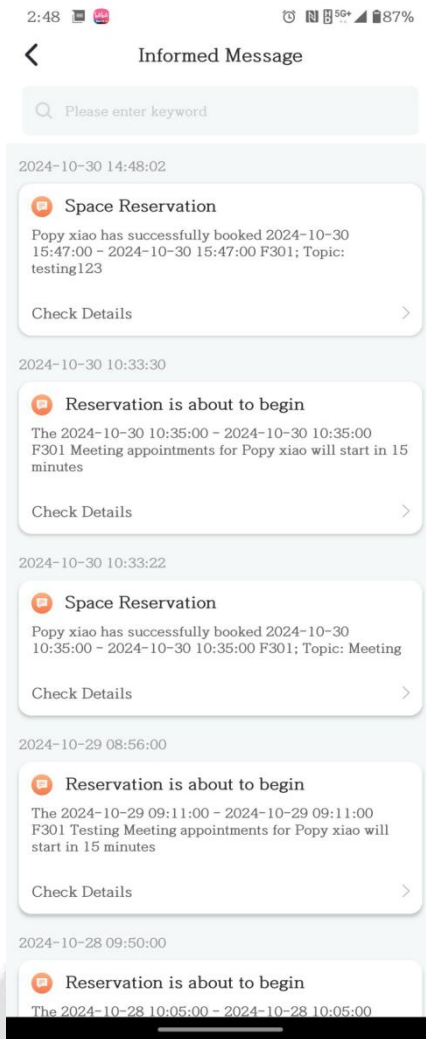
**ZKBioCVSecurity D...** Hi Popy xiao has booked Testing Meeting which will start at 2024-10-29 09:11:00. Here are the detai Monday 9:11 AM

**ZKBioCVSecurity D...** Hi Popy xiao has booked Meeting 1 which will start at 2024-10-28 10:05:00. Here are the details of Monday 9:10 AM

**ZKBioCVSecurity D...** Hi Popy has applied for Testing Testing! which will start after 2024-10-23 16:30:00. Here are the d 10/23 Wednesday 4:15 PM

**ZKBioCVSecurity D...** Hi Popy has applied for Testing Testing! which will start after 2024-10-23 16:30:00. Here are the d 10/23 Wednesday 4:15 PM

The APP notification content is as follows:



## 10 Elevator Control

The following is the manual of online elevator control. The Elevator Control System is mainly used to set device parameters (such as the swiping interval for taking elevators and elevator key drive duration), manage personnel's rights to floors and elevator control time, and supervise elevator control events. You can set registered users' rights to floors. Only authorized users can reach certain floors within a period of time after being authenticated.

### 10.1 Elevator Control Management

#### 10.1.1 Operation Scenario

Elevator control management, also known as elevator access control management, realizes the unified management of personnel entering and leaving the elevator through the configuration of floors and personnel authority groups.

Elevator control solves the elevator floor arrival authority of registered personnel, that is, in a certain period, on certain floors, authorized personnel can be verified and passed.

#### 10.1.2 Operation Flow

Introduce the configuration process of Elevator control management business.

The business configuration process of Elevator control management business is shown in figure below:

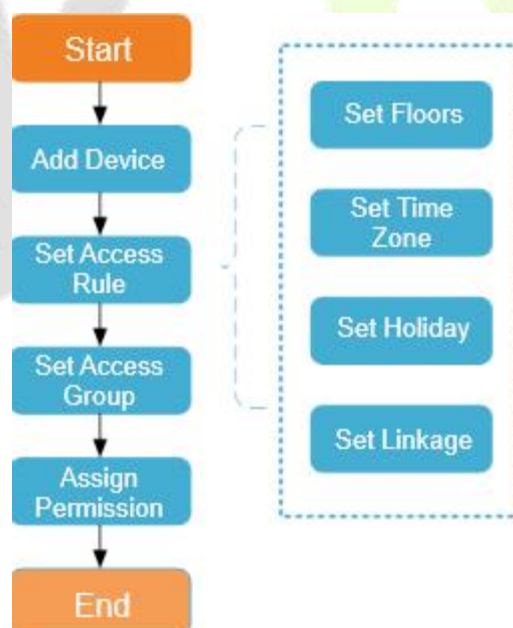


Figure 10- 1 Elevator Control Configuration Flow

### 10.1.3 Elevator Device

#### 10.1.3.1 Add EC10- Elevator Control Device

Configuration steps of adding Elevator Control device in platform.

##### 10.1.3.1.1 Add device (New)

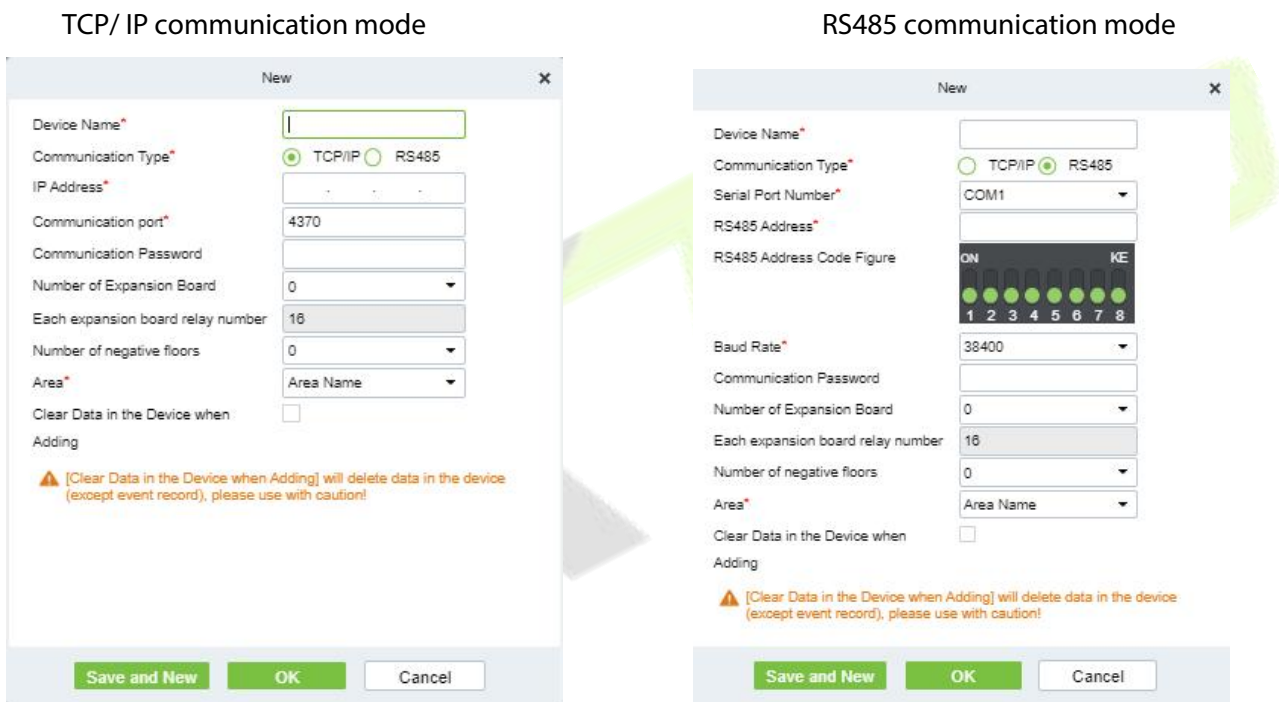
● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Elevator Control module, select **Elevator Control Device > Device**.

**Step 2:** In the device management interface, click the **New** button to pop up the New box.

**Step 3:** Fill in the corresponding parameter information in the new box. The new box of device is shown in the figures below. Please refer to below table for parameter setting instructions.

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding Elevator control device.



**Figure 10- 2 Add Elevator Control Configuration Flow**

| Parameter            | How to set   |
|----------------------|--|
| Device Name          | Customize the name of this device  |
| Communication Mode   | Choose the communication mode of TCP/IP  |
| IP Address           | Fill in the IP address of Elevator control device  |
| Communication Port   | The default device communication port is 4370  |
| Communication Cipher | Fill in the communication password of the device. If there is no password, it does not need to be filled in, and it can only be added after successful verification.<br><br>For new factory device and initialized device, the communication password is |

| Parameter                            | How to set   |
|--------------------------------------|--|
|                                      | empty. In order to ensure that the device is not used by others, the user can enter the IP address of the device through the Web page and enter the background to customize the verification password. |
| Number of Expansion Plates           | The Elevator control device can control the expansion of the number of floors  |
| Number of Relays Per Expansion Board | Each expansion board has 16 relays   |
| Region                               | The device is divided into regions, and the device can be filtered according to the regions during real-time monitoring  |
| Delete Data in Device When Adding    | Set whether the original Elevator control event data in the device will be automatically emptied after the device is added.  |

**Table 10-1 Description of Settings for Adding Devices**

**10.1.3.1.2 Delete**

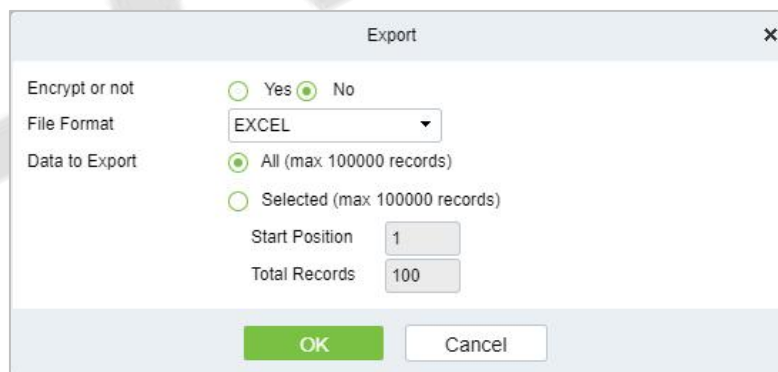
**Step 1:** On the **Device** interface, select the required Device from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Device.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Device from the list.

**10.1.3.1.3 Export**

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.



**Figure 10- 3 Export Elevator Control Configuration Flow**

**10.1.3.1.4 Search And Add Elevator Control Device (Search)**

The configuration steps of adding Elevator control device in by searching.

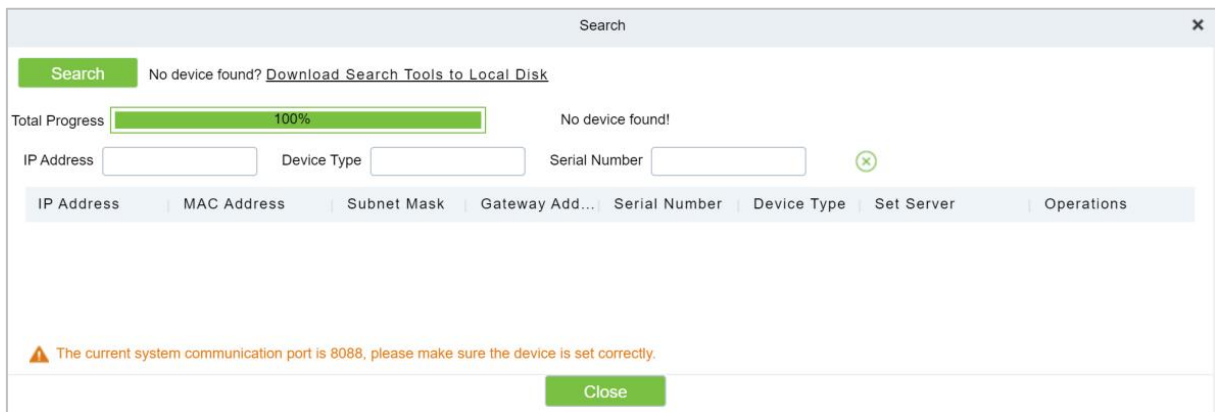
Through the way of searching, the Elevator control device in the local area network is searched, and the Elevator control device that has been searched out is directly added, which is convenient to operate.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Elevator Control module, select "**Elevator Control Device > Device**".

**Step 2:** In the device management interface, click the **Search** button to pop up the search box.

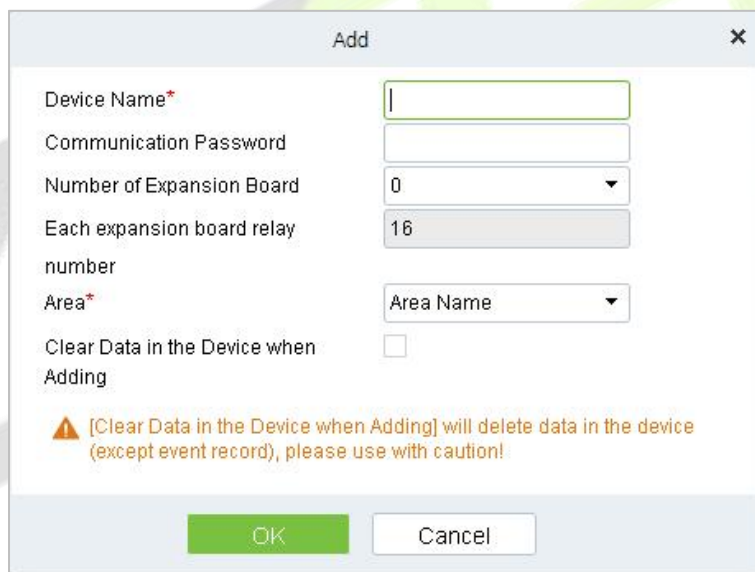
**Step 3:** Click **"Start Search"** in the search box to display the Elevator control devices that can be added, as shown in figure below:



**Figure 10- 4 Device Search Add Interface**

**Step 4: Optional:** Modify the IP address of Elevator control device and click **"Modify IP Address"**. Modifying IP address will restart the device, and the IP address modification will be completed after restarting.

**Step 5:** For the Elevator control device searched, click the **Add** button in the operation bar to add the device; The device addition settings are shown in figure below, and the parameter settings are shown in table below.



**Figure 10- 5 Add Interface**

| Parameter            | How to set  |
|----------------------|---|
| Device Name          | Customize the name of the device.   |
| Communication Cipher | Fill in the communication password of the device. If there is no password, it does not need to be filled in, and it can only be added after successful verification.<br>For new factory device and initialized device, the communication password is empty. In order to ensure that the device is not used by others, the user can enter the IP address of the device through the Web page and enter the background to customize the verification password. |

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Number of Expansion Plates           | Elevator control device can control the expansion of the number of floors.  |
| Number of Relays Per Expansion Board | Each expansion board has 16 relays.   |
| Region                               | The device is divided into regions, and the device can be filtered according to the regions during real-time monitoring.    |
| Delete Data in Device When Adding    | Set whether the original Elevator control event data in the device will be automatically emptied after the device is added. |

**Table 10-2 Device Search Added Settings Description**

**Step 6:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding Elevator control device.

**Step 7:** Click **Close** to close the Device Search Add interface.

#### 10.1.3.1.5 Control

##### Upgrade Firmware

Tick the device that needs to be upgraded, click **Upgrade firmware** to enter edit interface, then click **Browse** to select firmware upgrade file (named emfw.cfg) provided by Access software, and click **OK** to start upgrading.

**Note:** The user shall not upgrade firmware without authorization. Contact the distributor before upgrading firmware or upgrade it following the instructions of the distributor. Unauthorized upgrade may affect normal operations.

##### Reboot Device

It will reboot the selected device.

##### Synchronize Time

It will synchronize device time with server's current time.

##### Disable/Enable

Select device, click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

##### Synchronize All Data to Devices

Synchronize data of the system to the device. Select device, click **Synchronize All Data to Devices** and click **OK** to complete synchronization.

#### 10.1.3.1.6 Set Up

##### Modify IP Address

Select a device and click **Modify IP address** to open the modification interface. It will obtain a real-time network gateway and subnet mask from the device. (Failed to do so, you cannot modify the IP address). Then enter a new IP address, gateway, and subnet mask. Click **OK** to save and quit. This function is the similar as Modify IP Address Function in Device.

##### Modify Communication Password

The system will ask for the old communication password before modifying it. After verification, input

the new password twice, and click **OK** to modify the communication password.

**Note:** Communication password shouldn't contain spaces; it is recommended to use a combination of numbers and letters. Communication password setting can improve the device's security. It is recommended to set communication password for each device.

### Modify RS485 Address

Only the devices that use RS485 communication and with no DIP Switch can modify RS485 address.

### Modify the Fingerprint Identification Threshold

Users can modify the fingerprint identification thresholds in the devices; it ranges from 35 to 70 and it is 55 by default. The system will read the thresholds from the device.

### Set extended Parameters

We can set the extended parameters of device like temperature detection and mask detection

#### 10.1.3.1.7 View/Get

##### Get Device Option

It gets the common parameters of the device. For example, get the firmware version after the device is updated.

##### Get Personnel Information

Renew the current number of personnel, fingerprints, finger vein and face templates in the device. The final value will be displayed in the device list.

##### Get Transactions

Get transactions from the device into the system. Two options are provided for this operation: Get New Transactions and Get All Transactions.

#### 10.1.3.2 Add EC16-Elevator Control Device

This sub module introduces the configuration steps of adding Access Control device in platform. The elevator control device is added in a new way by TCP/IP and RS485 communication.

##### 10.1.3.2.1 Add Device (New)

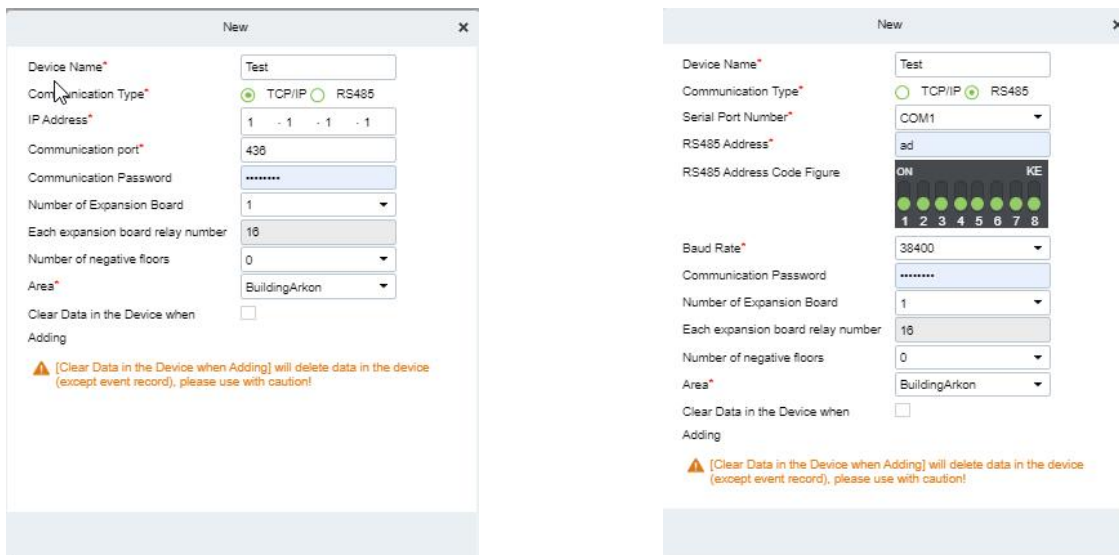
Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Elevator module, select "**Elevator Device > Device**".

**Step 2:** In the device management interface, click on **New** to pop up the New box.

**Step 3:** Fill in the corresponding parameter information in the new box. The new box of device is shown in the figures below. Please refer to below table for parameter setting instructions.

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding Elevator control device.



**Figure 10- 6 Add Elevator Control Configuration Flow**

Fields to be filled for TCP/IP

| Parameter                            | How to set  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Device Name                          | Customize the name of this device.  |
| Communication Type                   | Choose the communication mode of TCP/IP.  |
| IP Address                           | Enter the IP address.   |
| Communication Port                   | The default device communication port is 4370.  |
| Communication Password               | Fill in the communication password of the device. If there is no password, it does not need to be filled in, and it can only be added after successful verification.<br>For new factory device and initialized device, the communication password is empty. In order to ensure that the device is not used by others, the user can enter the IP address of the device through the Web page and enter the background to customize the verification password. |
| Number of Expansion Board            | The Elevator control device can control the expansion of the number of floors.  |
| Each expansion board relay number    | Each expansion board has 16 relays.   |
| Number of negative floors            | Select the number of negative floor from the default list of 5.   |
| Area                                 | The device is divided into areas, and the device can be filtered according to the area during real-time monitoring.   |
| Clear Data in the Device when Adding | Set whether the original Elevator control event data in the device will be automatically emptied after the device is added.   |
| Fields to be filled for RS485        |   |
| Device Name                          | Customize the name of this device.  |
| Communication Type                   | Choose the communication mode of TCP/IP.  |
| Serial Port Number                   | Select the serial port number from the list up to COM255.   |
| RS485 Address                        | Enter the Address in integer only and it must be 1-63. Once after enter figure, RS485 will update automatically.  |

| Parameter                            | How to set  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| RS485 Address Code Figure            | Set the address code figure by clicking or toggling on the required number. It must be from 1-63 only. Once it is done the RS485 Address will update automatically.   |
| Baud Rate                            | Select one of the baud rate from the list 19200, 38400, 57600, and 115200.  |
| Communication Password               | Fill in the communication password of the device. If there is no password, it does not need to be filled in, and it can only be added after successful verification.<br>For new factory devices and initialized devices, the communication password is empty. In order to ensure that the device is not used by others, the user can enter the IP address of the device through the Web page and enter the background to customize the verification password. |
| Number of Expansion Board            | The Elevator control device can control the expansion of the number of floors.  |
| Each expansion board relay number    | Each expansion board has 16 relays  |
| Number of negative floors            | Select the number of negative floor from the default list of 5.   |
| Area                                 | The device is divided into areas, and the device can be filtered according to the area during real-time monitoring.   |
| Clear Data in the Device when Adding | Set whether the original Elevator control event data in the device will be automatically emptied after the device is added.   |

**Table 10-3 Description of Settings for Adding Devices**

#### 10.1.3.2.2 Delete

**Step 1:** On the **Device** interface, select the required Device from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Device.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Device from the list.

#### 10.1.3.2.3 Search and Add Elevator Control Device (Search)

The configuration steps for adding an elevator control device through a search method. By searching within the local area network, the elevator control device is identified and directly added, providing a convenient operation process.

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Elevator** > **Elevator Device** > **Device** > **Search**, to open the Search interface in the software.

**Step 2:** Click **Search** to search the elevator controller.

**Step 3:** After searching, the list and total number of elevator controllers will be displayed.

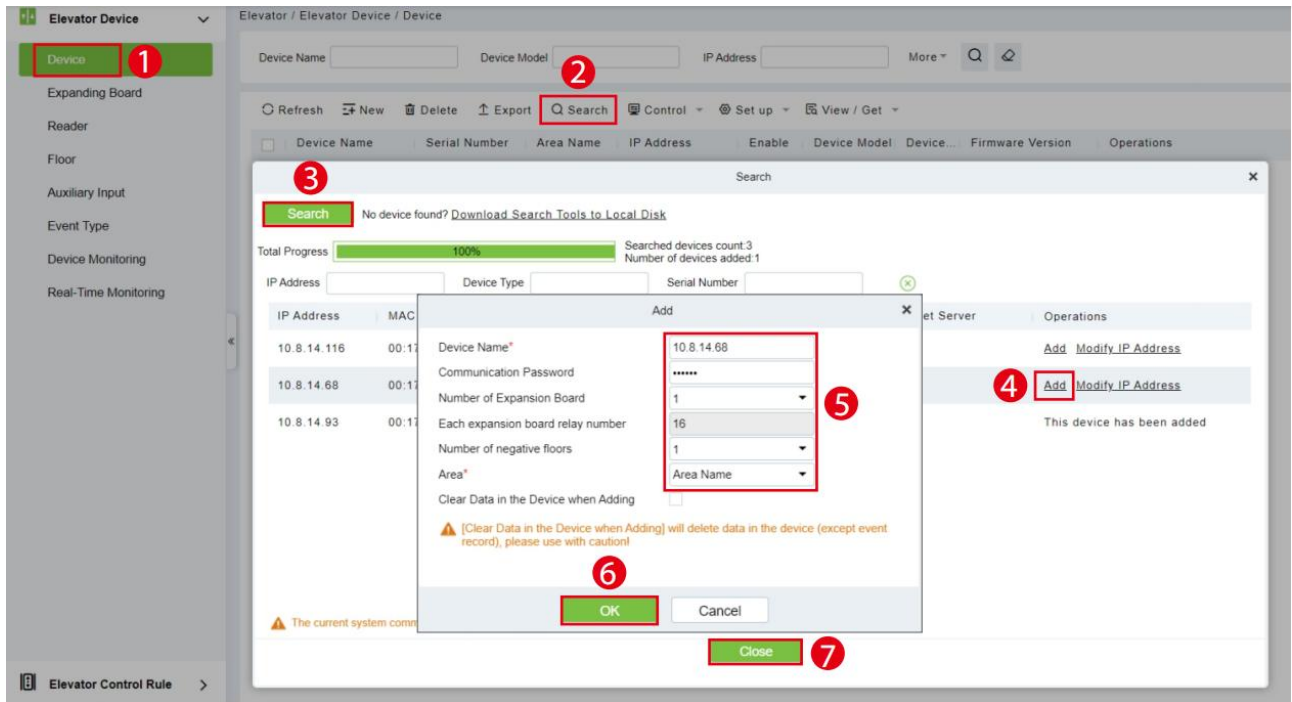


Figure 10- 7 Device Search Add

**Step 4:** For the Elevator control device searched, click **Add** in the operation bar to add the device.

**Step 5:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding elevator control device.

**Step 6:** Click **Close** to close the Device Search Add interface.

| Parameter                            | How to set  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Device Name                          | Customize the name of this device.  |
| Communication Password               | Fill in the communication password of the device. If there is no password, it does not need to be filled in, and it can only be added after successful verification.<br>For new factory device and initialized device, the communication password is empty. In order to ensure that the device is not used by others, the user can enter the IP address of the device through the Web page and enter the background to customize the verification password. |
| Number of Expansion Plates           | The Elevator control device can control the expansion of the number of floors.  |
| Number of Relays Per Expansion Board | Each expansion board has 16 relays.   |
| Region                               | The device is divided into regions, and the device can be filtered according to the regions during real-time monitoring.  |
| Delete Data in Device When Adding    | Set whether the original Elevator control event data in the device will be automatically emptied after the device is added.   |

Table 10-4 Device Search Added Settings Description

### 10.1.3.3 Expanding Board (EC10+EX16)

This introduces the configuration Steps of adding **Expanding Board** device in the platform.

### 10.1.3.3.1 Add Device (New)

#### ● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Elevator Control module, select "Elevator Control device > Expanding Board".

**Step 2:** In the expanding board interface, click the **New** button to pop up the New box.

**Step 3:** Fill in the corresponding parameter information in the new box. The new box of device is shown in figure below. Please refer to table below for parameter setting instructions.

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding Expanding board interface.

**Figure 10- 8 Add Expanding Board**

### 10.1.3.3.2 Delete

**Step 1:** On the **Expanding Board** interface, select the required Device from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Device.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Device from the list.

### 10.1.3.4 Expanding Board (EC16+DEX16)

#### 10.1.3.5 Add Expanding Board

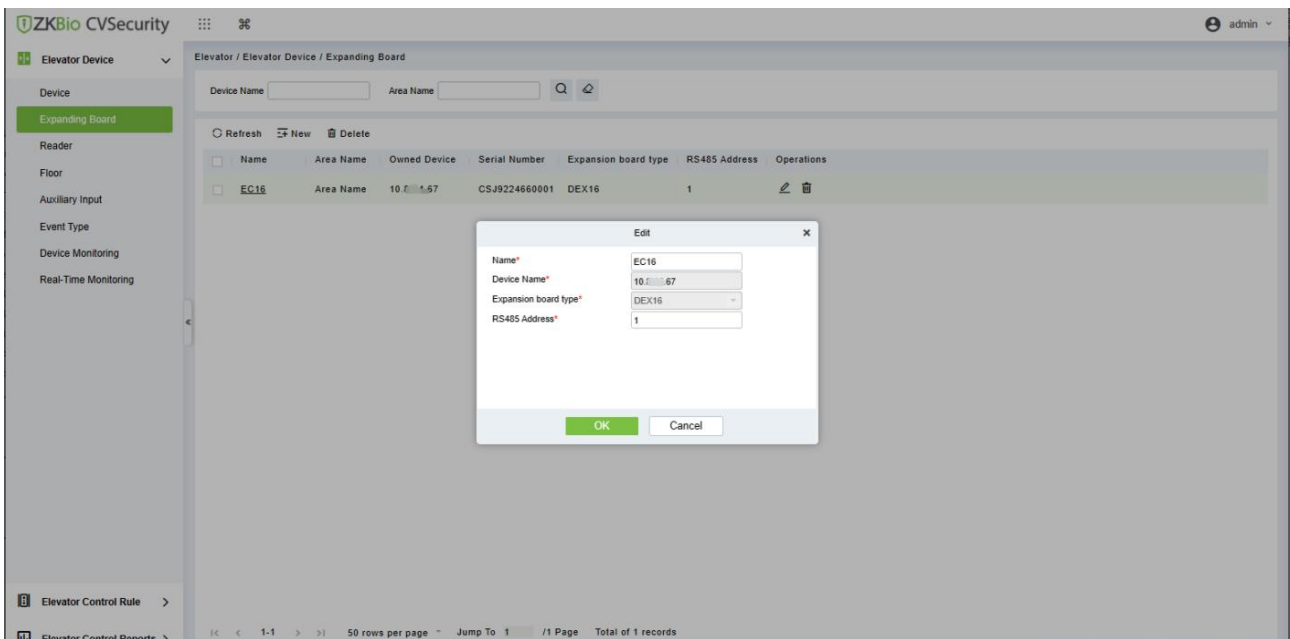
**Step 1:** Connect the expansion board correctly and set the RS485 address of the expansion board with the dip switch, then restart the device within 6 minutes.

**Step 2:** In the Elevator Control module, select "**Elevator Control device > Expanding Board**".

**Step 3:** In the expanding board interface, click the **New** button to pop up the New box.

**Step 4:** Fill in the corresponding parameter information in the new box.

**Step 5:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding Expanding board interface.



**Figure 10- 9 Add Expanding Board**

| Parameter            | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| Name                 | The name of Expanding Board.  |
| Device Name          | Select the corresponding elevator control device.   |
| Expansion Board Type | The type of expanding board. And the expansion board type cannot be modified.                               |
| Rs485 Address        | Communication protocol between expansion board and reader. The communication protocol should be consistent. |

Table 10-5 Description of Expanding Board

**10.1.3.5.1 Delete**

**Step 1:** On the Expanding Board interface, select the required Device from the list.

**Step 2:** Click Delete or click on the  icon to delete the selected Device.

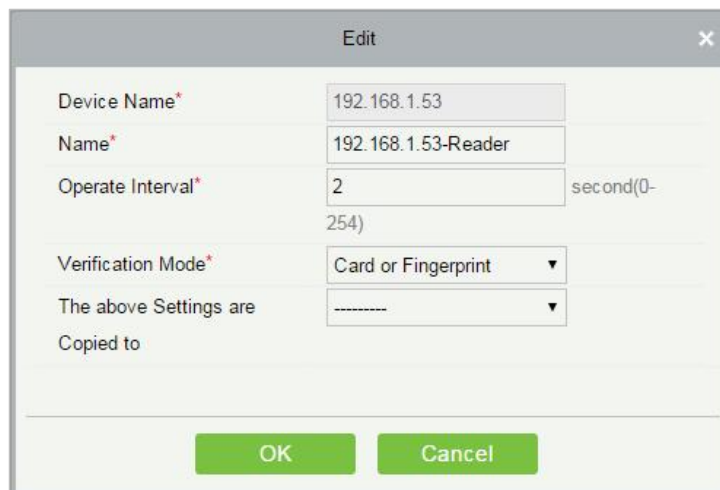
**Step 3:** Click Delete, to ensure and delete the selected Device from the list.

**10.1.3.6 Reader**

Each elevator device has a reader, the reader information can be set.

● Operating Steps:

Click **Elevator Device** > **Reader**, select a reader name in the reader list:



**Figure 10- 10 Edit Reader interface**

| Parameter                        | How to set  |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Device Name                      | It is not editable.   |
| Name                             | The default format is "Device Name - Reader", editable in 30 characters.  |
| Operate Interval                 | The interval between two verifications. The default value is 2 seconds, the range is 0 to 254 seconds.  |
| Verification Mode                | The default setting is "Card or Fingerprint". The Wiegand reader supports "Only Card", "Only Password", "Card or Password", "Card and Password", "Card or Fingerprint". The RS485 reader supports "Card or Fingerprint". Make sure the reader has a keyboard when the verification mode is "Card and Password". |
| The above settings are copied to | Apply the above settings to all readers within the current user's level.<br>Click <b>OK</b> to save and exit.   |

Table 10-6 Reader Setting

### 10.1.3.7 Floor Setting

The setting of floor parameters affects the logical judgment of Elevator control verification.

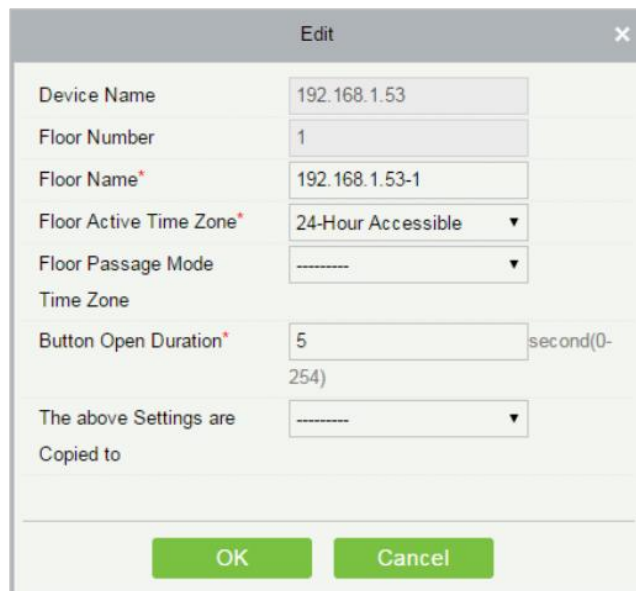
#### 10.1.3.7.1 Edit

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Elevator Control module, select **Elevator Control device > Floor**.

**Step 2:** In the floor management interface, click the **Edit** button in the floor selection operation bar to pop up the floor parameter setting box.

**Step 3:** In the floor parameter setting interface, fill in the corresponding parameters according to the addition requirements, as shown in figure below. Please refer to table below for parameter filling instructions.



**Figure 10- 11 Floor Parameter Setting**

| Parameter                                   | How to set  |
|---|---|
| Owned Device                                | Displays the basic information of this floor, and reset is not supported.   |
| Floor Number                                | The system automatically numbers the device according to the number of relays.  |
| Floor Name                                  | It defaults to "device Name-Floor Number", which can be repaired as needed, and can be filled in with a maximum of 30 arbitrary characters.   |
| Effective Time Period of Floor              | When editing a floor, the effective time period of the floor is required. Only after the effective time period of the floor is set can the close floor button be continuously released.       |
| Time Period for Continuously Releasing Keys | It must be valid within the effective period of the floor. It is recommended to set the continuous release period of the floor. The setting is included in the effective period of the floor. |
| Key Holding Time                            | Used to control swiping cards or pressing fingerprints, within the range of time, you can press the floor buttons of elevators. The default is 5 seconds, and the range is 0-254.             |
| Copy The Above Settings To                  | Set which floors the above floor parameters also apply to. The options are: all floors of current device and floors of all device.  |

**Table 10-7 Instructions for Setting Floor Parameters**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of adding Elevator-controlled floors.

### 10.1.3.7.2 Remotely Release the Button

It determines whether the corresponding key to the selected floor can be pressed. You can customize the key release duration (15s by default) or select Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone. You can also directly set the current status of the floor to continuously release. In this case, the floor is not

subject to restrictions of any periods, including Floor Active Time Zone, Floor Passage Mode Time Zone, and Button Open Duration. That is, the floor will be continuously released in 24 hours every day.

### 10.1.3.7.3 Remotely Lock the Button

This normal event is triggered if a user remotely locks a button successfully.

### 10.1.3.7.4 Remote Normal Opening

The person having open door permission punch effective card at the opened door to trigger this normal event.

### 10.1.3.7.5 Enable Intraday Passage Mode Timezone

If the intraday passage mode time zone is disabled, punch effective card for five times (must be the same user) or select Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone in remote opening operation, and this normal event is triggered.

### 10.1.3.7.6 Disable Intraday Passage Mode Timezone

In door normal open state, punch effective card for five times (must be the same user) or select **Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** in remote closing operation, and this normal event is triggered.

## 10.1.3.8 Auxiliary Input

It is mainly used to connect to devices, such as the infrared sensor or smog sensor.

### 10.1.3.8.1 Edit

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Elevator Device > Auxiliary Input** on the Action Menu, enter into the following page.

**Step 2:** Click **Edit** to modify the parameters

**Figure 10- 12 Auxiliary Input Add Interface**

| Parameter   | How to set   |
|-------------|--|
| Device Name | You can customize the name according to your preference. |
| Number      | Displays the Number.                                     |

| Parameter    | How to set  |
|--------------|---|
| Name         | It displays the default name of “Auxiliary Input”   |
| Printed Name | The printing name in the hardware, for example IN9. |
| Remark       | Displays the Comment.                               |

Table 10-8

### 10.1.3.9 Event Type

Display the event types of the elevator devices.

● Operating Steps

**Step 1:** Click **Elevator Device** > **Event Type**, the following page is displayed:

| Refresh   |           |             |                |               |
|---|-----------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| Event Name                                      | Event No. | Event Level | Device Name    | Serial No.    |
| Normal Punch Open                               | 0         | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Punch during Passage Mode Time Zone             | 1         | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Open during Passage Mode Time Zone              | 5         | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Remote Release                                  | 8         | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Remote Locking                                  | 9         | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone         | 10        | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone          | 11        | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Normal Fingerprint Open                         | 14        | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Press Fingerprint during Passage Mode Time Zone | 16        | Normal      | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Operate Interval too Short                      | 20        | Exception   | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Button Inactive Time Zone(Punch Card)           | 21        | Exception   | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Illegal Time Zone                               | 22        | Exception   | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |
| Access Denied                                   | 23        | Exception   | 192.168.90.235 | 0013130700074 |

Figure 10- 13 Event Type Interface

### 10.1.3.10 Device Monitoring

#### 10.1.3.10.1 Export

By default, it monitors all devices within the current user’s level, click **Elevator Device** > **Device Monitoring**, and lists the operation information of devices: Device Name, Serial No., Area, Operation Status, current status, commands List, and Related Operation.

| Area           | Status        | Device Name | Serial Number       |                |               |                             |  |
|----------------|---------------|-------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------------------|--|
| Export         |               |             |                     |                |               |                             |  |
| Device Name    | Serial Number | Area        | Operation Status    | Current Status | Commands List | Recently The Abnormal State | Operations   |
| 192.168.214.66 | 0013130700074 | Area Nameaa | Get real-time event | Normal         | 0             | None                        | <a href="#">Clear Command</a> <a href="#">View Command</a> |

Figure 10- 14 Device monitoring Interface

### 10.1.3.11 Real Time Monitoring

#### 10.1.3.11.1 Operating Steps

Click **Elevator Device** > **Real-Time Monitoring**, real-time monitor the status and real-time events of elevator controllers in the system, including normal events and abnormal events (including alarm

events).

| Area                | Device Name                      | Remotely Release the Button |             | Remotely Lock the Button |             |                    |                     |                     |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Time                | Area Name                        | Device Name                 | Event Point | Event Description        | Card Number | Person             | Reader Name         | Verification Mode   |
| 2017-02-10 16:11:12 | Area Name: 192.168.214.66(00131) | 192.168.214.66-2            |             | Remote Release           |             |                    |                     | Other               |
| 2017-02-10 16:11:12 | Area Name: 192.168.214.66(00131) | 192.168.214.66-1            |             | Remote Release           |             |                    |                     | Other               |
| 2017-02-10 16:11:01 | Area Name: 192.168.214.66(00131) | 192.168.214.66-Real         |             | Disabled Card            | 2338484     | 2829(xinxiao yang) | 192.168.214.66-Read | Card or Fingerprint |
| 2017-02-10 16:10:47 | Area Name: 192.168.214.66(00131) | 192.168.214.66-Real         |             | Disabled Card            | 2338484     | 2829(xinxiao yang) | 192.168.214.66-Read | Card or Fingerprint |
| 2017-02-10 16:10:44 | Area Name: 192.168.214.66(00131) | 192.168.214.66-Real         |             | Disabled Card            | 2338484     | 2829(xinxiao yang) | 192.168.214.66-Read | Card or Fingerprint |

Figure 10- 15 Real Monitoring

### 10.1.3.11.2 Remotely Release the Button

1. Click Remotely Release Button:

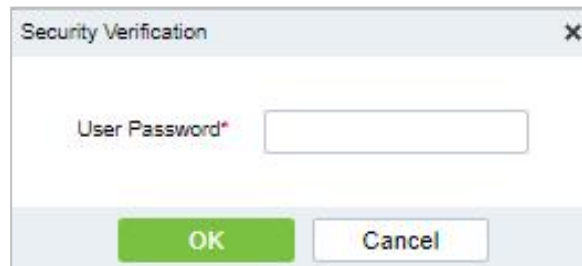


Figure 10- 16 Security Verification

2. Input the user password (the system logging password), click Next Step:

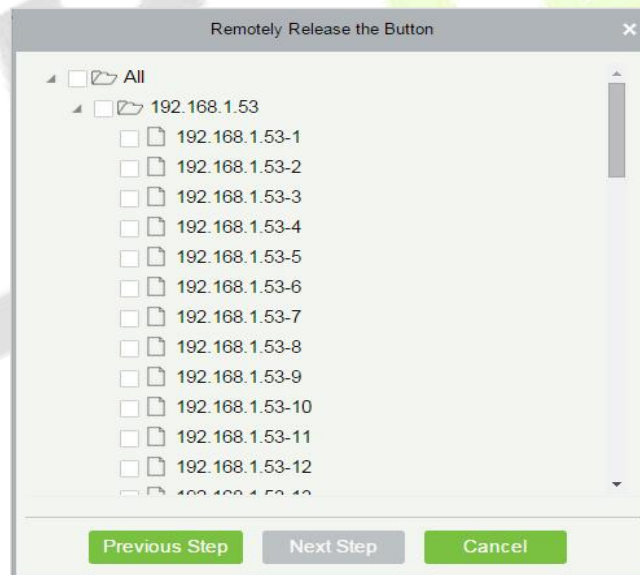
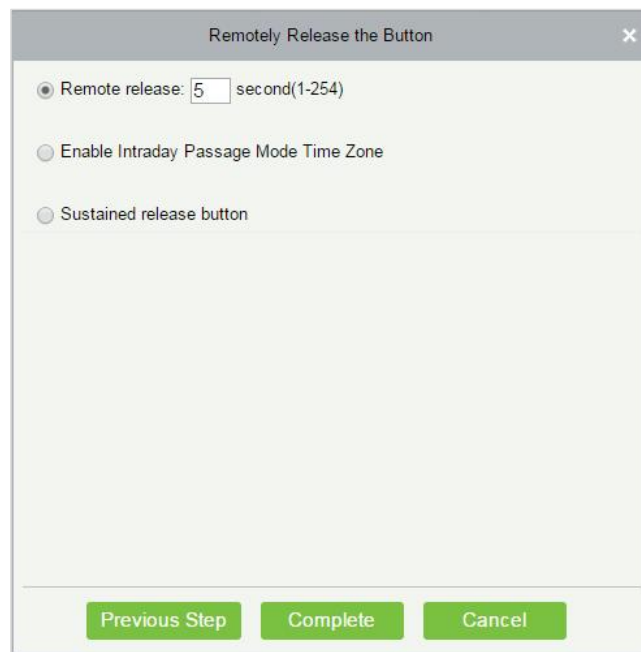


Figure 10- 17 Remotely Release Button

3. Select the floor, and click Next Step:



**Figure 10- 18 Remotely Release Button**

### 10.1.3.11.3 Remotely Lock the Button

Same as "Remotely Release the button".

#### ● Remote Release:

It determines whether the corresponding key to the selected floor can be pressed. You can customize the key release duration (15s by default) or select Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone. You can also directly set the current status of the floor to continuously release. In this case, the floor is not subject to restrictions of any periods, including Floor Active Time Zone, Floor Passage Mode Time Zone, and Button Open Duration. That is, the floor will be continuously released in 24 hours every day.

#### ● Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone:

To close a floor, you must first set Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone to prevent the case that the floor is opened because other continuous open periods take effect. Then, you need to set to close the Remote Lock Button.

#### ● Sustained Release Button:

The floor that is set to the continuously release state is not subject to restrictions of any periods, that is, the floor will be continuously released in 24 hours every day. To close the floor, you must select Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone.

**Note:** If a failure message is always returned for the remote release key, check whether there are too many currently disconnected devices on the device list. If yes, check the network connection.

Select the options, click **Complete** to finish enabling the button.

## 10.1.4 Elevator Control Rules

### 10.1.4.1 Time Period Setting Time Zones

In Elevator control, time period is a very important basic concept, which is used to set the use time of floors and specify that Elevator control can be used in effective time period.

The configuration steps to add time period manually.

10.1.4.2 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Elevator Control module, select "**Elevator Control Rules > Time Period**".

**Step 2:** Click **Add** to pop up the interface of adding time period.

**Step 3:** Add the interface in the time period and set the corresponding content according to the new requirements, as shown in figure below Please refer to Table 9-8 for parameter setting instructions.

The screenshot shows a 'New' dialog box with the following components:

- Time Zone Name\*:** A text input field.
- Remarks:** A text input field.
- Table:** A table with columns for 'Date', 'Interval 1', 'Interval 2', and 'Interval 3'. Each interval column has sub-columns for 'Start Time' and 'End Time'. The rows include days of the week (Monday to Sunday) and three 'Holiday Type' categories. All time slots are currently set to '00 : 00'.
- Copy Monday's Setting to Others Weekdays:** A checkbox.
- Buttons:** 'Save and New' (green), 'OK' (green), and 'Cancel' (white).

Figure 10- 19 New Time Period


| Parameter                              | How to set   |
|--|--|
| Time Period Name                       | Custom setting time period name for easy memory.   |
| Remarks                                | Custom Setting Notes Description.  |
| Time Interval                          | Set the start and end time in each time interval. Time period includes one week and three holiday type time intervals. |
| Copy Monday time to other working days | You can quickly copy Monday settings to other workdays.  |

Table 10-9 Description of New Parameter Settings in Time Interval

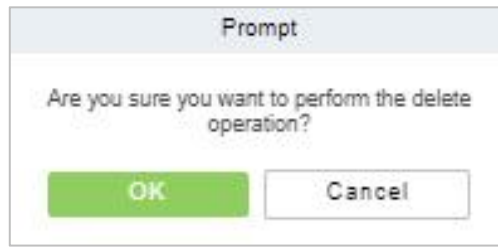
**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the addition of this time period.

10.1.4.2.1 Delete

**Step 1:** On the **Time Zone** interface, select the required time zone from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected time zone.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected time zone from the list.



**Figure 10- 20 Delete Time Period**

**10.1.4.3 Holiday Setting**

The Elevator control time on holidays may be different from the usual Elevator control time. For simple operation, the system supports setting the Elevator control time separately on holidays.

It introduces the configuration steps of manually adding holidays in.

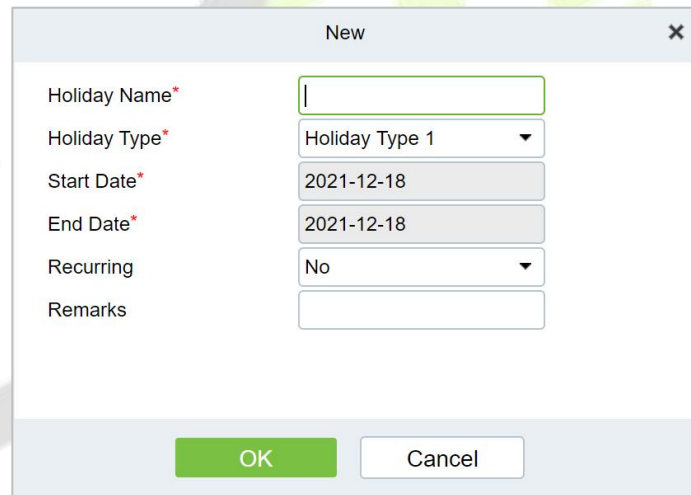
**10.1.4.3.1 New**

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Elevator Control** module, select "Elevator Control Rules > Holidays".

**Step 2:** Click **New** to pop up the holiday adding interface.

**Step 3:** In the holiday new interface, set the corresponding content according to the new requirements, as shown in figure below; Please refer to Table 9-9 for parameter setting instructions.



**Figure 10- 21 New Holidays**

| Parameter           | How to set   |
|---------------------|--|
| Holiday Name        | Customize the holiday name for easy memory.  |
| Holiday Type        | Customize the holiday type: Holiday Type 1, Holiday Type 2, Holiday Type 3. The holiday type is set and selected in the "Time Period" addition.  |
| Start Time/End Time | Set the time range for this holiday.   |
| Annualized Cycle    | Set whether this holiday cycle year by year: Yes, no.<br>For example, if New Year’s Day is January 1 of each year, it can be set to "Yes"; Mother’s Day is the second Sunday in May every year. If the date is uncertain, it |

|           |                              |
|-----------|------------------------------|
| Parameter | How to set                   |
|           | will be set to "No".         |
| Remarks   | Custom settings description. |

**Table 10-10 Parameter Setting Description for Holidays**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the operation of Elevator-controlled holidays.

**10.1.4.3.2 Delete**

**Step 1:** On the **Holidays** interface, select the required holidays from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected holidays.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected holidays from the list.

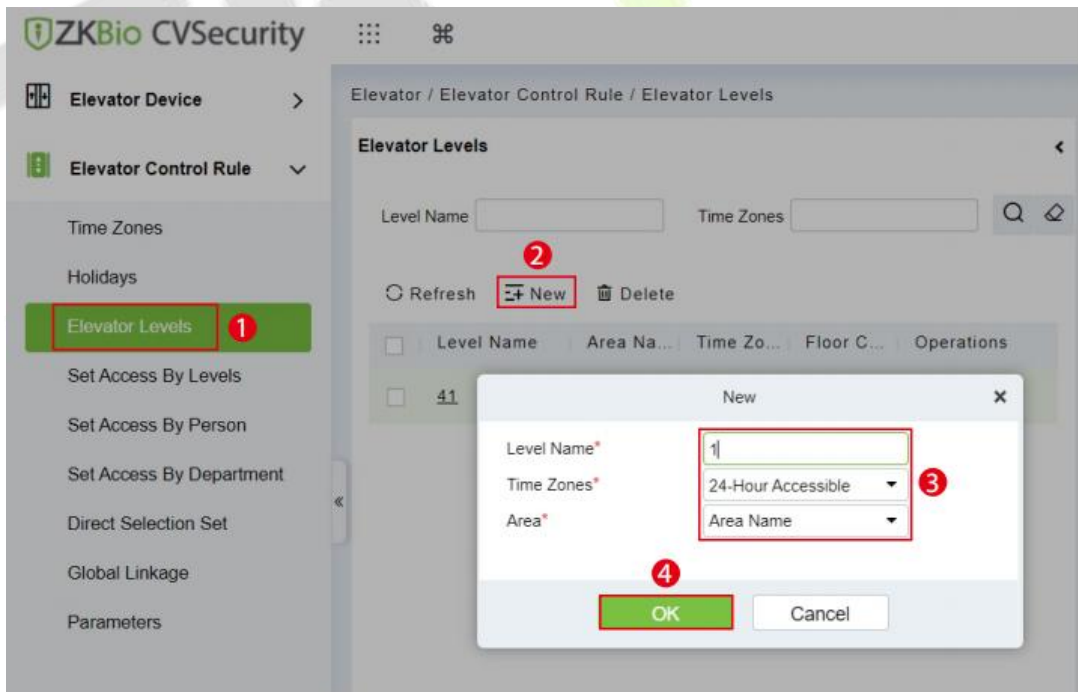
**10.1.4.4 Elevator Levels**

Elevator levels indicate that one or several selected doors can be opened by verification of a combination of multi person within certain time zone. The combination of multi-person set in Personnel Access Level option.

**10.1.4.4.1 New**

● Operating Steps:

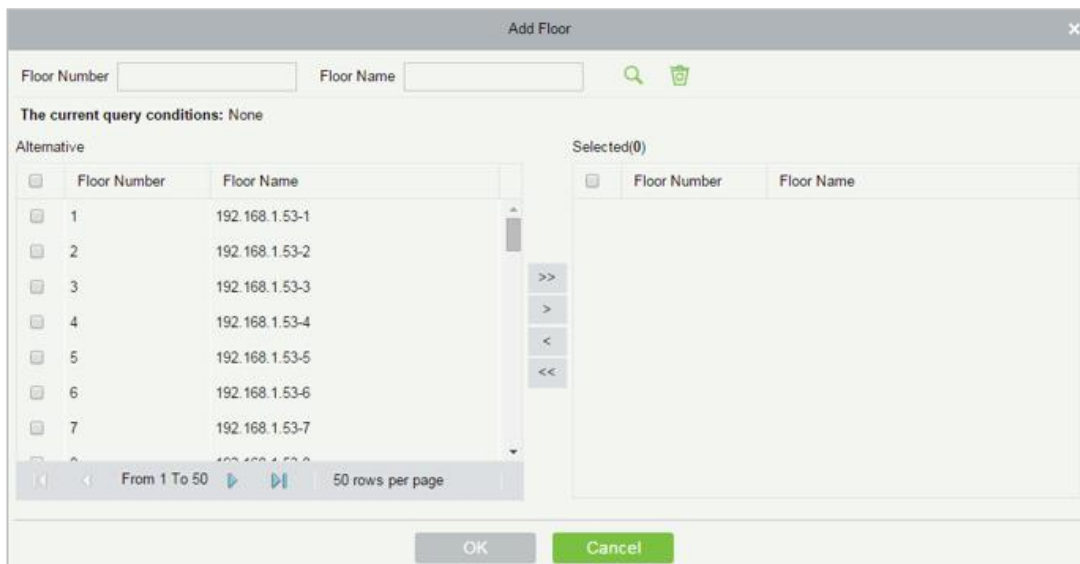
**Step 1:** Click **Elevator >Elevator Control Rule > Elevator Levels >New** to enter the Add Levels editing interface.



**Figure 10- 22 Elevator Level Add Interface**

**Step 2:** Set each parameter: Level Name (unrepeatable), Time Zone and Area.

**Step 3:** Click **OK**, the system prompts" Add floors to the current elevator control level immediately", click **OK** to add floors, click **Cancel** to return the elevator levels list. The added level is displayed in the list.



**Figure 10- 23 Elevator Level Add Interface**



**Figure 10- 24 Elevator Level Cancel Interface**

**Note:** Different floors of different elevator controllers can be selected and added to an elevator level.

#### 10.1.4.4.2 Delete

**Step 1:** On the **Elevator Level** interface, select the required level from the list.


**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected level floors.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected level from the list.

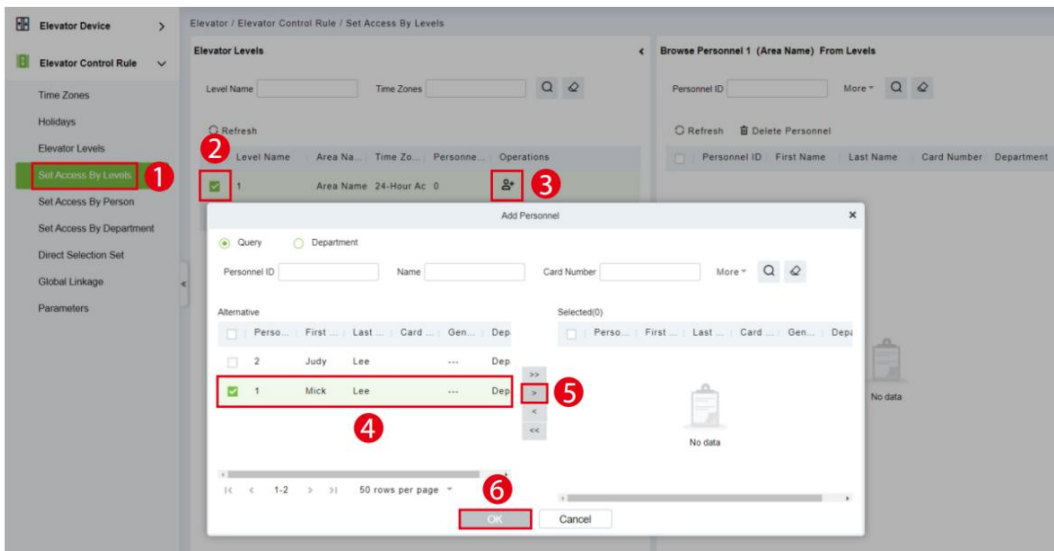
#### 10.1.4.5 Set Access by Levels

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1: Click Elevator > Set by Levels** to enter the edit interface, Click an Elevator level in left list, personnel having right of opening door in this access level will display on right list.

**Step 2:** In the left list, click **Add Personnel** under Operations to pop-up the Add Personnel box; select personnel (multiple) and click  to move it to the right selected list, then click **OK** to save and complete.

**Step 3:** Click the level to view the personnel in the right list. Select personnel and click **Delete Personnel** above the right list, then Click **OK** to delete.



**Figure 10- 25 Set Access by Levels**

**10.1.4.5.1 Delete Personnel**

**Step 1:** On the **Access Level** interface, select the required Personnel ID from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the icon to delete the selected Personnel ID.

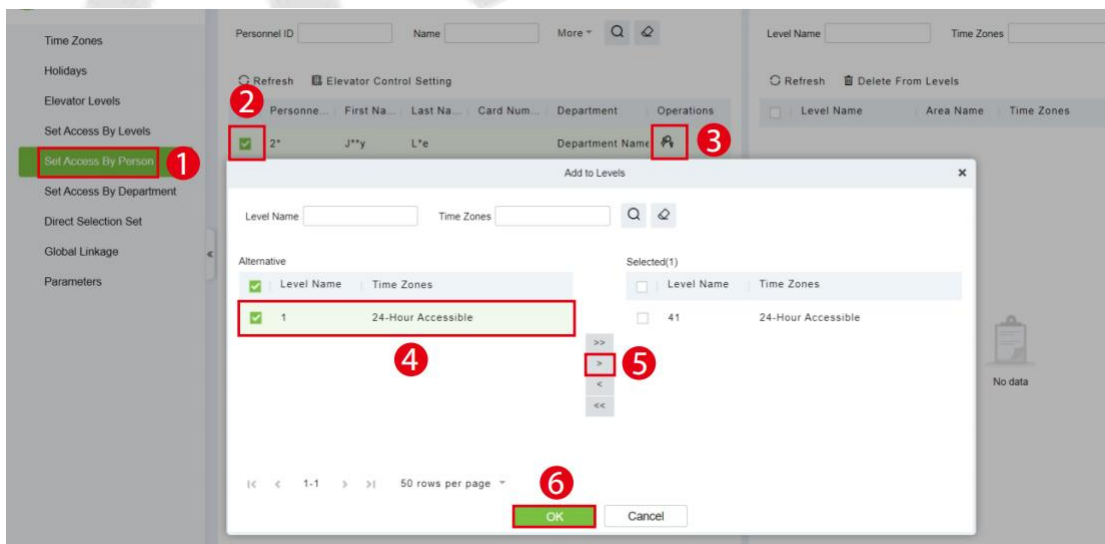
**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

**10.1.4.6 Set Access by Person**

Add selected personnel to selected elevator levels or delete selected personnel from the elevator levels.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Elevator > Elevator Levels > Set by Person**, click employee to view the levels in the right list.



**Figure 10- 26 Set Access by Person Interface**

**10.1.4.6.1 Delete from Levels**

**Step 1:** Select Level (multiple) in the right list and click **Delete from levels** above the list, then click **OK** to delete the selected levels.

### 10.1.4.6.2 Elevator Control Setting

- Setting Levels for Selected Personnel:

**Step 1:** Select a person in the list on the left and click **Elevator Control Setting**. The following page is displayed:

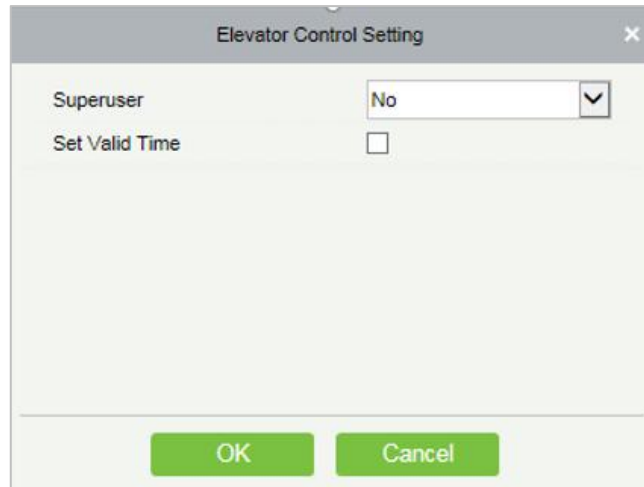


Figure 10- 27 Elevator Control Setting

**Step 2:** In the left list, click **Add Personnel** under Operations to pop-up the Add Personnel box; select personnel (multiple) and click **>** to move it to the right selected list, then click **OK** to save and complete.

### 10.1.4.7 Set Access by Department

- Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Add selected department to selected elevator levels or delete selected department from the elevator levels. The access of the staff in the department will be changed.

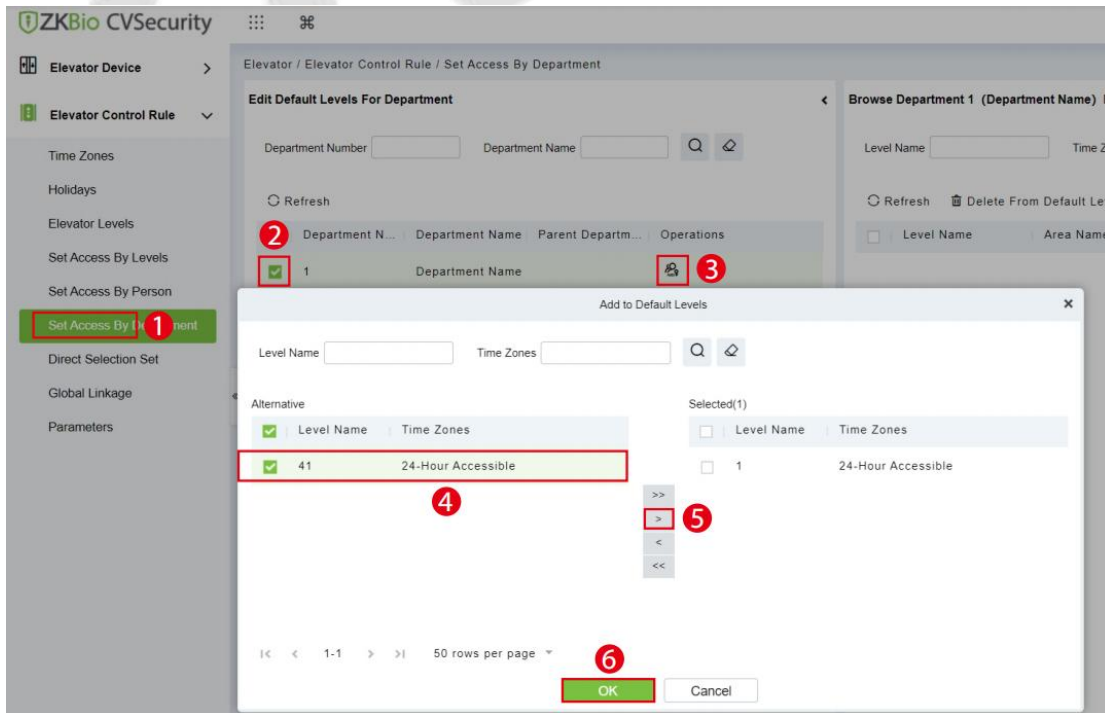


Figure 10- 28 Set Access by Department

### 10.1.4.7.1 Delete from Default Levels

Select Level (multiple) in the right list and click **Delete from levels** above the list, then click **OK** to delete the selected levels.


### 10.1.4.8 Direct Selection Set (EC16)

Assign the user the right to go directly to the floor, then the user can reach the target floor after verification.

Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Elevator Control Rule > Direct Selection Set**.

**Step 2:** Selected target personnel.

**Step 3:** Click  to add direct selection layer.

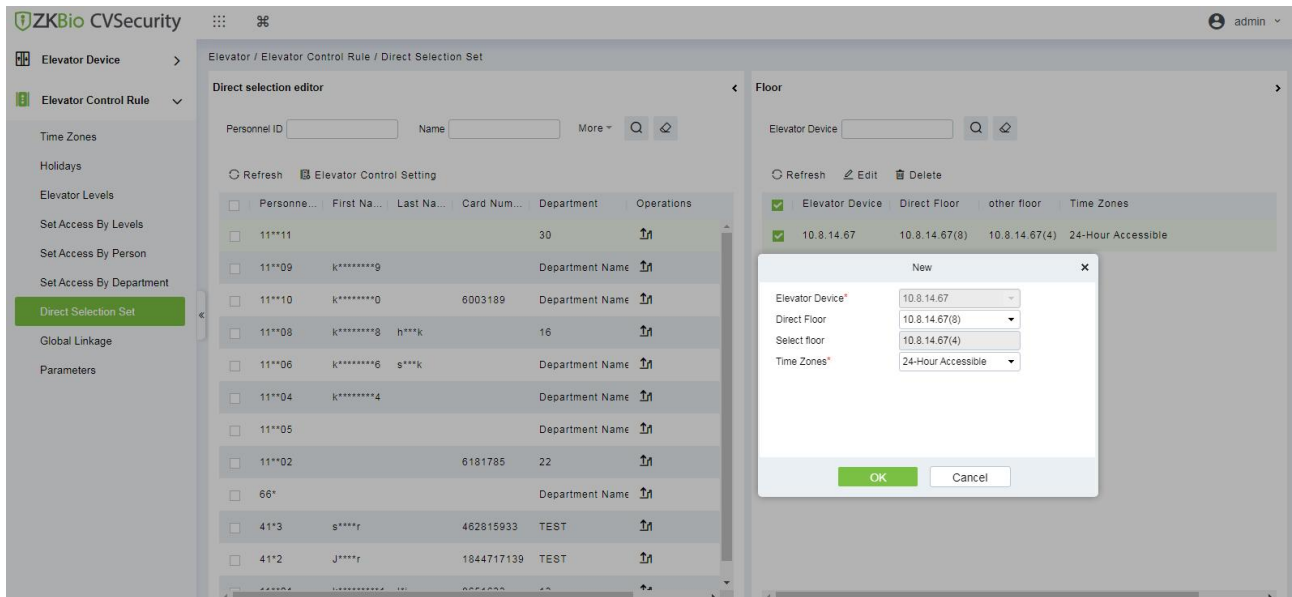


Figure 10- 29 Direct Selection Set

| Parameter       | Instructions  |
|-----------------|---|
| Elevator Device | Select the elevator device of the controller.   |
| Direct Floor    | After the verification is completed, you can reach the designated floor.  |
| Select Floor    | Floors that users can reach in addition to direct floors. After the first verification, the elevator can reach the direct floor. At this time, it needs to be verified again before the user can press the elevator button to reach the selected floor. |
| Time Zones      | The period of time that the user is allowed to use the elevator.  |

Table 10-11 Description of Direct Selection Set

### 10.1.4.9 Global Linkage

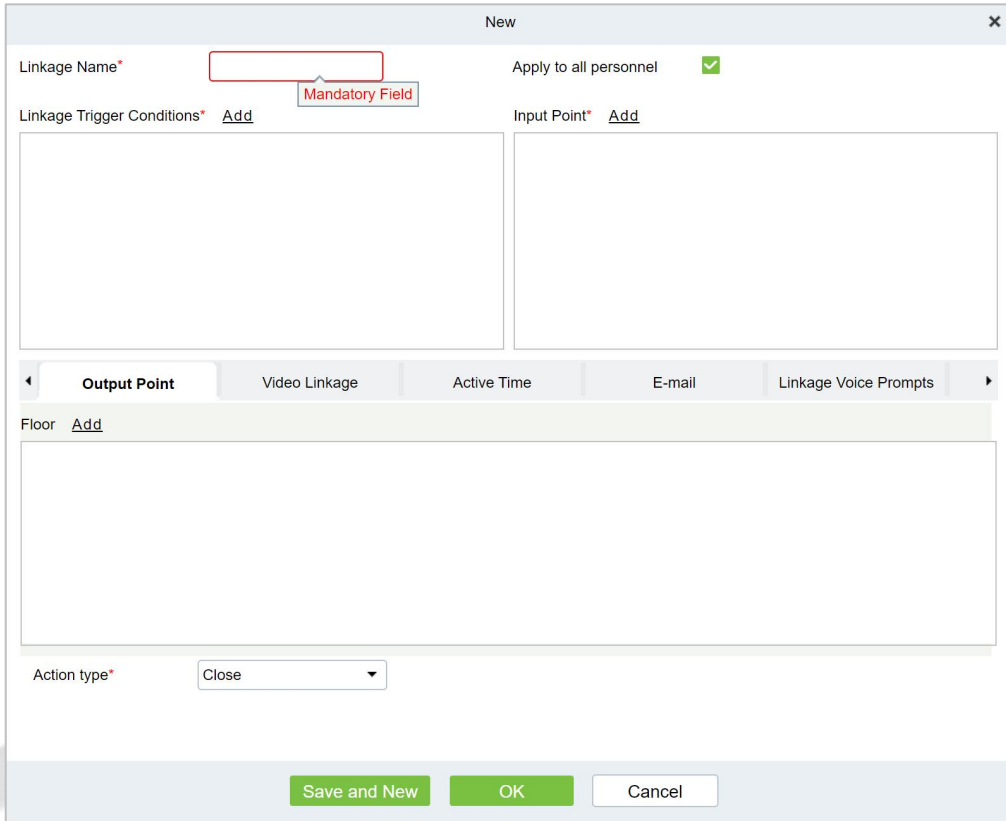
The use method and scene of linkage are very flexible. After a specific event is triggered at an input point in the Elevator control system, a linkage action will be generated at the designated output point to control the events such as door opening, alarm and abnormality in the system.

### 10.1.4.9.1 New

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Elevator Control** module, select "Elevator Control Rules > Global Linkage".

**Step 2:** In the linkage setting interface, select and click the **Add** button, as shown in figure below, and refer to Table 9-11 for linkage parameter setting.



**Figure 10- 30 New Linkage Configuration Interface**

| Parameter                 | How to set  |
|---------------------------|---|
| Linkage Name              | Custom setting linkage name for easy reference  |
| Linkage Trigger Condition | Select the condition that the linkage operation triggers, that is, the type of event generated by the selected device |
| Input Point               | Select the input point to set the device input  |
| Output Point              | Select the output point to set the output of the device   |
| Linkage Action Setting    | Select and set linkage action, including device operation at output point, video linkage and mail                     |

**Table 10-12 New Linkage Parameter Setting Description**

**Step 5:** Click **OK** to complete the linkage configuration.

### 10.1.4.9.2 Delete

**Step 1:** On the **Elevator** interface, select the required linkage from the list.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected linkage.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected linkage from the list.

### 10.1.4.9.3 Enable/Disable

Select device, click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

### 10.1.4.9.4 Delete Personnel

**Step 1:** On the **Elevator** interface, select the required Personnel ID of the Global Linkage from the list.

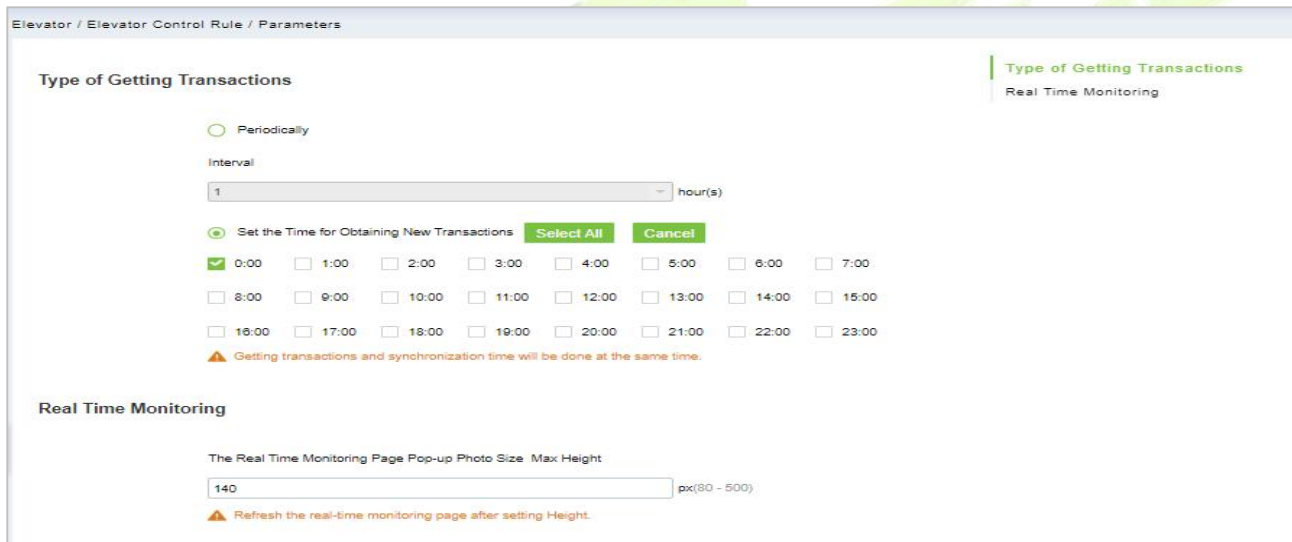
**Step 2:** Click **Delete** or click on the  icon to delete the selected Personnel ID.

**Step 3:** Click **Delete**, to ensure and delete the selected Personnel ID from the list.

## 10.1.5 Parameters

### ● Operating Steps:

Step 1: Click **Elevator > Elevator > Parameters:**



**Figure 10- 31 Parameters Interface**

| Parameter                   | How to set  |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Type of Getting Transaction | Start from the setting and efficient time, the system attempts to download new transactions every time interval.                |
| Real Time Monitoring        | When an access control event occurs, the personnel photo will pop up, set the size of the pop-up photos, the range is 80-500px. |

**Table 10-13 Parameter Setting Description**

## 10.1.6 Elevator Control Reports

### 10.1.6.1 All Transaction

The system displays the latest three months transactions by default. As the data size of elevator access control event records is large, you can view elevator access control events as specified condition when querying.

#### 10.1.6.1.1 Clear All Data

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Elevator Control Reports > All Transactions** to view all transactions:

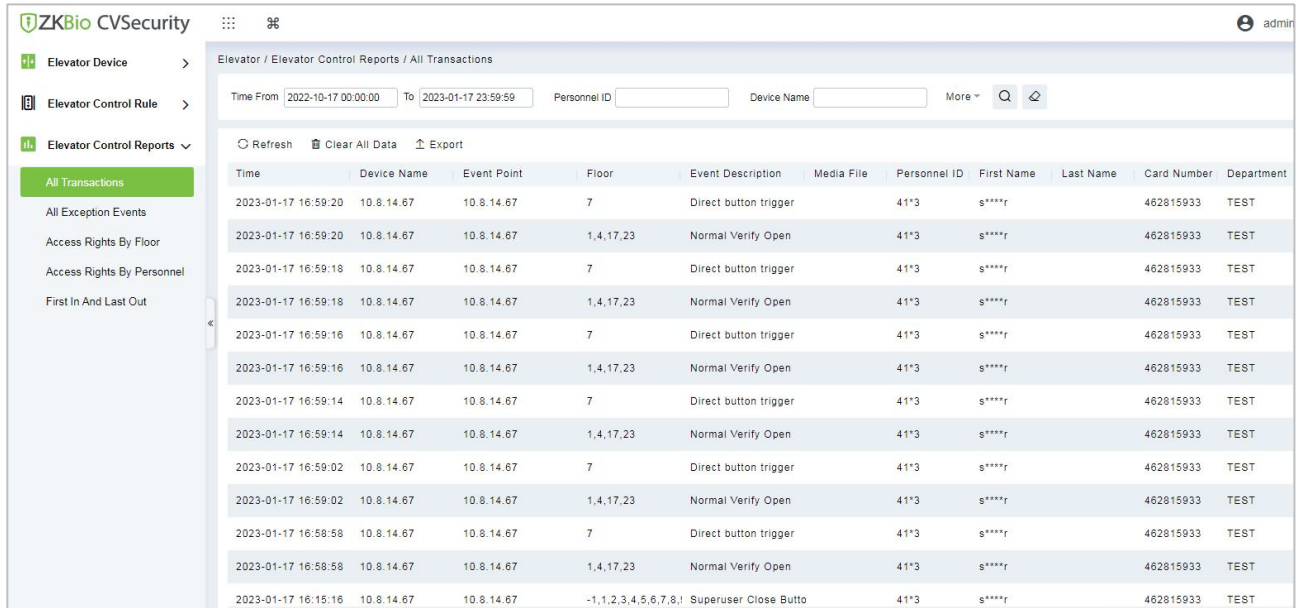


Figure 10- 32 All Transaction Interface

**Step 2:** Click **Clear All Data** to pop up prompt and click **OK** to clear all transactions.

#### 10.1.6.1.2 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

| Time                | Device Name | Event Point | Floor     | Event Description       | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Card Number | Department | Reader Name        | Verification Mode | Area      |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-------------------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------|
| 2023-01-17 16:59:20 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 1,4,17,23 | Normal Verify Open      | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:20 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 7         | Direct button trigger   | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:18 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 1,4,17,23 | Normal Verify Open      | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:18 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 7         | Direct button trigger   | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:16 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 7         | Direct button trigger   | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:16 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 1,4,17,23 | Normal Verify Open      | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:14 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 1,4,17,23 | Normal Verify Open      | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:14 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 7         | Direct button trigger   | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:02 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 1,4,17,23 | Normal Verify Open      | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:59:02 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 7         | Direct button trigger   | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:58:58 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 7         | Direct button trigger   | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:58:58 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | 1,4,17,23 | Normal Verify Open      | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |
| 2023-01-17 16:15:16 | 10.8.14.67  | 10.8.14.67  | -         | Superuser Close Buttons | 4143         | summer     |           | 462815933   | TEST       | 10.8.14.67-Reader1 | Card              | Area Name |

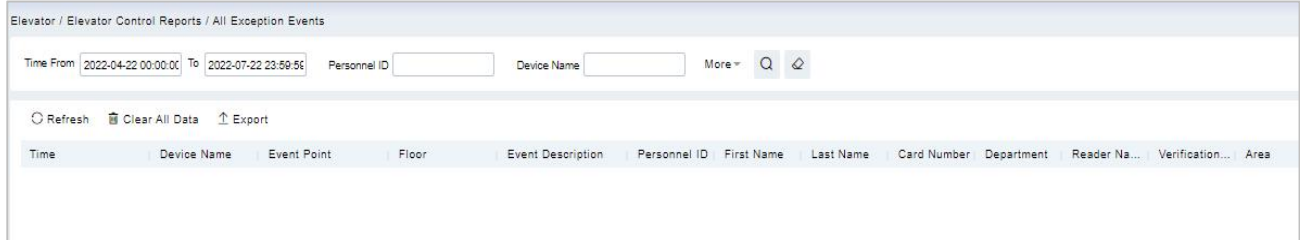
Figure 10- 33 All Transaction Export Interface

### 10.1.6.2 All Exception Events

#### 10.1.6.2.1 Clear All Data

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Reports > All Exception Events** to view exception events in specified condition. The options are same as those of **All Transactions**.



**Figure 10- 34 All Exception Events Interface**

**Step 2:** Click **Clear All Data** to pop up prompt, click **OK** to clear all exception events.

#### 10.1.6.2.2 Export

**Step 1:** You can export all exception events in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

The screenshot shows the 'All Exception Events' export interface with a table of event data. The table has columns: Time, Area, Device, Event Point, Event Description, Card Number, Personnel ID, First Name, Last Name, Department, Reader Name, Verification Mode, and Remark.

| Time                | Area      | Device         | Event Point           | Event Description          | Card Number | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Department | Reader Name           | Verification Mode   | Remark |
|---------------------|-----------|----------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------|--------------|------------|-----------|------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------|
| 2017-12-15 10:29:11 | Area Name | 192.168.214.65 | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Disabled Card              | 905930      | 1            | Jerry      | Wang      | General    | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Card or Fingerprint |        |
| 2017-12-15 10:29:14 | Area Name | 192.168.214.65 | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Disabled Card              | 4481253     | 2980         | Sherry     | Yang      | General    | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Card or Fingerprint |        |
| 2017-12-15 10:29:09 | Area Name | 192.168.214.65 | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Disabled Card              | 13260079    | 3            | Leo        | Hou       | General    | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Card or Fingerprint |        |
| 2017-12-15 10:29:09 | Area Name | 192.168.214.65 | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Operate Interval too Short | 13260079    | 3            | Leo        | Hou       | General    | 192.168.214.65-Reader | Card or Fingerprint |        |

**Figure 10- 35 All Exception Events Export Interface**

### 10.1.6.3 Access Rights by Floor

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Reports > Access Rights by Floor**, the data list in the left side shows all floors in the system, select a floor, the personnel having access levels to the floor will display on the right data list.



**Figure 10- 36 Access Right by Floor Interface**

#### 10.1.6.3.1 Export

**Step 1:** You can export all the personnel having access levels to the floor data in Excel, PDF, CSV format

| 192.168.218.65-1(1) Opening Personnel |            |           |                        |
|---------------------------------------|------------|-----------|------------------------|
| Personnel ID                          | First Name | Last Name | Department             |
| 2940                                  | Sherry     | Yang      | Hotel                  |
| 1                                     | Jerry      | Wang      | General                |
| 2                                     | Lucky      | Tan       | Development Department |
| 3                                     | Leo        | Hou       | Financial Department   |
| 5                                     | Necol      | Ye        | Marketing Department   |
| 6                                     | Amber      | Lin       | Financial Department   |
| 8                                     | Glori      | Liu       | Marketing Department   |
| 9                                     | Lilian     | Mei       | Development Department |

Figure 10- 37 Access Right by Floor Export Interface

### 10.1.6.4 Access Rights by Personnel

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Reports > Access Rights by Personnel**, the data list in the left side shows all doors in the system, select personnel, the personnel having access levels to the door will display on the right data list.

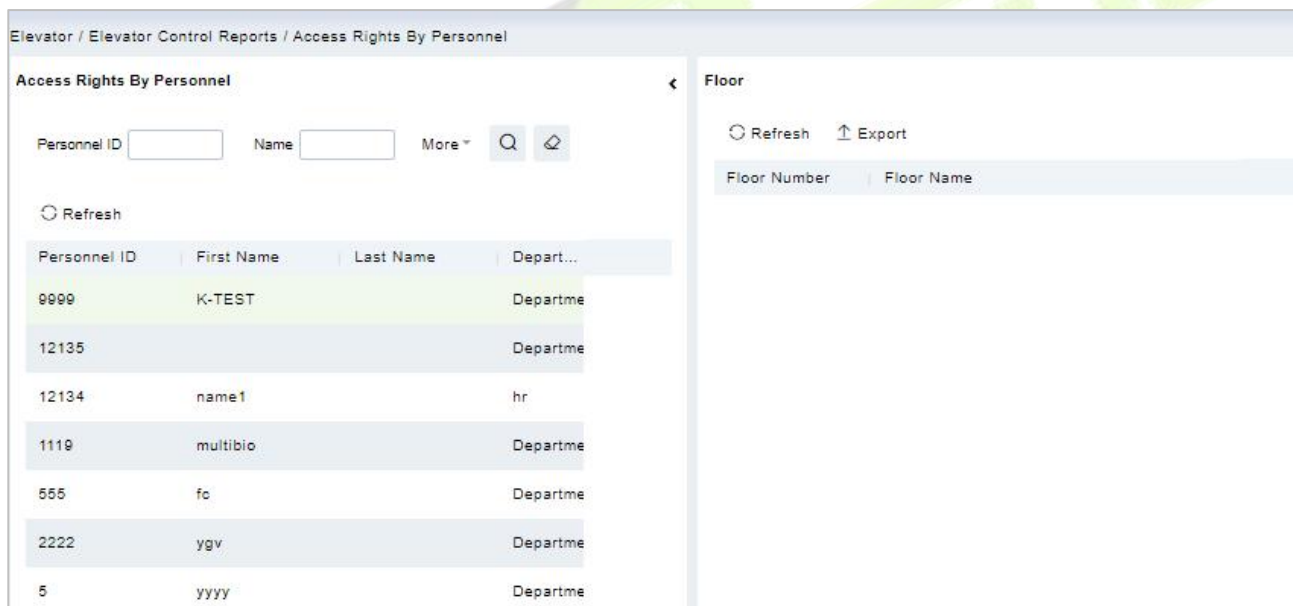


Figure 10- 38 Access Right by Personnel Interface

#### 10.1.6.4.1 Export

**Step 1:** You can e export all the floor information in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

| Floor Number | Floor Name        |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1            | 192.168.218.65-1  |
| 2            | 192.168.218.65-2  |
| 3            | 192.168.218.65-3  |
| 4            | 192.168.218.65-4  |
| 5            | 192.168.218.65-5  |
| 6            | 192.168.218.65-6  |
| 7            | 192.168.218.65-7  |
| 8            | 192.168.218.65-8  |
| 9            | 192.168.218.65-9  |
| 10           | 192.168.218.65-10 |

Figure 10- 39 Access Right by Personnel Export Interface

### 10.1.6.5 First In and Last Out

Click **Elevator Controls Reports > First In And Last Out** to view the First and the Last time interval.

#### 10.1.6.5.1 Clear All Data

Click **Clear All Data** to pop up prompt and click **OK** to clear all transactions.

#### 10.1.6.5.2 Export

You can export all transactions in Excel, PDF, CSV format.

### 10.1.7 Elevator Integration

#### 10.1.7.1 Service Config

Login to the ZKBio CVSecurity Software, and click **Elevator Module**, click **Elevator Integration > Service Config > New**, and fill in the information.

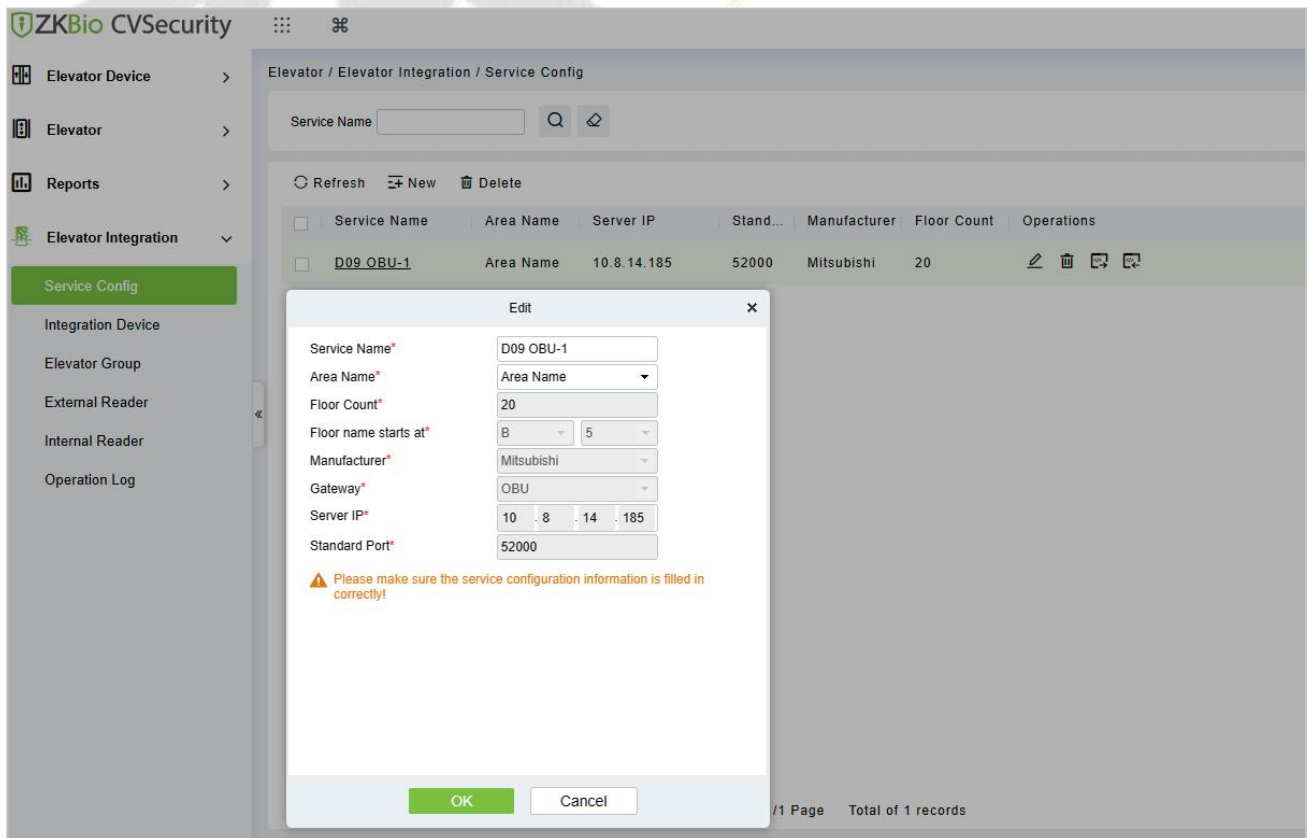
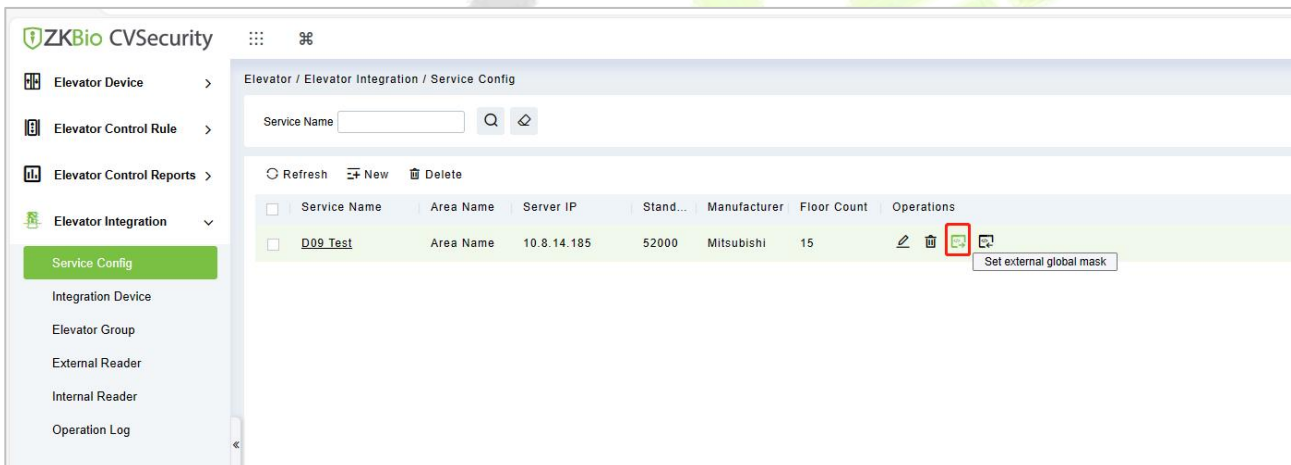


Figure 10- 40 New Service Config Interface

| Parameter            | How to set   |
|----------------------|--|
| Service Name         | User-defined.  |
| Area Name            | Based on the actual situation.                         |
| Floor Count          | Based on the actual situation.                         |
| Floor name starts at | Based on the actual situation.                         |
| Manufacturer         | Mitsubishi.  |
| Gateway              | ELSGW/OBU.   |
| Server IP            | The computer IP where the ELSGW Emulator is installed. |
| Standard Port        | 52000(default).  |

**Table 10-14 Parameter Setting Description**

Click **Set external global mask**, and select the arrive situation according to the actual situation.



**Figure 10- 41 Set External Global Mask Interface**

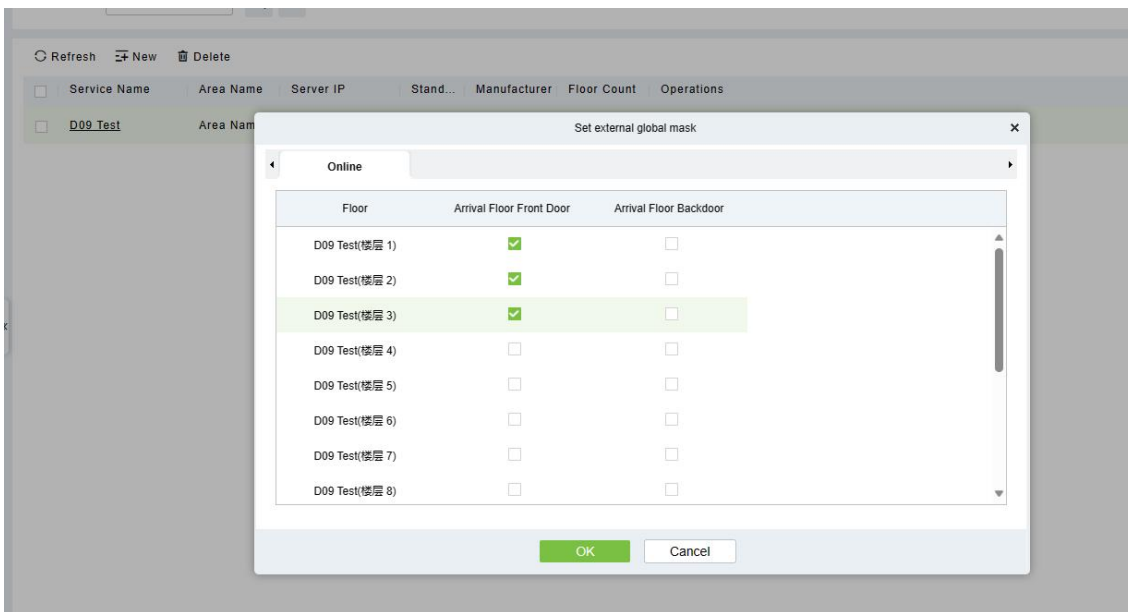


Figure 10- 42 Set External Global Mask setting Interface

Click **Set internal global mask**, and select the internal situation according to the actual situation.

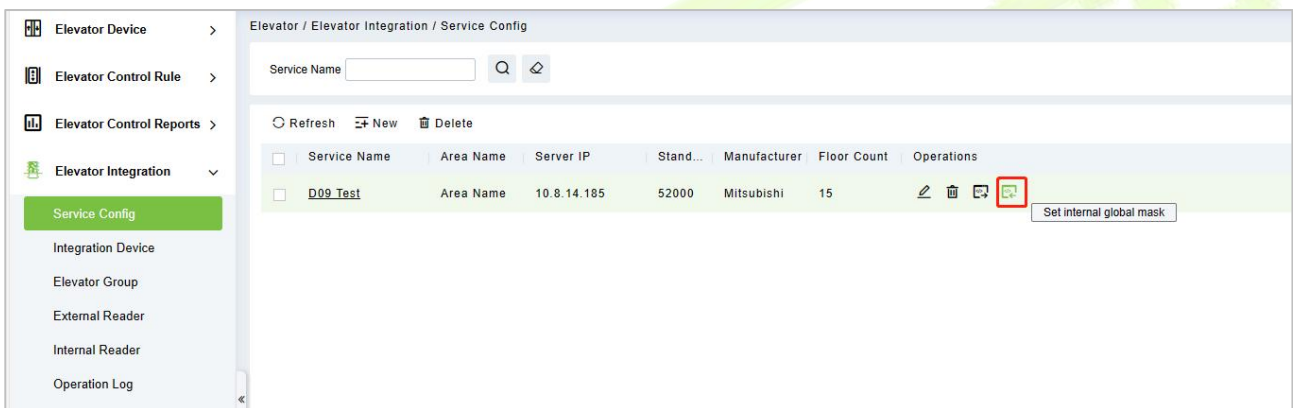


Figure 10- 43 Set Internal Global Mask Interface

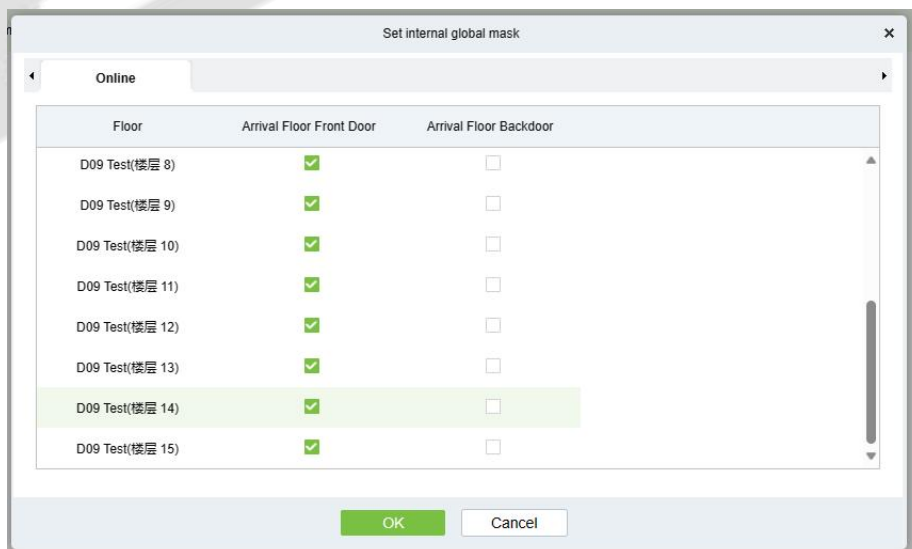


Figure 10- 44 Set Internal Global Mask Setting Interface

### 10.1.7.2 Integration Device

In the Elevator > Elevator Integration > Integration Device> New, add the related access control devices.

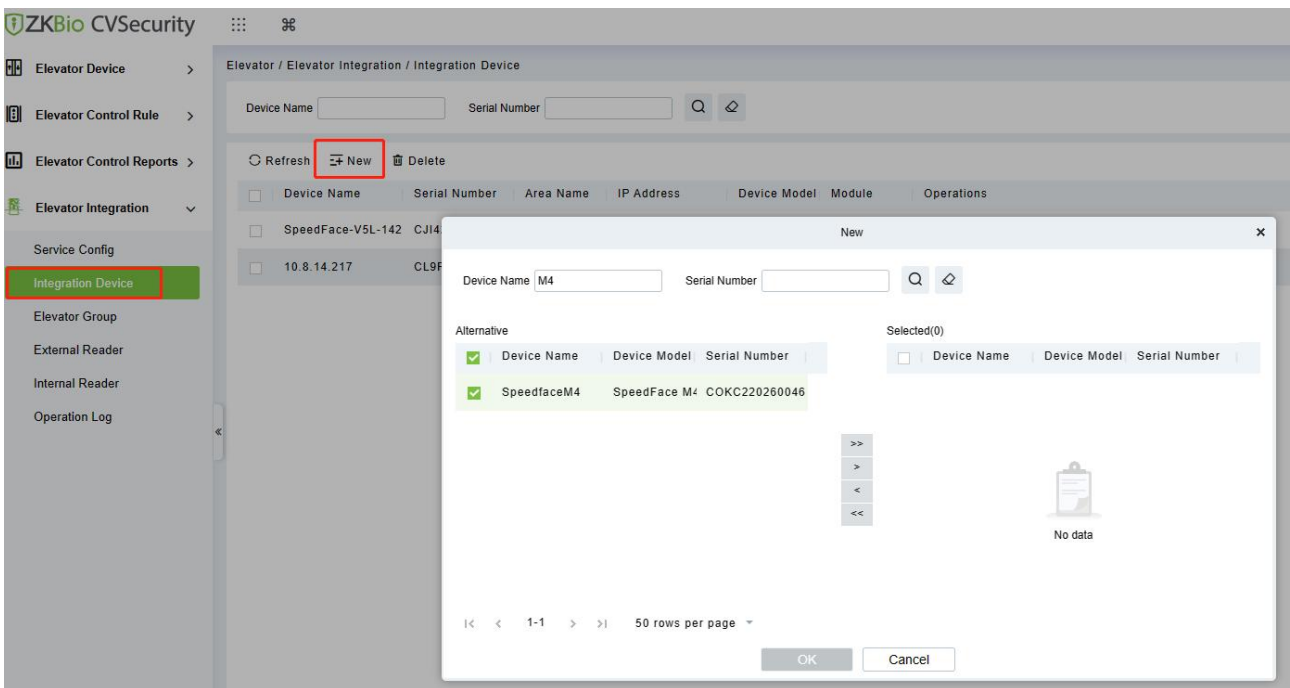


Figure 10- 45 New Intergration Device Interface

### 10.1.7.3 Elevator Group

In the **Elevator > Elevator Integration > Elevator Group> New**, fill in the group name and group number, and select the service that we just added.

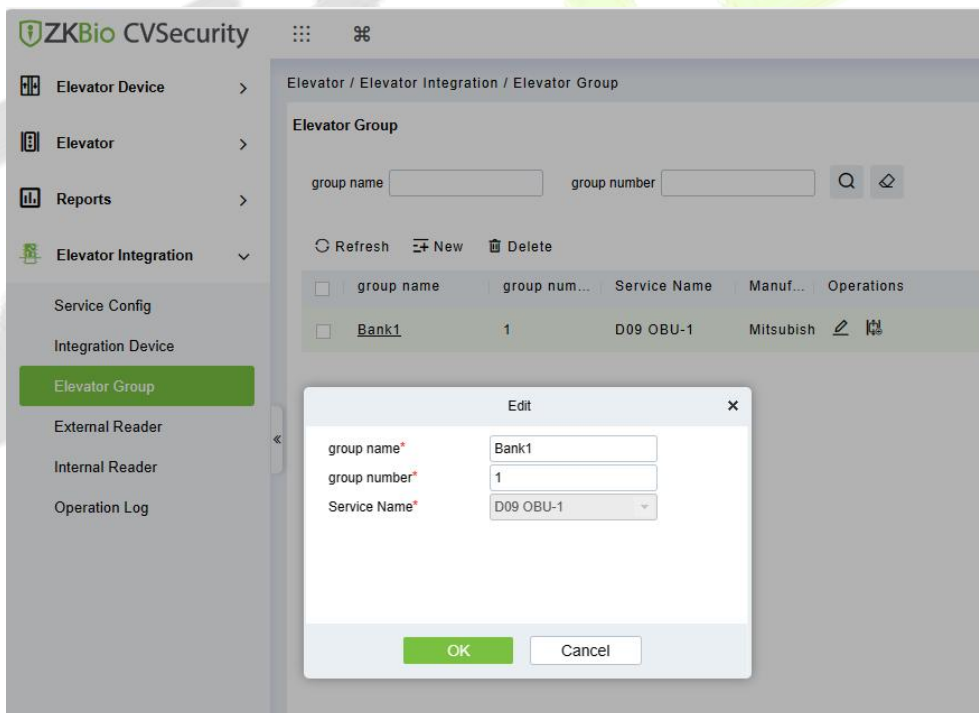
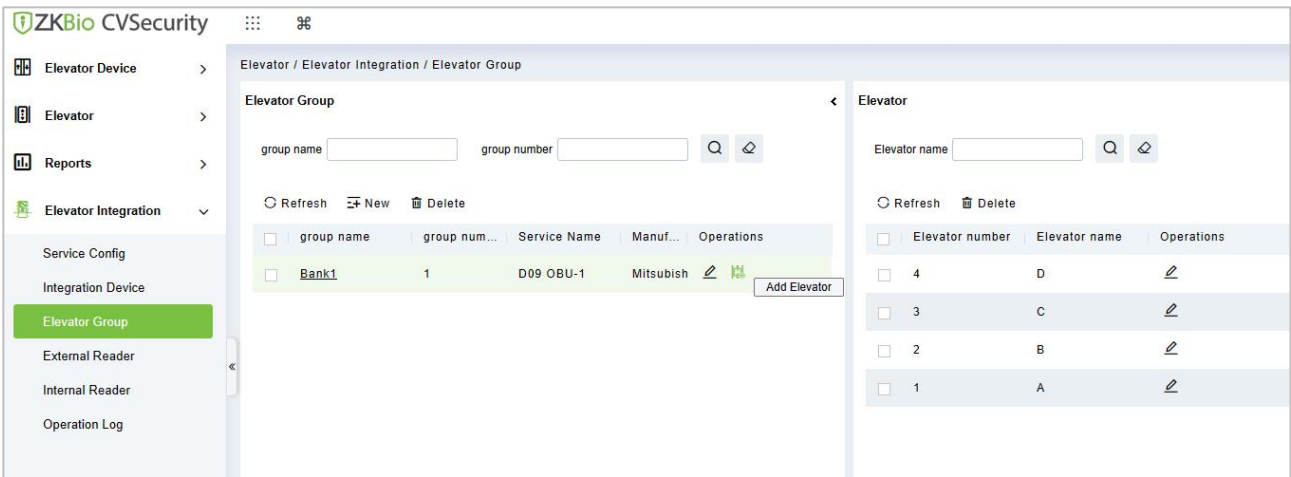


Figure 10- 46 New Elivator Group Interface

Then add the Elevator for the elevator group.

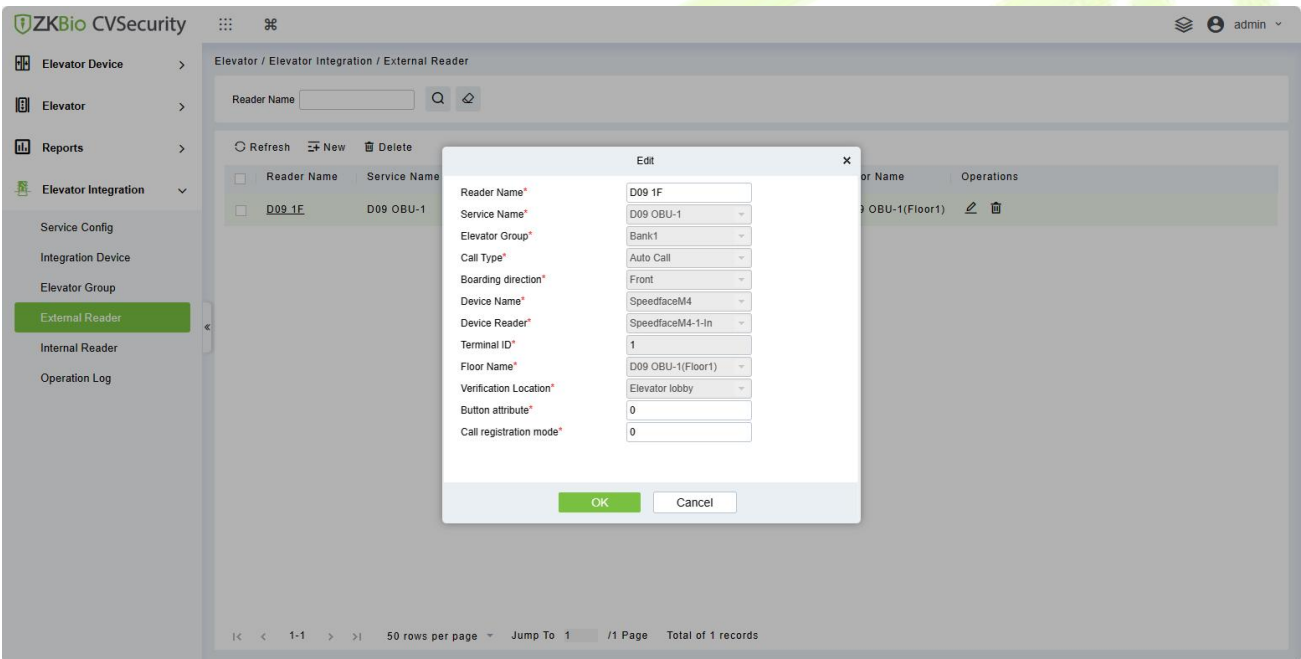


**Figure 10- 47 Elivator Group Interface**

### 10.1.7.4 External Reader

**External Reader** refers to the reader installed outside the elevator, generally used for DOP/HOP.

In the Elevator > Elevator Integration > External Reader> New, and fill in the information.



**Figure 10- 48 New External reader Interface**

| Parameter      | How to set   |
|----------------|--|
| Reader Name    | User-defined.  |
| Service Name   | Select corresponding service that added in Service Config.   |
| Elevator Group | Select corresponding elevator group that added in Elevator Group.  |
| Call Type      | <b>Option 1. Manual Call:</b> which means manually calling the destination floor.<br><b>Option 2: Auto Call,</b> which means the system automatically calls the user's |

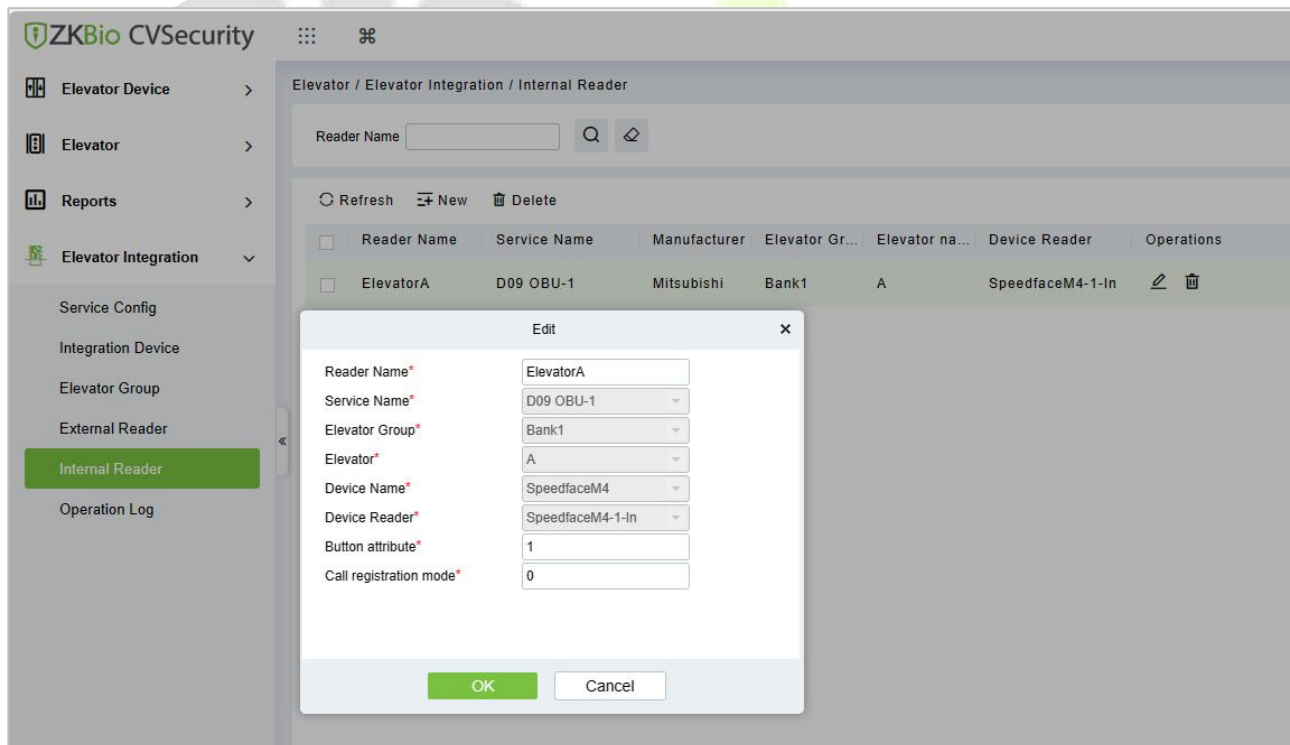
|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
|                        | default floor.   |
| Boarding direction     | Based on the actual situation: <b>Front / Rear.</b>                              |
| Device Name            | User-defined.  |
| Device Reader          | Select the integration device based on the actual situation.                     |
| Terminal ID            | User-defined.  |
| Floor Name             | Select the floor according to the actual situation.                              |
| Verification Location  | Based on the actual situation: Elevator lobby / Entrance / Room / Security gate. |
| Button attribute       | User-defined.  |
| Call registration mode | User-defined.  |

**Table 10-15 Parameter Setting Description**

### 10.1.7.5 Internal Reader

**Internal Reader** refers to the reader installed outside the elevator, generally used for COP.

Click **Elevator > Elevator Integration > Internal Reader > New**, and fill in the relevant information.



**Figure 10- 49 New Internal Reader Interface**

| Parameter              | How to set  |
|------------------------|---|
| Reader Name            | User-defined.   |
| Service Name           | Select corresponding service that added in Service Config.        |
| Elevator Group         | Select corresponding elevator group that added in Elevator Group. |
| Elevator               | Select the elevator based on the actual situation.                |
| Device Name            | User-defined.   |
| Device Reader          | Select the integration device based on the actual situation.      |
| Button attribute       | User-defined.   |
| Call registration mode | User-defined.   |

**Table 10-16 Parameter Setting Description**



ZKBio  
CVSecurity-Mitsub

For more information, please refer to the following materials .

## 11 Consumption (Offline)

The devices for which the offline consumption module is applicable are Promerc 10, Peomerc 20.

### 11.1 Consumption System

This module allows the user to set up a consumption system with the device and realize their functions. The device can be set as either a "Consumer Machine", a "Cashier Machine" or a "Subsidy Machine". The "Consumer machine" type combines various consumption modes to meet the diversified consumption requirements such as fixed value mode or amount mode. The "Cashier Machine" type realizes the device recharge and refund function. The "Subsidy machine" type is used to receive allowances/subsidies. This module will collect the data from the device and summarize it on the various consumption reports. It can also perform various operations like issue card, card return, card suspend and resume, and other operations through the card reader connected to the software.

#### 11.1.1 Consumption Basic Management

##### 11.1.1.1 Piecewise Fixed Value

Piecewise Fixed value is the value and validity of a card which is supposed to be used on the consumer device.

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Piecewise Fixed Value** as shown in the following figure:

The screenshot shows the 'Consumption / Consumption Basic Information / Piecewise Fixed Value' page. It features a search bar with fields for 'Number', 'Name', and 'Is It Effective'. Below the search bar is a 'Refresh' button and a table with the following data:

| Number | Name      | Amount | Start Time | End Time | Is It Effective | Remarks | Operations |
|--------|-----------|--------|------------|----------|-----------------|---------|------------|
| 1      | Default 1 | 10.0   | 00:00      | 10:00    | Yes             |         |            |
| 2      | Default 2 | 10.0   | 10:01      | 14:00    | Yes             |         |            |
| 3      | Default 3 | 10.0   | 14:01      | 20:00    | Yes             |         |            |
| 4      | Default 4 | 10.0   | 20:01      | 23:59    | Yes             |         |            |
| 5      | Default 5 | 10.0   | 00:00      | 10:00    | No              |         |            |
| 6      | Default 6 | 10.0   | 10:01      | 14:00    | No              |         |            |
| 7      | Default 7 | 10.0   | 14:01      | 20:00    | No              |         |            |
| 8      | Default 8 | 10.0   | 20:01      | 23:59    | No              |         |            |

At the bottom of the table, there is a pagination bar showing '1-8', '50 rows per page', 'Jump To 1 / 1 Page', and 'Total of 8 records'.

Figure 11- 1

#### ● Edit:

By default, there are eight values, click **Edit** on the operation column to open the modification dialog box.

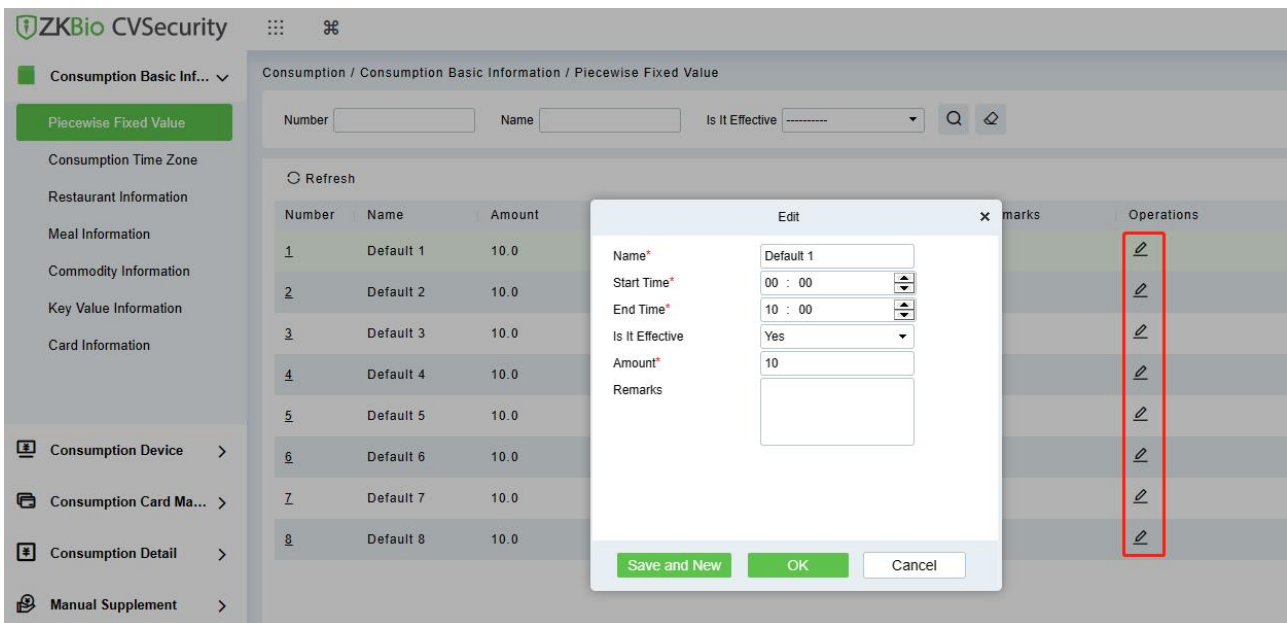


Figure 11- 2

You can provide the desired information in the dialog box which include: **Name**, **Start time**, **End time**, **Whether Effective** (status of the card), **Amount**, and **Remarks**.

### 11.1.1.2 Consumption Time Zone

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Consumption Time Zone** as shown in the following figure:

By default, the system has some Consumption Time zones, you can select and edit according to your preferences.

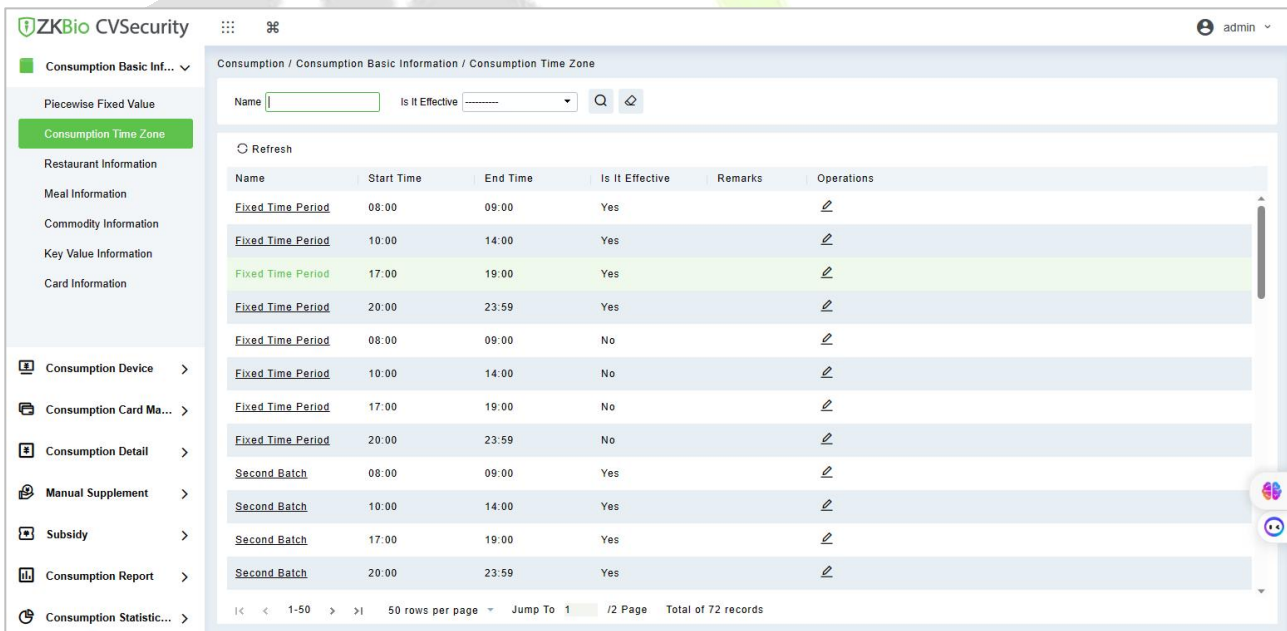


Figure 11- 3

● Edit:

Click **Edit** column on the operation column to open the modification dialog box.

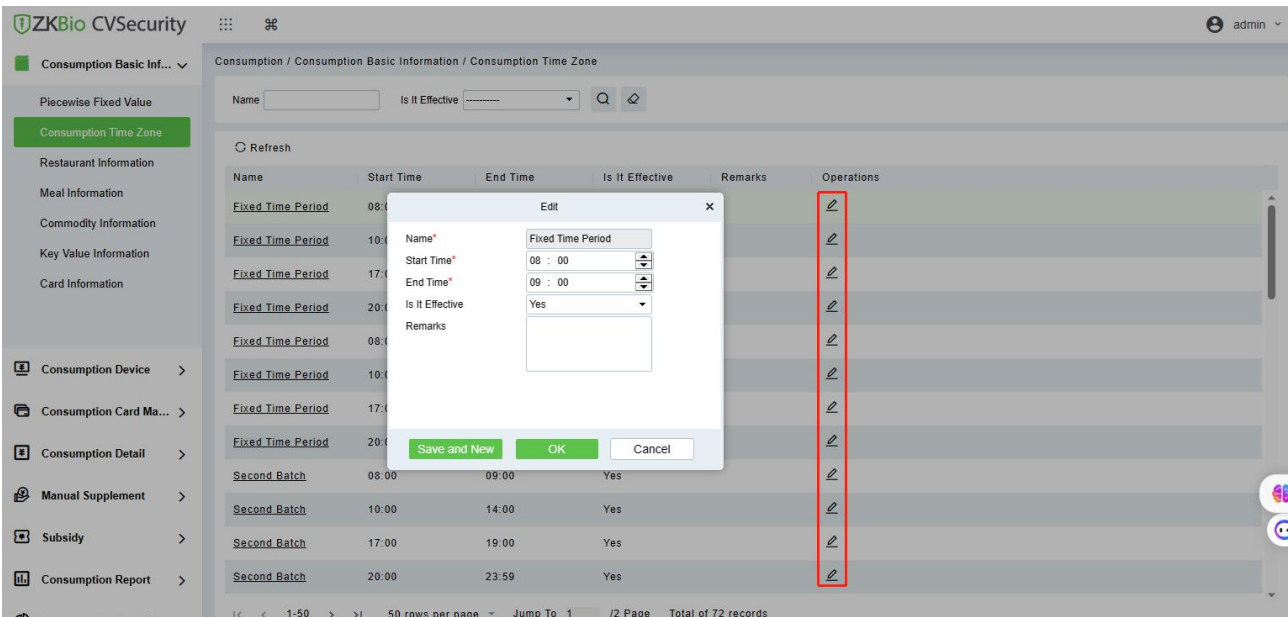


Figure 11- 4

On the dialog box, you can select the required **Start time**, **End time**, **Whether Effective**, and **Remarks** (optional), as shown in the above figure. After providing the information, click **OK**.

### 11.1.1.3 Restaurant Information

By default, a Restaurant name is already added, you can edit it and also add new ones.

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Restaurant Information**, shown as following figure:

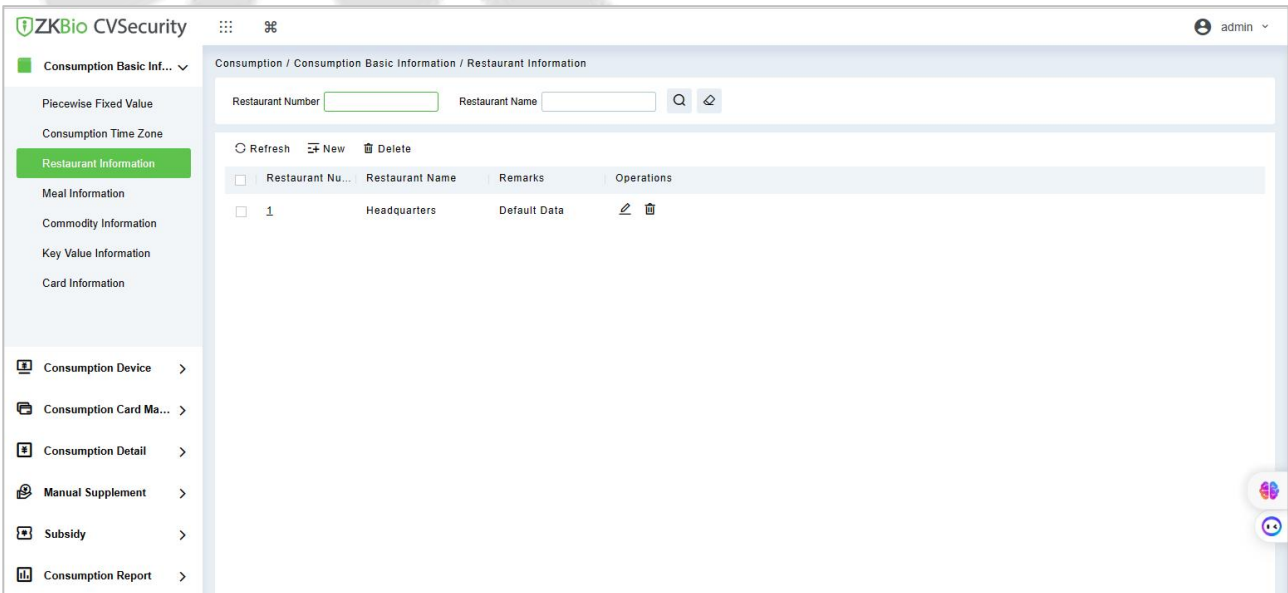


Figure 11- 5

● New:

Click **New**, to add a restaurant.

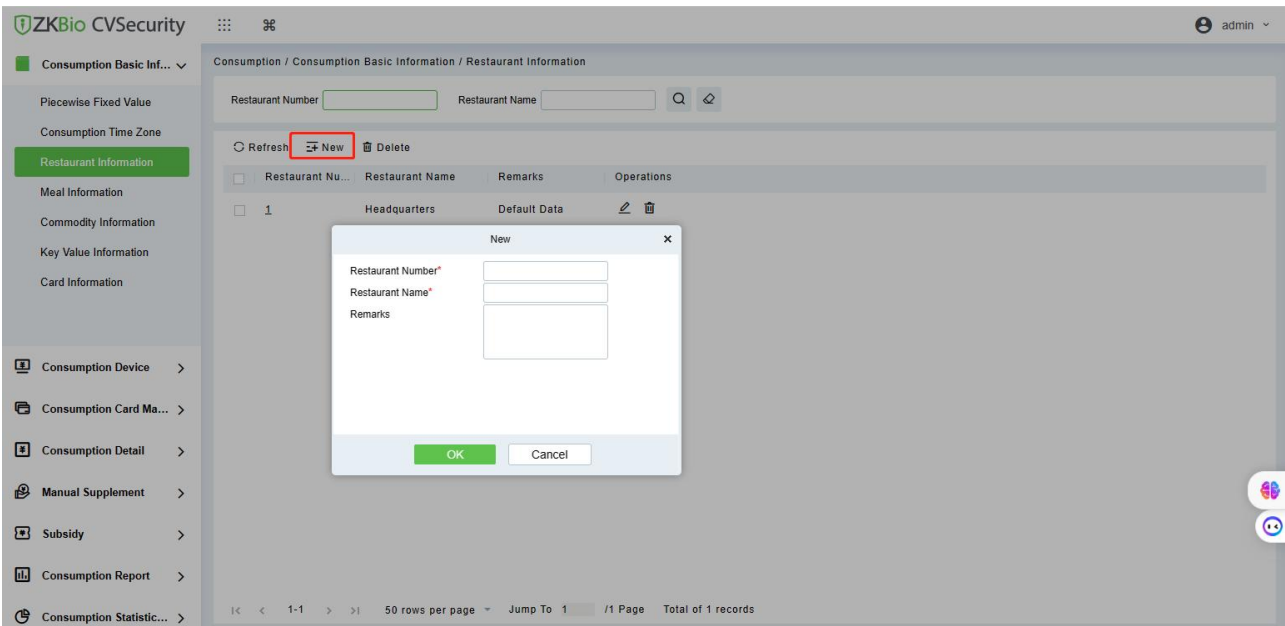


Figure 11- 6

Type the preferred Restaurant number, Restaurant name, and Remarks (optional) information, and then click **OK** to save and close or click **Save and New** for continue adding.

● Delete:

You can directly click **Delete** on the required hotel to remove it from the system.

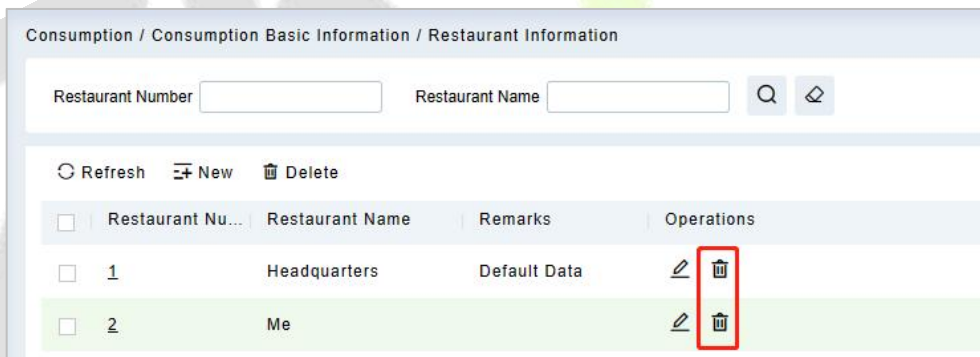


Figure 11- 7

For deleting in batch, select the required hotel(s) as shown below and click **Delete**. The default restaurant number 1 cannot be deleted.

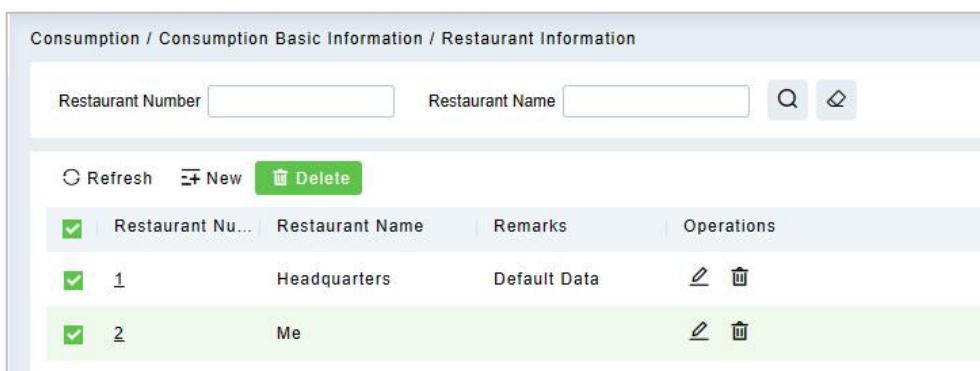


Figure 11- 8

● Edit:

Click **Edit** in the operation column to open the modification dialog box.

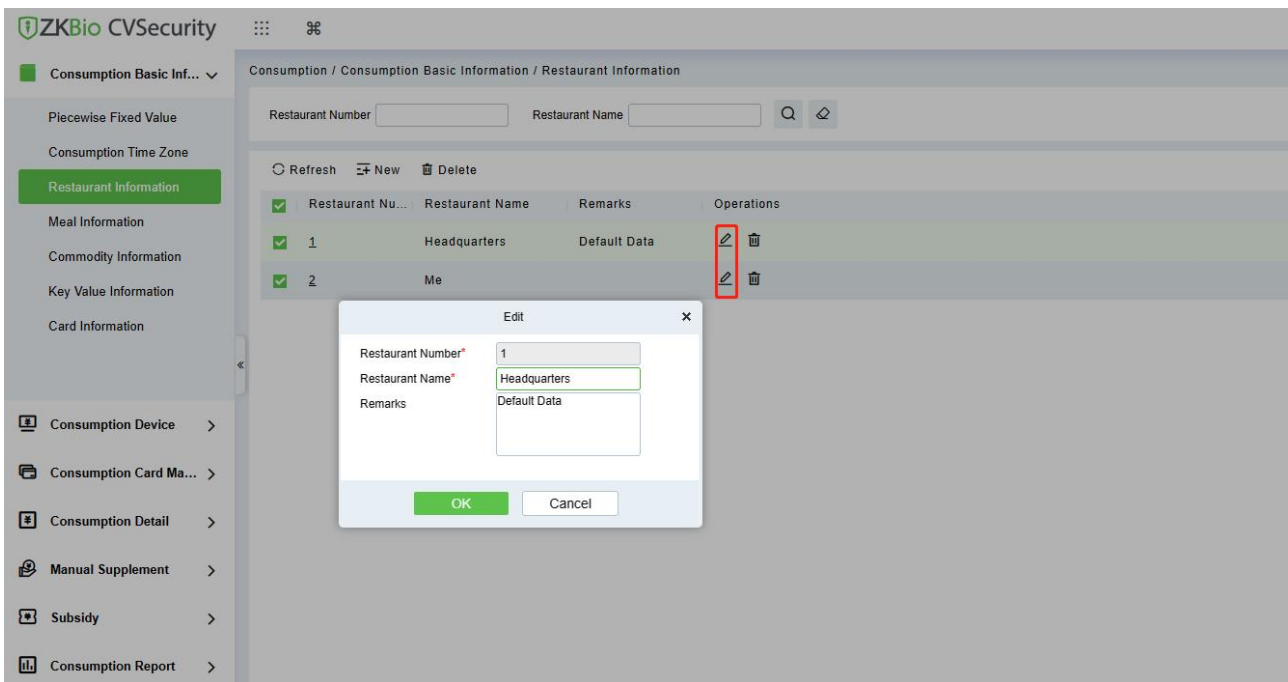


Figure 11-9

11.1.1.4 Meal Information

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Meal Information**, shown as following figure:

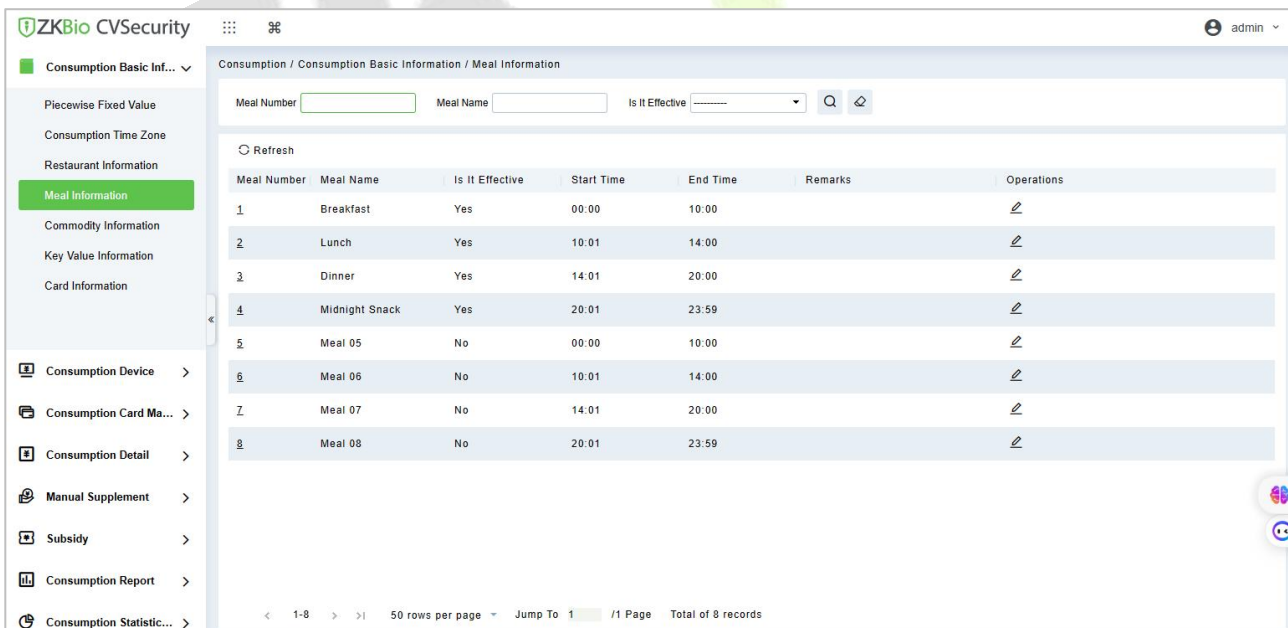


Figure 11-10

● Edit:

Click on the meal number of list and the edit column of the operation to pop up the modification dialog box.

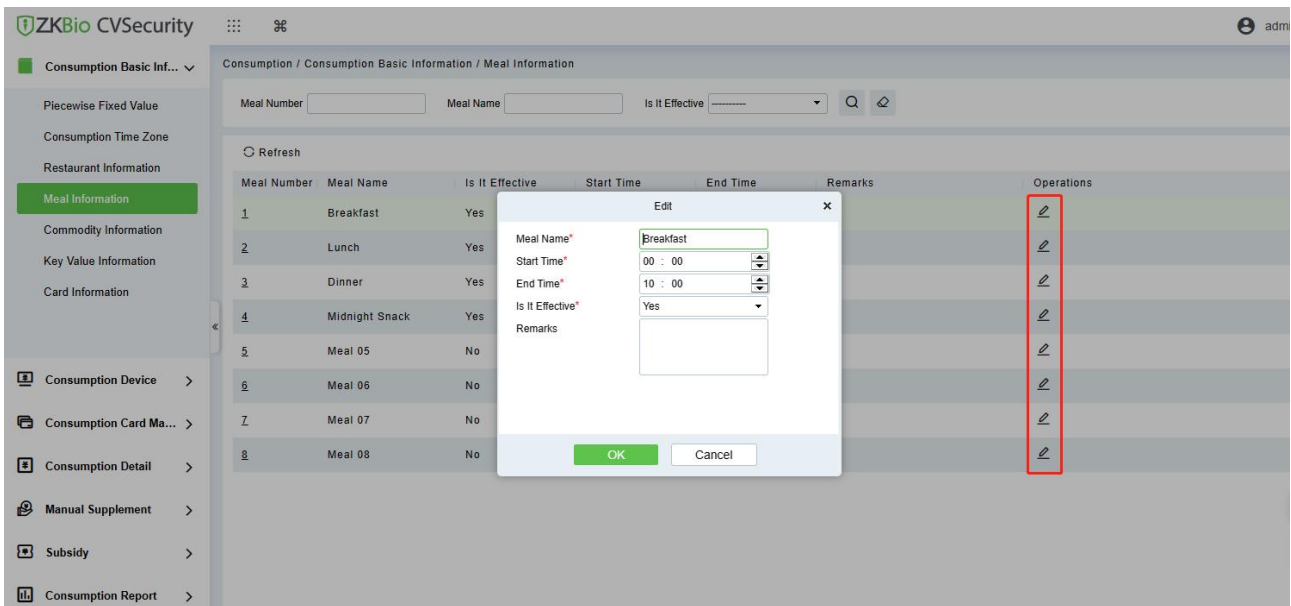


Figure 11- 11

Enter the information in the dialog box which include: **Meal Name**, **Start Time**, **End time**, **Whether Effective** (status), **Remarks** (optional) and then click **OK** to save.

### 11.1.1.5 Commodity Information

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Commodity Information** as shown in the following figure:

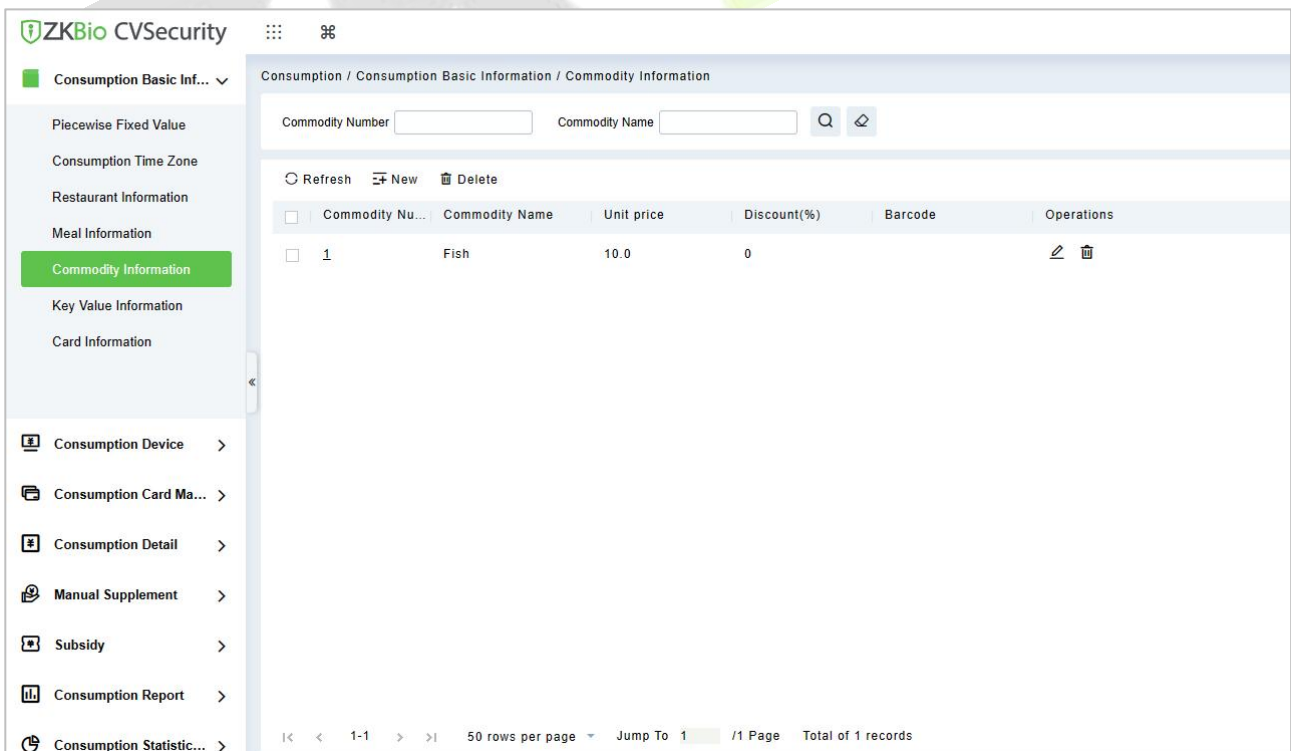


Figure 11- 12

●New:

Click **New** to add, enter required **Commodity number**, **Commodity Name**, **Barcode**, **Unit price**, **Discount** in the dialog box, and then click **OK** to save and close or click **Save and New** for continue adding.

⚠**Note:** If you put 0 in **Discount**, then the product is not discounted.

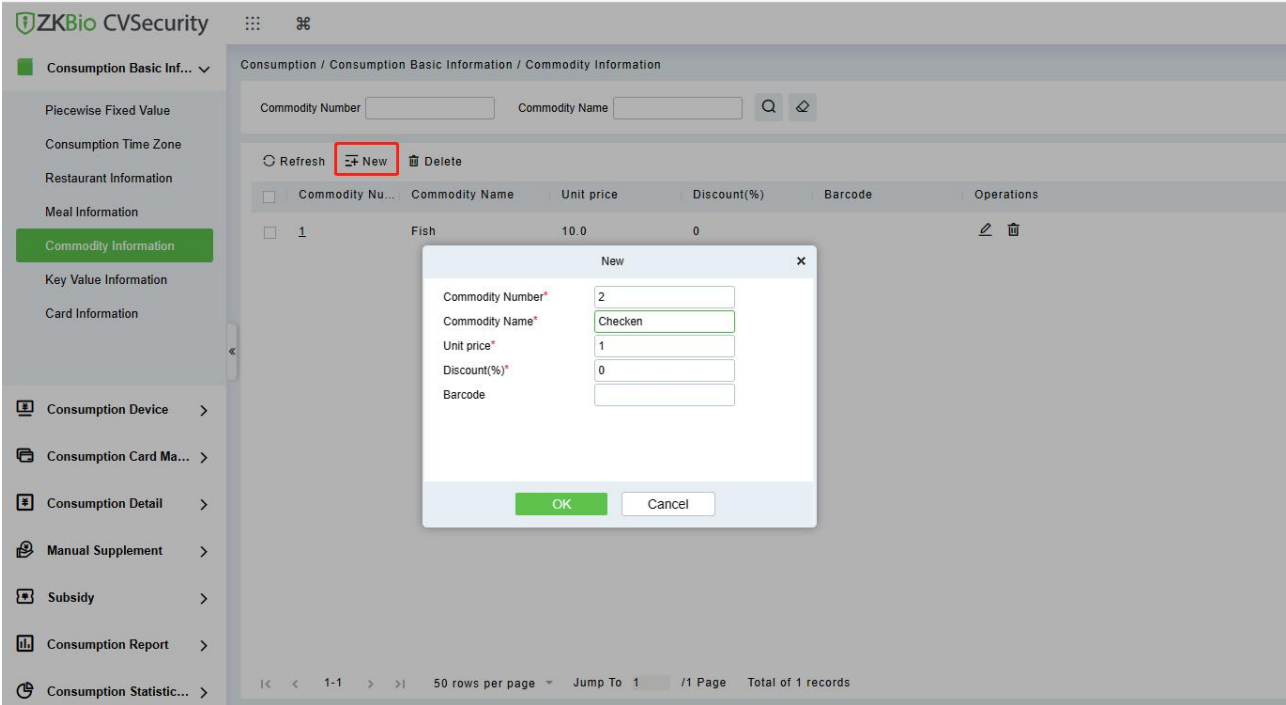


Figure 11- 13

●Delete:

You can directly click **Delete** on the required Commodity to remove it from the system.

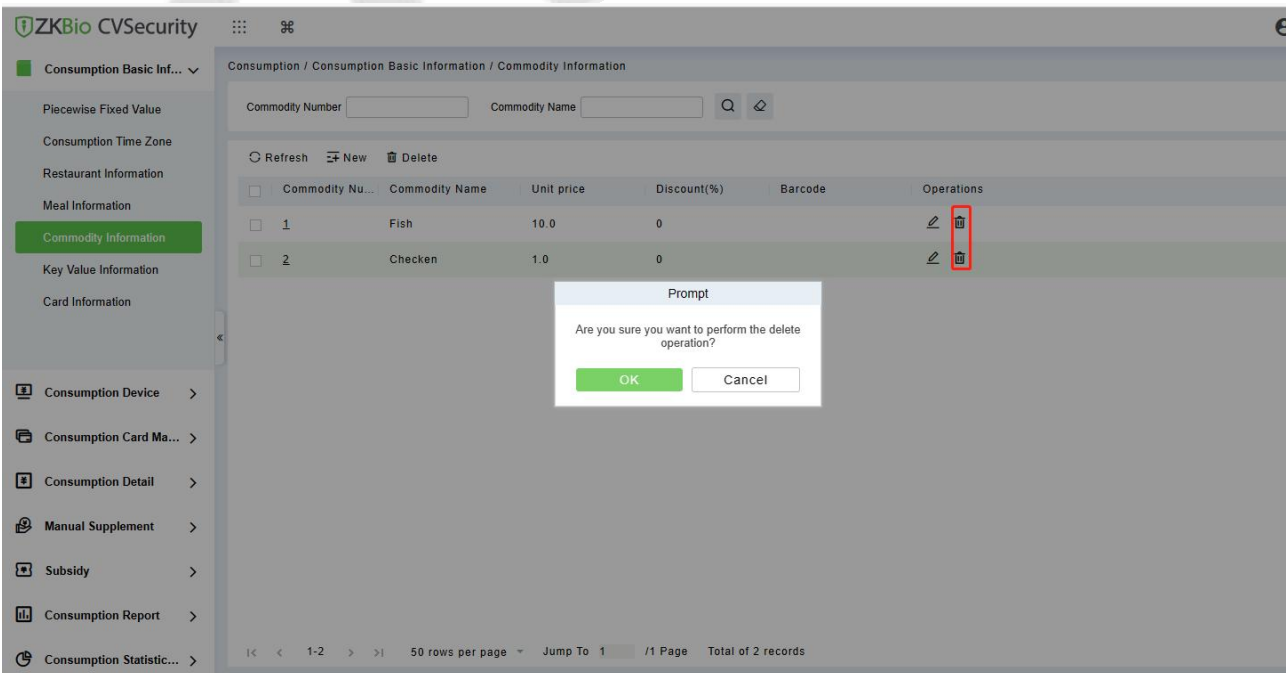


Figure 11- 14

For deleting in batch, select the required Commodity(s) as shown below and click **Delete**.

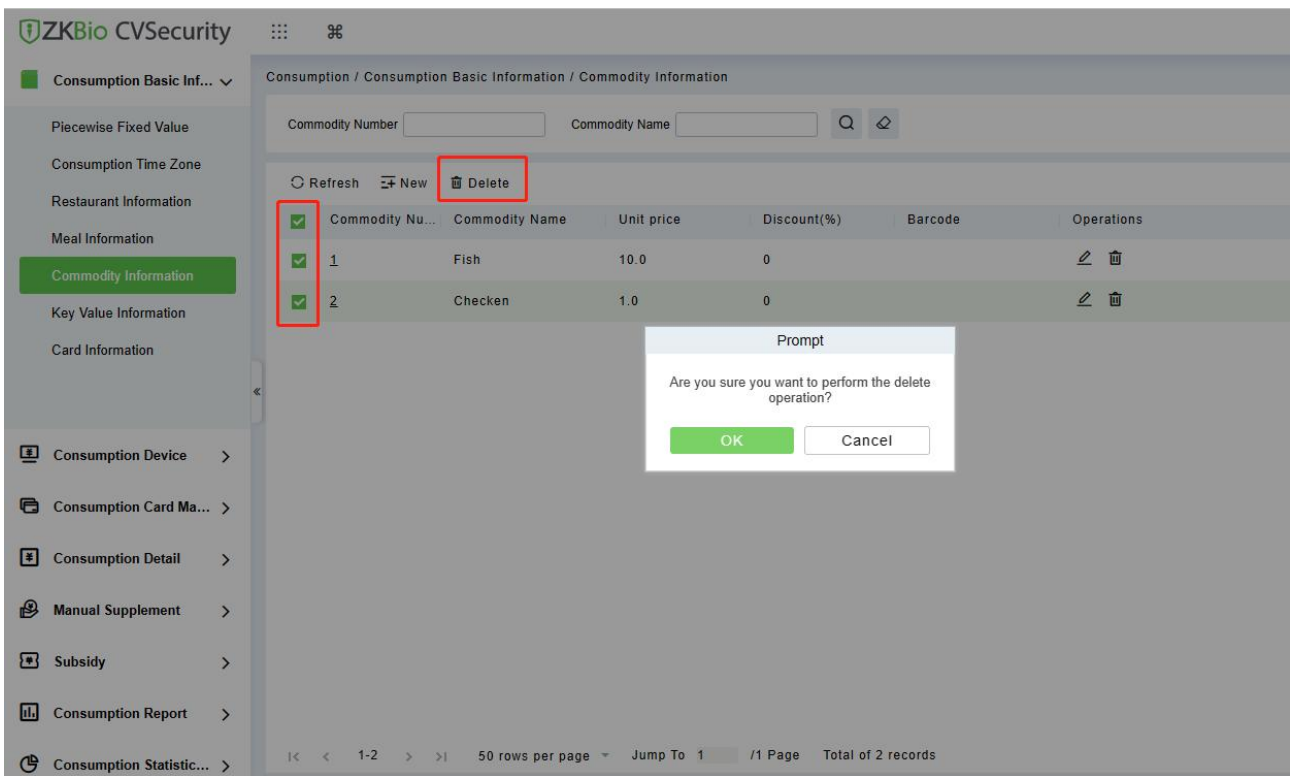


Figure 11- 15

### 11.1.2 Key Value Information

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Key Value Information** to enter the unit value in the consumer device as shown below:

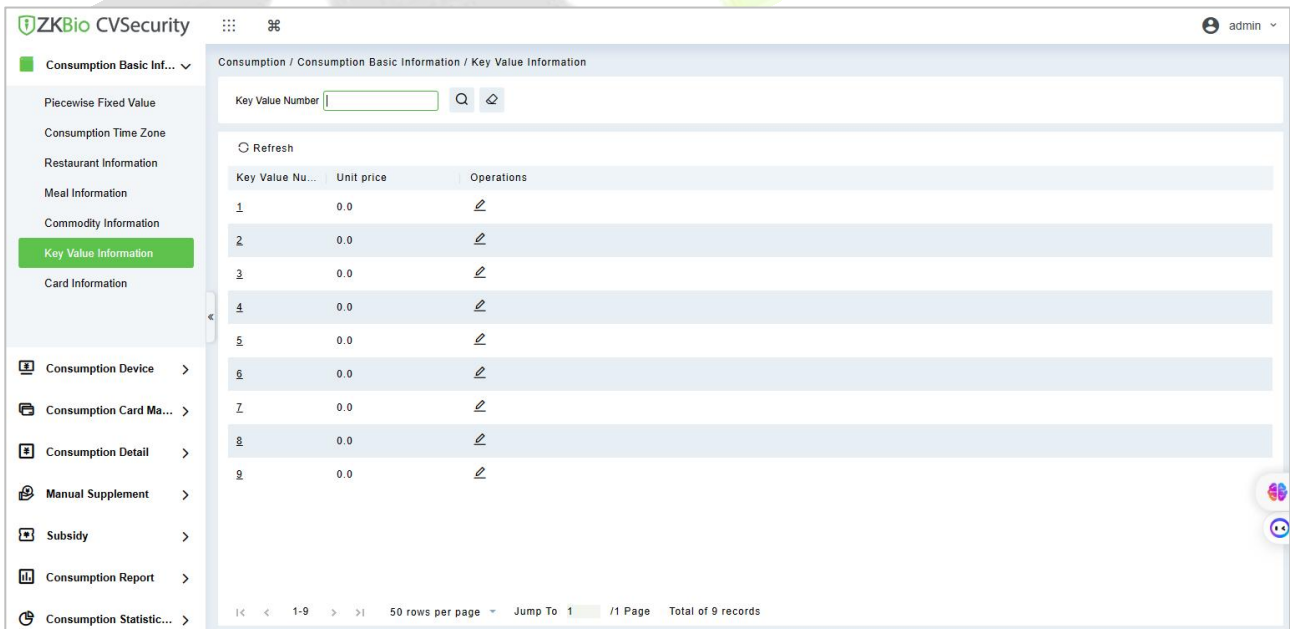


Figure 11- 16

● Edit:

Click the key value number of the list and the edit column of the operation to pop up the modification dialog box. Only the unit price can be modified. The specific display of the dialog box is as follows:

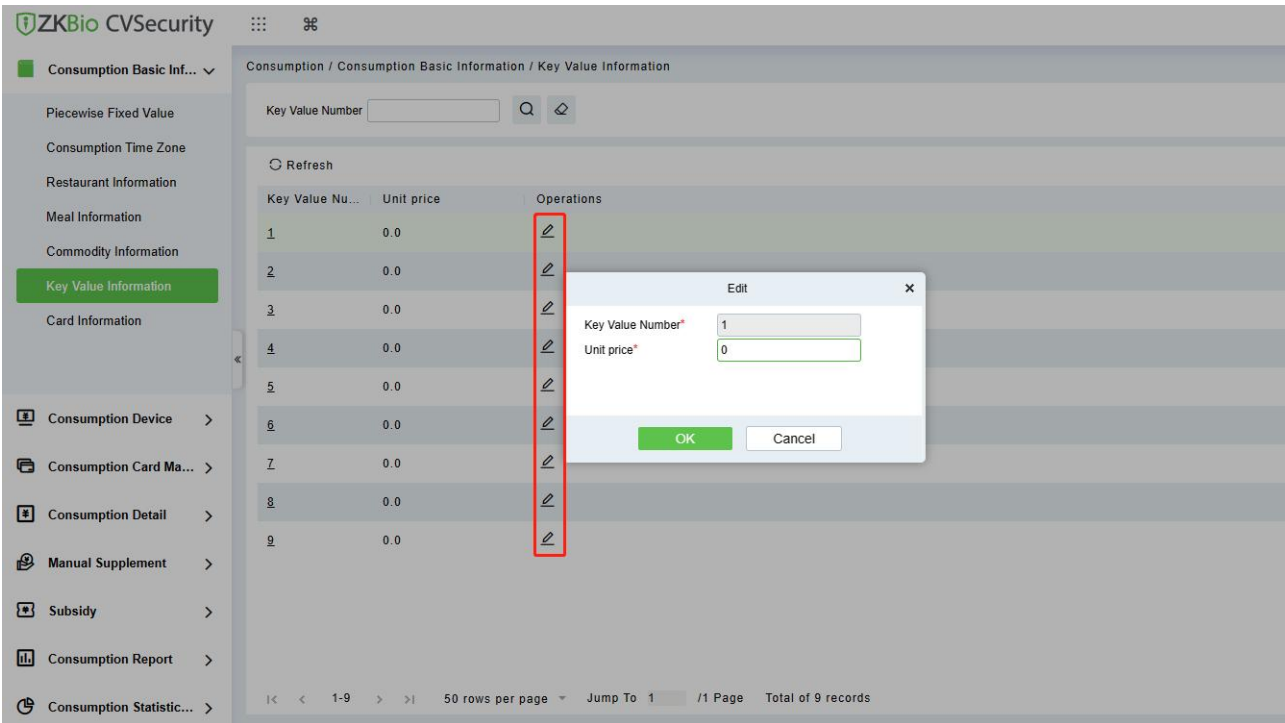


Figure 11-17

### 11.1.3 Card Information

Click Consumption Basic Management > Card Information, as shown below:

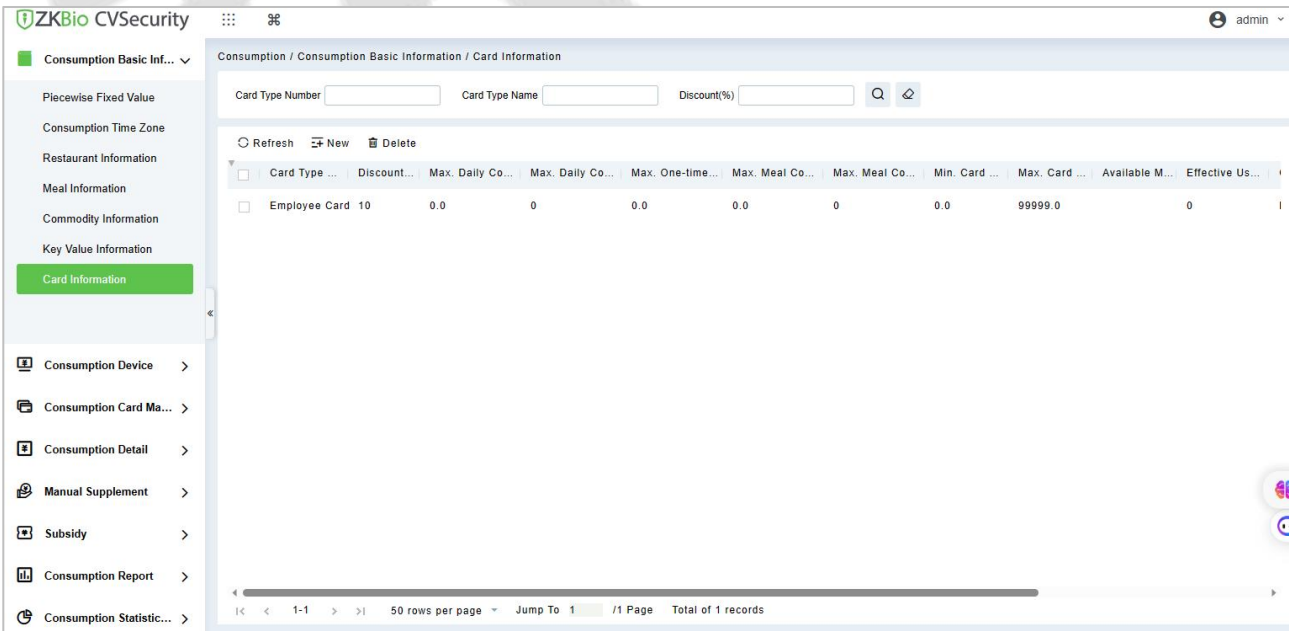


Figure 11-18

● New:

Click **New**, in the dialog box, you can fill in the **Card Type Number**, **Card Type Name**, **Discount**, **Consumption Time Zone**, **Maximum Daily Consumption Amount**, **Maximum Daily Consumption Times**, **Maximum One-Time Consumption Amount**, **Maximum Meal Consumption Amount**,

**Maximum Meal Consumption Times, Minimum Card Balance, Maximum Card Balance, Effective Use of Days, Available Meal, Available Device, Remarks, as shown below:**

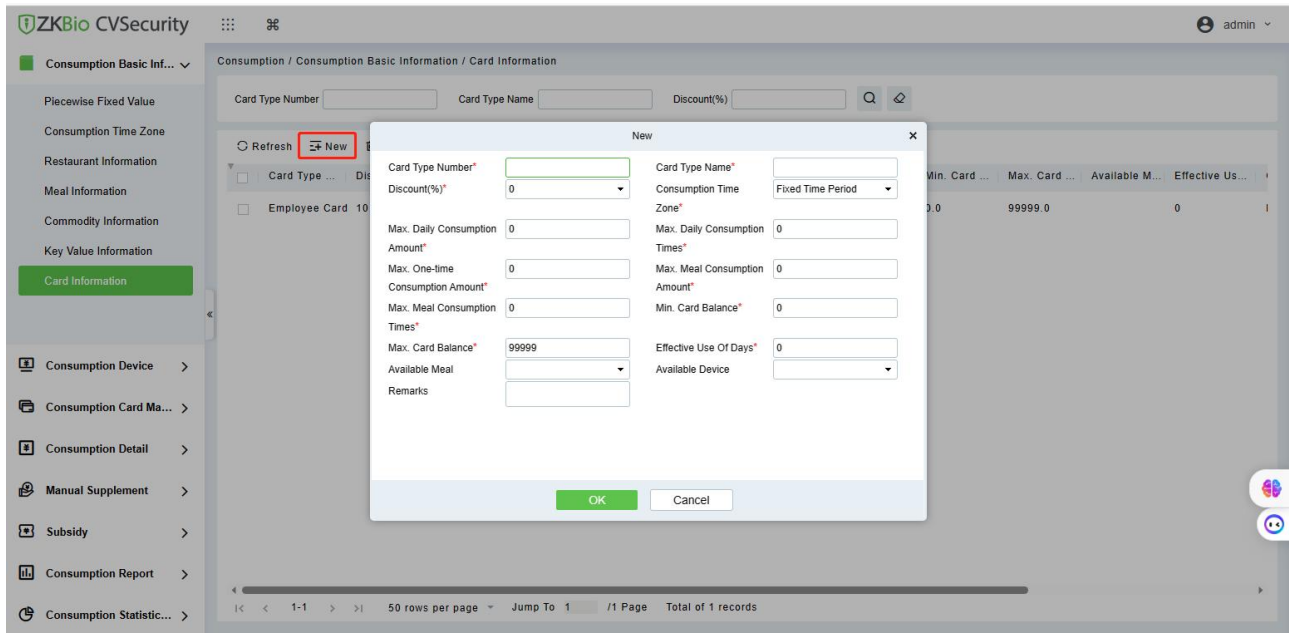


Figure 11-19

● Edit:

Click the card type number of the list and the edit column of the operation to pop up the modification dialog box.

● Delete:

You can directly click **Delete** on the required Card to remove it from the system.

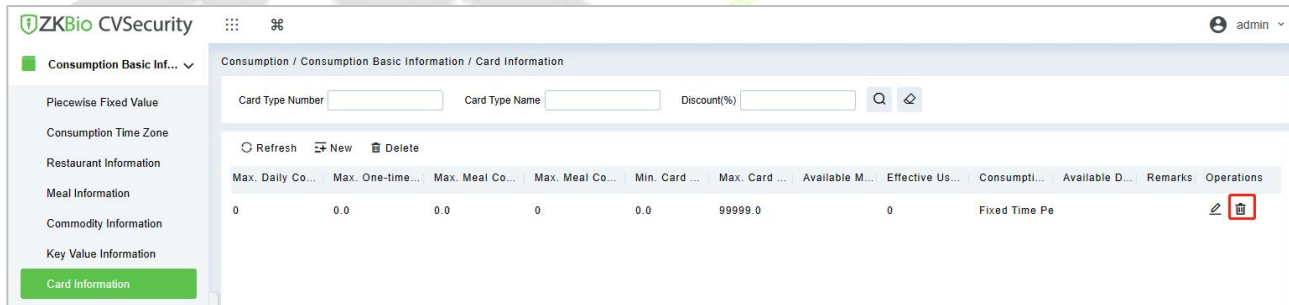


Figure 11-20

For deleting in batch, select the required Card (s) as shown below and click **Delete**. The default employee card cannot be deleted.

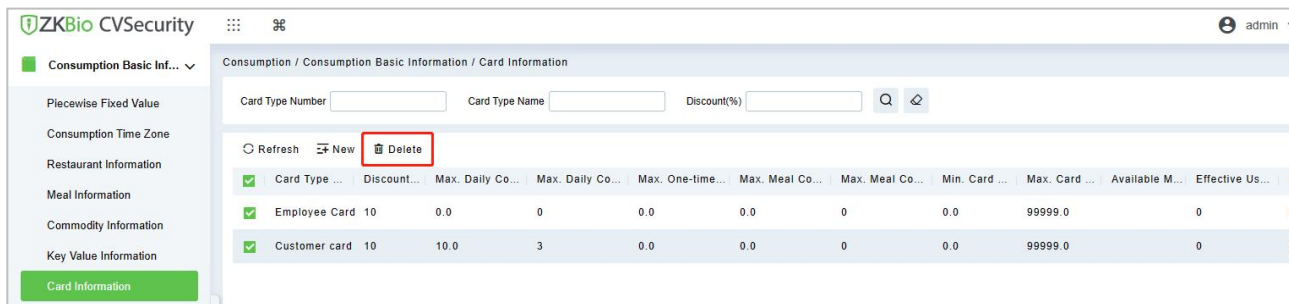


Figure 11-21

## 11.2 Device Management

This module is used to manage consumer devices and set basic parameters of the consumer system.

### 11.2.1 Consumption Device

Click Consumption Device > Consumption Device, as shown below:

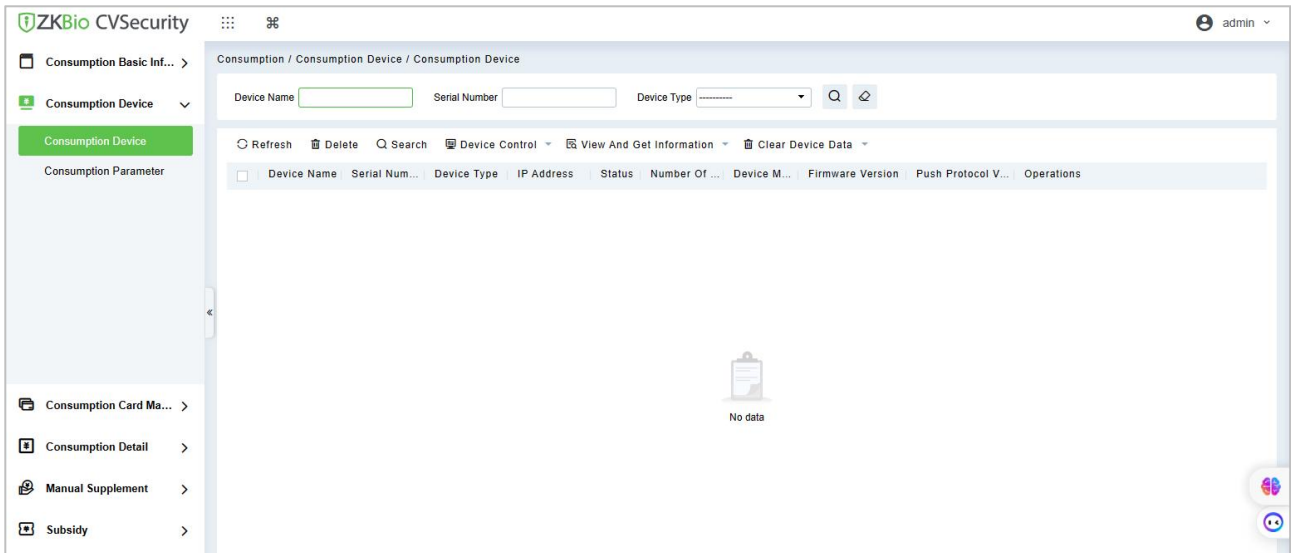


Figure 11- 22

● New:

Click **Search**, the system will automatically searching to add the device . The specific display of the dialog box is as follows:

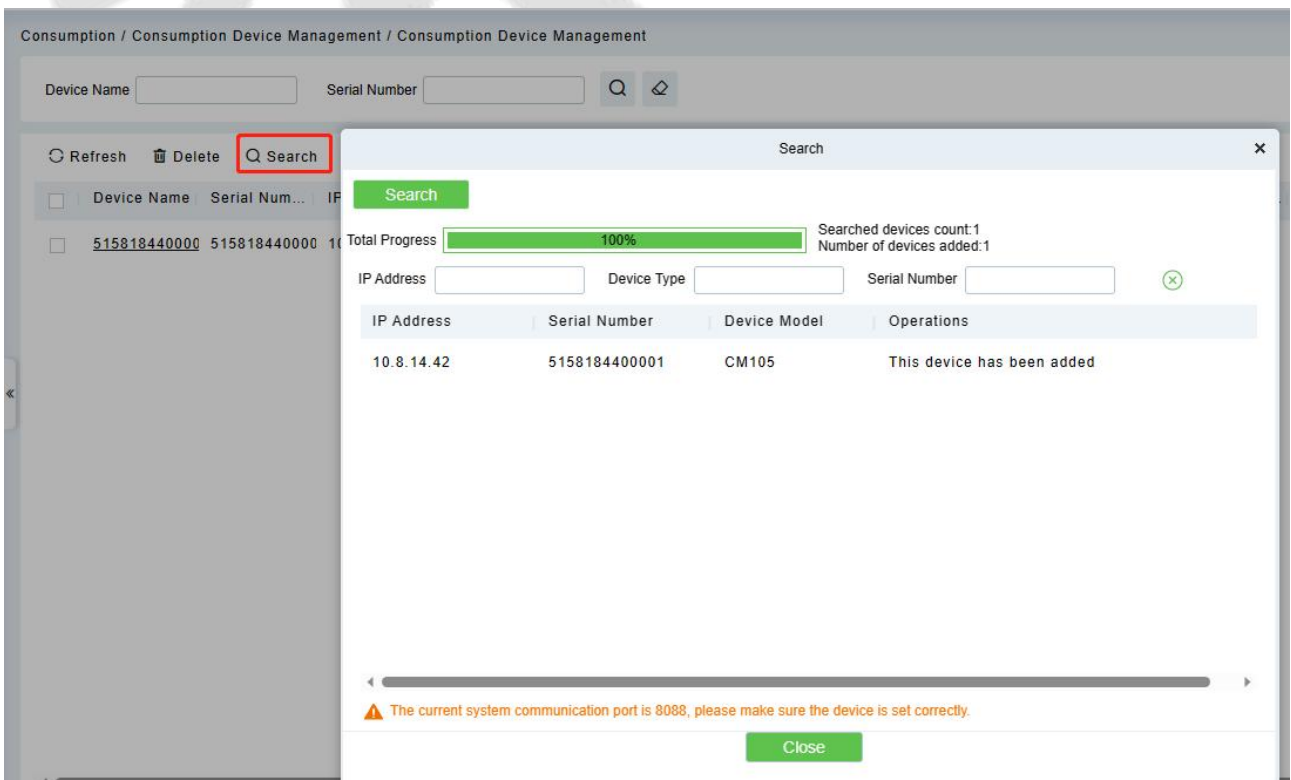


Figure 11- 23

● Some parameters are explained as follows:

**Equipment use:** This will define the usage type of the consumer device.

**Whether accounting:** It appears when the device type is selected as Consumer machine. If the **Whether Accounting** check box is selected, the billing record is generated when the card is swiped and the amount is not deducted from the card.

**Operator check:** If the **Operator Card Check** checkbox is selected, the device will be initially in locked state after being added to the system. To unlock the device, the operation card needs to be swiped. Please note that, the operation card must have been issued before using this parameter.

**Consumption mode:** The options are fixed value mode, Amount Mode, Key-value mode, Counting mode, Commodity mode, Recording Time Mode. Selected for different needs.

**Cumulative Subsidy:** It appears when the device type is selected as Subsidy machine. If the accumulative subsidy is not checked, only the last subsidy application can be received when there are multiple unsubsidized records; when the accumulative subsidy is checked, all the subsidized amounts will be collected.

**Clear subsidy:** Displayed only when the device is a subsidized machine. If the zero subsidy is not checked, the subsidy application will be directly received; if the zero subsidy is checked, the original subsidy in card will be cleared first and then collect the latest subsidy.

● Edit:

Click the device name of the list or the edit column of the operation to pop up the modification dialog box. The items that can be modified in the modification dialog box includes device name, area, device usage, whether accounting, operator card check, consumption mode, and restaurant. And you can also view the segmentation value, card type, and key value data corresponding to the device, as shown in the following figure.

The 'Edit' dialog box contains the following fields:

- Device Name\*: ProMerc-10
- Serial Number\*: 524145556
- IP Address\*: [Empty]
- Communication port\*: 4370
- Area\*: Area Name
- Equipment Use\*: Consumer Machine
- Whether Accounting:
- Operator Card Check:
- Whitelist Check:
- Consumption Mode\*: Amount Mode
- Owned Restaurant\*: Headquarters

| Piecwise Fixed Value |           | Consumer Card Type |          | Key Value |                   |
|----------------------|-----------|--------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------|
| Number               | Name      | Start Time         | End Time | Amount    | Whether Effective |
| 1                    | Default 1 | 00:00:00           | 10:00:59 | 10.0      | Yes               |
| 2                    | Default 2 | 10:01:00           | 14:00:59 | 10.0      | Yes               |
| 3                    | Default 3 | 14:01:00           | 20:00:59 | 10.0      | Yes               |
| 4                    | Default 4 | 20:01:00           | 23:59:59 | 10.0      | Yes               |
| 5                    | Default 5 | 00:00:00           | 10:00:59 | 10.0      | No                |
| 6                    | Default 6 | 10:01:00           | 14:00:59 | 10.0      | No                |

Navigation: |< < 1 - 8 > >| 50 rows per page | Jump To 1 /1 Page Total of 8 records

Buttons: OK, Cancel

Figure 11- 24

●Delete:

Check the consumer device record, click **Delete** at the top of the list or **Delete** under the operation bar, **OK** to delete the selected consumer device data, and **Cancel** to cancel the operation.

●Clear Swipe Card Data:

Click the **Clear Swipe Card Data** button at the top of the list, a dialog box will pop up as shown below.

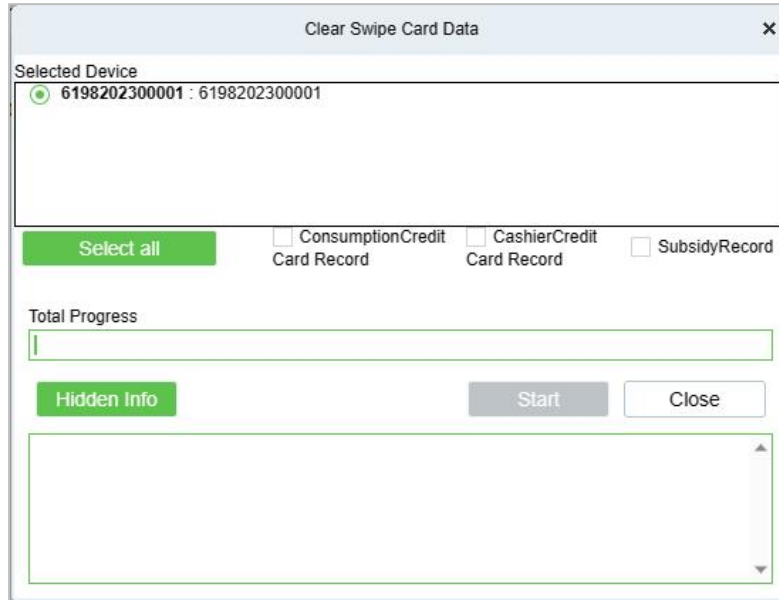


Figure 11- 25

The operation here is to select the device first, then you can check the type of the card record, you can select all, click **Start** will clear the data of the selected card record, click **Close** will close the current dialog box, no operation.

●Clear consumer device settings:

Click the **Clear Consumer Device Settings** button at the top of the list, a dialog box will pop up as shown below.

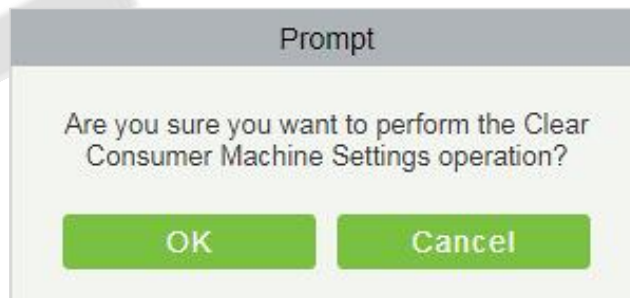


Figure 11- 26

Clicking **OK** will clear the setting information of the consumer device, and clicking **Cancel** will close the current dialog box and do nothing.

●Delete device command:

Select a device in the device list below, click and select the device check box on the left side, click the Delete Device command, and the following dialog box will pop up. Click **OK**. The command to be parsed by the device will be deleted and cleared.

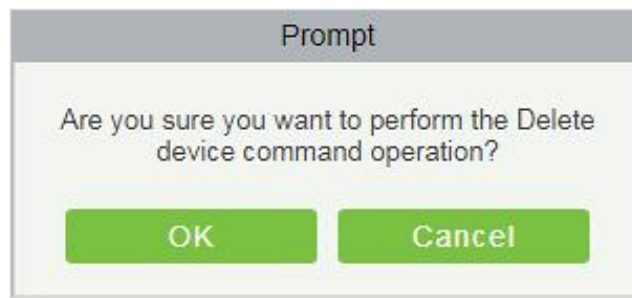


Figure 11- 27

●Collect all data:

Select a device in the device list below, click and select the device from the list, click to collect all data, and the following dialog box will pop up. According to the operator's needs, check the data that needs to be synchronized. Click Start and wait for the data to sync until the synchronization is complete.

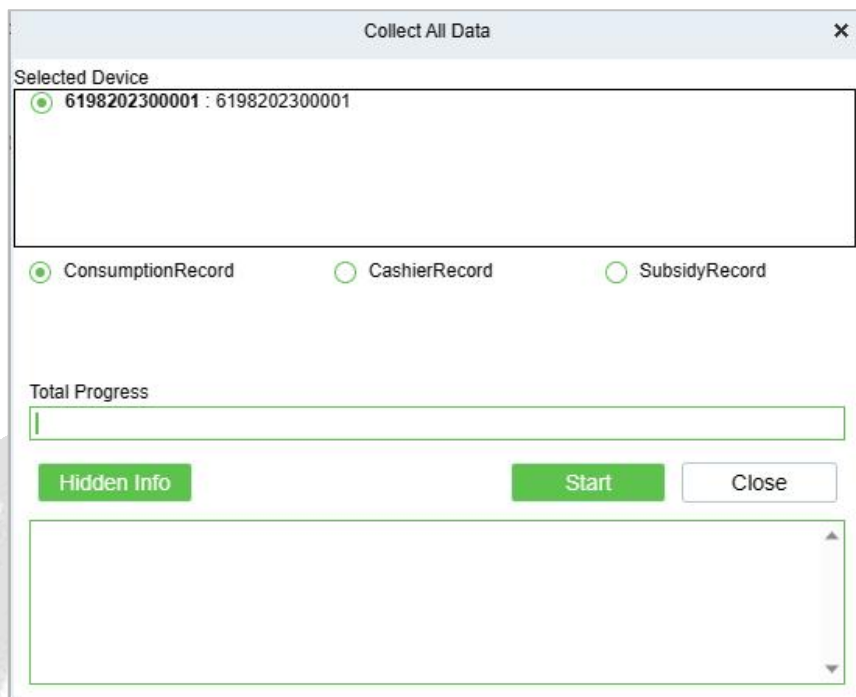


Figure 11- 28

●More:

There are two hidden function buttons under the button, which are to restart the device and synchronize the software data to the device:

**Restart the device:** Check one device, click this button, the device will automatically restart.

**Synchronize software data to device:** Select a device, click this button, it will send data such as setting parameters of the software to the device to achieve the function of synchronization information so that the device can set the properties synchronously.

## 11.2.2 Consumption Parameter

Click **Device > Consumption Parameters**, as shown below:

Figure 11- 29

### ● Basic Setting:

- 1) Set the upper limit of the card balance. You can set an integer value between 1~9999, default value is 9999.
- 2) Set the master and slave sectors of card issuing: The master sector of card issuing can be selected from sector 1 to sector 14, and the default is sector 1 and it cannot be edited.
- 3) Consumption rate is the value set to obtain the consumption amount with respect to the entered amount on the device.
- 4) Set the system password: The default is 123456 and you need to change it before using the password for 1<sup>st</sup> time. This password will be written on the card while issuing.
- 5) The default mode is **Single wallet mode**.
- 6) Click **OK** to save the modified consumption parameter information.

**Note:** The system password and mode are not allowed to be changed again after the device has been added.

## 11.3 Card Management

### 11.3.1 Card Service

Using this option, you can issue different types of card and set their usage limits. You can also manage the already existing cards.

The initial interface of this module is shown below:

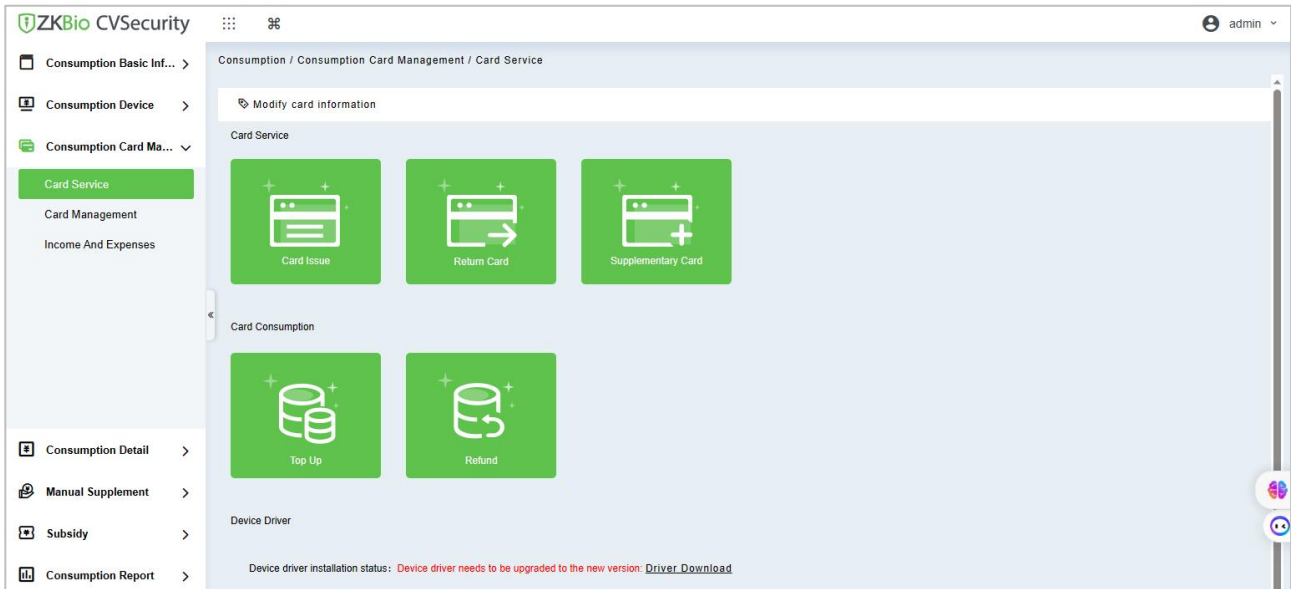


Figure 11- 30

#### 11.3.1.1 Device Driver

First of all, you need to check the status of the Device driver at the bottom of this interface.

If it is not installed, you need to click **Driver Download** and install it before using this function.

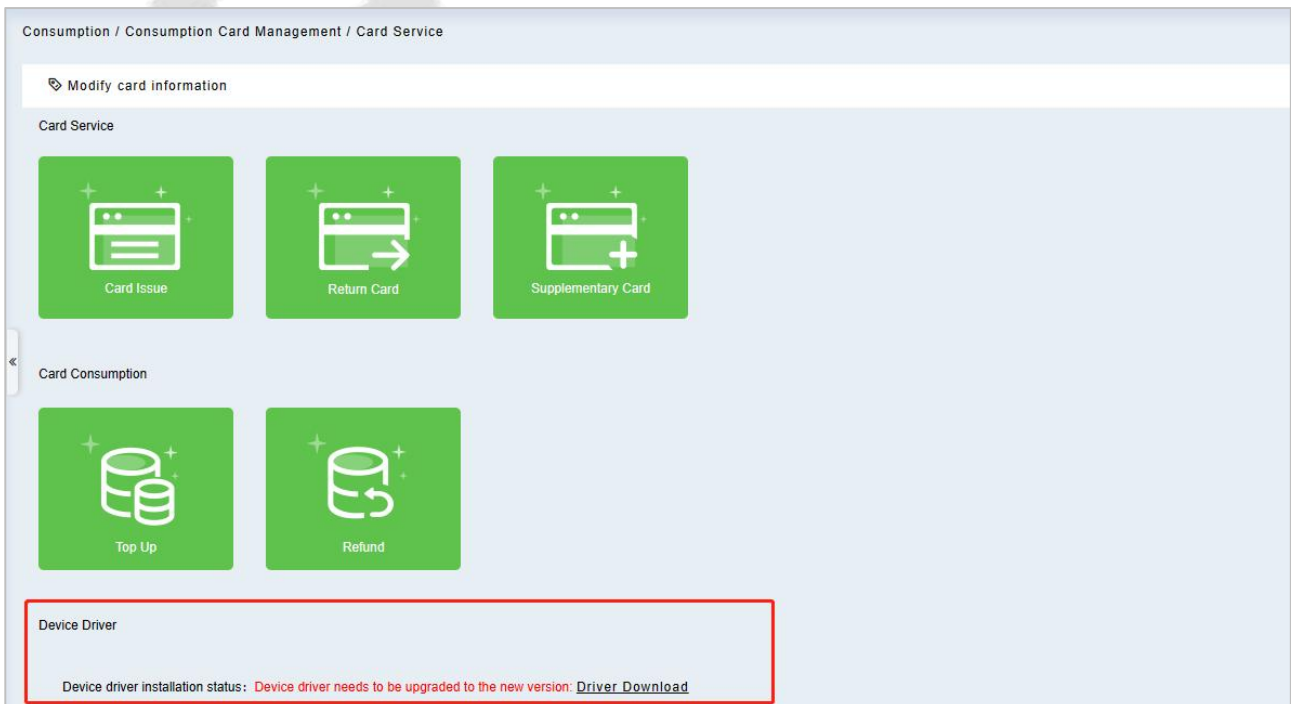


Figure 11- 31

Click **Driver Download** to start downloading. Once it is downloaded, install it as per the on-screen prompts. After the installation is complete, you can see the updated status as shown below:

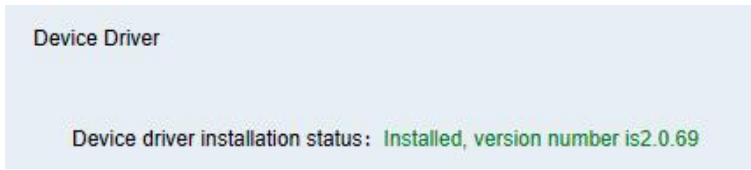


Figure 11-32

### 11.3.1.2 Modify Card Information

Place the card on the card reader, click **Modify card information** as shown below. A dialog box will appear with all the details of the card.

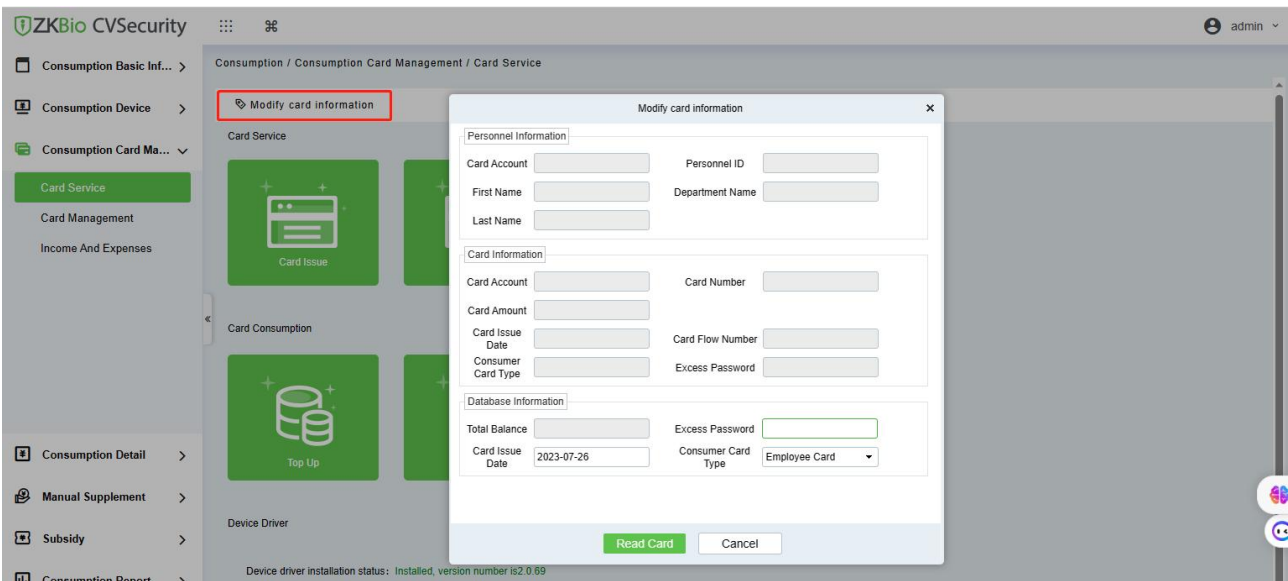


Figure 11-33

### 11.3.1.3 Card Issue

You must initialize a card through this system before using it on the consumer device.

Click on the card issue icon, the card issuing interface is as follows.

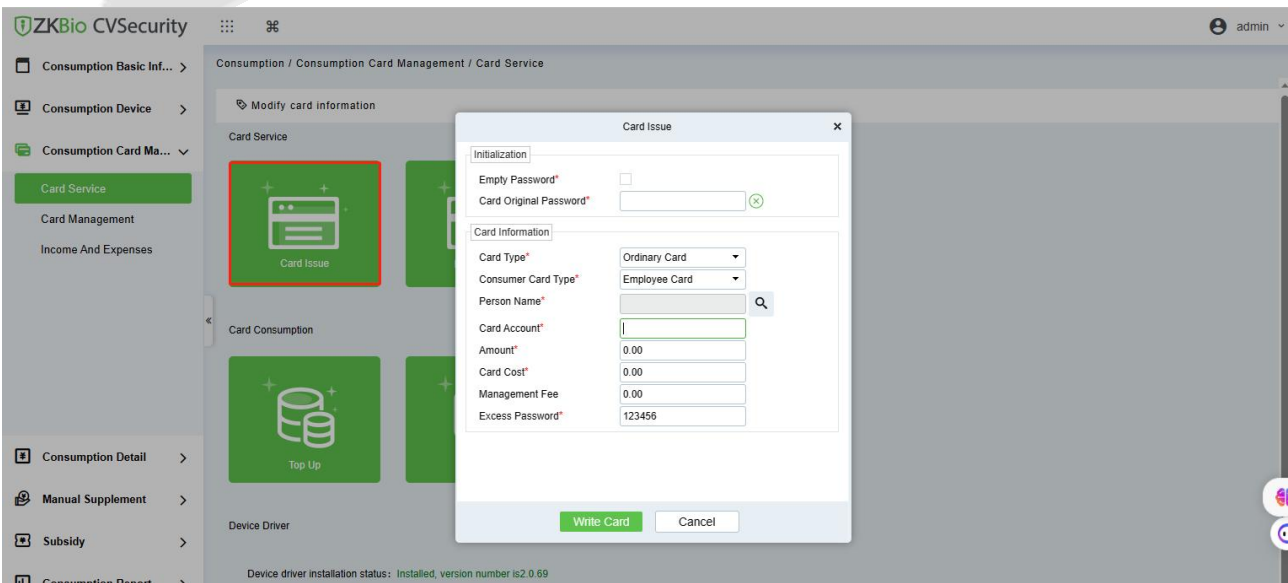


Figure 11-34

If the card is previously used before initialization, you can set blank password or keep the original password of the card. After setting the card type and consumer card type in this window, click the icon beside the Person's name field and select the required personnel (you need to add the required personnel in the personnel module before issuing card). Then set the Card Account, Amount, Card Cost, Management Fee, Excess Password, click Issue card to complete.

● Prerequisites:

1. Make sure the required person is already added in the personnel module before issuing card.
2. The card needs to be initialized before issuing the card.

11.3.1.4 Return Card

**Return Card** operation is performed to stop the card being used further in the consumption software system.

After clicking **Return card**, a pop-up window will give additional information for the operation. Put the card on the card reader, click on the card to read, the card information will be displayed, check the information and click OK to block or revoke the card.

● Prerequisites:

To withdraw a card approval, you must have an issued card.

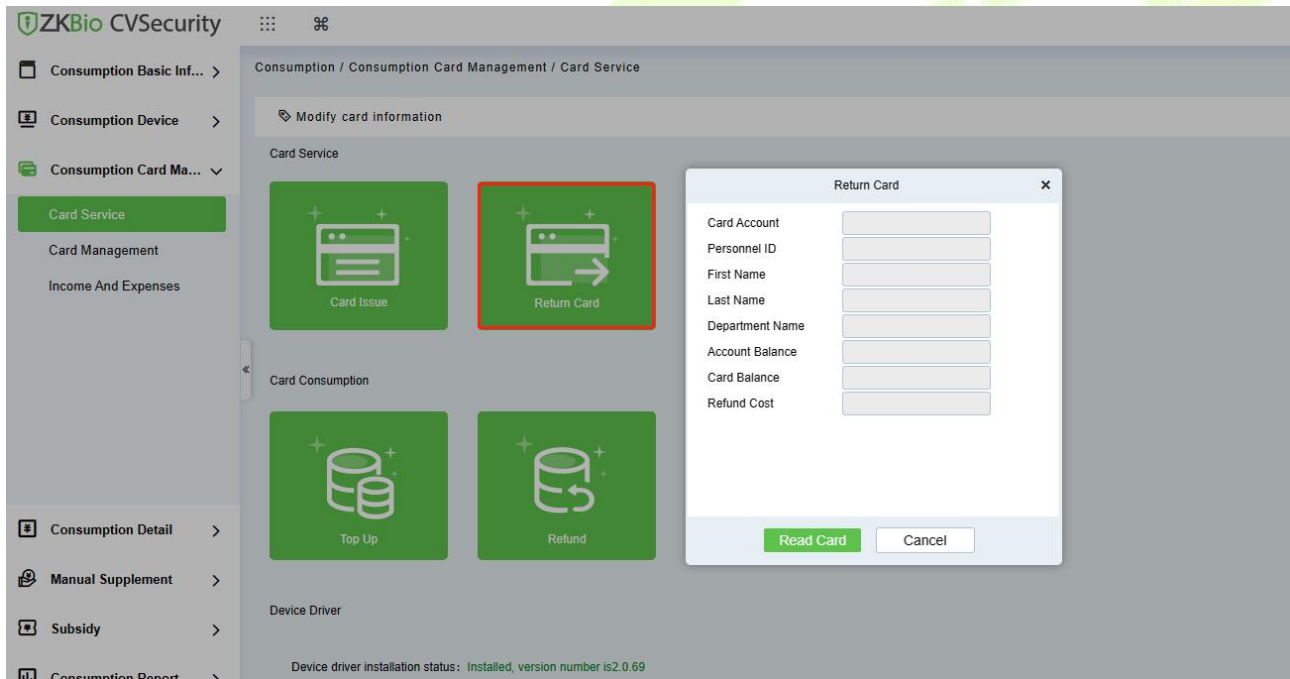


Figure 11- 35

11.3.1.5 Supplementary Card

● Prerequisite:

This function is used when a card is reported lost.

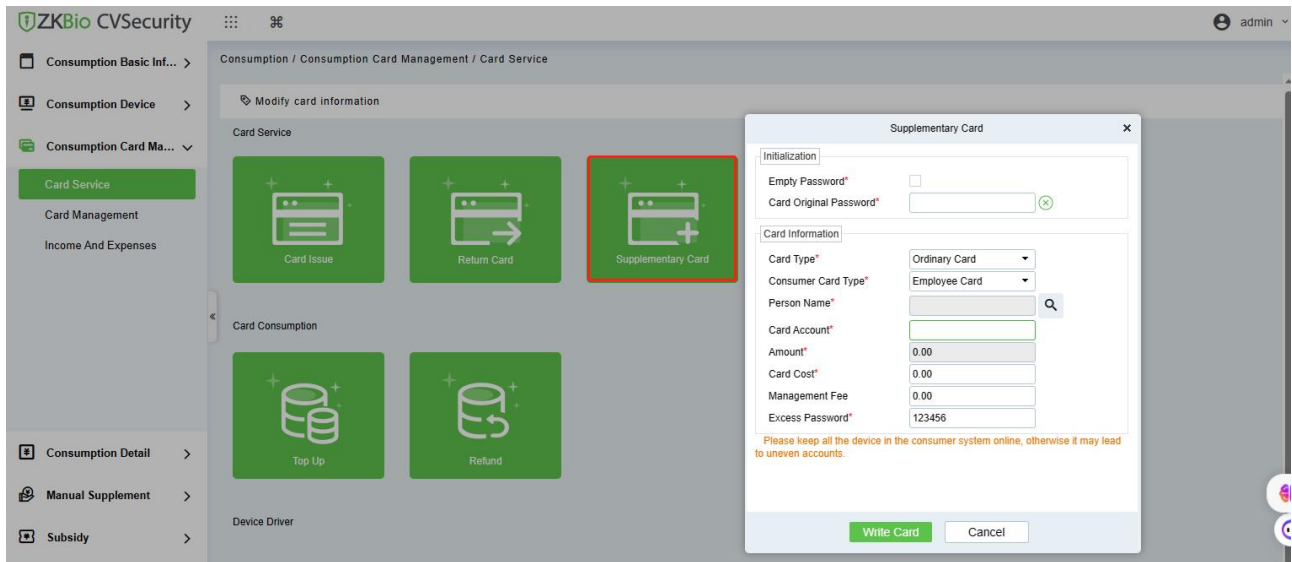



Figure 11-36

Click the  search icon beside the Person Name field and select the person who has lost the card. Click to write the card with the same information as the lost card. After the card is issued, the balance and other information in the original card will be written into the new card. (The used card needs to be initialized, and the card can be set to a blank password or a card original password at the initialization interface.)

**Note:** Please ensure that all devices in the consumption system are online. Otherwise, the processing result after the above operation cannot be synchronized to other devices. And the original card can still be used for consumption, resulting in the card balance being inconsistent with the actual amount and the account being uneven. Please be careful with this!

### 11.3.2 Top Up

This function is used to add an extra amount to the card balance. Click the top up button to open the Top-up interface. Put the card on the card reader, click on the card to confirm the card information. Enter the amount you need to recharge and then click OK to execute the operation.

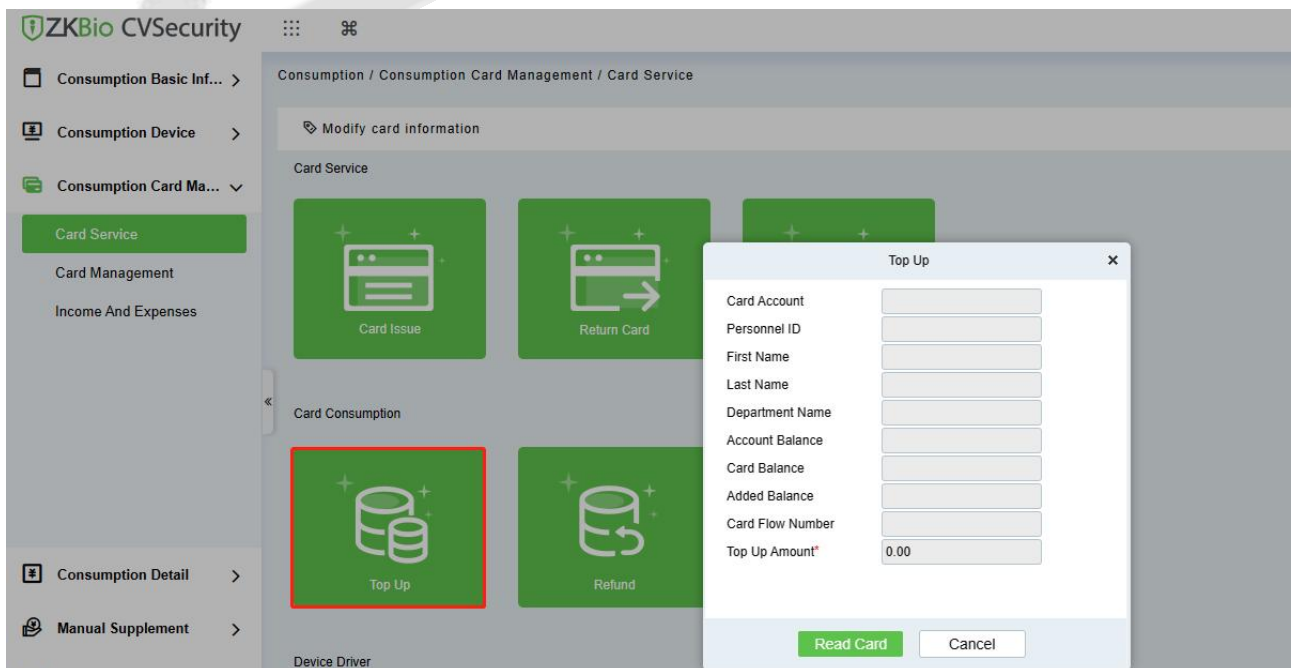


Figure 11-37

### 11.3.2.1 Refund

Refund operation is used to return a specified amount to the card. Click the refund button to open the refund interface, put the card on the card reader, click on the Read card to confirm the card information. Enter the amount you need to refund, and click OK to execute the operation.

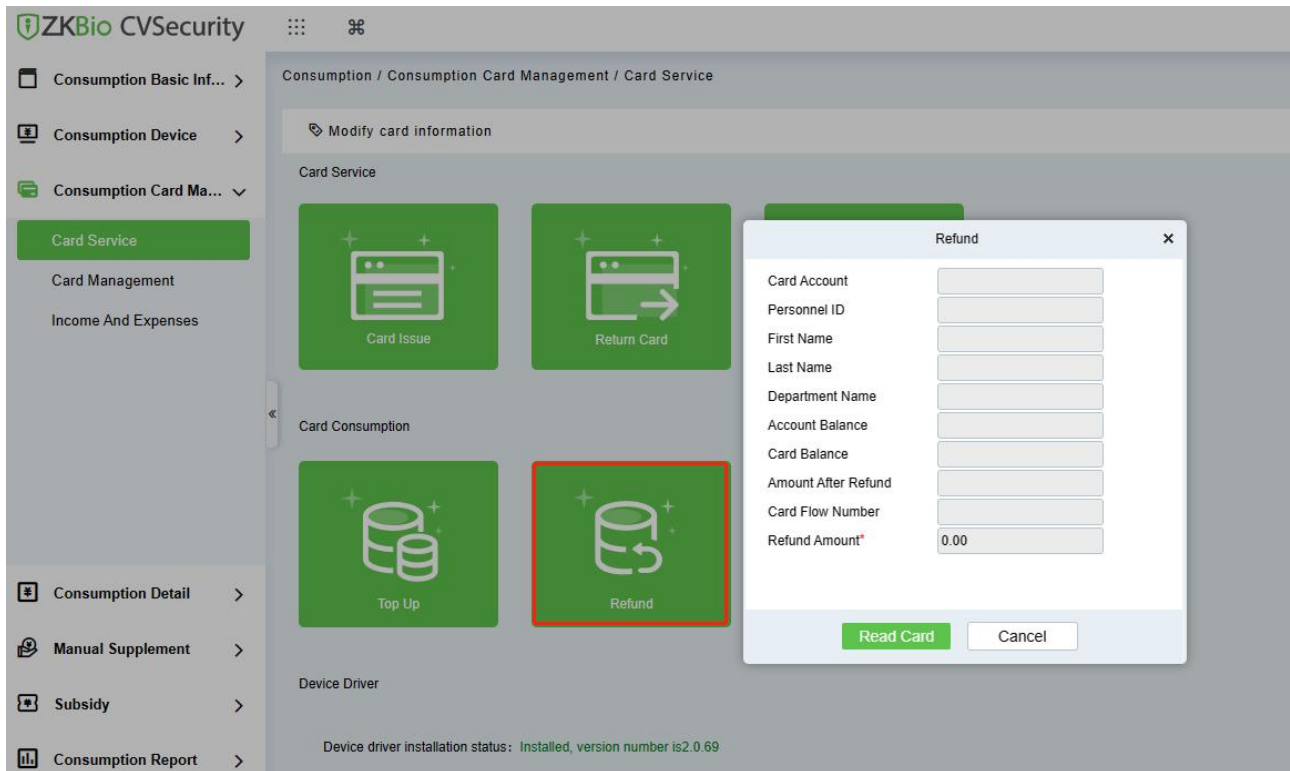


Figure 11-38

### 11.3.3 Card Management

This function is used to perform two operations; **Logout Management Card and Non-Card Return Card**. And on this interface, you can also view the card information that has been issued till date.

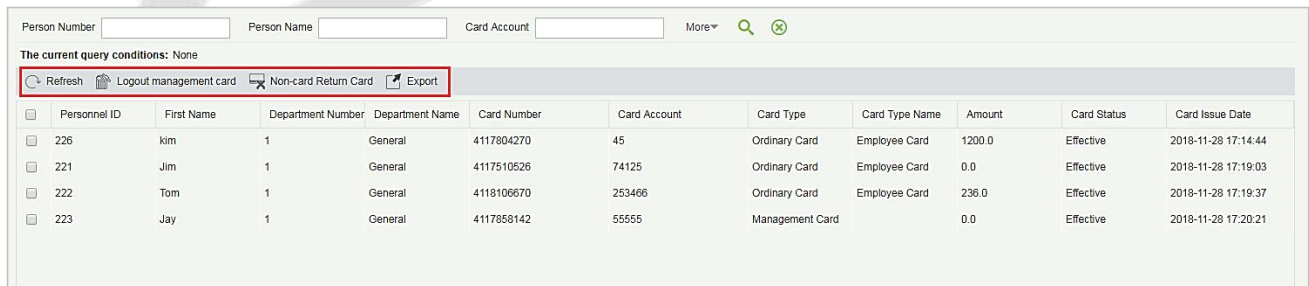


Figure 11-39

The top of the interface provides several search criteria:

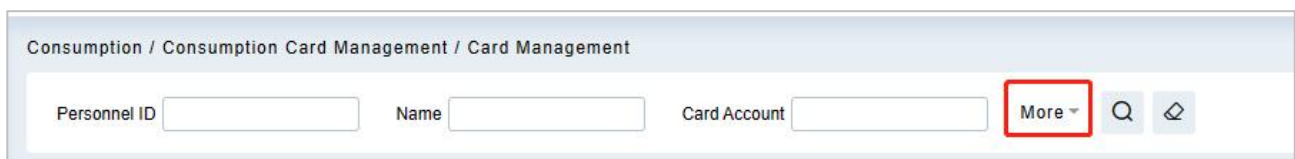


Figure 11-40

Figure 11-41

Enter the known information in the respective field to search for the corresponding card information. For example, if you need to search all the ordinary cards, click the card type drop-down menu, select Ordinary card, and click the icon on the right to get the search results. The search results are displayed on the report interface at the bottom of the page. As shown below.

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Personnel ID | First Name | Department Number | Department Name | Card Number | Card Account | Card Type       | Card Type Name | Amount | Card Status | Card Issue Date     |
|--------------------------|--------------|------------|-------------------|-----------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|--------|-------------|---------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 226          | kim        | 1                 | General         | 4117804270  | 45           | Ordinary Card   | Employee Card  | 1200.0 | Effective   | 2018-11-28 17:14:44 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 221          | Jim        | 1                 | General         | 4117510526  | 74125        | Ordinary Card   | Employee Card  | 0.0    | Effective   | 2018-11-28 17:19:03 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 222          | Tom        | 1                 | General         | 4118106670  | 253466       | Ordinary Card   | Employee Card  | 236.0  | Effective   | 2018-11-28 17:19:37 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 223          | Jay        | 1                 | General         | 4117858142  | 55555        | Management Card |                | 0.0    | Effective   | 2018-11-28 17:20:21 |

Figure 11-42

### 11.3.3.1 Logout Management Card

This function is used to log out the management and the operation card. After the logout operation, the management card or operation card will be invalid.

### 11.3.3.2 Non-Card Return Card

Click **Non-card return card**, select the desired refund option and click **OK**. If the card is eligible for the refund, the amount will be refunded to the card and a refund record will be generated in the system.

The card will not be used in this consumer system after the card is not returned.

**Note: Non-card return card** Please ensure that all devices in the consumption system are online before operation. Otherwise, the processing result after operation may not be synchronized to other devices in time. The card can still be consumed, resulting in the card balance being inconsistent with the actual amount and unbalanced situation. Please be careful with this!

Figure 11-43

### 11.3.3.3 Refresh

It is used to update the card interface with new data.

### 11.3.3.4 Export

It exports the current report data.

**Note:** The report loss/resume card operation is performed in the card management in the **Personnel Module**.

## 11.3.4 Income and Expenses

This function will show all the payments and due amount data of all the cards in the consumption system.

Click **Card Management > Income and Expenses**, as shown below:

| Personnel ID | First Name | Department Name | Card Number | Card Account | Card Flow Number | Type Name    | Type     | Subsidy Type | Amount | Balance | Upload Time         | Operating Time      | Device Serial Number | Device Flow Number | Creator |
|--------------|------------|-----------------|-------------|--------------|------------------|--------------|----------|--------------|--------|---------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------|
| 223          | Jay        | General         | 4117858142  | 55555        | 1                | Management   |          |              | 0.0    | 0.0     | 2018-11-28 17:20:21 | 2018-11-28 17:20:21 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 222          | Tom        | General         | 4118106670  | 253466       | 1                | Card Issue   | Income   |              | 236.0  | 236.0   | 2018-11-28 17:19:37 | 2018-11-28 17:19:37 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 221          | Jim        | General         | 4117510526  | 74125        | 1                | Card Issue   | Income   |              | 0.0    | 0.0     | 2018-11-28 17:19:03 | 2018-11-28 17:19:03 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 226          | kim        | General         | 4117804270  | 45           | 1                | Card Issue   | Income   |              | 1200.0 | 1200.0  | 2018-11-28 17:14:44 | 2018-11-28 17:14:44 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 223          | Jay        | General         | 4117804270  | 99999        | 1                | Logout manag |          |              | 0.0    | 0.0     | 2018-11-28 16:22:42 | 2018-11-28 16:22:42 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 224          | Lee        | General         | 4117858142  | 44444        | 2                | Return Card  | Expenses |              | 100.0  | 0.0     | 2018-11-28 16:04:48 | 2018-11-28 16:04:48 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 222          | Tom        | General         | 4117510526  | 88888        | 2                | Return Card  | Expenses |              | 100.0  | 0.0     | 2018-11-28 16:04:29 | 2018-11-28 16:04:29 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 221          | Jim        | General         | 4118106670  | 1111111      | 2                | Return Card  | Expenses |              | 100.0  | 0.0     | 2018-11-28 16:04:08 | 2018-11-28 16:04:08 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 224          | Lee        | General         | 4117858142  | 44444        | 1                | Card Issue   | Income   |              | 100.0  | 100.0   | 2018-11-28 16:02:58 | 2018-11-28 16:02:58 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 222          | Tom        | General         | 4117510526  | 88888        | 1                | Card Issue   | Income   |              | 100.0  | 100.0   | 2018-11-28 16:02:13 | 2018-11-28 16:02:13 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 223          | Jay        | General         | 4117804270  | 99999        | 1                | Management   |          |              | 0.0    | 0.0     | 2018-11-28 15:59:28 | 2018-11-28 15:59:28 |                      |                    | admin   |
| 221          | Jim        | General         | 4118106670  | 1111111      | 1                | Card Issue   | Income   |              | 100.0  | 100.0   | 2018-11-28 15:58:06 | 2018-11-28 15:58:06 |                      |                    | admin   |

Figure 11-44

### 11.3.4.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest card cash receipts and payments data.

## 11.4 Consumer Details

Click **Consumption Details > Consumption Details Report**, as shown below:

| Person Number            | First Name | Card Status | Department Number | Department Name | Card Account | Type Name | Amount of Consumption | Balance | Consumption Mode | Restaurant Name | Meal Name                  | Device Serial Number | Device Flow Number | Card Flow Number | Consumption Time                  | Upload Time |
|--------------------------|------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------|-----------------------|---------|------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 222        | Tom         | Effective         | 1               | General      | 253466    | Supplemental          | 12.0    | 208.0            | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Dinner        | 524145556            |                    | 4                | 2018-11-28 2: 2018-11-28 17:32:59 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 227        | king        | Effective         | 1               | General      | 8579652   | Supplemental          | 20.0    | 471.0            | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Lunch         | 524145556            |                    | 4                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:42:16 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 227        | king        | Effective         | 1               | General      | 8579652   | Supplemental          | 20.0    | 491.0            | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Midnight Snac | 522153322            |                    | 3                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:41:53 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 227        | king        | Effective         | 1               | General      | 8579652   | Supplemental          | 10.0    | 511.0            | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Dinner        | 524145556            |                    | 2                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:41:35 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 226        | kim         | Effective         | 1               | General      | 45        | Supplemental          | 20.0    | 1148.0           | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Midnight Snac | 524145556            |                    | 4                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:35:24 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 226        | kim         | Effective         | 1               | General      | 45        | Supplemental          | 22.0    | 1168.0           | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Midnight Snac | 522153322            |                    | 3                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:34:33 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 226        | kim         | Effective         | 1               | General      | 45        | Supplemental          | 10.0    | 1190.0           | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Dinner        | 522153322            |                    | 2                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:34:13 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 222        | Tom         | Effective         | 1               | General      | 253466    | Supplemental          | 6.0     | 230.0            | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Breakfast     | 524145556            |                    | 2                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:30:42 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 222        | Tom         | Effective         | 1               | General      | 253466    | Supplemental          | 10.0    | 220.0            | Manual Suppl    | Headquarters Lunch         | 524145556            |                    | 3                | 2018-11-28 1: 2018-11-28 17:31:25 |             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Summary:   |             |                   |                 |              |           |                       | 130.0   |                  |                 |                            |                      |                    |                  |                                   |             |

Figure 11-45

### 11.4.1.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest consumption details.

### 11.4.1.2 Export

This feature allows you to export consumption details in EXCEL, PDF, CSV format files.

### 11.4.1.3 Error Correction

Click **Error Correction**. You can carry out the error correction process on the software. This operation is only valid for the records where the consumption type is the amount mode. Select a consumption record, read out the current balance of the card, enter the correct amount of consumption, and modify the balance of the card.

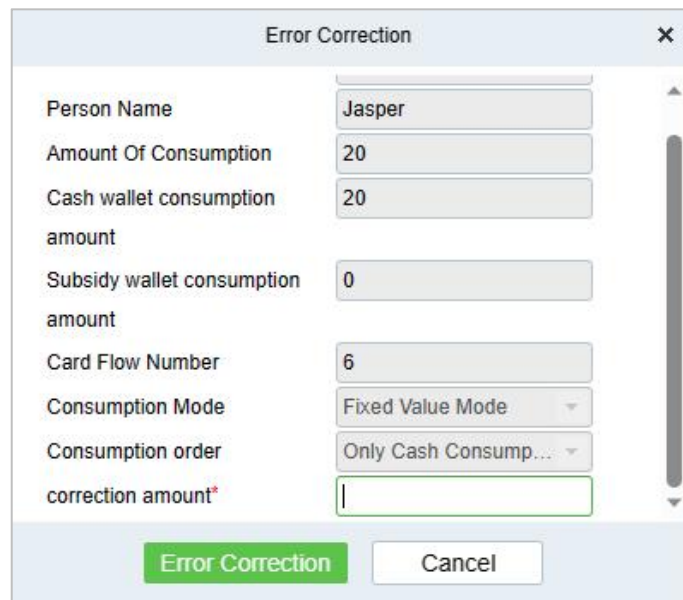


Figure 11- 46

**Notes:**

- 1) The same consumption record cannot be corrected repeatedly.
- 2) Software error correction automatically produces two new records: One is the record for the system error correction of the return of the original error consumption amount, the other is the correct consumption record of the manual supplement.

**11.4.1.4 Import U Disk Record**

If the equipment consumption record is found inconsistent with the software, you can export the consumption records of the machine (Select **U disk management** > **Download consumption records**) to the U disk, and then import the consumption records into the software (Select **Consumption** > **Consumption detail** > **Consumption detail report** > **Import U disk Records**).

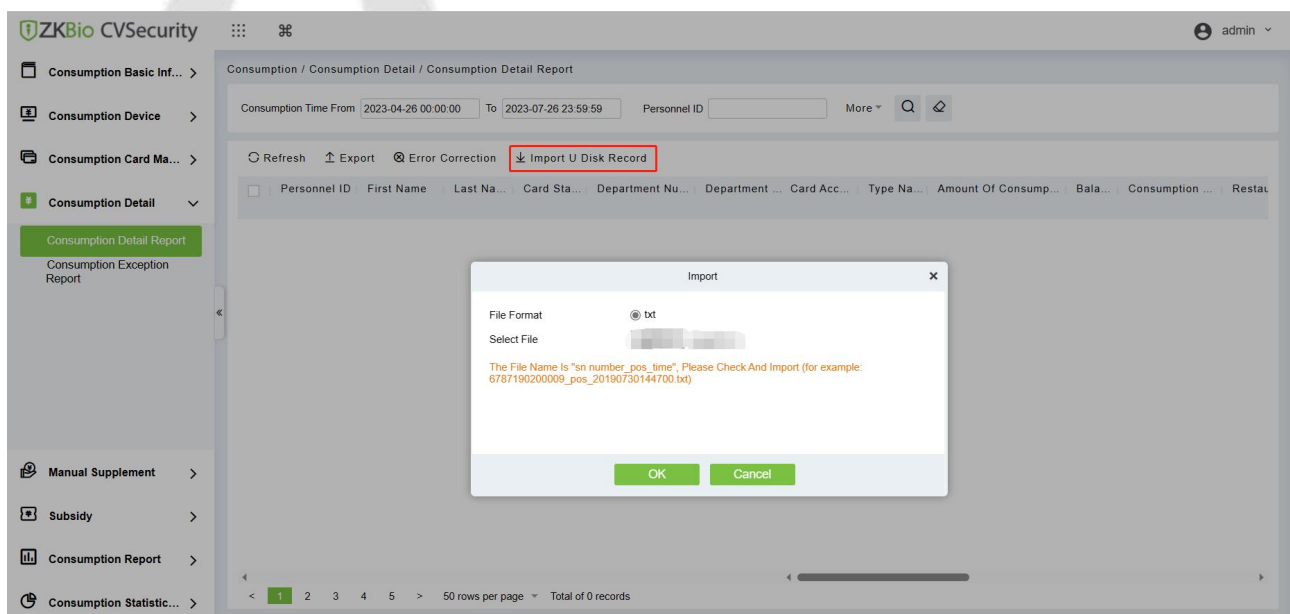


Figure 11- 47

## 11.5 Manual Supplement

It is used to enter some consumptions record details manually in the system.

**Note:** Before performing this operation, you need to have the relevant operation card.

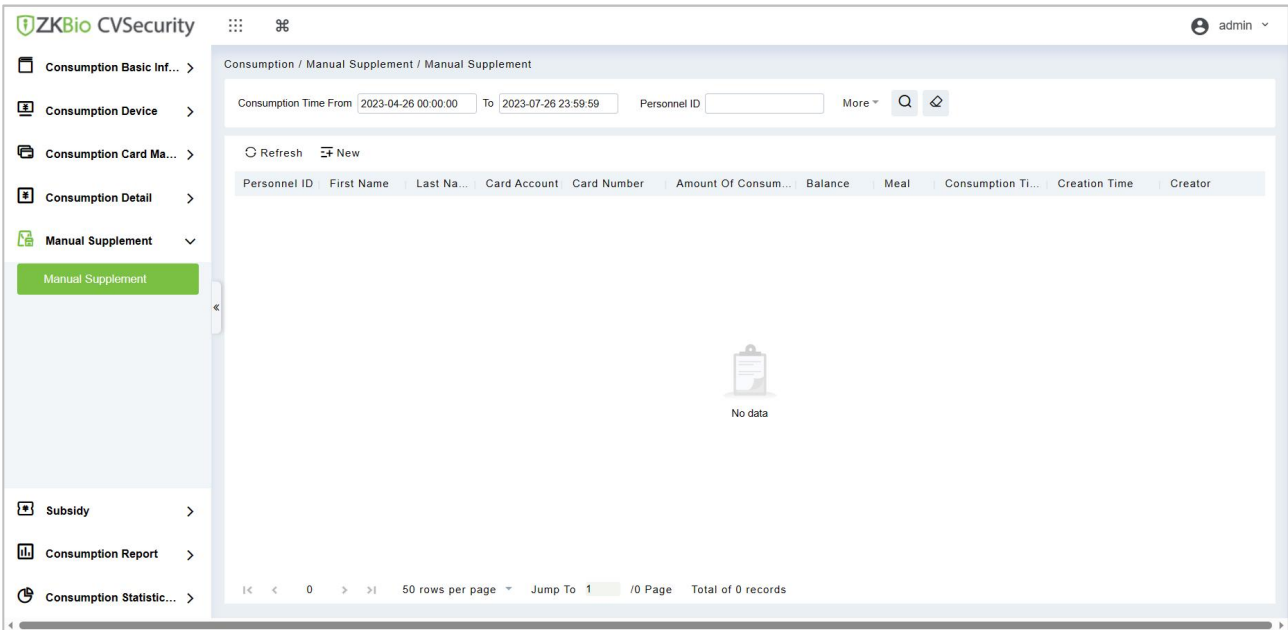


Figure 11-48

### 11.5.1 New

You can manually enter some consumptions entries. Click **New** to open the addition interface.

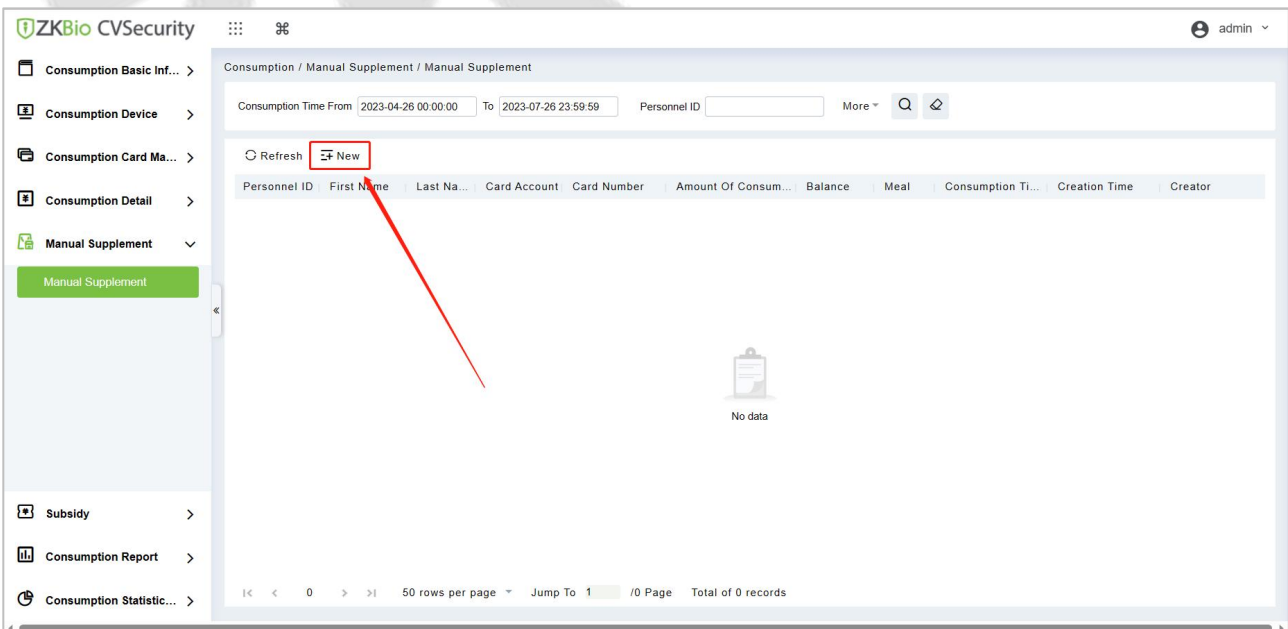


Figure 11-49

You need to cross-check the relevant information of the card. When the user puts the relevant card into the card reader, click on read card to read the detailed data such as the Card Account, Card Number, Name, Person Number, Balance, Card Flow Number. Meals, Available Device, Consumption time and Consumption Amount.

Figure 11- 50

### 11.5.2 Refresh

This feature is mainly used to update the interface content with new data.

## 11.6 Subsidy

### 11.6.1 Subsidy Management

Click **Subsidy > Subsidy Management** to enter the subsidy page, you can perform different function related to subsidy:

| Person Number | First Name | Card Account | Card Flow Number | Subsidy Amount | Receiving Amount | Card Balance | Subsidy Batch | Whether to receive | Whether to pass the review | Auditors | Subsidy Receive Time | Effective Time of Subsidy | Remarks | Operations                                  |
|---------------|------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------------|----------|----------------------|---------------------------|---------|---|
| 227           | king       | 8579652      |                  | 10.0           |                  |              |               | Not Received       | Not Approved               |          |                      | 2018-11-29 00:00:00       |         | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |
| 222           | Tom        | 253466       |                  | 10.0           |                  |              |               | Not Received       | Not Approved               |          |                      | 2018-11-29 00:00:00       |         | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |
| 221           | Jim        | 74125        |                  | 10.0           |                  |              |               | Not Received       | Not Approved               |          |                      | 2018-11-29 00:00:00       |         | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |
| 226           | kim        | 45           |                  | 10.0           |                  |              |               | Not Received       | Not Approved               |          |                      | 2018-11-29 00:00:00       |         | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |

Figure 11- 51

**Note:** Before the subsidy operation, you need to add personnel in the **Personnel** module.

#### 11.6.1.1 Add

1. Click **Subsidy > Subsidy Management > Subsidy Registration** to enter the subsidy registration interface.

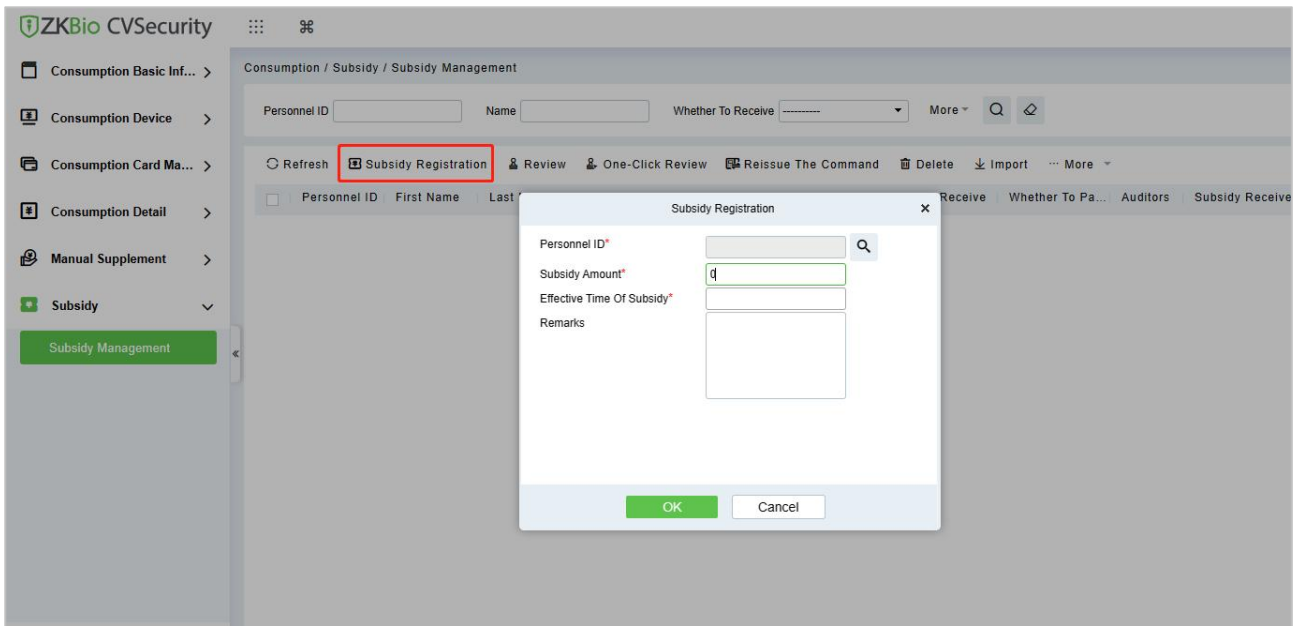


Figure 11- 52

2.Fill in the information and click OK to confirm.

### 11.6.1.2 Review

This function is mainly to review the audit. Before performing audit, you need to select the subsidy (select in the multi-select box). After clicking the review, an audit dialog box will pop up. The dialog box will display the person number and name as selected by the user.

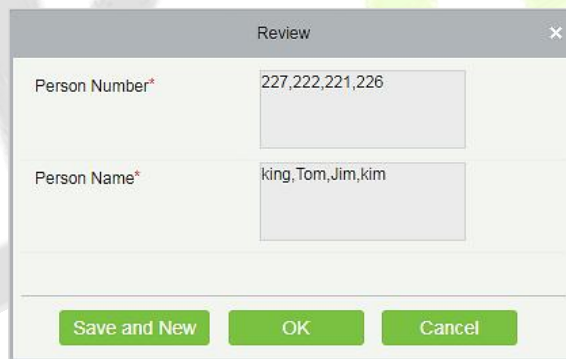


Figure 11- 53

### 11.6.1.3 One-Click Review

This function is mainly to review the unapproved subsidies in the system, and will not deal with the subsidy records that have been approved. During the review process, if the unapproved subsidy cannot be approved for some reason (such as the user has already returned the card), the subsidy will not be processed.

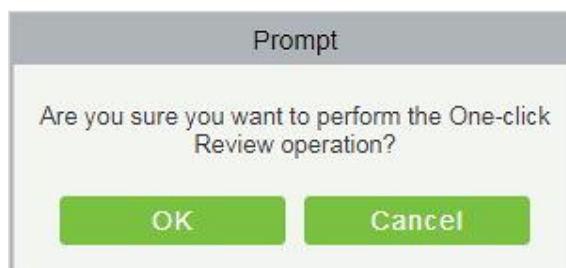


Figure 11- 54

### 11.6.1.4 Reissue the Command

This function is primarily used to re-issue the subsidy to the subsidy machine. Select the required subsidy(s), then click Reissue the command. The dialog box will display the person number and name selected by the user, click OK to reissue the subsidy order to the subsidy machine.

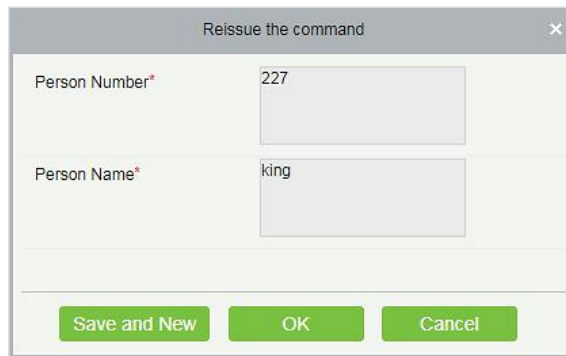


Figure 11- 55

### 11.6.1.5 Import

This function is used to import subsidies in batches.

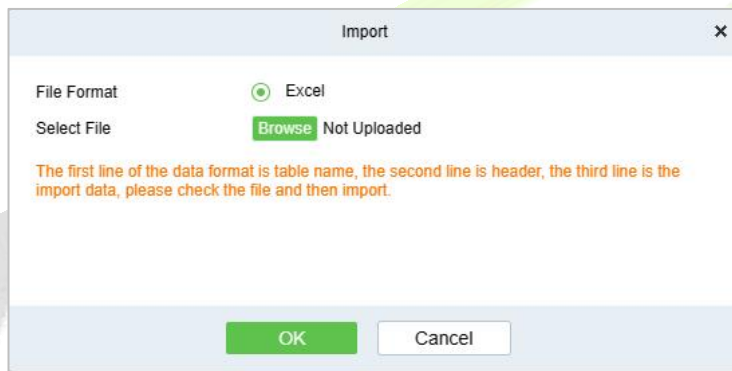


Figure 11- 56

If you want to download the sample template excel file for importing, click the **xlsx template** hyperlink. Once the sample excel is downloaded, you can fill your data into it and save. Then click **Choose File** and select the saved excel file.

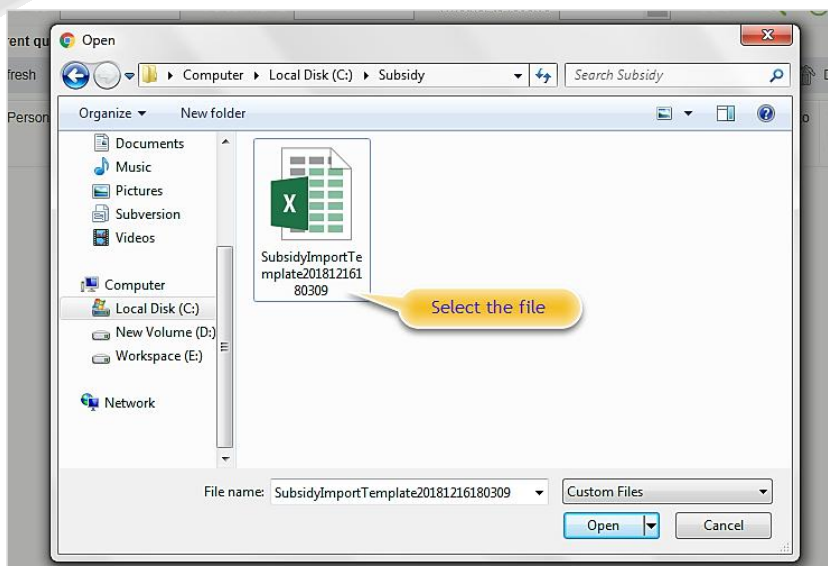
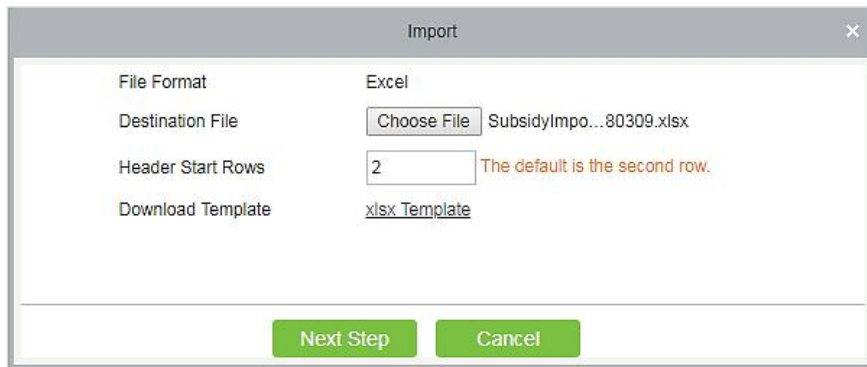


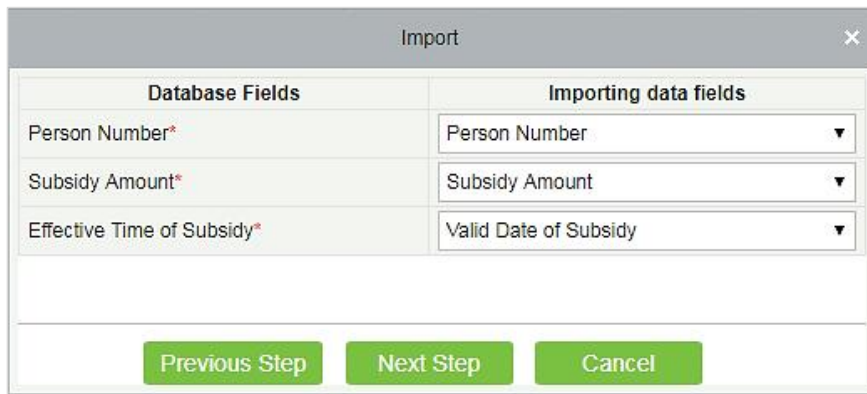
Figure 11- 57

Click **Open**.



**Figure 11- 58**

Click **Next Step** button to proceed.

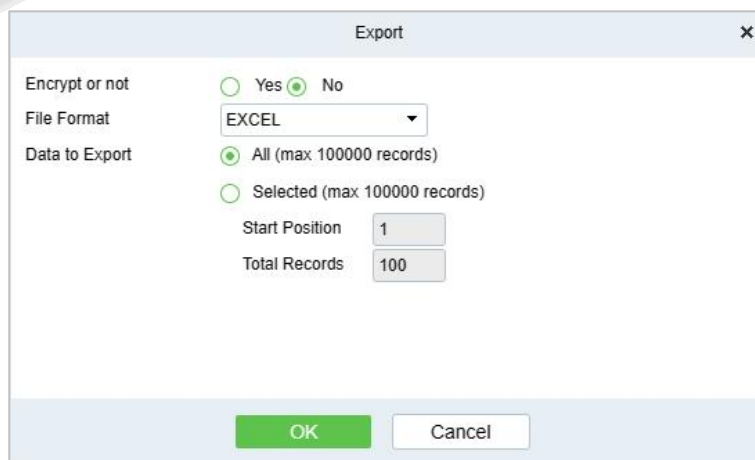


**Figure 11- 59**

Select the corresponding relationship between the subsidy record field and the imported field in Excel. Then click **Next Step** button to import the subsidy into the system. After the subsidy is imported, it will go directly to the approved or unapproved status based on your installation in which the initialization parameters of this software are determined.

**11.6.1.6 Export**

This function is used to export the queried subsidies. Click on Export to open the exporting interface.



**Figure 11- 60**

Select the file type and export mode. If you select **All data**, then all query data limited to 40,000 will be exported. If you want to export only few results from the query, then select the second mode and enter the desired start and end points of the required data to be exported.

Click **OK** to finish.

### 11.6.1.7 Delete

Select the required subsidy record(s) and click  **Delete** under the operation bar to delete the subsidy record. It only supports the removal of unapproved subsidy(s).

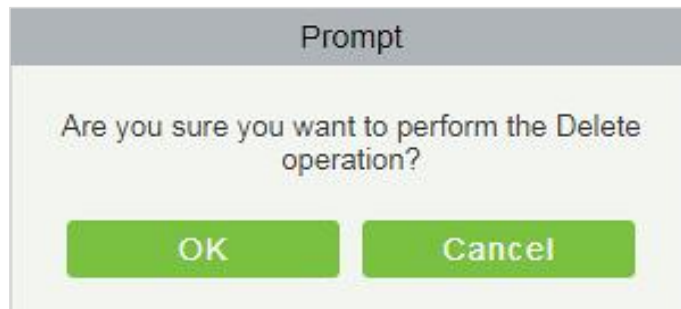


Figure 11- 61

### 11.6.1.8 Edit

Click **Edit** under the operation bar to modify the unapproved subsidies.

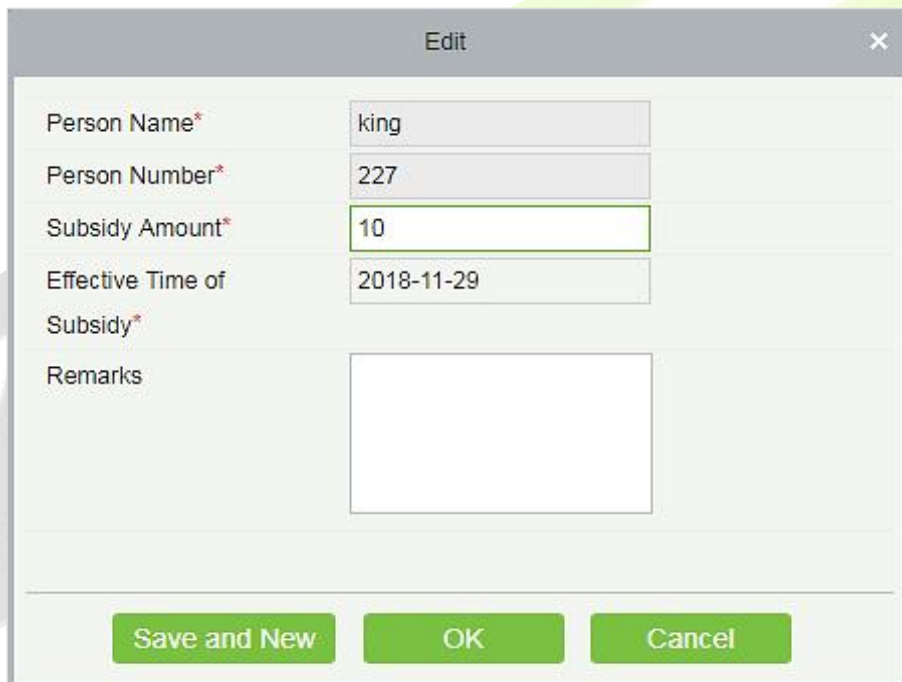


Figure 11- 62

Modify the required information and click the **OK** to save successfully.

## 11.6.2 Consumption Report

The statistical report consists of 9 modules: Issue Card Table, Top Up Table, Refund Table, Subsidy Table, Table of Return Card, Card Cost Table, Card Balance Table, Non-Card Return Card Table, And Table of Resume The Card.

### 11.6.2.1 Issue Card Table

Click Consumption Report > Issue Card Table, as shown below:

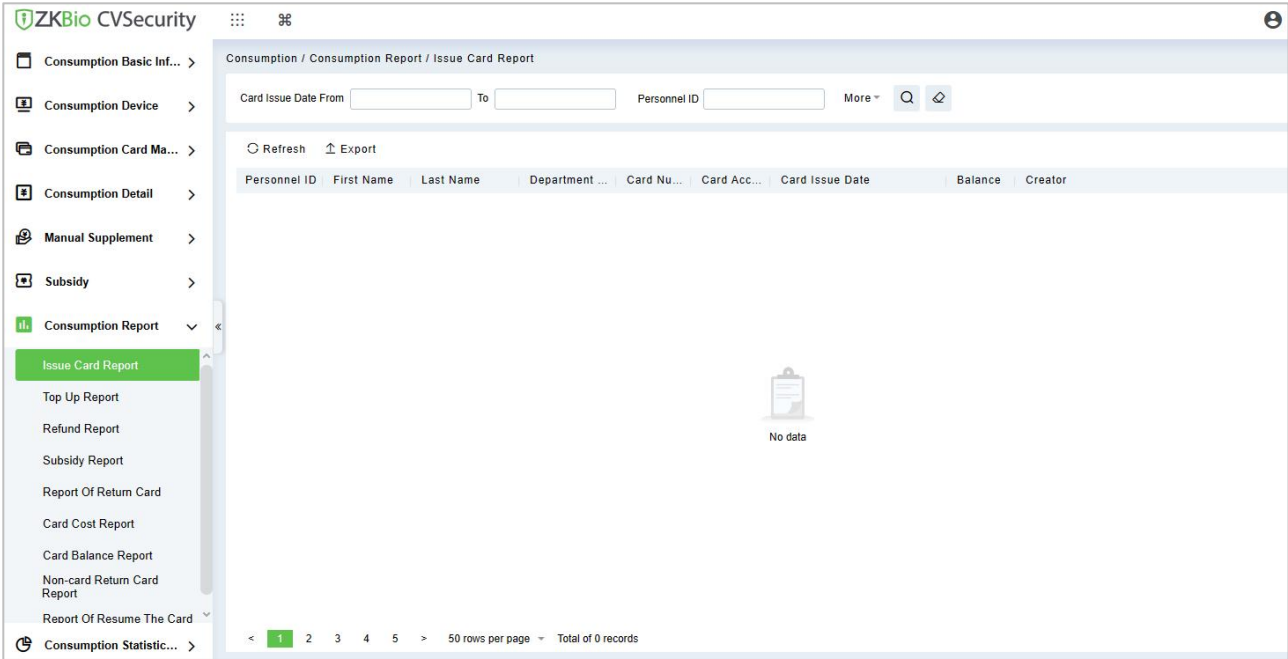


Figure 11- 63

● Export:

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

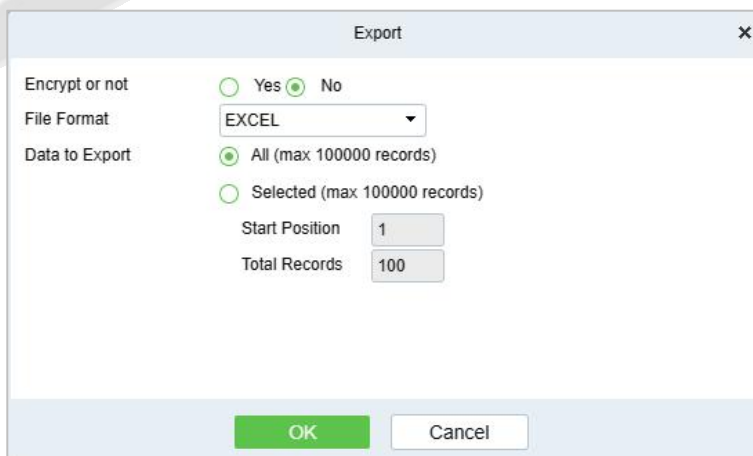


Figure 11- 64

### 11.6.2.2 Top Up Table

Click Consumption Report > Top Up Table, as shown below:

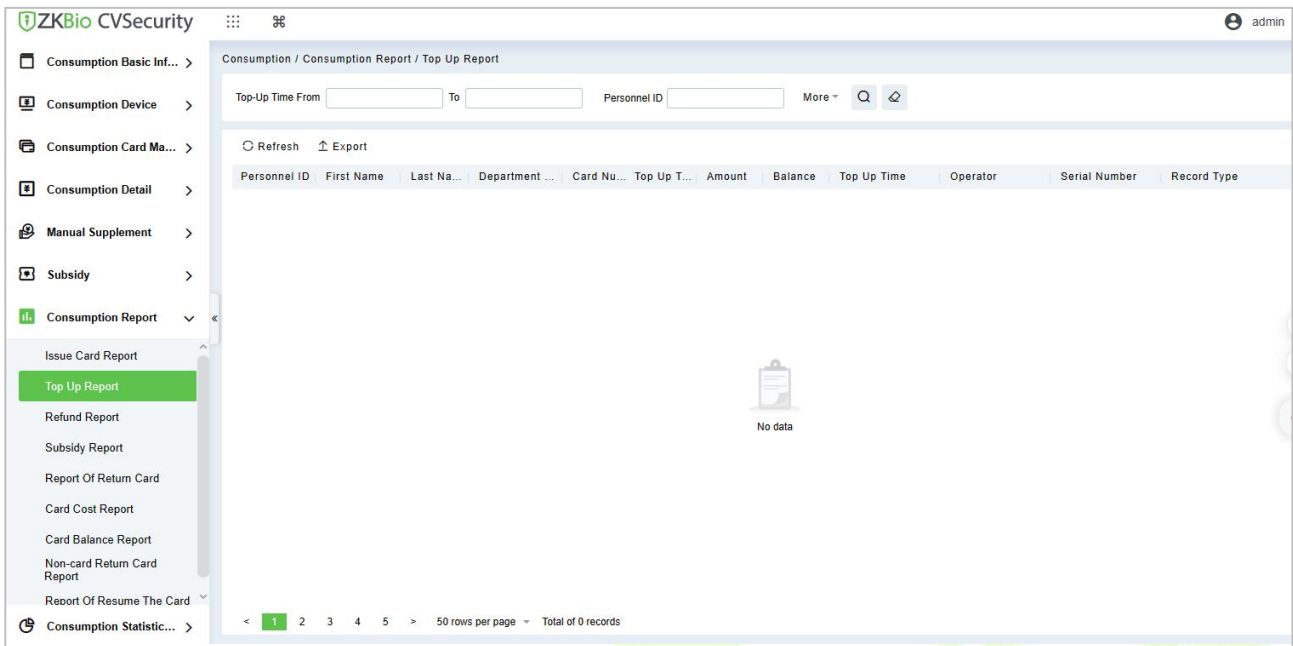


Figure 11-65

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

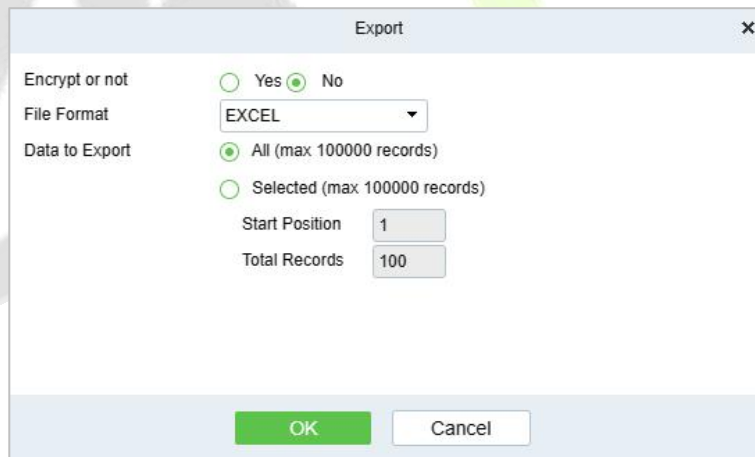


Figure 11-66

### 11.6.2.3 Refund Table

Click Consumption Report > Refund Table, as shown below:

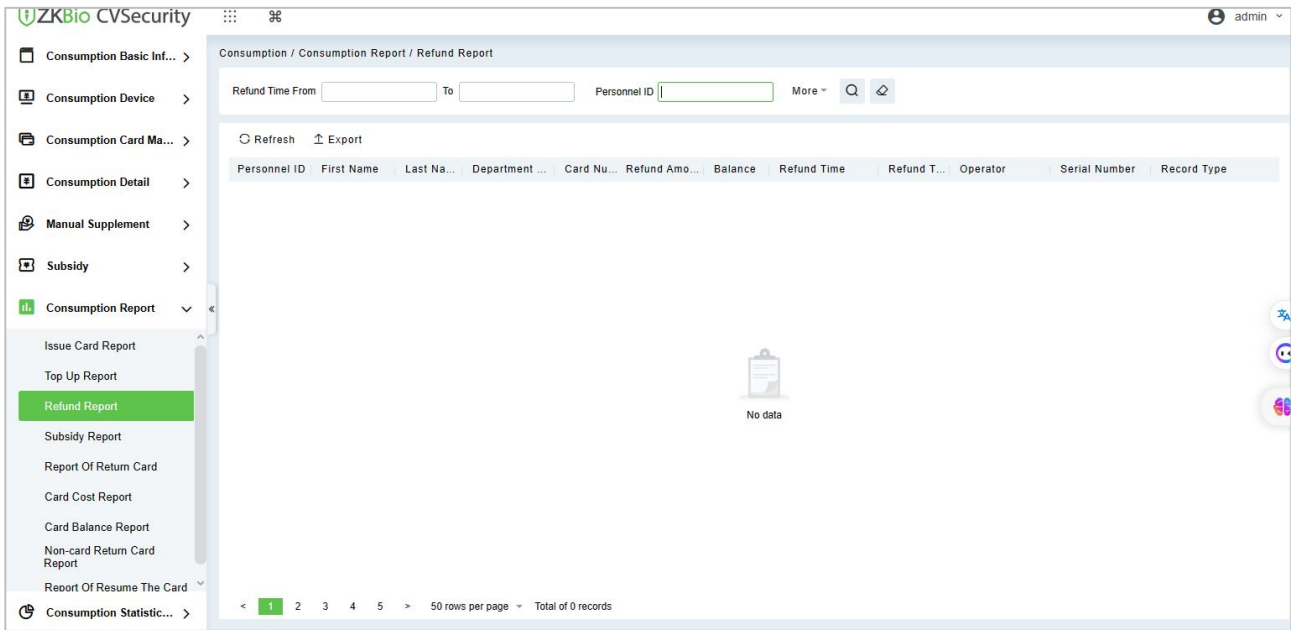


Figure 11-67

● Export:

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

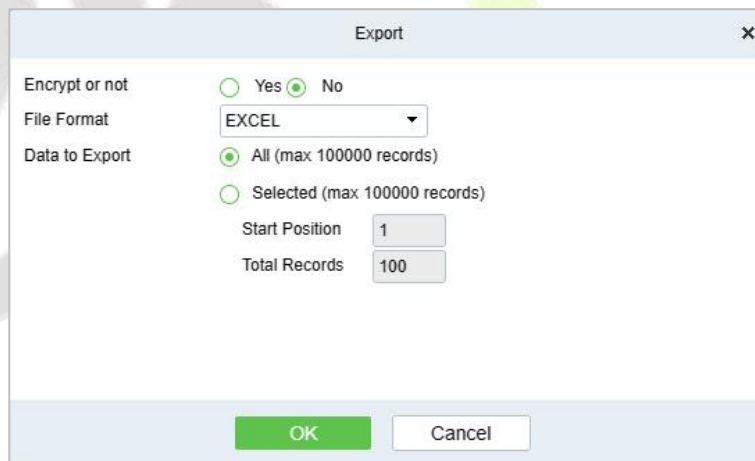


Figure 11-68

### 11.6.2.4 Subsidy Table

Click Consumption Report > Subsidy Table, as shown below:

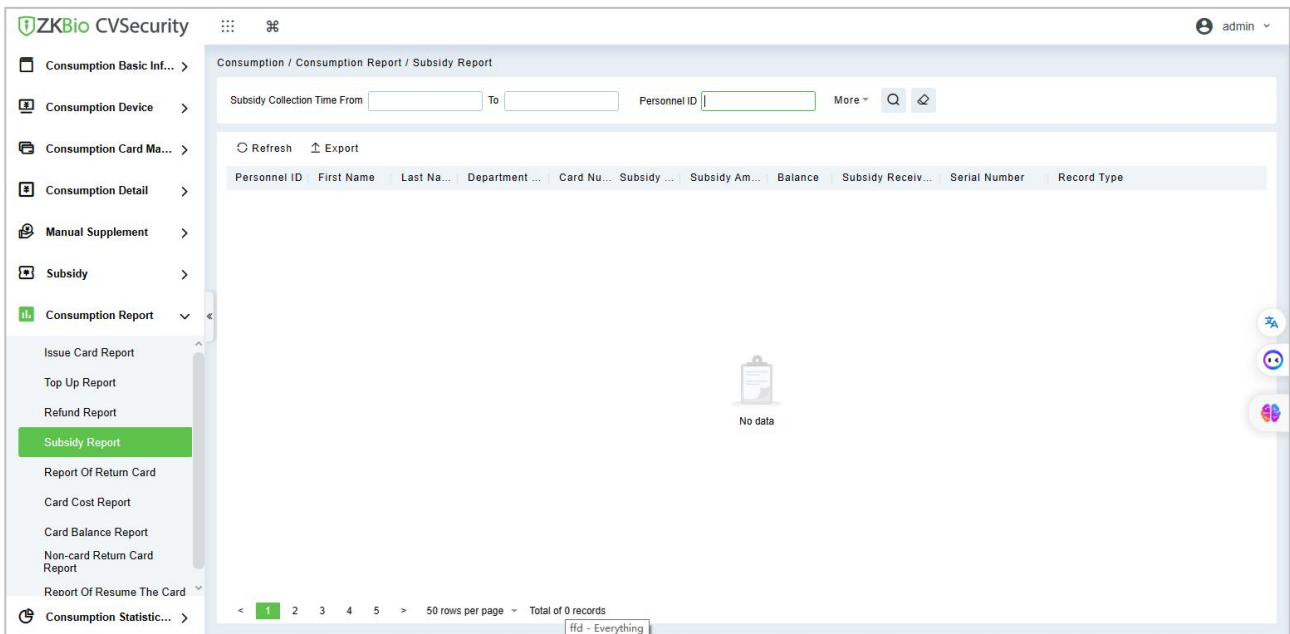


Figure 11-69

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

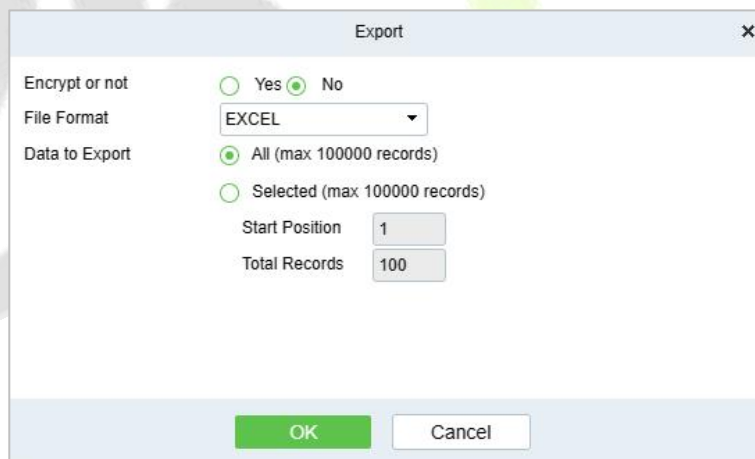


Figure 11-70

### 11.6.2.5 Report of Return Card

Click **Consumption Report > Table of Return Card**, as shown below:

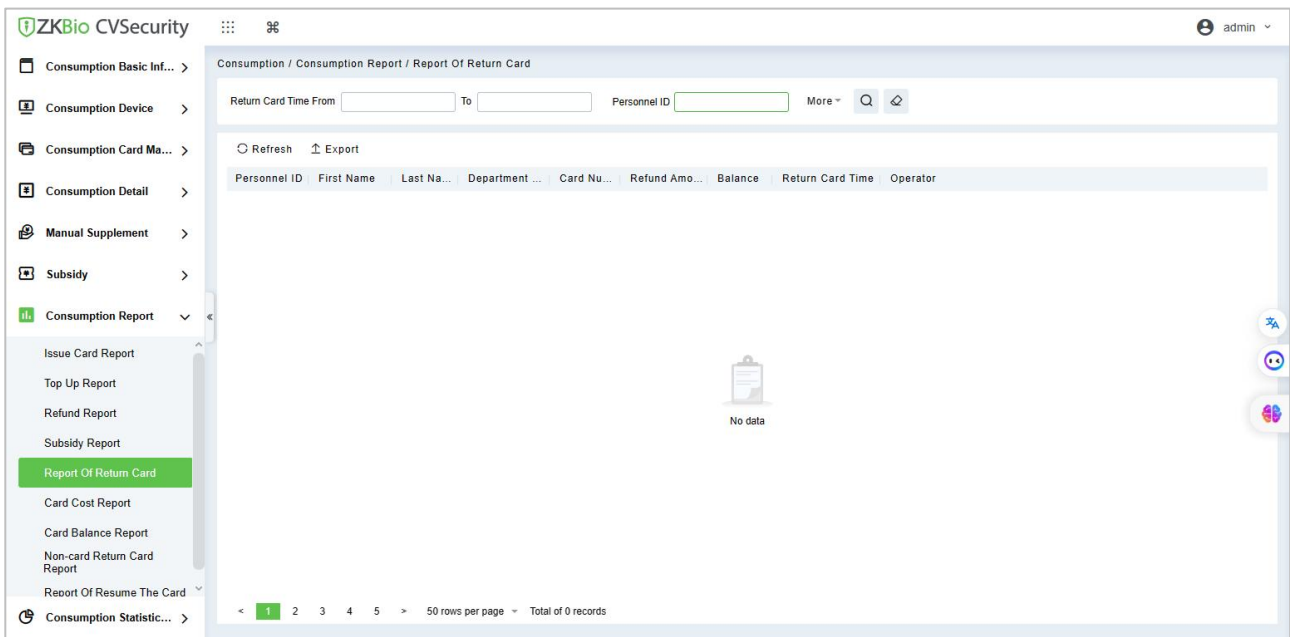


Figure 11-71

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

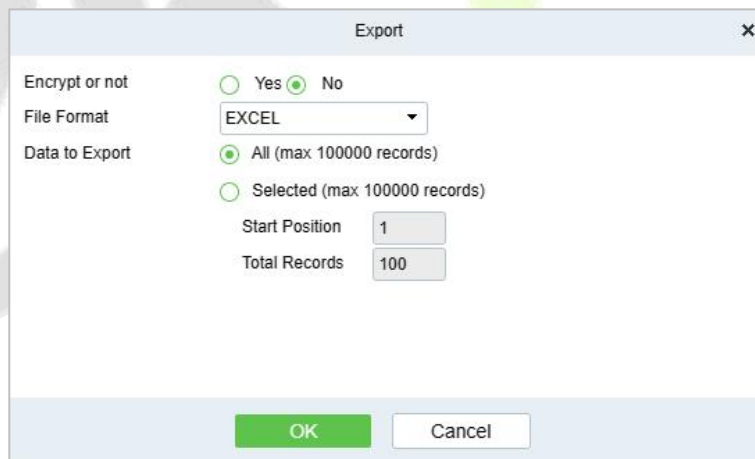


Figure 11-72

### 11.6.2.6 Card Cost Table

Click **Consumption Report > Card Cost Table**, as shown below:

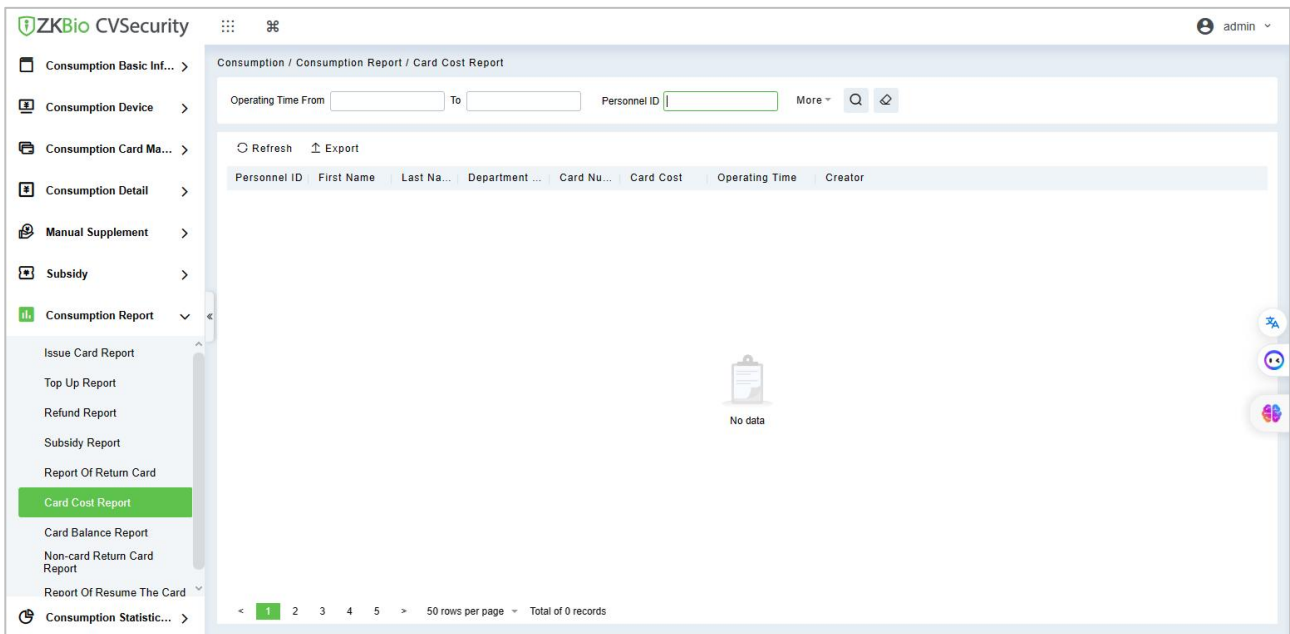


Figure 11-73

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

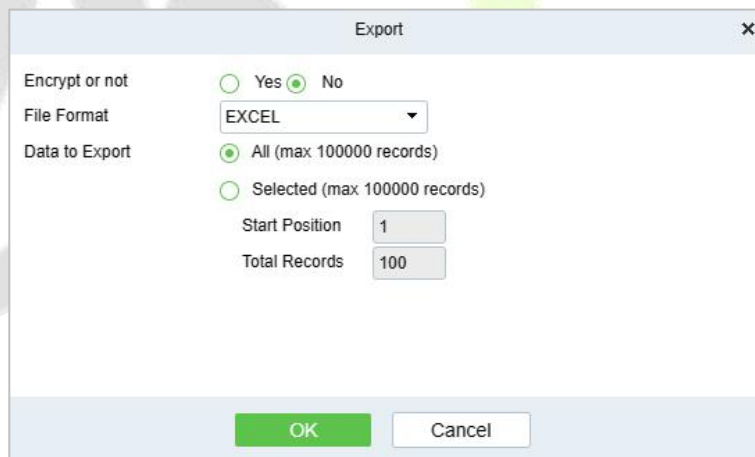


Figure 11-74

### 11.6.2.7 Card Balance Table

Click **Consumption Report > Card Balance Table**, as shown below:

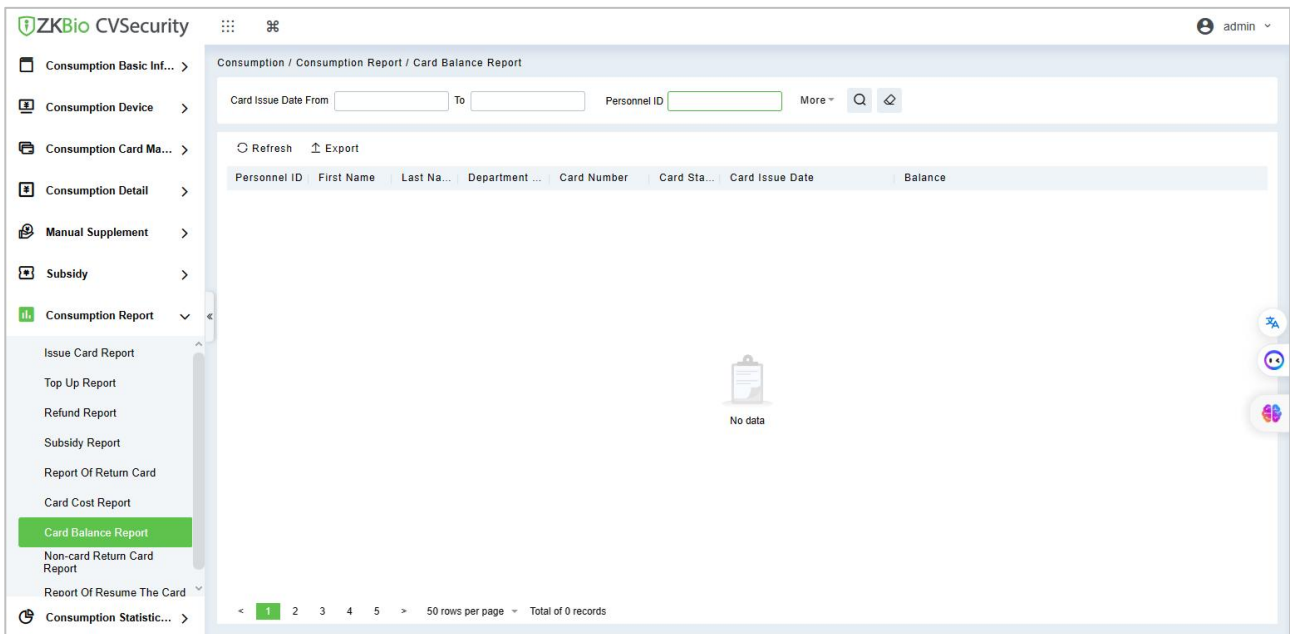


Figure 11-75

#### Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

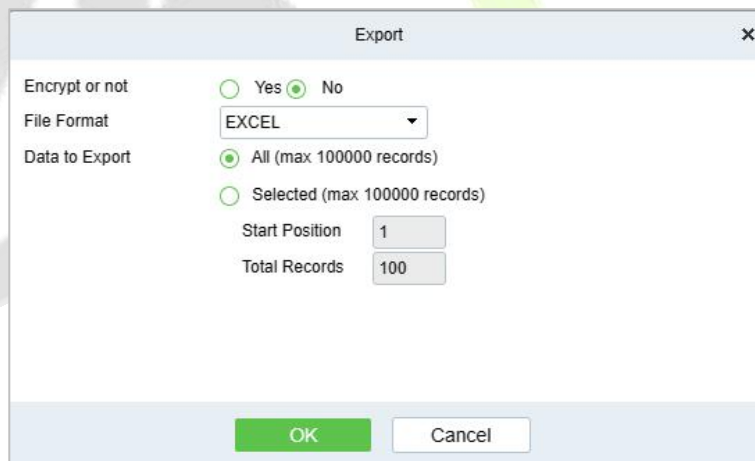


Figure 11-76

### 11.6.2.8 Non-card Return Card Table

Click **Consumption Report > Non-card Return Card**, as shown below:

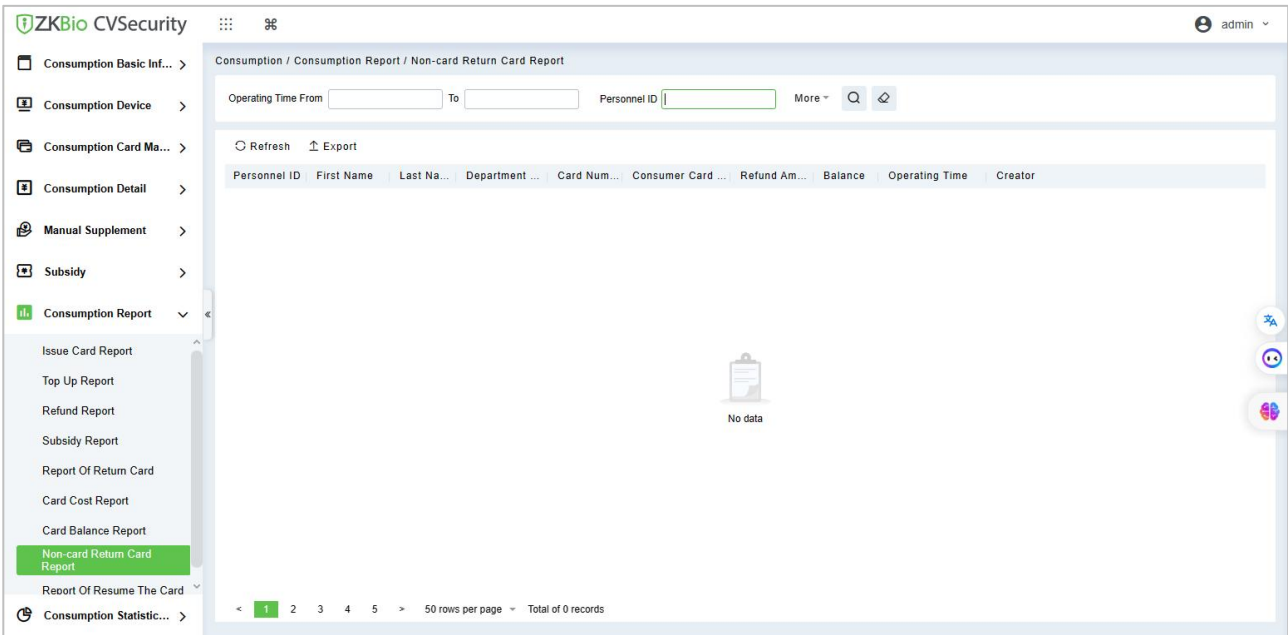


Figure 11- 77

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

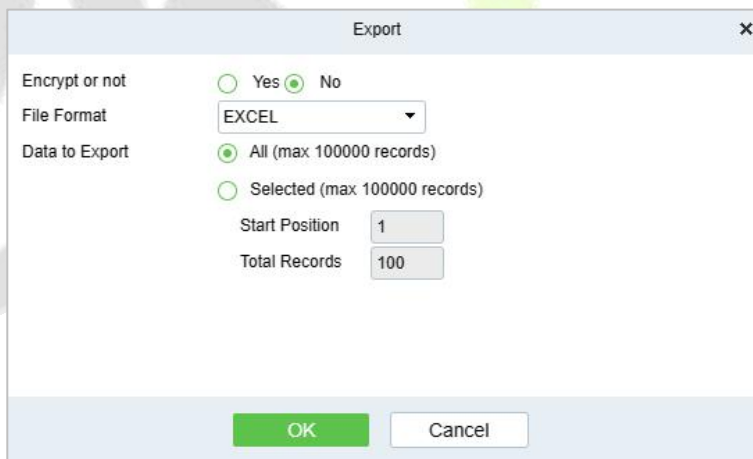


Figure 11- 78

### 11.6.2.9 Table of Resume the Card

Click **Consumption Report > Table of Resume the Card**, as shown below:

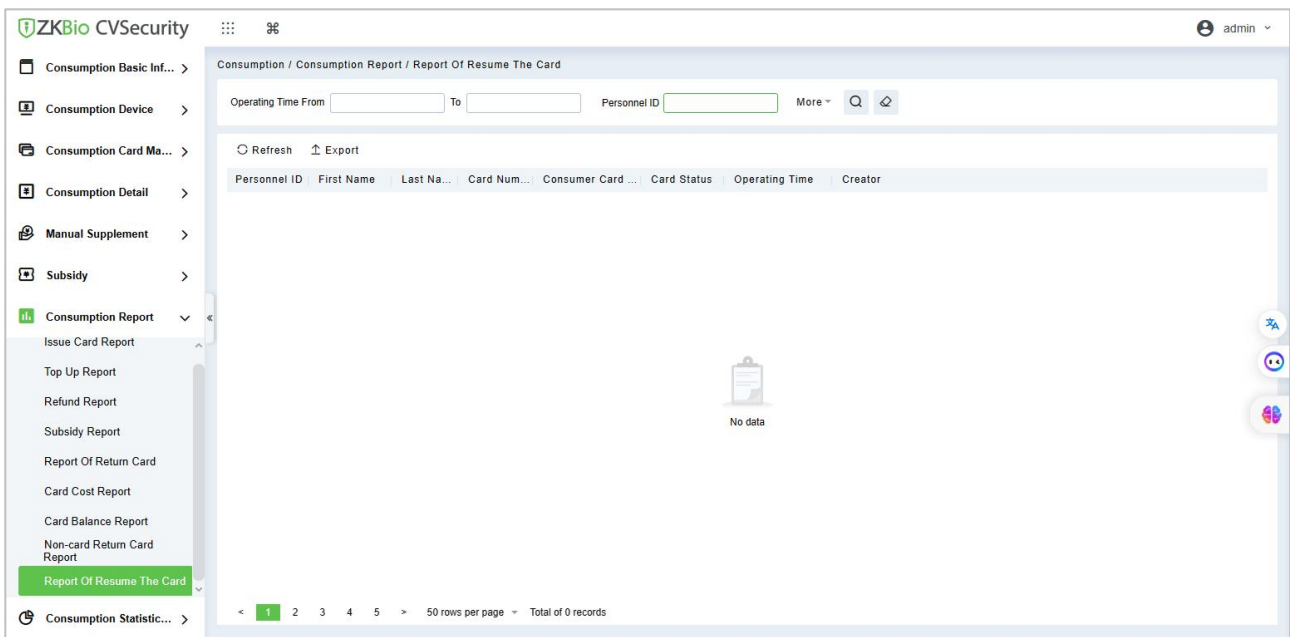


Figure 11-79

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

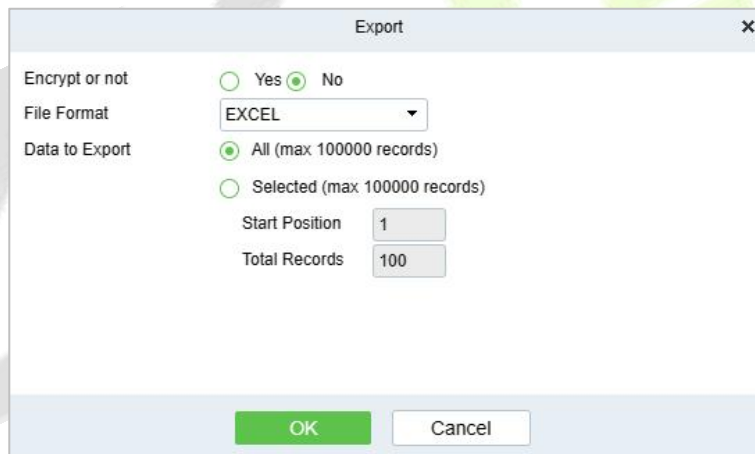


Figure 11-80

### 11.6.3 Statistical Report

The statistical report contains the statistical information of consumption system module.

#### 11.6.3.1 Personal Consumption Table

Click **Statistical Report > Personal Consumption Table**, as shown below:

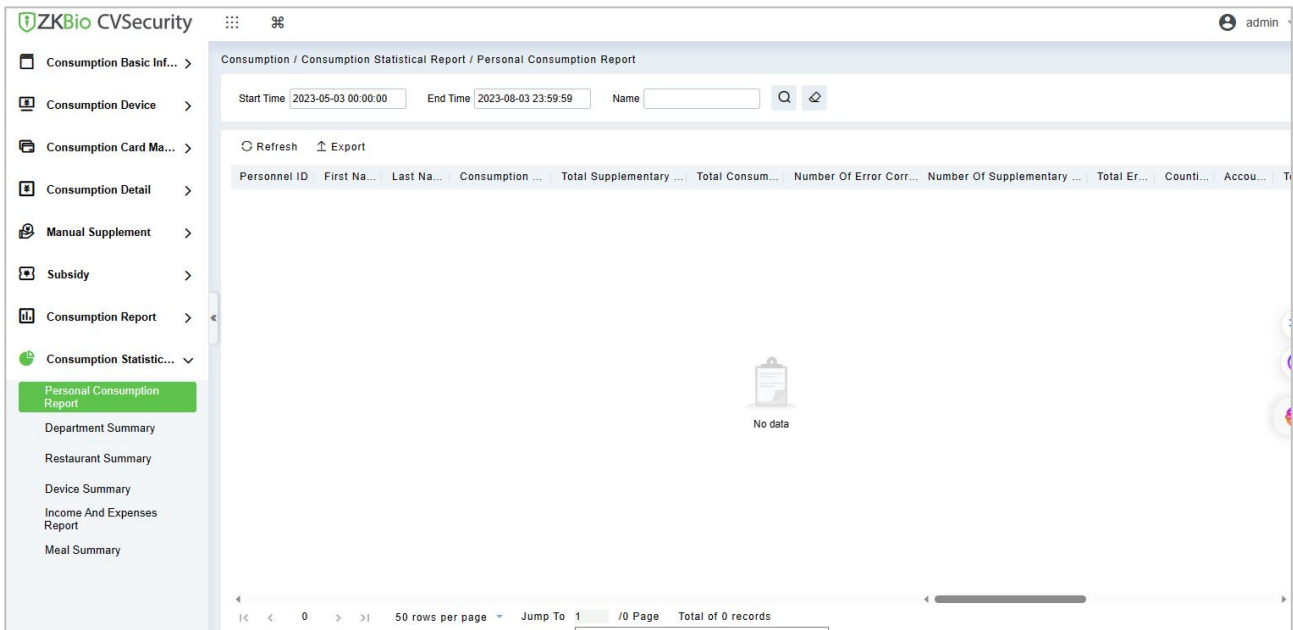


Figure 11- 81

● Export:

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

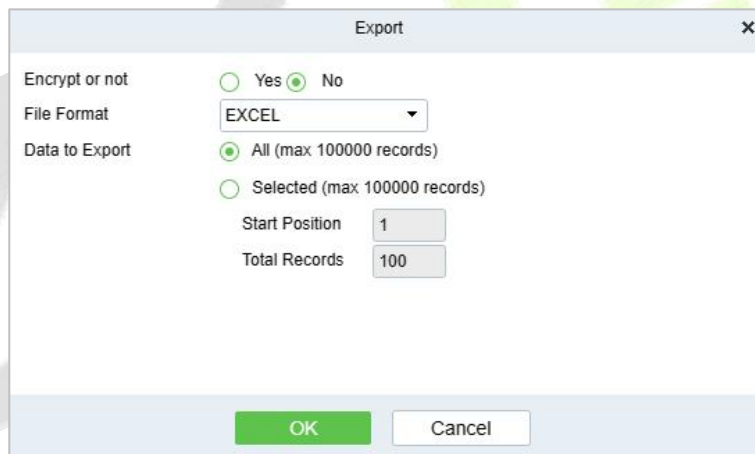



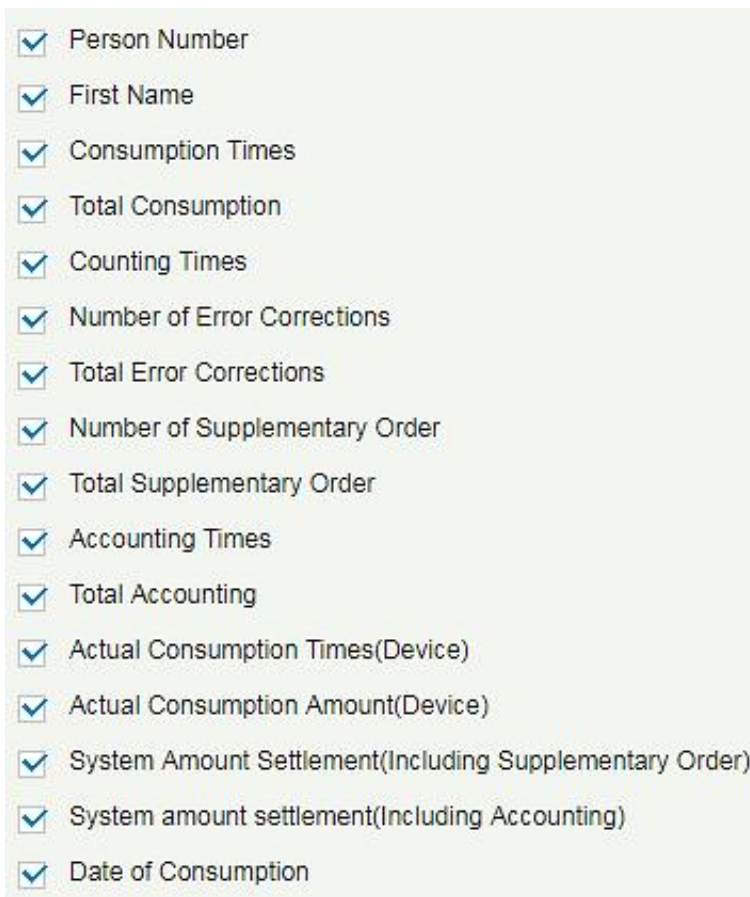
Figure 11- 82

● Refresh:

Click **Refresh** to load the latest personal consumption statistics table data.

**Note:** If the page personal consumption statistics table data is more, you can also enter the person name, department name, consumption time in the search field, click  to search and query.

The data statistics column includes below information:



**Figure 11- 83**

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number Of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times Of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (Device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (Device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (Including Supplementary Order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (Including Billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 11.6.3.2 Department Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Department Summary Table** as shown below:

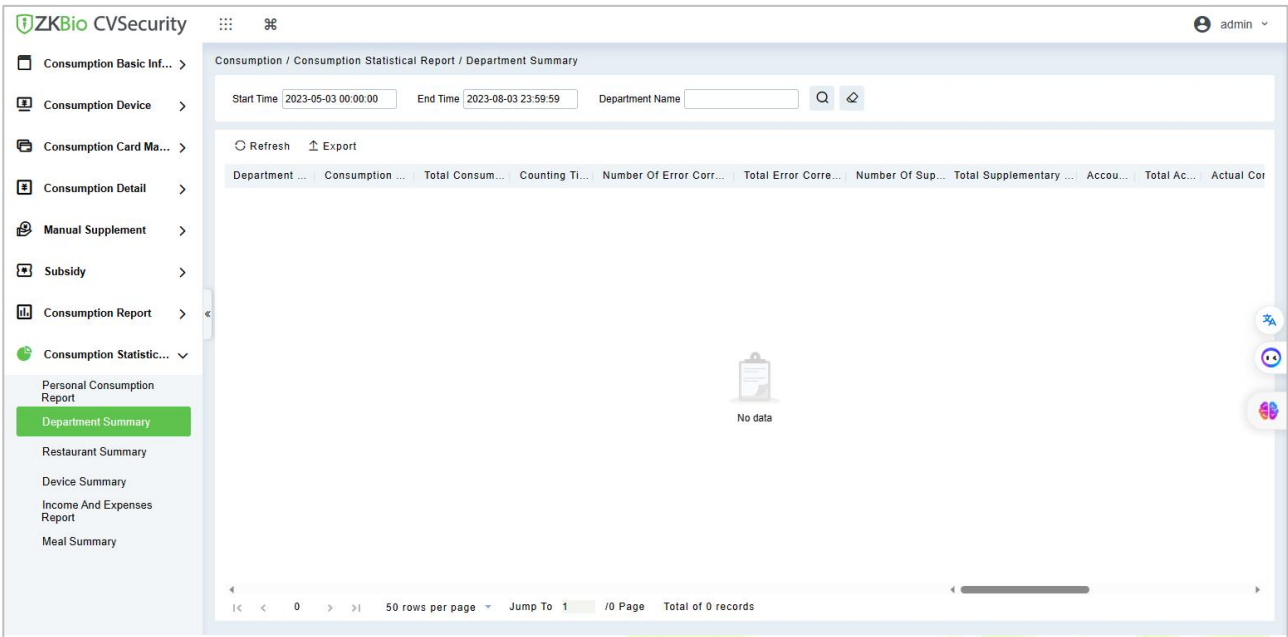


Figure 11- 84

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

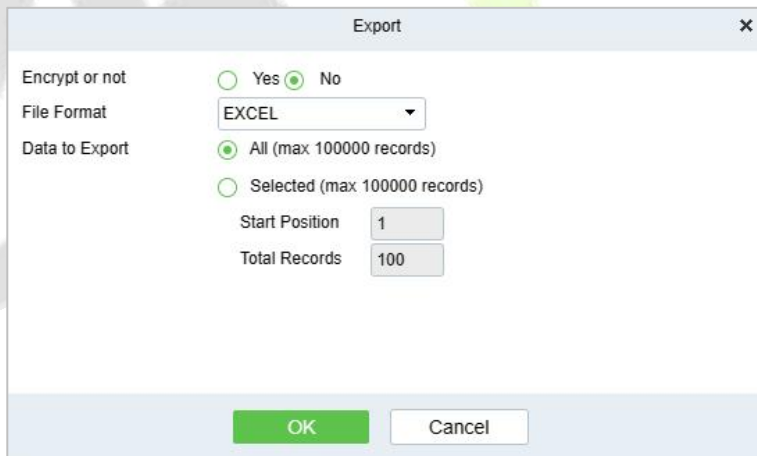



Figure 11- 85

**Refresh**

Click **Refresh** to load the latest department summary table data.

**Note:** If the page department summary table data is more, you can also enter the department name and consumption time in the search field, and click  to search for the query.

The data statistics column includes:



**Figure 11- 86**

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 11.6.3.3 Restaurant Summary

Click **Statistical Report > Restaurant Summary**, as shown below:

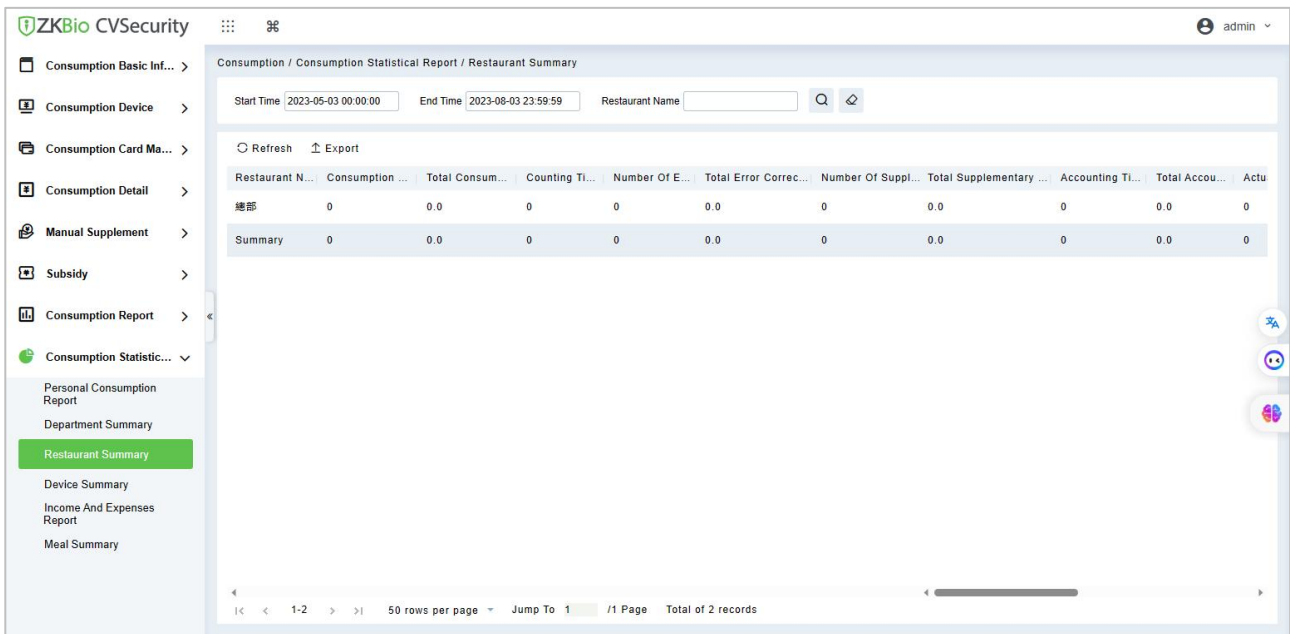


Figure 11- 87

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

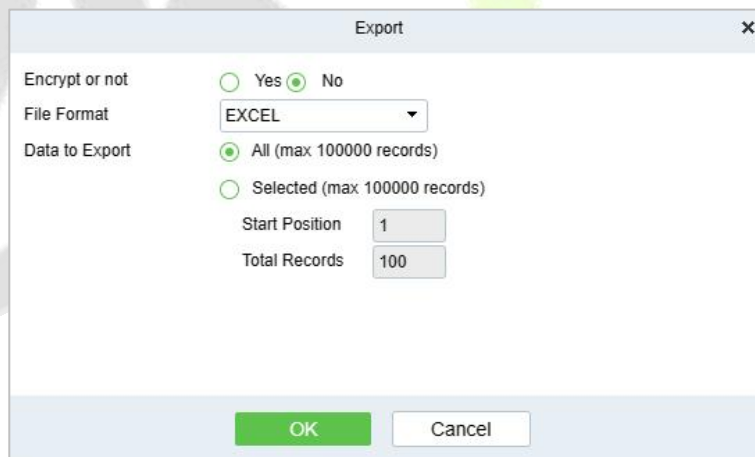


Figure 11- 88

● **Refresh:**

Click **Refresh** to load the latest restaurant summary table data.

🔍 **Note:** If the page restaurant summary table data is more, you can also enter the restaurant name, consumption time in the search bar, click 🔍 to search and query.

The data statistics column includes:

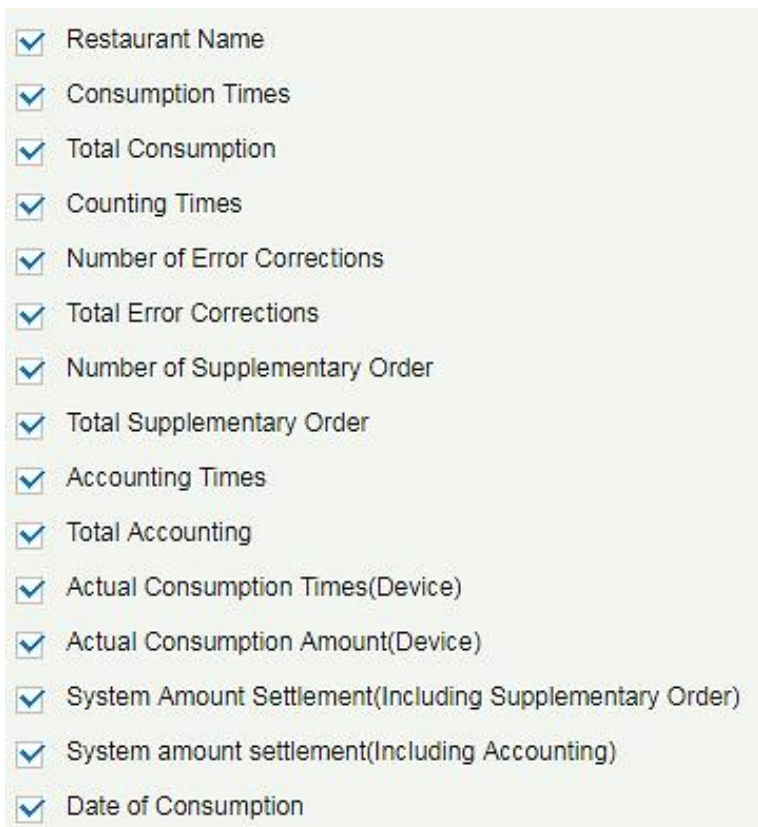


Figure 11- 89

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 11.6.3.4 Device Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Device Summary Table**, as shown below:

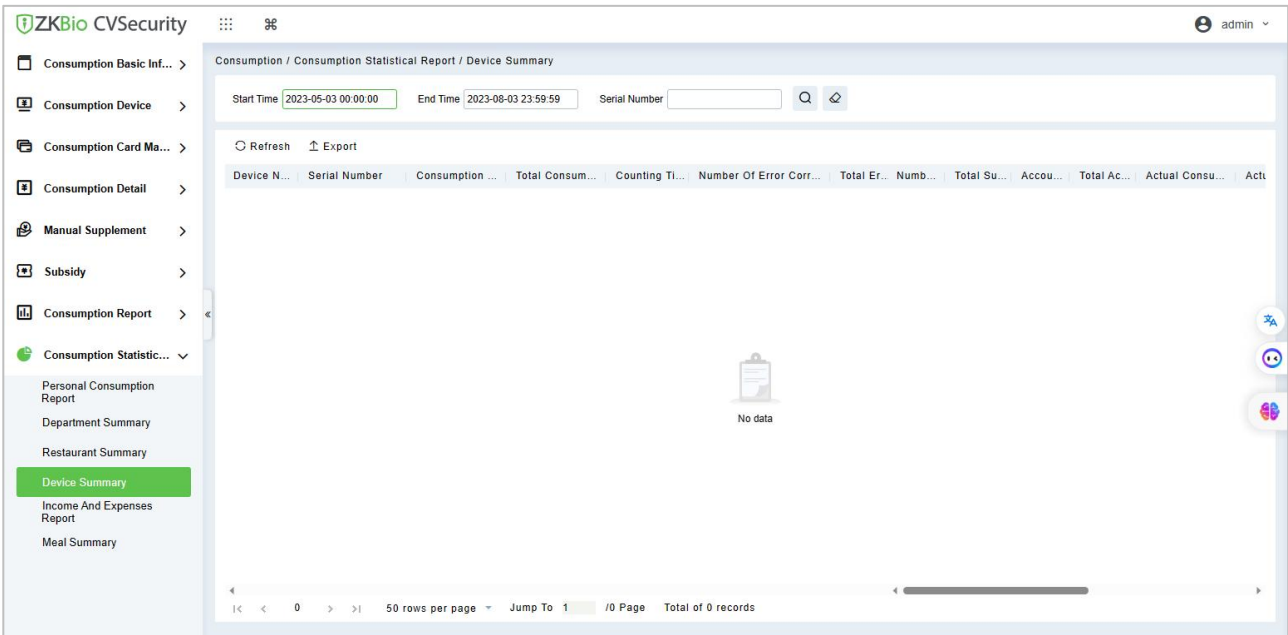


Figure 11-90

#### Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

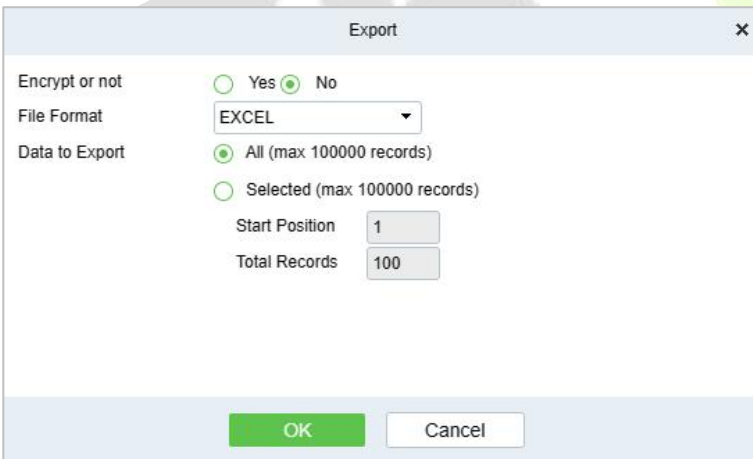


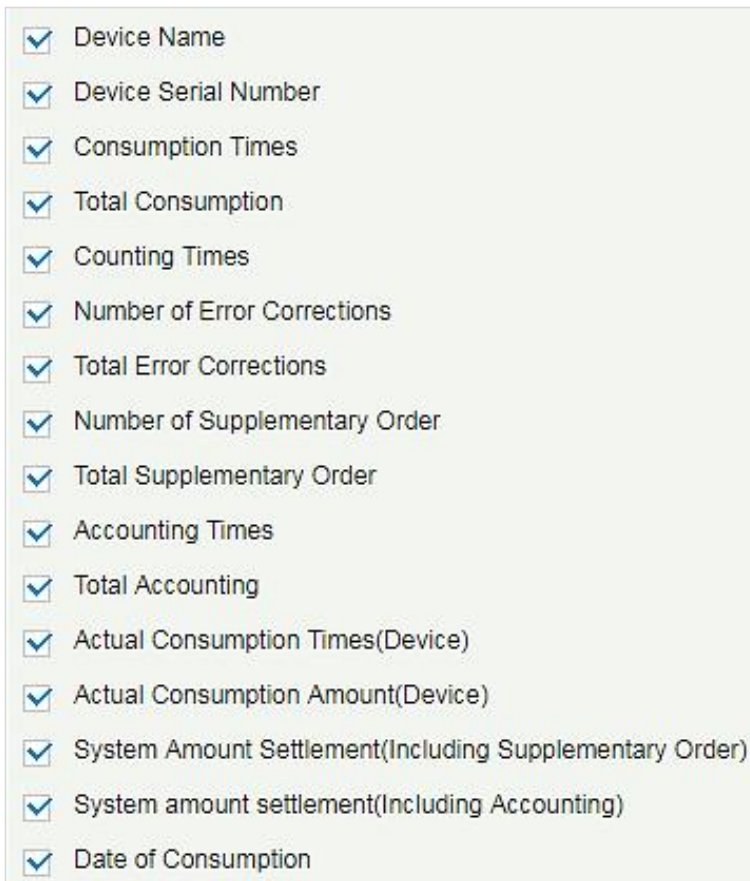
Figure 11-91

#### ● Refresh:

Click **Refresh** to load the latest equipment summary table data.

**Note:** If there is more data on the page device summary table, you can also enter the device name and consumption time in the search field, and click to search for it.

The data statistics column includes:



**Figure 11-92**

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 11.6.3.5 Income and Expenses Table

Click **Statistical Report > Income and Expenses Table**, as shown below:

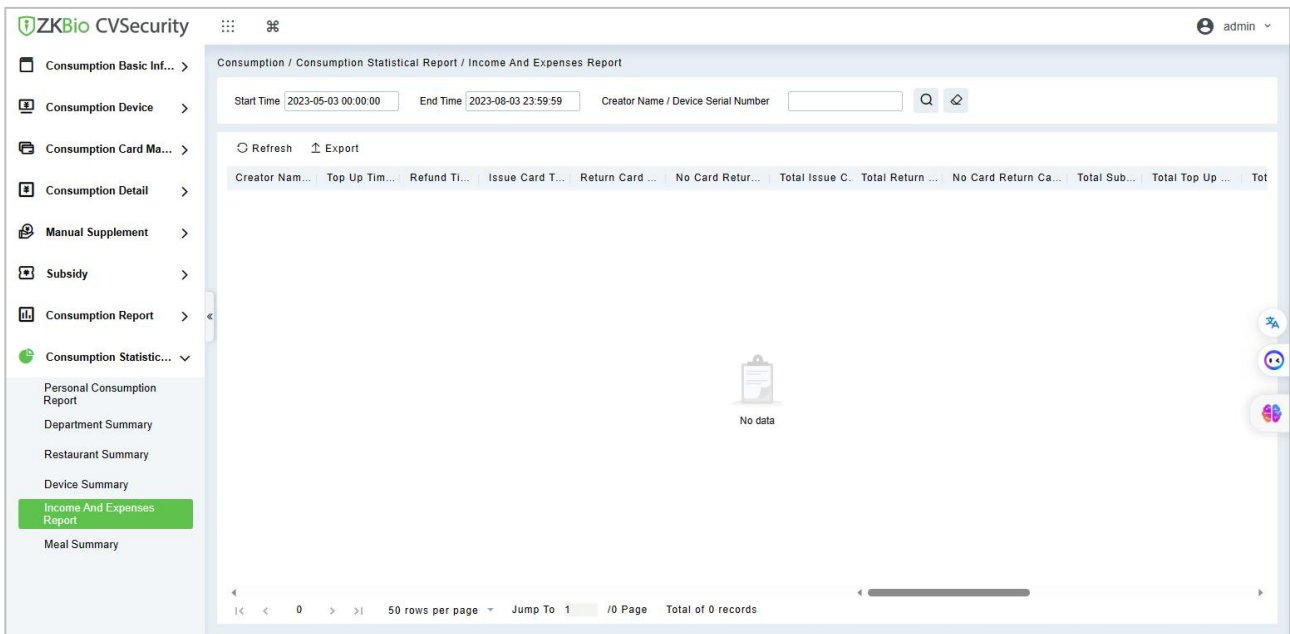


Figure 11-93

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

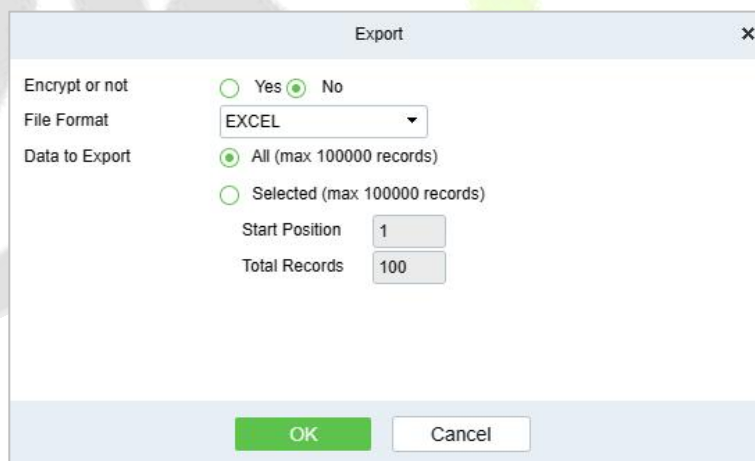


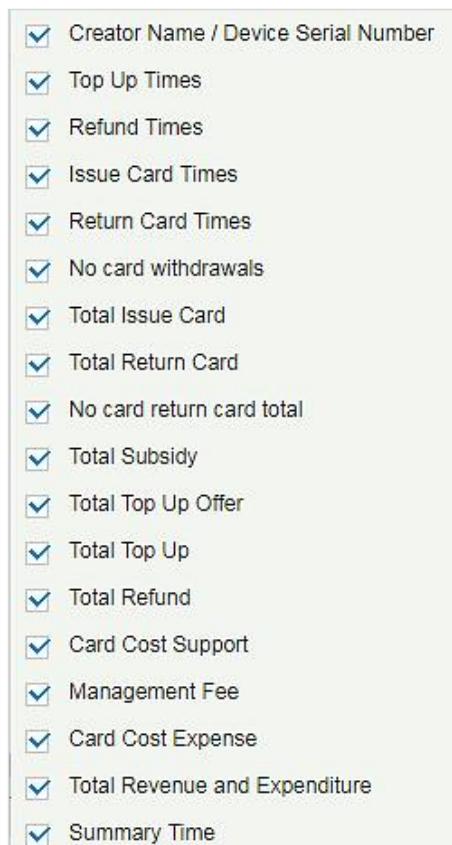
Figure 11-94

● **Refresh:**

Click **Refresh** to load the latest revenue and expenditure summary table data.

⚠ **Note:** If there is more data on the page income and expenditure summary table, you can also enter the creator name/device serial number and summary time in the search field, and click 🔍 to search for it.

The data statistics column includes



**Figure 11-95**

- **Top up Times** = The total number of counts a card was added extra amount.
- **Refund Times** = The total number of counts a card were refunded.
- **Issue Card Times** = The total number of counts a card were issued.
- **Return Card Times** = The total number of counts the cards were returned.
- **Non-card Return card Times** = The total count of Non-card Return card.
- **Total Issue Card** = The total number of issued card.
- **Total Return card** = The total number of cards returned.
- **No Card Return Card Total** = The total number of blocked card which are not returned.
- **Total Subsidy** = The total amount of subsidy for the card type.
- **Total Top-up Offer** = The total amount of top-up discount for the card type.
- **Total Top-up** = The total amount of top-up for the card type.
- **Total Refund** = The total amount of refund for the card type.
- **Card Cost Support** = The total amount of card cost for the card type.
- **Management Fee** = The total amount of management fee for the card type.
- **Card Cost Expense** = The total amount of card cost for the card type.
- **Total Revenue and Expenditure** = (Total Top up + Card Cost Expense + Total Issue Card + Management fee) - (Total Refund - Total Return Card).

### 11.6.3.6 Meal Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Meal Summary Table**, as shown below:

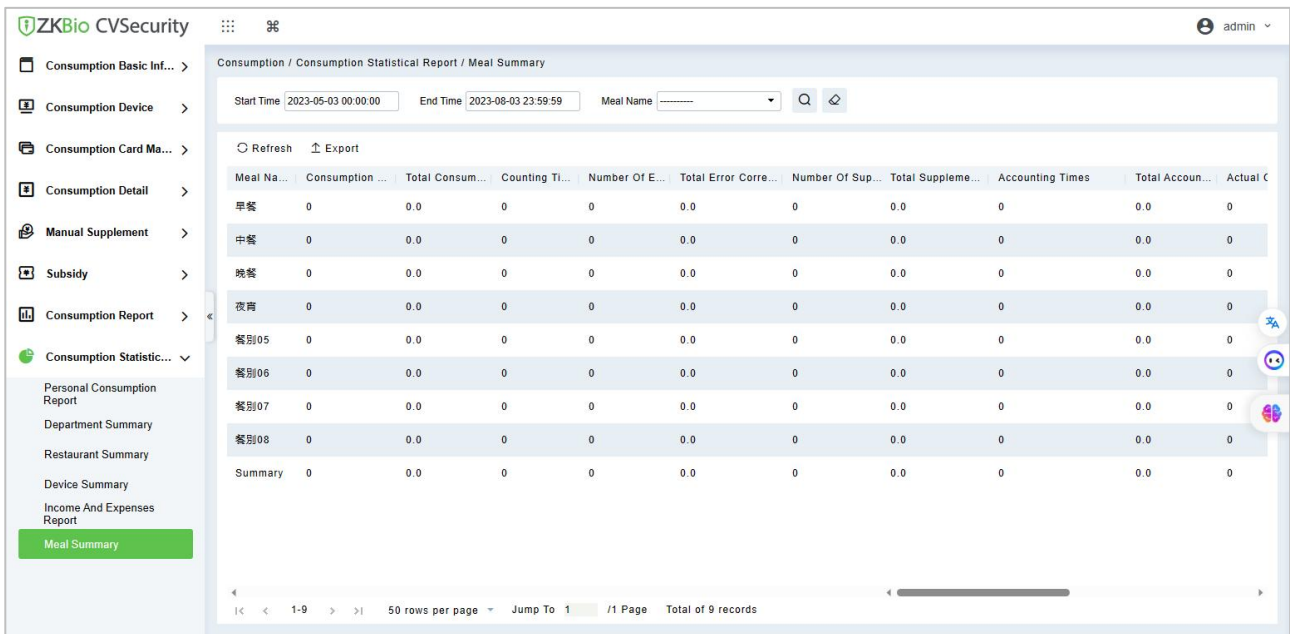


Figure 11-96

● **Export:**

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

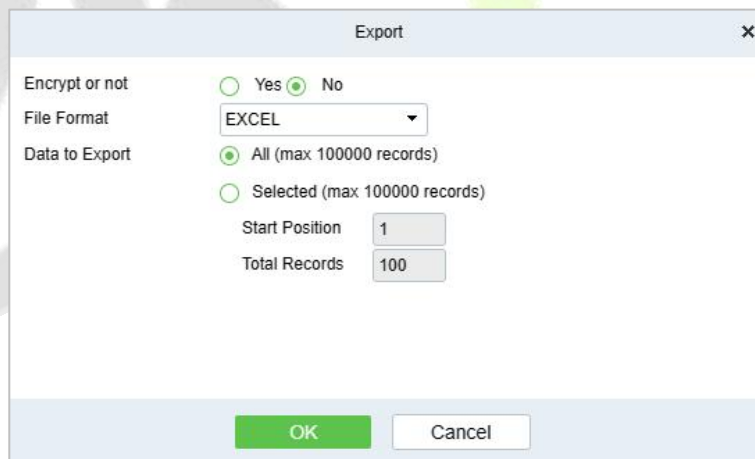


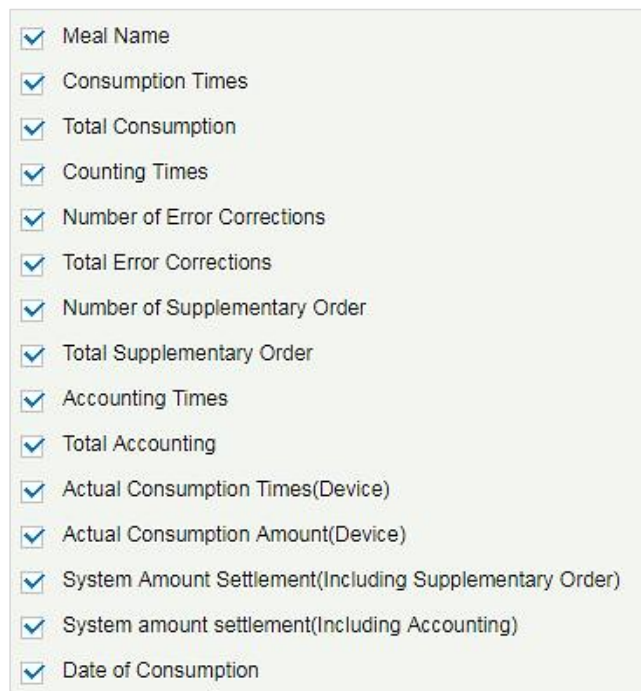
Figure 11-97

● **Refresh:**

Click **Refresh** to load the latest meal summary table data.

⚠ **Note:** If there is more data in the page meal summary table, you can also enter the device name, name, and consumption time in the search field, and click to search for it.

The data statistics column includes:



**Figure 11- 98**

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

## 12 Consumption (Online) System

Based on controlled devices by software, it realizes the online consumption mode combining the functions of the Promerc-300 face consumer machine. The software mainly configures background data, including consumption time zone, commodity information, restaurant information and other data. Centralize various data on the device, generate consumption reports, and operate online account creating, refund, recharge, subsidy, etc. on the software.

### 12.1 Consumption Basic Management

#### 12.1.1 Piecewise Fixed Value

Piecewise Fixed value is the value and validity of a card which is supposed to be used on the consumer device. Click **Consumption Basic Management > Piecewise Fixed Value** as shown in the following figure.

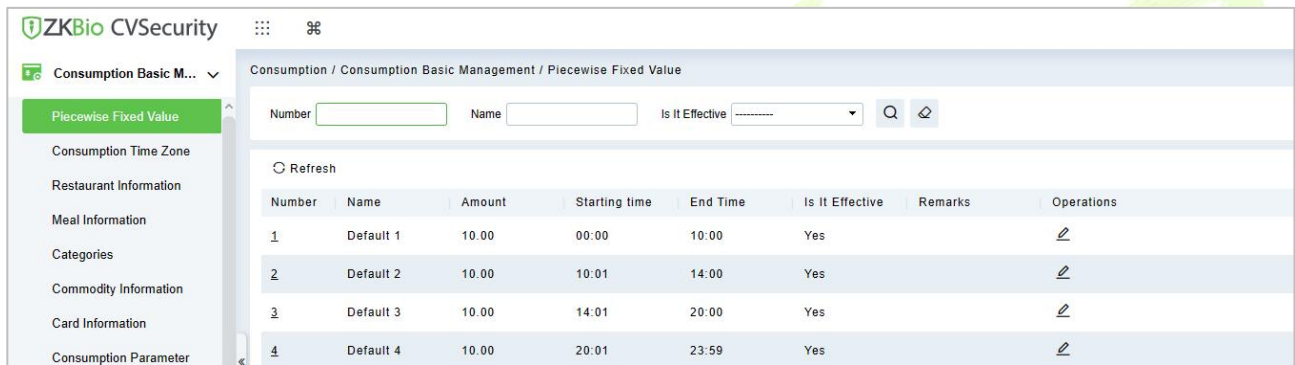


Figure 12- 1

##### 12.1.1.1 Edit

By default, there are eight values, Click **Edit** on the operation column to open the modification dialog box.

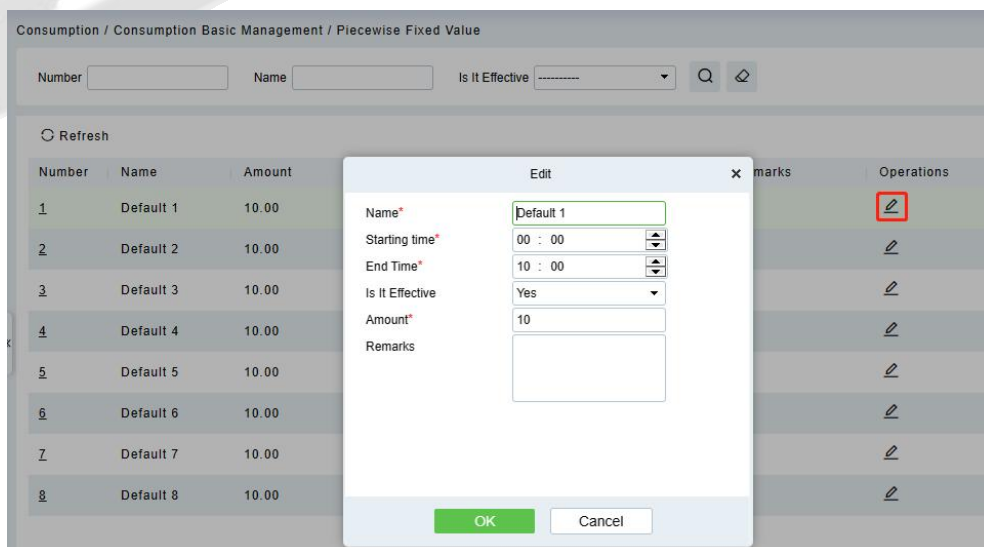


Figure 12- 2

You can provide the desired information in the dialog box which include: **Name, Start time, End time, Whether Effective, Amount, and Remarks.**

### 12.1.2 Consumption Time Zone

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Consumption Time Zone** as shown in the following figure:  
By default, the system has some Consumption Time zones, you can select and edit according to your preferences.

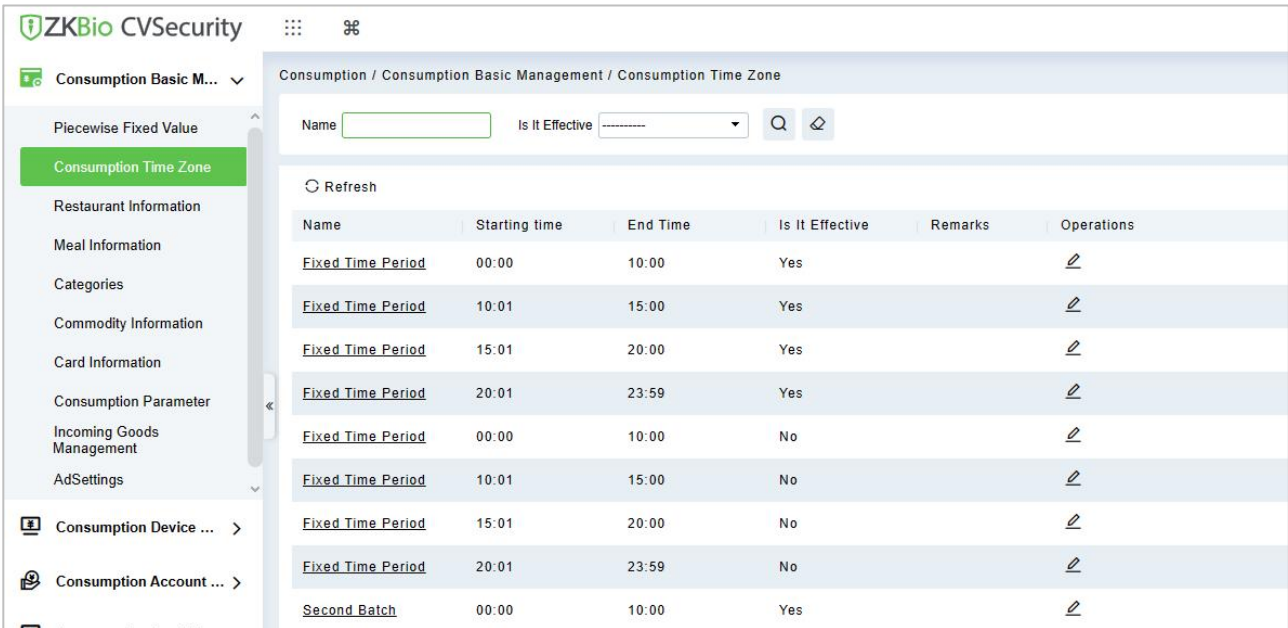


Figure 12- 3

#### 12.1.2.1 Edit

Click **Edit** column on the operation column to open the modification dialog box.

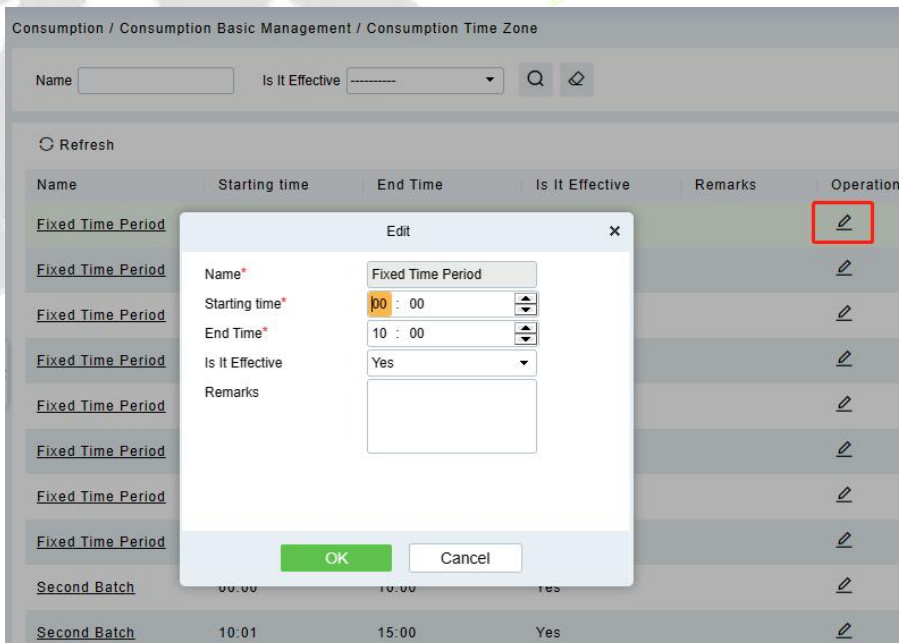


Figure 12- 4

On the dialog box, you can select the required **Start time**, **End time**, **Whether Effective**, and **Remarks** (optional), as shown in the above figure. After providing the information, click **OK**.

### 12.1.3 Restaurant Information

By default, a Restaurant name is already added, you can edit it and also add new ones.

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Restaurant Information**, shown as following figure:

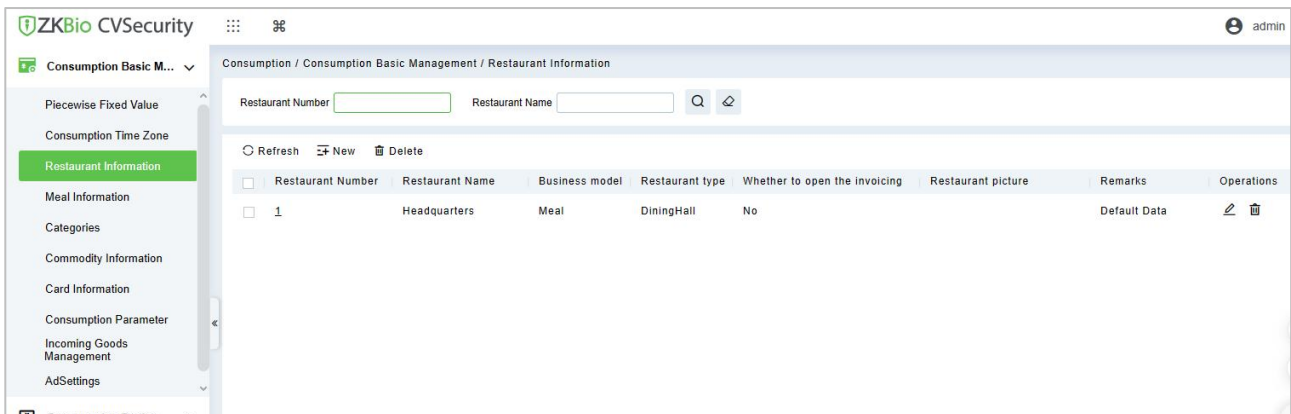


Figure 12- 5

#### 12.1.3.1 New

Click **New**, to add a restaurant.

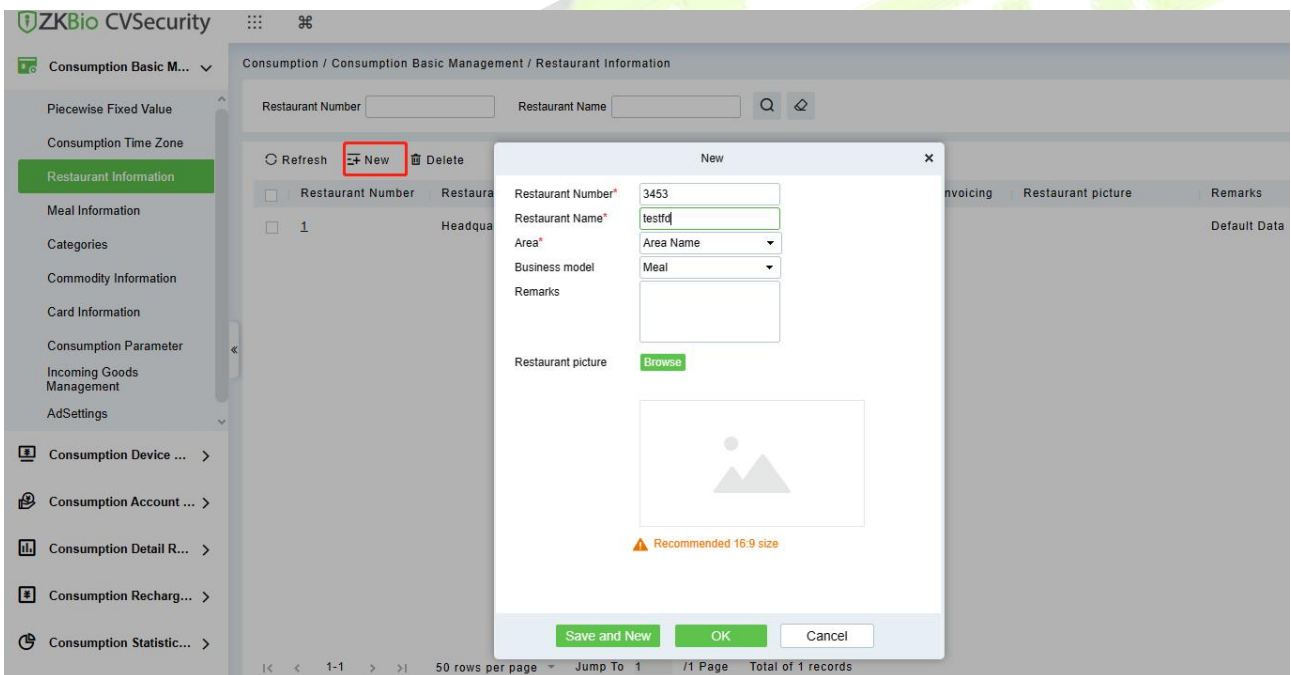


Figure 12- 6

Type the preferred Restaurant number, Restaurant name, and Remarks (optional) information, choose whether to open the invoicing, and allows user to upload restaurant picture, then click **OK** to save and close or click **Save and New** for continue adding.

### 12.1.3.2 Edit

Click **Edit** in the operation column to open the modification dialog box.

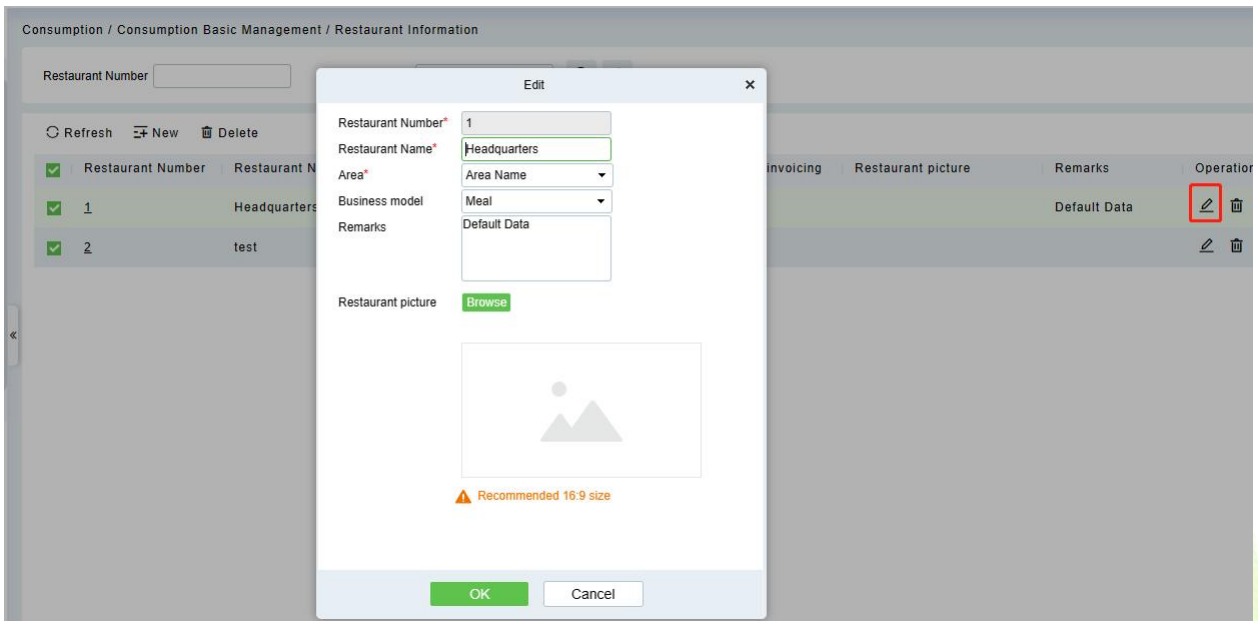


Figure 12- 7

### 12.1.3.3 Delete

You can directly click **Delete** on the required hotel to remove it from the system.

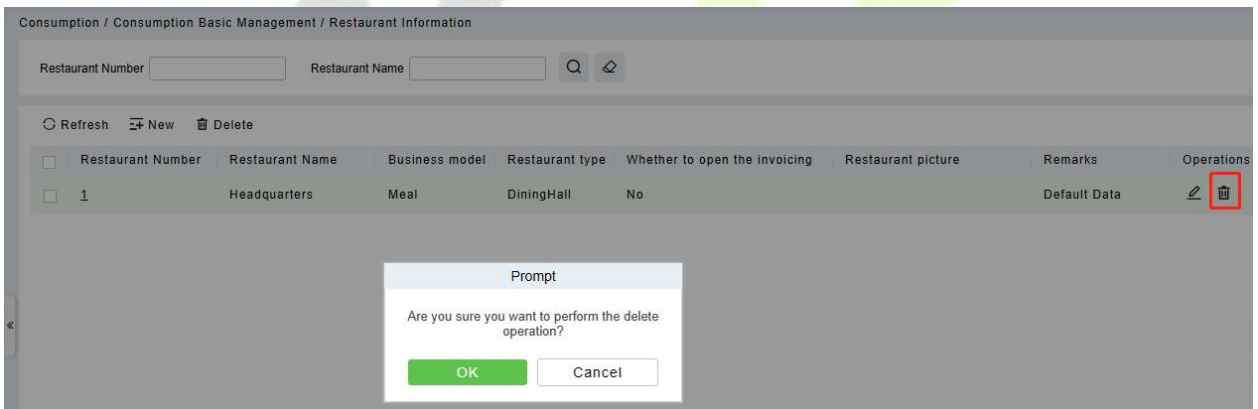


Figure 12- 8

For deleting in batch, select the required hotel(s) as shown below and click **Delete**. The default restaurant number 1 cannot be deleted.

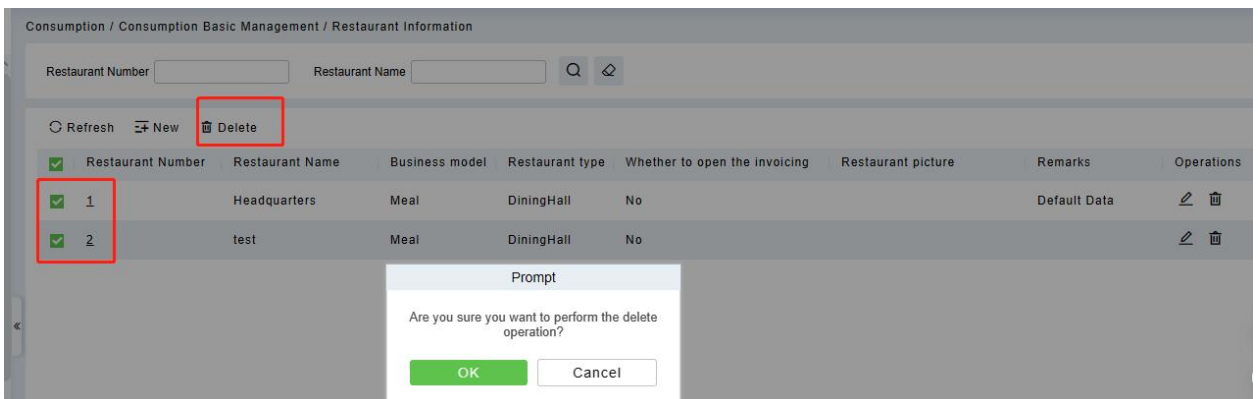


Figure 12- 9

### 12.1.4 Meal Information

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Meal Information**, shown as following figure:

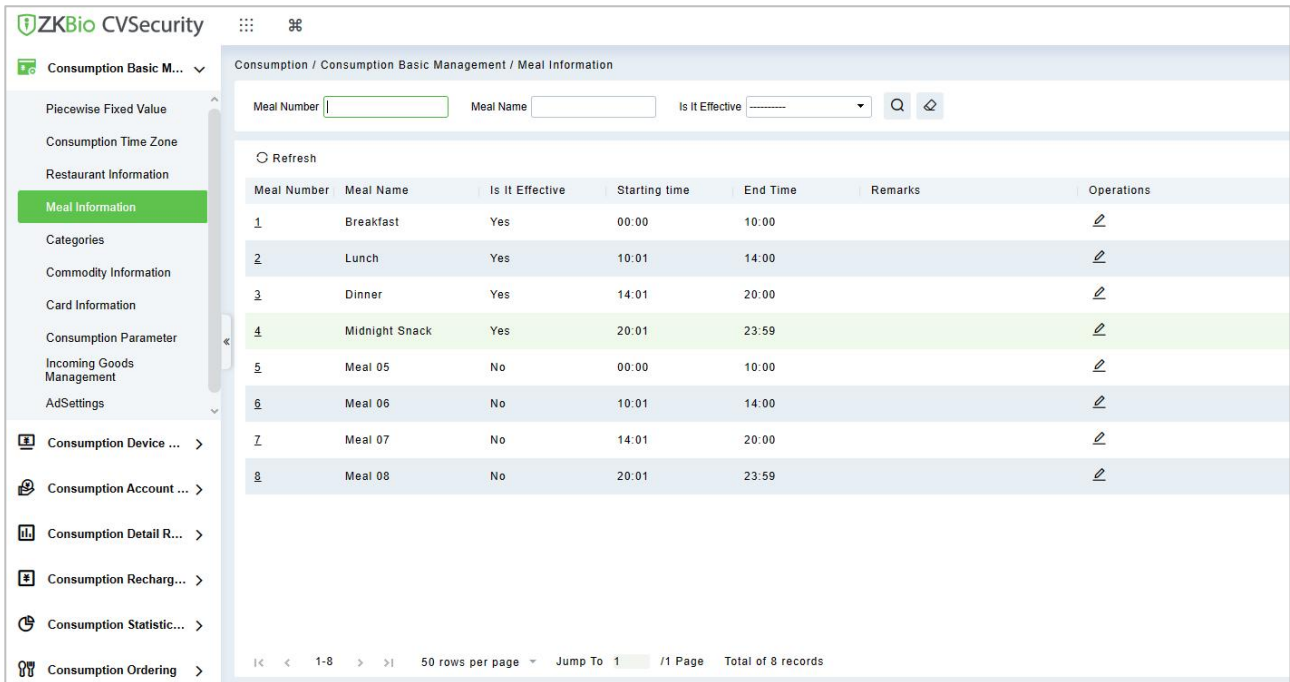


Figure 12-10

#### 12.1.4.1 Edit

Click on the meal number of list and the edit column of the operation to pop up the modification dialog box.

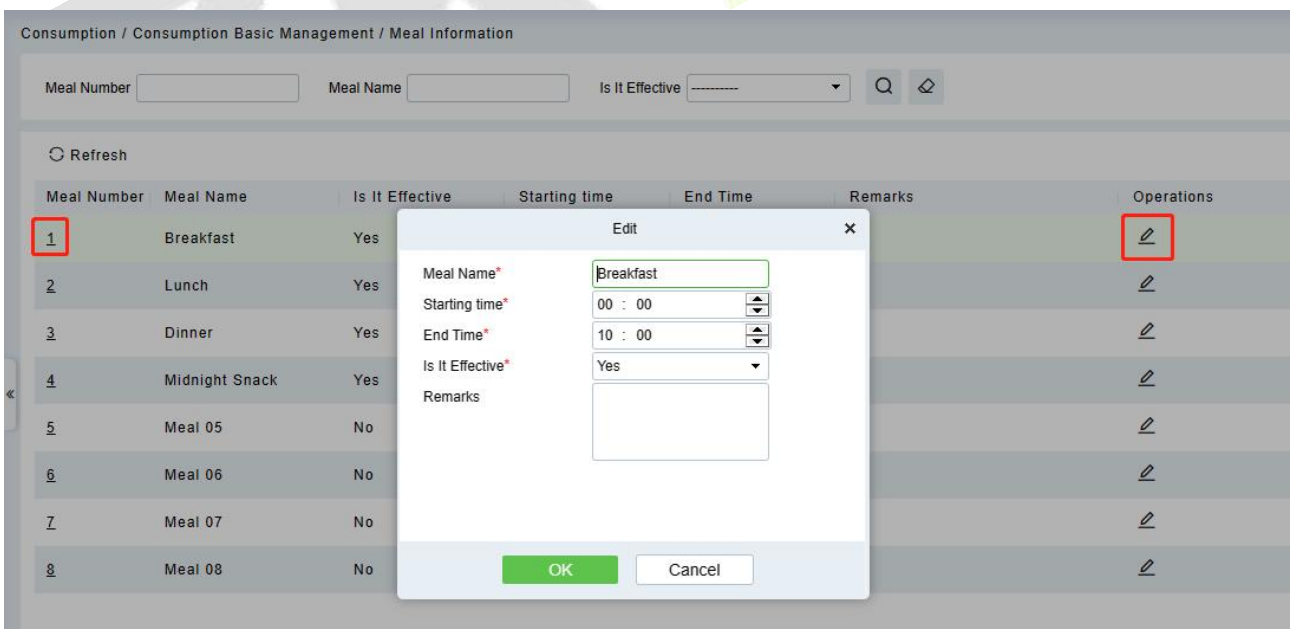


Figure 12-11

Enter the information in the dialog box which include: **Meal Name, Start Time, End time, Whether Effective** (status), **Remarks** (optional) and then click **OK** to save.

### 12.1.5 Categories

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Categories** as shown in the following figure:

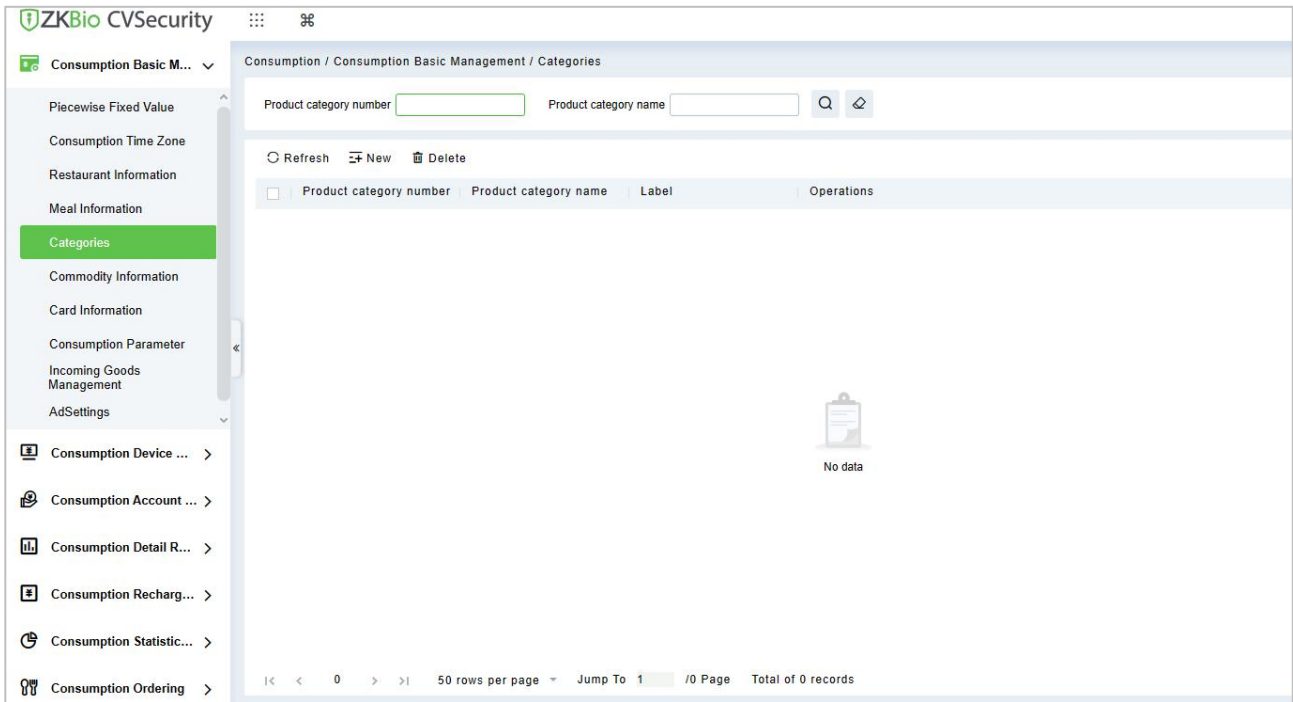


Figure 12- 12

### 12.1.5.1 New

Click **New** to add, enter required **Product category number**, **Product category name**, in the dialog box, and then click **OK** to save.

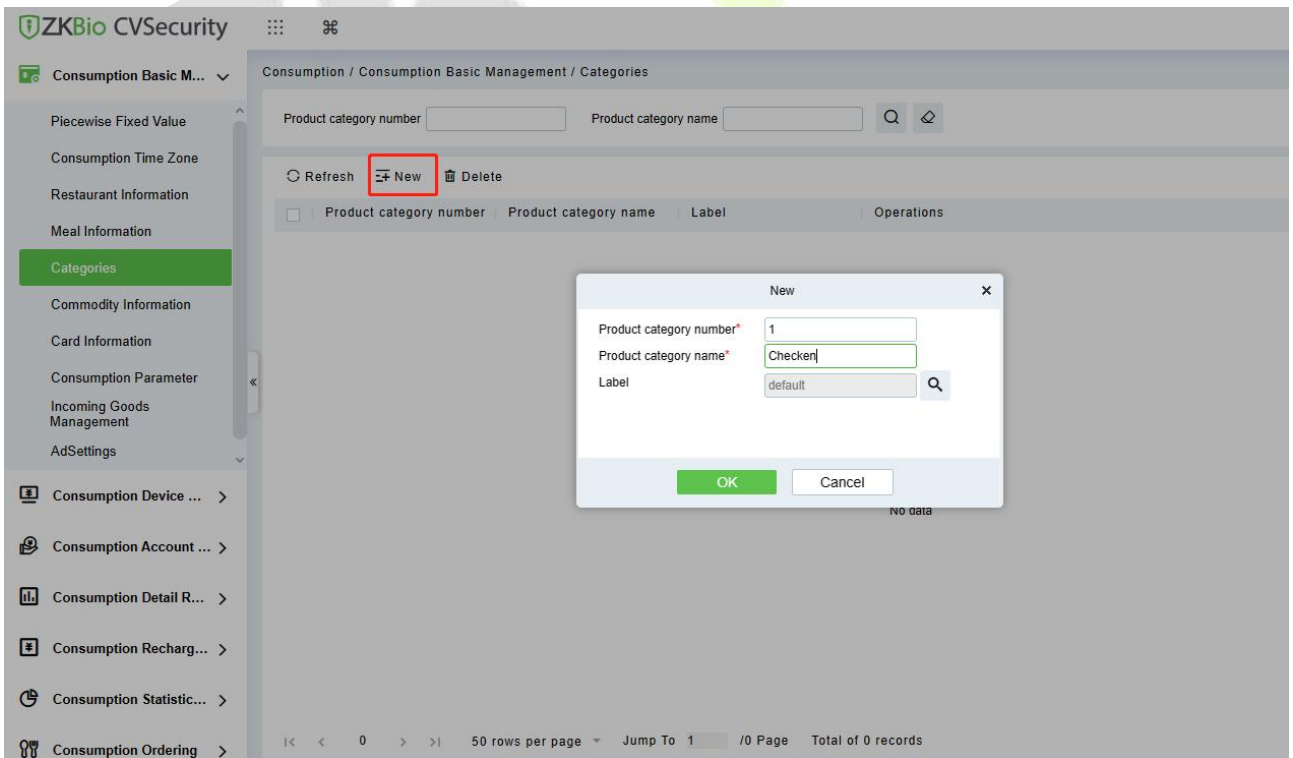


Figure 12- 13

### 12.1.6 Commodity Information

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Commodity Information** as shown in the following figure:

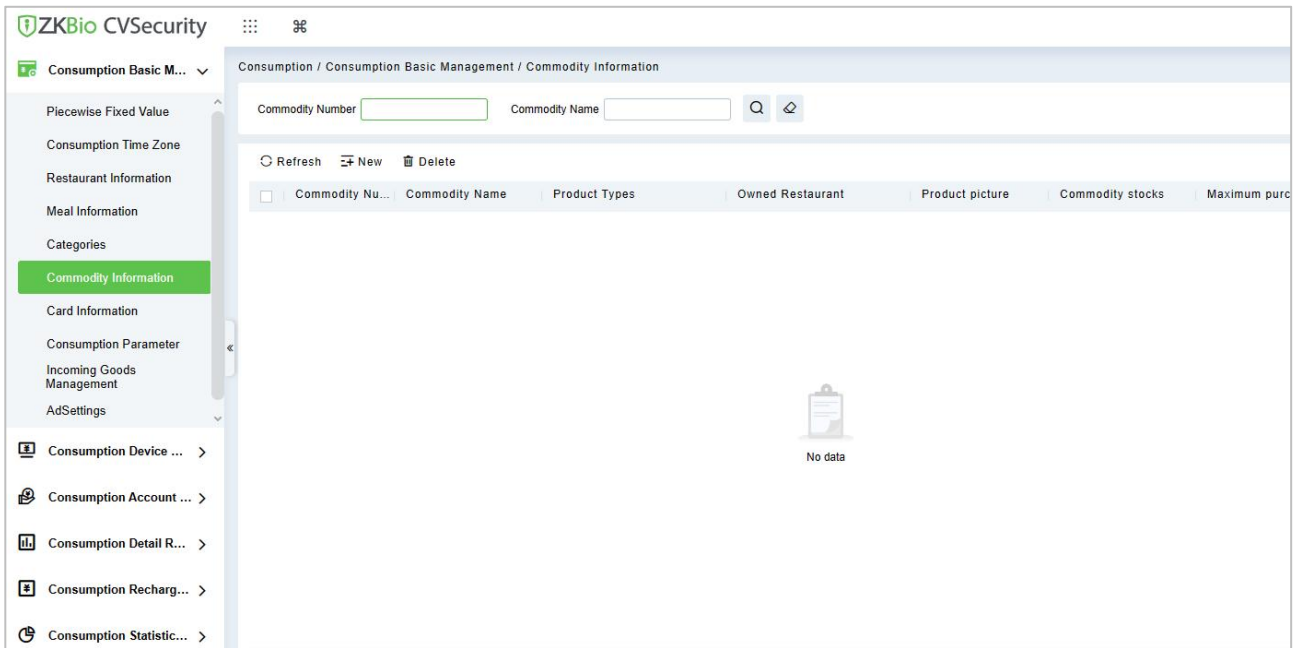


Figure 12- 14

### 12.1.6.1 New

Click **New** to add, enter required **Commodity number**, **Commodity Name**, Commodity stocks, Maximum purchase quantity, **Unit price**, **Member price**, **Barcode**, and **remarks** in the dialog box, choose the Commodity categories and Owned Restaurant in the pull-down list, and then click **OK** to save and close or click **Save and New** for continue adding.

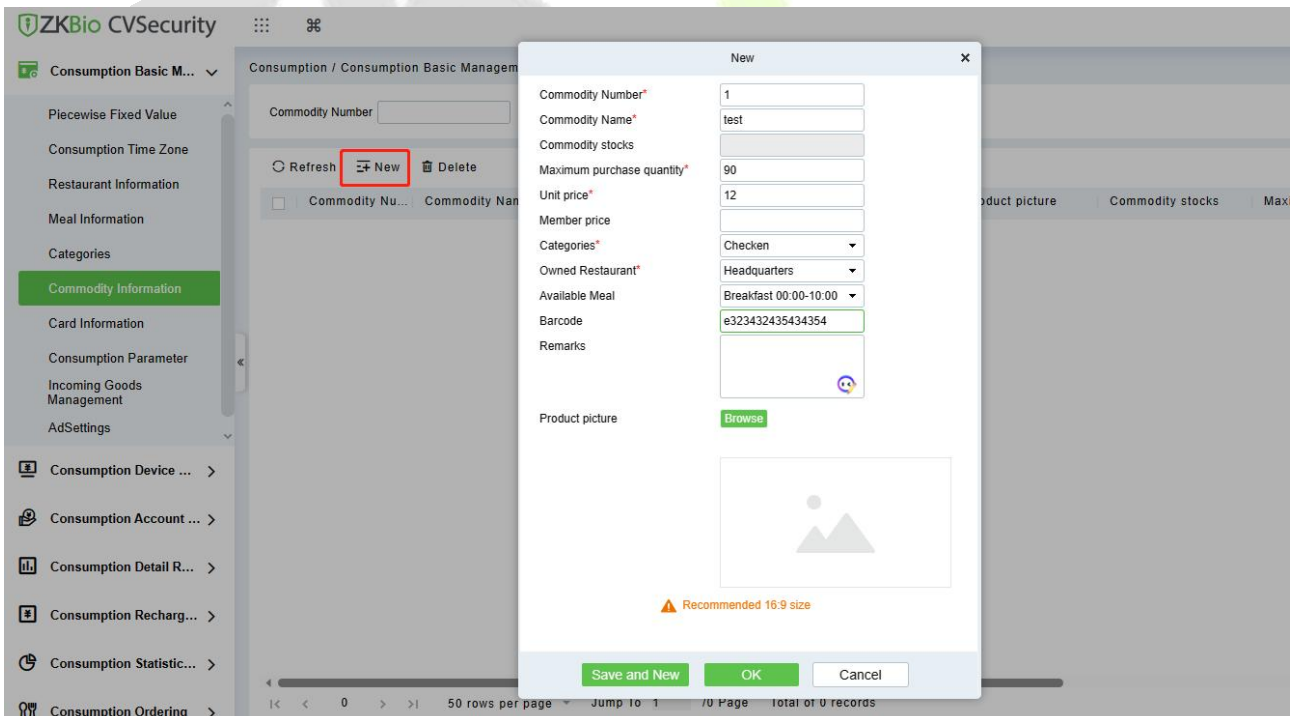


Figure 12- 15

### 12.1.6.2 Delete

You can directly click **Delete** on the required Commodity to remove it from the system.

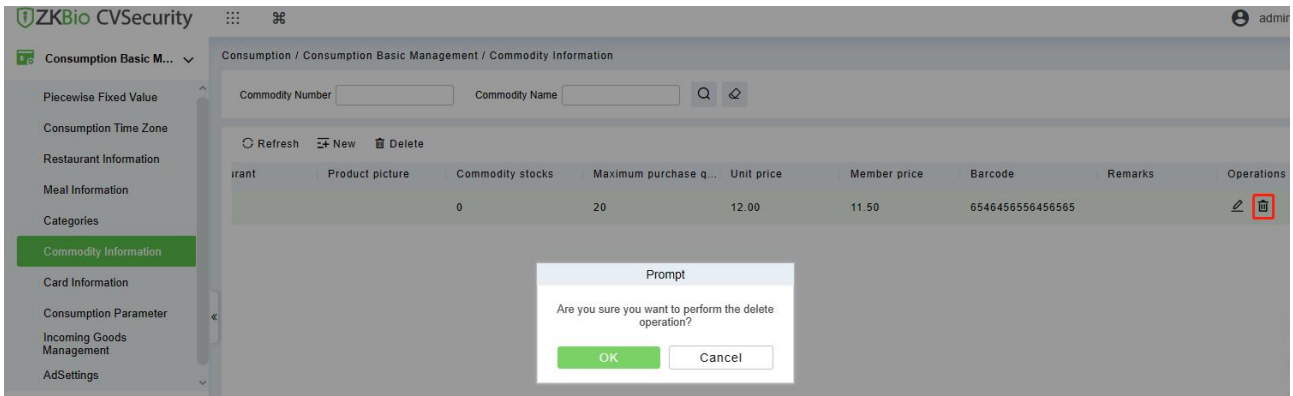


Figure 12-16

For deleting in batch, select the required Commodity(s) as shown below and click **Delete**.

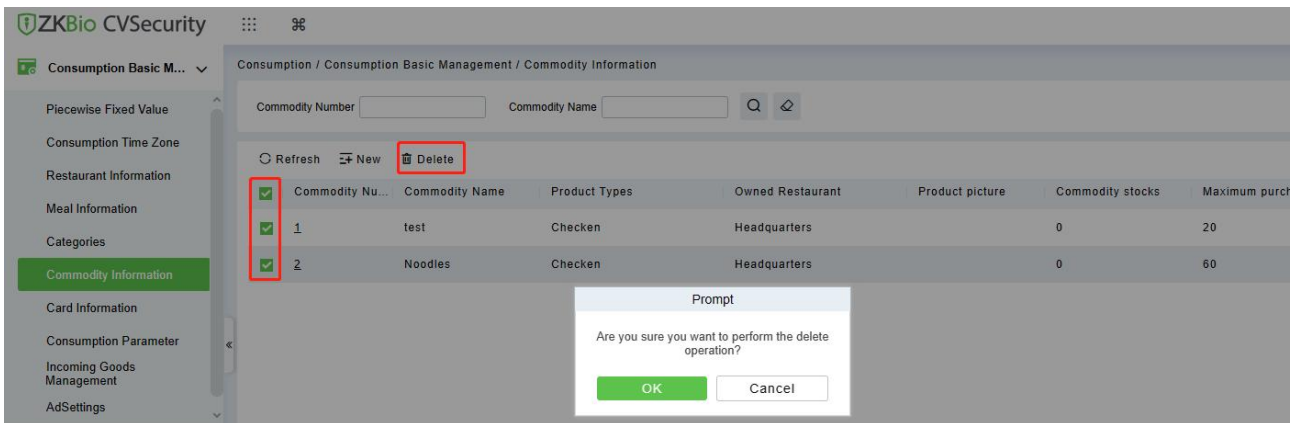


Figure 12-17

### 12.1.7 Card Information

Click Consumption Basic Management > Card Information, as shown below:

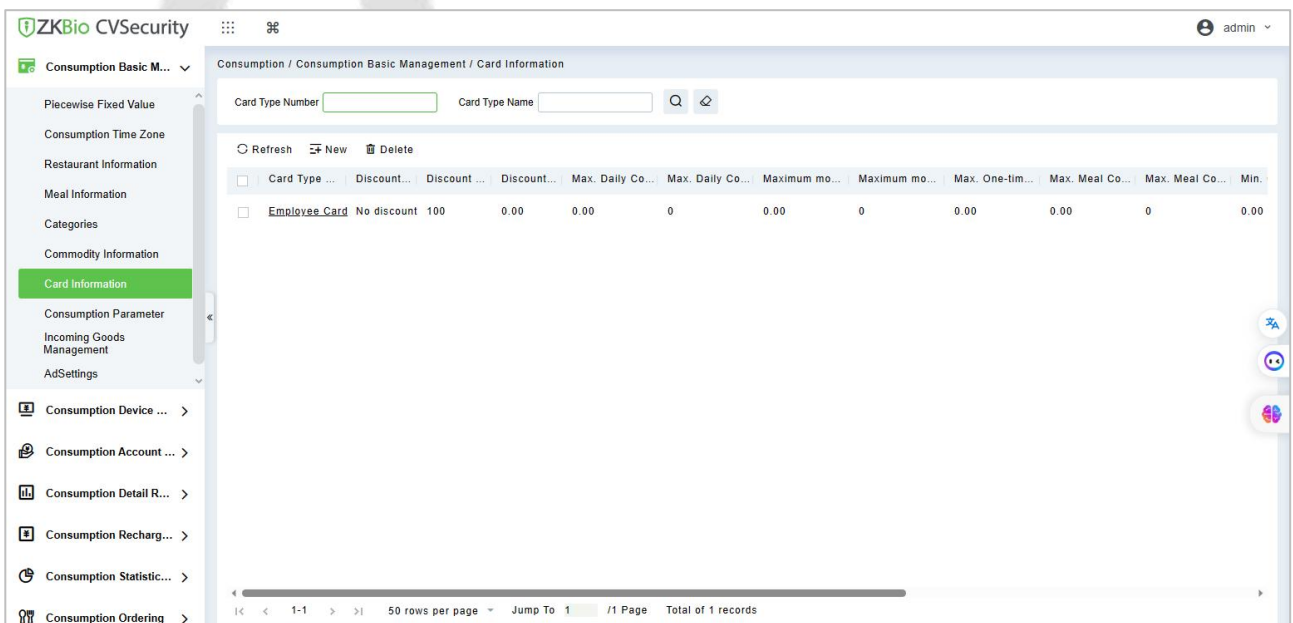


Figure 12-18

#### 12.1.7.1 New

Click **New**, in the dialog box, you can fill in the card type number, card type name, discount,

consumption time zone, maximum daily consumption amount, maximum daily consumption times, maximum one-time consumption amount, maximum meal consumption amount, maximum meal consumption times, minimum card balance, maximum card balance, effective use of days, available meal, available device, remarks, as shown below:

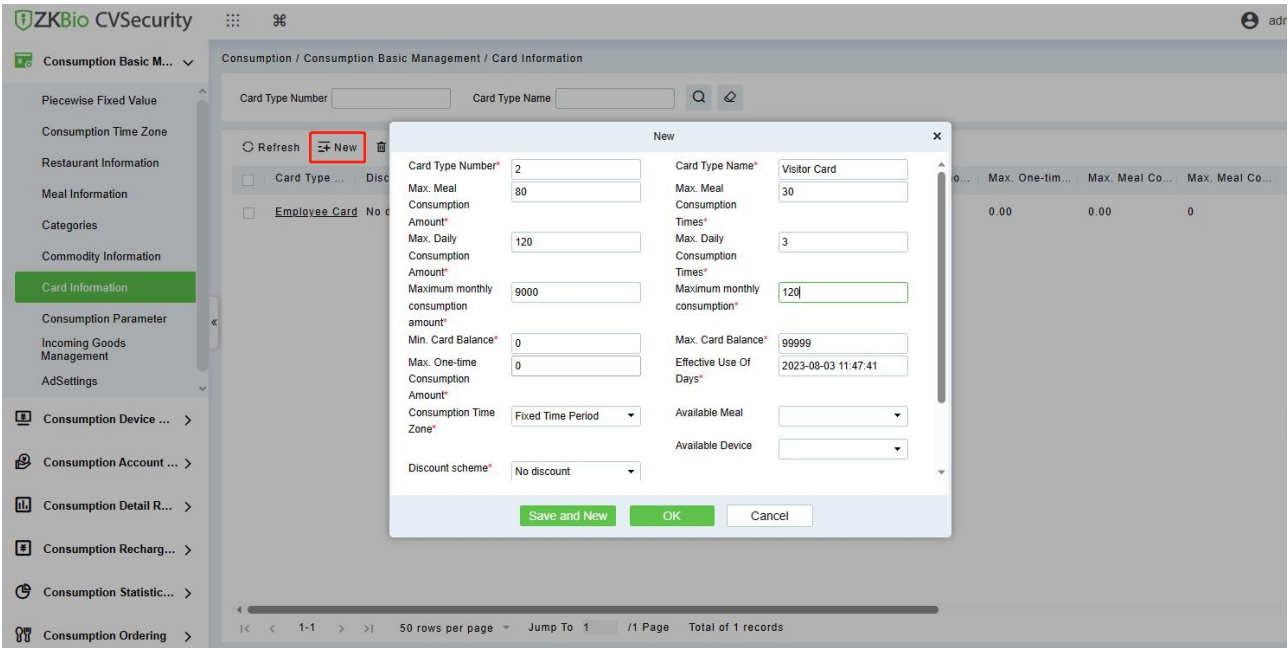


Figure 12-19

### 12.1.7.2 Edit

Click the card type number of the list and the edit column of the operation to pop up the modification dialog box.

### 12.1.7.3 Delete

You can directly click **Delete** on the required Card to remove it from the system.

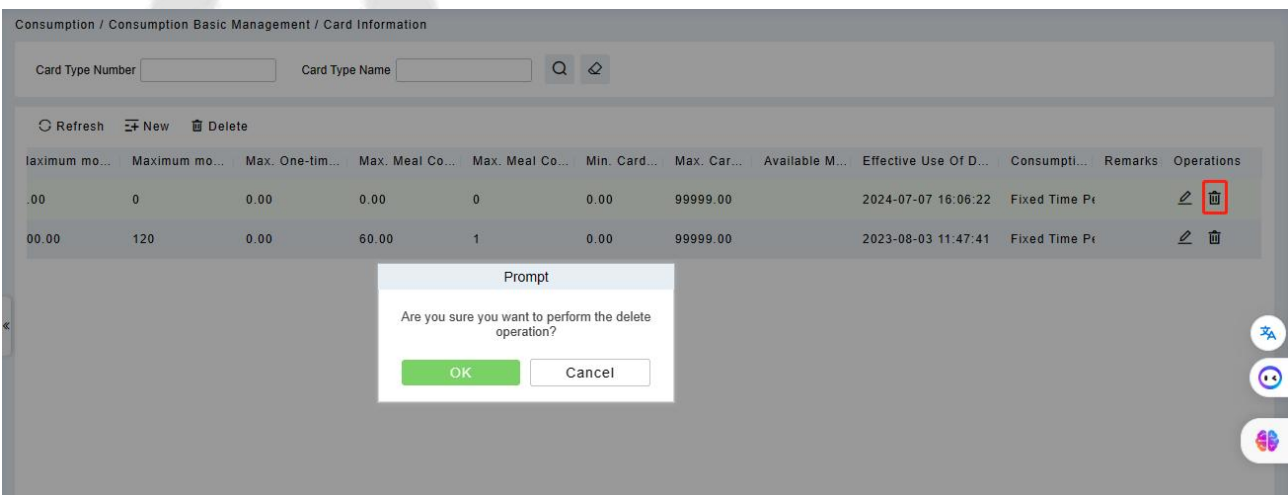


Figure 12-20

For deleting in batch, select the required Card (s) as shown below and click **Delete**. The default employee card cannot be deleted.

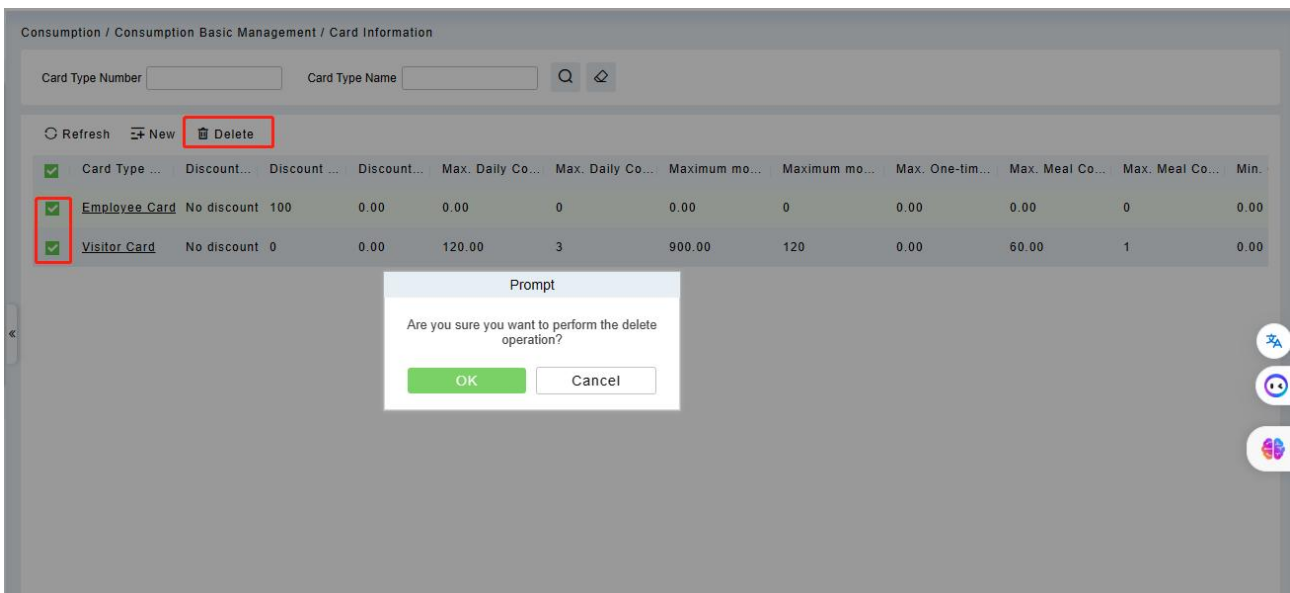


Figure 12-21

### 12.1.8 Consumption Parameter

Click **Consumption Basic Management** > **Consumption Parameter** to enter the consumption module setting, shown below:

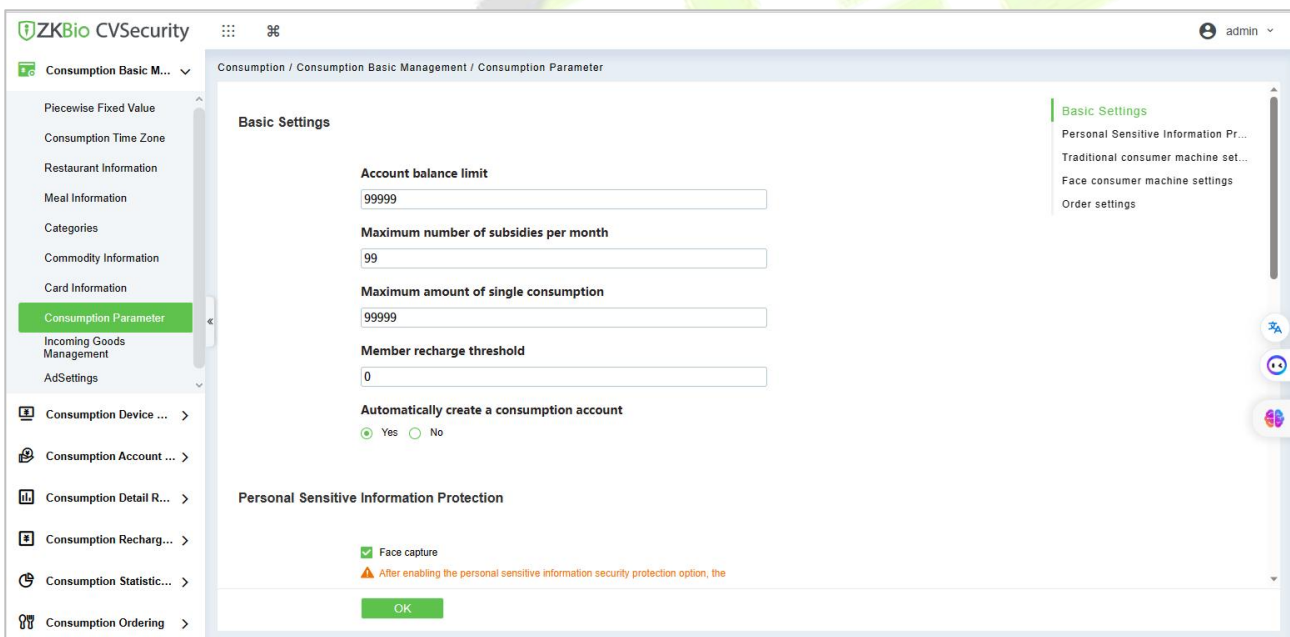


Figure 12-22

● **Basic Settings:**

1. Set the upper limit of the account balance. You can set an integer value between 1~99999, default value is 9999.
2. Set the upper limit number of the subsidies. You can set an integer value between 1~99, default value is 99.
3. Set the upper limit amount of single consumption. You can set an integer value between 1~9999, default value is 9999.
4. Member recharge threshold. Default value is 0, maximum number is 9999.

### ● Traditional consumer machine settings:

1. Set the prompt timing mode starts billing. Allows user define the prompt slogan.
2. Set the Timekeeping mode whether subject to start or end rules.

### ● Face consumer machine settings:

1. Set the Insufficient balance reminder threshold. Default is 0.
2. Set the prompt words when the amount below the threshold .
3. Set whether to open the second consumption function.

### ● Order settings:

1. Set whether ordering is required to consume: Default is no;
2. Set the number of days in advance for ordering: Default is 1-7 days;
3. Set the amount of time (in minutes) required to cancel an order in advance: Default is 60 minutes;
4. Double Wallet Wallet Consumption Order: Dual wallet spending pattern configuration: cash-only spending, subsidized spending only, or cash spending first, subsidized spending later.

Note:

- 1) The parameters for reminder threshold for insufficient balance and prompt message for amount below the threshold are not supported by traditional consumption machines, but are supported by facial recognition consumption machines.
- 2) The parameters for enabling double confirmation of consumption are not supported by traditional consumption machines, but are supported by facial recognition consumption machines.

## 12.1.9 Incoming Goods Management

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Incoming Goods Management** to enter the commodity purchase management page, through the bar-code corresponding to the commodity, shown below:

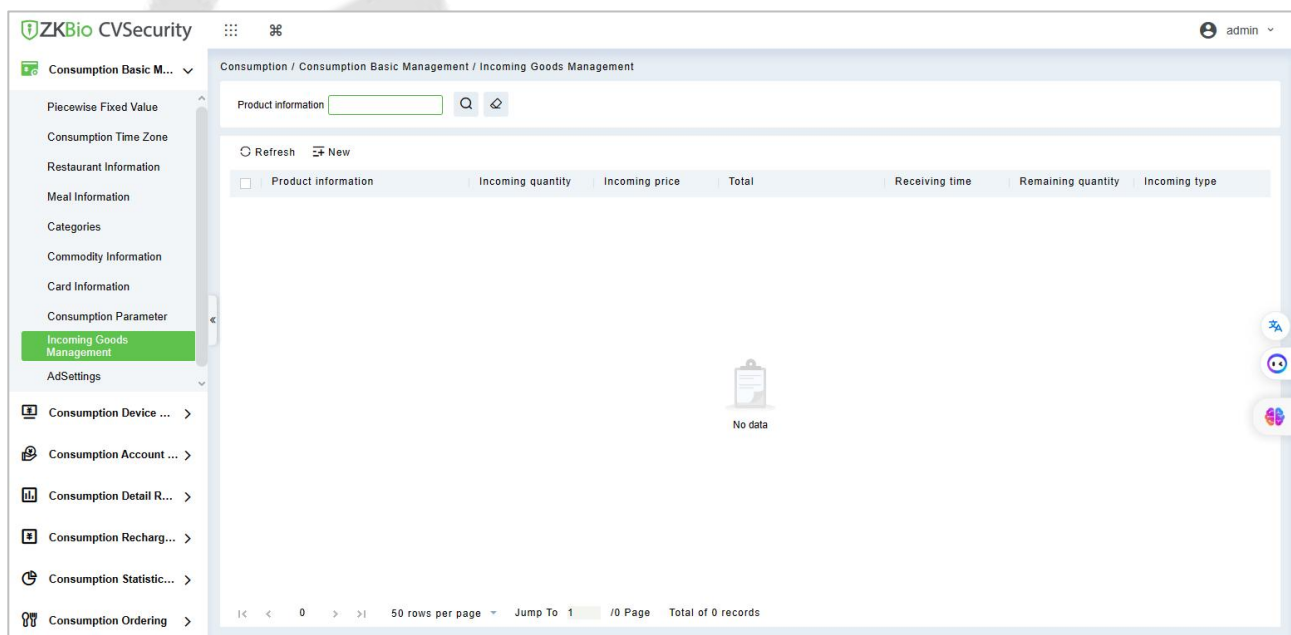


Figure 12- 23

### 12.1.9.1 New

Click the New button, to enter the goods edit page. Input the Commodity bar-code, incoming quantity, incoming price, total amount and receiving time.

The 'New' dialog box is a light blue window with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains six input fields, each with a red asterisk indicating it is required. The fields are: 'Commodity barcode\*', 'Product information\*', 'Incoming quantity\*', 'Incoming price\*', 'Total', and 'Receiving time\*'. The 'Product information\*' and 'Total' fields are currently disabled (greyed out). At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: a green 'OK' button and a white 'Cancel' button.

Figure 12-24

### 12.1.10AD Setting

Click **Consumption Basic Management > Incoming Goods Management**, as shown below:

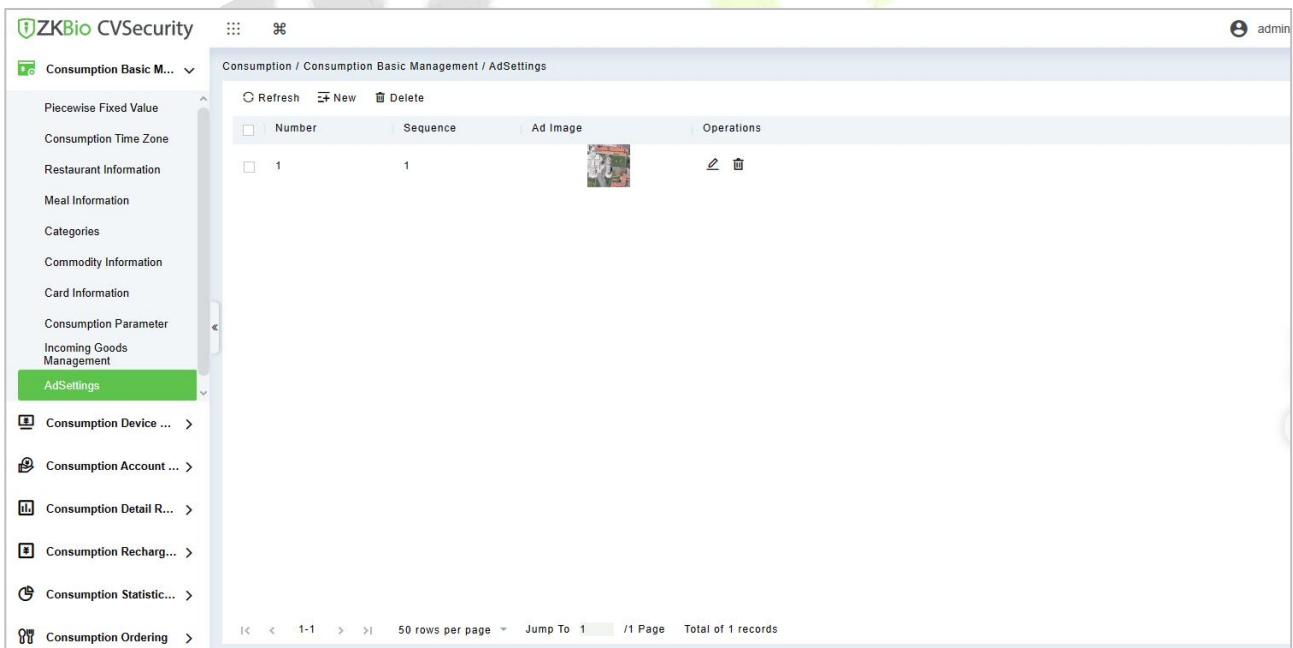


Figure 12-25

### 12.1.10.1 New

Click **New**, in the dialog box, fill in **Number,Sequence,Upload Image**.then click **OK**.

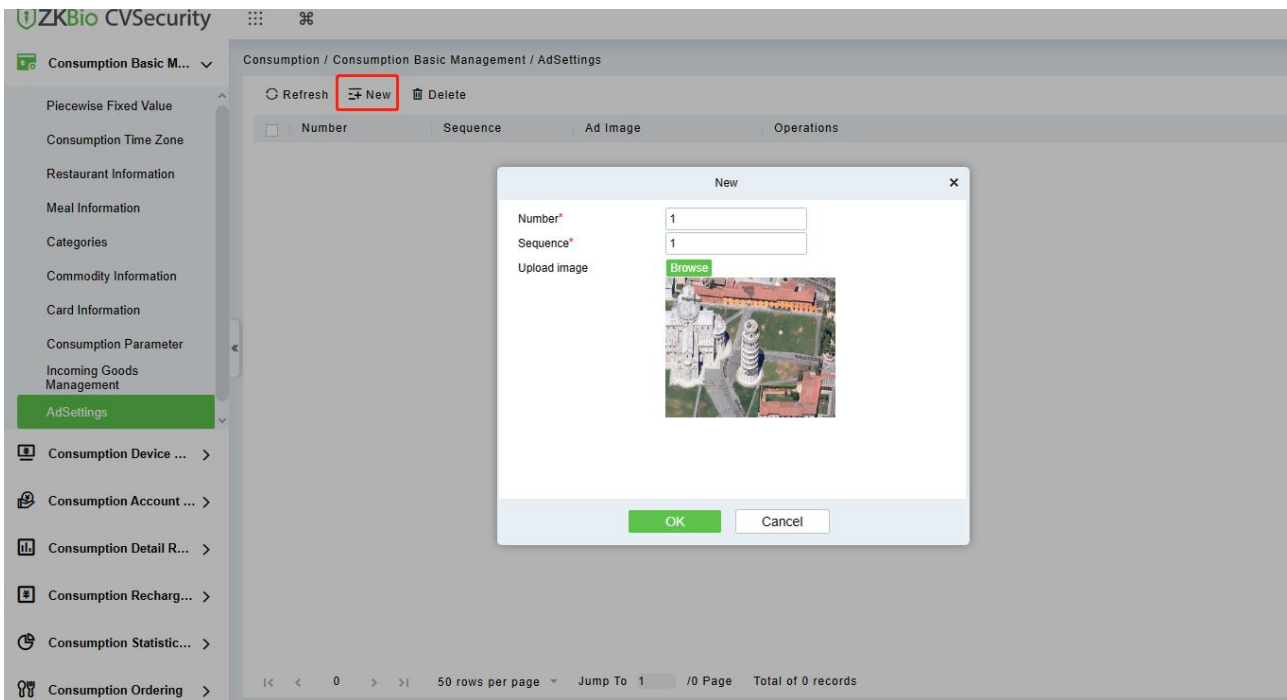


Figure 12- 26

## 12.2 Device Management

This module is used to manage online face consumer devices.

### 12.2.1 Consumption Device Management

This menu is available for **Promerc-30, Peomerc-40**.

Click Consumption Device Management > Consumption Device Management, as shown below:

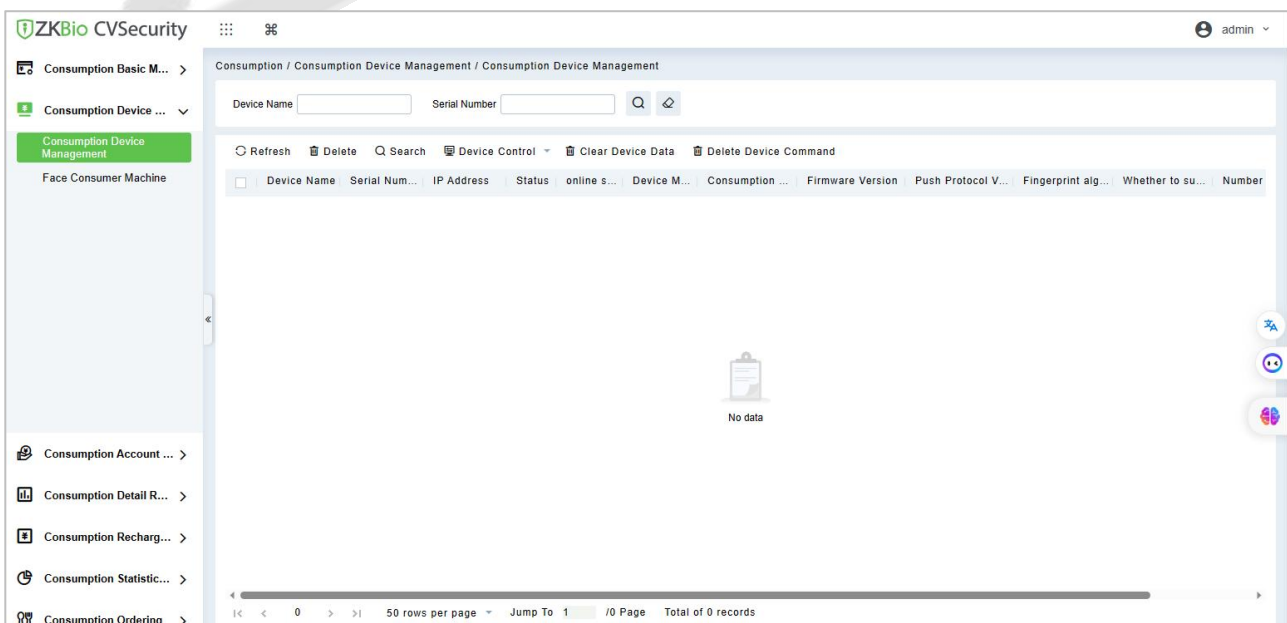


Figure 12- 27

## 12.2.2 Face Consumption Machine

This menu is available for **Promerc-300**.

Click Consumption Device Management > Face Consumption Machine, as shown below:

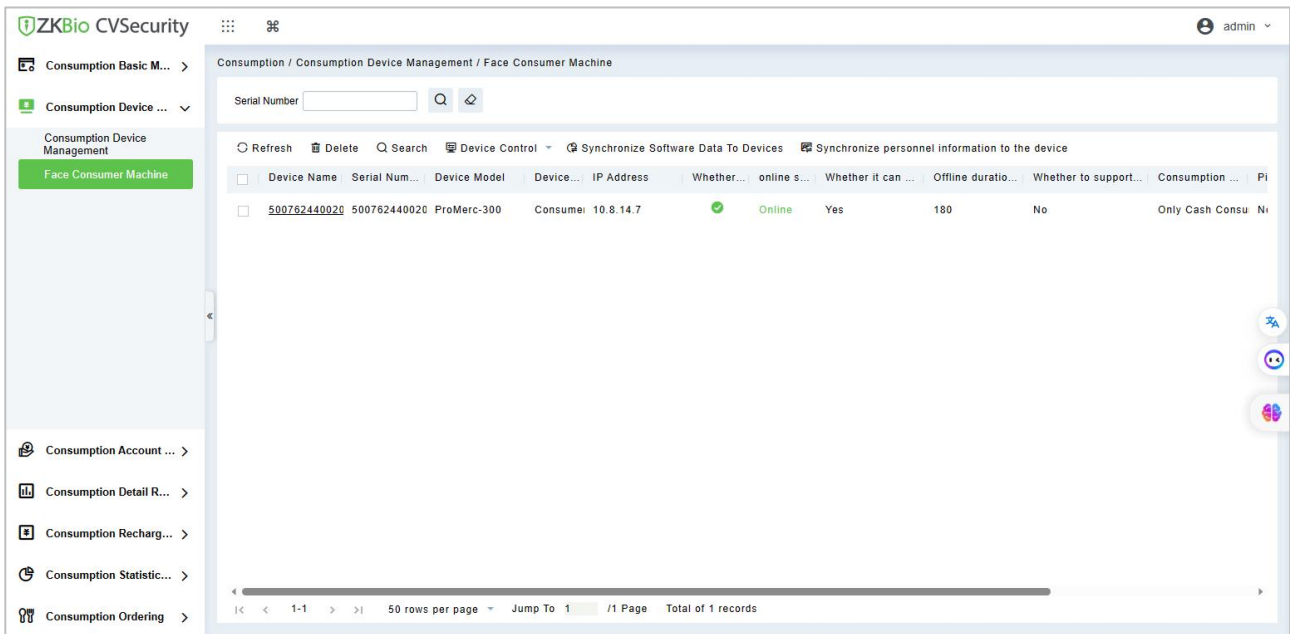


Figure 12-28

### 12.2.2.1 Search

Click **Search**, and the page is show as follows:

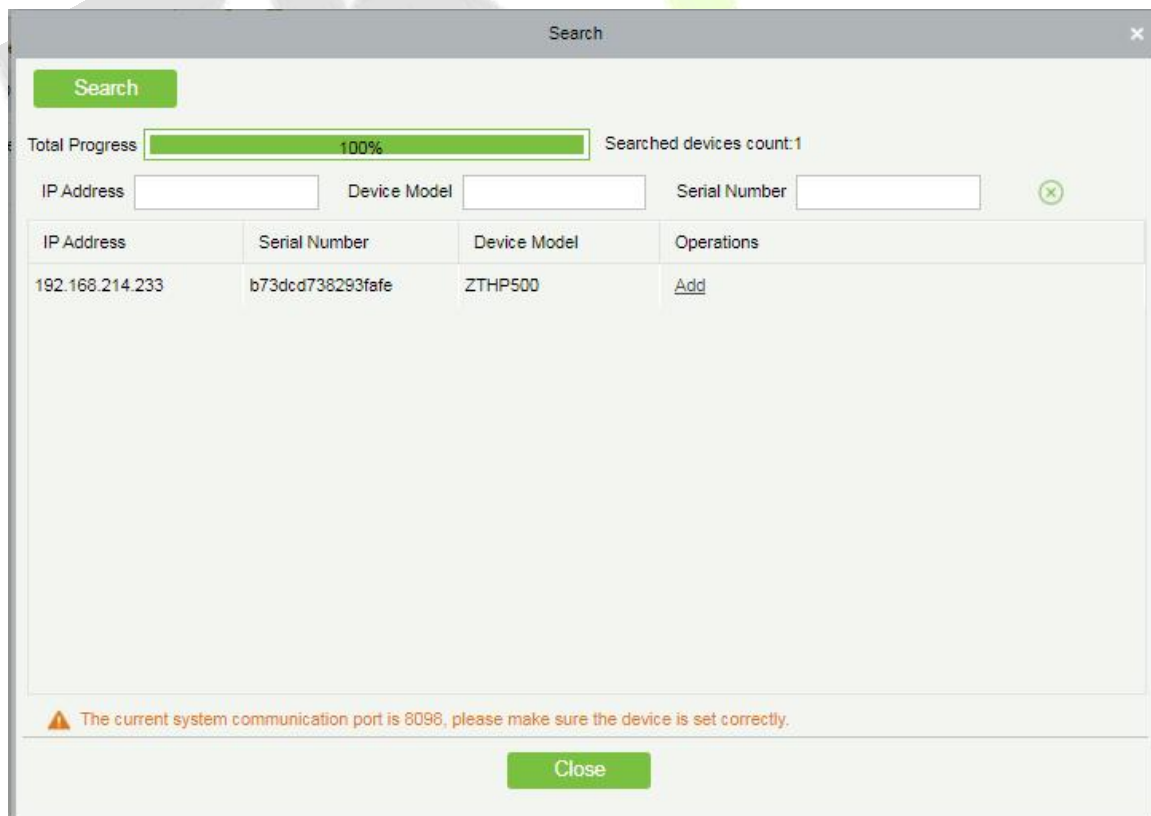


Figure 12-29

Click **Add** to enter the device edit page.

The screenshot shows a 'NEW' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- Device Name\*: 500762440020
- Serial Number\*: 500762440020
- IP Address\*: 10 . 8 . 14 . 7
- Consumption Mode\*: Amount Mode
- Owned Restaurant\*: Headquarters
- Consumption order\*: Only Cash Consump...
- Verification mode\*: Card or fingerprint or...
- There is no account category restriction on this machine:
- Whether the consumption is successful to capture the face:
- Whether it can be consumed offline:
- Offline duration (minutes): 180
- The maximum number of offline consumption per meal: 1
- The maximum amount of a single offline consumption: 10

Buttons: OK (green), Cancel

Figure 12- 30

● Some parameters are explained as follows:

**Device Name:** Device name, non-special characters, consisting of up to 20 characters.

**Serial Number:** It get from device, not editable.

**IP Address:** Device IP address, get from device.

**Consumption Mode:** Sets the consumption mode used by the device.

Can choose fixed value mode, amount mode, counting mode, commodity mode, timing mode, ordering mode.

The fixed value mode can choose fixed value (input fixed amount) and segmented fixed value (obtained from the basic data > segmented fixed value).

Timing mode to define the time price and time to take the whole number of minutes.

**Owned Restaurant:** Choose device owned restaurant.

**Consumption Oдер:** Set the device to specify wallet consumption order: cash consumption only, subsidy consumption only, subsidy consumption first, then cash consumption, cash consumption first, then subsidy consumption;

1) Cash consumption only: only consumption of cash, not consumption subsidies, when the balance is insufficient, can continue to consume through the way of recharge;

2) Subsidies consumption only: only consumption subsidies, do not consume cash, when the balance is insufficient, you can continue to consume by issuing subsidies;

3) Consumption cash first, subsidies second: Consume cash first, and then consume subsidies, through the way of top up or send subsidies to continue the consumption;

4) first consume subsidies, then consume cash: can be topped up or issued subsidies to account to continue consumption;

**Verification Mode:** Set the verification method used by the device. You can select card or fingerprint or face (1: N), card & face, card & fingerprint, fingerprint & face.

**Whether it can be consumption offline:** To enable the device offline consumption function.

**Offline Duration:** Define the duration of offline consumption, default is 180 minutes.

The maximum number of offline consumptions per meal: 1-999.

**The maximum amount of a single offline consumption:** Maximum amount of offline consumption per transaction (1-99999).

### 12.2.2.2 Edit

Click the device name of the list or the edit column of the operation to pop up the modification dialog box. The items that can be modified in the modification dialog box includes device name, area, consumption mode, owned restaurant, consumption order, whether can be offline work mode, offline duration, consumption mode, whether support scanning box and so on, as shown in the following figure.

| Edit  |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Device Name*  | 500762440020                        |
| Serial Number*  | 500762440020                        |
| IP Address*   | 10 . 8 . 14 . 7                     |
| Consumption Mode*   | Amount Mode                         |
| Owned Restaurant*   | Headquarters                        |
| Consumption order*  | Only Cash Consump...                |
| Verification mode*  | Card or fingerprint or...           |
| There is no account category restriction on this machine                | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Whether the consumption is successful to capture the face               | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Whether it can be consumed offline                                      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Offline duration (minutes)  | 180                                 |
| The maximum number of offline consumption per meal                      | 1                                   |
| The maximum amount of a single offline consumption                      | 10                                  |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> |                                     |

Figure 12- 31

### 12.2.2.3 Disable/Enable

Select device, click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

### 12.2.2.4 Synchronize Software Data to Device

Select a device, click this button, it will send data such as setting parameters of the software to the device to achieve the function of synchronization information so that the device can set the properties synchronously.

### 12.2.2.5 Synchronize Personnel Information to Device

Select a device, click this button, it will send personnel data of the software to the device, as shown below:

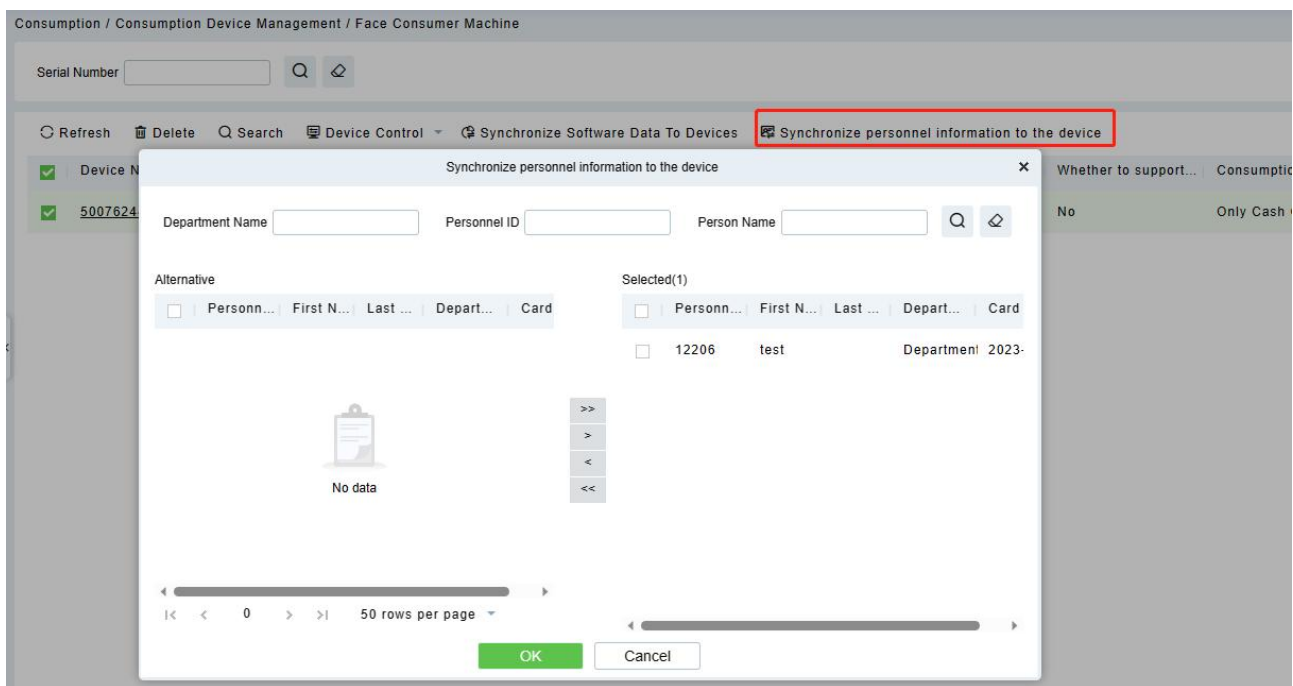


Figure 12- 32

## 12.3 Consumption Account

### 12.3.1 Account Service

Using this option to manage staff account, allows to manage top up, refund, account opening, modify card information.

The initial interface of this module is shown below:

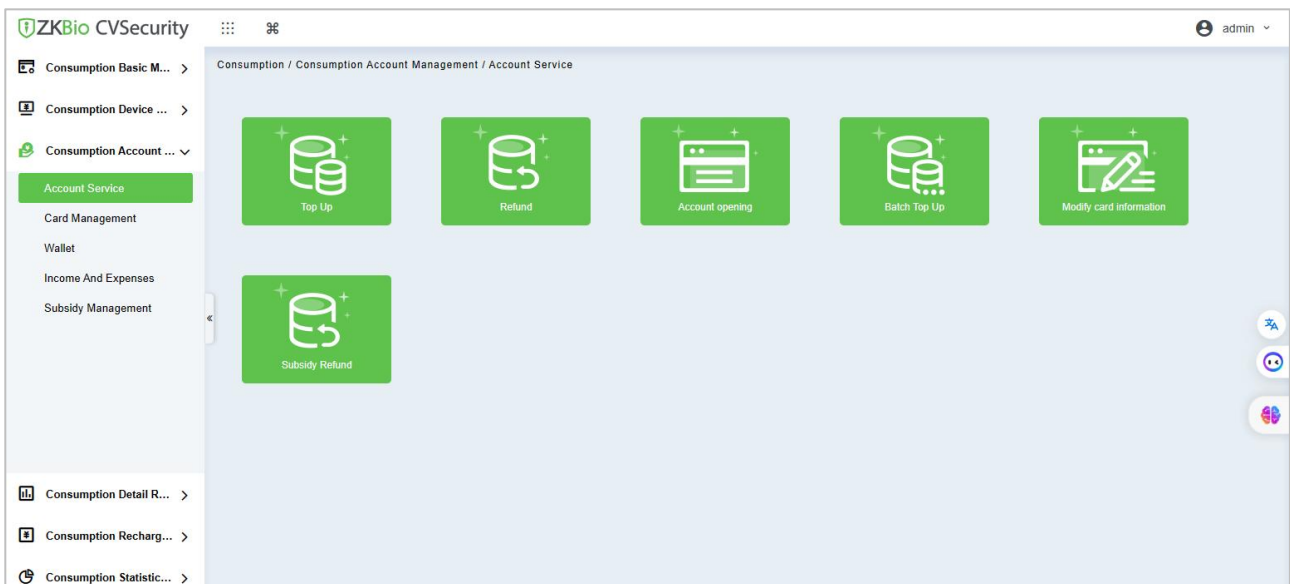


Figure 12- 33

### 12.3.1.1 Top Up

Top up for staff account, click **Top Up**, choose the account, confirmed the account information in the pop up dialog window, input the to up amount, click **Top Up** to finish the top up recharge .

The 'Top Up' dialog box is shown with the following fields and values:

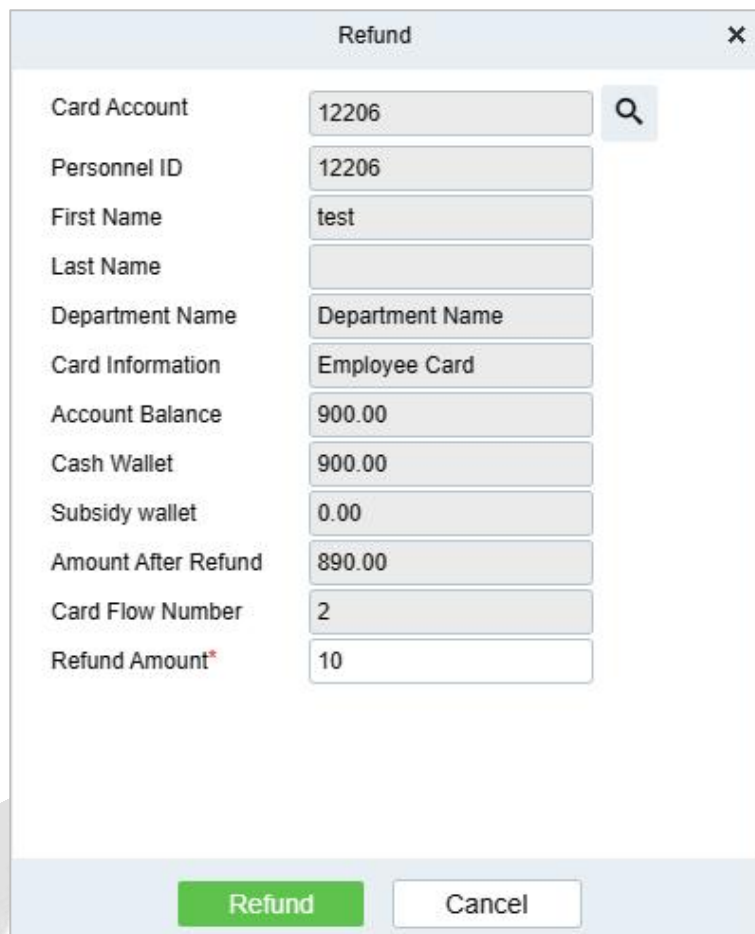
|                  |                 |   |
|------------------|-----------------|---|
| Personnel ID     | 12206           | Q |
| Card Number      |                 |   |
| Card Account     | 12206           |   |
| First Name       | test            |   |
| Last Name        |                 |   |
| Department Name  | Department Name |   |
| Card Information | Employee Card   |   |
| Account Balance  | 0.00            |   |
| Cash Wallet      | 0.00            |   |
| Subsidy wallet   | 0.00            |   |
| Added Balance    | 0.00            |   |
| Card Flow Number | 1               |   |
| Top Up Amount*   | 0               |   |

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: 'Top Up' (green) and 'Cancel' (white).

Figure 12- 34

### 12.3.1.2 Refund

Refund for staff account, click **Refund** to enter refund operation dialog box, choose the staff account, input the refund money, click Refund to finish the refund.



|                     |                 |   |
|---------------------|-----------------|---|
| Card Account        | 12206           | 🔍 |
| Personnel ID        | 12206           |   |
| First Name          | test            |   |
| Last Name           |                 |   |
| Department Name     | Department Name |   |
| Card Information    | Employee Card   |   |
| Account Balance     | 900.00          |   |
| Cash Wallet         | 900.00          |   |
| Subsidy wallet      | 0.00            |   |
| Amount After Refund | 890.00          |   |
| Card Flow Number    | 2               |   |
| Refund Amount*      | 10              |   |

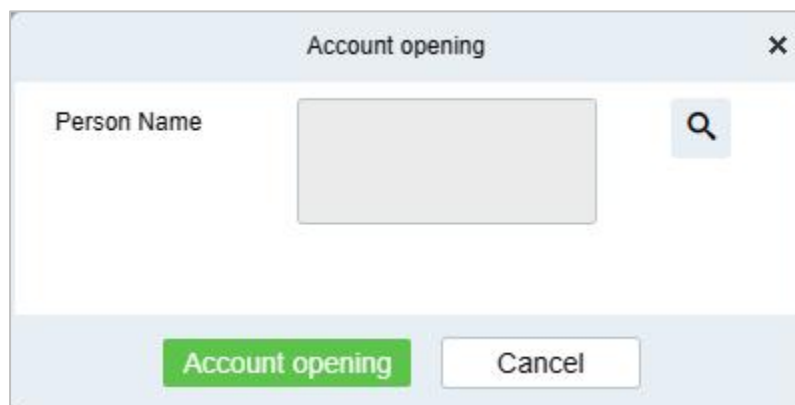
Refund Cancel

Figure 12- 35

### 12.3.1.3 Account Opening

Open consumption account for personnel in the system, newly staff will open the account automatically, batch import staff need manually to open his account.

Click **Account Opening** to open the account opening dialog box, select the personnel information and click **Account Opening** to finish the process.



|             |  |   |
|-------------|--|---|
| Person Name |  | 🔍 |
|-------------|--|---|

Account opening Cancel

Figure 12- 36

### 12.3.1.4 Batch Top Up

- Batch recharge employee accounts; click **Batch Top Up**, select multiple personnel, click confirm and enter the recharge amount, click **Top Up**.

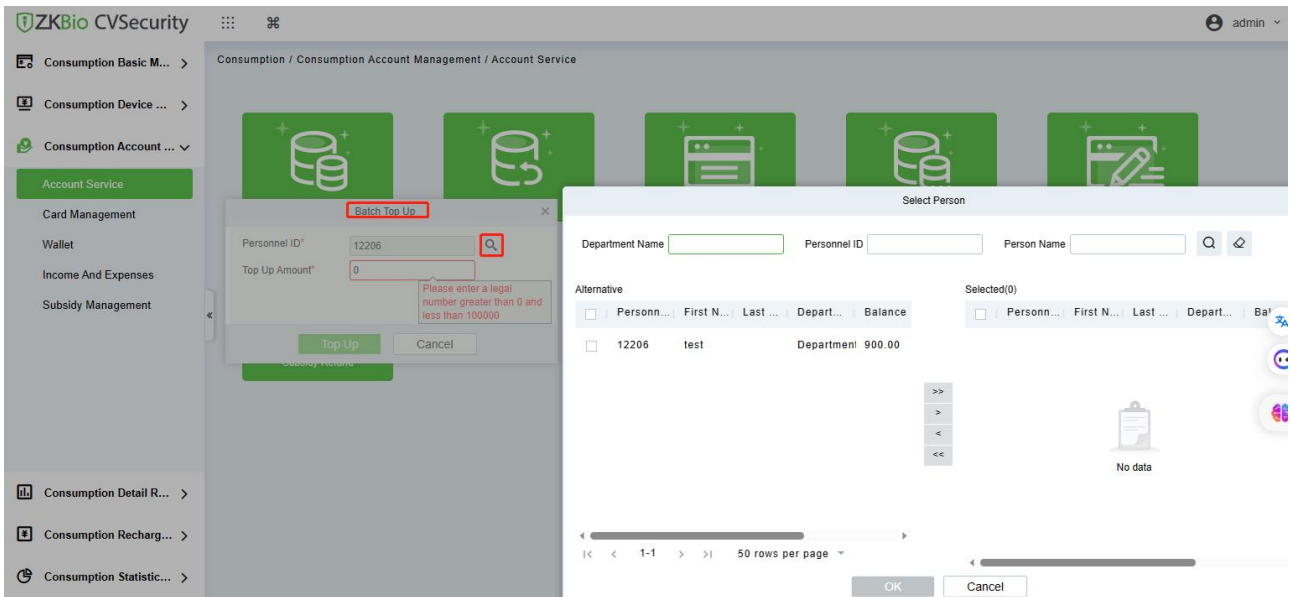


Figure 12- 37

### 12.3.1.5 Modify Card Information

Select the account, modify the account information.

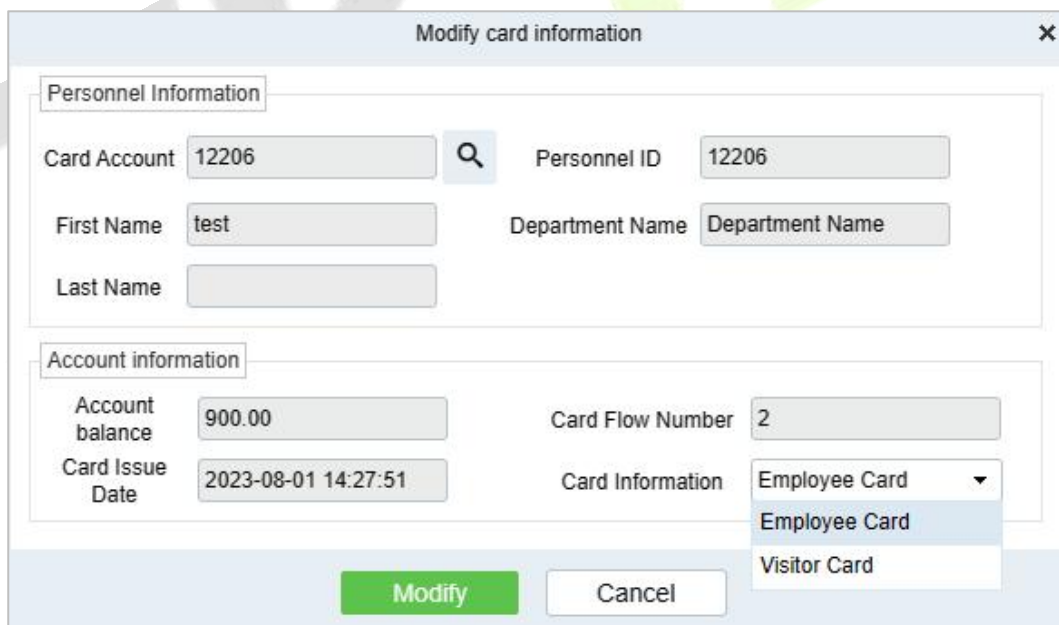
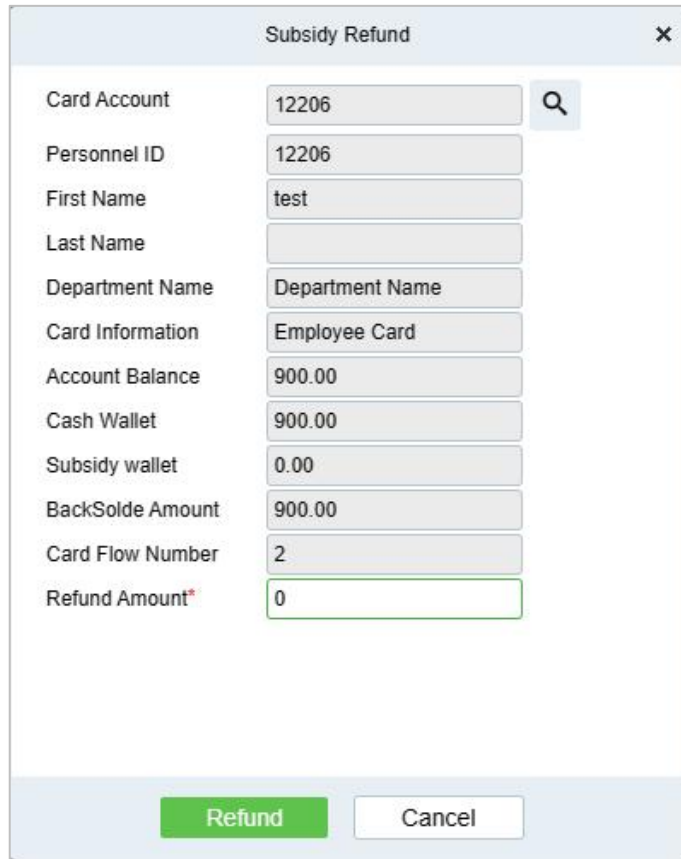


Figure 12- 38

All fields are not editable except for the **Card Information** (account category) which can be modified.

### 12.3.1.6 Subsidy Refund

Subsidized refunds to designated accounts.



The 'Subsidy Refund' dialog box contains the following fields:

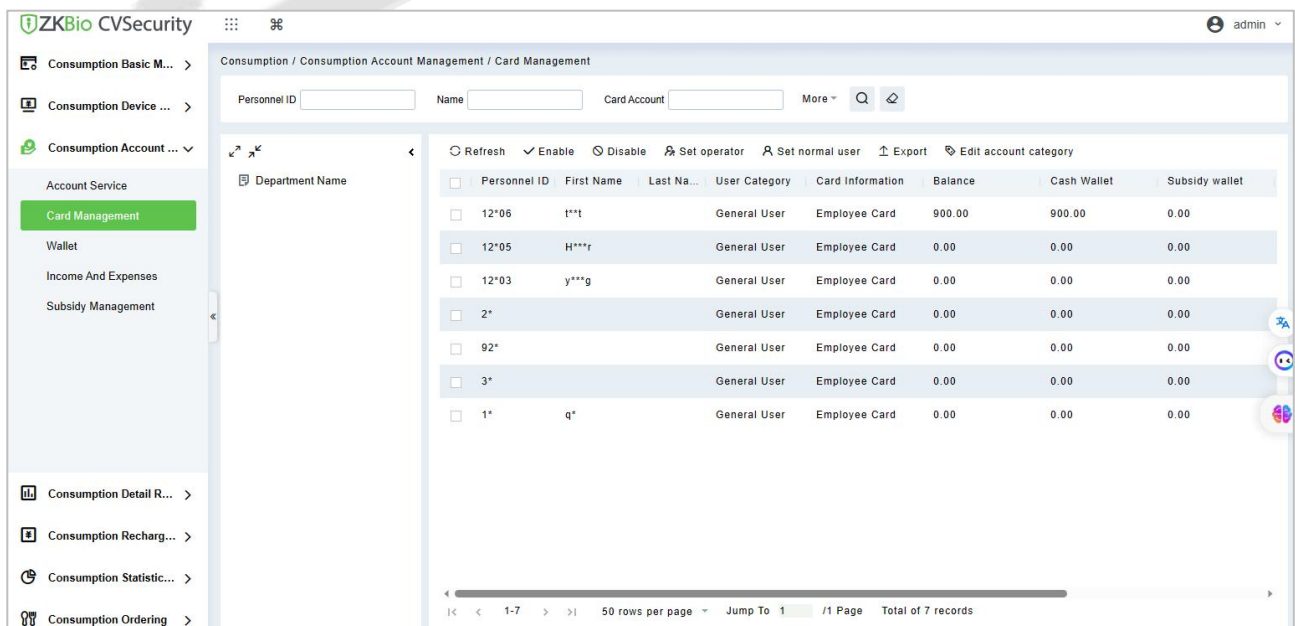
- Card Account: 12206
- Personnel ID: 12206
- First Name: test
- Last Name: (empty)
- Department Name: Department Name
- Card Information: Employee Card
- Account Balance: 900.00
- Cash Wallet: 900.00
- Subsidy wallet: 0.00
- BackSolde Amount: 900.00
- Card Flow Number: 2
- Refund Amount\*: 0

Buttons: Refund (green), Cancel (white)

Figure 12- 39

### 12.3.2 Card Management

This function is used to manage account, such as enable, disable, set operator, modify account category .



The 'Card Management' interface shows a table of card records with the following columns: Personnel ID, First Name, Last Name, User Category, Card Information, Balance, Cash Wallet, and Subsidy wallet. The table contains 7 rows of data.

| Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | User Category | Card Information | Balance | Cash Wallet | Subsidy wallet |
|--------------|------------|-----------|---------------|------------------|---------|-------------|----------------|
| 12*06        | t**t       |           | General User  | Employee Card    | 900.00  | 900.00      | 0.00           |
| 12*05        | H***r      |           | General User  | Employee Card    | 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           |
| 12*03        | y***g      |           | General User  | Employee Card    | 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           |
| 2*           |            |           | General User  | Employee Card    | 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           |
| 92*          |            |           | General User  | Employee Card    | 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           |
| 3*           |            |           | General User  | Employee Card    | 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           |
| 1*           | q*         |           | General User  | Employee Card    | 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           |

Figure 12- 40

### 12.3.2.1 Enable/Disable

These functions are used to enable or disable staff account .

### 12.3.2.2 Set Operator

Check the account and click this button to set this account as the device operator. The balance of the consumption account of the operator must be 0, and it cannot be consume normally, and it is the operation manager of consumption device.

### 12.3.2.3 Set Normal User

Check the account and click this button to set this account as the normal user. The normal user is normal consumption user.

### 12.3.2.4 Export

It exports the current report data.

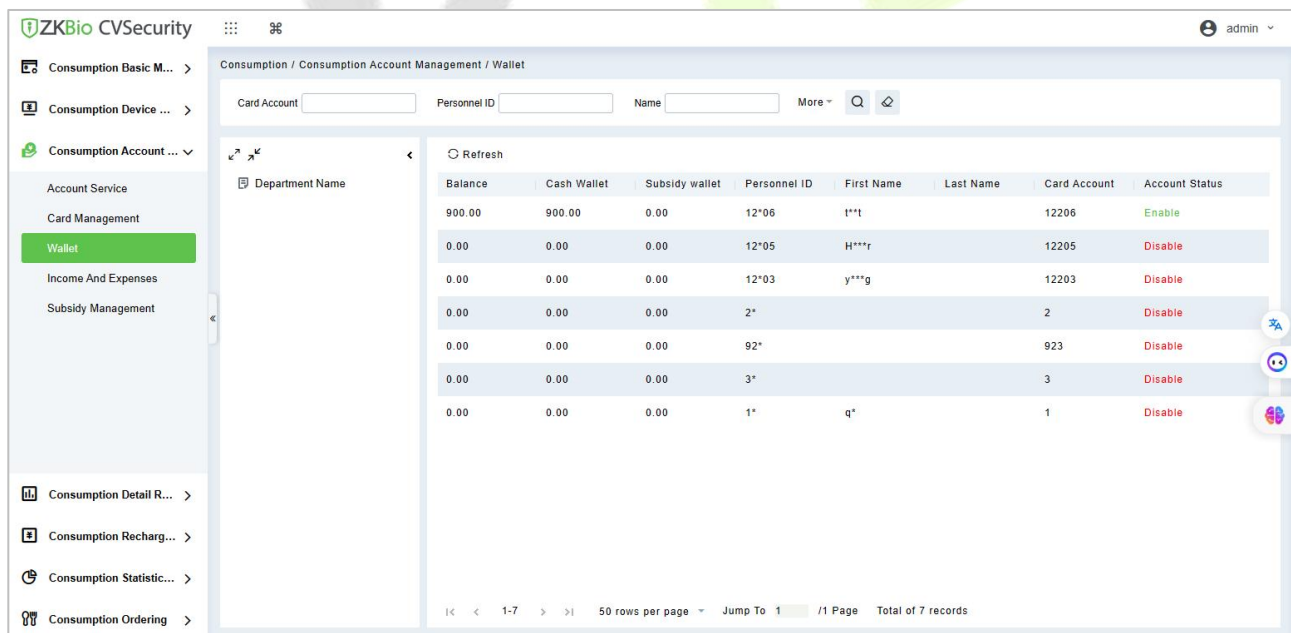
### 12.3.2.5 Edit Account Category

It allows user to modify the account category, batch editable.

## 12.3.3 Wallet

This page will show all the accounts information in the system, include status, balance.

Click **Consumption Account Management > Wallet**, as shown below:



| Balance | Cash Wallet | Subsidy wallet | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Card Account | Account Status |
|---------|-------------|----------------|--------------|------------|-----------|--------------|----------------|
| 900.00  | 900.00      | 0.00           | 12*06        | l**t       |           | 12206        | Enable         |
| 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           | 12*05        | H***r      |           | 12205        | Disable        |
| 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           | 12*03        | y***g      |           | 12203        | Disable        |
| 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           | 2*           |            |           | 2            | Disable        |
| 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           | 92*          |            |           | 923          | Disable        |
| 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           | 3*           |            |           | 3            | Disable        |
| 0.00    | 0.00        | 0.00           | 1*           | q*         |           | 1            | Disable        |

Figure 12- 41

## 12.3.4 Income and Expenses

This function will show all the payments and due amount data of all the accounts in the consumption system.

Click **Card Management > Income and Expenses**, as shown below:

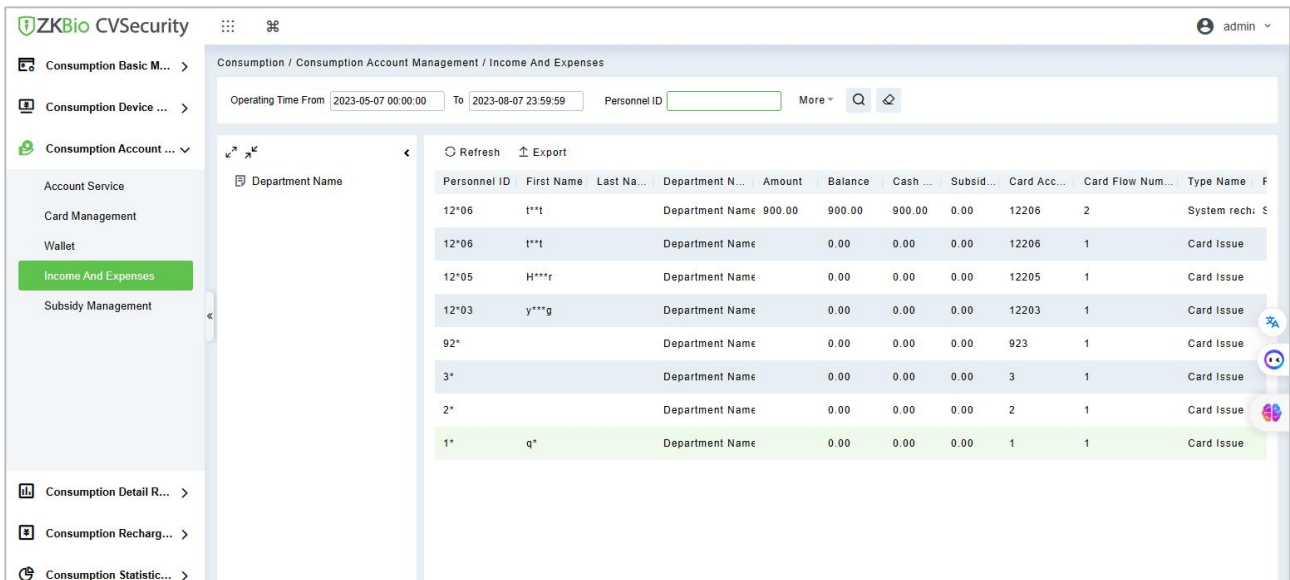


Figure 12- 42

### 12.3.4.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest account cash receipts and payments data.

### 12.3.5 Subsidy Management

Click **Subsidy > Subsidy Management** to enter the subsidy page, you can perform different function related to subsidy:

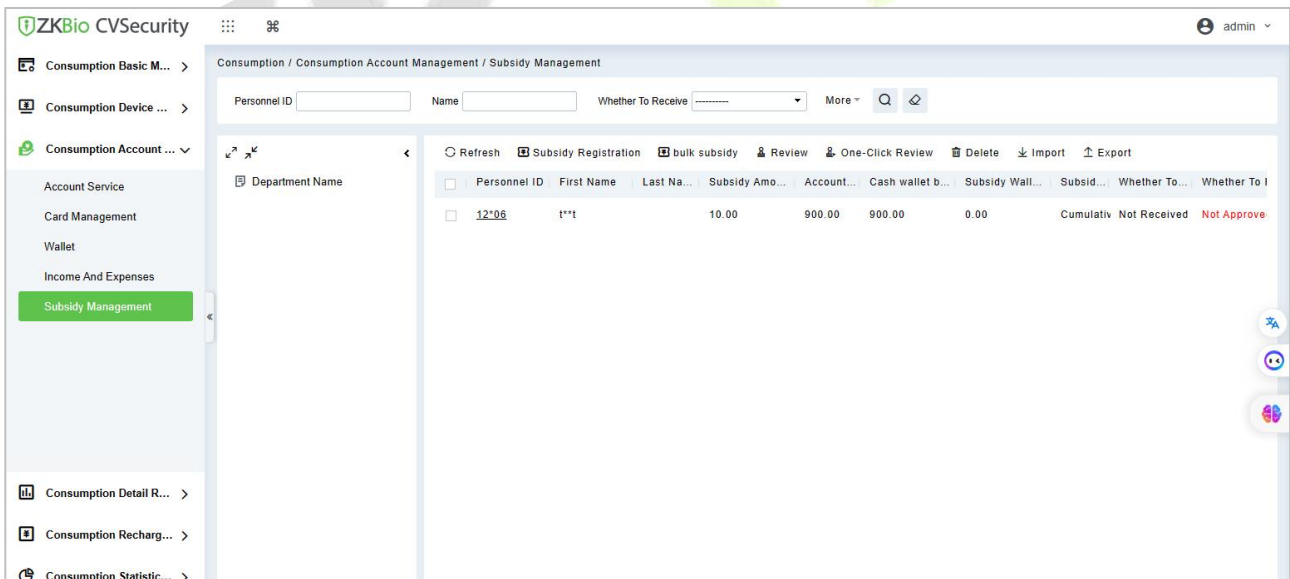


Figure 12- 43

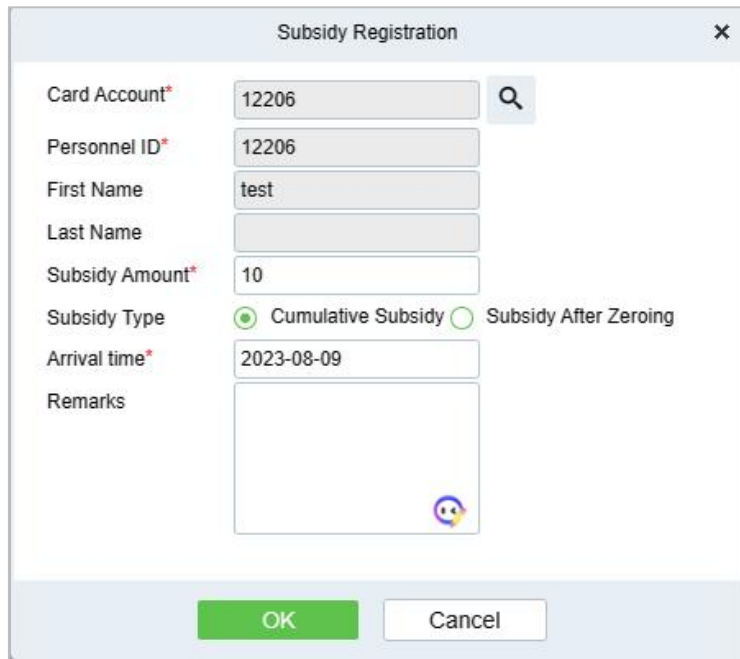
#### 12.3.5.1 Add

Click **Subsidy Management > Subsidy Registration** to enter the subsidy registration interface:

Select the account you want to performed, input the subsidy money and type, and select the arrival time, then click OK to finish the subsidy registration.

**Accumulated subsidy:** the current subsidy amount and the historical subsidy amount are accumulated.

**Subsidy After Zeroing:** Empty the balance of historical subsidy and write the current subsidy amount.



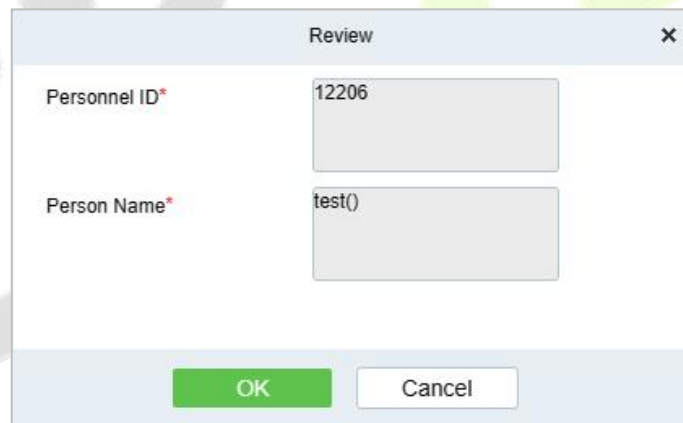
The 'Subsidy Registration' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Card Account\*: 12206
- Personnel ID\*: 12206
- First Name: test
- Last Name: (empty)
- Subsidy Amount\*: 10
- Subsidy Type:  Cumulative Subsidy  Subsidy After Zeroing
- Arrival time\*: 2023-08-09
- Remarks: (empty text area)
- Buttons: OK, Cancel

Figure 12-44

### 12.3.5.2 Review

This function is mainly to review the audit. Before performing audit, you need to select the subsidy (select in the multi-select box). After clicking the review, an audit dialog box will pop up. The dialog box will display the person number and name as selected by the user.



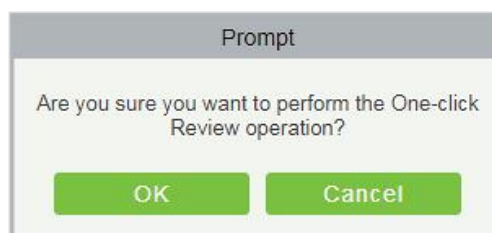
The 'Review' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Personnel ID\*: 12206
- Person Name\*: test()
- Buttons: OK, Cancel

Figure 12-45

### 12.3.5.3 One-click Review

This function is mainly to review the unapproved subsidies in the system, and will not deal with the subsidy records that have been approved. During the review process, if the unapproved subsidy cannot be approved for some reason (such as the user has already returned the card), the subsidy will not be processed.



The 'Prompt' dialog box contains the following text and controls:

- Text: Are you sure you want to perform the One-click Review operation?
- Buttons: OK, Cancel

Figure 12-46

### 12.3.5.4 Delete

Select the required subsidy record(s) and click  Delete under the operation bar to delete the subsidy record. It only supports the removal of unapproved subsidy(s).

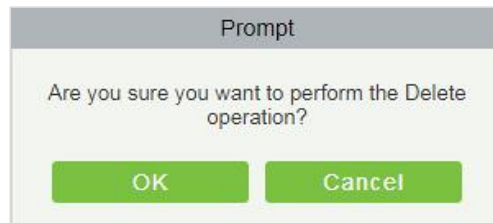


Figure 12- 47

### 12.3.5.5 Import

This function is used to import subsidies in batches.

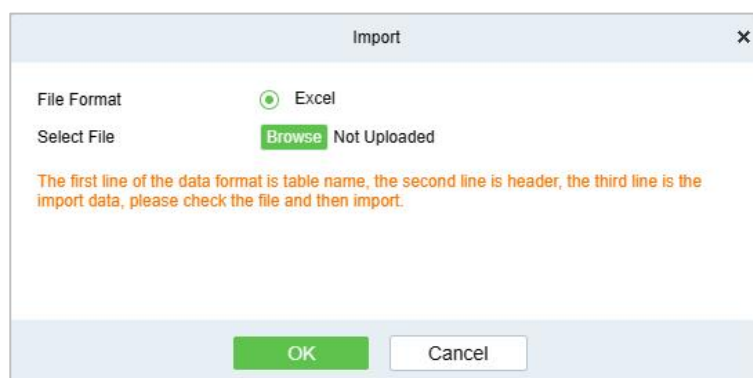


Figure 12- 48

### 12.3.5.6 Export

This function is used to export the queried subsidies. Click on Export to open the exporting interface.

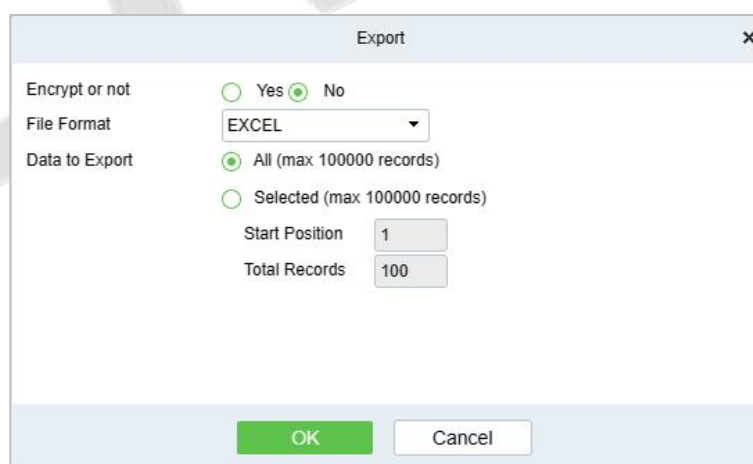


Figure 12- 49

Select the file type and export mode. If you select **All data**, then all query data limited to 40,000 will be exported. If you want to export only few results from the query, then select the second mode and enter the desired start and end points of the required data to be exported.

Click **OK** to finish.

## 12.4 Consumer Details

### 12.4.1 Consumption Details Report

Click **Consumption Details > Consumption Details Report**, as shown below:

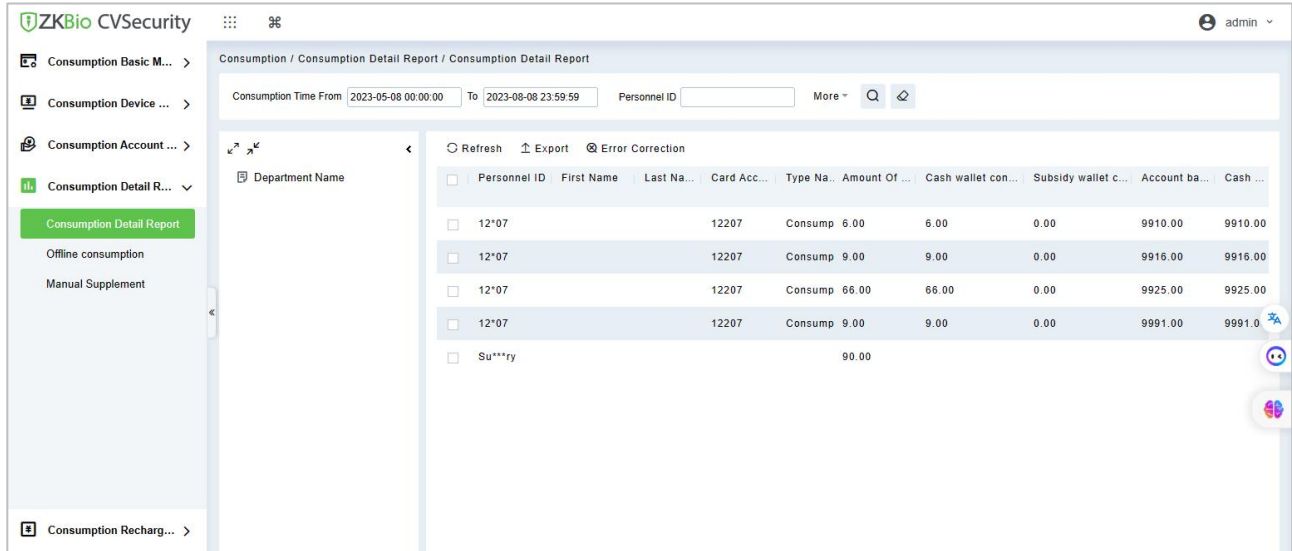


Figure 12- 50

#### 12.4.1.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest consumption details.

#### 12.4.1.2 Export

This feature allows you to export consumption details in EXCEL, PDF, CSV format files.

#### 12.4.1.3 Error Correction

Click **Error Correction**. You can carry out the error correction process on the software. This operation is only valid for the records where the consumption type is the amount mode. Select a consumption record, read out the current balance of the card, enter the correct amount of consumption, and modify the balance of the card.

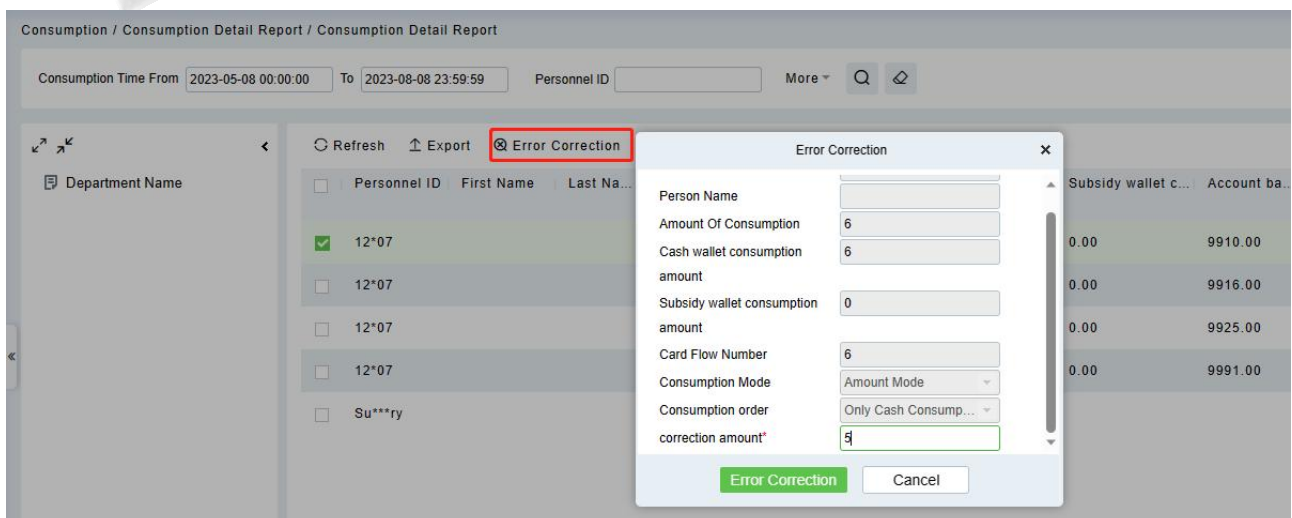


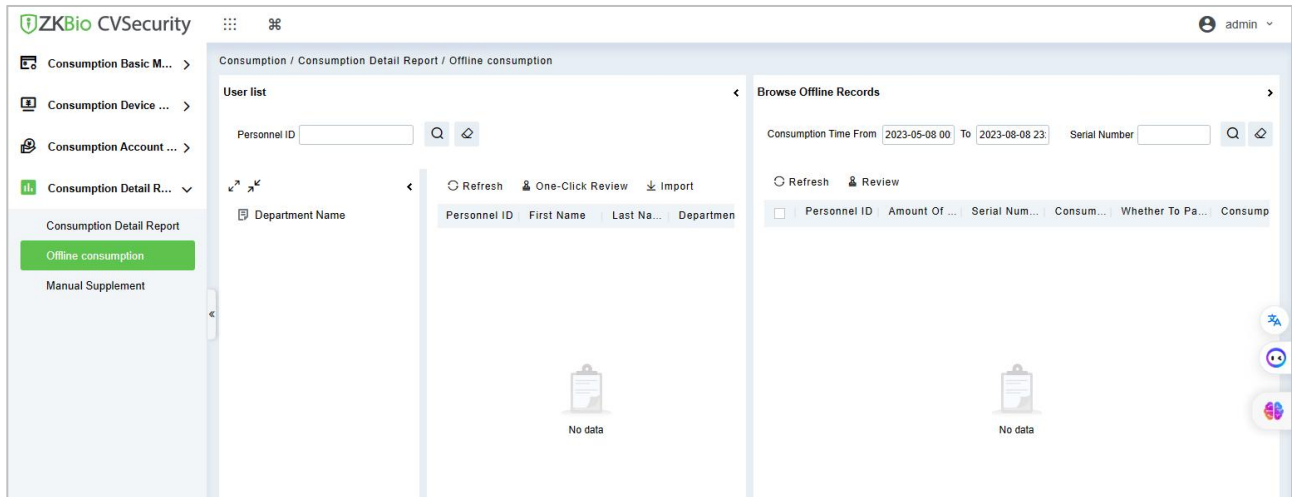
Figure 12- 51

**Notes:**

- 1) The same consumption record cannot be corrected repeatedly.
- 2) Software error correction automatically produces two new records: One is the record for the system error correction of the return of the original error consumption amount, the other is the correct consumption record of the manual supplement.

### 12.4.2 Offline Consumption

If the device supports offline consumption, after offline consumption, it will upload the consumption record during the offline period when device connect to software, and allows user manually review it.:



**Figure 12- 52**

The consumption records uploaded to the software during the offline period have not passed the audit and need to be manually reviewed before recorded.

This function is mainly used to audit offline consumption records. Check the consumption records that have not passed the audit, click "Audit", and the audit dialog box will pop up. Click "OK" to complete the audit.

**Note:** After offline consumption audit, cash wallet may appear negative, subsidy wallet can not be negative, when the subsidy wallet balance is insufficient to automatically converted to cash wallet deduction.

### 12.4.3 Manual Supplement

It is used to enter some consumption record details manually in the system.

**Note:** Before performing this operation, you need to have the relevant operation card.

| Person Number | First Name | Card Account | Card Flow Number | Card Number | Amount of Consumption | Balance | Meal          | Device Serial Number | Consumption Time    | Creation Time       | Creator |
|---------------|------------|--------------|------------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------|---------------|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------|
| 227           | king       | 8579652      | 4                | 4117858142  | 20.0                  | 471.0   | Lunch         | 524145556            | 2018-11-28 17:42:00 | 2018-11-28 17:42:16 | admin   |
| 227           | king       | 8579652      | 3                | 4117858142  | 20.0                  | 491.0   | Midnight Snac | 522153322            | 2018-11-28 17:41:00 | 2018-11-28 17:41:53 | admin   |
| 227           | king       | 8579652      | 2                | 4117858142  | 10.0                  | 511.0   | Dinner        | 524145556            | 2018-11-28 17:41:00 | 2018-11-28 17:41:34 | admin   |
| 226           | kim        | 45           | 4                | 4117804270  | 20.0                  | 1148.0  | Midnight Snac | 524145556            | 2018-11-28 17:35:00 | 2018-11-28 17:35:24 | admin   |
| 226           | kim        | 45           | 3                | 4117804270  | 22.0                  | 1168.0  | Midnight Snac | 522153322            | 2018-11-28 17:34:00 | 2018-11-28 17:34:33 | admin   |
| 226           | kim        | 45           | 2                | 4117804270  | 10.0                  | 1190.0  | Dinner        | 522153322            | 2018-11-28 17:33:00 | 2018-11-28 17:34:13 | admin   |

**Figure 12- 53**

## 12.5 Consumption Report

The consumption report consists of 4 type of reports: Top Up report, Refund report, Subsidy report, Card Balance report.

### 12.5.1 Top Up Table

Click Consumption Report > Top Up Table, as shown below:

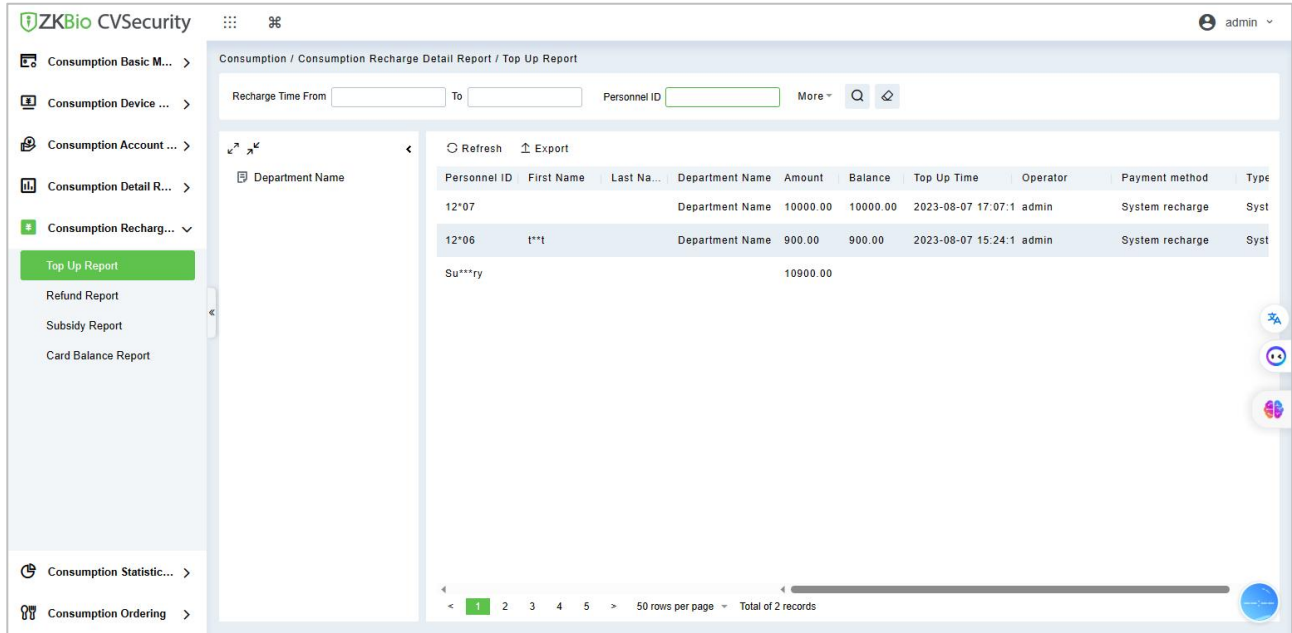


Figure 12- 54

#### 12.5.1.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

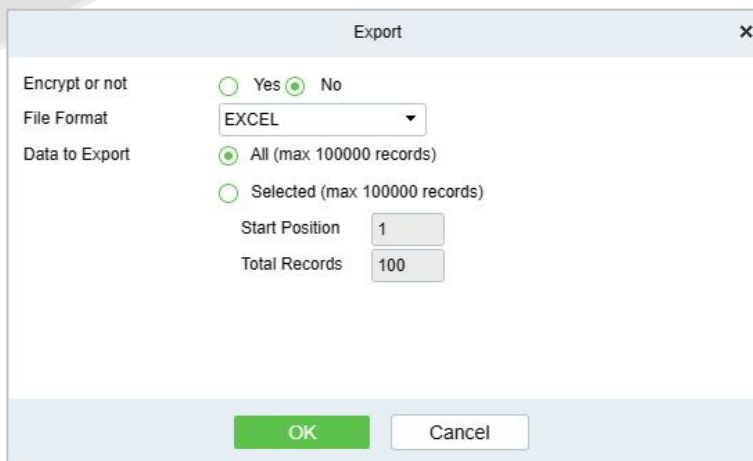


Figure 12- 55

### 12.5.2 Refund Table

Click Consumption Report > Refund Table, as shown below:

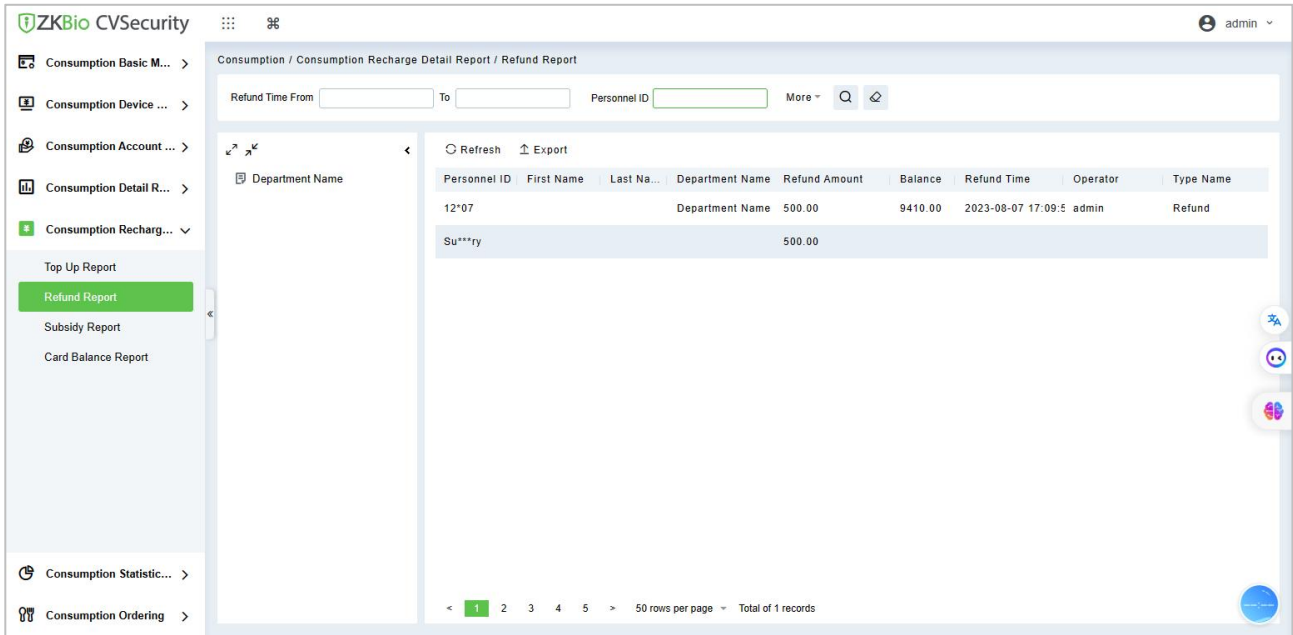


Figure 12- 56

### 12.5.2.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

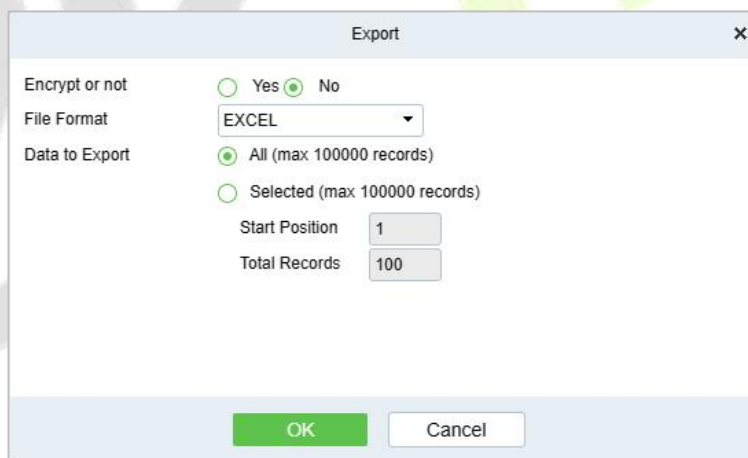


Figure 12- 57

### 12.5.3 Subsidy Table

Click Consumption Report > Subsidy Table, as shown below:

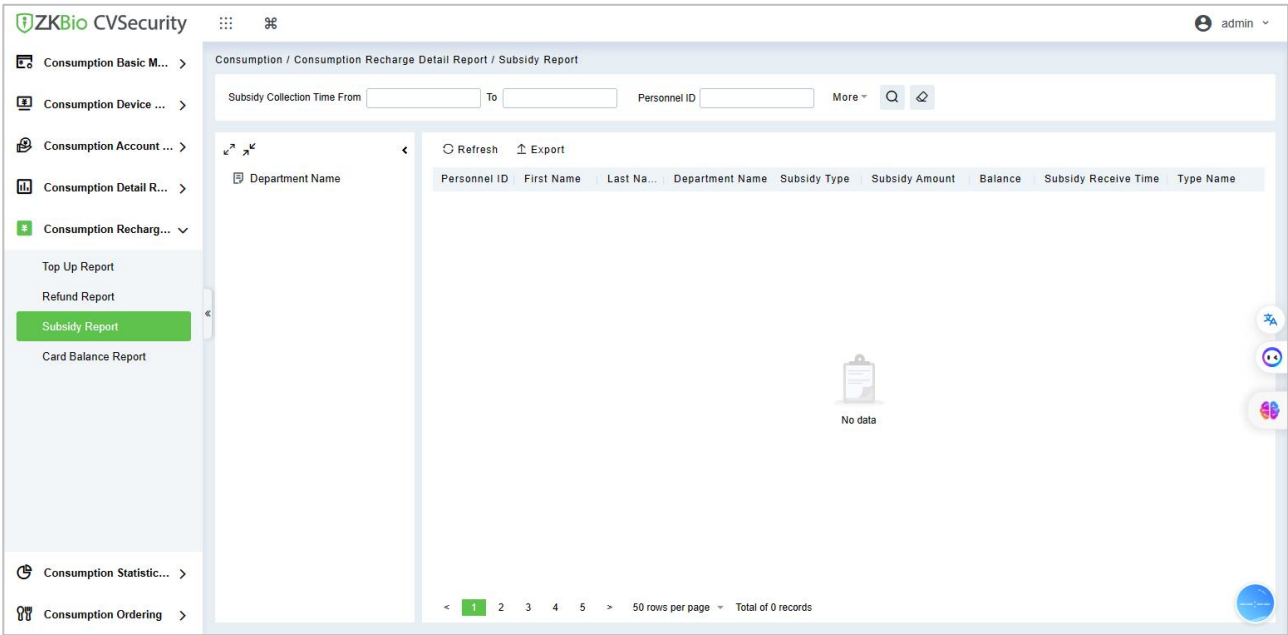


Figure 12- 58

### 12.5.3.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

### 12.5.4 Card Balance Table

Click **Consumption Report > Card Balance Table**, as shown below:

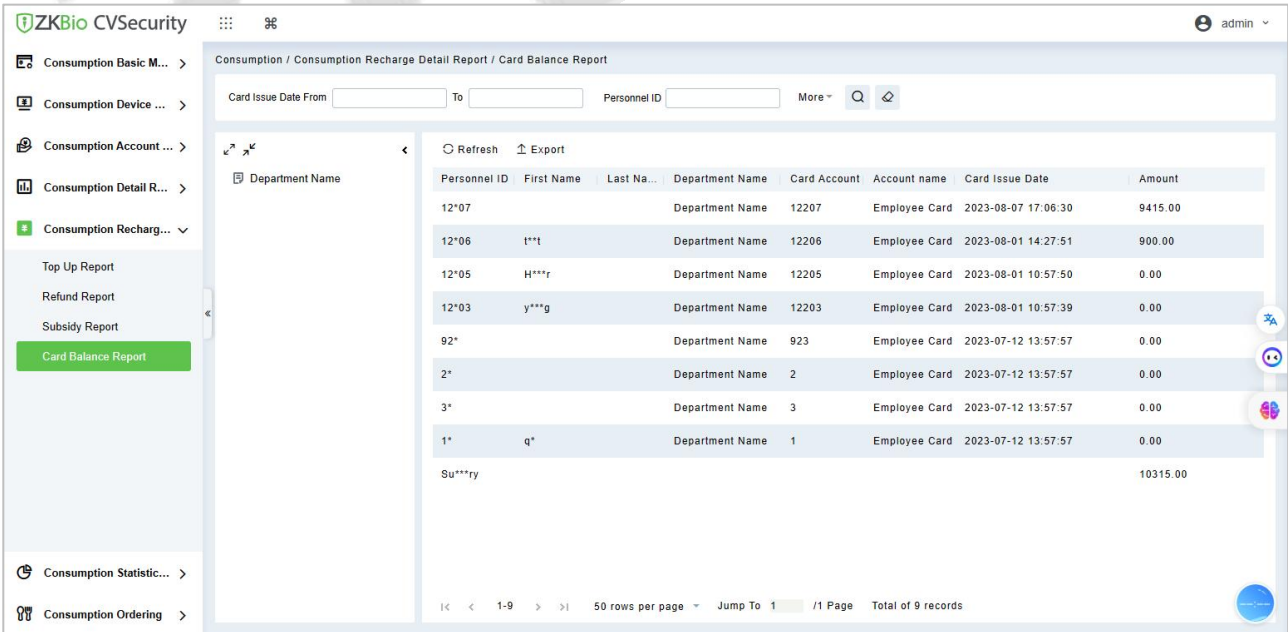


Figure 12- 59

### 12.5.4.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

## 12.6 Statistical Report

The statistical report contains the statistical information of consumption system module.

### 12.6.1 Personal Consumption Statistics

Click **Statistical Report > Personal Consumption Statistics**, as shown below:

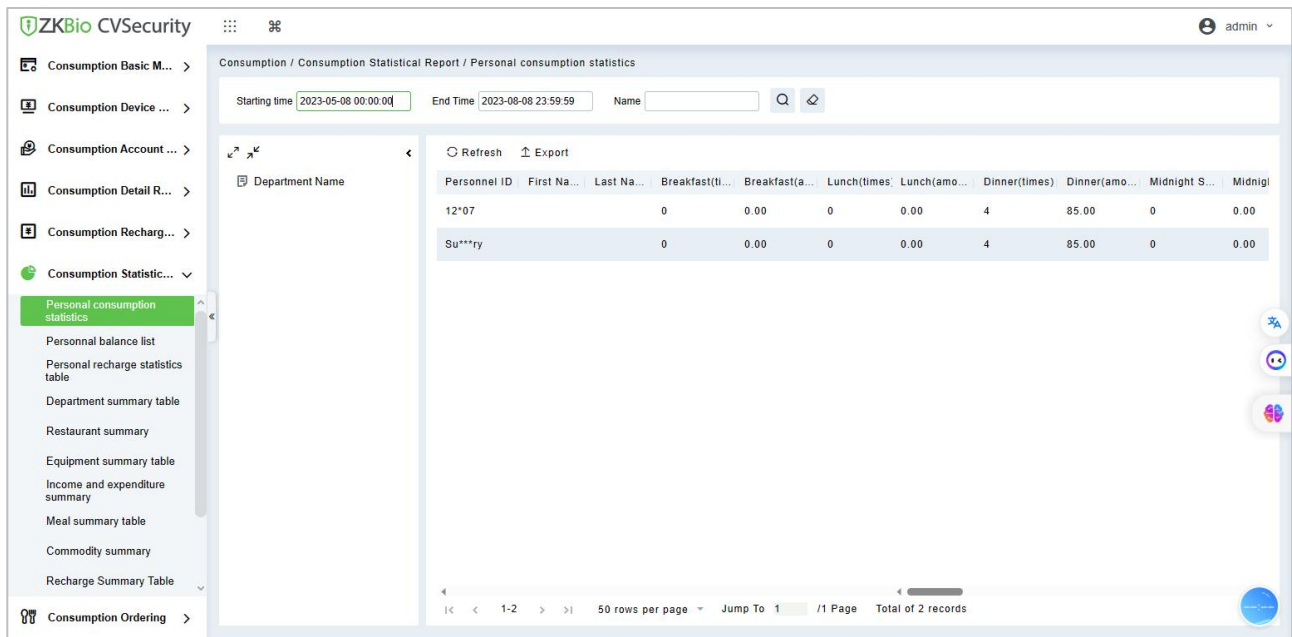



Figure 12- 60

#### 12.6.1.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

#### 12.6.1.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest personal consumption statistics table data.

**Note:** If the page personal consumption statistics table data is more, you can also enter the person name, department name, consumption time in the search field, click  to search and query.

The data statistics column includes below information:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Personnel ID           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 06(amount)                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> First Name             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 07(times)                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Last Name              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 07(amount)                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Breakfast(times)       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 08(times)                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Breakfast(amount)      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 08(amount)                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Lunch(times)           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No meal(times)                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Lunch(amount)          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No meal(amount)                   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Dinner(times)          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cash wallet consumption amount    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Dinner(amount)         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Subsidy wallet consumption amount |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Midnight Snack(times)  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Replenishment order               |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Midnight Snack(amount) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Total replenishment               |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 05(times)         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Number of error corrections       |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 05(amount)        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Total error correction            |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Meal 06(times)         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Total discount                    |

Figure 12- 61

The following is the calculation formula of the specific column.

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 12.6.2 Personal Balance List

Click **Statistical Report** > **Personal Balance List**, as shown below:

This report list shows all account balance information.

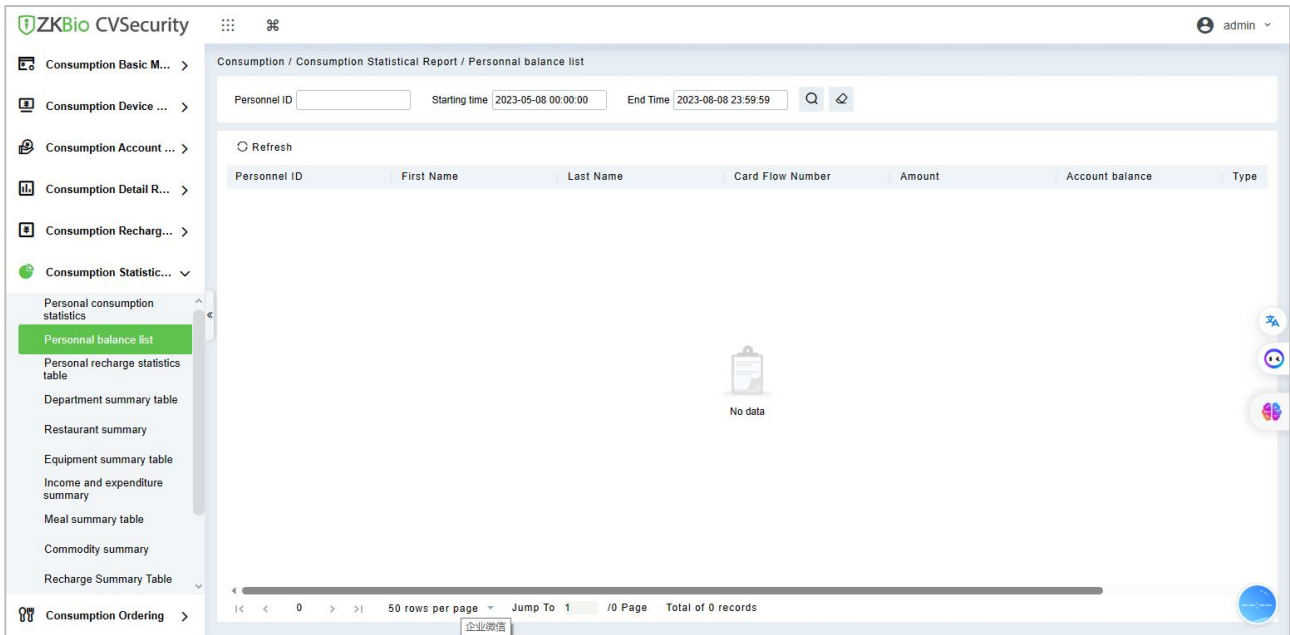


Figure 12- 62

### 12.6.3 Personal Recharge Statistics

Click **Statistical Report** > **Personal Recharge List**, as shown below:

This report list shows all account recharge information.

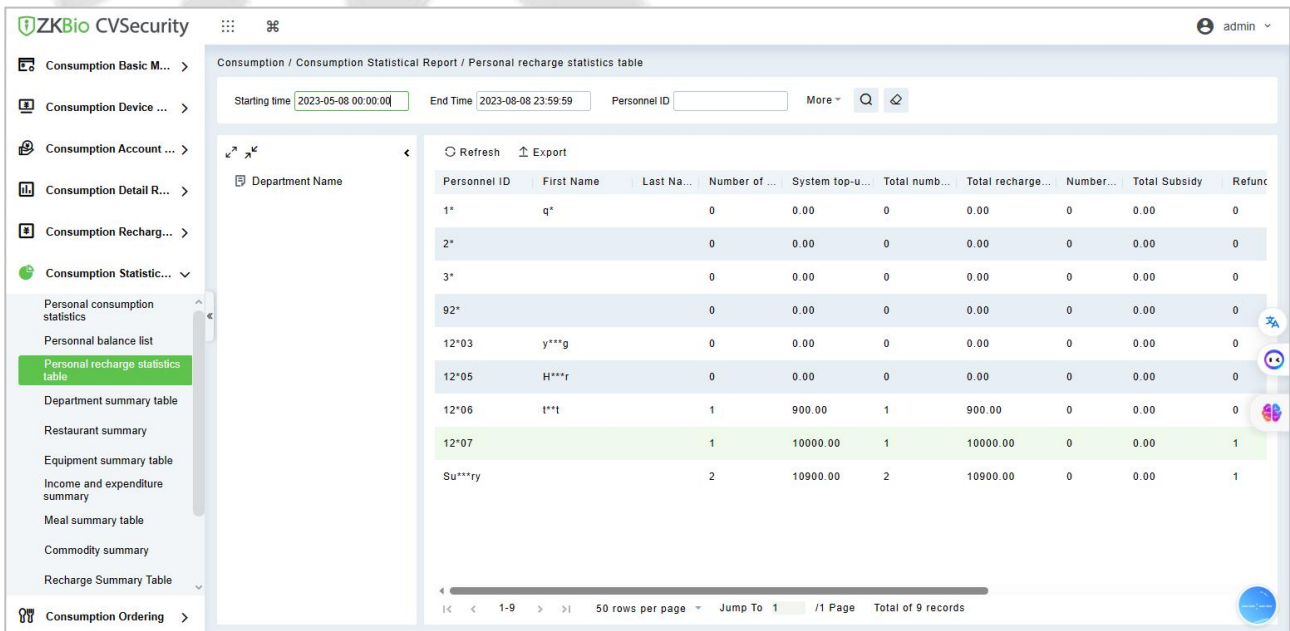


Figure 12- 63

### 12.6.4 Department Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Department Summary Table** as shown below:

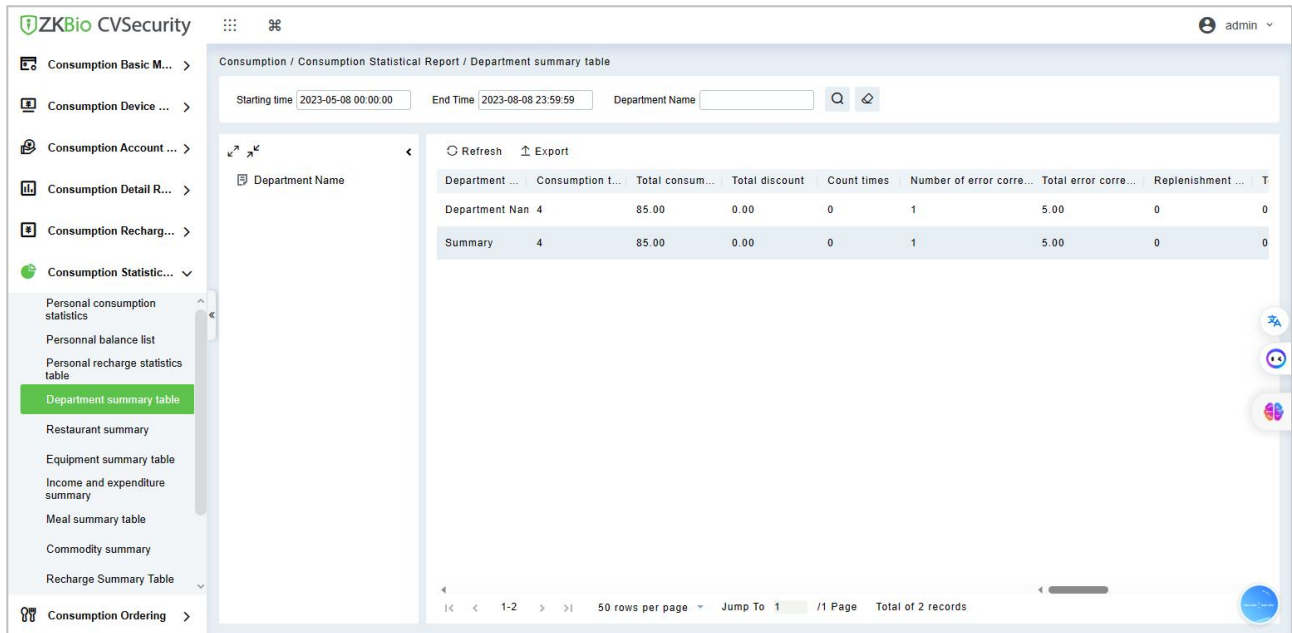


Figure 12- 64

#### 12.6.4.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

#### 12.6.4.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest department summary table data.

**Note:** If the page department summary table data is more, you can also enter the department name and consumption time in the search field, and click to search for the query.

The data statistics column includes:

- Department Name
- Consumption times
- Total consumption
- Total discount
- Count times
- Number of error corrections
- Total error correction
- Replenishment order
- Total replenishment
- Actual consumption
- Actual consumption amount
- System amount settlement (including replenishment)
- System amount settlement
- Date of consumption

Figure 12- 65

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 12.6.5 Restaurant Summary

Click **Statistical Report > Restaurant Summary**, as shown below:

The screenshot displays the 'Consumption / Consumption Statistical Report / Restaurant summary' page. The main content area shows a table with the following data:

| Restaurant N... | Breakfast(ti... | Breakfast(a... | Lunch(times) | Lunch(amo... | Dinner(times) | Dinner(amo... | Midnight S... | Midnight S... | Meal 05(ti... |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| Headquarters    | 0               | 0.00           | 0            | 0.00         | 4             | 85.00         | 0             | 0.00          | 0             |
| Summary         | 0               | 0.00           | 0            | 0.00         | 4             | 85.00         | 0             | 0.00          | 0             |

The interface also includes a sidebar with navigation options, a search bar, and a footer with pagination information: '50 rows per page', 'Jump To 1 / 1 Page', and 'Total of 2 records'.


Figure 12- 66

#### 12.6.5.1 Export

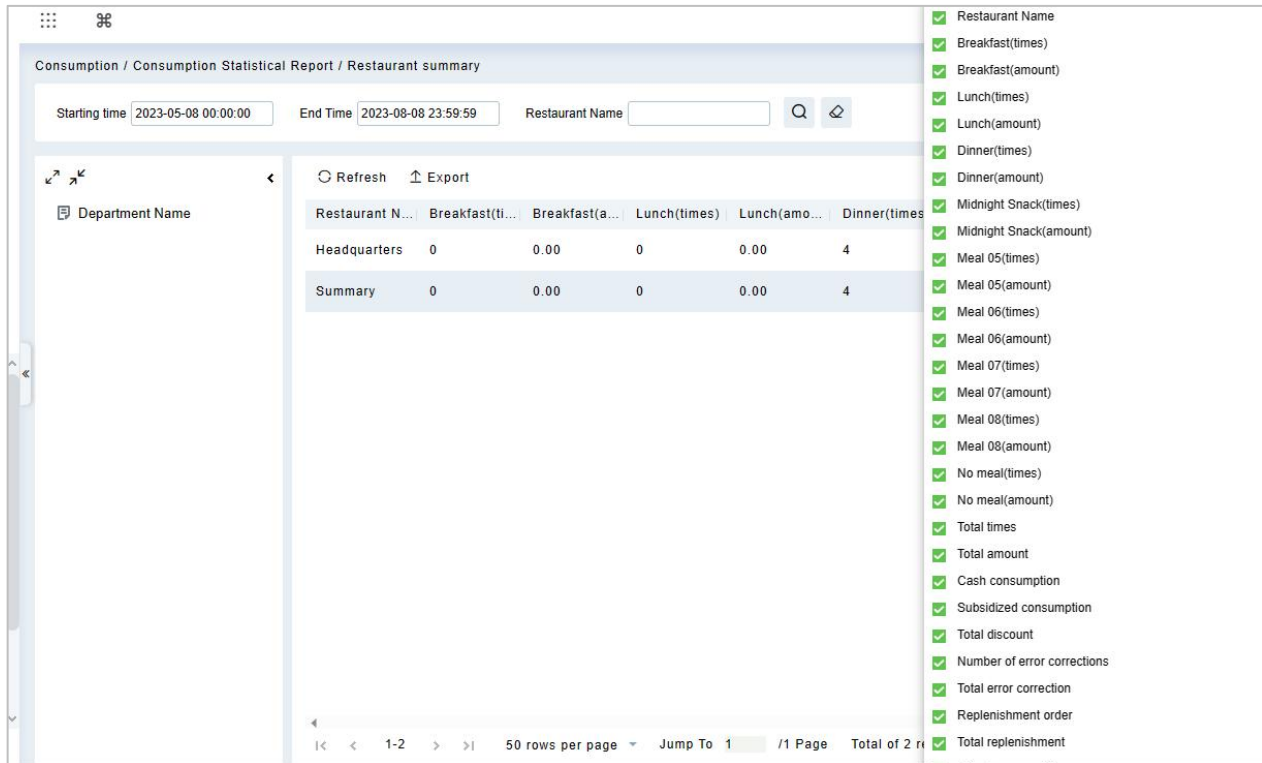
Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

### 12.6.5.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest restaurant summary table data.

**Note:** If the page restaurant summary table data is more, you can also enter the restaurant name, consumption time in the search bar, click  to search and query.

The data statistics column includes:



| Restaurant Name | Breakfast(times) | Breakfast(amount) | Lunch(times) | Lunch(amount) | Dinner(times) |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| Headquarters    | 0                | 0.00              | 0            | 0.00          | 4             |
| Summary         | 0                | 0.00              | 0            | 0.00          | 4             |

Figure 12- 67

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

## 12.6.6 Device Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Device Summary Table**, as shown below:

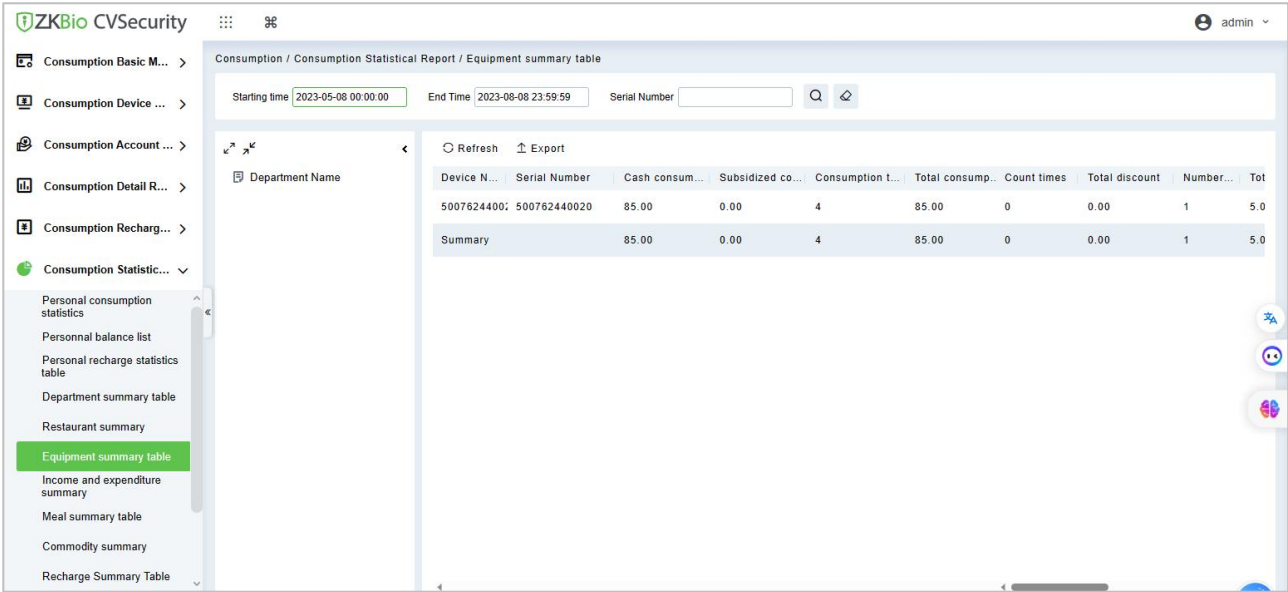



Figure 12- 68

### 12.6.6.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

### 12.6.6.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest equipment summary table data.

**Note:** If there is more data on the page device summary table, you can also enter the device name and consumption time in the search field, and click  to search for it.

The data statistics column includes:

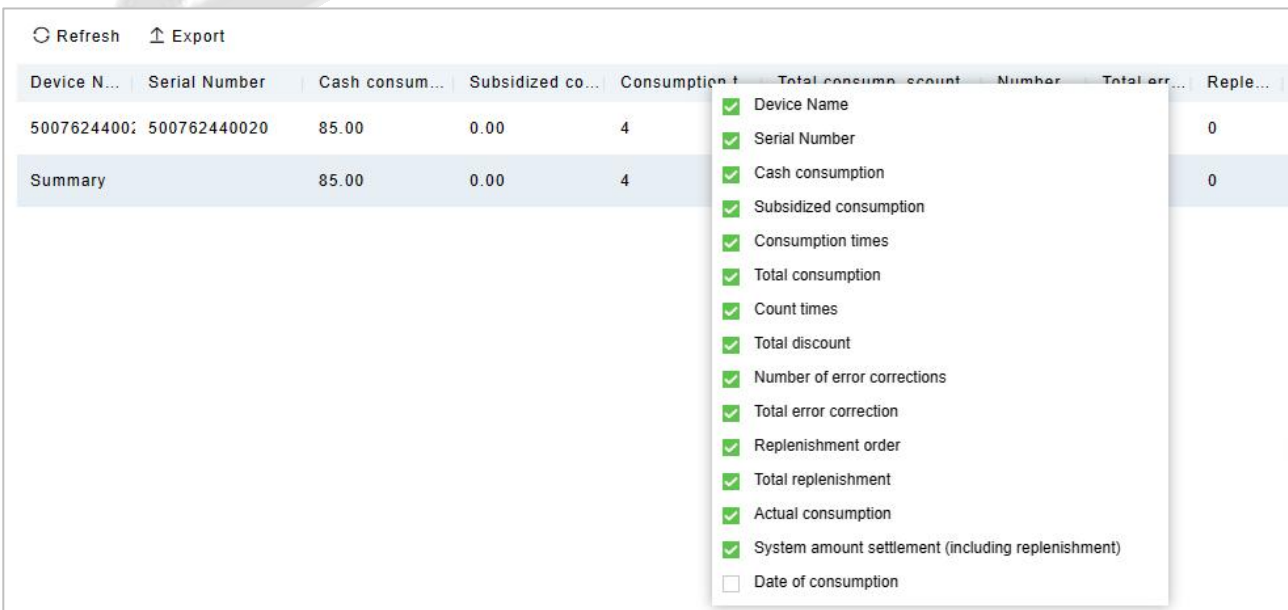


Figure 12- 69

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 12.6.7 Income and Expenditures Summary

Click **Statistical Report > Income and Expenditures Summary**, as shown below:

The screenshot displays the 'Income and expenditure summary' report in the ZKBio CVSecurity system. The interface includes a sidebar with navigation options, a search bar, and a data table. The table shows the following data:

| Creator Name / Device Seri... | Top Up Times | Refund Times | Subsidy Re... | Issue Card TI... | Total Subsidy | Total Top Up | Total  |
|-------------------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|--------|
| admin                         | 2            | 1            | 0             | 4                | 0.00          | 10900.00     | 500.00 |
| System                        | 0            | 0            | 0             | 4                | 0.00          | 0.00         | 0.00   |
| Summary                       | 2            | 1            | 0             | 8                | 0.00          | 10900.00     | 500.00 |


Figure 12- 70

#### 12.6.7.1 Export

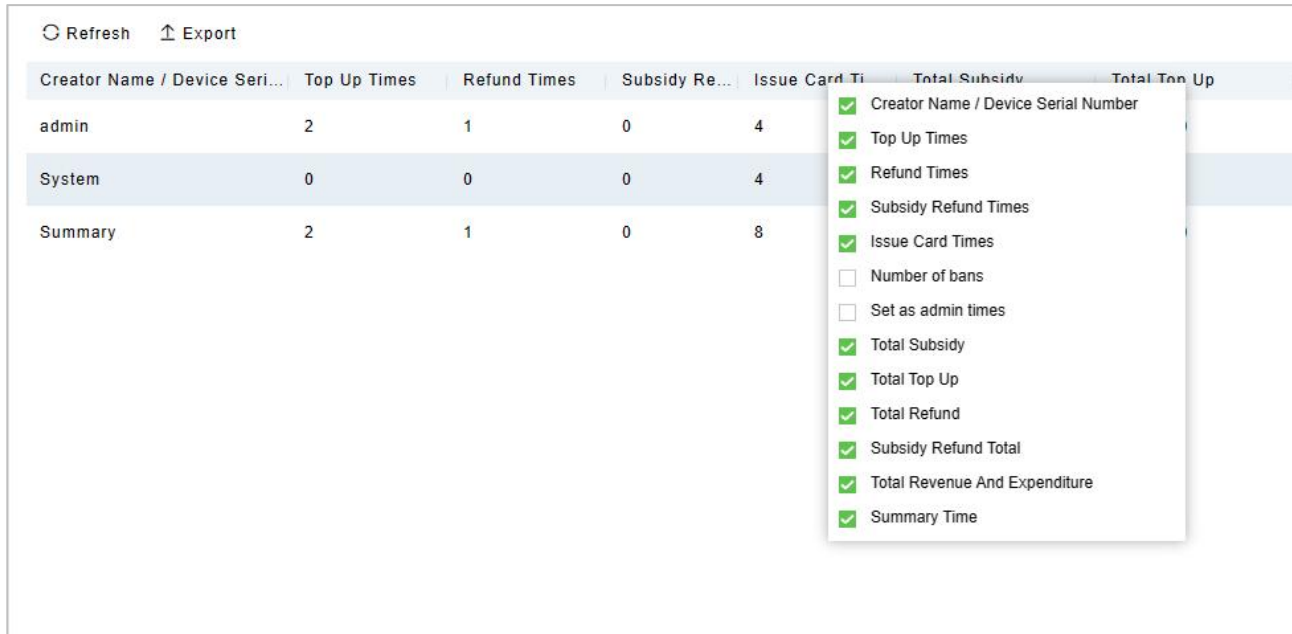
Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

### 12.6.7.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest revenue and expenditure summary table data.

**Note:** If there is more data on the page income and expenditure summary table, you can also enter the creator name/device serial number and summary time in the search field, and click  to search for it.

The data statistics column includes



| Creator Name / Device Serial Number | Top Up Times | Refund Times | Subsidy Re... | Issue Card Ti... | Total Subsidy | Total Top Up |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|
| admin                               | 2            | 1            | 0             | 4                |               |              |
| System                              | 0            | 0            | 0             | 4                |               |              |
| Summary                             | 2            | 1            | 0             | 8                |               |              |

**Figure 12-71**

- **Top up Times** = The total number of counts a card was added extra amount.
- **Refund Times** = The total number of counts a card were refunded.
- **Issue Card Times** = The total number of counts a card were issued.
- **Return Card Times** = The total number of counts the cards were returned.
- **Non-card Return card Times** = The total count of Non-card Return card.
- **Total Issue Card** = The total number of issued card.
- **Total Return Card** = The total number of cards returned.
- **No Card Return Card Total** = The total number of blocked card which are not returned.
- **Total Subsidy** = The total amount of subsidy for the card type.
- **Total Top-Up Offer** = The total amount of top-up discount for the card type.
- **Total Top-Up** = The total amount of top-up for the card type.
- **Total Refund** = The total amount of refund for the card type.
- **Card Cost Support** = The total amount of card cost for the card type.
- **Management Fee** = The total amount of management fee for the card type.
- **Card Cost Expense** = The total amount of card cost for the card type.
- **Total Revenue and Expenditure** = (Total Top up + Card Cost Expense + Total Issue Card + Management fee) - (Total Refund - Total Return Card).

### 12.6.8 Meal Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Meal Summary Table**, as shown below:

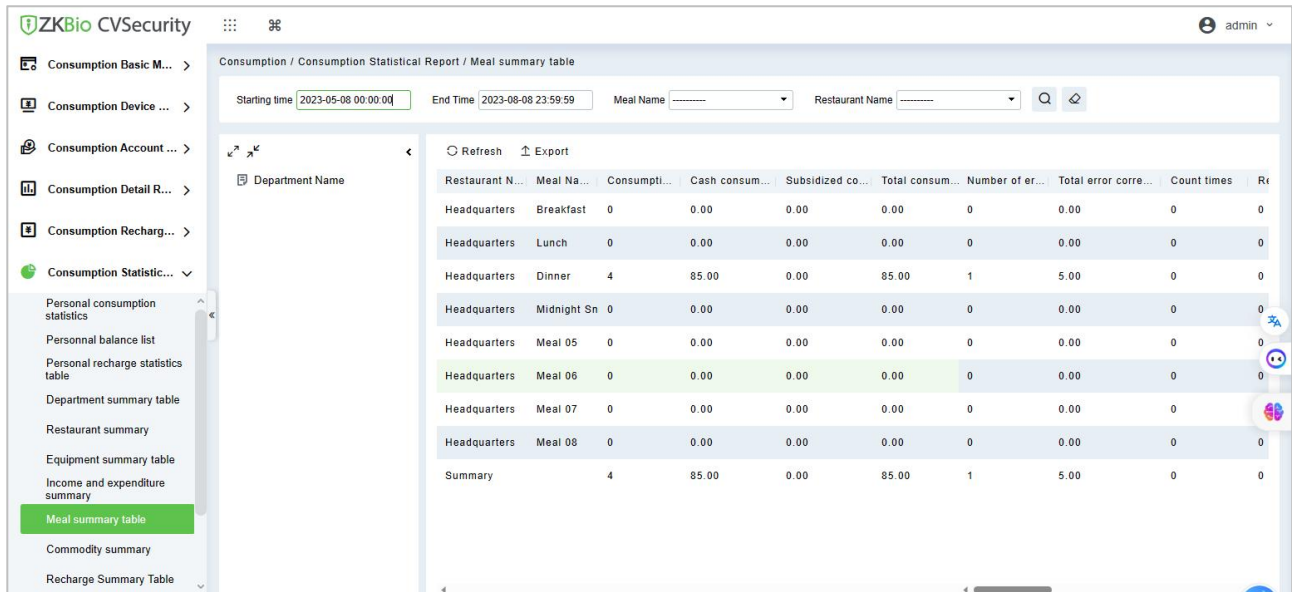


Figure 12-72

#### 12.6.8.1 Export

Click the **Export** button at the top of the list to open an export dialog box, as shown below. Click **OK** to export the data according to the query conditions and export conditions. The export format type can be selected as Excel, PDF, or CSV files.

#### 12.6.8.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** to load the latest meal summary table data.

**Note:** If there is more data in the page meal summary table, you can also enter the device name, name, and consumption time in the search field, and click to search for it.

The data statistics column includes:

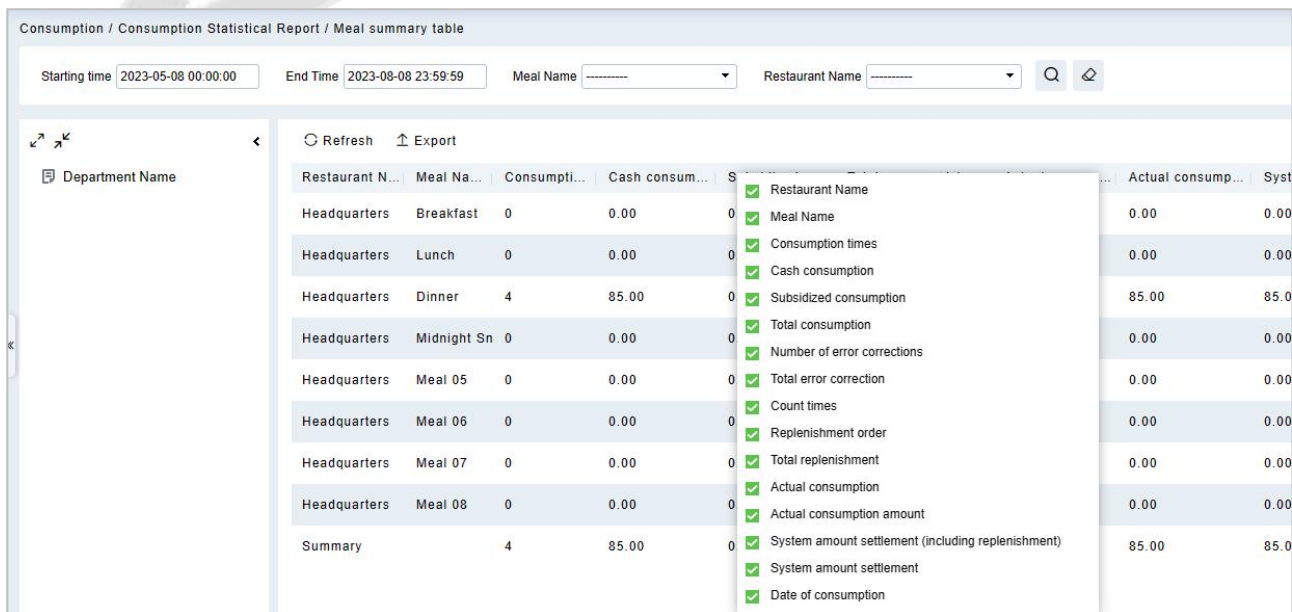


Figure 12-73

The following is the calculation formula of the specific column.

- **Consumption Times** = Total number of count the particular type is consumed.
- **Total Consumption** = Total amount of money consumed for the particular type.
- **Counting Times** = Total number of times the type is counted.
- **Number of Error Corrections** = Total number of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Total Error Correction** = Total amount of error correction for the particular type name.
- **Times of Supplementary Order** = Total count of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Total Supplementary Order** = Total amount of supplementary order for the particular type.
- **Accounting Times** = Total count of billing for the particular type.
- **Total Accounting** = Total amount of money billed for the particular type.
- **Actual Consumption Times (device)** = Consumption times - Number of error corrections.
- **Actual Consumption Amount (device)** = Total Consumption - Total Error Correction.
- **System Amount Settlement (including supplementary order)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order).
- **System Amount Settlement (including billing)** = Total Consumption - (Total Error Correction + Total Supplementary Order + Total Accounting).

### 12.6.9 Commodity Summary

Click **Statistical Report > Meal Summary Table**, as shown below:

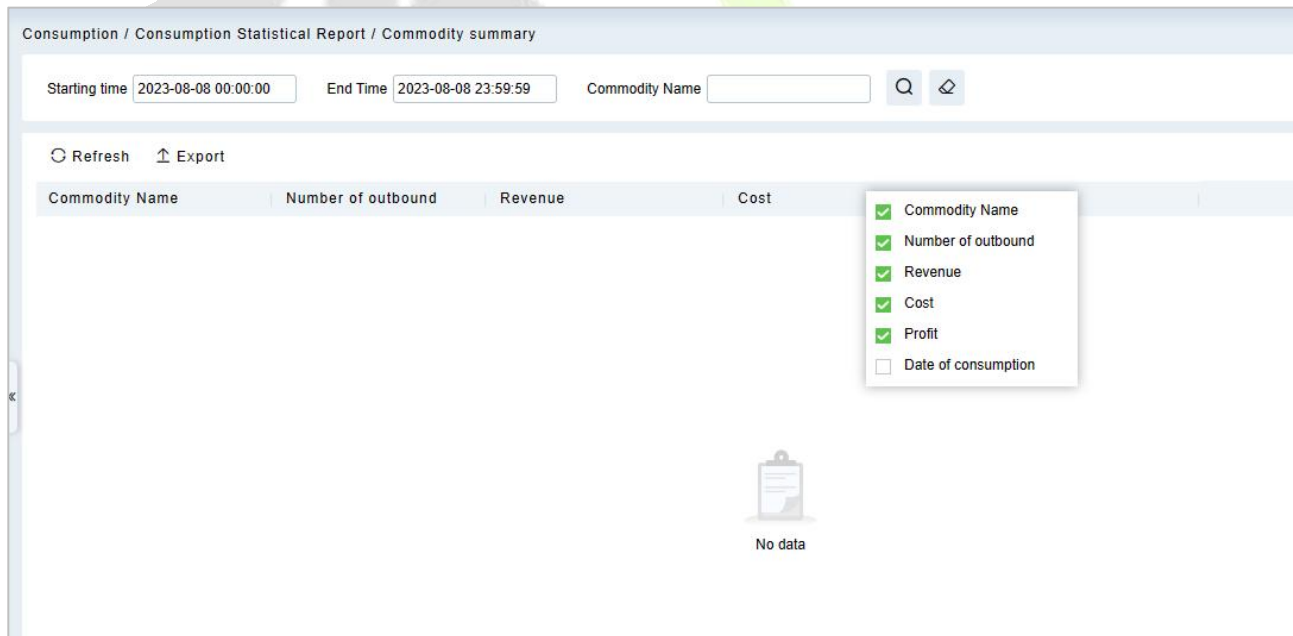


Figure 12- 74

The following is the calculation formula of the specific column.

- **Commodity Name** = Total name of count the name of consumption commodity.
- **Number of Outbound** = Total amount of consumption commodity.
- **Revenue** = Total number of revenue amount of the type is consumption commodity.

- **Cost** = Total number of cost amount of the type is consumption commodity.
- **Profit** = Total number of revenue amount of the type is consumption commodity - Total number of cost amount of the type is consumption commodity.
- **Date of Consumption** = Total name of consumption date of consume commodity.

### 12.6.10 Recharge Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Recharge Summary Table**, as shown below:

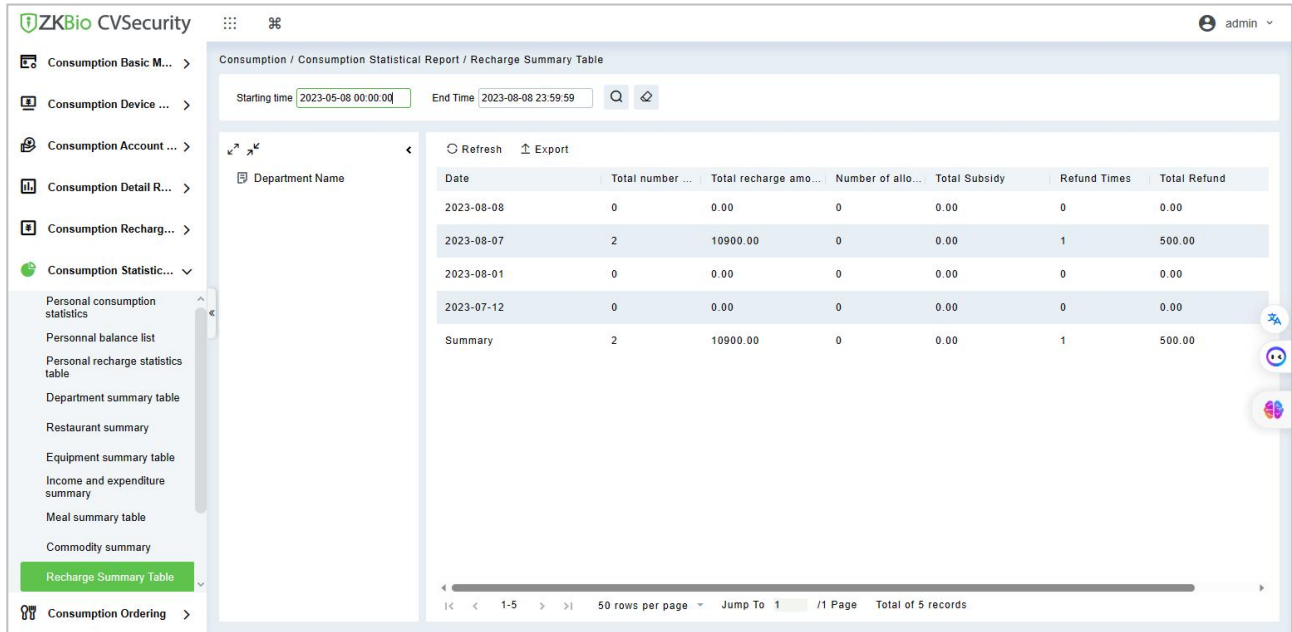


Figure 12-75

### 12.6.11 Personnel Meal Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Personnel Meal Summary Table**, as shown below:

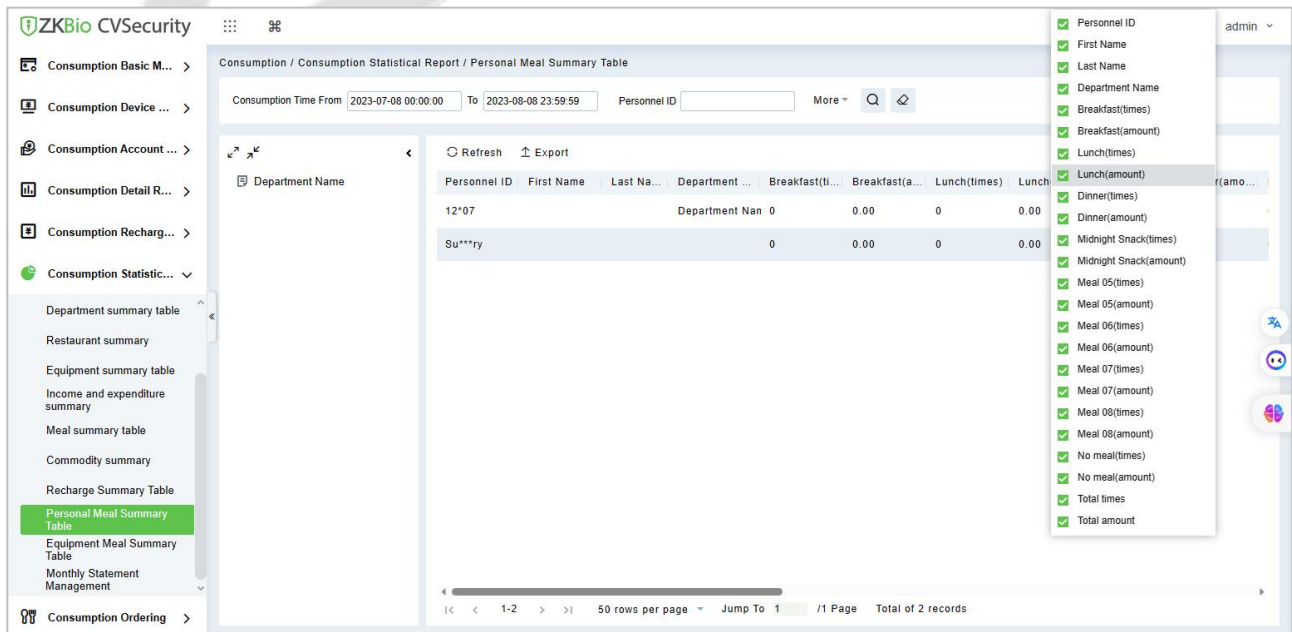


Figure 12-76

### 12.6.12 Device Meal Summary Table

Click **Statistical Report > Device Meal Summary Table**, as shown below:

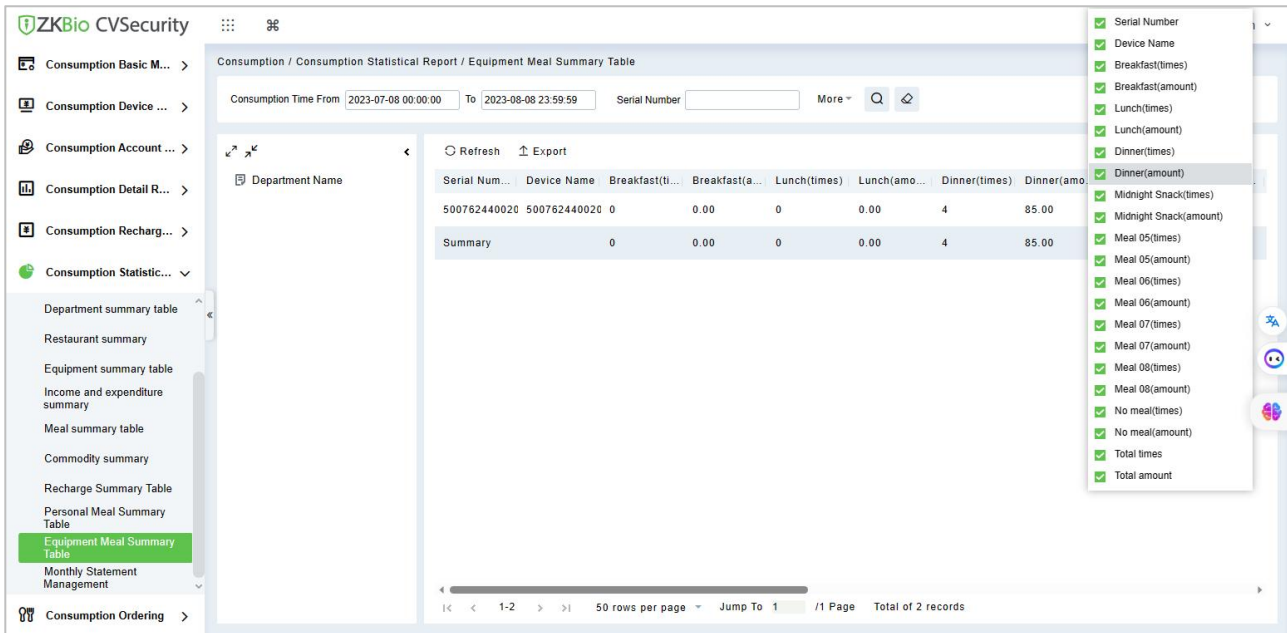


Figure 12-77

### 12.6.13 Monthly Statement Management

Click **Statistical Report > Monthly Statement Management**, as shown below:

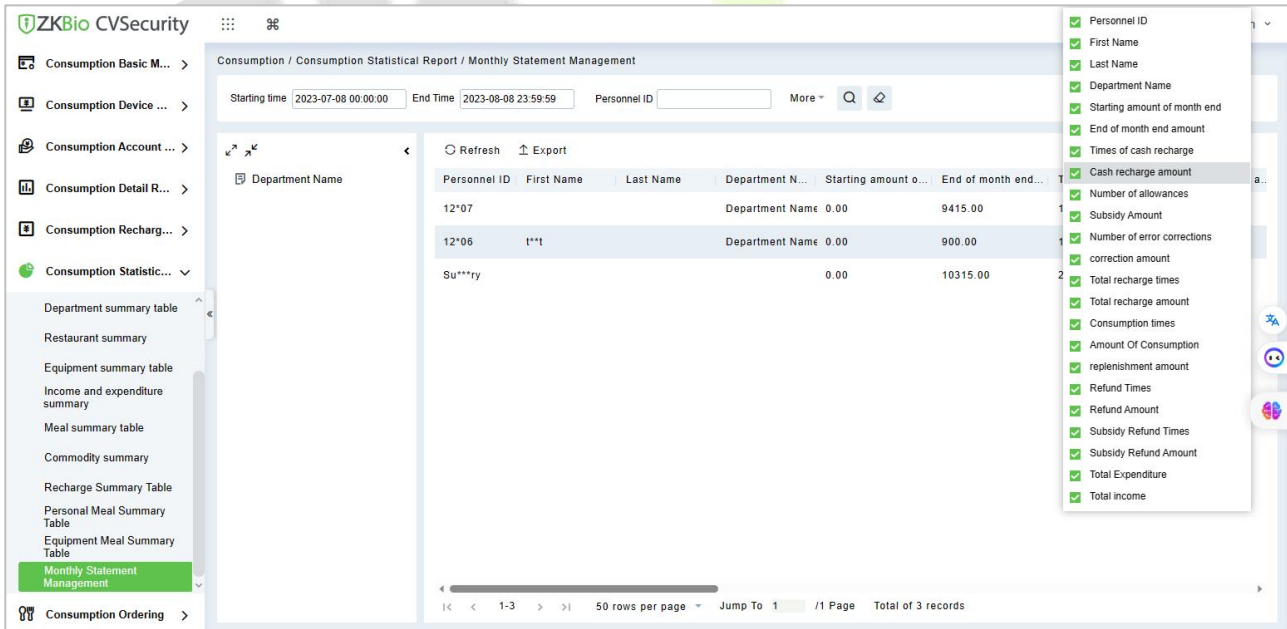


Figure 12-78

## 12.7 Consumption Ordering

The platform provides food ordering management, employees can find the administrator to order food in advance.

### 12.7.1 Order Management

Click **Consumption Ordering > Order Management**, as shown below:

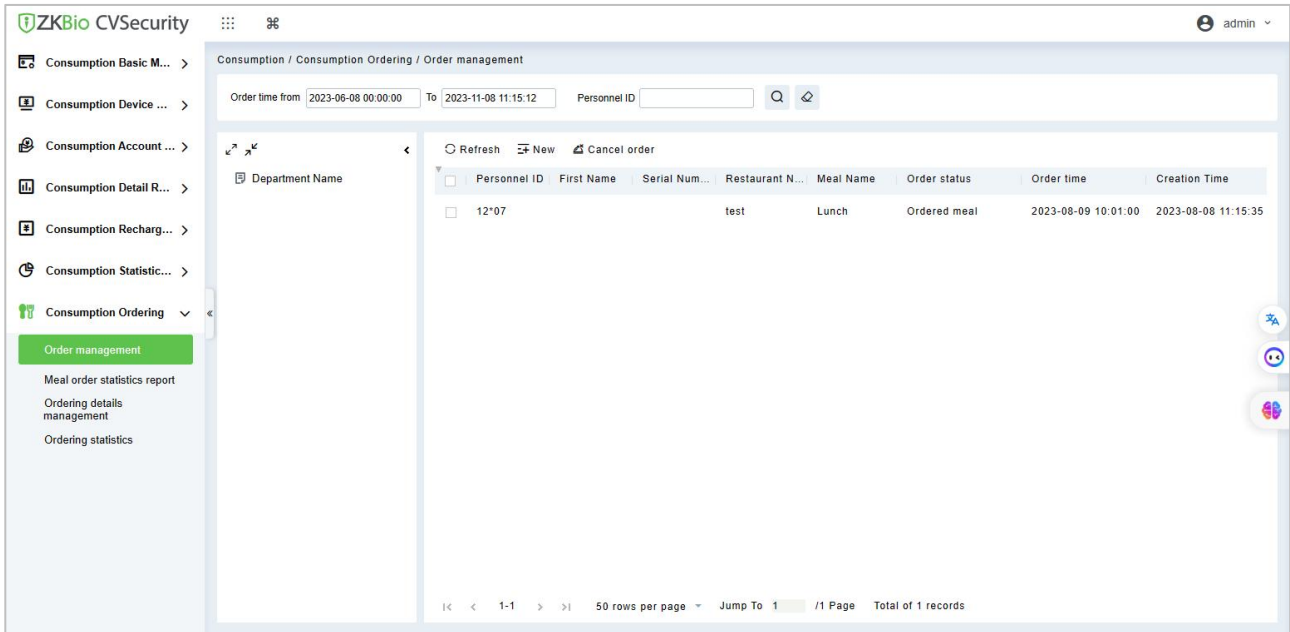


Figure 12-79

#### 12.7.1.1 New

Click **New** and select the personnel or department, fill in the meal ordering details.

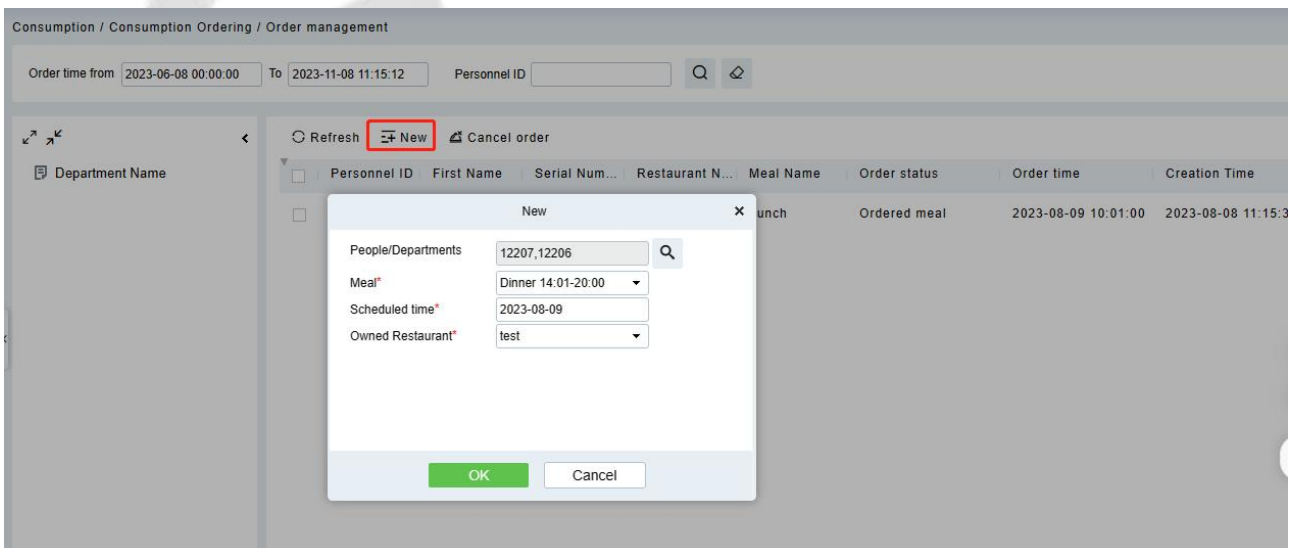


Figure 12-80

### 12.7.1.2 Cancel Order

Select the personnel, click **Cancel Order** to cancel the order.

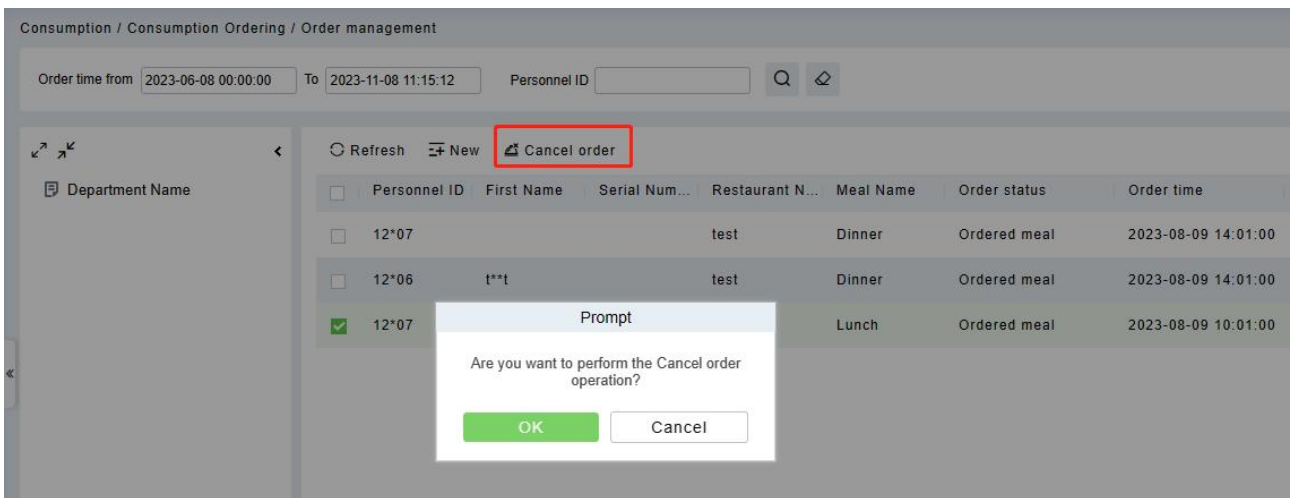


Figure 12- 81

### 12.7.2 Meal Order Statics Report

Click **Consumption Ordering > Meal Order Statics Report**, as shown below:

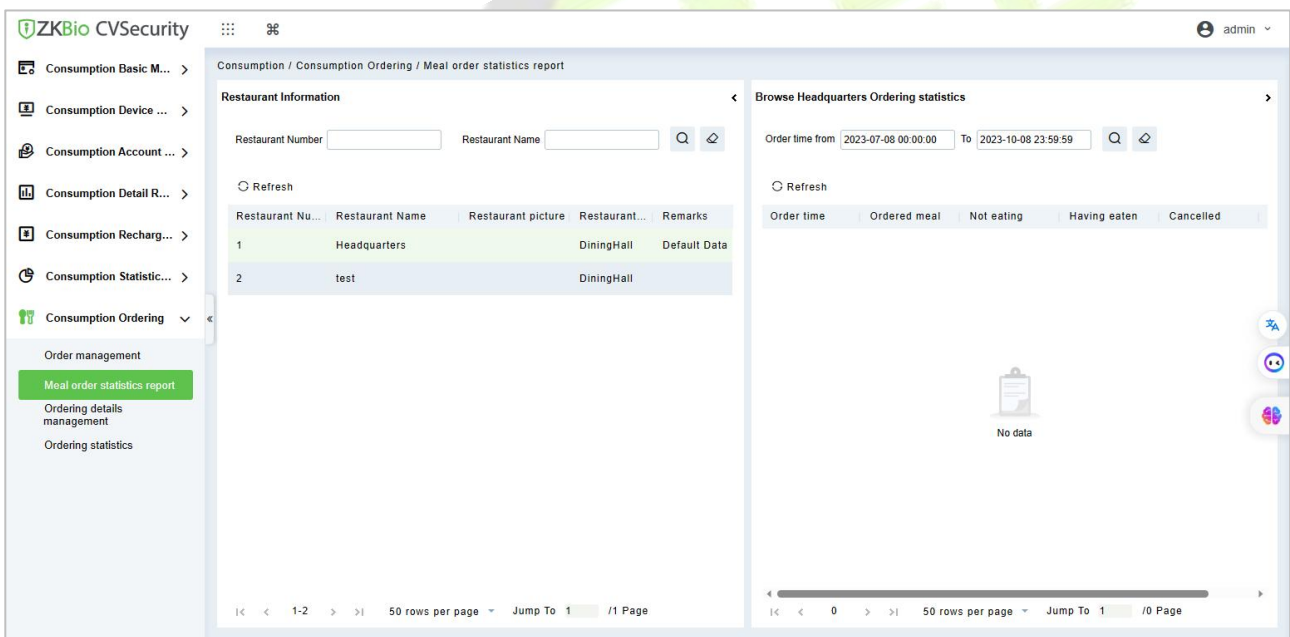


Figure 12- 82

### 12.7.3 Ordering Details Management

Click **Consumption Ordering > Ordering Detail Management**, as shown below:

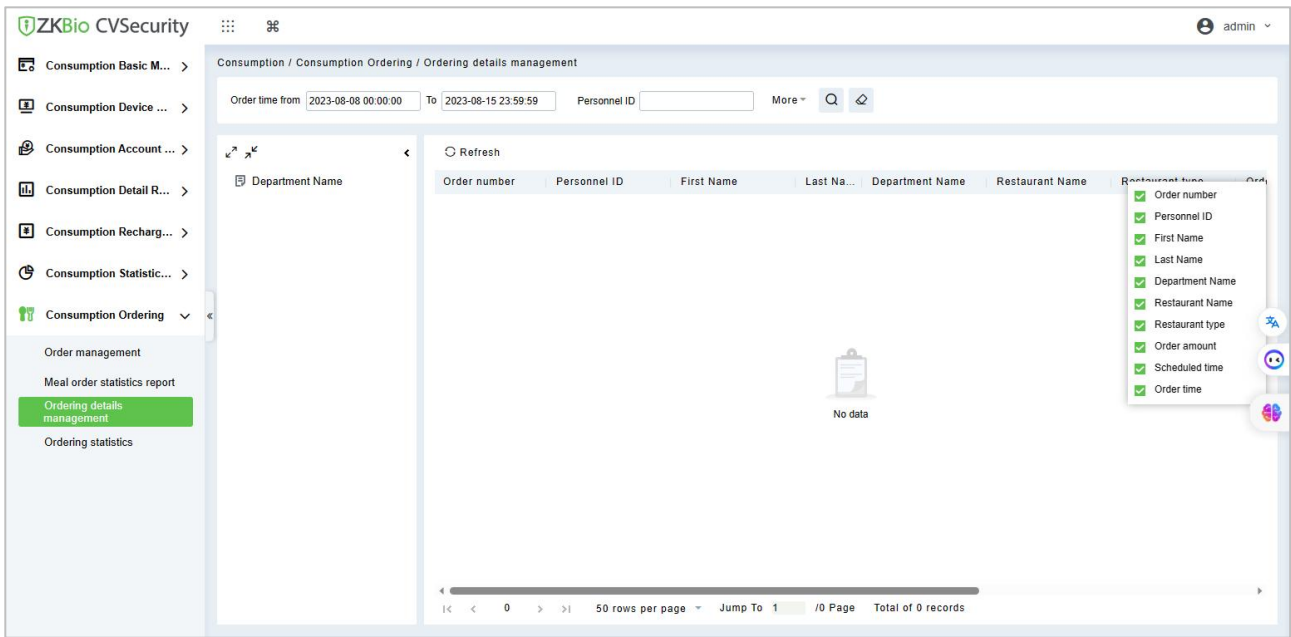


Figure 12- 83

### 12.7.4 Ordering Statistics

Click **Consumption Ordering > Ordering Statistics**, as shown below:

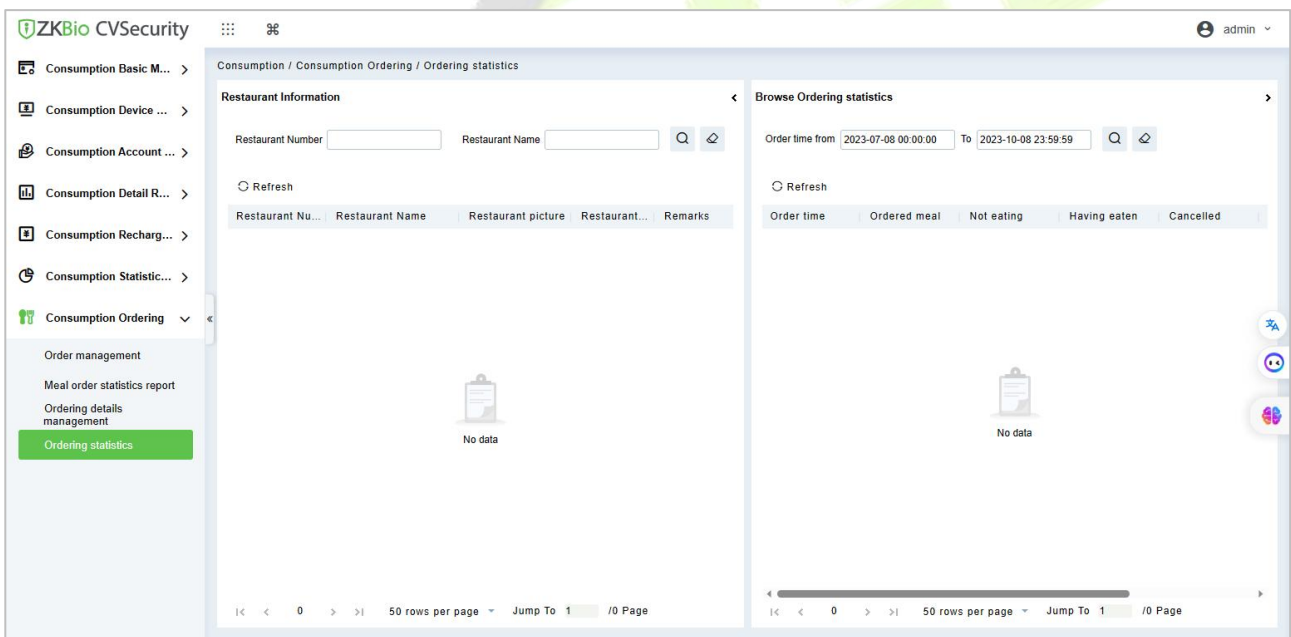


Figure 12- 84

## 13 Patrol Management

### 13.1 Operation Scenario

Patrol management business can realize the effective supervision and management of patrol personnel, patrol plan and patrol route by enterprise managers, and at the same time, it can also make regular statistics and analysis on patrol route and results.

### 13.2 Operation Flow

Introduce the configuration process of patrol management.

The patrol management configuration process is shown in figure below.

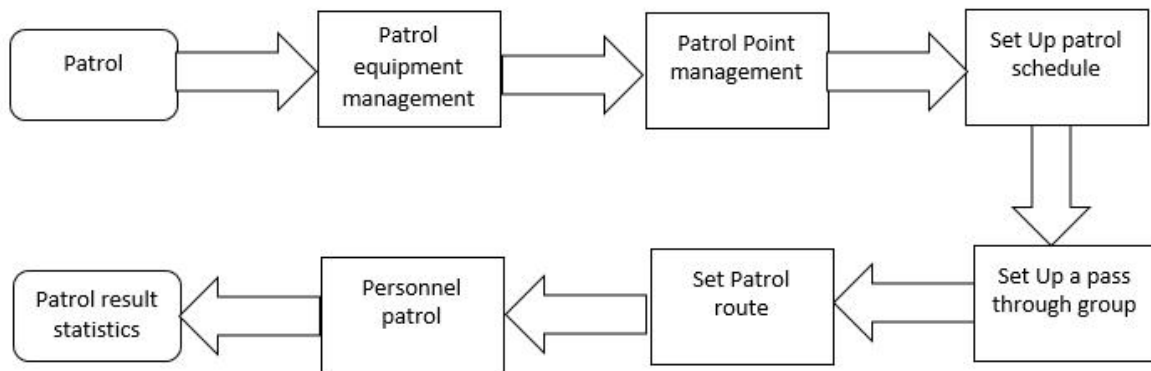


Figure 13- 1 Patrol Configuration Flow

### 13.3 Patrol Route Monitoring

#### 13.3.1 Patrol Monitoring

Displays all the scheduled routes in the patrol plan on the same day. When the patrol personnel patrol normally as planned, the patrol points in the corresponding patrol routes will turn green; if you don't patrol according to the rules, the patrol point will turn red. This interface is shown in the patrol monitoring interface, as shown in figure below. Refer to Table 12-1 for status description.

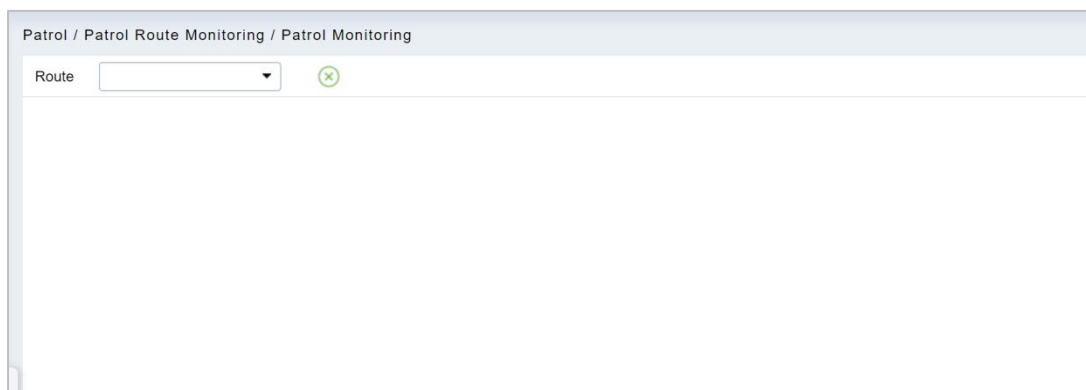





Figure 13- 2 Patrol Monitoring

| Parameter   | Description   |
|---|---|
| Normal Patrol   | Personnel complete patrol in a normal time period according to normal sequence rules.   |
| Wrong Patrol  | The personnel completed the patrol within the normal time period but did not follow the regular route.                              |
| Leakage Patrol  | The personnel did not complete the patrol within the normal time period, that is, one or part of the patrol points did not patrol.  |
| Absence   | Personnel has not completed the patrol within the normal time period, that is, the whole patrol route has not completed one patrol. |
|  | The patrol route is wrong/missed.   |
|  | Normal patrol.  |
|  | Not patrolling.   |

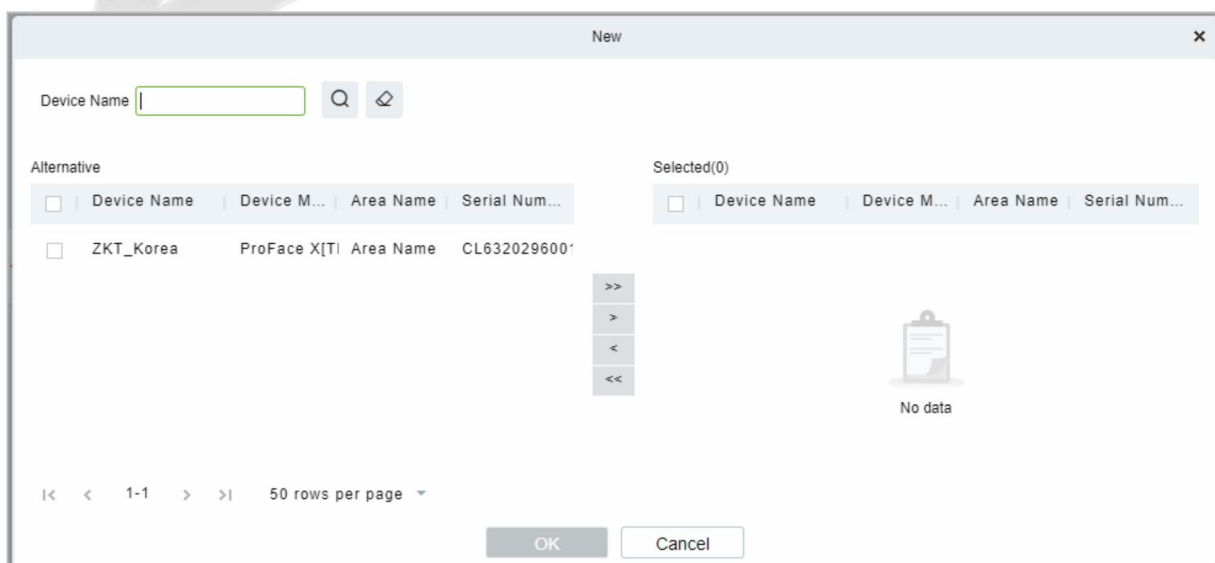
**Table 13-1 Patrol Status Description**

## 13.4 Basic Settings (Patrol Basic Management)

### 13.4.1 Device Addition (Device)

#### 13.4.1.1 Add device (New)

Select a device to be used as the patrol device from the access control devices. Click **Basic Management > Device > New**. In the **Alternative** box, add available devices and click **OK** to save the setting. The page is displayed as follows:



**Figure 13- 3 Add Device (New)**

●Precondition:

Before the patrol operation, it is necessary to add patrol device in the **Access Control** module and patrol personnel in the **Personnel** module.

| Parameters    | Instructions                        |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| Device Name   | Customize the name of this device   |
| Serial Number | Customize the device serial number. |
| Area Name     | Divide the area for the device.     |
| Device Model  | Manufacturer of the device.         |

**Table 13-2 Access Control**

**13.4.1.2 Delete**

Select personnel in the list on the right and click **Delete** above the list to delete the personnel from the patrol group

**13.4.1.3 Edit**

Click a device name or Edit in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click OK to save modifications.

**13.4.2 Checkpoint**

**13.4.2.1 Add Checkpoint (New)**

**Step 1:** Click **Basic Management > Checkpoint > New**. The page is displayed as follows:

**Figure 13- 4 New Checkpoint**

**Step 2:** After the setting (parameters with \* are mandatory), click **OK** to save the setting. You can also click **Save and New** to save the current setting and add another checkpoint. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting and return to the upper-level menu.

| Parameters            | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Checkpoint            | Unique name which can identify a route.  |
| Device Module         | Displays the device number.  |
| Area Name             | It can support typing anything alphabet but can't typing the common.   |
| Device Name           | Manufacturer of the device.  |
| Patrol Tag            | Currently, only access control readers are supported   |
| Installation Position | Set a suitable name for the position. Any character, maximum combination of 100 characters. Position names should not be repeated. |
| Operations            | The patrol operation, it is necessary to add patrol device in the Access Control module.   |

**Table 13-3 New Checkpoint**

### 13.4.2.2 Delete

Select personnel in the list on the right and click **Delete** above the list to delete the personnel from the checkpoint

### 13.4.2.3 Edit

Click a device name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

**Note:** Patrol tags that have been used by checkpoints cannot be used again when you add another checkpoint.

## 13.4.3 Parameters

**Step 1:** Click **Patrol > Basic Management > Parameters**.

**Step 2:** Set the interval for patrol statistics collection.

**Step3:** Click **OK** to save the setting.

**Patrol Statistics**

Automatically Calculate Report Interval:

30 minutes

**Figure 13- 5 Parameters**

## 13.5 Patrol Management

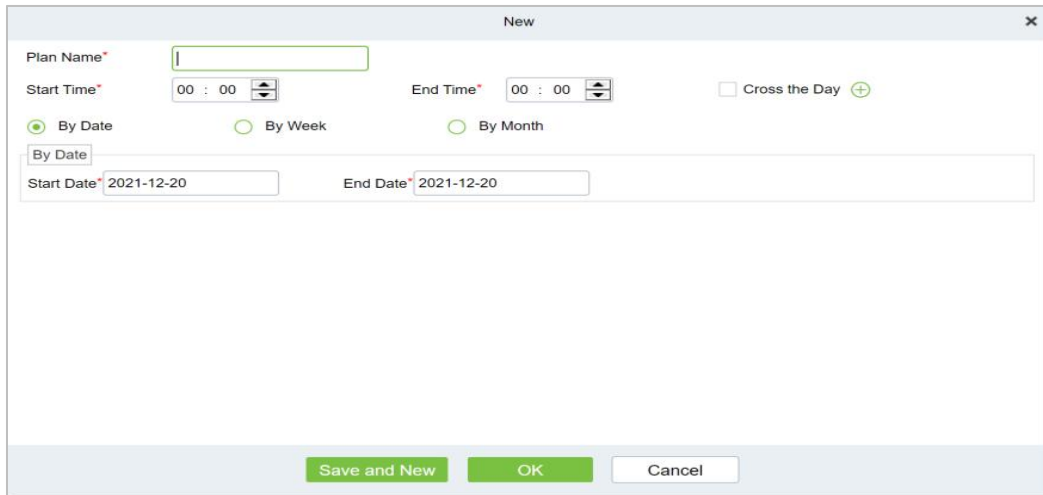
### 13.5.1 Set Up a Patrol Plan

#### 13.5.1.1 Add Plan (New)

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Patrol module, select "**Patrol Management > Patrol Plan**" and click New.

**Step 2:** In the **New** window that pops up, configure the patrol plan information, as shown in figure below, and describe the key parameters as shown in Table 12-1.



**Figure 13- 6 Patrol Plan**

| Parameter   | Instructions   |
|-------------|--|
| Time Period | You can set the time to be set in a day, or you can set it across days.  |
| By Date     | The patrol plan is scheduled daily. Check by Date to set the start date and end date of the patrol plan.   |
| By Week     | The patrol plan is scheduled on a weekly basis.  |
| By Month    | The patrol plan is scheduled monthly.<br>There are two ways to implement the monthly plan: daily implementation or regular implementation. Choose the patrol plan to perform the patrol task every day in the selected month; If you choose to perform regularly, you will perform the patrol task within the specified date in the month. |

**Table 13-4 Parameter Setting Description**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

| Parameter | Instructions             |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| Plan Name | Customize the Plan Name. |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Cycle Type | Customize the Cycle Type.   |
| Plan       | A maximum of three patrol shifts can be added for a patrol plan.  |
| Time Zone  | This abnormal event is triggered if a user with the floor opening right punches his/her card beyond the effective periods |
| Operations | The patrol operation, it is necessary to add patrol device in the <b>Access Control</b> module.                           |

**Table 13-5 Parameter Setting**

### 13.5.2 Designated Patrol Personnel Group (Patrol Group)

#### 13.5.2.1 Add Patrol Group (New)

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Patrol module, select "**Patrol Management > Patrol Group**" and click New.

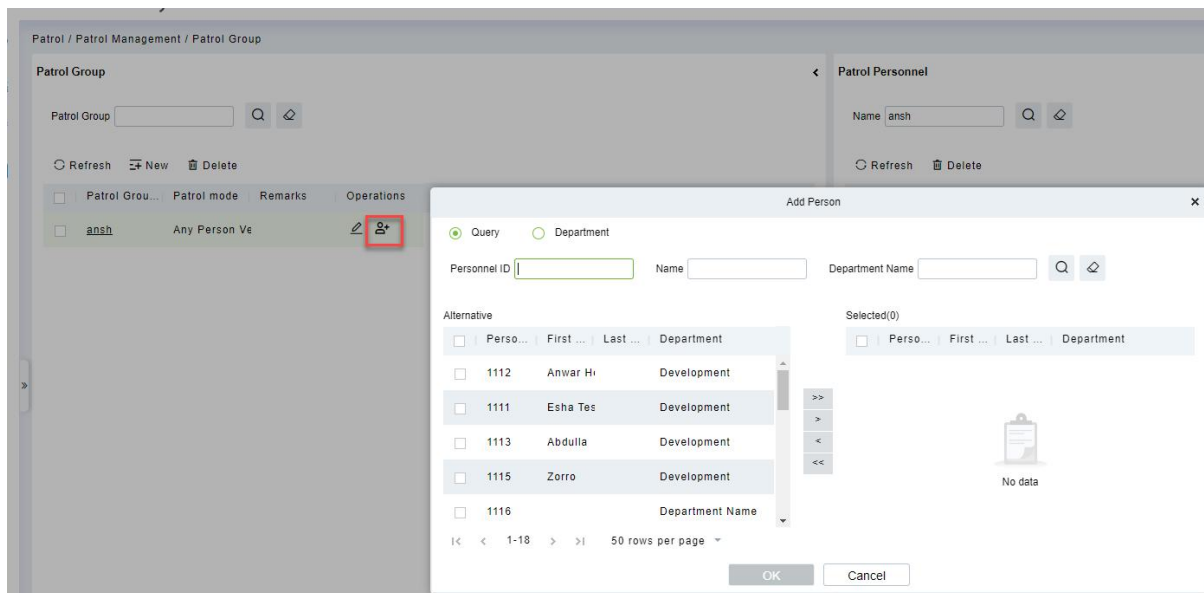
**Step 2:** In the pop-up **New** window, configure the patrol personnel group information, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 13- 7 Patrol Personnel Group**

**Step 3:** Click **OK**.

**Step 4:** Under the operation of the patrol group interface, click "**Add Personnel**".

**Step 5:** In the **Add Person** window that pops up, configure the person information, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 13- 8 Adding Patrol Team Personnel**

**Step 6:** Click **OK**.

**13.5.2.2 Delete**

Select personnel in the list on the right and click **Delete** above the list to delete the personnel from the patrol group.

| Parameters            | Instructions  |
|-----------------------|---|
| Patrol Group          | Click a patrol group from the list on the left. Personnel in the patrol group are displayed in the list on the right.   |
| Patrol Mode           | A patrol group cannot be edited or deleted when it is used by a patrol route.   |
| Remarks               | Custom Setting Notes Description.   |
| Operations            | The patrol operation, it is necessary to add patrol device in the <b>Access Control</b> module.   |
| Personnel ID          | Click <b>Add Personnel</b> under Operation in the list on the left. The page for adding personnel is displayed (or adding by department). Add personnel to the list on the right and click <b>OK</b> to finish the setting. |
| First Name/ Last Name | The maximum length cannot exceed 50, does not support comma; value sources Personnel field, cannot add, modify, delete.   |
| Department Name       | Select from the pull-down menu and click <b>OK</b> . If the department was not set previously, only one department named <b>Company Name</b> will appear.   |

**Table 13-6 Delete Personnel**

### 13.5.3 Set Up Patrol Routes (Route)

#### 13.5.3.1 Add Route (New)

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Patrol module, select "**Patrol Management > Patrol Route**" and click Add.

**Step 2:** In the pop-up **Add** window, configure the patrol route information as shown in Figure 12-9 and figure below, and describe the key parameters as shown in Table 12-7.

Figure 13- 9 The First Step of The Patrol Route

Figure 13- 10 The Second Step of The Patrol Route

| Parameters     | Instructions                        |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| Route Name     | <b>Customize the Route Name.</b>    |
| Plan Name      | <b>Customize the plan Name.</b>     |
| Patrol Subject | <b>Select the patrol personnel.</b> |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| Checkpoint Order | <b>In the patrol route, all checkpoints are 2 types of order and disorder routes.</b>          |
| Limited Time     | <b>Set up the desired Limited Time.</b>  |
| Deviation        | <b>Set up the required Deviation Time.</b>   |
| Route Status     | <b>Displays the route status.</b>  |
| Sort Type        | <b>Fill in the number of the superior department.</b>  |
| Operations       | <b>The patrol operation, it is necessary to add patrol route in the Access Control module.</b> |

Table 13-7 Second Step of Patrol Route

### 13.5.3.2 Delete

Select personnel in the list on the right and click **Delete** above the list to delete the personnel from the patrol route.

### 13.5.3.3 Enable/ Disable

Select device, click **Enable/Disable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click **Enable** to reconnect the device and restore device communication.

| Parameter       | How to set   |
|-----------------|--|
| Error           | Allowable error time setting for patrol. Assuming that the patrol plan is not 9:00-12:00, and the allowable error time is 5 minutes before and after, then the records in the period of 8:55-12:05 are valid records, and those beyond the above range are invalid records, which will not be counted. As long as the patrol is not within the above time range, it is invalid.  |
| Orderly Route   | When carrying out the patrol plan, there is no time limit between the patrol points, and the patrol personnel can complete the patrol work of each patrol point in sequence according to their own habits within the limited time of the route.  |
| Unordered Route | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complete disorder: There is no order in all patrol points of the patrol route, and the patrol personnel can complete the patrol work of each patrol point within the total time limit according to their own habits.</li> <li>• Disorder outside the first point: in the patrol route, other patrol points except the designated patrol starting point are disordered.</li> <li>• Disorder outside the tail point: in the patrol route, other patrol points except for the last patrol point of the designated patrol route are disordered.</li> <li>• Disorder outside the beginning and end points: In the patrol route, except for the first and last patrol points in the designated patrol route, other patrol points are out of order.</li> </ul> |

Table 13-8 Parameter Setting Description

## 13.6 Result Validation (Patrol Reports)

In the patrol report, you can query the "All Records", "Patrol Records Today's", "Patrol Route Statistics" and "Patrol Personnel Statistics" report. You can choose to export all or export records after querying.

This part introduces the configuration Steps of report query and export, taking the "all records" report operation as an example.

### 13.6.1 All Transactions

Click **Reports > All transactions** to view all transactions, that is, all event records generated by the patrol device.

You can export all transactions into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Patrol module, select **Report > All Records**.

**Step 2:** In the All Records interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the **Query** symbol to complete the query of all record tables, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 13- 11 All Records**

**Step 3:** In the full record interface, click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and Click **OK**, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 13- 12 Report Export Interface**

**Step 4:** After selecting the address where the corresponding file is stored, the export of the file can be completed.

| ZKTECO<br>All Transactions                   |                |              |            |           |             |               |            |             |                   |           |        |
|--|----------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------|--------|
| Time: 2017-09-15 00:00 - 2017-12-15 23:59:59 |                |              |            |           |             |               |            |             |                   |           |        |
| Time   | Device Name    | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Card Number | Device Module | Route Name | Checkpoint  | Verification Mode | Area Name | Remark |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:51                          | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:51                          | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:49                          | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:49                          | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:46                          | 192.168.218.60 | 7            | Jacky      | Xiang     | 6323994     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:46                          | 192.168.218.60 | 7            | Jacky      | Xiang     | 6323994     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:18                          | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |

**Figure 13- 13 Report Export File**

| Parameters        | Instructions   |
|-------------------|--|
| Time              | Set the start and end time in each time interval. Time period includes one week and three holiday-type time intervals.   |
| Personnel ID      | Displays the Personnel ID number.  |
| Device Name       | Manufacturer of the device.  |
| Name              | Select the desired name.   |
| Route Name        | Displays the Route name.   |
| Verification Mode | You can set verification mode as following options: Automatic Recognition, Fingerprint, PIN, Password, Card, Fingerprint/ Password, Fingerprint/Card, PIN+Fingerprint, Fingerprint+Password etc. |
| Card Number       | The max length is 10, and it should not be repeated.   |
| Checkpoint        | Displays the Type of checkpoint.   |
| Area Name         | Customize the Area name.   |

**Table 13-9 Report Export File**

### 13.6.2 Patrol Records Today

Click **Reports > Patrol Records Today** to view event records generated by the patrol device today.

You can export patrol records today into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure.

| ZKTECO               |                |              |            |           |             |               |            |             |                   |           |        |
|----------------------|----------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|------------|-------------|-------------------|-----------|--------|
| Patrol Records Today |                |              |            |           |             |               |            |             |                   |           |        |
| Time                 | Device Name    | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Card Number | Device Module | Route Name | Checkpoint  | Verification Mode | Area Name | Remark |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:51  | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:51  | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:49  | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:48  | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:46  | 192.168.218.60 | 7            | Jacky      | Xiang     | 6323994     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 13:53:46  | 192.168.218.60 | 7            | Jacky      | Xiang     | 6323994     | Access        | Route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:18  | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:17  | 192.168.218.60 | 8            | Glori      | Liu       | 6189166     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:15  | 192.168.218.60 | 7            | Jacky      | Xiang     | 6323994     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:14  | 192.168.218.60 | 7            | Jacky      | Xiang     | 6323994     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:10  | 192.168.218.60 | 5            | Neool      | Ye        | 13260079    | Access        | route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:10  | 192.168.218.60 | 5            | Neool      | Ye        | 13260079    | Access        | route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:09  | 192.168.218.60 | 2            | Lucky      | Tan       | 6155266     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:54:07  | 192.168.218.60 | 2            | Lucky      | Tan       | 6155266     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:53:48  | 192.168.218.60 | 2            | Lucky      | Tan       | 6155266     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:53:47  | 192.168.218.60 | 2            | Lucky      | Tan       | 6155266     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:53:44  | 192.168.218.60 | 2            | Lucky      | Tan       | 6155266     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint1 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |
| 2017-12-15 11:53:43  | 192.168.218.60 | 2            | Lucky      | Tan       | 6155266     | Access        | route1     | checkpoint2 | Only Card         | Area Name |        |

Created on: 2017-12-15 18:45:48  
 Created from ZKBioSecurity software. All rights reserved.

**Figure 13- 14 Patrol Records Today**

| Parameters        | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Personnel ID      | Displays the Personnel ID number.  |
| Card Number       | Displays the Card Number.  |
| Name              | Select the required Name.  |
| Device            | Manufacturer of the device.  |
| Verification Mode | Displays the Automatic Recognition, Fingerprint, PIN, Password, Card, Fingerprint/Password, Fingerprint/Card, PIN+Fingerprint, Fingerprint+Password etc. |
| Route Name        | Displays the Route name.   |
| Checkpoint        | Displays the Type of checkpoint.   |
| Area Name         | Customize the Area name.   |
| Time              | Set the start and end time in each time interval. Time period includes one week and three holiday type time intervals.                                   |
| Remarks           | Custom Setting Notes Description.  |

**Table 13-10 Patrol Record Today**

### 13.6.3 Patrol Route Statistics

Click **Reports > Patrol Route Statistics** to view all normal and abnormal situations collected during the patrol process.

You can export patrol route statistics into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure.

| ZKTECO<br>Patrol Route Statistics |           |                     |                       |                   |                     |                     |               |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|--|
| Route Name                        | Plan Name | Statistics time     | Supposed Patrol Times | Real patrol times | Missed patrol times | Wrong patrol number | Absence times | Patrol Subject   |
| route1                            | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             | Amber Lin,Necol Ye,Jacky Xiang, Glori Liu,Lilian Mei, Jerry Wang,Berry Cao,Lucky Tan, Sherry Yang,Leo Hou, |
| Route1                            | plan1     | 2017-12-15 16:00:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 1                   | 0             | Lucky Tan,Jerry Wang,Necol Ye, Leo Hou,Sherry Yang,Lilian Mei, Berry Cao,Amber Lin,Jacky Xiang, Glori Liu, |

**Figure 13- 15 Patrol Route Statistics**

| Parameters | Description                       |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| Route Name | Displays the required route name. |

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Plan Name             | Displays the type of plan name.  |
| Statistics time       | Displays the Time and date of patrol route statistics.   |
| Supposed Patrol Times | Number of times that the patrol personnel should normally patrol.  |
| Real Patrol Times     | Number of times that the patrol personnel patrol   |
| Wrong Patrol Times    | Number of times that the patrol personnel do not patrol based on the patrol route.                                 |
| Missed Patrol Times   | Number of times that the patrol personnel miss one or more checkpoints in the patrol route within the patrol time. |
| Absence Times         | Number of times that the patrol personnel do not patrol.   |

**Table 13-11 Patrol Route Statistics**

### 13.6.4 Patrol Personnel Statistics

Click **Reports > Patrol Personnel Statistics** to view patrol statistics of patrol personnel.

You can export patrol personnel statistics into an Excel file. See the following figure.

| Patrol Personnel Statistics |             |            |           |                     |                       |                   |                     |                     |               |
|-----------------------------|-------------|------------|-----------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| Personnel ID                | Person Name | Route Name | Plan Name | Statistics time     | Supposed Patrol Times | Real patrol times | Missed patrol times | Wrong patrol number | Absence times |
| 4                           | Berry Cao   | route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 3                           | Leo Hou     | route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 8                           | Glori Liu   | route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 2940                        | Sherry Yang | route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 6                           | Amber Lin   | route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 5                           | Necol Ye    | route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 7                           | Jacky Xiang | route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 13:30:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 6                           | Amber Lin   | Route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 16:00:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 4                           | Berry Cao   | Route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 16:00:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 1                           | Jerry Wang  | Route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 16:00:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 9                           | Lilian Mei  | Route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 16:00:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 0                   | 0             |
| 7                           | Jacky Xiang | Route1     | plan1     | 2017-12-15 16:00:00 | 2                     | 2                 | 0                   | 1                   | 0             |

**Figure 13- 16 Patrol Personnel Statistics**

| Parameters            | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Supposed Patrol Times | Number of times that the patrol personnel should normally patrol.                  |
| Real Patrol Times     | Number of times that the patrol personnel patrol                                   |
| Wrong Patrol Times    | Number of times that the patrol personnel do not patrol based on the patrol route. |

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Missed Patrol Times | Number of times that the patrol personnel miss one or more checkpoints in the patrol route within the patrol time. |
| Absence Times       | Number of times that the patrol personnel do not patrol.   |

**Table 13-12 Patrol Personnel Statistics**

ZKTECO

## 14 Entrance Control

### 14.1 Operation Scenario

This system connects the gate control board through channel Device (such as TDA integrated machine), and directly controls the relevant parameters of the gate through software, thus controlling the entry and exit of the gate and realizing the automatic management of the gate.

### 14.2 Operation Flow

Introduce the configuration process of channel service.

The channel business configuration process is shown in figure below.

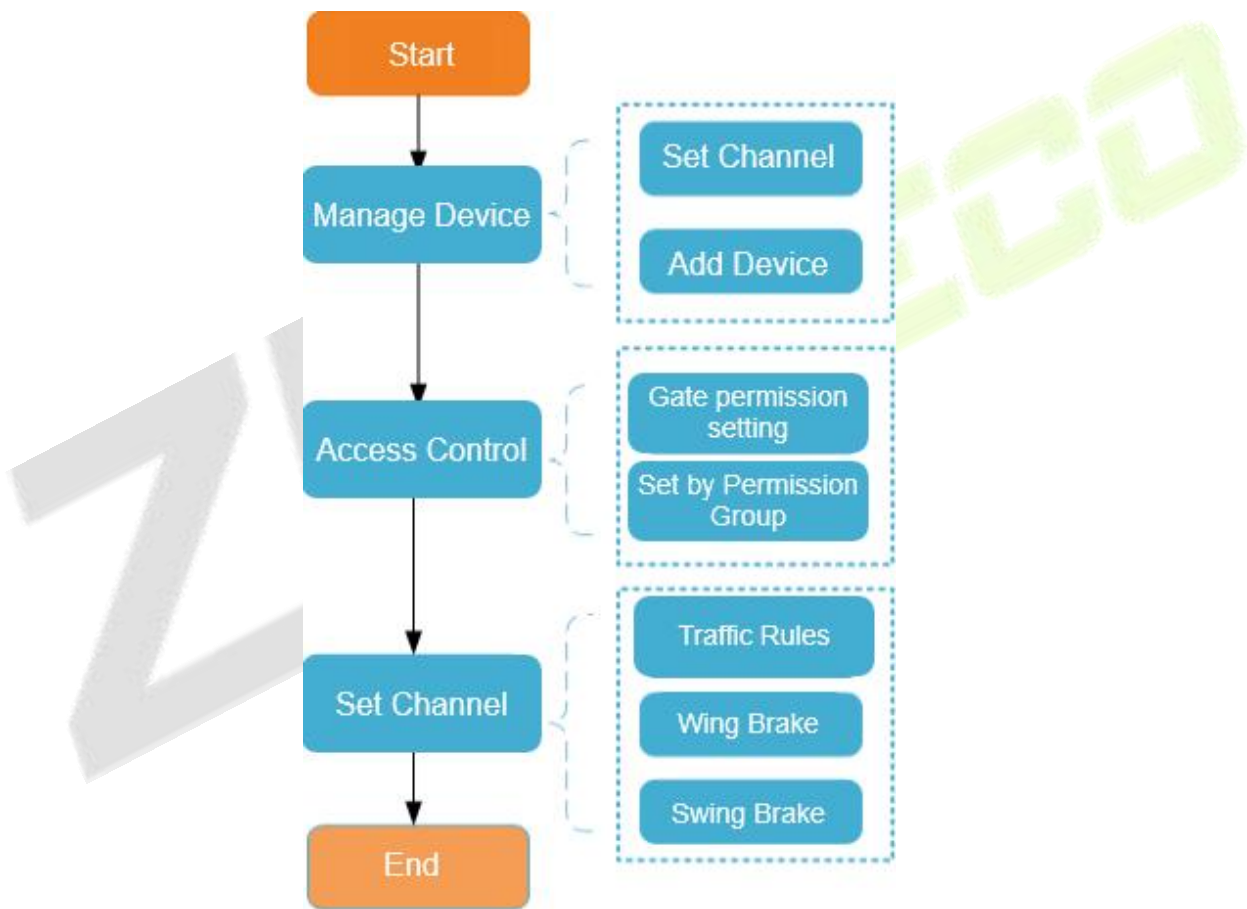


Figure 14- 1 Channel Configuration Flow

## 14.3 Channel Device

Add channel integrated machine Device, and the integrated machine communicates with the gate control board through RS485 to control the gate

### 14.3.1 Passage

Setting the area to which the channel belongs is convenient for users to manage the channel Device in a specific area. After setting the channel, the Device under the channel can be filtered according to the area during real-time monitoring.

This part introduces the Steps of creating and configuring channels in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 14.3.1.1 To Add Passage (New)

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Device > Passage**.

**Step 2:** In the channel interface, click **New** and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 13-1 for parameter description.

**Figure 14- 2 New Channel Interface**

| Parameter    | How to set   |
|--------------|--|
| Passage Name | Any character, a combination of up to 20 characters, cannot be repeated.   |
| Rank         | Only numbers are supported, up to six digits, and repeatable. The smaller the ranking, in real-time monitoring, the display will move forward. |
| Area Name    | Select the region to which the channel belongs.  |
| Remarks      | Any character with a maximum character length of 100.  |

**Table 14-1 Description of New Channel Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the channel setting.

### 14.3.1.2 Delete Passage

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Entrance Control module**, select **Channel Device > Passage** and select the template to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected template. Click **OK** to perform the delete operation

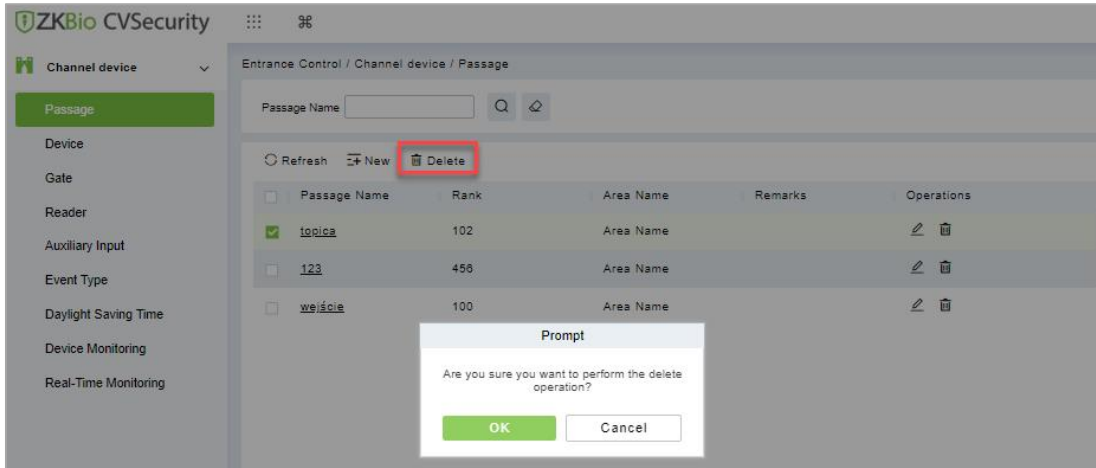


Figure 14- 3 To Delete Passage

### 14.3.2 Device

#### 14.3.2.1 Searching for Additional Channel Devices (Search)

Introduces the configuration Steps of searching for additional channel devices in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Precondition:

1. Set up IP allocation before adding channel devices.
2. Before searching and adding the device, it is necessary to set the address pointing to the server in advance and set the IP address and port of the current server, that is, the IP address and port installed by the current.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Device > Devices**.

**Step 2:** In the device interface, click "Search" to pop up the search box.

**Step 3:** Click **Search** in the search box to display the channel devices that can be added, as shown in figure below.

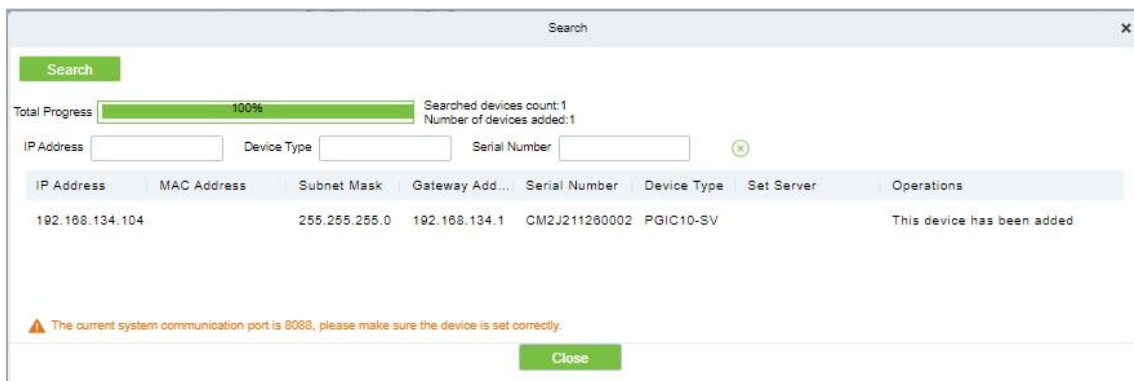


Figure 14- 4 Device Search Interface

**Step 4:** For the channel Device found, click the **Add** button in the operation bar to **Add** the device, and

fill in the parameters of device addition, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 13-2 for parameter description.



**Figure 14- 5 Device Addition Interface**

| Parameter                         | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Device Name                       | Any character, a combination of up to 20 characters, cannot be repeated.             |
| Channel                           | Select the channel to which the device belongs.                                      |
| Add to Permission Group           | Automatically adds the device to the selected permission group.                      |
| Delete Data in Device When Adding | When the device is added, the data in the device except the event record is deleted. |

**Table 14-2 Description of Device Addition Parameters**

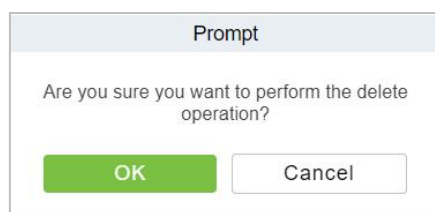
**Step 5:** Click **OK** to complete the addition of channel device.

### 14.3.2.2 Delete

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control, click **Channel Device > Device** and select device to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the device.



**Figure 14- 6 Delete Device**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

### 14.3.2.3 Control

In this option admin can upgrade firmware and LCD screen firmware. Also, this option helps to reboot the device, enable and disable the devices, and synchronize time and all data.

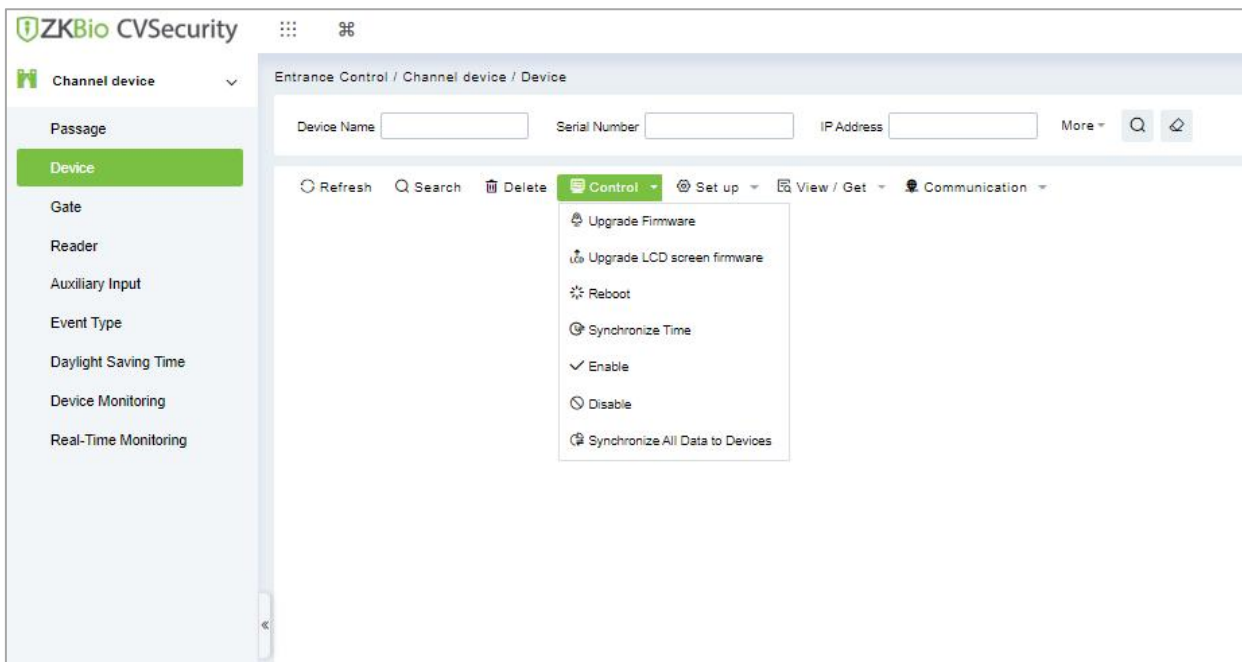


Figure 14- 7 Device Control Interface

### Upgrade Firmware

Select the device to be upgraded and click **Upgrade Firmware** to open the setting page. Click **Browse**, select the firmware upgrade file (file name is emfw.cfg). Click **Start** to start upgrading the firmware.

#### Notes:

Please be cautious while upgrading the firmware. If the firmware has not been updated properly, it may lead to device failure. If you have any queries, please contact the representative or pre-sales technical support team.

### Upgrade LCD Screen Firmware

Admin can upgrade LCD screen firmware of device using this option. Select the device to be upgraded and click **Upgrade LCD Screen Firmware** to open the settings page. Click **Browse** and select the firmware upgrade file. Click **Start** to start upgrading the firmware.

### Reboot the Device

Admin can send a restart command to the device to automatically restart. Select the device to be reboot and click **Reboot** to restart the device.

### Synchronize Time

When the device's time is not accurate, select the device to be synchronized and then click **Synchronize Time** to synchronize the server time to the device.

### Disable/Enable

Select the device and click **Disable/Enable** to stop/start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or there is a problem with the device, the device may be automatically displayed as disabled. After adjusting the network or device, click **Enable**. The system reconnects to the device, and the communication status of the device is restored.

### Synchronize All Data to Devices

This option synchronizes the data in the system to the device. Select the device, click **Synchronize All Data to Devices**, and click the **Synchronize** button to synchronize data:

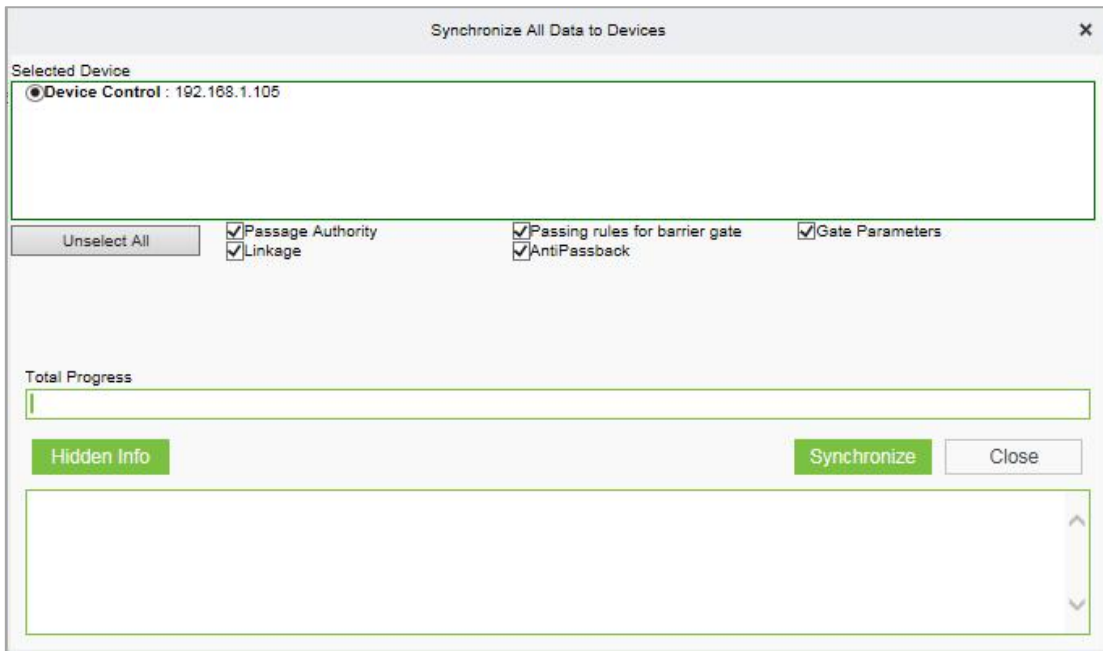


Figure 14- 8 Synchronize All Data to Devices Interface

**Notes:**

The operation of synchronizing all data will first delete the existing data in the device (excluding event records) and then download all the setting information again. When performing this operation, please try to ensure that the network is unblocked and avoid power failure. When the device is running normally, please use this operation with caution. It is recommended to synchronize the data when the device is unused.

**14.3.2.4 Set up**

In this interface help you to set the time zone, registration, daylight saving time, fingerprint identification information and LCD screen display of the selected device.

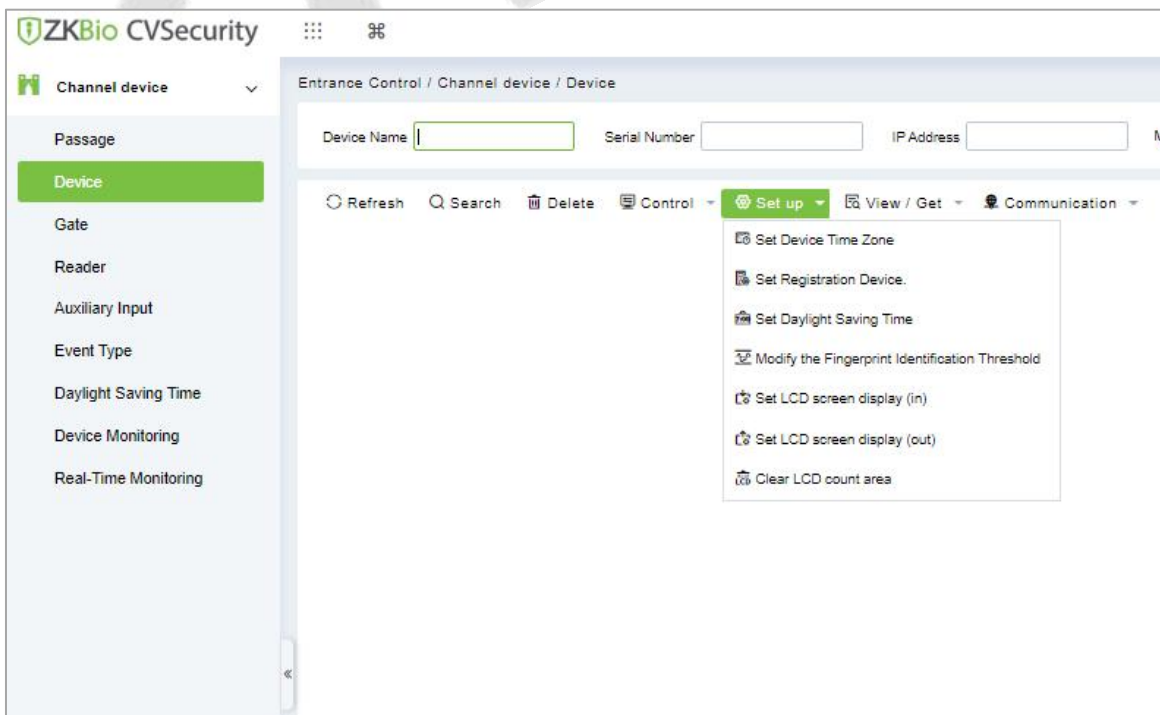


Figure 14- 9 Set up Options

### Set Device Time Zone

Set Device Time Zone allows you to set the accurate time zone, if device shows wrong time zone. For that in **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > Set-up**, select the device to be set up. Then click **Set Device Time Zone** to set up the selected device.

### Set Registration Device

The passage standalone device can only automatically upload the personnel and other data entered by the device when the registration device is set. For that in **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > Set-up**, select the device to be set up. Then click **Set Registration Device** to set up the selected device.

### Set Daylight Saving Time

DST, also called the Daylight-Saving Time, is a system to adjusting the official prescribe local time to save energy. To meet the DST requirement, a special function can be customized. You may adjust the clock one hour forward at XX (hour) XX (day) XX (month) and one hour backward at XX (hour) XX (day) XX (month) if necessary.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > Set-up** and select the device to be set Daylight Saving Time. Then click **Set Daylight Saving Time** to set up the selected device.

### Modify the Fingerprint Identification Threshold

The user can modify the fingerprint comparison threshold in the device, ranging from 35 to 70, and the factory default value is 55. When a new device is added, the system will read the value from the device, and the user can view the current fingerprint comparison threshold size through the device list (Please make sure the device supports the fingerprint function).

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > Set-up** and select the device to be modify the fingerprint identification. Then click **Modify the Fingerprint Identification Threshold** to set up the selected device.

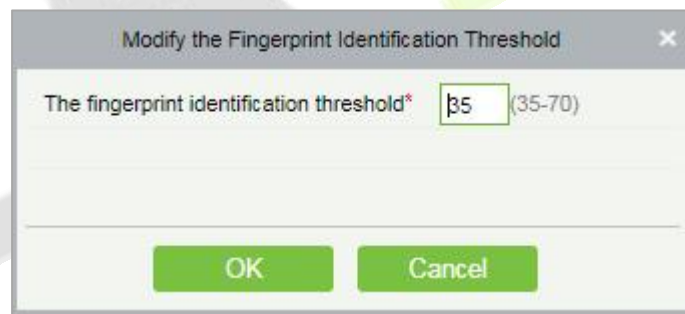


Figure 14- 10 Modify the finger Identification Option

### Set LCD Screen Display (In)/(Out)

Select the device and set the LCD screen display (in/out). The upper part is the video area 30%, the middle part is the gate channel display area 30%, and the lower part is the picture cycle 40%. Each area can be corresponding to the video and background, The image browsing and clearing operations are confirmed and sent to the LCD screen of the controller for display.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > Set-up** and select the device to be set LCD screen display. Then click **Set LCD Screen Display (In)/(Out)** to set up the selected device.

### Clear the LCD Counting Area

Select the device, clear the middle counting area of the LCD screen, and restart counting.

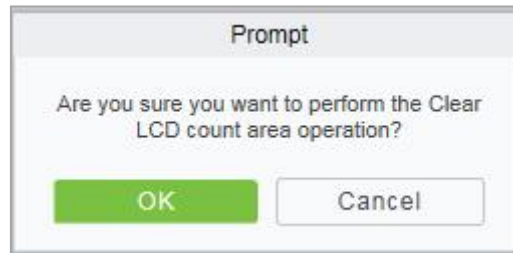


Figure 14- 11 Clear LCD Counting Area

In the Entrance Control interface, click **Channel Device > Device > Set-up** and select the device to clear the LCD counting area. Then click **Clear the LCD Counting Area** to clear counting area the selected device.

### 14.3.2.5 View/ Get

In this interface admin can view device options, personal information and transaction details

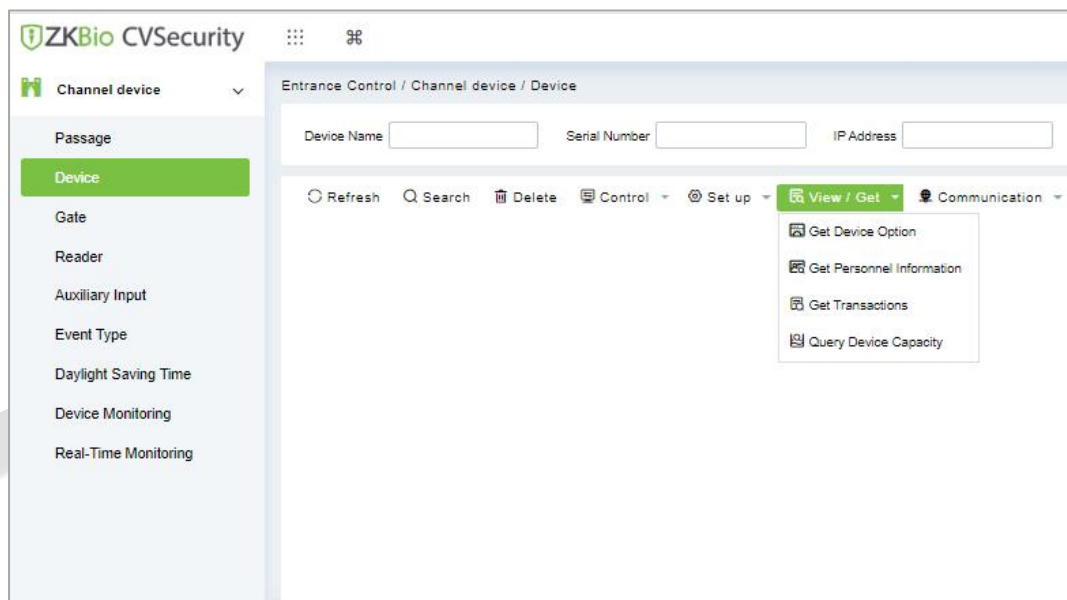


Figure 14- 12 View/Get Option

#### Get Device Option

This option allows you to view the common parameters of the device. For example, get the firmware version after the device is updated.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > View/Get** and select the device to view device options. Then select **Get Device Option** to view device options.

#### Get Personnel Information

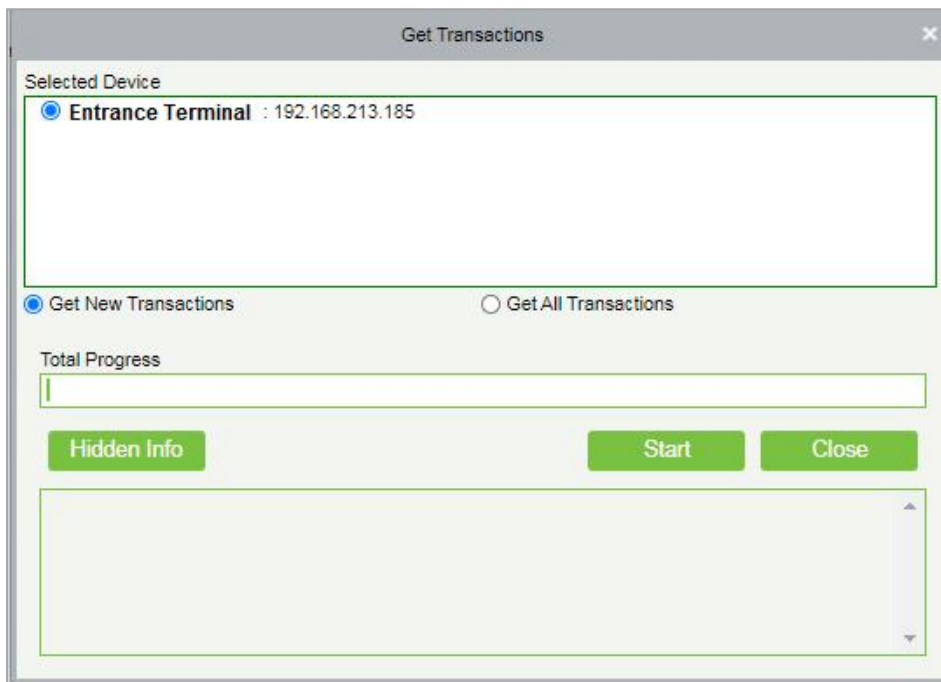
This function obtains the data of Persons, Fingerprints, and Palm prints in the device or obtains the corresponding number.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > View/Get** and select the device to view personnel information. Then select **Get Personnel Information** to view personnel information.

#### Get Transaction

This function obtains the event records in the device to the system, and the user can choose to obtain new records or all the records.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > View/Get** and select the device to get transaction. Then select **Get Transaction** to view transaction information.



**Figure 14- 13 Get Transactions**

When the network is in good condition and the communication between the system and the device is normal, the system will obtain the event record in the device in real-time and saves it in the database. When the communication is interrupted, the event record in the device is not uploaded to the system in real-time. At this time, the user can perform this operation to manually obtain the event records in the device.

**Query Device Capacity**

Here, the user can view the capacity information of the device in the software and manually obtain the usage information (person, fingerprint, finger vein, face, imprint) in the device. When the user finds that the information obtained from the software and the device is inconsistent, the user can manually synchronize the data.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > View/Get** and select the device to view the capacity information of the device. Then select **Query Device Capacity** to view the user can view the capacity information of the device in the software and manually obtain the usage information.

**14.3.2.6 Communication**

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Device > Communication** to modify IP address and communication password.



**Figure 14- 14 Communication Option**

**Modify IP Address**

Select a device and click **Modify IP address** to open the modification interface. It will obtain a real-time

network gateway and subnet mask from the device. (Failed to do so, you cannot modify the IP address). Then enter a new IP address, gateway, and subnet mask. Click **OK** to save and quit. This function is the similar as Modify IP Address Function in Device.

### Modify Communication Password

Select a device and click **Modify Communication Password** to open the modification interface The system will ask for the old communication password before modifying it. After verification, input the new password twice, and click **OK** to modify the communication password.

**Note:** Communication passwords shouldn't contain spaces; it is recommended to use a combination of numbers and letters. Communication password settings can improve the device's security. It is recommended to set communication passwords for each device.

### 14.3.3 Gate

In the Entrance Control module, select Channel Device > Gate.

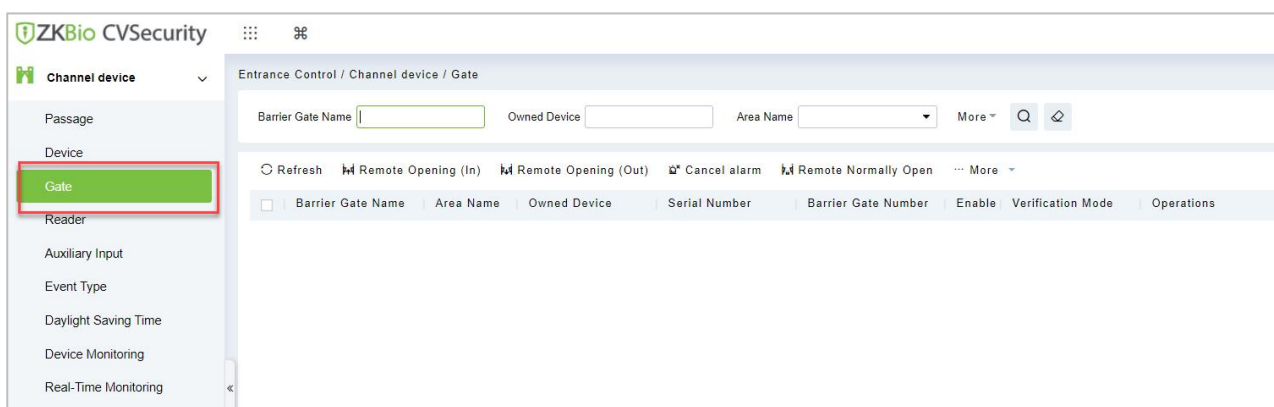


Figure 14- 15 Channel Device Gate

#### 14.3.3.1 Remote Gate Opening (in)/(out)

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Gate** interface allows the user to control one gate or all gates. To control a single gate right-click over it and click **Remote Opening (In/Out)** in the pop-up dialog box. To control all gates, directly click **Remote Opening (In/Out)** behind Current All.

#### 14.3.3.2 Cancel the Alarm

Once an alarm door is displayed on the interface, the alarm sound will be played. Alarm cancellation can be done for a single gate or all gates.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Gate** and select the alarm gate to be modified. Then click **Cancel the Alarm** to cancel the alarm.

**Note:** If **Cancel the Alarm** fails, check if any devices are disconnected. If found disconnected, check the network.

#### 14.3.3.3 Remote Normally Open

It will set the gate as normal open by remote.

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Gate** and select the gate to be set as normal open. Then click **Remote Normal Open** to set the gate as normal open by remote.

#### 14.3.3.4 More Options

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Gate >More** to activate the door lockdown

status (remote lock and unlock).

#### Remote Lock:

It will remotely set the door status to locked status. After this, the door wouldn't receive any operations, such as card reading and remote operations. This function is supported only by certain devices.

#### Remote Unlock:

It will unlock a locked door. This function is supported only by certain devices.

#### Enable / Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone

In remote opening, user can define the door opening duration (The default is 15s). You can select **Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** to enable the intraday door passage mode time zones, or set the door to Normal Open, then the door will not be limited to any time zones (open for 24 hours).

To close a door, select **Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** first, to avoid enabling other normal open time zones to open the door, and then select **Remote Closing**.

### 14.3.4 Reader

Each Entry device has a reader, user can view the reader information in this interface.

#### ● Operating Steps

Click **Entrance Control** > **Channel Device** > **Reader** to view the reader information such as reader name, barrier gate name, bound camera and it in/out details.

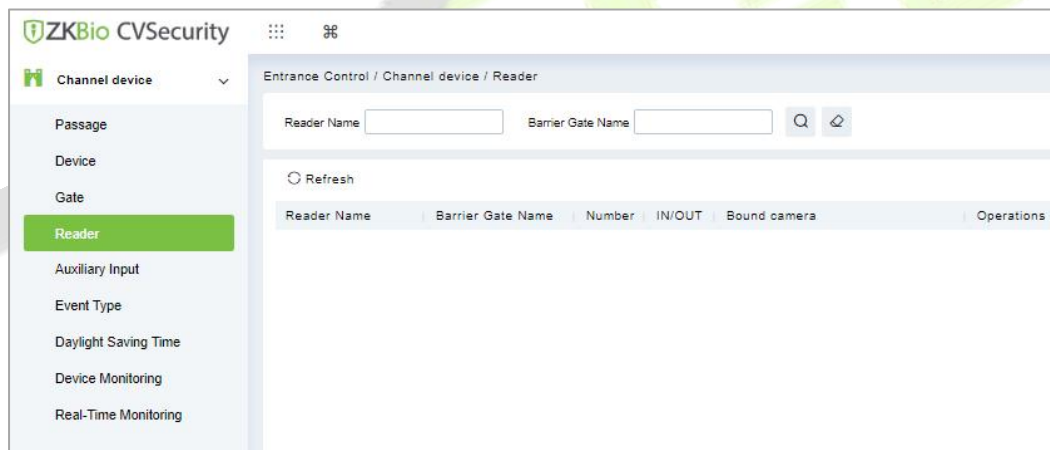
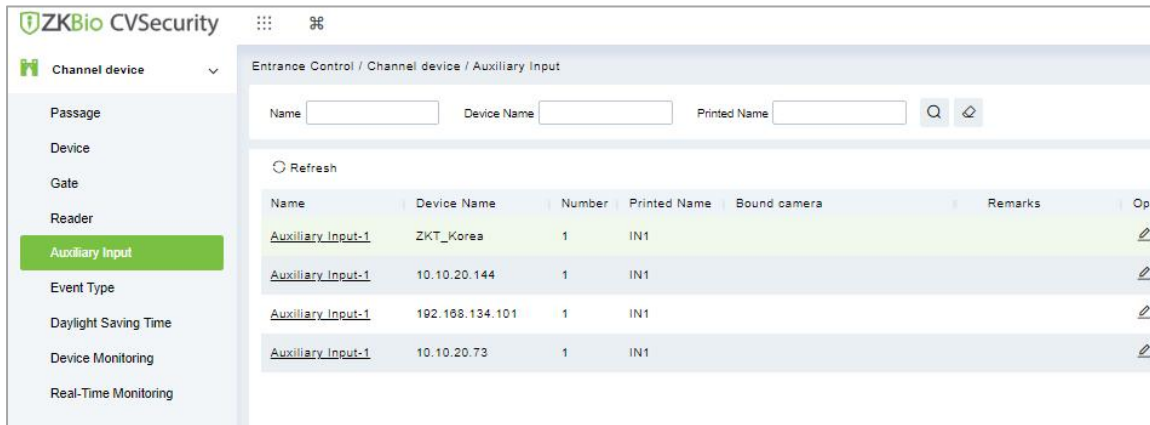


Figure 14- 16 Reader Interface

### 14.3.5 Auxiliary Input

It is mainly used to connect to the devices, such as the infrared sensors or smog sensors.

Click **Entrance Control > Channel Device > Auxiliary Input**, to access below shown interface.



**Figure 14- 17 Auxiliary input**

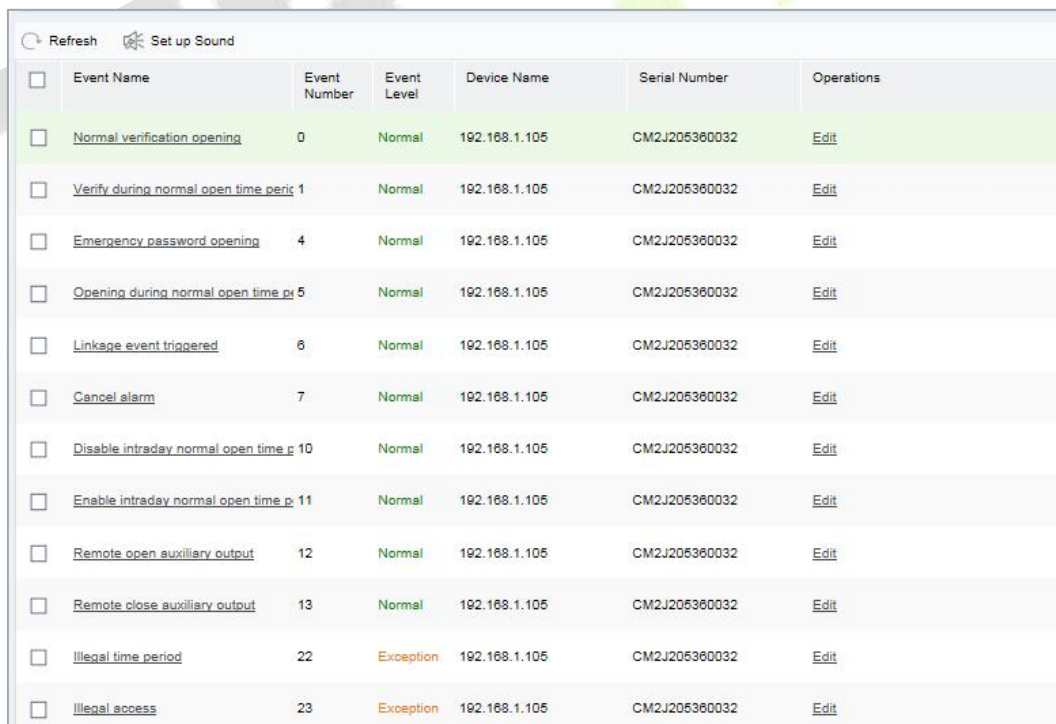
**Bind/Unbind Camera**

Through this option, the reader can be connected to the cameras, and the system will make a video linkage (pop-up videos, videos, or screenshots) once there is a corresponding event occurs. For this, the interaction setting in Linkage or in Global Linkage should be done before.

**Note:** An auxiliary input point can bind more than one channel.

**14.3.6 Event Type**

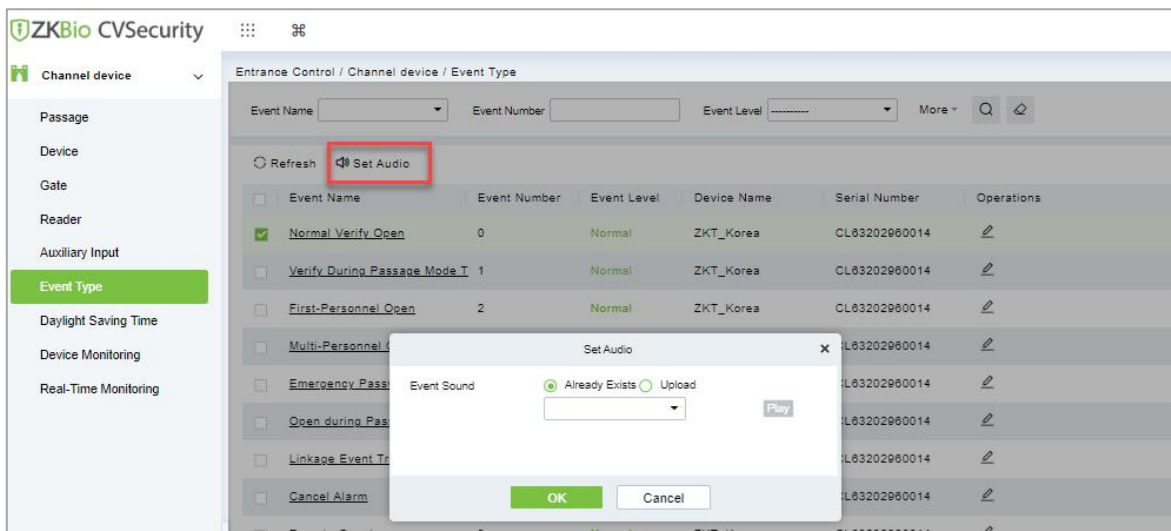
The Event Type is mainly used to display various event types included in the channel device. Click **Entrance Control > Channel Device > Event Type**, and the following interface appears



**Figure 14- 18 Event Type**

**Set the sound**

Here, the user can set the event sound. First, select the event to be set sound and then click **Set up Sound** on the page.



**Figure 14- 19 Set Sound Option**

The audio file can be uploaded locally. The file must be in wav or mp3 format, and the size cannot exceed 10MB.

### 14.3.7 Daylight Saving Time

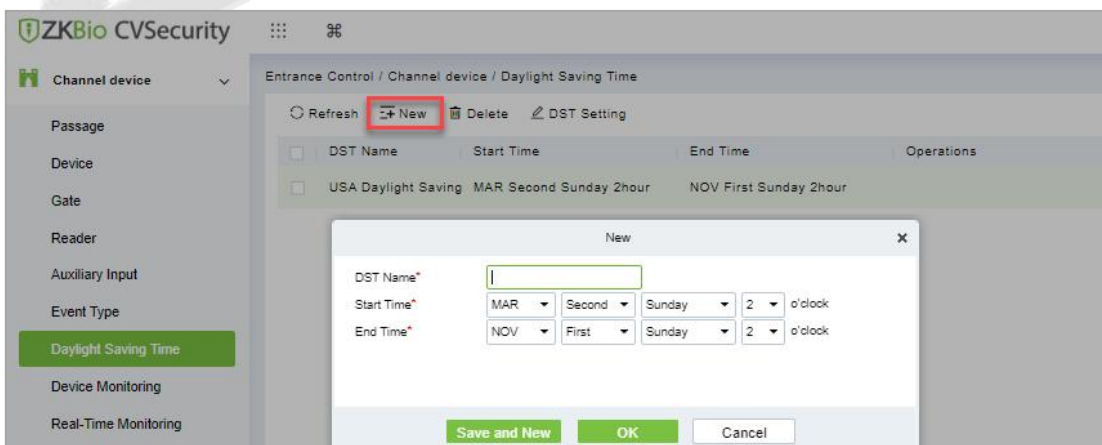
DST, also called the Daylight-Saving Time, is a system to adjusting the official prescribe local time to save energy. The unified time adopted during the implementation of known as the "DST". Usually, the clocks are adjusted forward one hour in the summer to make people sleep early and get up early. It can also help to save energy. In autumn, clocks are adjusted backwards. The regulations are different in different countries. At present, nearly 70 countries adopt DST.

To meet the DST requirement, a special function can be customized. You may adjust the clock one hour forward at XX (hour) XX (day) XX (month) and one hour backward at XX (hour) XX (day) XX (month) if necessary.

#### 14.3.7.1 Add DST (New)

● Operation Steps:

Step 1: Click Entrance Control > Channel Device > Daylight saving Time > New.



**Figure 14- 20 Daylight Saving Mode**

Set as "Month-Weeks-week hour: minute" format. The start time and end time is needed. For example, the start time can be set as "second Monday in March, 02:00". The system will be advanced one hour at the start time. The system will go back to the original time at the end time.

| Parameter          | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| DST Name           | Any character, a combination of up to 20 characters, cannot be repeated.   |
| Start and End Time | Enter the start and end time. Set as Month-Weeks-week hour: minute format. |

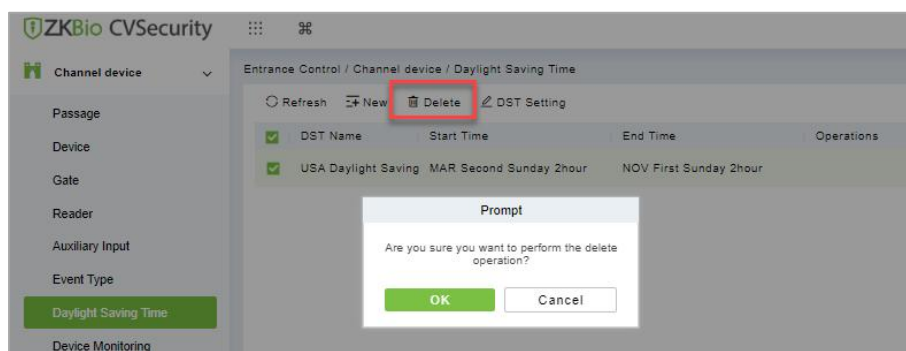
**Table 14-3 Description of New DST Parameters**

### 14.3.7.2 Delete

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Entrance Control > Channel Device > Daylight saving Time** and select DST information to be delete.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to delete the DST.



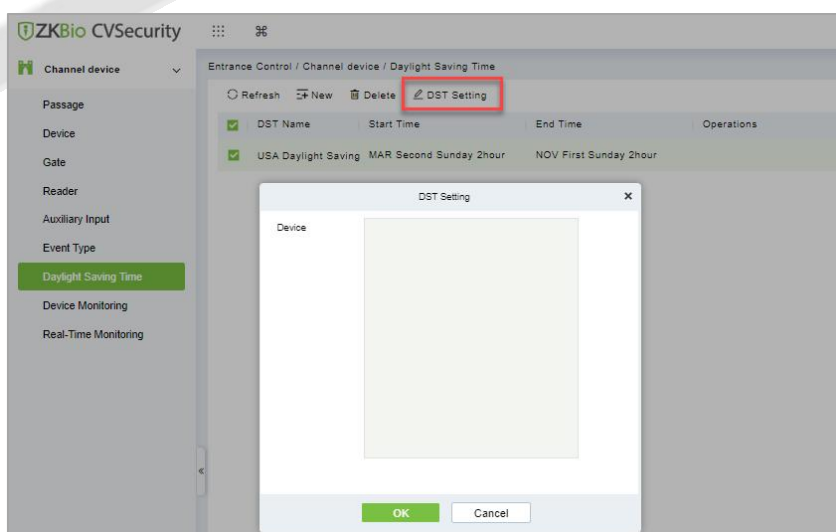
**Figure 14- 21 Daylight Saving Mode Delete**

### 14.3.7.3 DST Setting

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Entrance Control > Channel Device > Daylight Saving Time** and select DST information to be modify.

**Step 2:** Click **DST Setting** and select device from the appeared window.

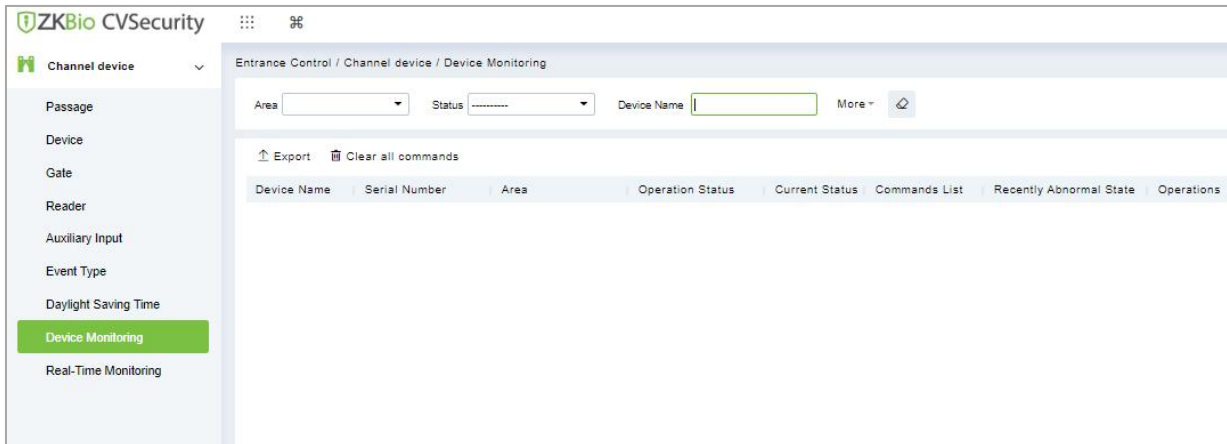


**Figure 14- 22 DST Setting**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to save the settings.

## 14.3.8 Device monitoring

By default, it monitors all devices within the current user’s level. You may click **Entrance Control > Channel Device > Device Monitoring** to view a list of operation information of devices: Device Name, Serial No., Area, Operation Status, Current status, Commands List, and Related Operation.

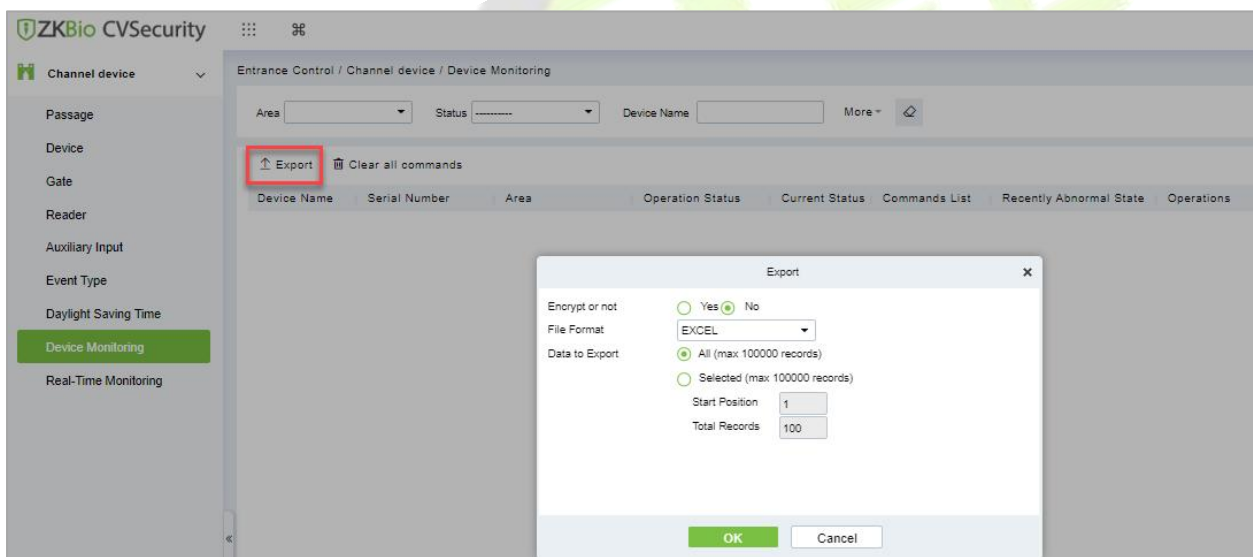


**Figure 14- 23 Device monitoring interface**

### 14.3.8.1 Export

Device commands can be exported in EXCEL, PDF, CSV file format.

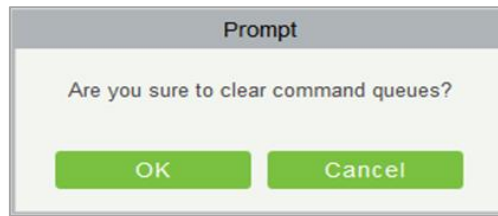
Click Entrance Control > Channel Device > Device Monitoring > Export to export the device commands.



**Figure 14- 24 Device monitoring Export Option**

### 14.3.8.2 Clear Command

This option allows the users to clear the unwanted command. Click **Entrance Control > Channel Device > Device Monitoring** and select the commands to be delete. Click **Clear Command** in operations column.



**Figure 14- 25 Device monitoring Clear command**

Click **OK** to clear selected commands.

### 14.3.9 Real-Time monitoring

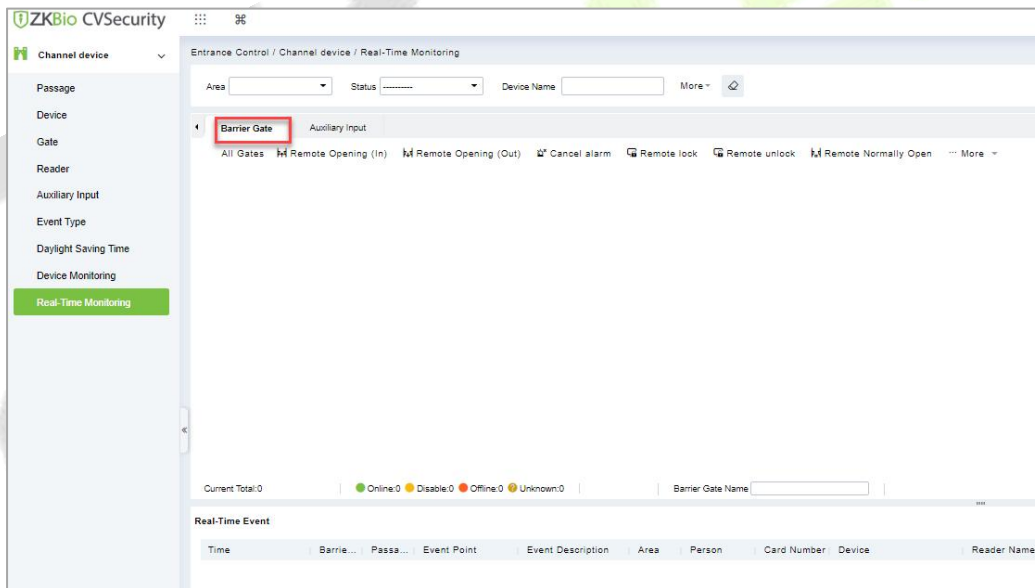
On the real-time management screen, the status of the added device is displayed, and the device can be opened or closed. At the same time, the dynamic of real-time events is monitored. If the gate opening can be verified and corresponding access control events can be generated, the access control management service configuration is complete.

#### 14.3.9.1 Remote Gate Opening (In)/(Out)

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Real Time Monitoring** interface allows the user to control one gate or all gates.

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Check whether the device is online. Check whether the icon status of the added device is online. Click **Barrier Gate** to check and modify the real-time status of the added devices



**Figure 14- 26 Barrier Gate Option in Real-Time Monitoring Interface**

**Step 2:** Remote opening in/out verification, taking remote opening in as an example. Select the online barrier gate device, click **Remote opening in**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**.

On the remote door opening screen, enter the time to open the door and tap **OK**. If Operation succeeded in is displayed, the remote door opening Operation is complete.

#### 14.3.9.2 Cancel the Alarm

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Real Time Monitoring** interface and select the alarm gate to be modified. Then click **Cancel the Alarm** to cancel the alarm.

**Note:** If **Cancel the Alarm** fails, check if any devices are disconnected. If found disconnected, check the

network.

### 14.3.9.3 Remote Lock

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click Channel Device > Real-Time Monitoring and select the barrier to modify the lock status Then click Remote Lock to activate the door lockdown status (remote lock and unlock).

It will remotely set the door status to locked status. After this, the door wouldn't receive any operations, such as card reading and remote operations. This function is supported only by certain devices.

### 14.3.9.4 Remote Unlock

In the **Entrance Control** interface, click **Channel Device > Real-Time Monitoring** and select the barrier to modify the lock status Then click **Remote Unlock** to activate the door lockdown status (remote lock and unlock).

It will unlock a locked door. This function is supported only by certain devices.

#### ● Auxiliary Input:

In this interface, the user can identify real-time connected sensor devices such as infrared sensors or smog sensors.

To view the list of real-time connected devices, click **Entrance Control > Channel Device > Real-Time Monitoring** and select **Auxiliary Inputs**.

## 14.4 Entrance Control

By setting the gate authority group and assigning it to the corresponding personnel, the gate authority of the personnel can be controlled. At the same time, it is also possible to set the response rules to the gate through Anti-Passback and linkage, to meet the requirements of different entry and exit scenarios.

### 14.4.1 Barrier Gate Permission Group

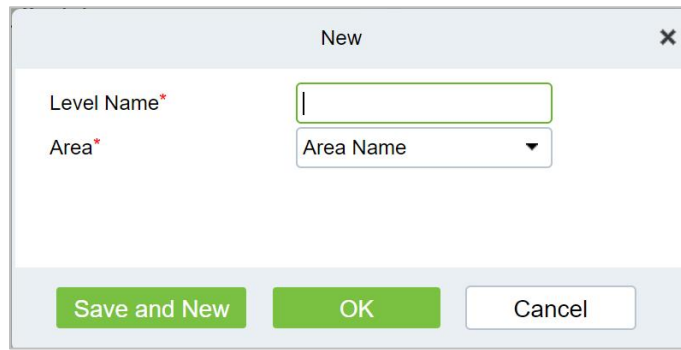
Gates added to the system should be set in the form of permission groups. Set the corresponding permission group, add gates to the permission group, and define the area where the permission group belongs.

#### 14.4.1.1 To Add Gate Permission (New)

##### ● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the **Entrance Control** module, select **Entrance Control > Barrier Gate Permission Group**. In the barrier gate permission group interface, click **New** in the left column of the mouse to pop up the gate permission group adding interface.

**Step 2:** In the **New** interface of gate permission group, set the corresponding content according to the new requirements, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 13-3 for parameter filling instructions.




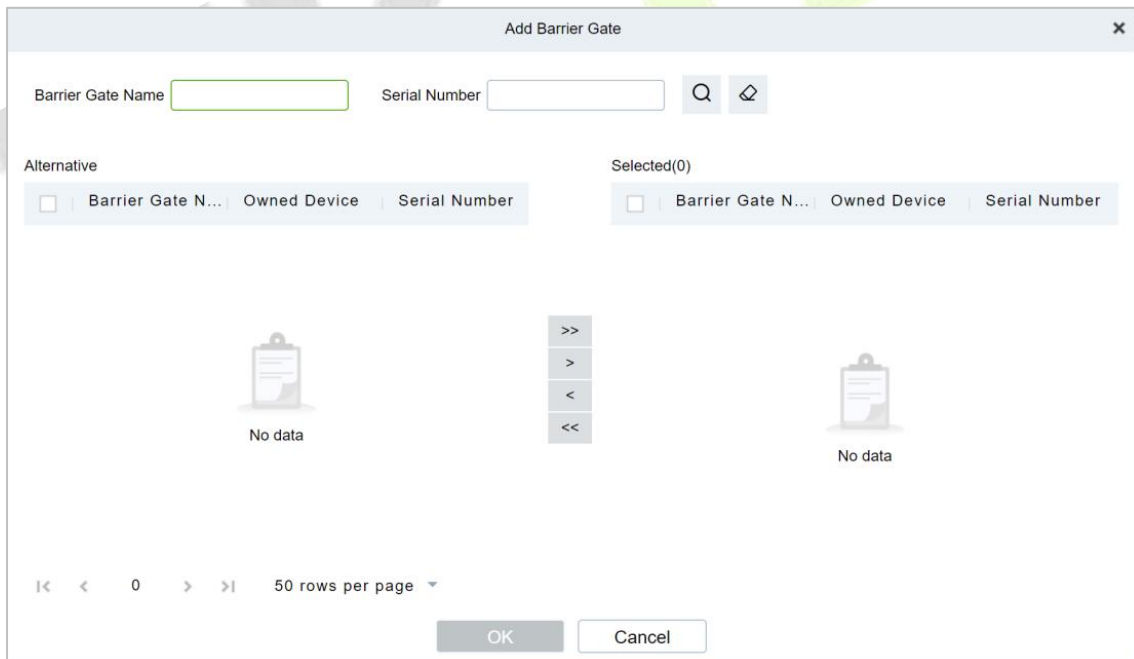
**Figure 14- 27 Add Gate Permission Group Interface**

| Parameter  | How to set  |
|------------|---|
| Level Name | Any character, consisting of up to 30 characters, cannot be repeated.   |
| area       | Permission groups belong to a zone to which users assigned permissions can manage permission groups under the zone. |

**Table 14-4 Description of Added Gate Permission Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the configuration of the access control authority group.

**Step 4:** In the gate permission group interface, click **Add Barrier Gate** icon  on the right side of the created gate permission group, and the interface of selecting Add Gate will pop up, and the corresponding gate will be added according to the requirements, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 14- 28 Adding Gate Interface**

**Step 5:** Click **OK** to complete the setting of gate permissions.

### 14.4.1.2 Delete

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Barrier Gate Permission Group** and select gate permission group to be delete.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to delete gate permission group.

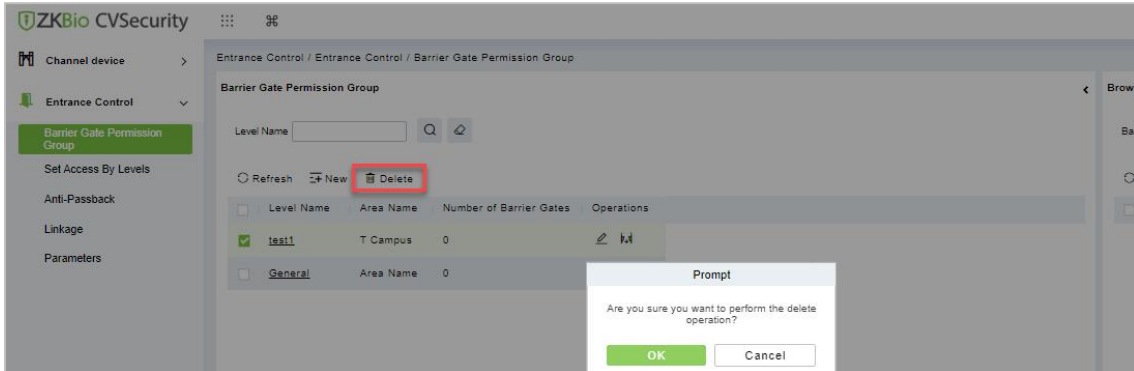


Figure 14- 29 Deleting Gate Interface

### 14.4.1.3 Delete Barrier Gate

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Barrier Gate Permission Group** and select barrier gate name to be delete.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to delete barrier gate from the group.

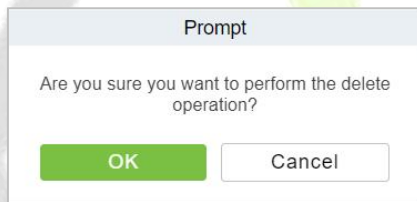


Figure 14- 30 Delete Barrier Gate

### 14.4.1.4 Export

You can export barrier gate details into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure below.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Barrier Gate Permission Group > Export** to export the barrier gate records to Excel sheet or PDF or CSV. Enter the User password in the prompt.

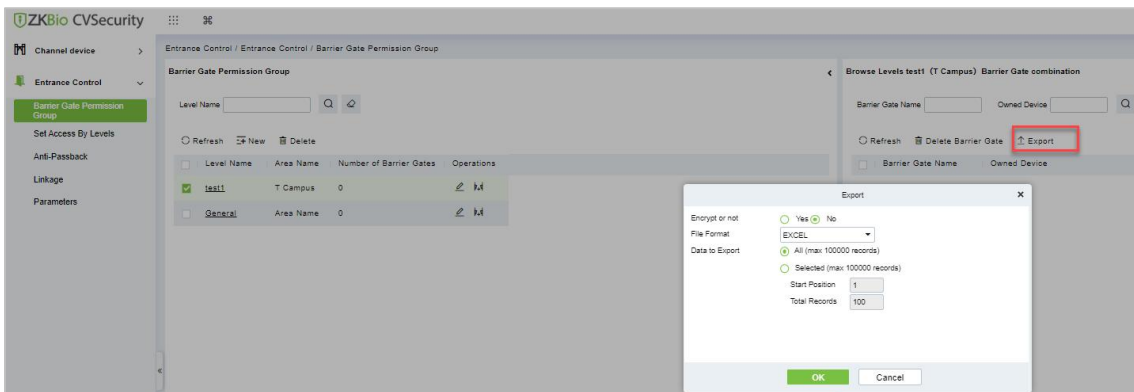


Figure 14- 31 Export Interface

**Step 2:** Select the file format and click **OK**.

### 14.4.2 Set Access by Levels


Assign the added gate permission group to the person.

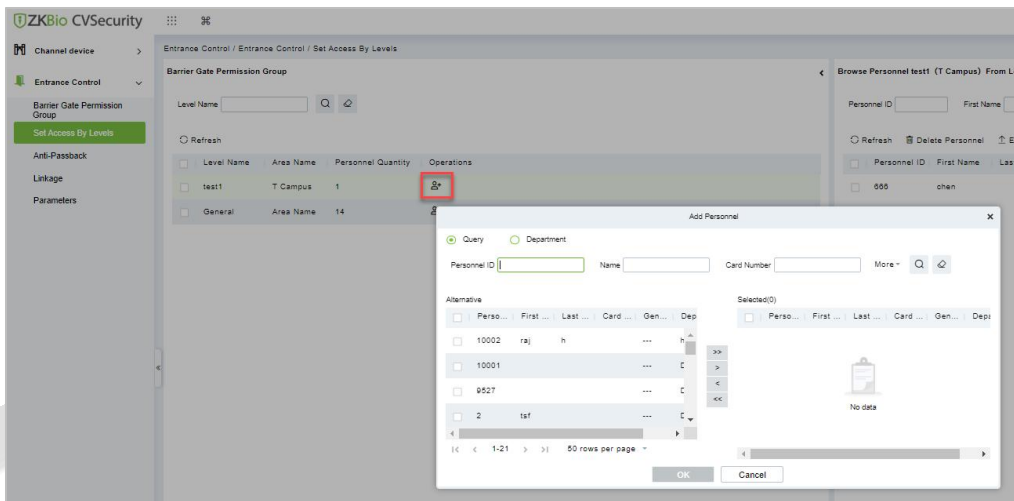
Introduces the operation Steps of allocating personnel authority according to authority group in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 14.4.2.1 Add Person

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, click **Entrance Control > Set Access By Levels**.

**Step 2:** Click **Add Person** icon  in the operation bar of the corresponding permission group to open the interface of adding person. Select the corresponding person as needed, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 14- 32 Add Person Option**

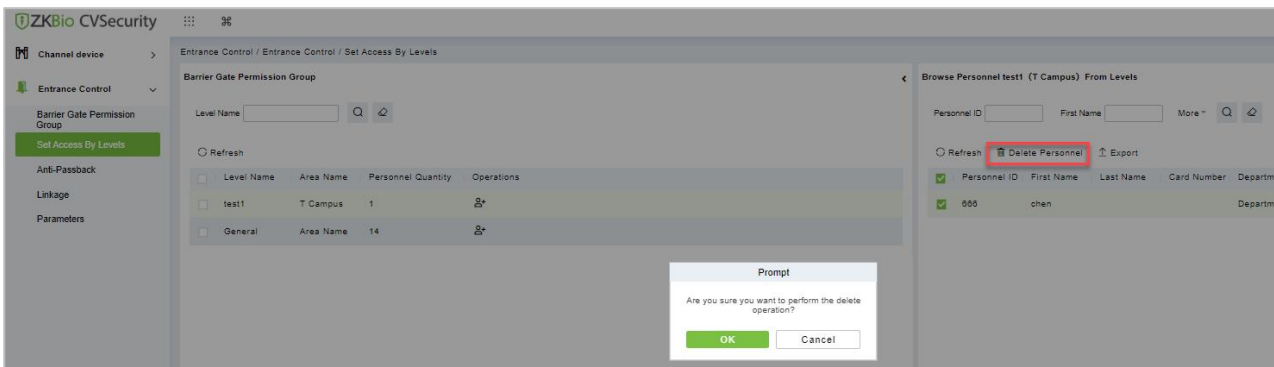
**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the assignment of personnel permissions.

#### 14.4.2.2 Delete Personnel

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Set Access By Levels** and select person to be delete.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete Personnel** and click **OK** to delete barrier gate from the group.



**Figure 14- 33 Delete Person**

### 14.4.2.3 Export

You can export barrier gate details into an Excel, PDF, or CSV file. See the following figure below.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Set Access by Levels > Export** to export the persons records to Excel sheet or PDF or CSV. Enter the User password in the prompt.

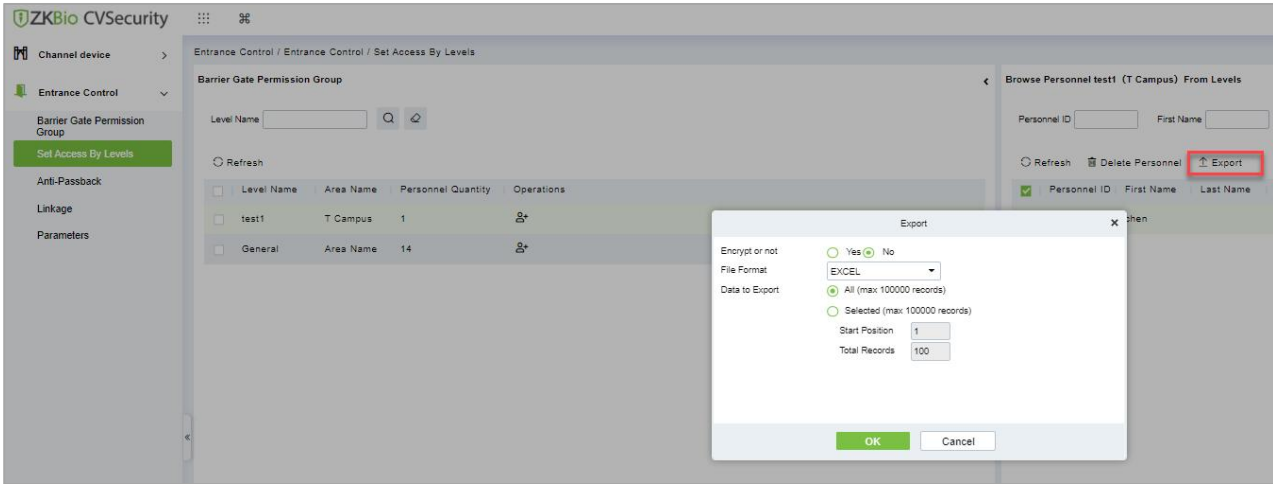


Figure 14- 34 Export Interface

**Step 2:** Select the file format and click **OK**.

### 14.4.3 Anti-Passback

At present, it supports Anti-Passback in and out. On some occasions, people who require card swiping verification must swipe their cards from another channel when they come in from one channel, and the card swiping records must be strictly corresponding to one entry and one exit. Users can use this function when they enable it in settings, which is generally used in special units, scientific research, bank vaults and other occasions.

#### 14.4.3.1 To Add Anti-Passback

This part introduces the configuration Steps of adding Anti-Passback effect in.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Entrance Control > Anti-Passback** and Click New.

**Step 2:** Select the specified device.

Description:

When adding Anti-Passback, you can't see the device that has been set up in Anti-Passback in the device list. After deleting the set Anti-Passback information, the device returns to the device list.

Anti-Passback settings of all-in-one machine: Anti-Passback, Anti-Passback and Anti-Passback.

**Step 3:** Select the Anti-Passback rule and click **OK** to complete the setting, as shown figure below. The newly added Anti-Passback settings are displayed in the list of selected Anti-Passback rules.

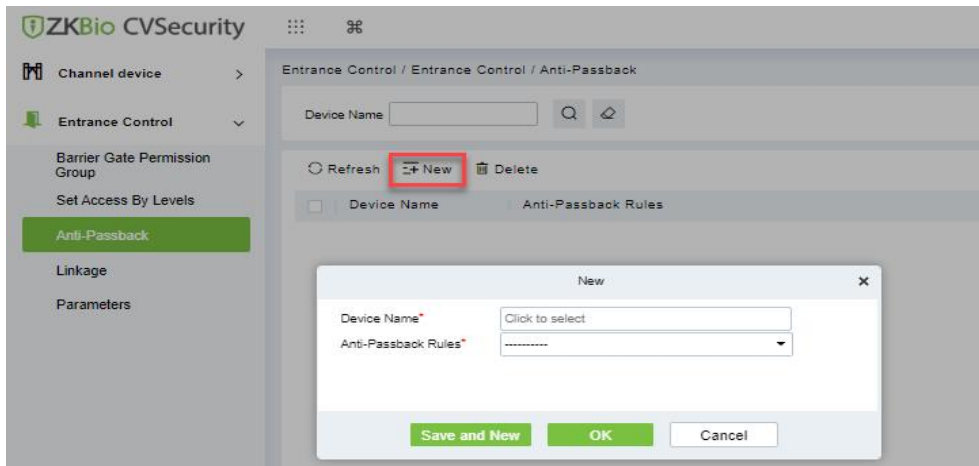


Figure 14- 35 Add Anti-Passback Interface

### 14.4.3.2 Delete

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Anti-Passback** and select device name to be delete.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to delete Anti-passback from the group.

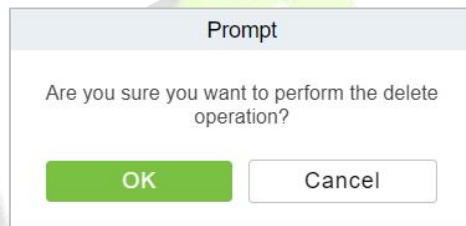


Figure 14- 36 Delete Anti-Passback

### 14.4.4 Linkage Setting

After a specific event is triggered at a certain input point in the channel system, a linkage action will be generated at the specified output point to control the events such as verification opening, alarm and anomaly in the system, which will be displayed in the corresponding event list monitored.

● Precondition:

Before linking new configurations, you need to do the following:

1. Gate device, input point, output point, reader binding camera add settings.
2. Mailbox parameter configuration.

### 14.4.4.1 Add Linkage

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Entrance Control > Linkage**.

**Step 2:** In the linkage setting interface, select and click the **New** button to fill in the corresponding parameters, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 13-4 for linkage parameters.

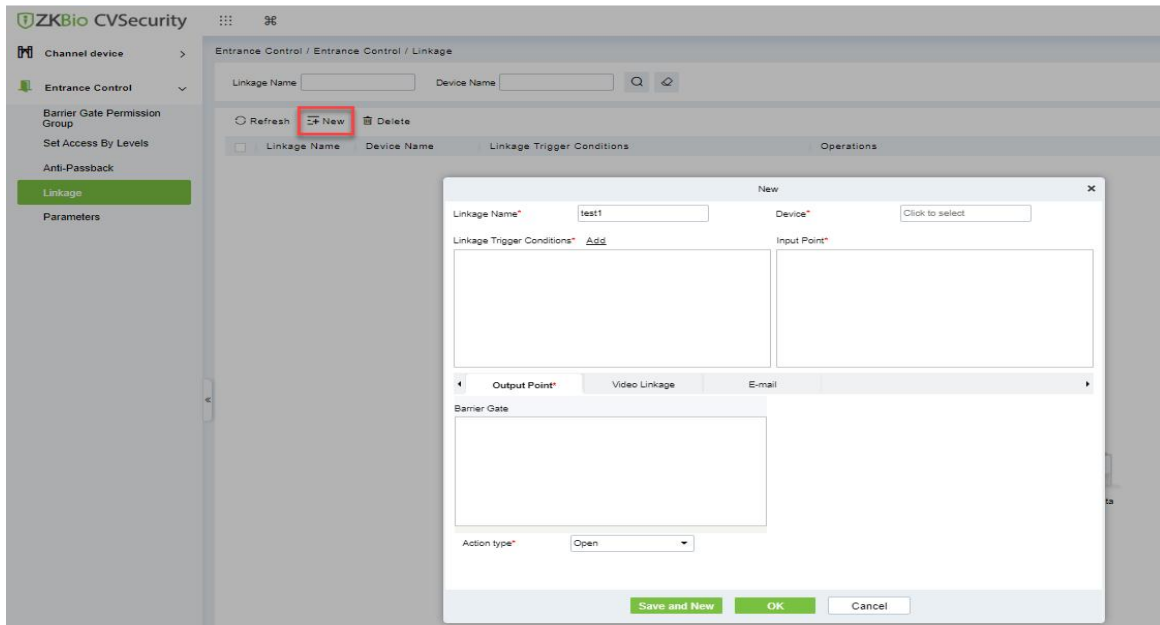


Figure 14- 37 New Linkage Interface

| Parameter                  | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Linkage Name               | Custom setting linkage name for easy reference.  |
| Device                     | Customize and select the added access control device.  |
| Linkage Trigger Conditions | Select the condition under which the linkage operation is triggered, that is, the type of event generated by the selected device.  |
| Input Point                | Select the input point to set the device input.  |
| Output Point               | Select the output point to set the output of the device.   |
| Action Type                | Choose to set up linkage action, including device operation of output point, video linkage and mail. Refer to Table 13-5 for configuration description of the three modes. |

Table 14-5 Description of New Linkage Parameters

| Parameter     | Description   |
|---------------|---|
| Output Point  | Set the action type of output point: closed, open and normally open.<br>Sets the delay time if the output point action is on. |
| Video Linkage | Pop-up video, display duration: check the pop-up video in the real-time monitoring  |

| Parameter | Description   |
|-----------|---|
|           | interface and set the pop-up duration.<br>Video recording and video recording duration: Check to record and set the video recording duration. Capture: Set whether the linkage action takes pictures: If you take pictures, you also need to set whether it pops up in the real-time monitoring interface and the display time. |
| E-mail    | Set the email address of the received linkage content when the linkage event occurs.  |

**Table 14-6 Explanation of Output Action Parameters**

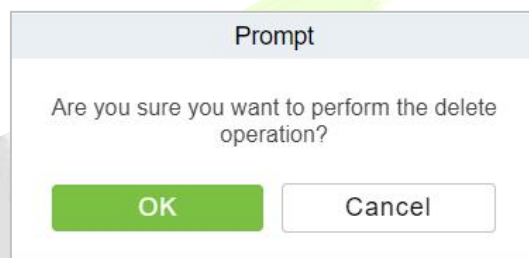
**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the linkage configuration.

#### 14.4.4.2 Delete

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Linkage** and select the linkage name to be delete.

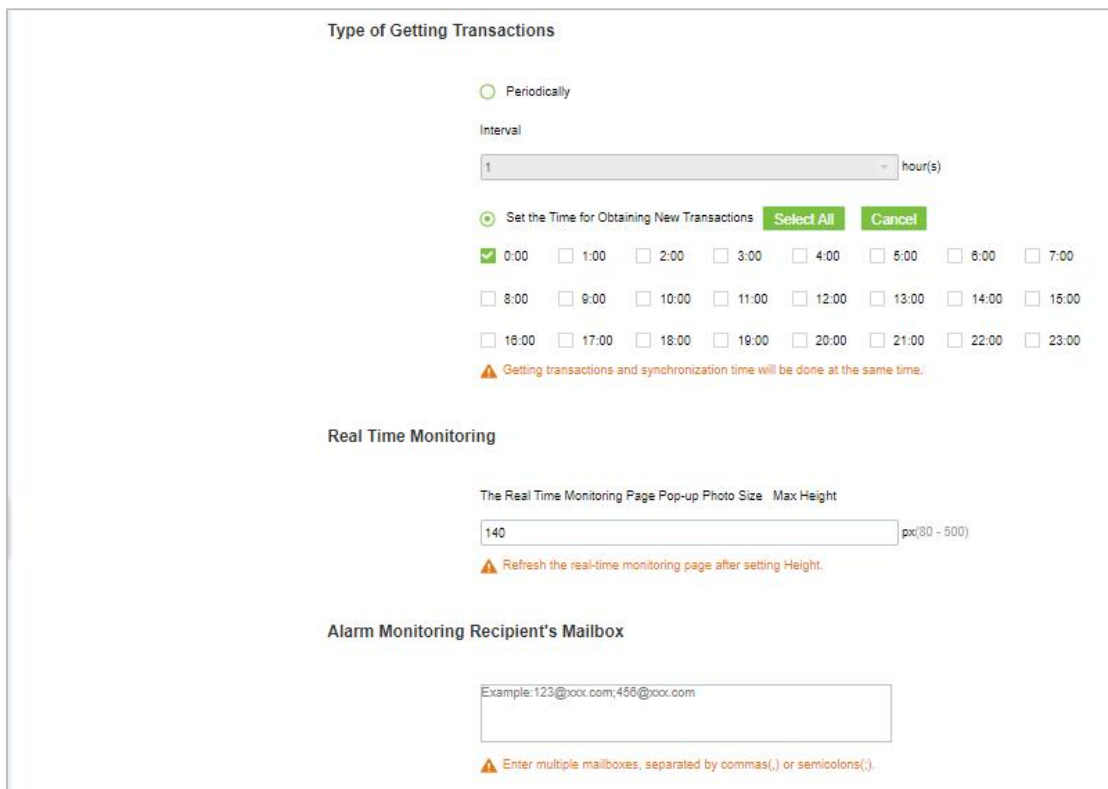
**Step 2:** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to delete linkage.



**Figure 14- 38 Delete Linkage**

#### 14.4.5 Parameters

Click **Entrance Control > Entrance Control > Parameter** to enter the parameter setting interface.



**Figure 14- 39 Add Parameters**

● **Type of Getting Transactions:**

Periodically

Start from the setting and efficient time, the system attempts to download new transactions every time interval.

Set the Time for Obtaining New Transactions

The selected Time is up, the system will attempt to download new transactions automatically.

**The Real Time Monitoring Page Pop-up Staff Photo Size:** When an access control event occurs, the personnel photo will pop up. The size of pop photos shall be between 80 to 500 pixels.

**Alarm Monitoring Recipient Mailbox:** The system will send email to alarm monitoring recipient's mailbox if there is any event.

## 14.5 Passage Settings

By maintaining the gate traffic rules (control time period and traffic mode) and setting the gate parameters corresponding to the gate, the gate function can be directly controlled by software.

### 14.5.1 Barrier Gate Passing Rules

Set the passage time and passage mode of the gate, so that the gate can set different entry and exit passage modes in different time periods. It can be applied to flap Barrier and swing Barrier.

#### 14.5.1.1 Add Barrier Gate Passing Rules

This part introduces the configuration Steps of gate traffic rules in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● **Operating Steps:**

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Passage Settings > Barrier Gate Passing Rules**.

**Step 2:** Click **New** with the mouse, and the interface for adding gate traffic rules will pop up.

**Step 3:** In the new interface, set the corresponding contents according to the new requirements, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 13-6 for parameter setting instructions.

**Figure 14- 40 Interface of Adding Gate Traffic Rules**

| Parameter                              | Description   |
|--|---|
| Name of Gate Traffic Rules             | Any character, up to 30 characters.   |
| Remarks                                | The explanation of the current time period and the main application occasions shall consist of 5 0 characters at most.  |
| Time Interval                          | A gate passage rule contains up to five-time intervals in a week.   |
| Time Interval-Start/End Time           | Set the start and end time in each time interval.   |
| Pass Mode                              | Set the traffic mode in each time interval and select it from drop-down.<br>There are 10 traffic modes by default:<br>"Two-way controlled", "free entry and exit controlled", "controlled entry and exit free", "two-way freedom", "forbidden entry and exit controlled", "forbidden entry and exit free entry", "free entry and exit forbidden entry", "two-way prohibition", "remote normal opening". |
| Copy Monday Time to Other Working Days | You can quickly copy Monday settings to other workdays.   |

**Table 14-7 Parameter Description of Gate Traffic Rules**

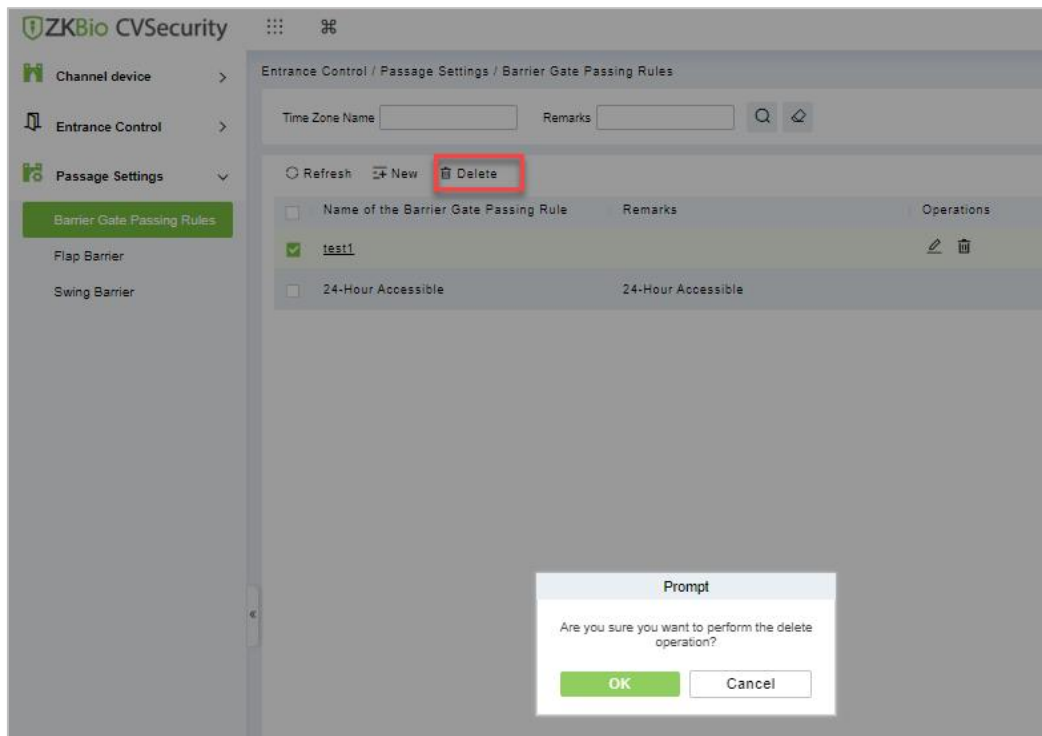
**Step 4:** Click **OK** to complete the addition of the gate traffic rules.

**14.5.1.2 Delete Passage**

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Passage Settings > Barrier Gate Passing Rules**, and select the rule to be deleted.

**Step 2:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected rule.



**Figure 14- 41 To Delete Barrier Gate Passage Rule**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to perform the delete operation.

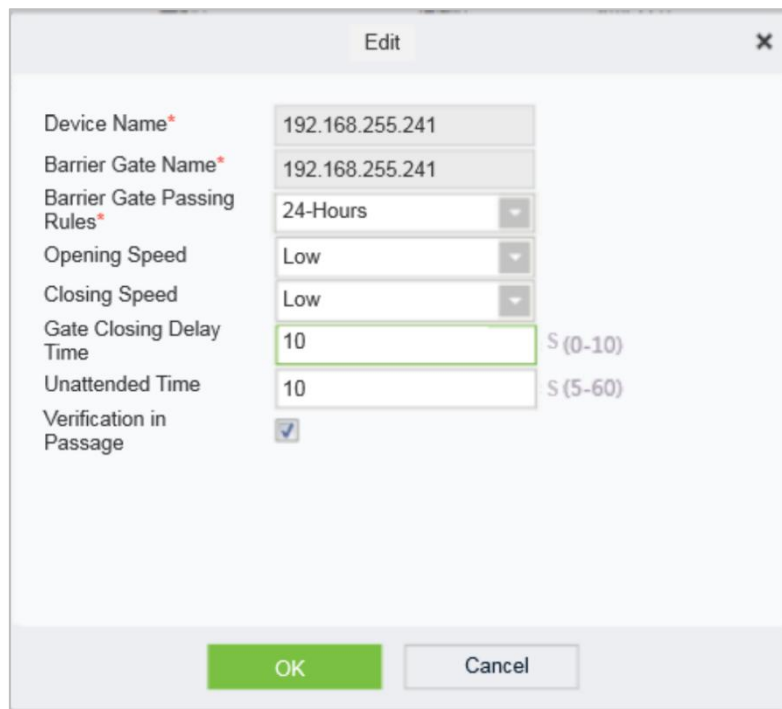
## 14.5.2 Flap Barrier

Introduces the parameter configuration Steps of wing Barrier in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Passage Settings > Flap Barrier**.

**Step 2:** In the flap Barrier interface, click the **Edit** button under the name or operation of the flap Barrier to enter the flap Barrier parameter editing interface, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 13-7 for parameter description.



**Figure 14- 42 Flap Barrier Parameter Configuration Interface**

| Parameter                       | How to set   |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Device Name                     | Name of flap Barrier device, non-editable.   |
| Barrier Gate Name               | Custom Setting Notes Description.  |
| Barrier Gate Traffic Rules      | Drop-down selection, the option is taken from the data of Passage Setting > Barrier Gate Passing Rules.  |
| Opening Speed/<br>Closing Speed | Low speed, medium speed and high speed, set the speed of opening and closing the gate.   |
| Gate Closing Delay Time         | After passing through the last pair of infrared channels, set the delay closing time. You can set 0 to 10s, and the default is 0s.   |
| Unattended Time                 | The maximum waiting time after verification is 5 to 60s, and the default value is 10s. If no pedestrians pass beyond the set time, the gate will be closed.  |
| Verification in Passage         | No authentication in the channel is allowed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When checked the verification in the channel can open the gate;</li> <li>• If it is not checked, the gate cannot be opened for verification in the channel, and the gate can be verified only after exiting the gate.</li> </ul> |

**Table 14-8 Explanation of Flap Barrier Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the configuration of flap Barrier parameters.

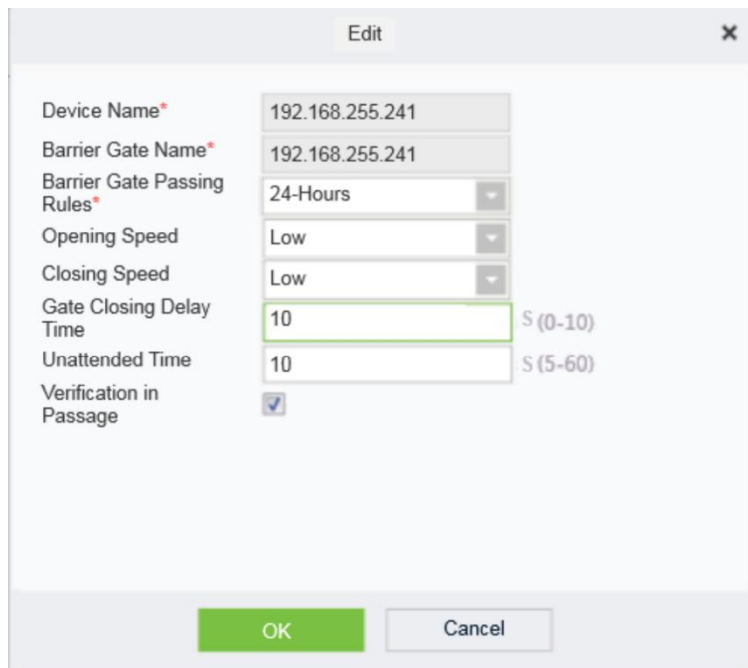
### 14.5.3 Swing Barrier

This part introduces the parameter configuration Steps of swing Barrier in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Passage Settings > Swing Barrier**.

**Step 2:** In the swinging interface, click the **Edit** button under the swinging name or operation to enter the swinging parameter editing interface, as shown in figure below. Please refer to Table 13-8 for parameter description.



**Figure 14- 43 Swing Barrier Parameter Configuration Interface**

| Parameter                       | How to set  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Device Name                     | The name of the swing Barrier device cannot be edited.  |
| Barrier Gate Name               | The gate name corresponding to the swing gate device is generally one all-in-one device corresponding to one gate, which cannot be edited.  |
| Barrier Gate Traffic Rules      | Drop-down selection, the option is taken from the data of Passage Setting > Barrier Gate Passing Rules.   |
| Opening Speed/<br>Closing Speed | Low speed, medium speed and high speed, set the speed of opening and closing the gate.  |
| Gate Closing Delay Time         | After passing through the last pair of infrared channels, set the delay closing time. You can set 0 to 10s, and the default is 0s.  |
| Unattended Time                 | The maximum waiting time after verification is 5 to 60s, and the default value is 10s. If no pedestrians pass beyond the set time, the gate will be closed.   |
| Verification in Passage         | Whether authentication in the channel is allowed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When checked the verification in the channel can open the gate;</li> <li>• If it is not checked, the gate cannot be opened for verification in the channel, and the gate can be verified only after exiting the gate.</li> </ul> |

**Table 14-9 Description of Swing Barrier Parameters**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to complete the configuration of wing Barrier parameters.

## 14.6 Channel Reports

In the Channel report, you can query the All Transactions, Today's Access Records, Person's Last Access Location, and All Exception Events. You can choose to export all or export records after querying.

### 14.6.1 All Transactions

This part introduces the configuration Steps of report query and export in, taking All Transaction report operation.

#### 14.6.1.1 Export

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Reports> All Transactions**.

**Step 2:** In the All Records interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the **Query** symbol to complete the query of all record tables, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 14- 44 All Transactions**

**Step 3:** In the full record interface, click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and Click **OK**, as shown in figure below.

**Figure 14- 45 Report Export Interface**

**Step 4:** After selecting the address where the corresponding file is stored, the export of the file can be completed.

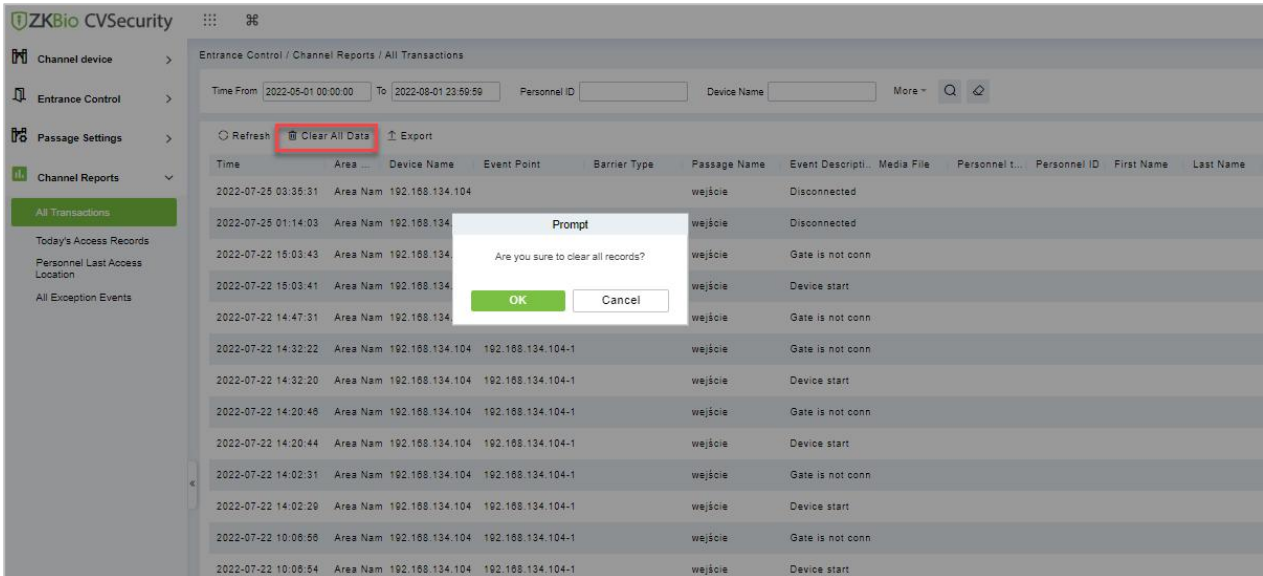
### 14.6.1.2 Clear All Data

This option allows user to clear all data available in all transaction interface.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Reports > All Transactions**.

**Step 2:** Click the **Clear All Data** to clear all transactions.



**Figure 14- 46 Clear All Data Option**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to clear all records.

### 14.6.2 Today's Access Record

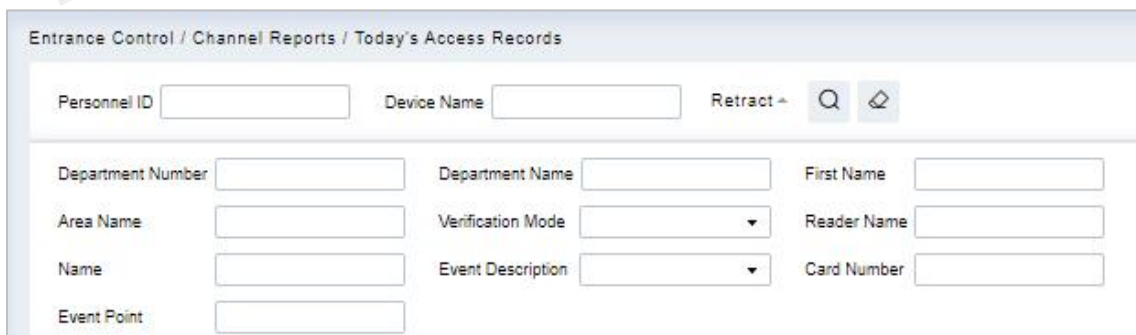
The access records for today are displayed in this option.

#### 14.6.2.1 Export

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Reports > Today's Access Record**.

**Step 2:** In Today's Access Record interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the **Query** symbol to complete the query of access record tables, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 14- 47 Today's Access Record**

**Step 3:** In the access record interface, click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and Click **OK**, as shown in figure below.

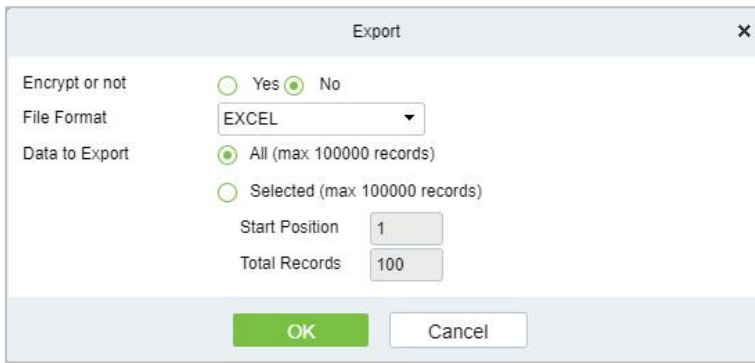


Figure 14- 48 Report Export Interface

**Step 4:** After selecting the address where the corresponding file is stored, the export of the file can be completed.

### 14.6.2.2 Clear All Data

This option allows users to clear all data available in today’s access record interface.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Reports> Today’s Access Record**.

**Step 2:** Click the **Clear All Data** to clear access records.

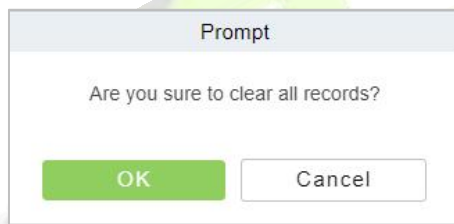


Figure 14- 49 Clear All Data Option

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to do the delete operation.

### 14.6.3 Personnel Last Access Location

Displays the last location visited by persons with access rights. It is convenient for users to quickly locate the location of personnel.

#### 14.6.3.1 Export

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Reports > Personnel Last Access Location**.

**Step 2:** In Personnel Last Access Location interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the **Query** symbol to complete the query of access record tables, as shown in figure below.

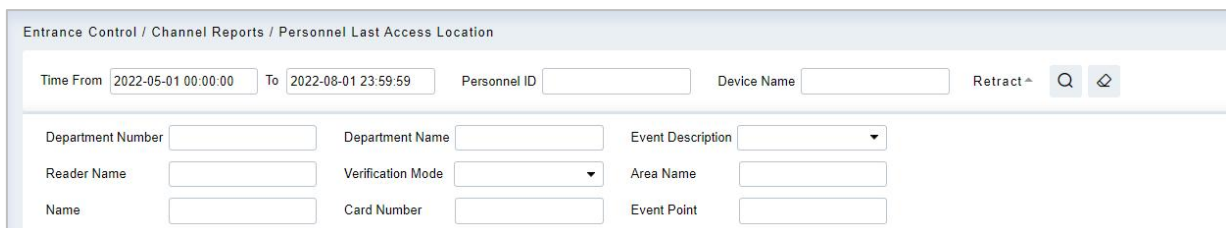
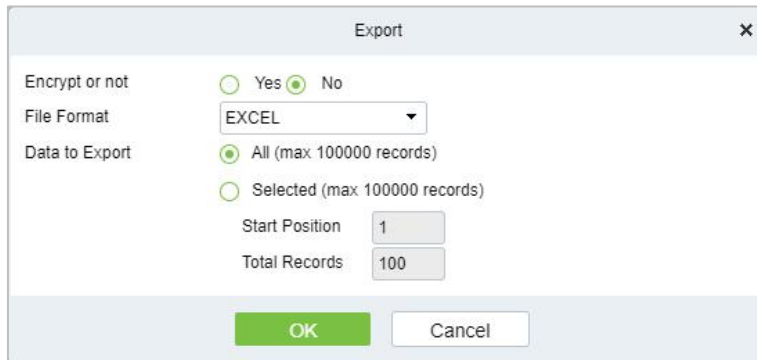


Figure 14- 50 Today’s Access Record

**Step 3:** In the access location interface, click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and Click **OK**, as shown

in figure below.



**Figure 14- 51 Report Export Interface**

**Step 4:** After selecting the address where the corresponding file is stored, the export of the file can be completed.

### 14.6.3.2 Clear All Data

This option allows users to clear all data available in Personnel Last Access Location interface.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Reports > Personnel Last Access Location**.

**Step 2:** Click the **Clear All Data** to clear the access location records of the persons, as shown in figure below.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to do the delete operation.

### 14.6.4 All Exception Events

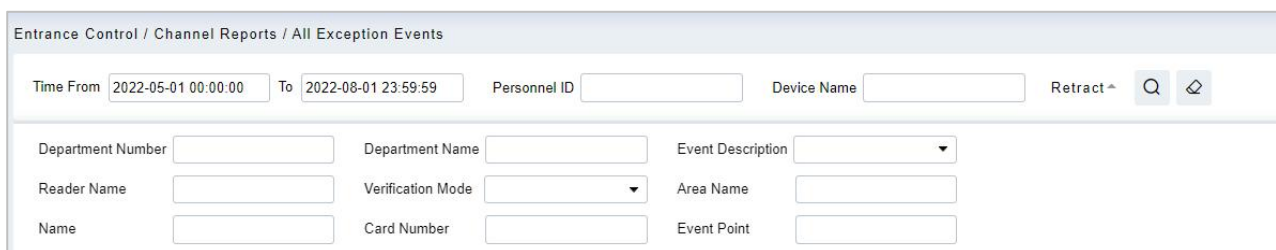
Click **Channel Report > All Exception Events** to view the abnormal events (including alarm events) such as unregistered persons, illegal entry, gate opening timeout, and failure to connect to the server under specified conditions (including alarm events).

#### 14.6.4.1 Export

● Operating Steps:

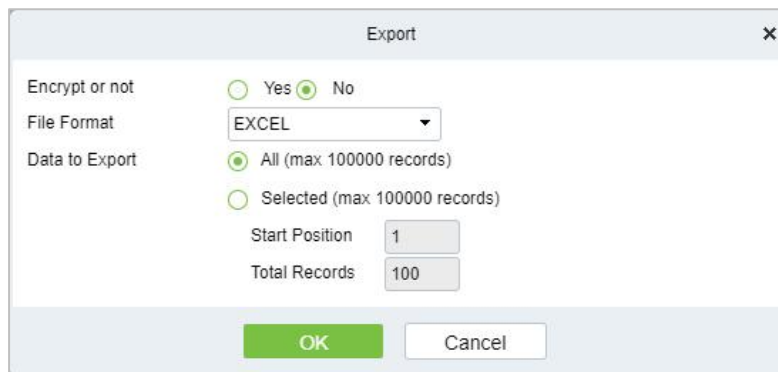
**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select Channel Reports > All Exception Events.

**Step 2:** In All Exception Events interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click the **Query** symbol to complete the query of access record tables, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 14- 52 All Exception Events**

**Step 3:** In the All-Exception Events interface, click **Export**, enter the user password in the pop-up security verification, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt and export the file format, and Click **OK**, as shown in figure below.



**Figure 14- 53 Report Export Interface**

**Step 4:** After selecting the address where the corresponding file is stored, the export of the file can be completed.

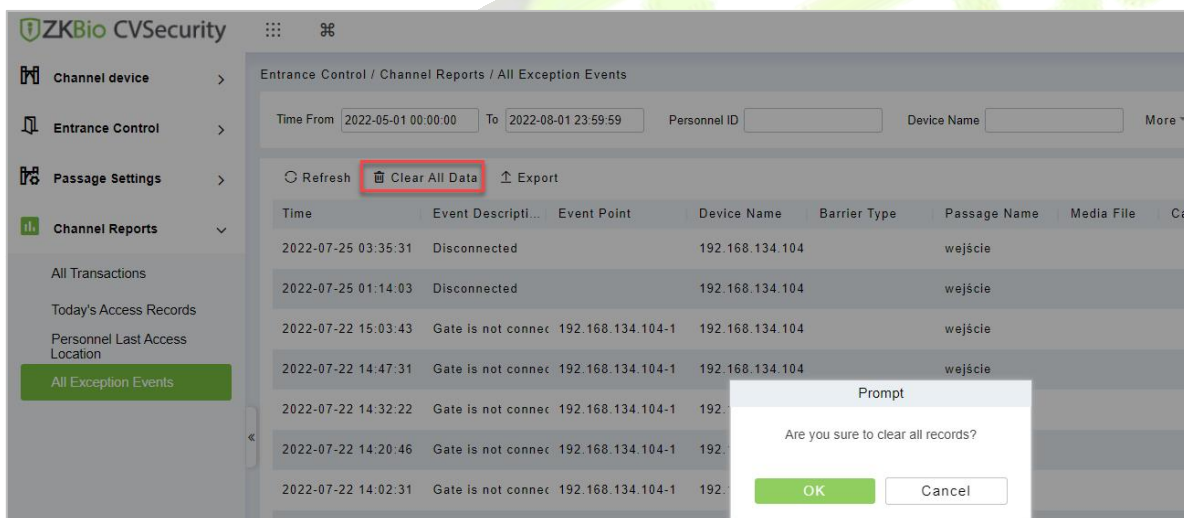
### 14.6.4.2 Clear All Data

This option allows users to clear all data available in All Exception Events interface.

● Operating Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Entrance Control module, select **Channel Reports> All Exception Events**.

**Step 2:** Click the **Clear All Data** to clear exception events record.



**Figure 14- 54 Clear All Data Option**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to do the delete operation.

# 15 FaceKiosk

## 15.1 Facekiosk Device

### 15.1.1 Device

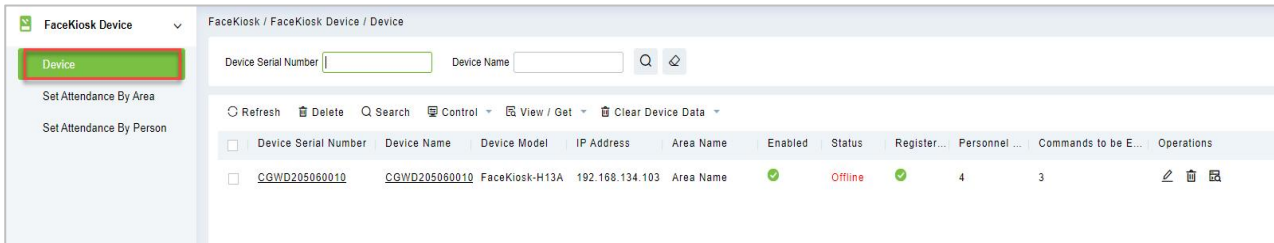


Figure 15- 1 Device

#### 15.1.1.1 Delete

Select one or more devices and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected facekiosk device. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single device.

#### 15.1.1.2 Search Device

In the tool bar, select the “**Search device**” menu. Add the device to the software server.

**Note:** User need to entry the hardware device and setting some parameters which is supported to setting the software server address.

#### 15.1.1.3 Control

Click **FaceKiosk Device > Device**, then select Control to Enable/ Disable, Reboot, synchronize software Data, and Issued QRCode Address of the device.

| Function                                | Description  |
|---|--|
| Enable/ Disable                         | Select device, click Disable/ Enable to stop/ start using the device. When communication between the device and the system is interrupted or device fails, the device may automatically appear in disabled status. After adjusting local network or device, click Enable to reconnect the device and restore device communication. |
| Reboot Device                           | It will reboot the selected device   |
| Synchronize software Data to the Device | Synchronize data of the system to the device. Select device, click Synchronize All Data to Devices and click OK to complete synchronization.   |
| Issued QRCode Address                   | Select the Issued QRCode Address.  |

Table 15-1 Device Control

#### 15.1.1.4 View / Get

Click **FaceKiosk Device > Device**, then select View/Get to Get Device Option, View Device Parameters, Re-upload Data, and to Gets the Specified Person Data.

| Parameters                     | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Get Device Option              | It gets the common parameters of the device. For example, get the firmware version after the device is updated.   |
| View Device Parameters         | Show the capacity detail.   |
| Re-upload Data                 | Select the device in which you want to upload data. Click to enter the check box to upload the data type: attendance record/personnel information/attendance photo, click the confirmation to get such information again from the device. |
| Gets the Specified Person Data | It gets the Specified person Data from the device.  |

**Table 15-2 Device View/Get**

#### 15.1.1.5 Clear Device Data

Click **FaceKiosk Device > Device**, then select Clear Device Data to clear Device Command, Verification Photo and Validation Record.

| Parameters               | Instruction   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Clear Device Command     | Select the device to be cleared. It clears the operation command issued by the software in the setting. |
| Clear Verification Photo | Select the device. This function will clear all the verification photo records from the device.         |
| Clear Validation Record  | Select the device. This function will clear all the validation data records from the device.            |

**Table 15-3 Clear Device Data**

#### 15.1.1.6 Edit

Click advertisement resources or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 15.1.2 Set Attendance by Area

Click **FaceKiosk > FaceKiosk Device**, then Select Set Attendance by Area.

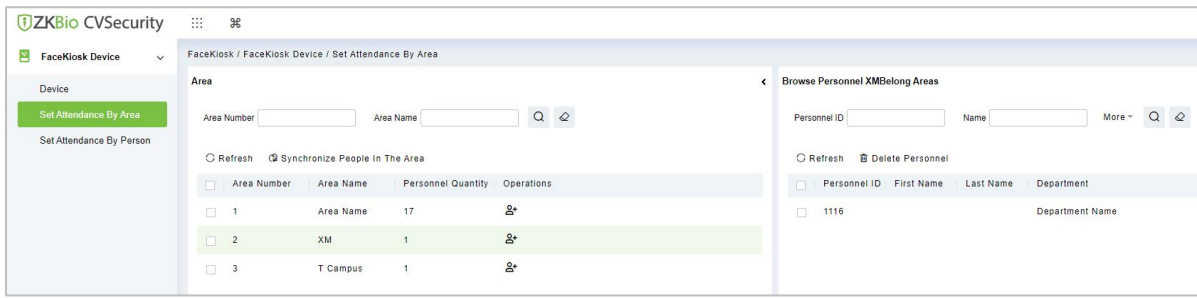


Figure 15- 2 Set Attendance by Area

### 15.1.2.1 Synchronize People in the Area

Click **FaceKiosk > FaceKiosk Device > Set Attendance by Area**, then select Synchronize People in The Area.

Click **OK** to save and exit.

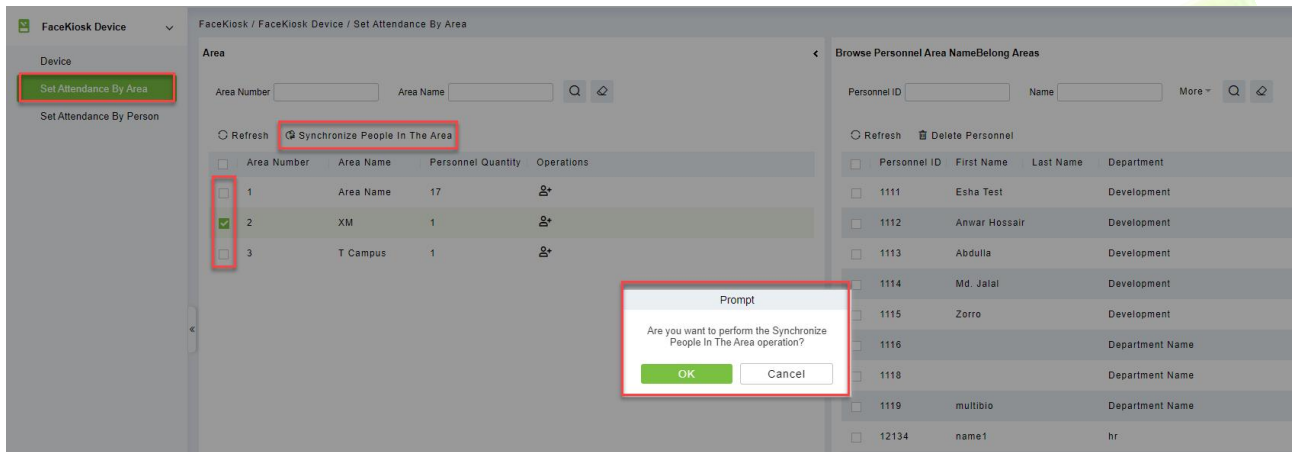


Figure 15- 3 Set Attendance by Area

### 15.1.3 Set Attendance by Person

Click **FaceKiosk > FaceKiosk Device**, then Select Set Attendance by Person.

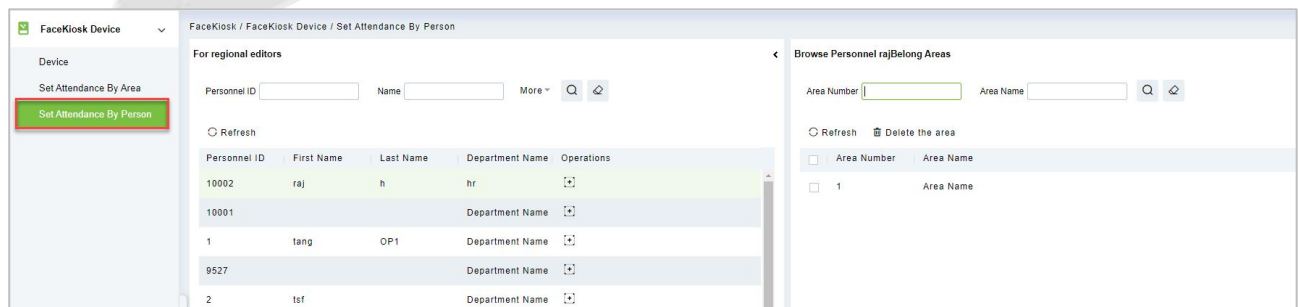


Figure 15- 4 Set Attendance by Person

## 15.2 Media Advertisement Resources

### 15.2.1 Advertisement Resources

Click **FaceKiosk > Media Advertisement Resources**, then Select Advertisement Resources.

In the Advertisement resources module, it can support to create/edit/delete advertisement resources.

### 15.2.1.1 Add (New)

Support to upload some new advertisement resources to software server.

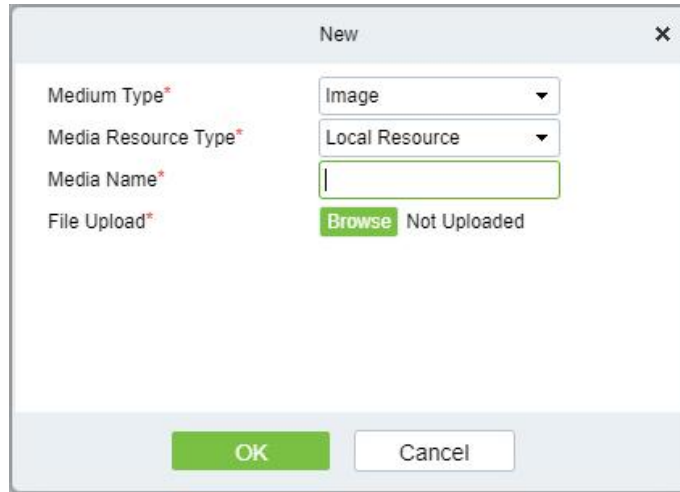


Figure 15- 5 Media advertisement Resources

### 15.2.1.2 Edit

Click device name or **Edit** in the operation column to go to the Edit page. Make modifications and click **OK** to save modifications.

### 15.2.1.3 Delete

Select one or more advertisement resources and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected advertisement resources. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single advertisement resource.

## 15.2.2 Advertisement Settings

Click **FaceKiosk > Media Advertisement Resources**, then Select Advertisement Settings.

This module support to create **Edit** and **Delete** the advertising.

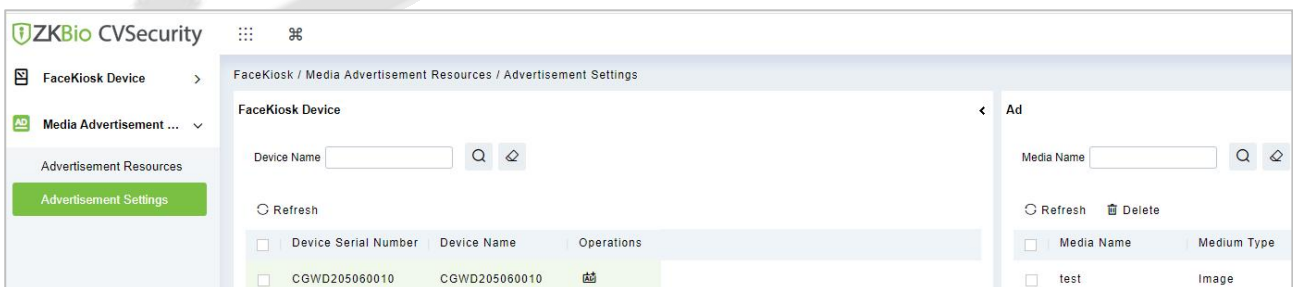


Figure 15- 6 Advertisement settings

## 15.3 FaceKiosk Reports

### 15.3.1 Verification Record

Click > **FaceKiosk** > **FaceKiosk Reports**, then **Verification Record** to view specified events in specified condition.

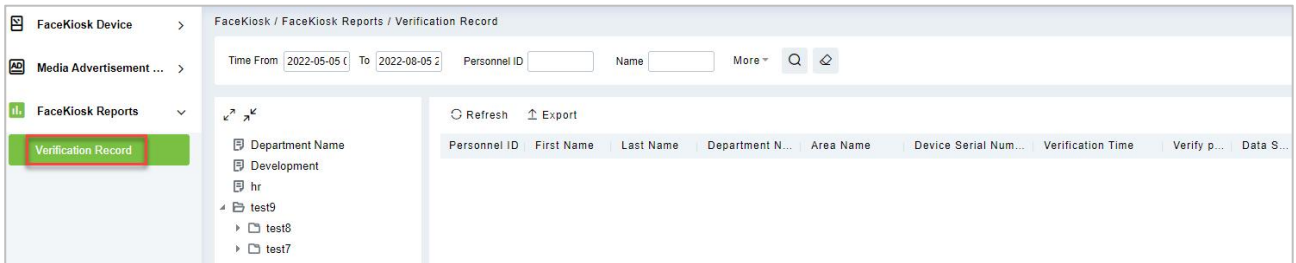


Figure 15- 7 Verification Record

#### 15.3.1.1 Export

Export the operation log records, save to local. You can export to an Excel, PDF, TXT or CSV file. Click Export See the following figure.

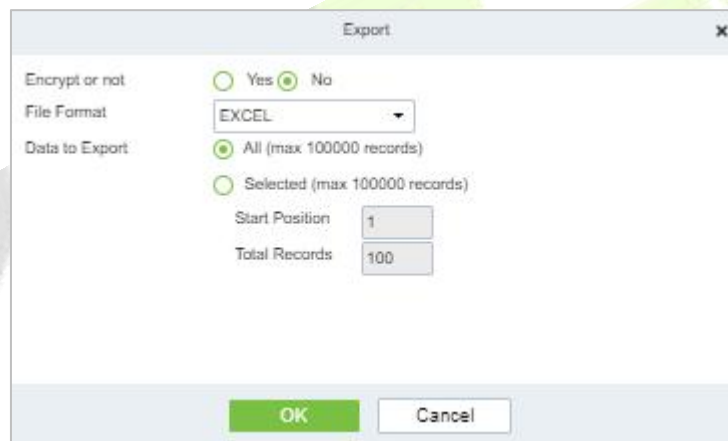


Figure 15- 8 Verification Record

# 16 Locker

## 16.1 Locker Device Management

### 16.1.1 Device

#### 16.1.1.1 Add Devices (New)

**Step 1:** Go to **Locker > Locker Device Management > Device**.

**Step 2:** Click **New**, the interface for adding a device will pop up.

**Step 3:** In the interface for adding a device, fill in the corresponding parameters according to the adding requirement, as shown in the figure below. Please refer to Table 19-1 for the description of parameter.

**Figure 16- 1 Adding Device Interface**

| Parameter              | Description   |
|------------------------|---|
| Device Name            | Customize the name of the device.   |
| IP Address             | Fill in the IP address of the device.   |
| Serial Number          | Fill the device serial number.  |
| Communication Password | Fill in the communication password of the device. You can add it only after the verification is successful. |
| Area Name              | Divide the area for the device.   |

**Table 16- 1 Adding Device Parameters**

### 16.1.1.2 Delete

Step 1: Go to Locker> Locker Device Management > Device.

Step 2: Select device, click **Delete**, then click **OK** to delete device.



Figure 16- 2 Delete Device

### 16.1.1.3 Control

●Set Administrator:

Administration has permission to set the administrator permission to device. Select the person, click >, and click **OK**.

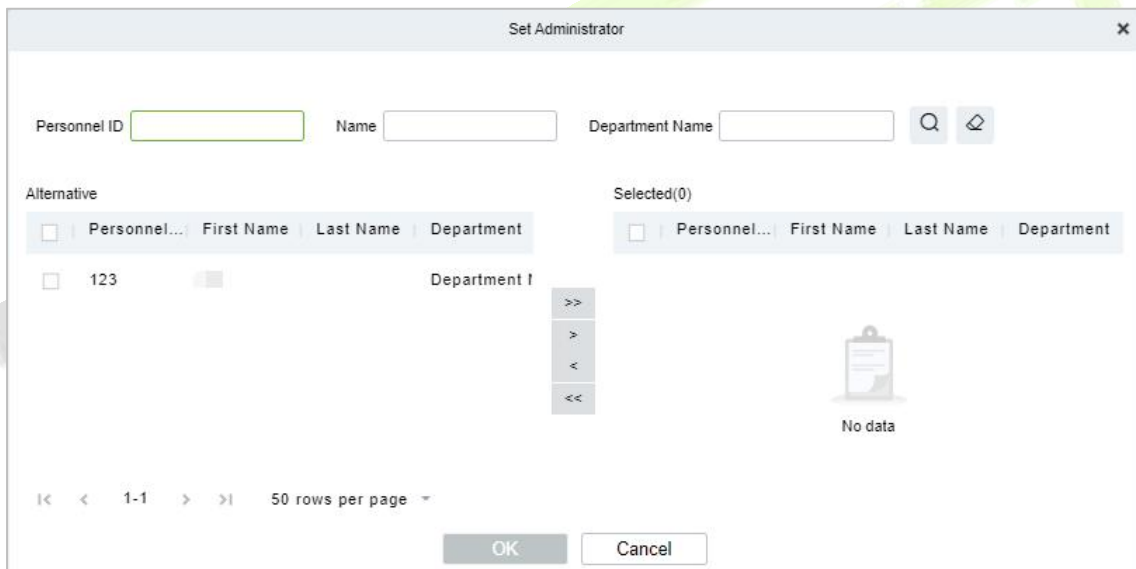


Figure 16- 3 Set Administrator Interface

●Clear Administrator:

Administration has permission to clear the administration permission from device.

●Reboot Device:

It will reboot the selected device.

●Synchronize Time:

It will synchronize device time with server’s current time.

●Synchronize All Data to Devices:

Synchronize data of the system to the device. Select device, click **Synchronize All Data to Devices** and click **Synchronize** to complete synchronization.

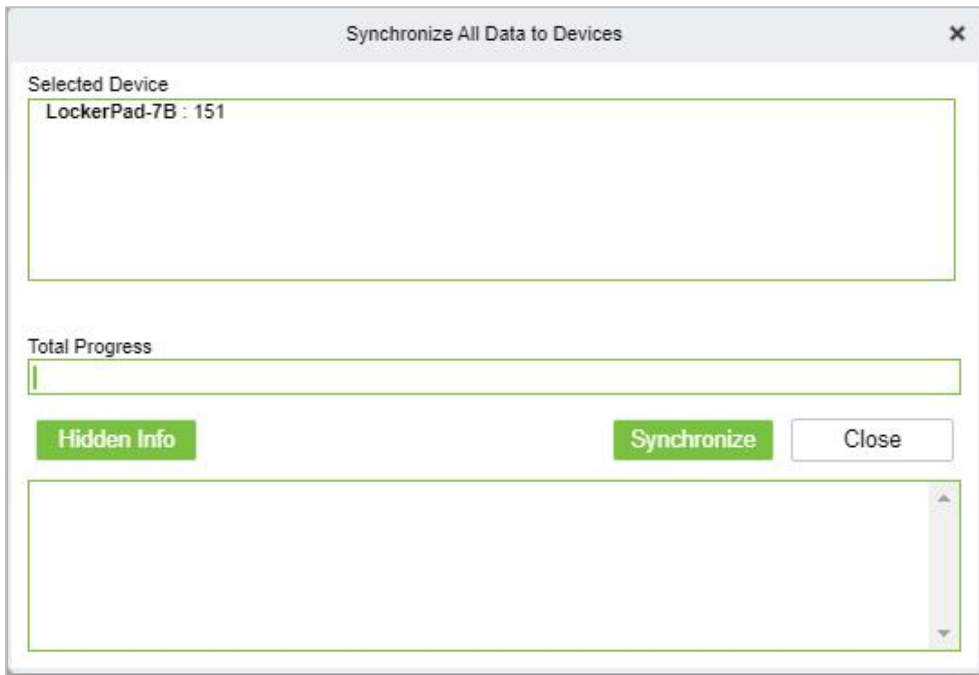


Figure 16- 4 Synchronize All Data to Devices Interface

●Distribute Advertising Resources:

Administrator selects the AD resource on the computer and delivers it to lockerpad-7b. Click **Distribute Advertising Resources**, click **Browser**, then select the picture or video and click **OK**.

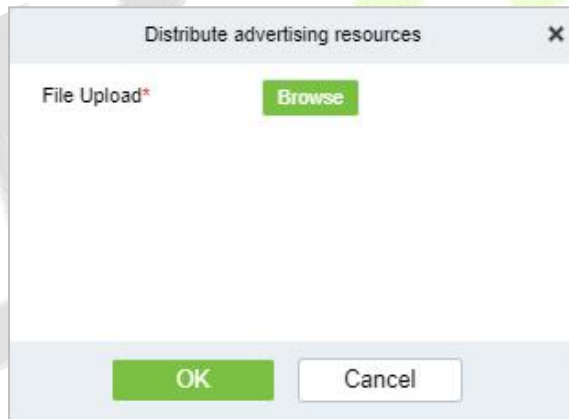


Figure 16- 5 Distribute Advertising Resources Interface

●Clear All Ads:

Clears all ads resources from the selected device.

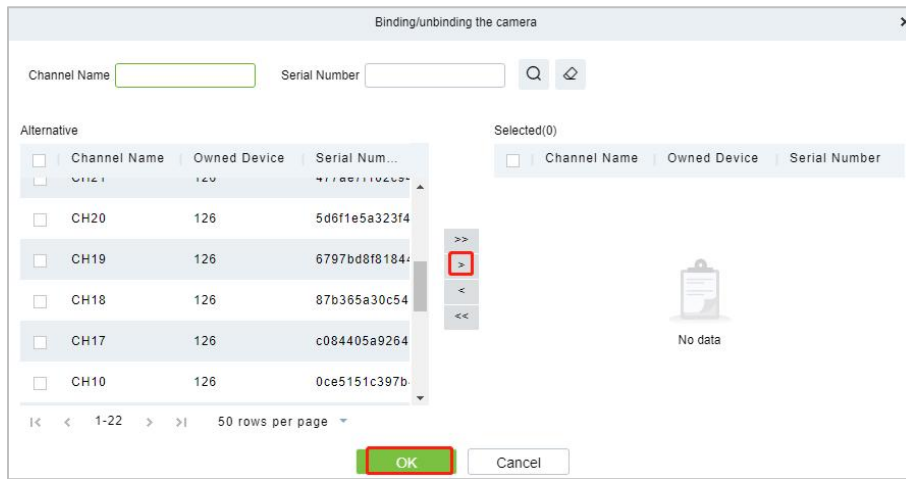
16.1.1.4 Binding/Unbinding the Camera

●Steps:

**Step 1:** In Locker module, select **Locker Device Management > Device**.

**Step 2:** Choose device, click icon  .

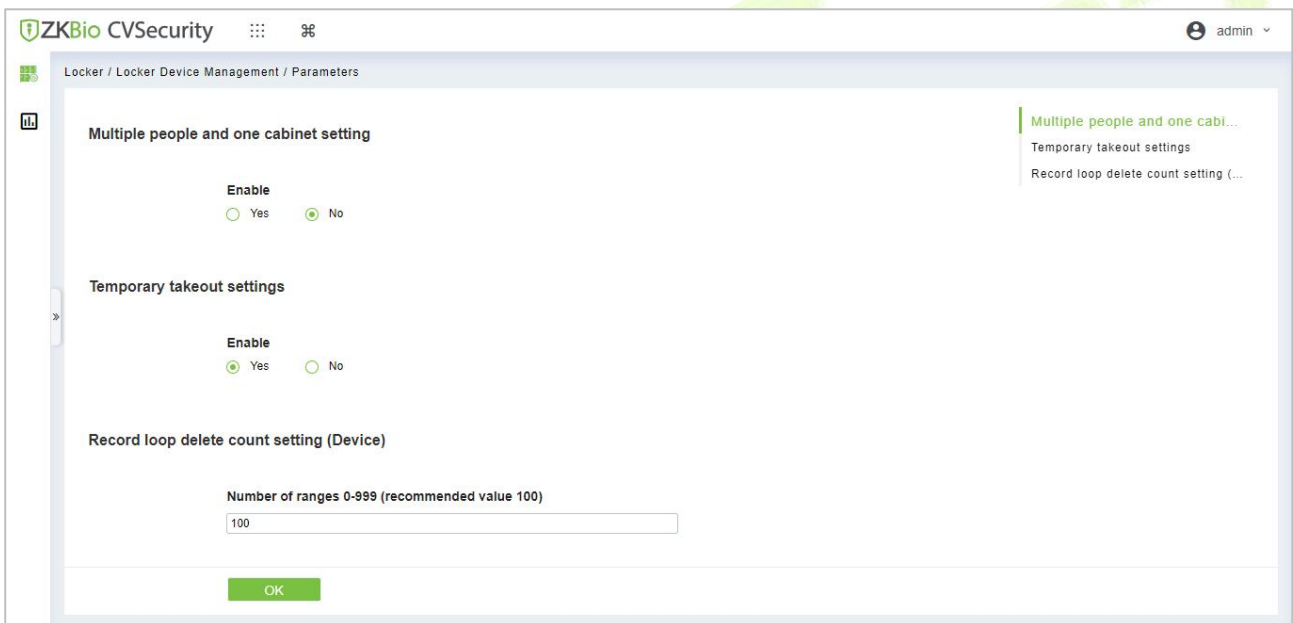
**Step 2:** Select **Channel**, click > and click **OK**.



**Figure 16- 6 Binding Camera**

### 16.1.2 Parameters

In **Locker** module, click Locker **Device Management** > **Parameter** to set the parameters.



**Figure 16- 7 Parameter**

| Item                                      | Description  |
|---|--|
| Multiple people and one cabinet setting   | Multiple users can share a cabinet when it is enabled.   |
| Temporary takeout settings                | When enabled, users can remove objects without losing access to the cabinet  |
| Record loop delete count setting (Device) | When a specified number of stored records is reached, a certain number of records will be deleted from the beginning, the number of records you fill in the space. |

**Table 16- 2 Parameter Description**

### 16.1.3 Visual Panel

In this function, admin can bind users in the software to the corresponding cabinet.

#### 16.1.3.1 Distribution Cabinet

●Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Locker module, select **Locker Device Management > Visual Panel**, as shown in figure below.

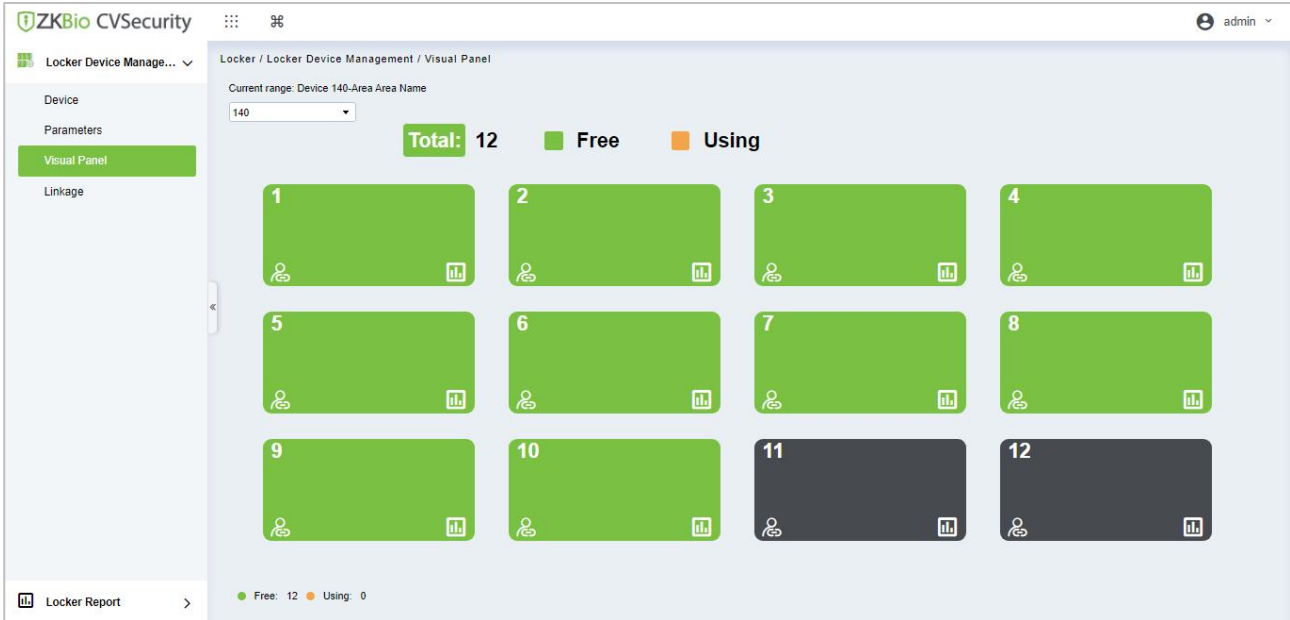



Figure 16- 8 Visual Panel

**Step 2:** Select a panel, click , and the interface of Select Person will pop up, as shown in figure below.

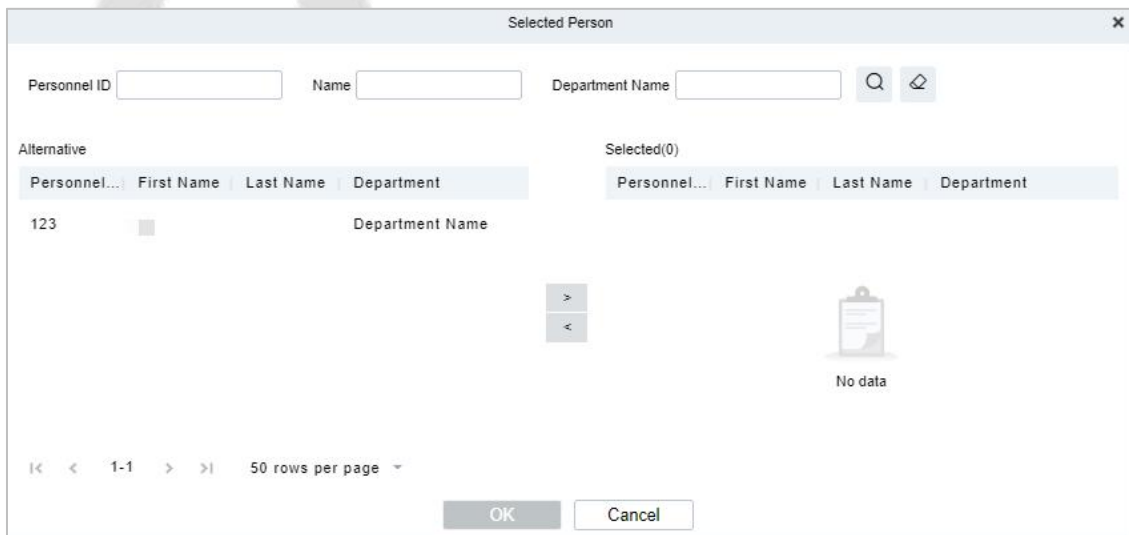


Figure 16- 9 Select Person Interface

**Step3:** Select the user that the admin wants to bind with the cabinet. Then click > and **OK**.

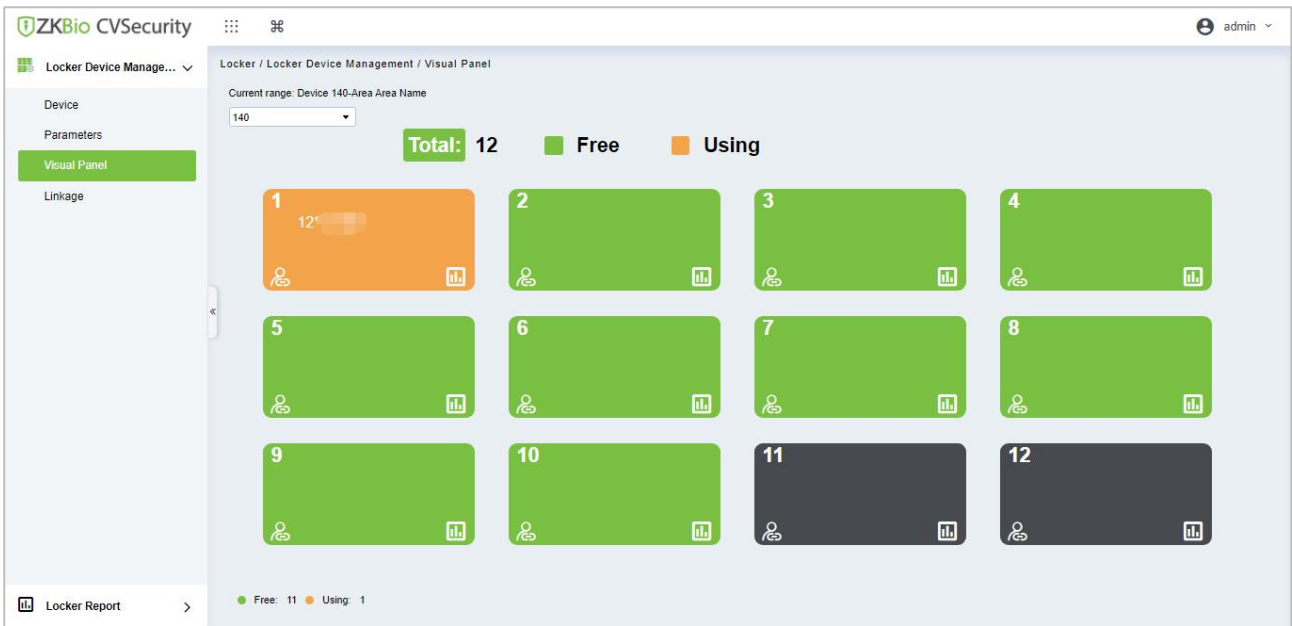


Figure 16- 10 Visual Panel Interface

### 16.1.3.2 View the Last 5 Records

● Steps:

**Step 1:** In the Locker module, select **Locker Device Management > Visual Panel**.

**Step 2:** Select a panel, click , and the interface of View the last 5 records will pop up, as shown in figure below.

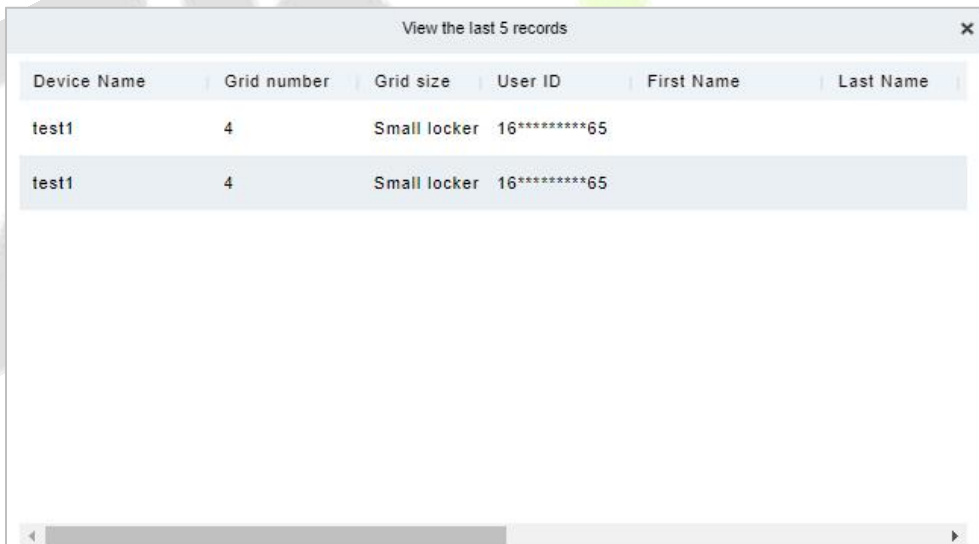


Figure 16- 11 Visual Panel Interface

#### Notes:

Color definition:



Figure 16- 12 Enable, no person has bound, available.



Figure 16- 13 Enable, personnel have been bound, unavailable.

**Figure 16- 14 Enable, personnel have been bound, unavailable.**

**Figure 16- 15 Not enabled, can be manually enabled.**

### 16.1.4 Linkage

The use method and scenario of linkage are flexible. After a specific event is triggered by an input point in the locker system, a linkage action will be generated at the specified output point to control events such as video recording and send e-mail in the system.

This section describes how to add Step to the linkage effect in ZKBio CVSecurity.

#### 16.1.4.1 Add

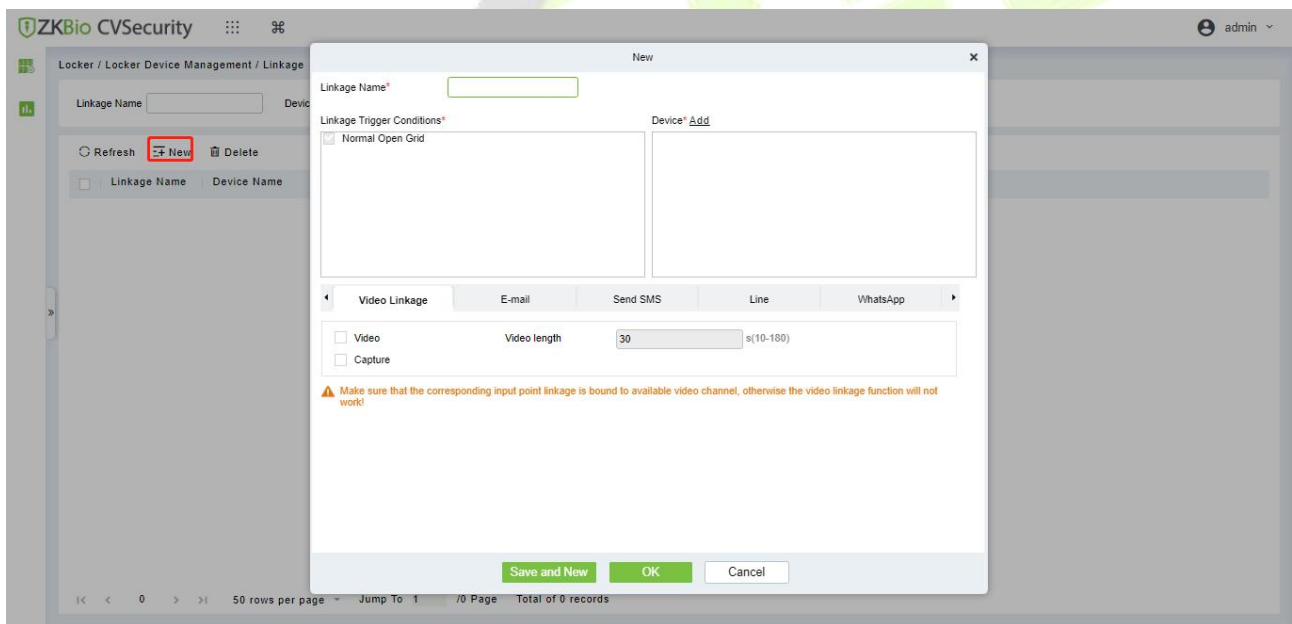
● **Preconditions:**

Before adding a linkage configuration, the system needs to have an intrusion device.

● **Steps:**

**Step 1:** In the Locker module, choose **Locker Device Management > Linkage**.

**Step 2:** On the linkage setting screen, click **Add**, as shown in figure below. Table 15-2 and Table 15-3 refer to the linkage parameters.



**Figure 16- 16 Adding Linkage**

| Parameter                  | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Linkage Name               | You can customize the linkage name for easy query.   |
| Linkage Trigger Conditions | Select the condition triggered by the linkage Operation, that is, the event type generated by the selected device. |
| Device                     | Select the locker to be linked.  |

**Table16-3 Linkage parameters**

| Parameter     | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Video Linkage | Pop-up video and display duration: Select pop-up video on the real-time monitoring screen and set the pop-up duration. Video recording and Video Duration: Select Video recording to set the video duration. Capture: Set linkage action whether to take a photo: If a photo is taken, you also need to set whether to pop up on the real-time monitoring interface and the display duration |
| Mail          | Set the email address that receives the linkage content when a linkage event occurs.   |

Table 16-4 Linkage parameters

### 16.1.4.2 Delete

● Steps:

**Step 1:** Select **linkage**, click **Delete**, and click **OK** to delete the linkage.

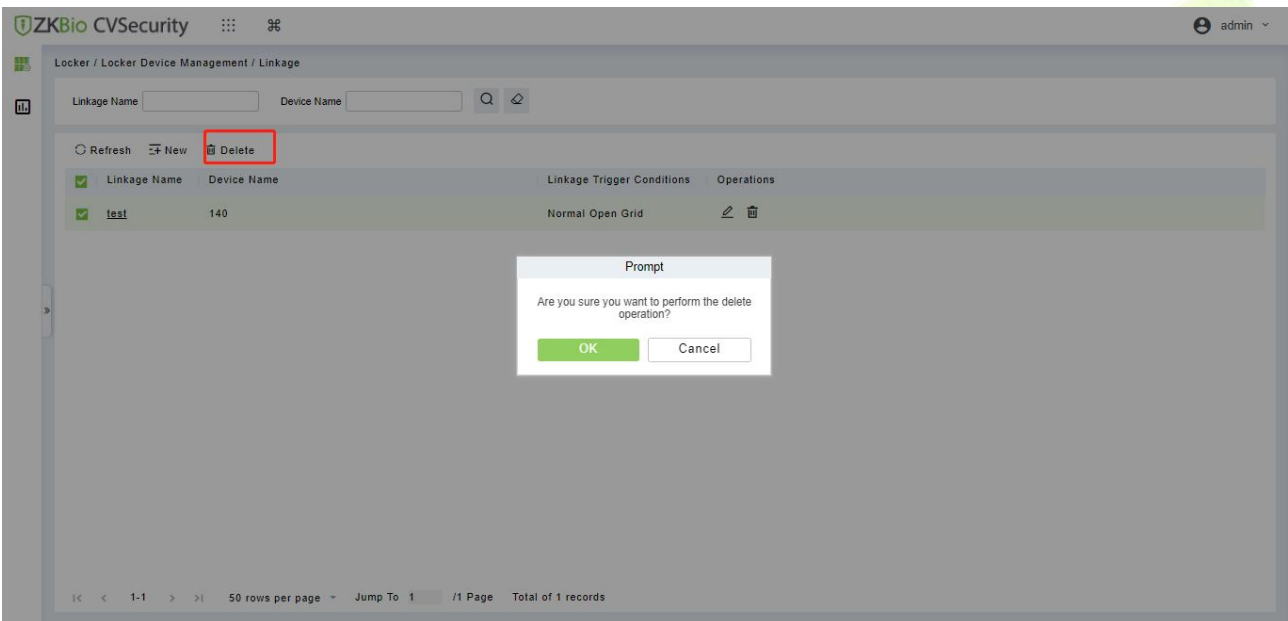


Figure 16- 17 Delete Linkage

## 16.2 Locker Report

### 16.2.1 All Transaction

● Steps:

**Step 1:** Go to **Locker > Locker Report > All transaction**.

**Step 2:** On the **All Records** interface, fill in the corresponding query information and click **Search** symbol to complete the query of all records.

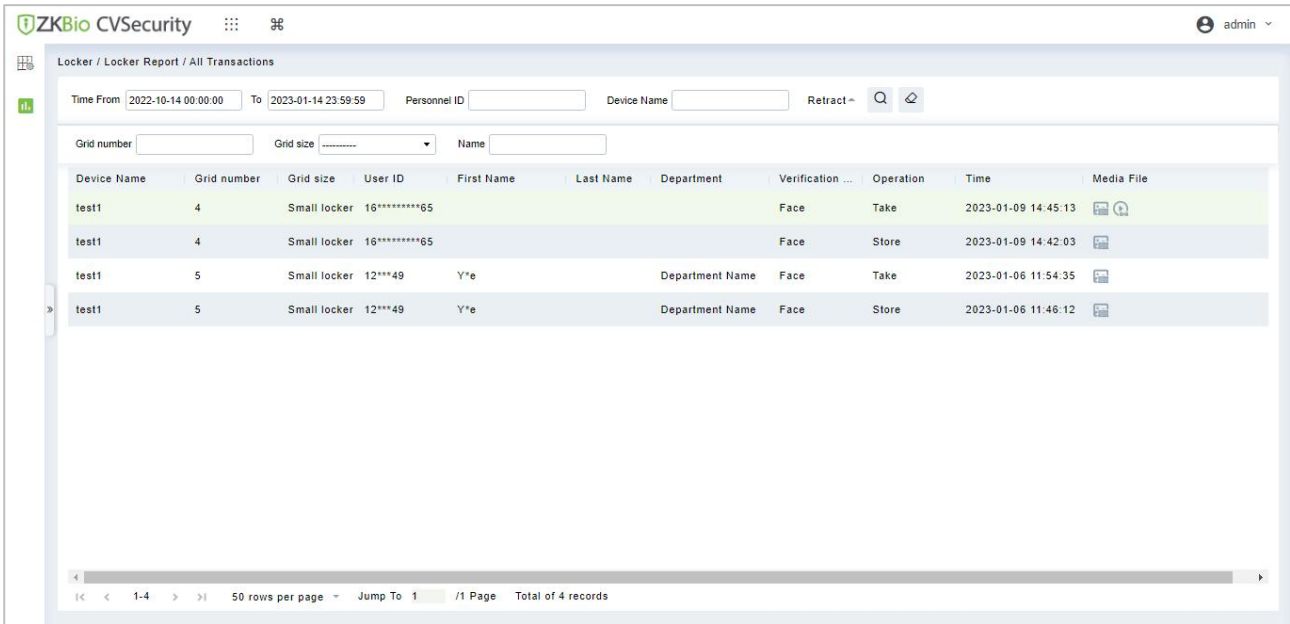


Figure 16- 18 Report Query Page

📷 **Notes:**

📷: Click on this icon and it will show the image taken by LockerPad-7b when the cabinet was opened.

📹: Click on this image and it will show the video taken by the bound camera when the linkage is triggered.

#### 16.2.1.1 Export

On the **All Records** interface, click **Export**, enter the admin password in the displayed security verification dialog box, and click **OK**. Select whether to encrypt the file and the file format to export, and Click **OK**.

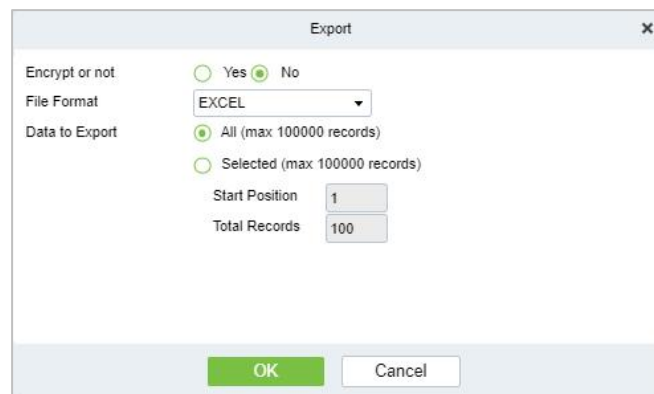


Figure 16- 19 Report Export Page

|   | A                | B           | C            | D             | E          | F         | G          |
|---|------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1 | All Transactions |             |              |               |            |           |            |
| 2 | Device Name      | Grid number | Grid size    | User ID       | First Name | Last Name | Department |
| 3 | 196              | 1           | Small locker | 1             |            |           |            |
| 4 | 196              | 1           | Small locker | 1             |            |           |            |
| 5 | 196              | 1           | Small locker | 1665310457633 |            |           |            |
| 6 | 196              | 1           | Small locker | 1665310457633 |            |           |            |
| 7 | 151              | 8           | Small locker | 1665194322753 |            |           |            |
| 8 | 151              | 8           | Small locker | 1665194322753 |            |           |            |

Figure 16- 20 Event Export

### 16.2.1.2 Clear All Data

Click **Clear All Data**, then click **OK** to clear all transactions on the **Prompt** interface.

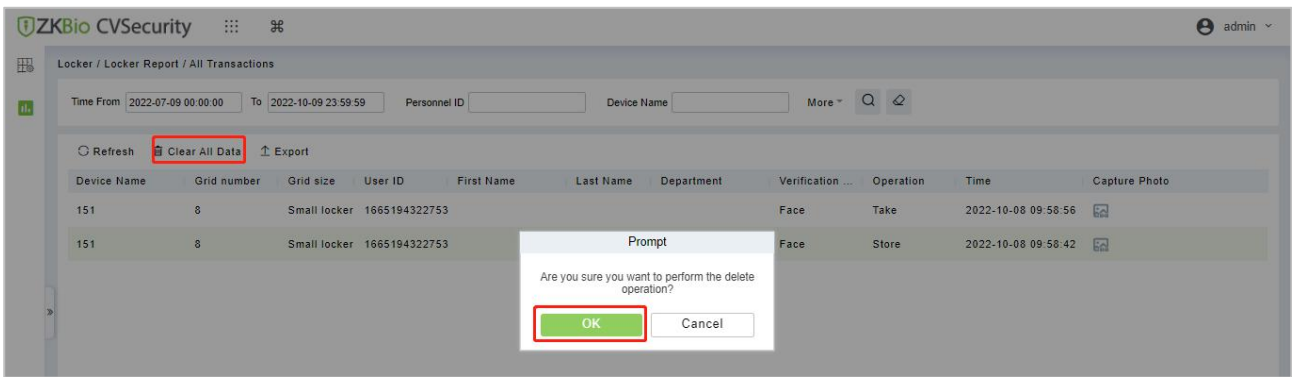


Figure 16- 21 Report Clear All Data

## 17 Intrusion Alarm

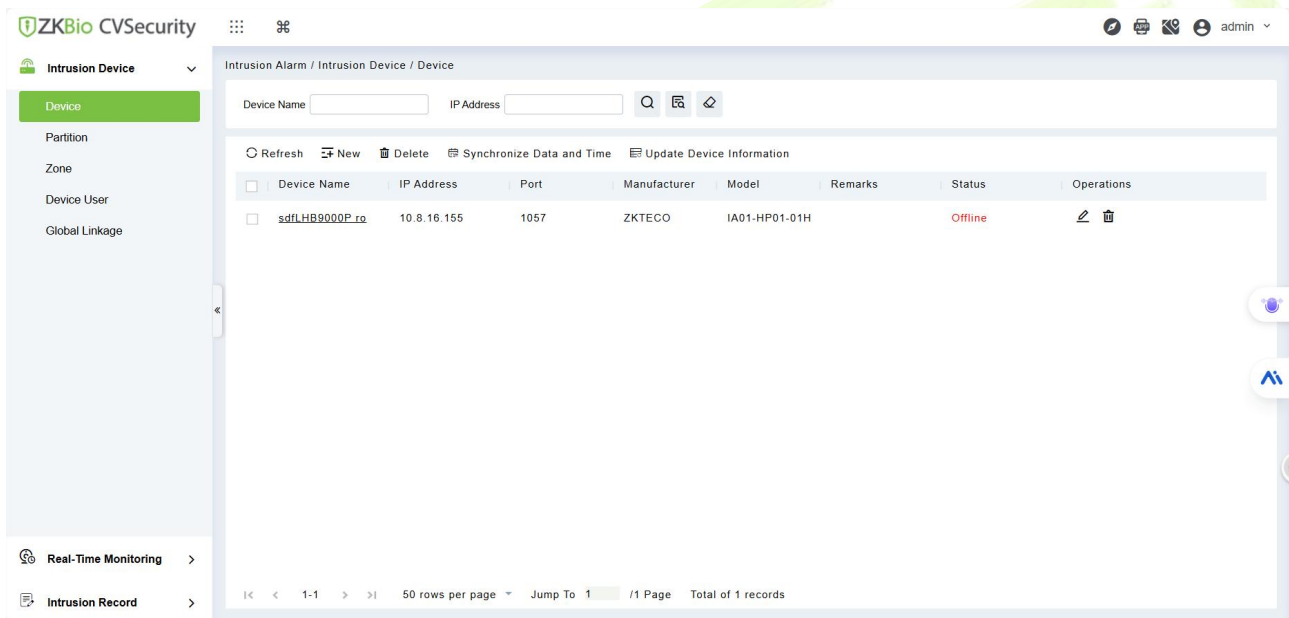
The intrusion alarm system is a robust security solution for monitoring and protecting restricted areas. It provides real-time detection of unauthorized access, identifies intrusions, and triggers configurable alarms. Integrated with the security management platform, it supports multiple detection zones, adjustable sensitivity, and flexible alarm escalation, ensuring centralized monitoring and rapid response for effective protection of critical areas.

### 17.1 Intrusion Device

Device includes Panel/ Partition/ Point/ Output and some of the alarm linkage of the intrusion alarm panels.

#### 17.1.1 Device

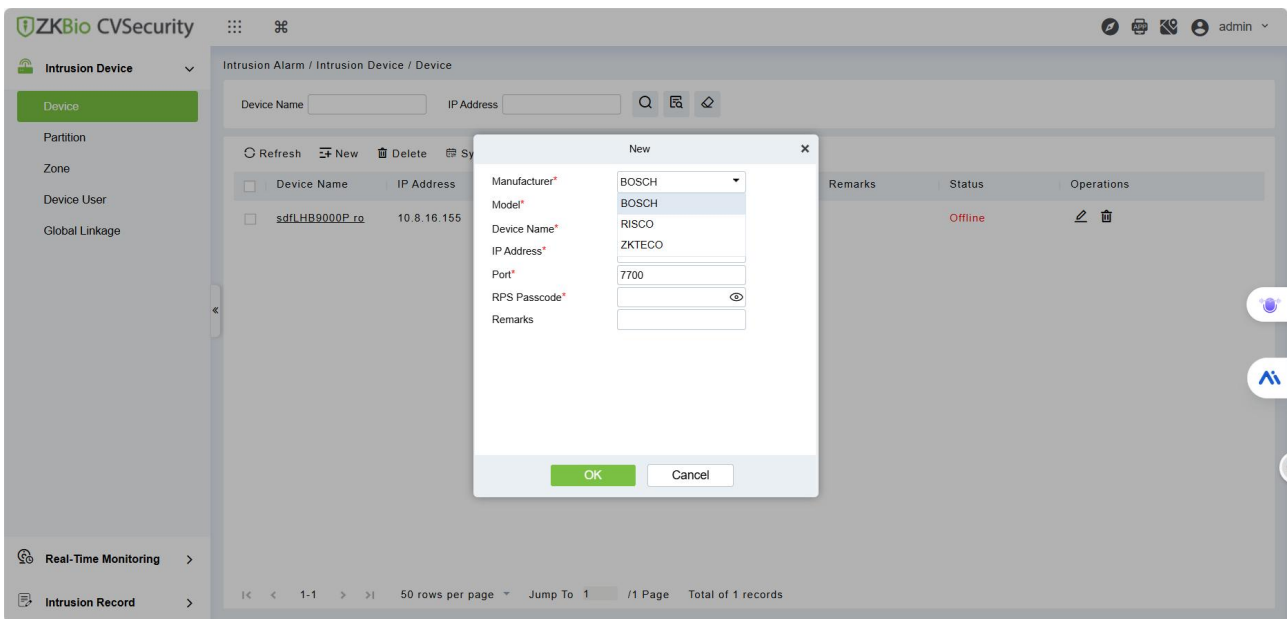
This menu is used to add and manage devices.



##### 17.1.1.1 New

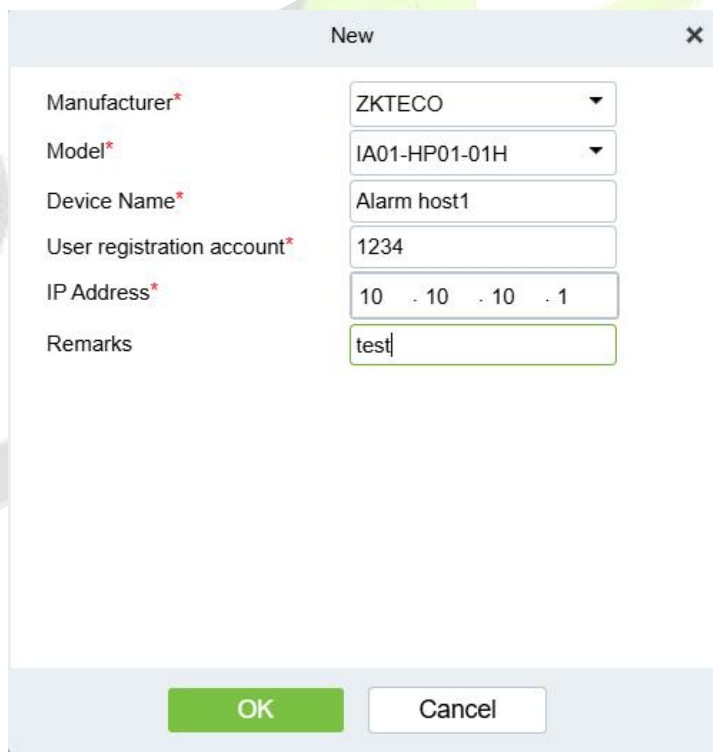
Click [+New] button to add a new device.

**Note:** The Manufacturer current support BOSCH/RISCO/ZKTECO. After selecting the corresponding manufacturer, you can further select the device model.



● Add ZKTeco Alarm Host

The following introduces the method of adding the alarm host of ZKTeco. Click **New**.



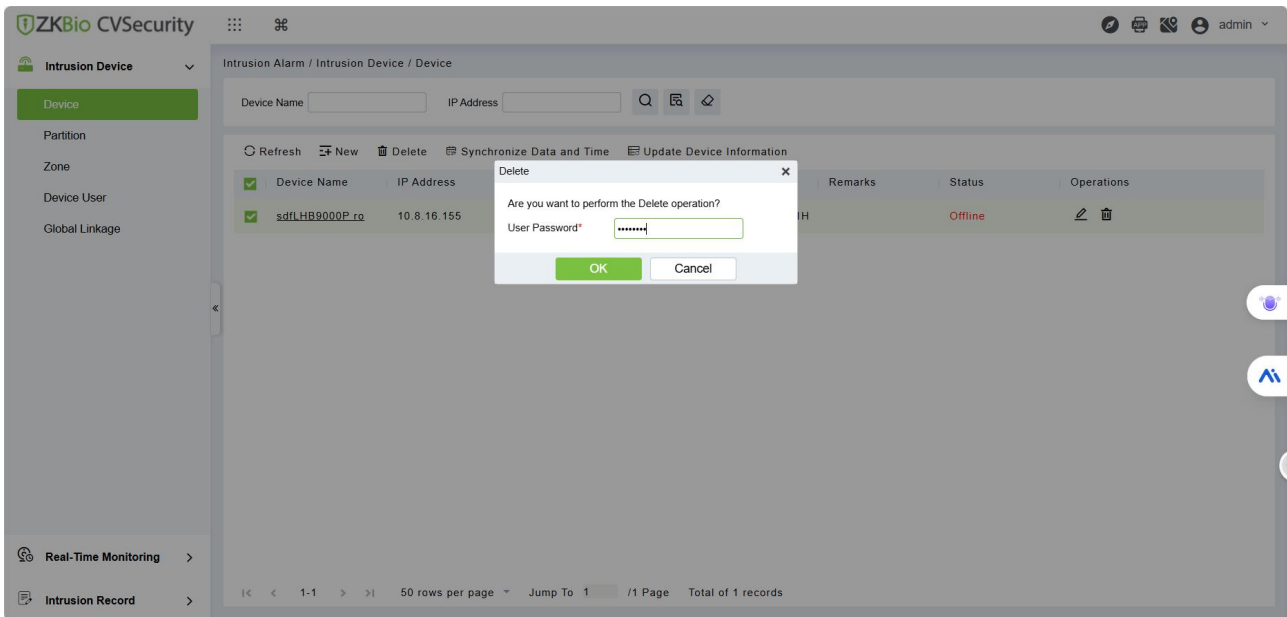
| Parameter   | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| Manufacture | The Manufacturer current support BOSCH/RISCO/ZKTECO, Selected ZKTECO.           |
| Model       | Support IA01-HP01-01H and IA01-HP02-01H, Select according to your actual model. |
| Device Name | Customize the device name   |

| Parameter                 | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| User Registration Account | Registration Account for the alarm host                         |
| IP Address                | IP Address of the alarm host                                    |
| Remarks                   | You can make remarks about other information of the alarm host. |

**Table17-1 Add Device**

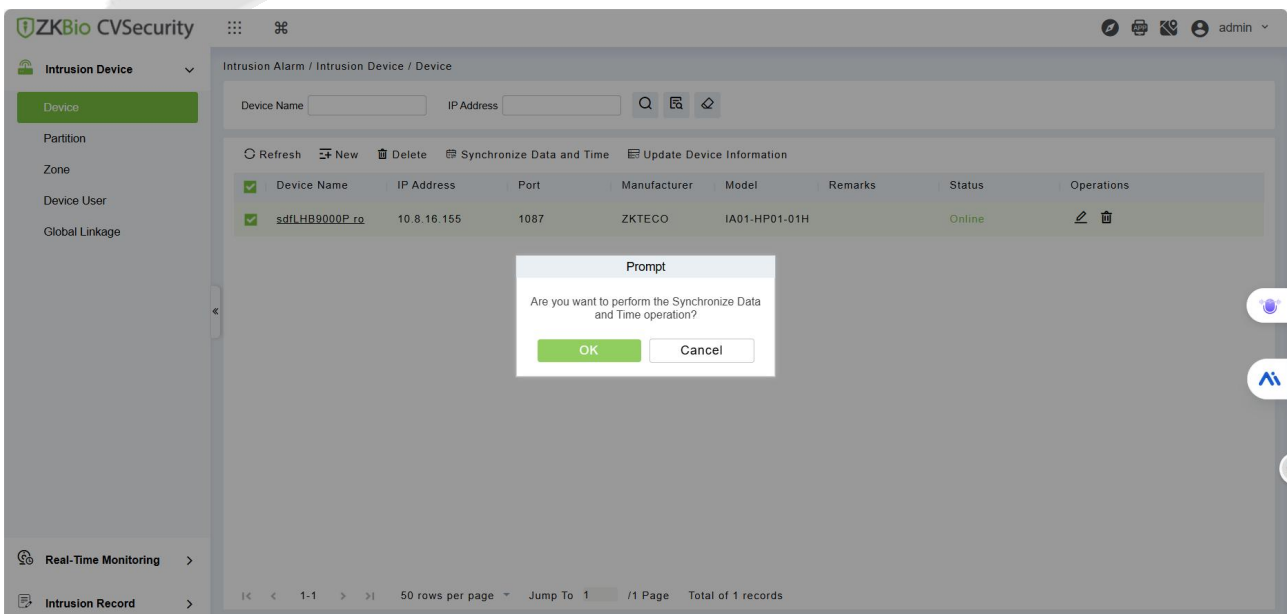
### 17.1.1.2 Delete

You can select the device in the list and click "Delete".After entering the login password of the software, you can complete the deletion operation.



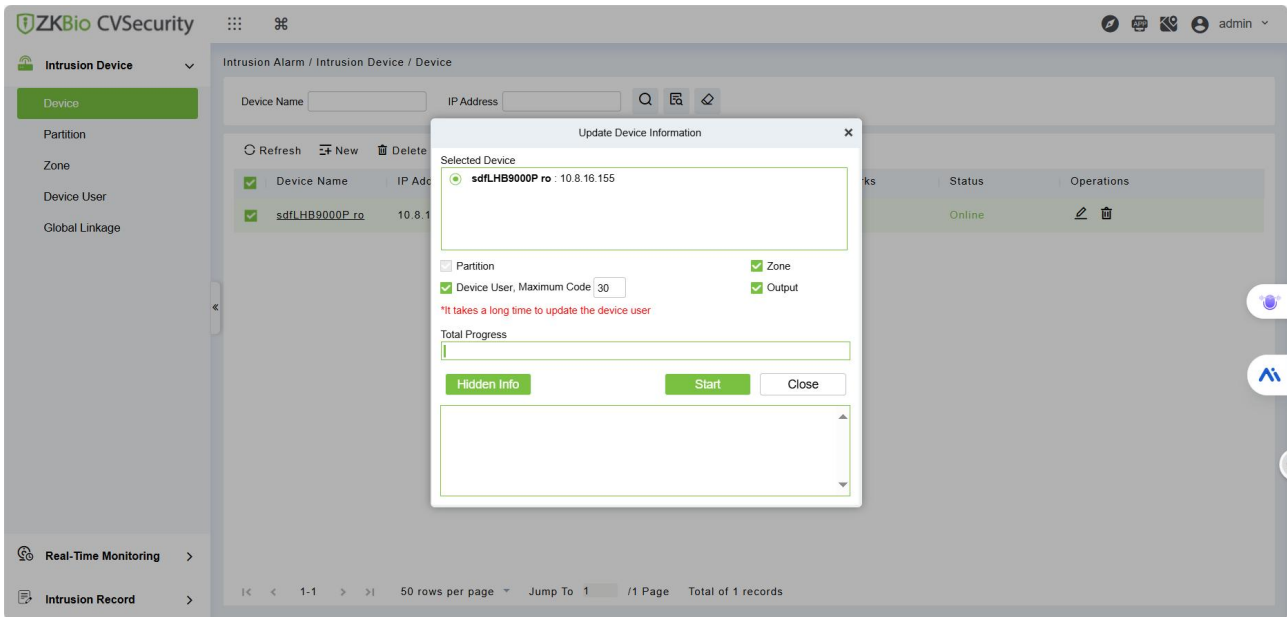
### 17.1.1.3 Synchronize Data and Time

Synchronize the server time to the alarm host. Currently, the devices of ZKTECO do not support this function.



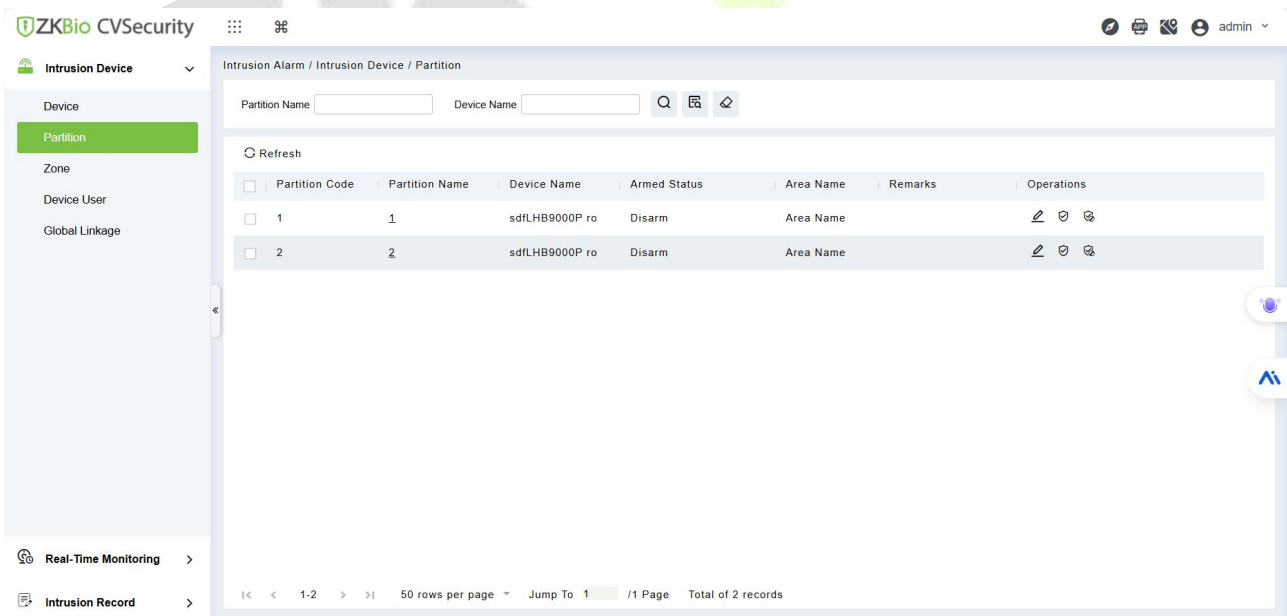
### 17.1.1.4 Update Device Information

Upload alarm host information, including partitions, zones, outputs, and user codes. This function is not supported by ZKTeco devices.



### 17.1.2 Partition

Partition: A space, such as a front door, floor or hallway, is can assign multiple Points.After being connected to the alarm host, it will be automatically synchronized to the partition list.



#### 17.1.2.1 Edit

After clicking "Edit", you can assign an area to this partition and add remarks for other information.

Partition Code: 1  
Partition Name: 1  
Device Name: sdfLHB9000P ro  
Area Name: Area Name  
Remarks:   
OK Cancel

### 17.1.2.2 Arming

| Partition Code | Partition Name | Device Name    | Armed Status | Area Name | Remarks | Operations |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|-----------|---------|------------|
| 1              | 1              | sdfLHB9000P ro | Disarm       | Area Name |         |            |
| 2              | 2              |                |              |           |         |            |

**User Password** :ZKBio CVSecurity login Password.

**Defense Deployment**:It includes the following ways of setting up security.

- **Arming**: It means setting the alarm system to the working state, putting the detectors in the system (such as infrared detectors, door and window magnetic switches, etc.) in the normal monitoring state. When the detector detects an abnormal situation, it will send a signal to the alarm host. Once the host receives the signal, it will trigger an alarm. For example, before getting off work at night or going to bed, arm the alarm system of the office or home. In this

way, once an illegal intrusion or other abnormal situations occur, the system will give an alarm in a timely manner.

- **Forced arming:** It is a special way of arming. Usually, in some special situations, even if there are some situations where the system does not meet the normal arming conditions (such as a detector malfunctioning, not being ready, or someone not having left the armed area, etc.), it forces the alarm system to enter the armed state. Generally, specific operation permissions are required for forced arming to ensure that only authorized personnel can perform this operation and prevent misoperations or illegal operations. For example, in an emergency, it is necessary to quickly provide security protection for a certain area. Even if some devices have problems, the normal devices can be made to start working through forced arming to ensure safety.

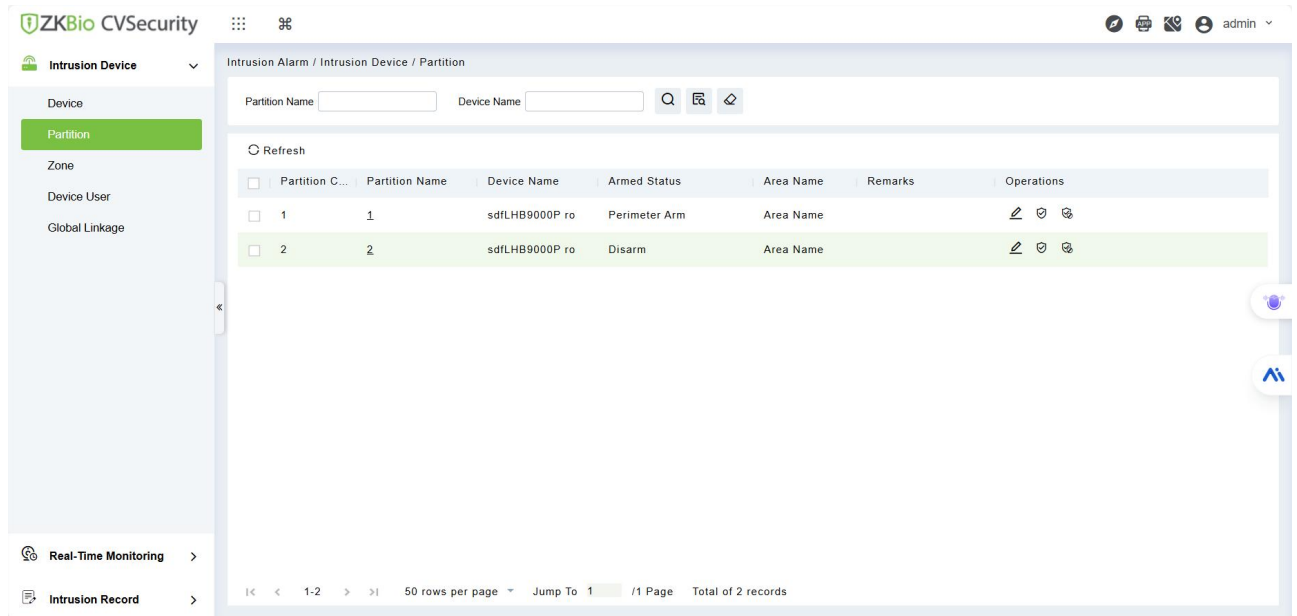
**Note:** Forced arming will automatically bypass the faulty protection zone. When the faulty protection zone is set as prohibited from being bypassed, forced arming will also fail.

- **Perimeter arming:** It means setting up alarm devices at the boundaries of a specific area, making the system enter the alert state to achieve comprehensive protection of the area and prevent unauthorized personnel from entering or leaving the specific area. When someone attempts to illegally cross the armed area, the corresponding detector will detect the abnormality and send a signal to the alarm host. Once the host receives the signal, it will trigger an alarm and notify the relevant personnel. For example, infrared beam detectors are installed around the enclosure of a residential community. When someone crosses the enclosure, the infrared light is blocked, and the detector will send out an alarm signal. Perimeter arming can be achieved through various methods, commonly including infrared beam detection, microwave detection, vibration sensing, video surveillance, etc.
- **Forced perimeter arming:** It is a special form of perimeter arming. Usually, when there are some situations where the system does not meet the normal arming conditions, such as a detector malfunctioning, not being ready, or someone not having left the perimeter armed area, etc., it still forces the perimeter alarm system to enter the armed state. Generally, specific operation permissions are required for forced perimeter arming to ensure that only authorized personnel can perform this operation and prevent misoperations or illegal operations. For example, in an emergency situation, such as when an important person is about to arrive at a certain place, it is necessary to quickly provide security protection for the perimeter of the place. Even if some detectors have problems, the normal devices can be made to start working through forced perimeter arming to ensure perimeter security.

#### **Result verification:**

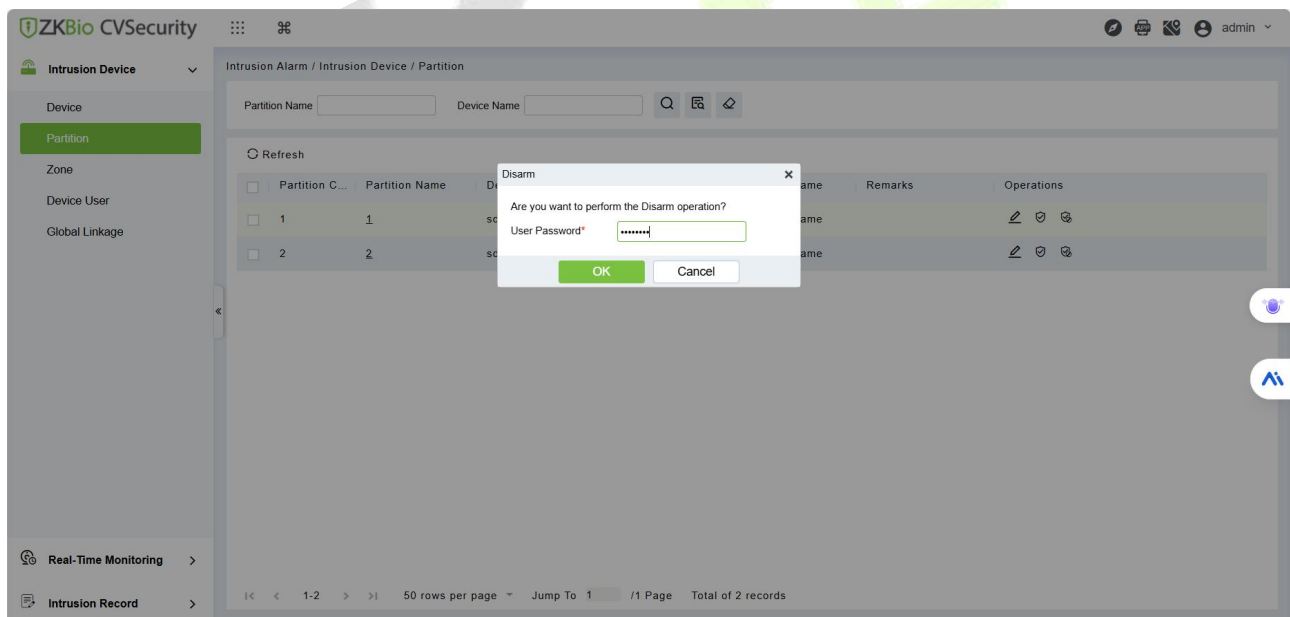
After successfully entering the ZKBio CVSecurity user password and the arming type, the status will

switch to the corresponding armed state.



### 17.1.2.3 Disarming

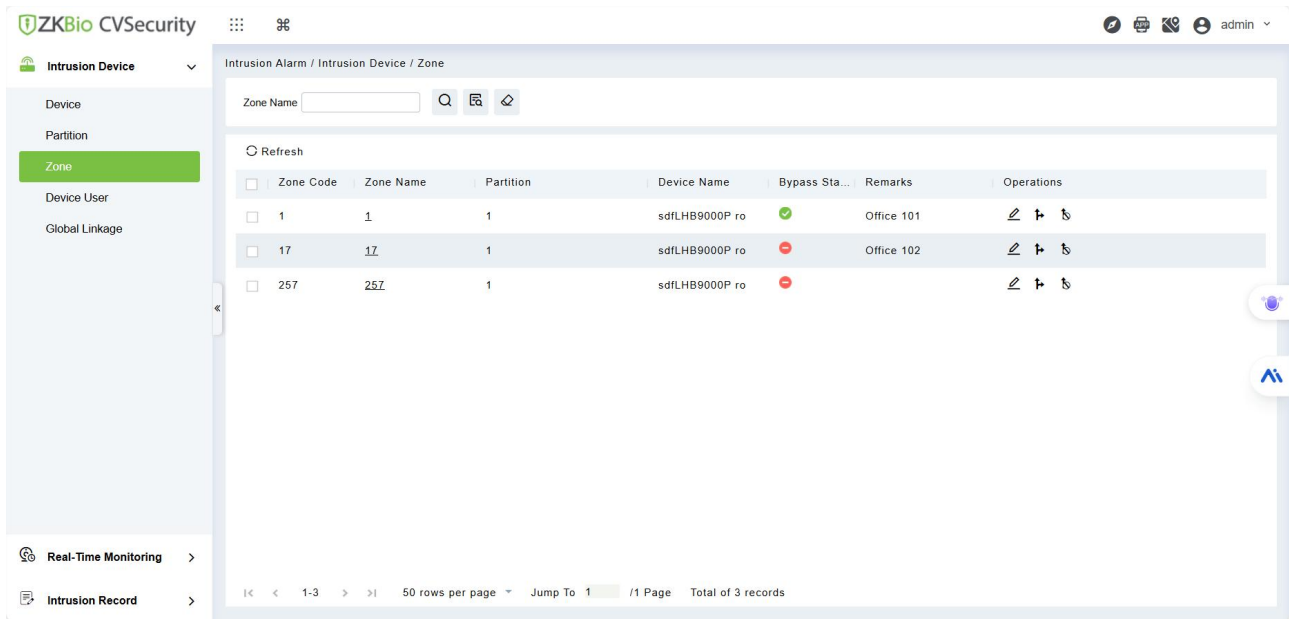
Disarming can be achieved by entering the ZKBio CVSecurity administrator password. After confirmation, the status in the list will change to "Disarm".



### 17.1.3 Zone

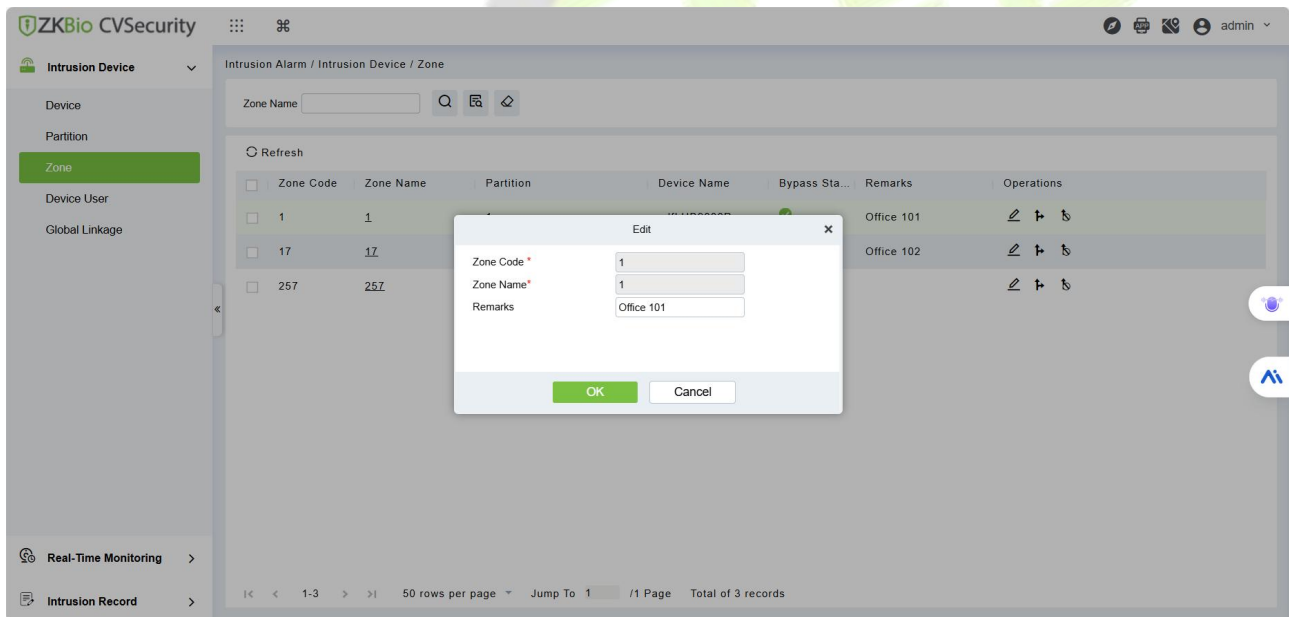
**Zone:** A protection zone refers to dividing the area that requires security precautions into several independent parts, and each part is a protection zone. The purpose of this division is to more accurately locate the alarm position, making it easier for management and maintenance.

**Note:** ZKBio CVSecurity can only perform editing and bypass management. If you need to adjust the partition to which the protection zone belongs, please configure it in the Device Web - Protection Zone Configuration menu.



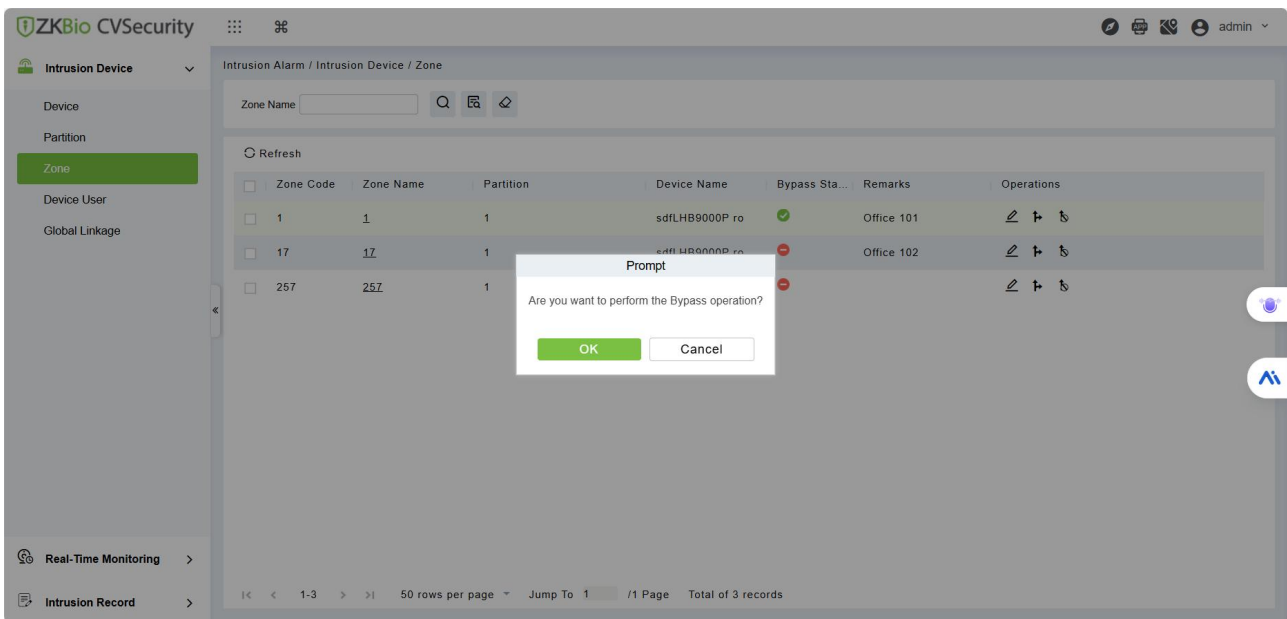
### 17.1.3.1 Edit

Click "Edit" to add remarks for the protection zone, such as noting the location of the protection zone or other explanations.



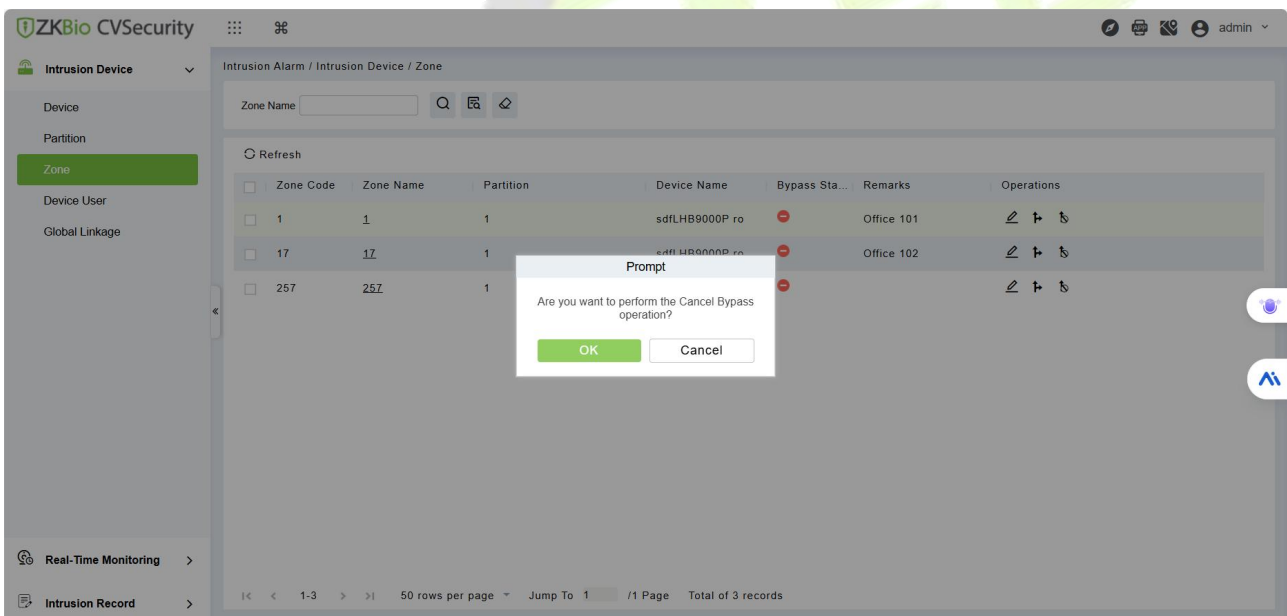
### 17.1.3.2 Bypass

Bypassing means isolating a certain detector or multiple detectors and protection zones from the alarm system temporarily, so that they do not participate in the normal alarm monitoring work when the system is armed. After clicking the "Bypass" button and confirming, the bypass status in the list will change to the enabled state.



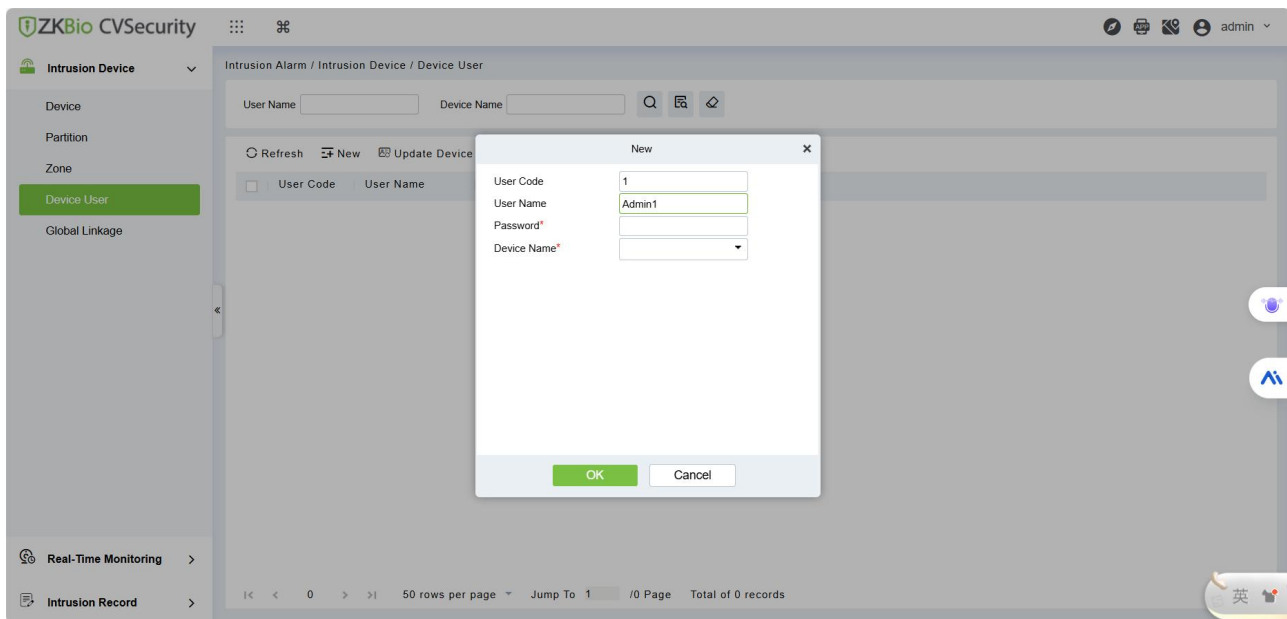
### 17.1.3.3 Cancel Bypass

After clicking the "Cancel Bypass" button and confirming, the bypass status in the list will change to the disabled state.



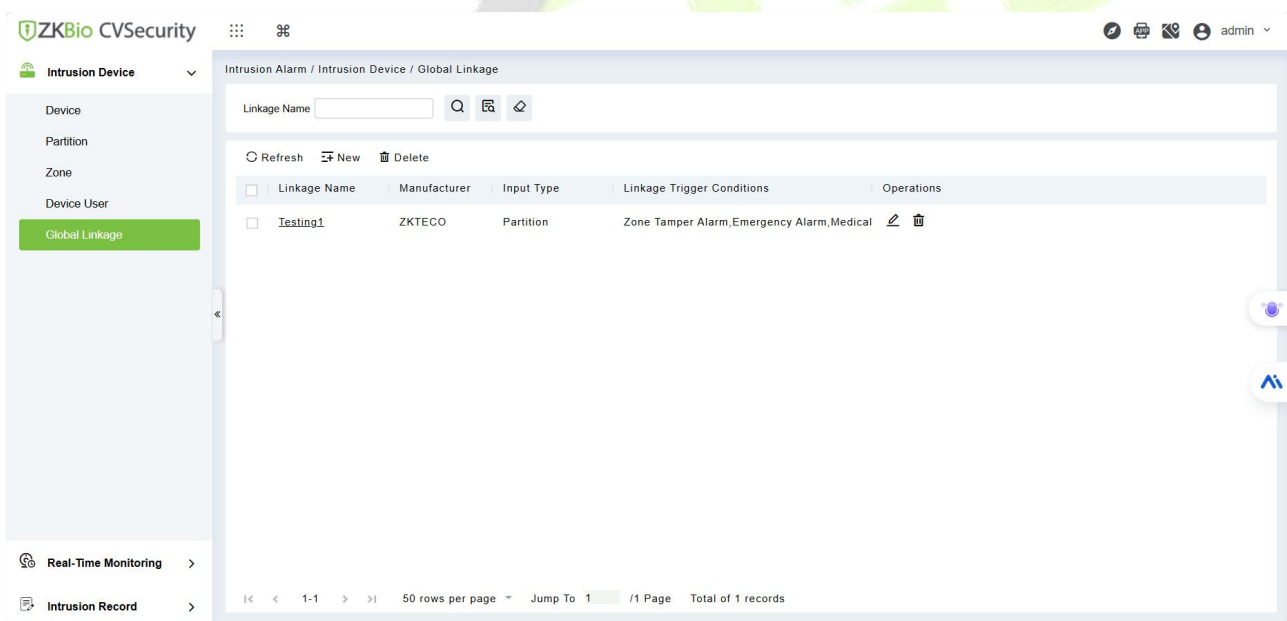
### 17.1.4 Device User

This menu is used to manage users and passwords for the alarm host device. After the configuration is completed, please click "Update Device User" to synchronize with the device. Please note: The current alarm host of ZKTeco does not support this function. You need to configure the user password on the web page of the device.



## 17.1.5 Global Linkage

It is used to configure the system linkage. When the sensor detects an abnormality, it can trigger linkage with systems such as the alarm or video systems.



### 17.1.5.1 New

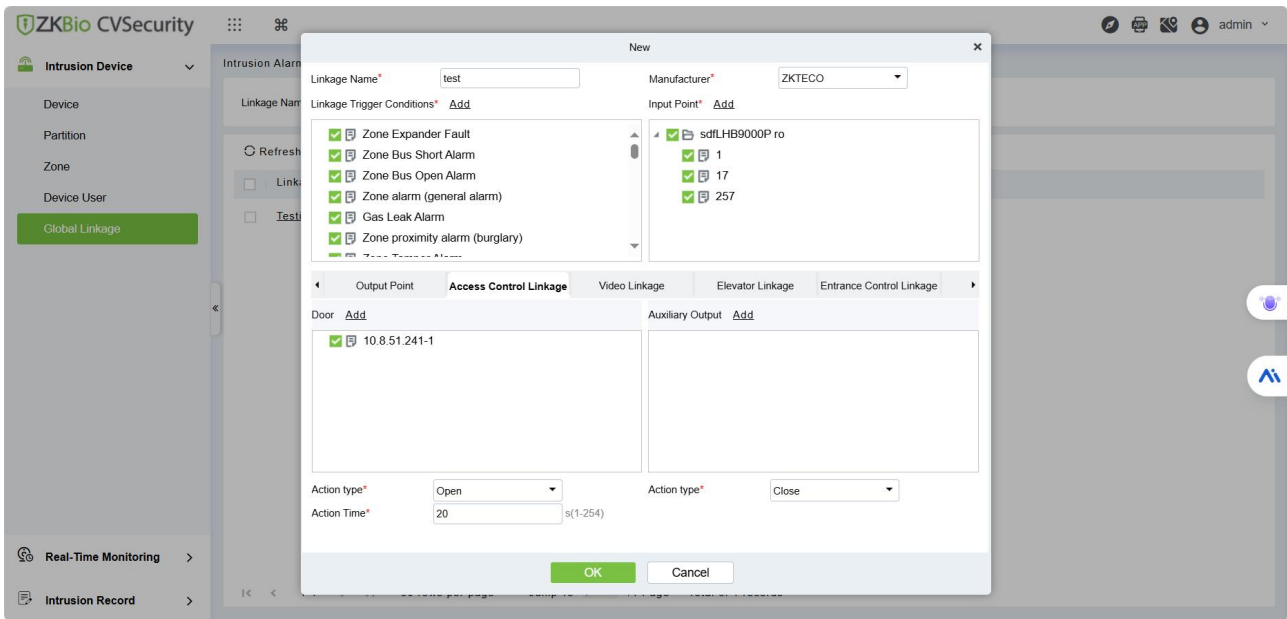
After clicking "New", you can configure the linkage task. As shown in the figure below:

**Linkage Name:** Customize the name of the linkage task.

**Manufacturer:** The brand of the alarm host. After selection, the Input Points of this brand will be automatically filtered.

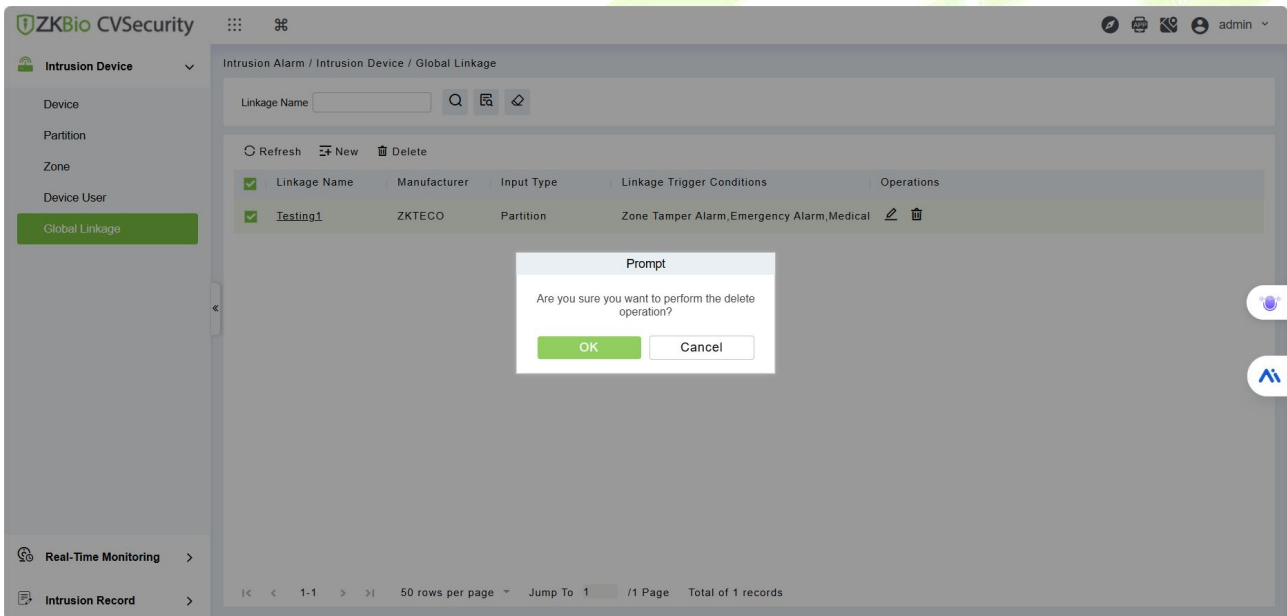
**Linkage Trigger Conditions:** Select partition or protection zone alarm events.

**Input Point:** Select the device or partition, which will be filtered according to the selected brand.



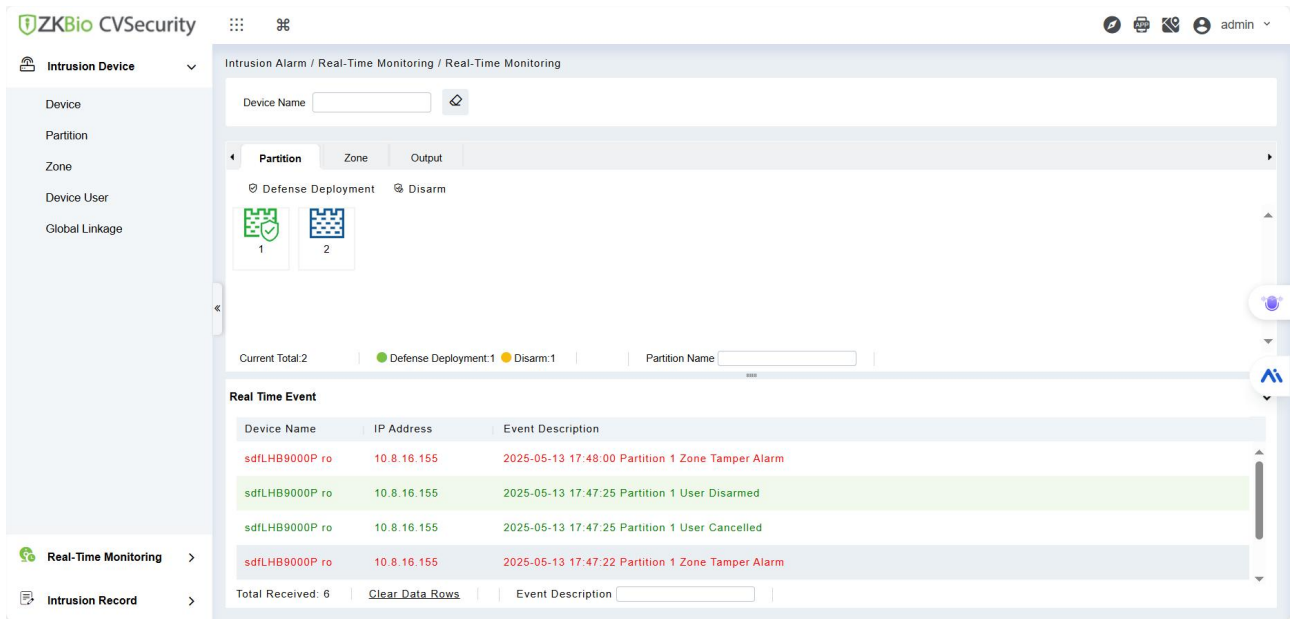
### 17.1.5.2 Delete

You can select a linkage task from the list and click "Delete" to complete the deletion operation.



## 17.2 Real-time Monitoring

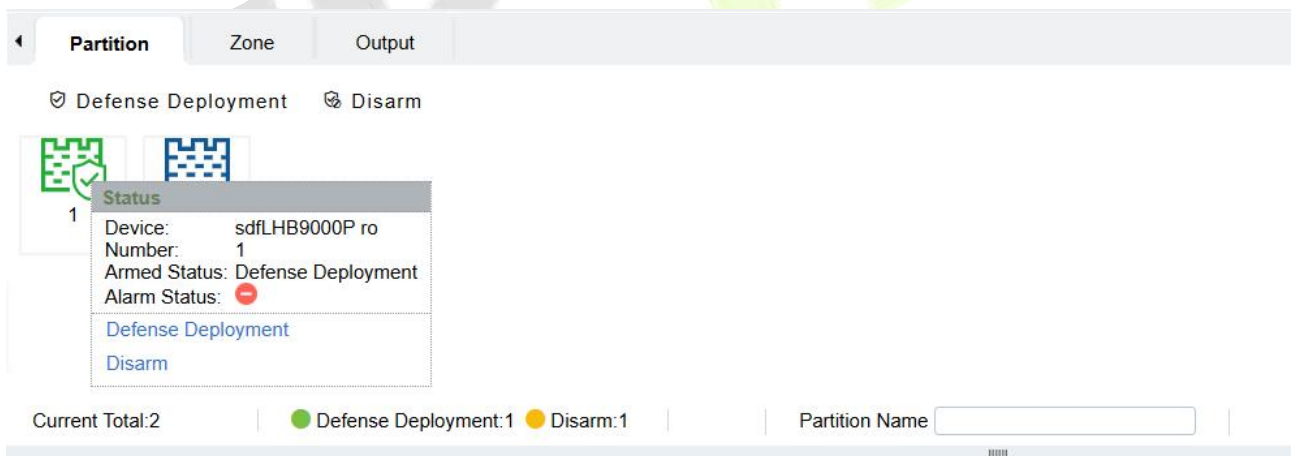
View the current device status or event content in real time.





### 17.2.1 Partition

**Quick operations:**

- 1) Click on a partition, then click the "Arm" or "Disarm" button on the quick action panel to perform the corresponding operation.
- 2) Select multiple partitions by clicking their icons, then use the "Arm" or "Disarm" buttons at the top to apply the action to all selected partitions.



The explanation of the status icons is as follows:

| Parameter   | Description  |
|---|--|
|  | It indicates that it is currently in the armed state.    |
|  | It indicates that it is currently in the disarmed state. |



## 17.2.2 Zone

### Quick operations:

- 1) Click on a protection zone and then click "Bypass" or "Cancel Bypass" on the quick operation page to perform the quick operation.
- 2) Click on the icons of multiple protection zones to select them in batches, and then click the "Bypass" or "Cancel Bypass" button above to perform the quick operation.



The explanation of the status icons is as follows:

| Parameter  | Description                 |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <br>17 | Not configured for bypass;  |
| <br>1 | Bypass has been configured. |

## 17.2.3 Real Time Event

View the current event in real time.

- **Clear Data Rows:** Clicking it will delete all events on the current page.

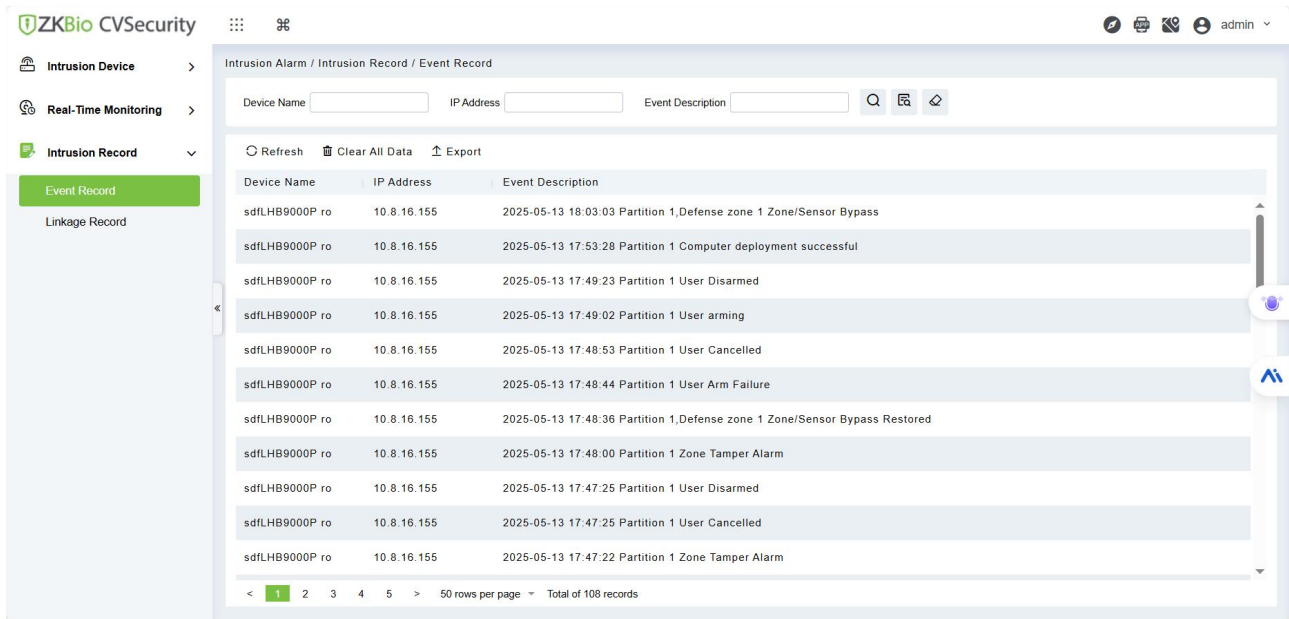
| Real Time Event |             |   |
|-----------------|-------------|---|
| Device Name     | IP Address  | Event Description   |
| sdfLHB9000P ro  | 10.8.16.155 | 2025-05-13 18:03:03 Partition 1,Defense zone 1 Zone/Sensor Bypass |
| sdfLHB9000P ro  | 10.8.16.155 | 2025-05-13 17:53:28 Partition 1 Computer deployment successful    |
| sdfLHB9000P ro  | 10.8.16.155 | 2025-05-13 17:49:23 Partition 1 User Disarmed                     |
| sdfLHB9000P ro  | 10.8.16.155 | 2025-05-13 17:49:02 Partition 1 User arming                       |

Total Received: 13 | [Clear Data Rows](#) | Event Description

## 17.3 Intrusion Record

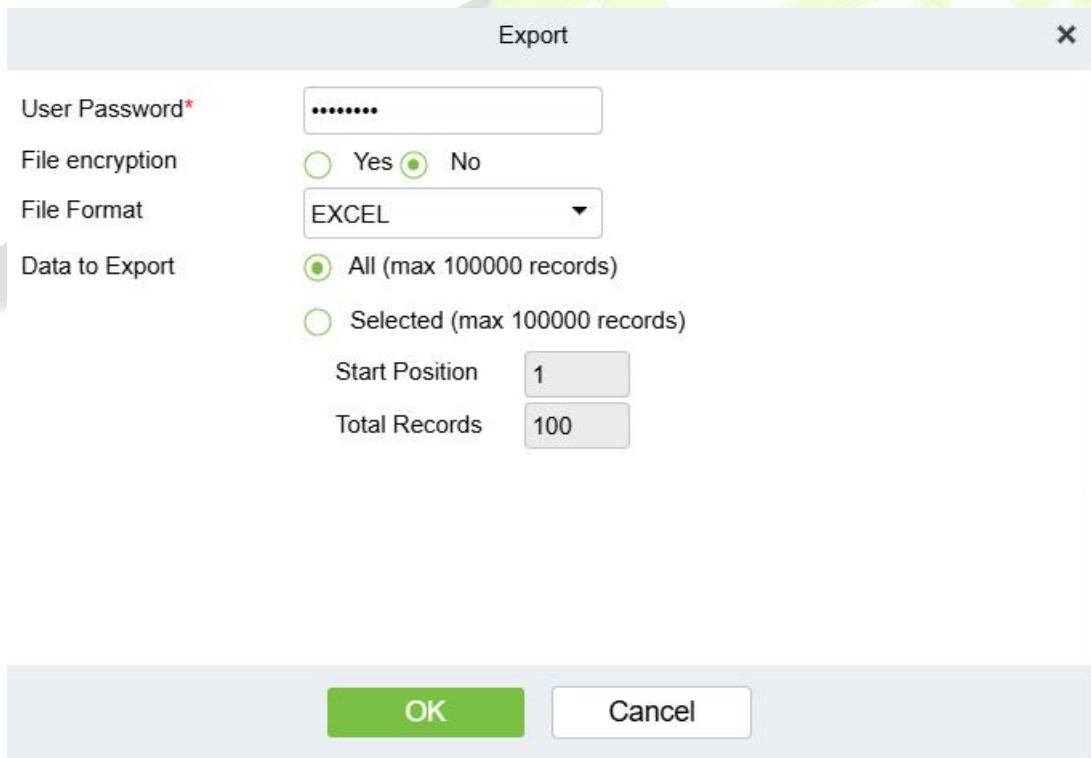
### 17.3.1 Event Record

View the event logs of all alarm hosts.



### 17.3.1.1 Export

After clicking "Export", enter the user password and basic configuration, and then you can export the report.




● **Result verification:**

The exported report is shown in the following figure:

| Event Record   |                |  |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Device Name    | IP Address     | Event Description  |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 18:03:03 Partition 1,Defense zone 1 Zone/Sensor Bypass          |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:53:28 Partition 1 Computer deployment successful             |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:49:23 Partition 1 User Disarmed                              |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:49:02 Partition 1 User arming                                |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:48:53 Partition 1 User Cancelled                             |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:48:44 Partition 1 User Arm Failure                           |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:48:36 Partition 1,Defense zone 1 Zone/Sensor Bypass Restored |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:48:00 Partition 1 Zone Tamper Alarm                          |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:47:25 Partition 1 User Disarmed                              |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:47:25 Partition 1 User Cancelled                             |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:47:22 Partition 1 Zone Tamper Alarm                          |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2025-05-13 17:45:39 Partition 1 Time/Date Reset                            |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2049-09-14 01:37:17 Partition 2 User Disarmed                              |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2049-09-14 01:11:29 Partition 2 User arming                                |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2049-09-14 01:10:52 Partition 1,Defense zone 1 Zone/Sensor Bypass          |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2049-09-14 01:10:08 Partition 1,Defense zone 1 Zone/Sensor Bypass Restored |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2049-09-14 00:58:32 Partition 1 Computer deployment successful             |
| sdfLHB9000P ro | 10. 8. 16. 155 | 2049-09-14 00:57:59 Partition 1,Defense zone 1                             |

### 17.3.2 Linkage Record

View all linkage records.

**Media File:**You can click the icon  in the list to view the pictures or videos captured by the video linkage.



### 17.3.2.1 Export

After clicking "Export", enter the user password and basic configuration, and then you can export the report.

Export ✕

User Password\*

File encryption  Yes  No

File Format

Data to Export  All (max 100000 records)  
 Selected (max 100000 records)

Start Position

Total Records

● **Result verification:**

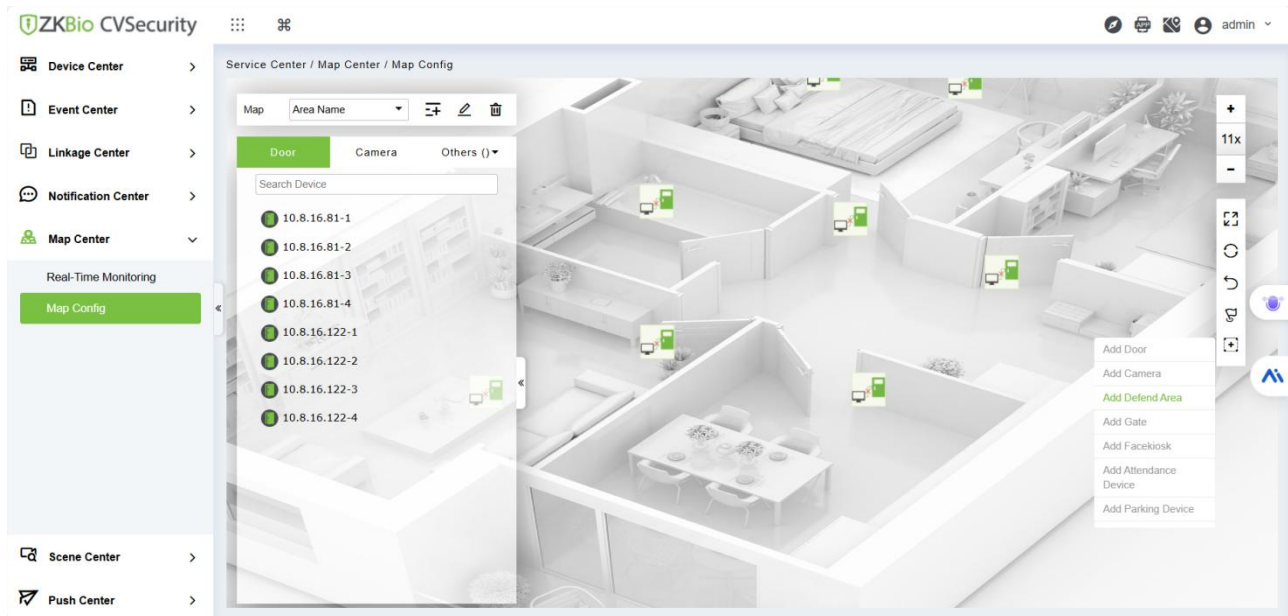
The exported report is shown in the following figure:

| Linkage Record      |           |             |             |                   |                   |  |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|--|
| Linkage Time        | Area Name | Device Name | IP Address  | Event Name        | Event Description |  |
| 2025-04-24 15:54:44 | Area Name | LHB9000P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Zone Fire Alarm   | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-24 16:20:40 | Area Name | LHB9001P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Medical Rescue    | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-25 10:22:32 | Area Name | LHB9002P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Zone Tamper Alarm | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-25 10:47:38 | Area Name | LHB9003P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Zone Fire Alarm   | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-25 10:47:40 | Area Name | LHB9004P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Zone Tamper Alarm | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-25 16:59:46 | Area Name | LHB9005P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Zone Tamper Alarm | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-25 17:47:52 | Area Name | LHB9006P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Medical Rescue    | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-27 08:56:54 | Area Name | LHB9007P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Zone Tamper Alarm | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-27 15:00:20 | Area Name | LHB9008P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Medical Rescue    | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-27 15:01:34 | Area Name | LHB9009P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Medical Rescue    | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-27 15:44:28 | Area Name | LHB9010P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Medical Rescue    | A Linkage         |  |
| 2025-04-27 15:45:08 | Area Name | LHB9011P ro | 10.8.16.155 | Medical Rescue    | A Linkage         |  |

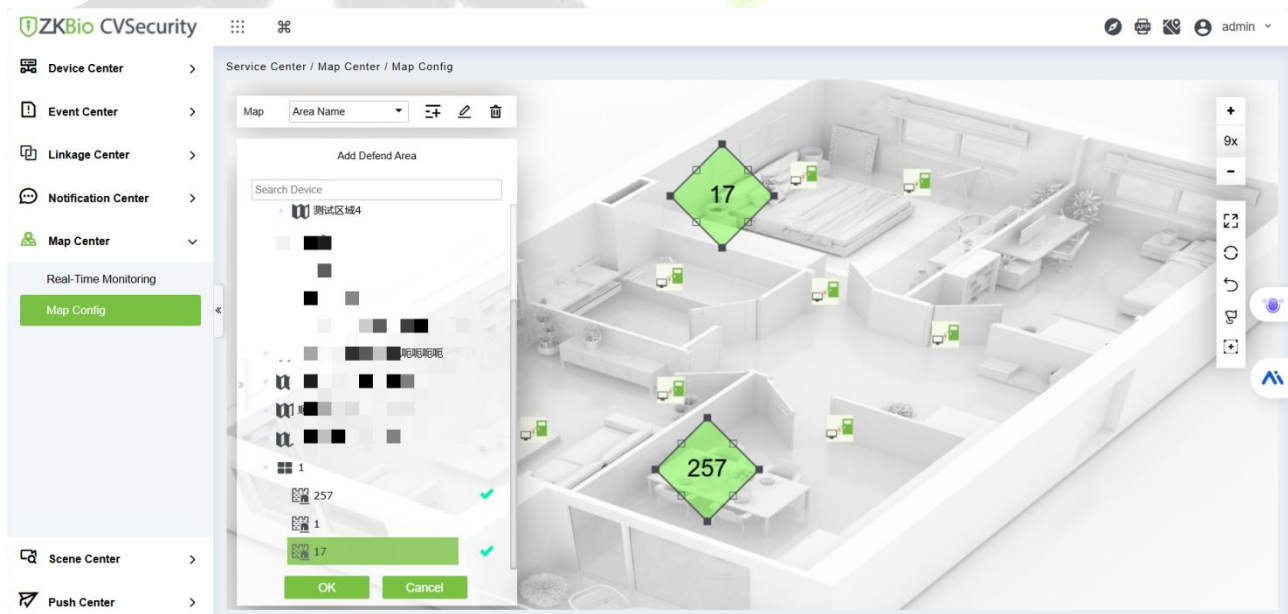
## 17.4 Real Time Monitoring on Map

### 17.4.1 Map Configure

Under the menu of **Service Center -> Map Center -> Map Configure**, in the right-side menu, first click the Add icon and select Add Defend Area.

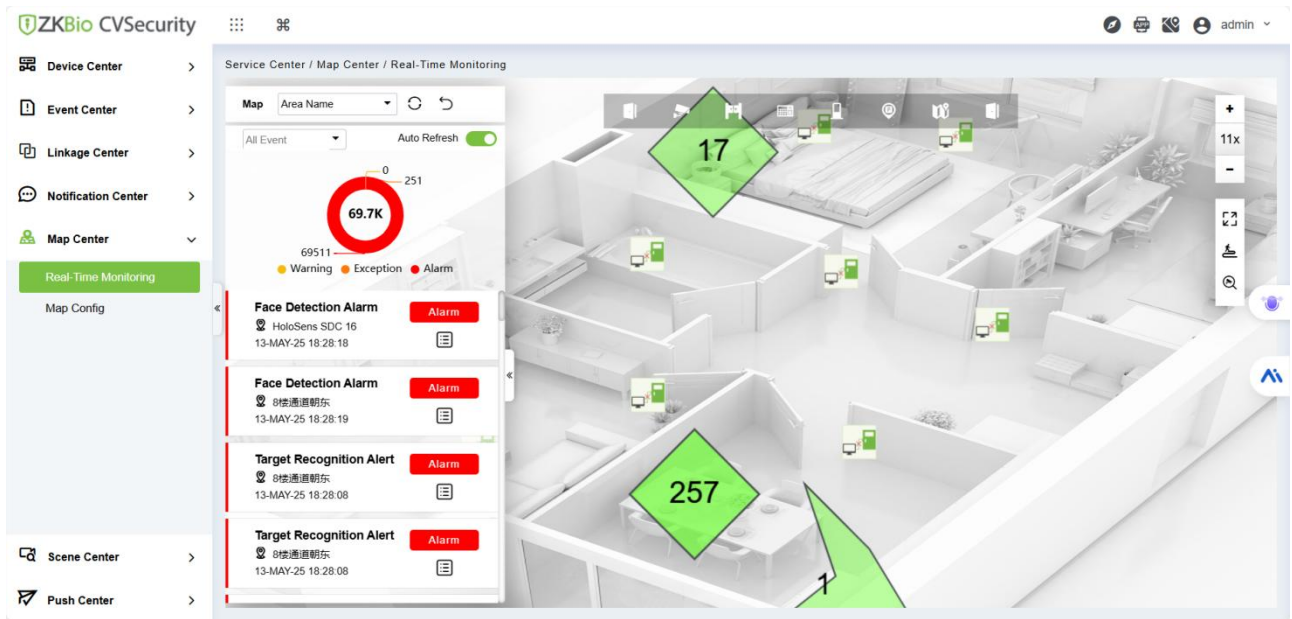


On the left side, select the corresponding protection area under "Add Defend Area", drag it onto the map, adjust the position and size of the protection area, and click "OK" to complete the configuration and save it.



### 17.4.2 Real Time Monitoring

Go to **Service Center -> Map Center -> Real Time Monitoring** to view the status of the protection zone in real time. When an abnormality occurs, the protection zone on the map will flash red continuously.

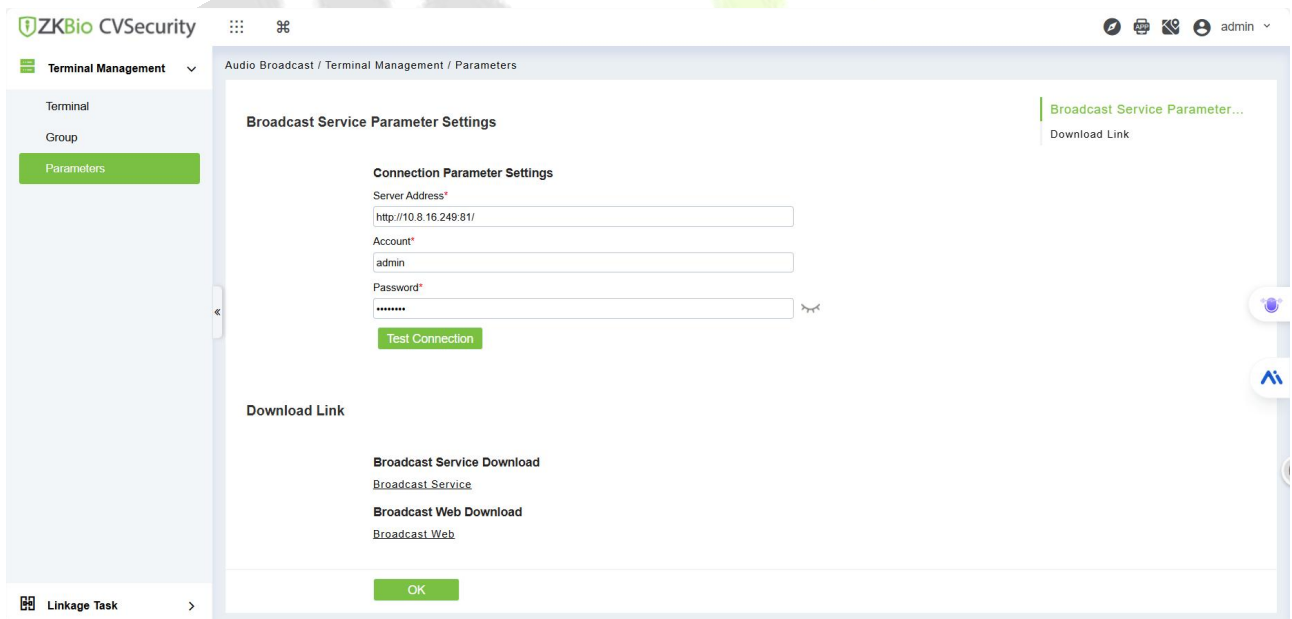


## 18 Audio Broadcast

This module is mainly used for synchronizing broadcast terminals and configuring linkage tasks.

### Operation Step :

#### Step 1 : Configure IP Broadcast Server Address

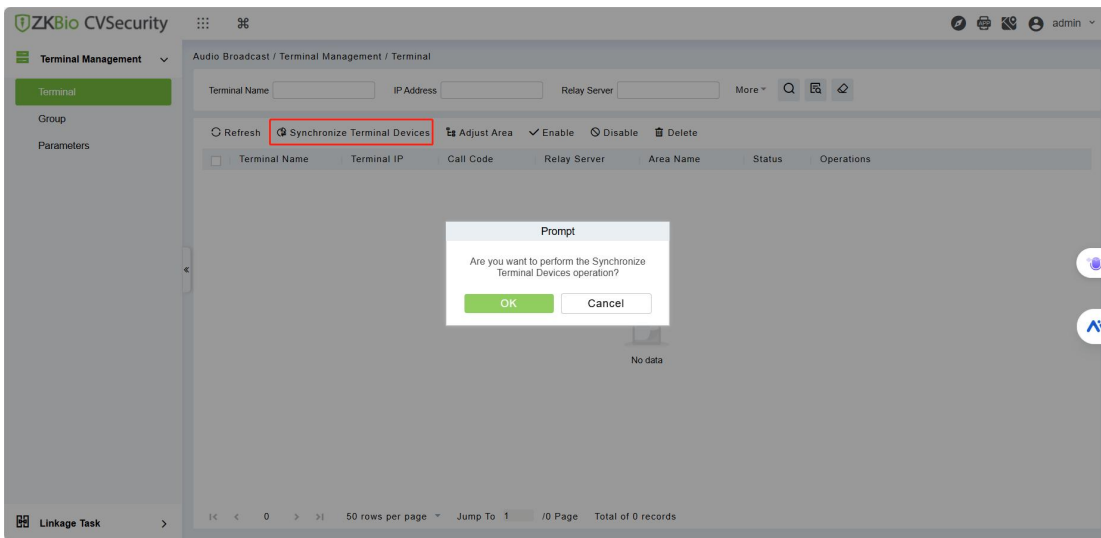


- **Server Address:** The server address of IP Broadcast. Please note that the format is http://broadcast ip: port.
- **Account:** IP Broadcast Web login account
- **Password:** IP Broadcast Web login password

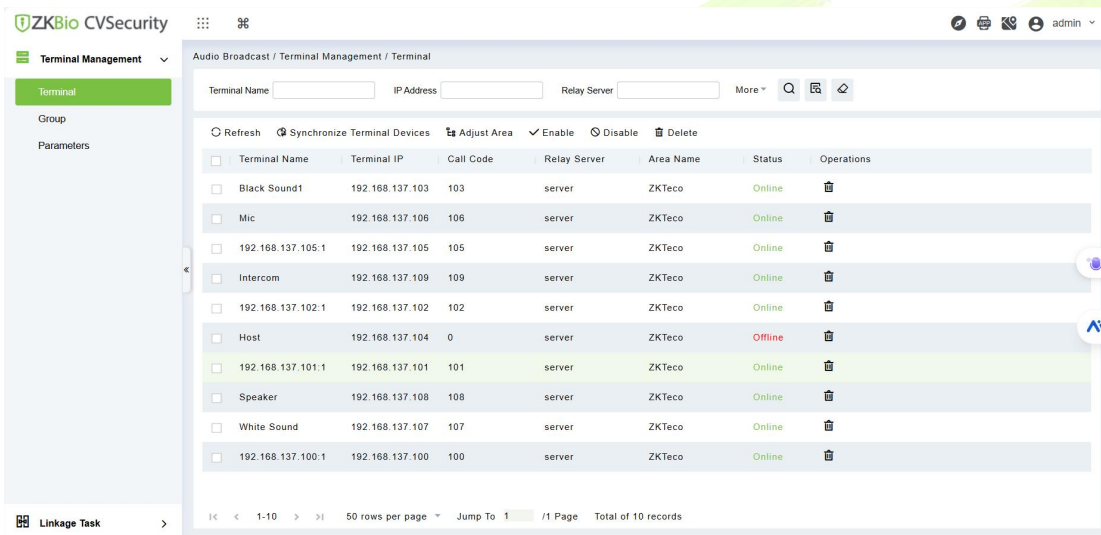
**Note:** You need to download, install and register the Broadcast Service and Broadcast Web System. For more details, you can refer to the IP Broadcast User Manual.

## Step 2: Synchronize the broadcast terminal to ZKBio CVSecurity

Go to the Terminal Management->Terminal menu and click on Synchronize Terminal Device

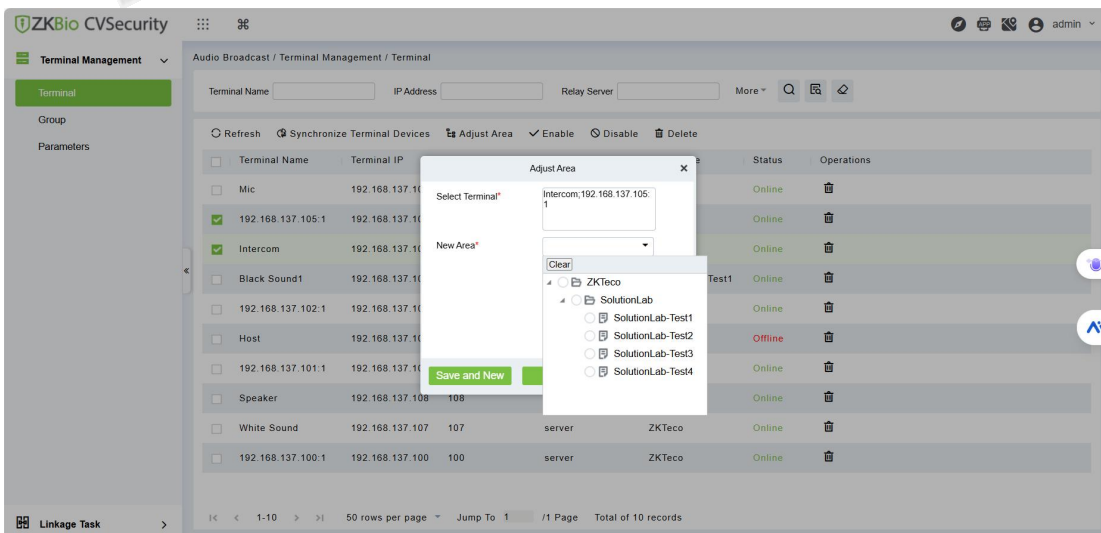


Click **OK** to automatically synchronize the terminal to ZKBio CVSecurity.



### ● Control space

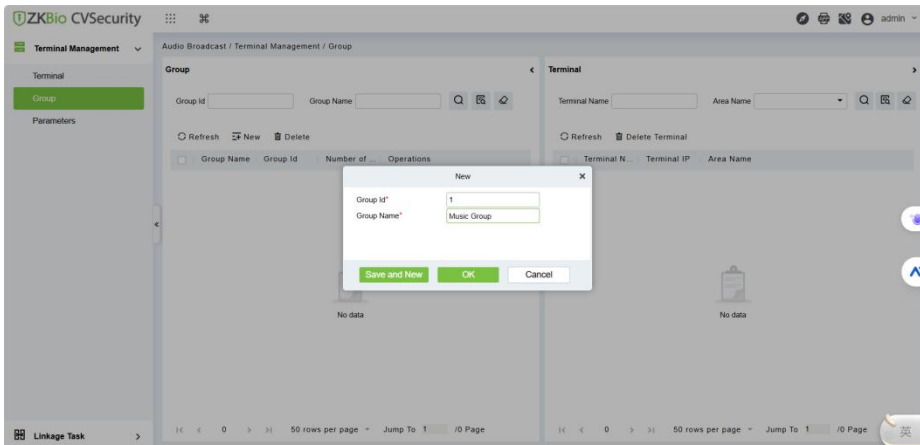
The adjustment area is easy to display in the center of the map




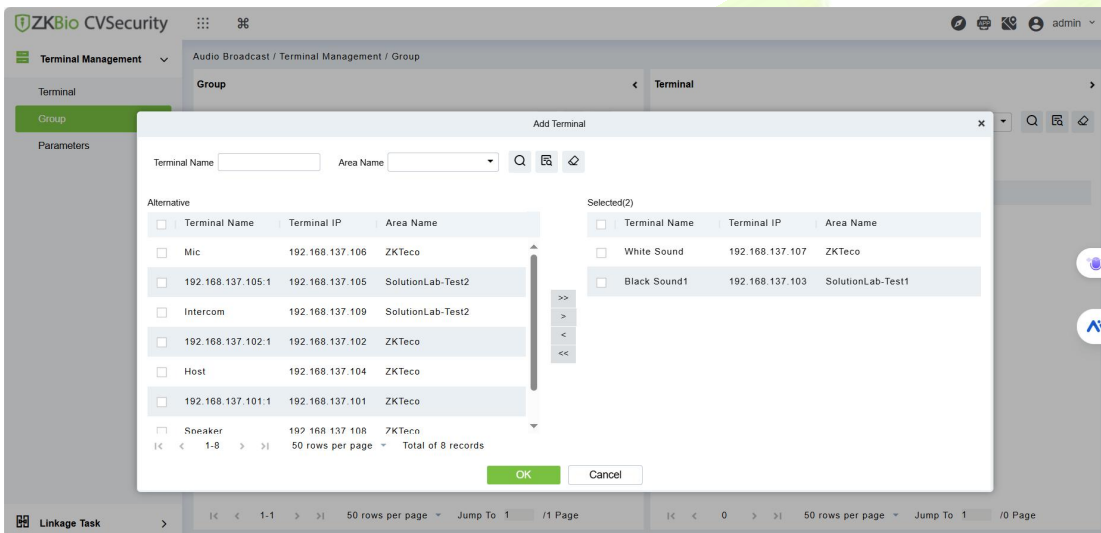
● **Add groups**

Grouping facilitates management and can be used for linked task selection and group playback;

Go to **Terminal Management-> Group** and click **New** to create a group.



Click on the group list  to add a terminal to the group. Click OK to display it in the right list.

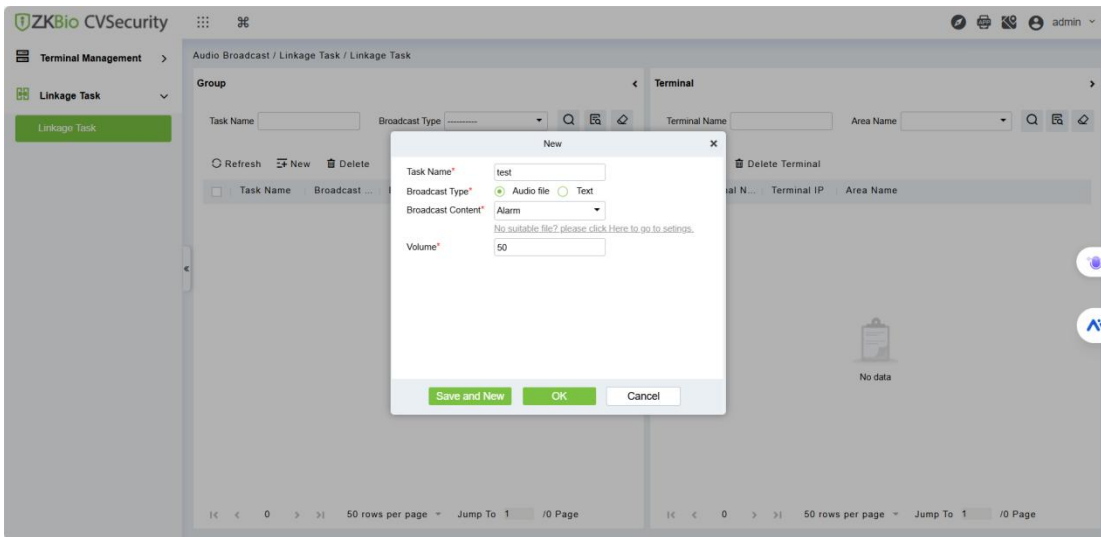


**Step 3 :Configure the linked task**

① **Voice tasks**

Create a voice task, upload the audio file, and when the linkage condition is triggered, the audio file will be played.

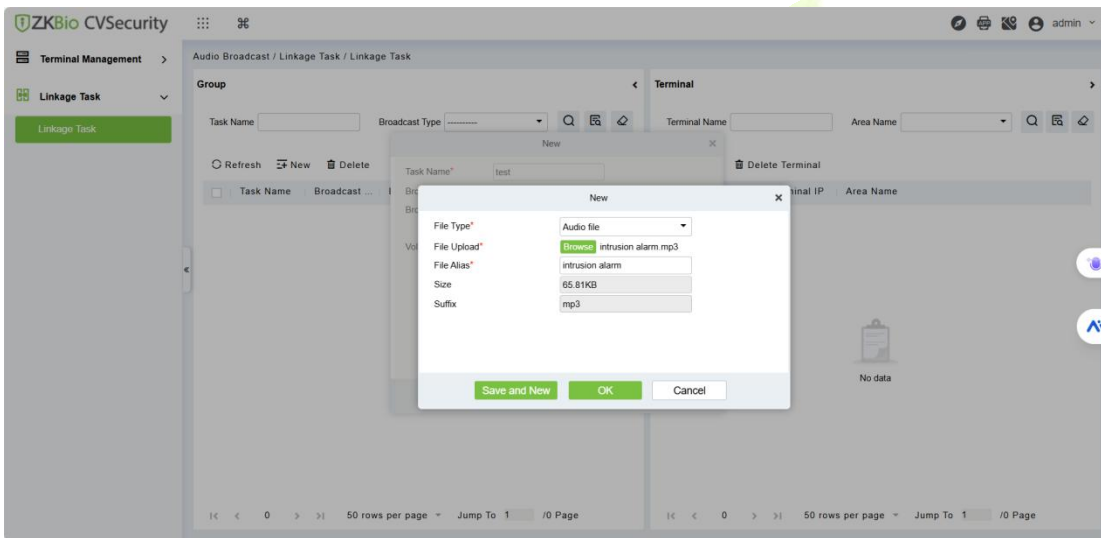
Linkage Task Click **New**, Broadcast Connect select the audio file.



If there are five audio files, you can click to **upload the audio file**.

[No suitable file? please click Here to go to settings.](#)

can click to **upload the**



## 2 Text tasks

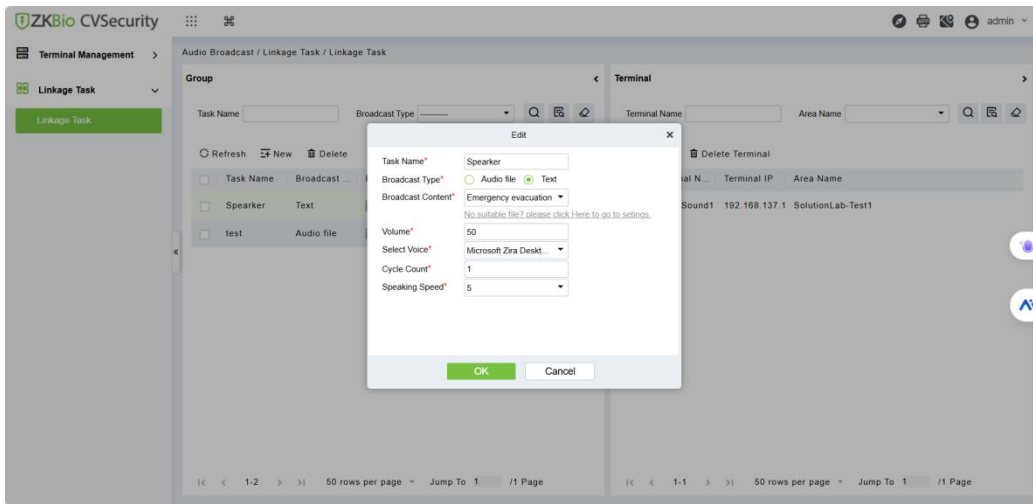
Click **New**, Broadcast Type select Text to start the text task.

**Broadcast Content:** Select the text file

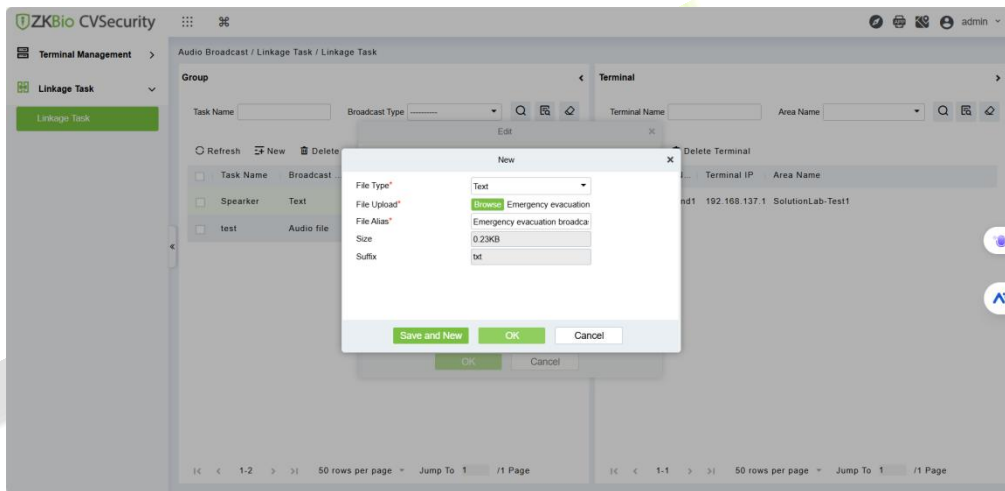
**Select Voice:** Select the sound to play the text content. Currently, only Chinese or English is supported.

**Cycle Count:** Number of times to play the loop


**Speaking Speed:** Select the speech rate, which is set to 5 by default. The larger the value, the faster the speech rate.

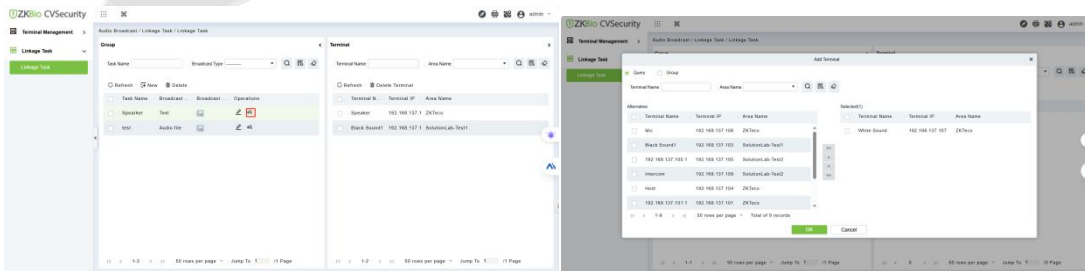


If there is no text file, you can click [No suitable file? please click Here to go to settings.](#) to add text content, such as fire emergency broadcast guidance, you can enter escape precautions and other content in the text, when the fire triggers, the text will automatically play the content (text to voice)



③ **Assign the task to the terminal**

Click the icon  in the list to assign a terminal to the task.



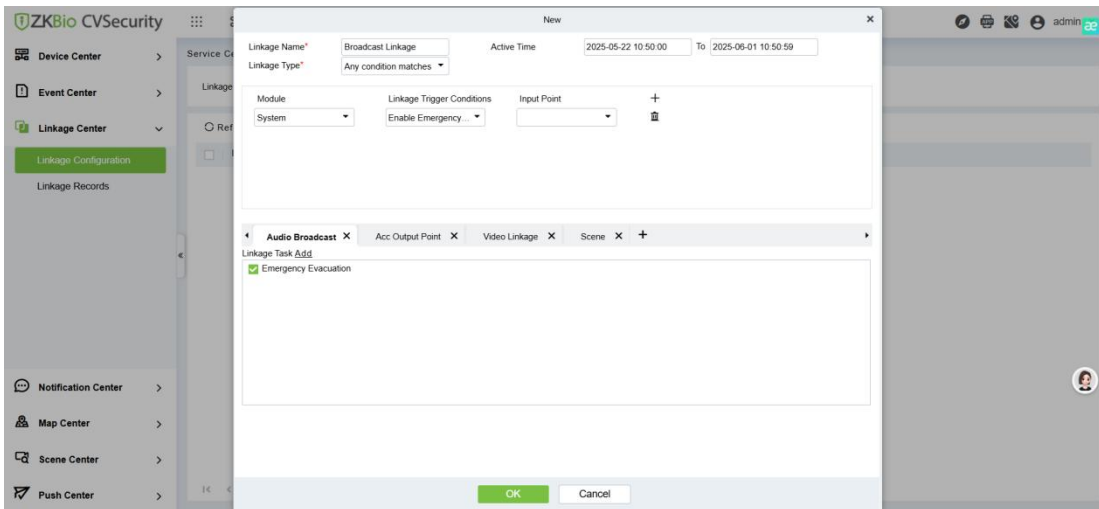
**Step 4: Configure broadcast linkage**

Go to **Service Center->Linkage Configuration**, click New, you can select the corresponding trigger conditions and output actions.

- **Active Time:** Time of linkage activation
- **Linkage Type:** You can choose any condition match or multiple conditions combination; Any condition match means that when any trigger condition matches, the linkage action output will start; Multiple conditions combination means that the linkage action output will only be

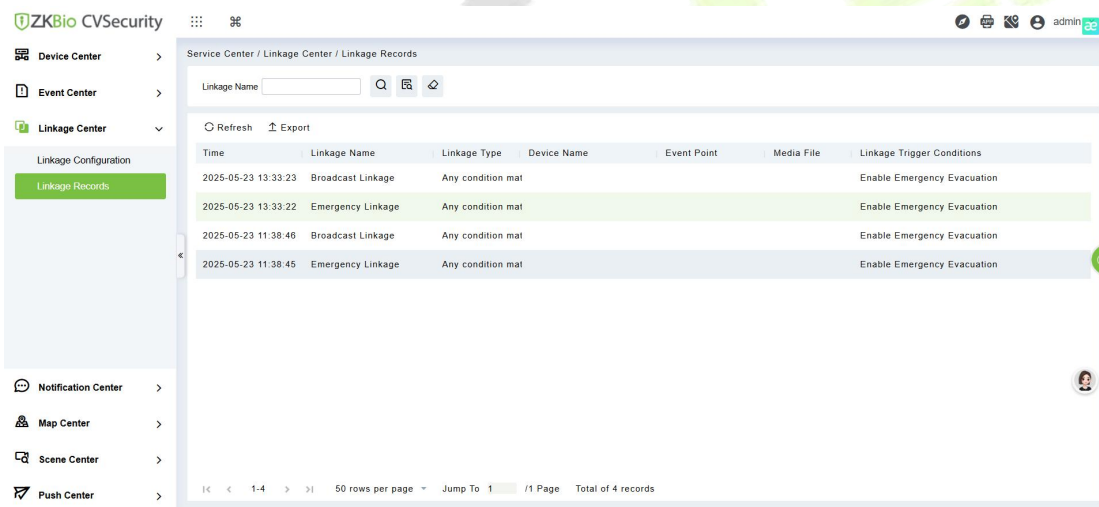
output when all selected trigger conditions match.

As shown in the figure below: In the example, System module-Enable Emergency Evacuation is selected as the trigger condition; Audio Broadcast Module-Emergency Evacuation Text Task (text task configured in Step 6) is selected as the output action



● **Result verification:**

When the condition is triggered, the corresponding action will be output in conjunction with it. As shown in the figure below, after the emergency assembly is opened, the broadcast system will automatically start the emergency escape guidance and convert the text into voice.



## 19 Energy Saving

The module automatically controls lighting and air conditioning in meeting rooms and offices based on occupancy detected by smart sensors.

When rooms are unoccupied, systems automatically shut down to reduce energy consumption and costs, move towards a greener future.

**Note:** Compatible only with Lifesmart IoT devices.

## 19.1 Device Management

The user needs to first add a gateway, and then add terminal devices to it.

### 19.1.1 Gateway

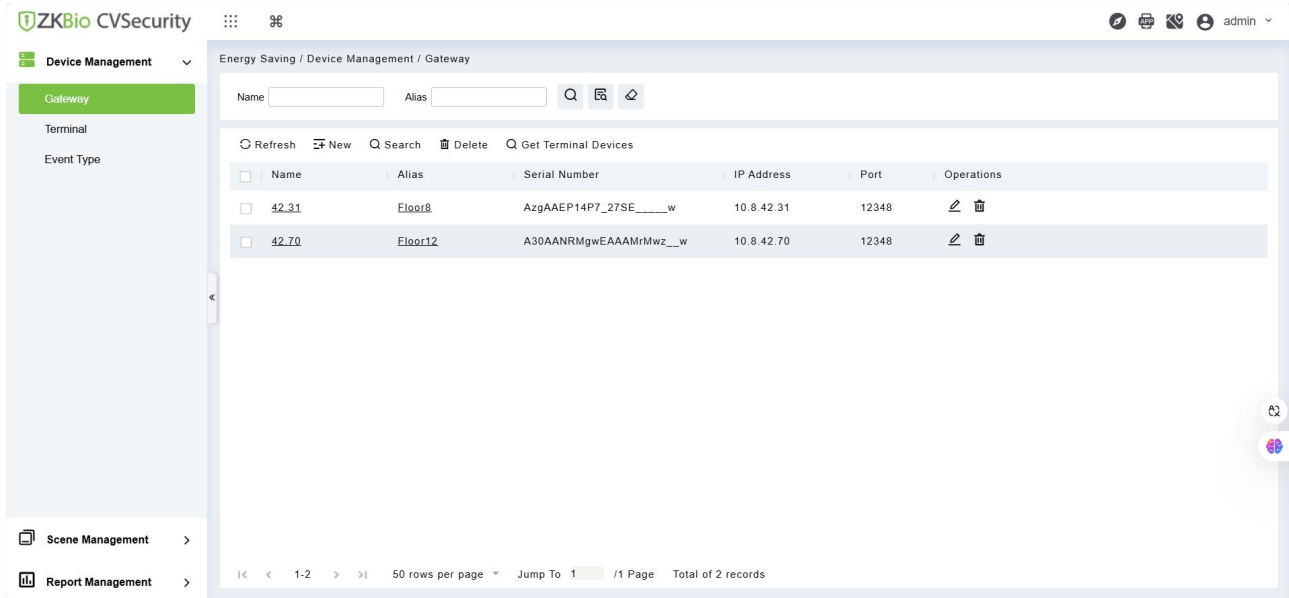


Figure 18- 1 Gateway

#### 19.1.1.1 New

Click on **Device Management > Gateway > New** enter the required details and then click **OK** to add a new gateway.

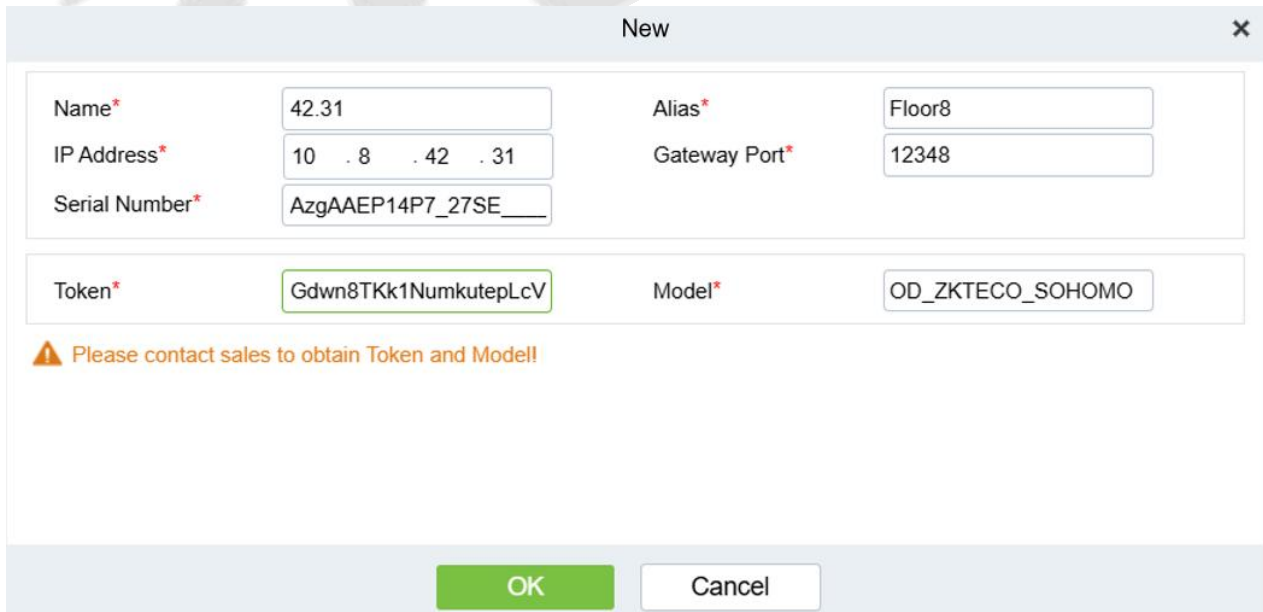


Figure 18- 2 New Gateway

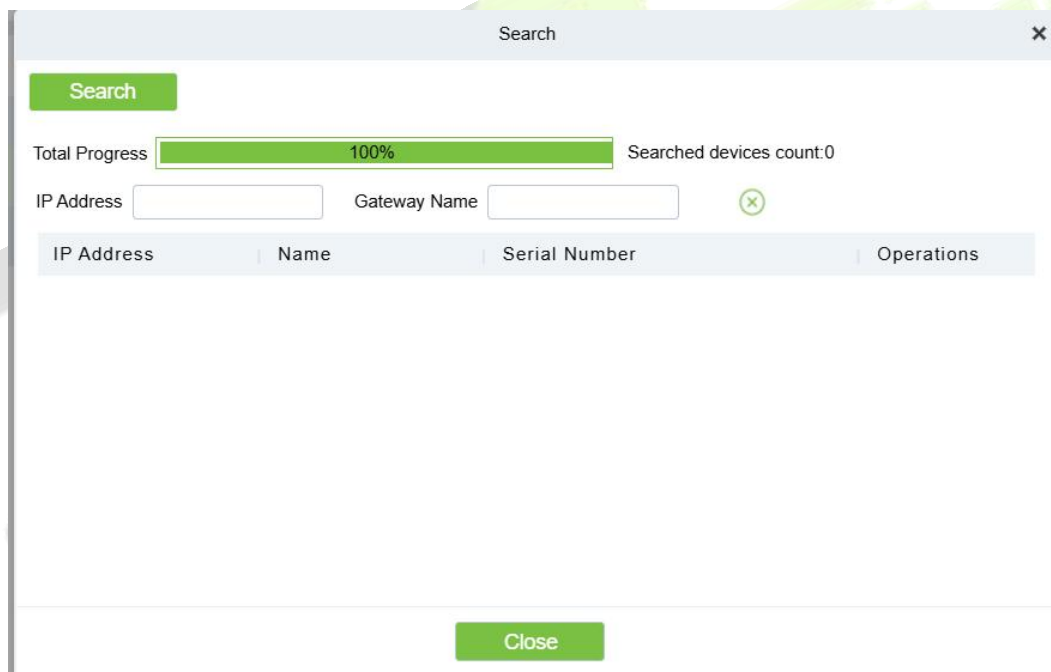
| Parameter | Description               |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| Name      | Enter name of the gateway |

| Parameter     | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Alias         | Enter the gateway's alias, which can be displayed in the ZKBio Zexus APP |
| IP Address    | Enter IP address of the gateway  |
| Gateway Port  | Gateway port number, default is 12348                                    |
| Serial Number | The serial number of the gateway .                                       |
| Token         | To obtain the Token value, please get in touch with our sales team.      |
| Model         | To obtain the Model value, please get in touch with our sales team.      |

**Table18-1 Linkage parameters**

### 19.1.1.2 Search

Click **Search** allows you to add gateway through the search function.



**Figure 18- 3 New Gateway**

**Note:** ZKBio CVSecurity and the gateway must be in the same network segment to be searched out,For gateways in the different network segments,they can be added manually.

### 19.1.1.3 Delete

Click **Delete** removes the gateway.

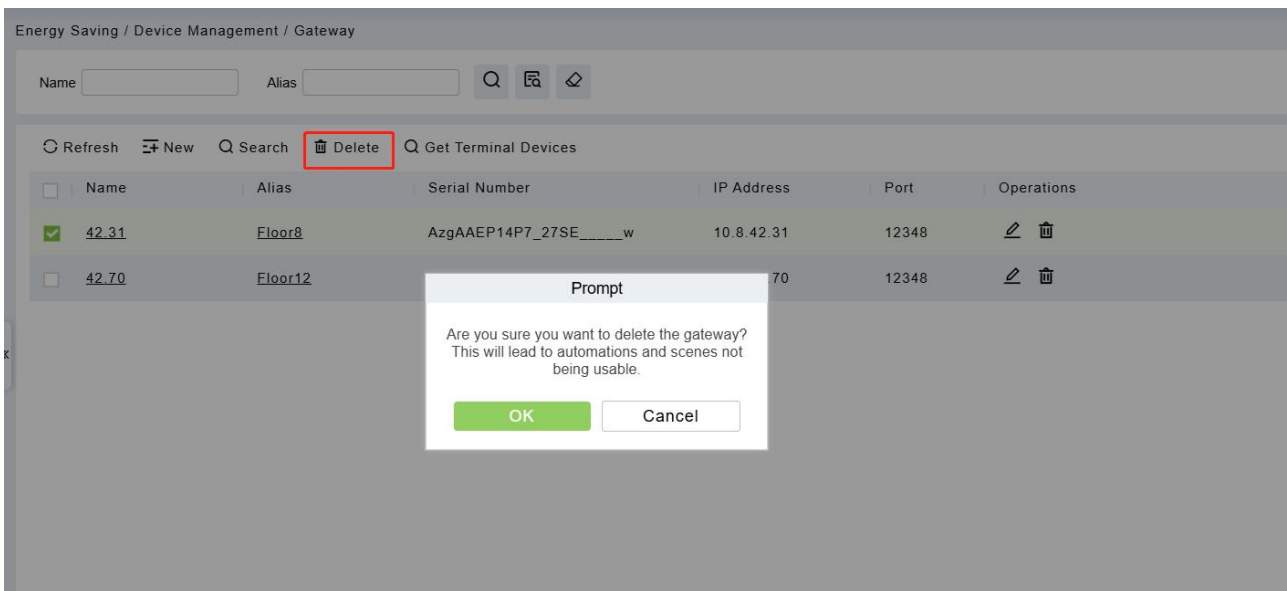


Figure 18- 4 Delete Gateway

### 19.1.1.4 Get Terminal Device

If the user has already added terminals to this gateway through the Lifesmart app, they can click 'Get Terminal Devices' to display all terminals connected to the gateway in the **Energy Saving -> Device Management -> Terminal** list.

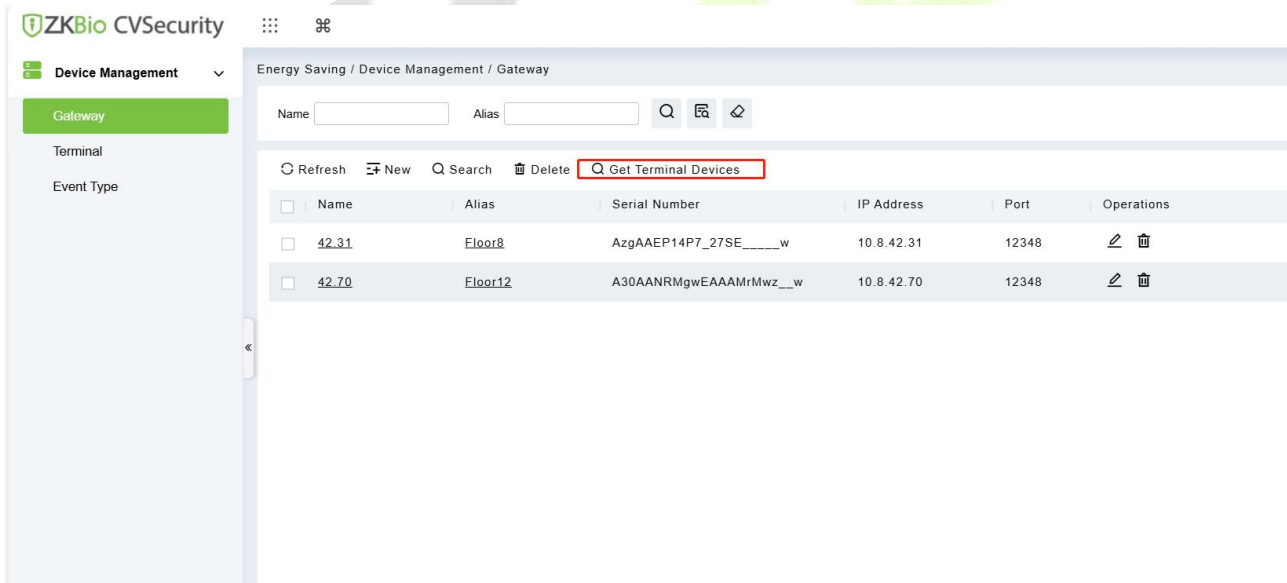
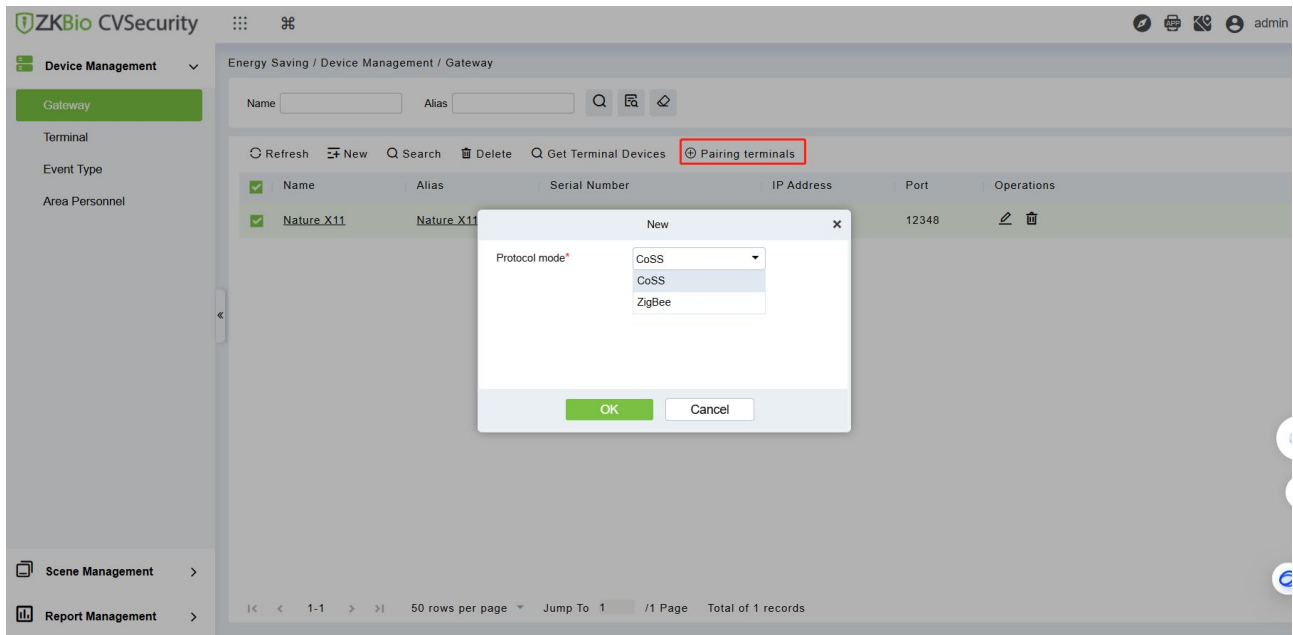


Figure 18- 5 Get Terminal Device

### 19.1.1.5 Pairing Terminals

Check the required gateway in the list, then click "**Pairing Terminals**", select the **Pairing Protocol**, click "**OK**", and the gateway will start pairing with nearby terminals.



### Precautions for pairing:

- 1) Before pairing the terminals, check the user manual of the terminal to confirm the protocol it uses.
- 2) Click "Pairing Terminals" and select the matching protocol. Its function is to send an instruction to the gateway to search for nearby devices.
- 3) Press and hold the pairing button of the terminal according to the pairing operation method of the terminal device.
- 4) Once it prompts that the pairing is successful, the pairing operation is completed. Only one terminal device can be paired in one pairing operation.

**Note:** The administrator can also achieve terminal pairing through the Mobile APP. Log in to the "ZKBio Zexus APP" to perform the operation.

### 19.1.2 Terminal

Terminals must be added to the gateway through the app and cannot be added directly through the software.

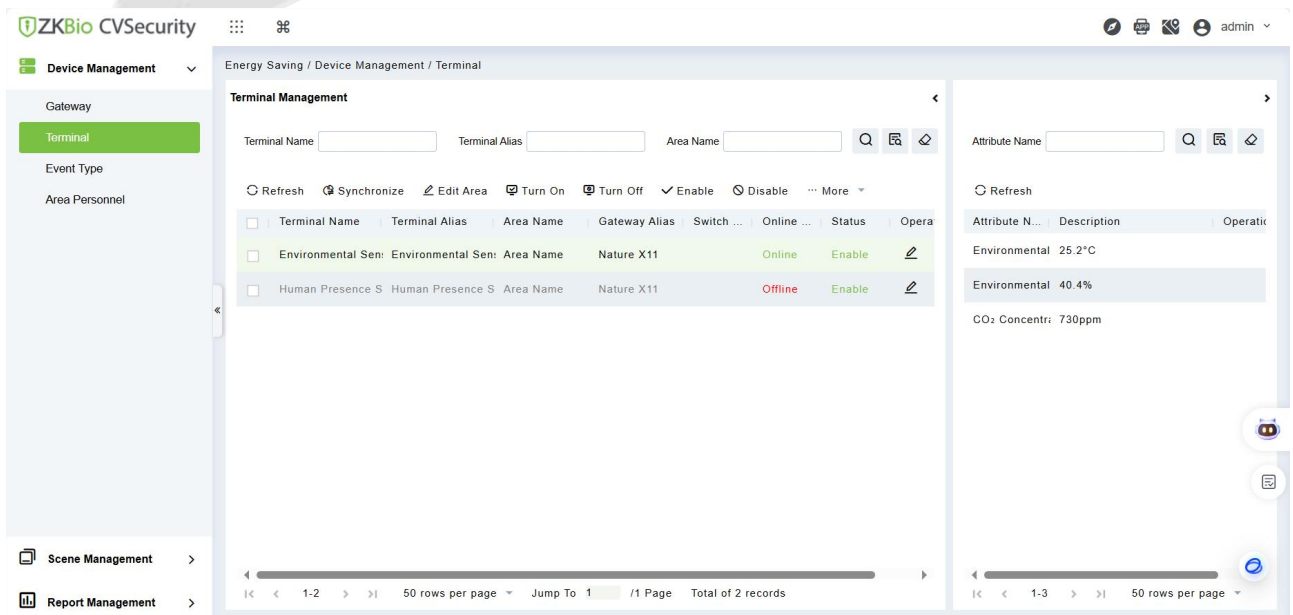


Figure 18-6 Terminal

### 19.1.2.1 Synchronize

Clicking the **Synchronize** button will displays the terminal devices added to the gateway in the list.

### 19.1.2.2 Edit Area

Modify the location area of the terminal.

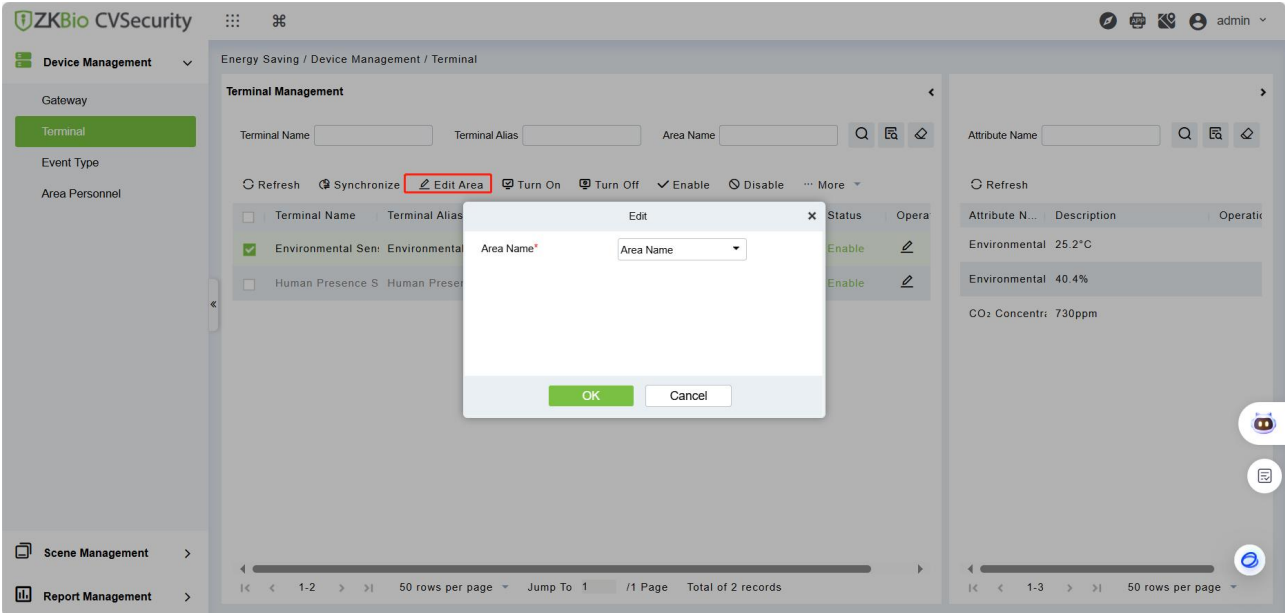


Figure 18-7 Edit Area

### 19.1.2.3 Turn On / Off

Remotely turn terminals on/off, such as air conditioners, lights, and other devices.

**Note:** Terminal devices of the sensor type do not support remote Turn On/Off.

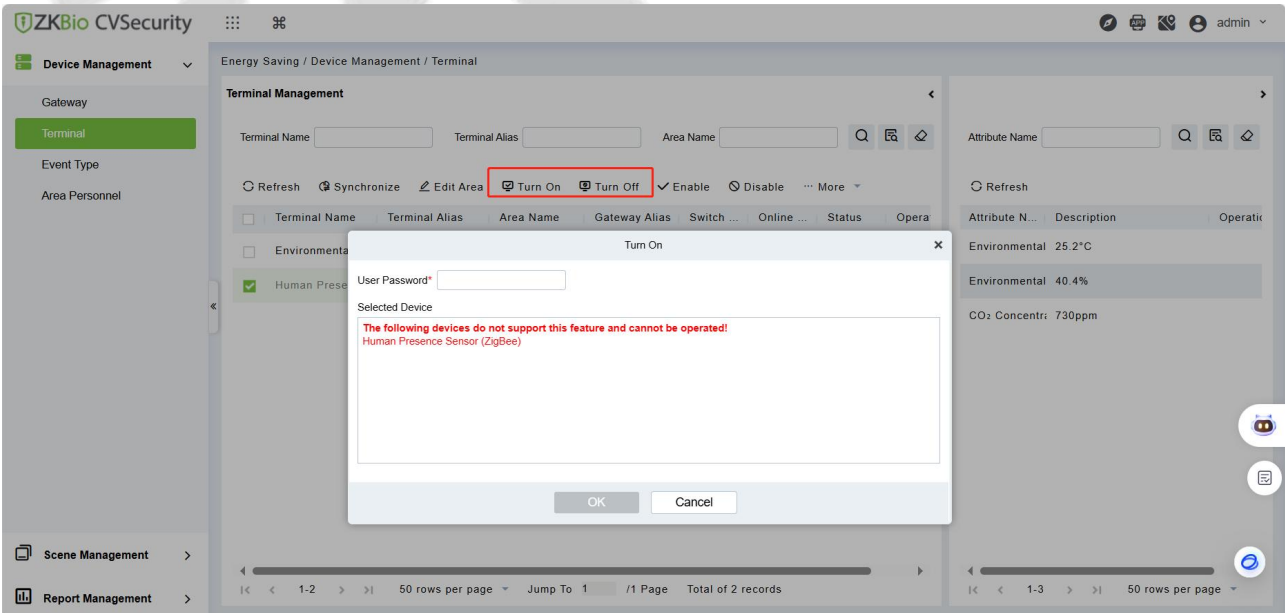


Figure 18-8 Remote Open

### 19.1.2.4 Enable / Disable

Remotely enable or disable terminals.

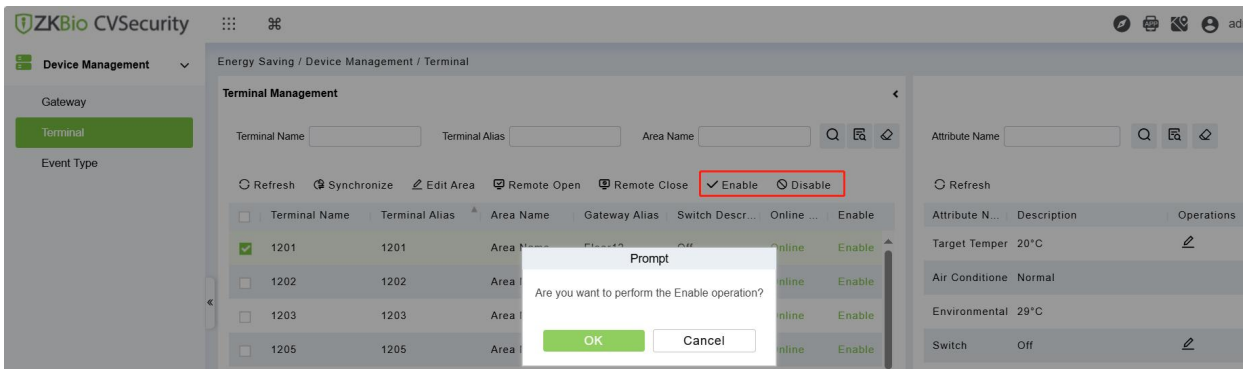


Figure 18- 9 Enable / Disable

### 19.1.2.5 Terminal Control

Once a terminal is selected, its current status will be displayed in the window on the right.

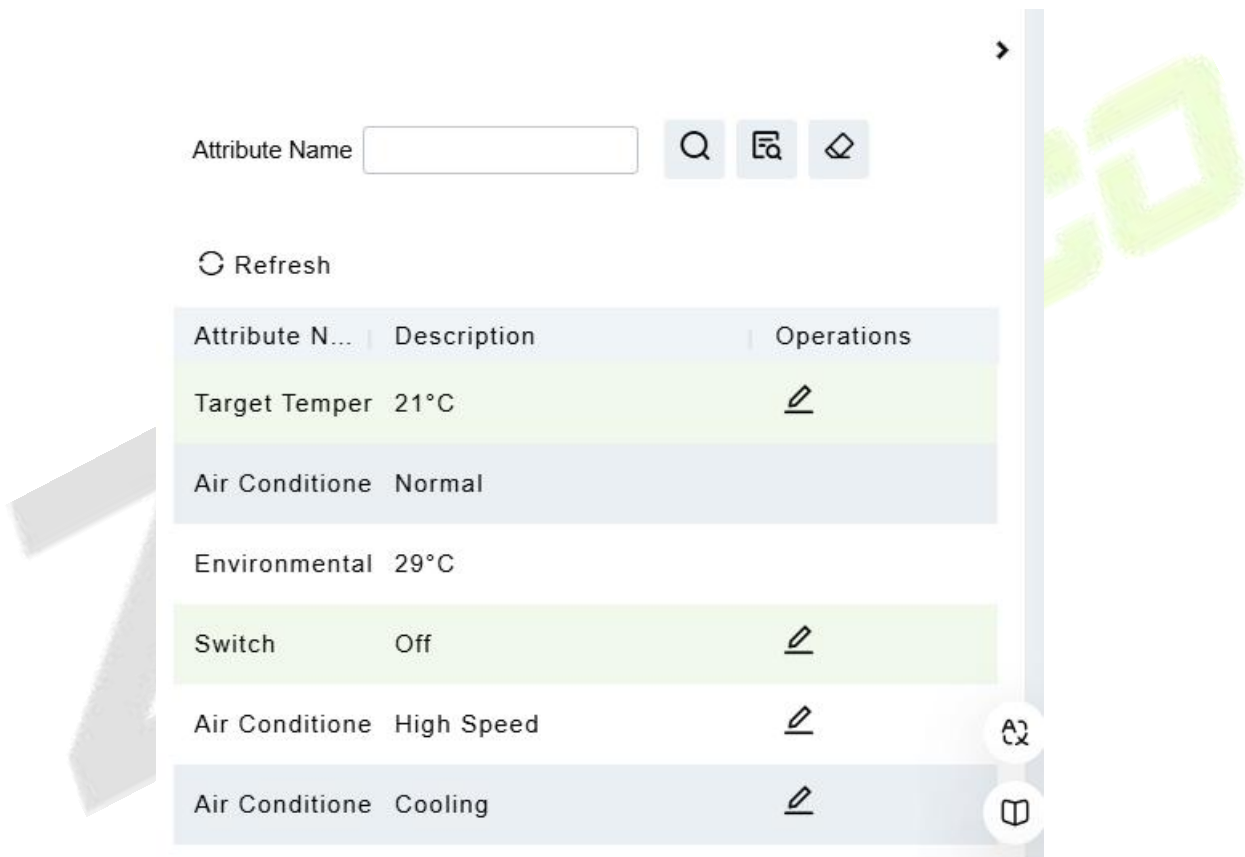


Figure 18- 10 Terminal Control

Click the edit button to adjust the terminal.

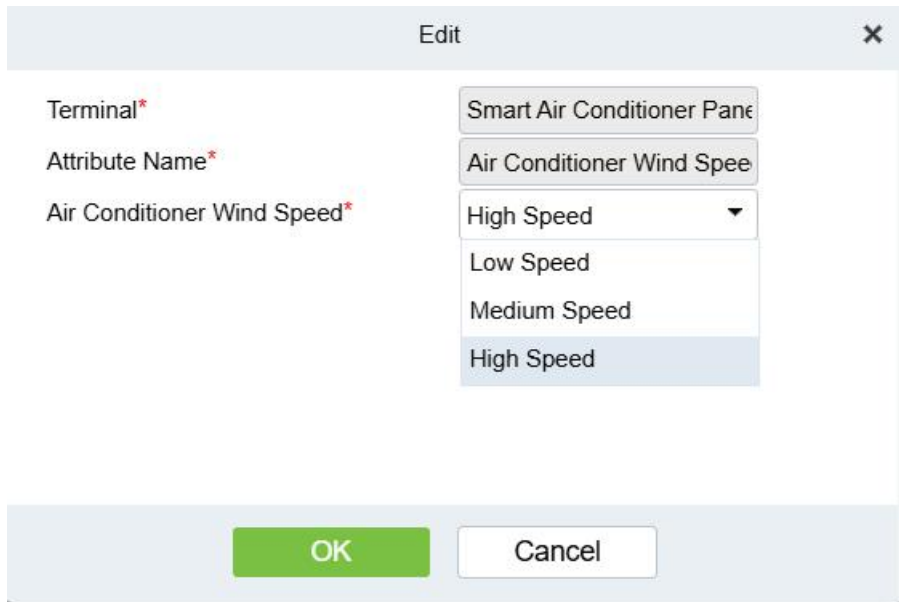


Figure 18- 11 Terminal Control

### 19.1.3 Event Type

The event type display all event types of the module, allowing administrators to edit event values, such as setting triggers for alarms when CO2 levels exceed a specified threshold.

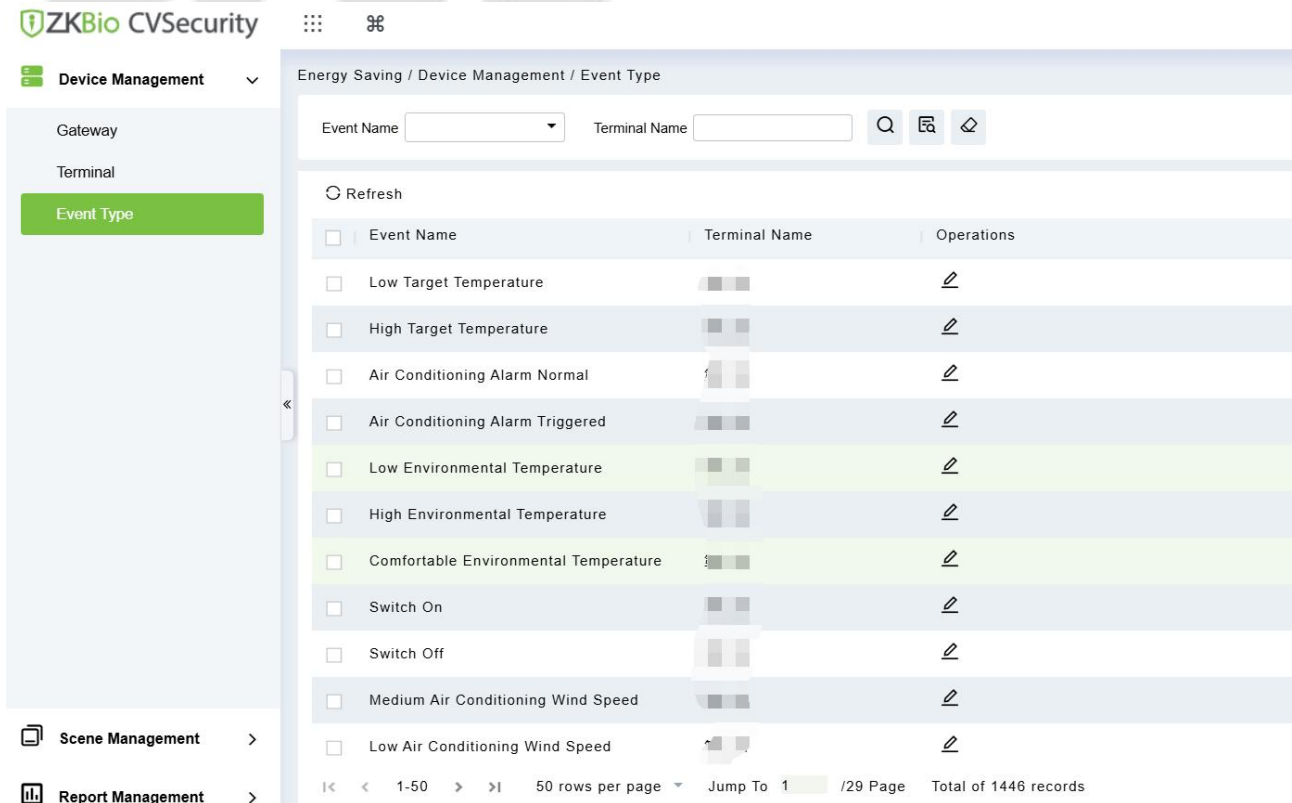



Figure 18- 12 Event Type

Click on the  icon to edit the values of specific event types.

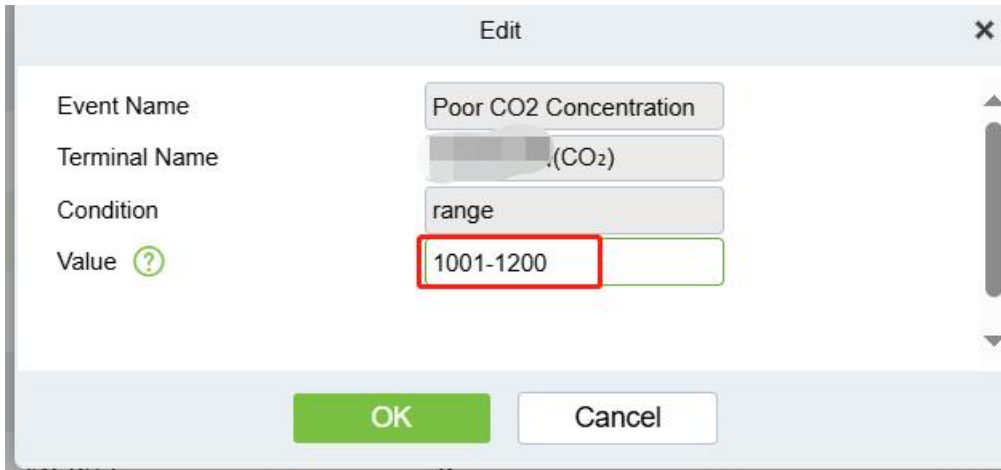


Figure 18- 13 Event Type

### 19.1.4 Area Personnel

This function is used to manage the operation permissions of personnel for terminals in different areas. For example, a person with ID 123 can only view and operate the terminals in Area A. After configuring here, when this person logs into the ZKBio Zexus APP, they can only operate the terminals in Area A.

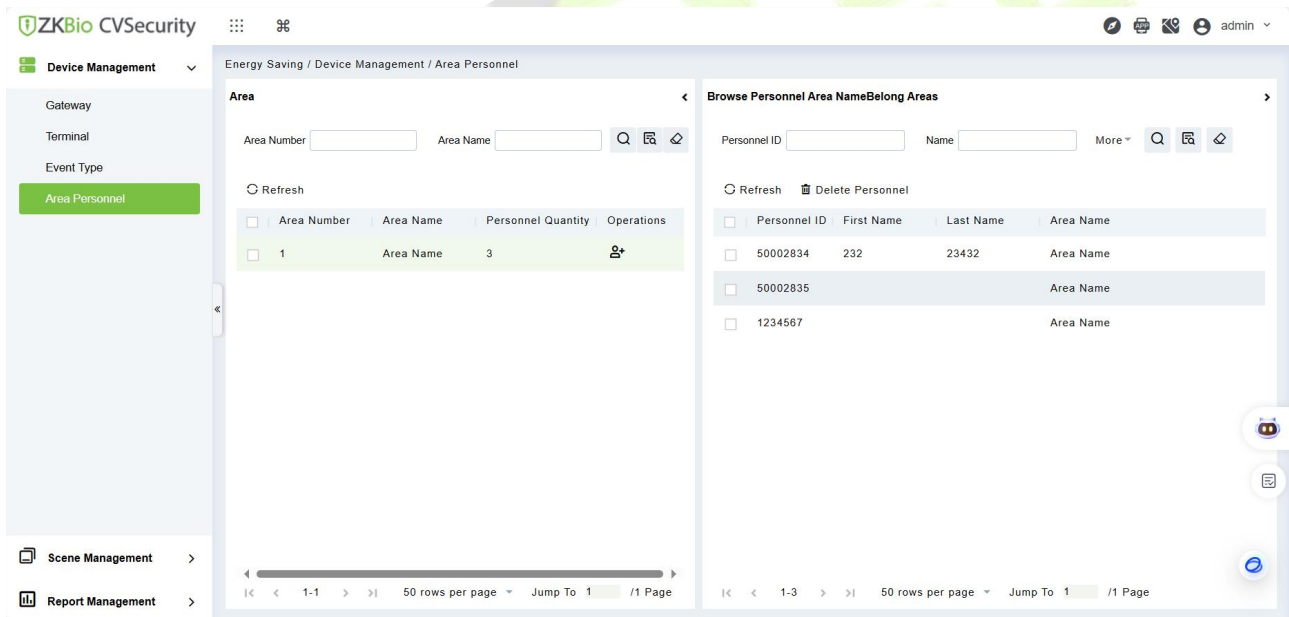


Figure 18- 14 Area Personnel

## 19.2 Scene Management

**Linkage:** By configuring the terminal's attribute values to meet specific conditions, certain scene functions can be triggered simultaneously. For example, when a human sensor detects that no one is present in a given area, the lights and air conditioning can be automatically turned off.

**Scene Configuration:** Configure the attribute values to trigger a scene mode through linkage. It can also be integrated with other modules, such as space management (e.g., meeting rooms), to activate a scene, such as triggering a specific scene after a meeting check-in.

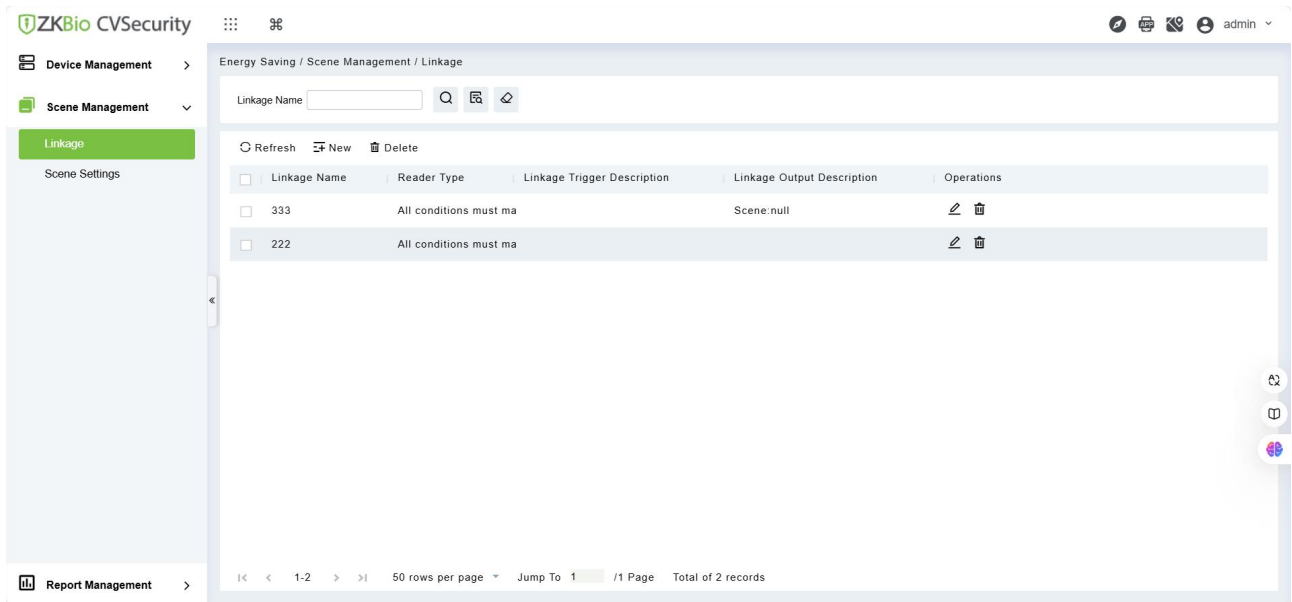


Figure 18- 15 Linkage

### 19.2.1.1.1 Create a New Linkage

Click on the **Scene Management > Linkage > New** it will displays the new linkage interface here, enter the required details click **OK** to create a new linkage.

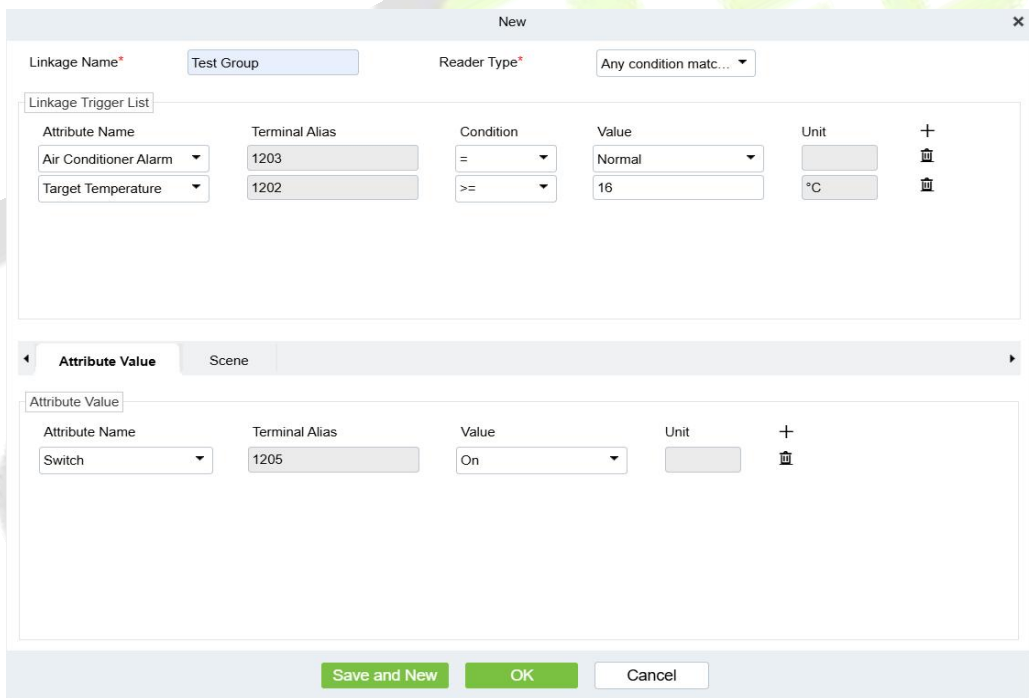


Figure 18- 16 Linkage

**Linkage Trigger List:** Configure the conditions that activate the linkage.

**Attribute Value:** Configure the corresponding output actions.

**Scene:** Select the scene mode to be triggered (please configure this in advance under Scene Settings).

### 19.2.1.1.2 Delete Linkage

After selecting the linkage name, click the **Delete** button to remove it.

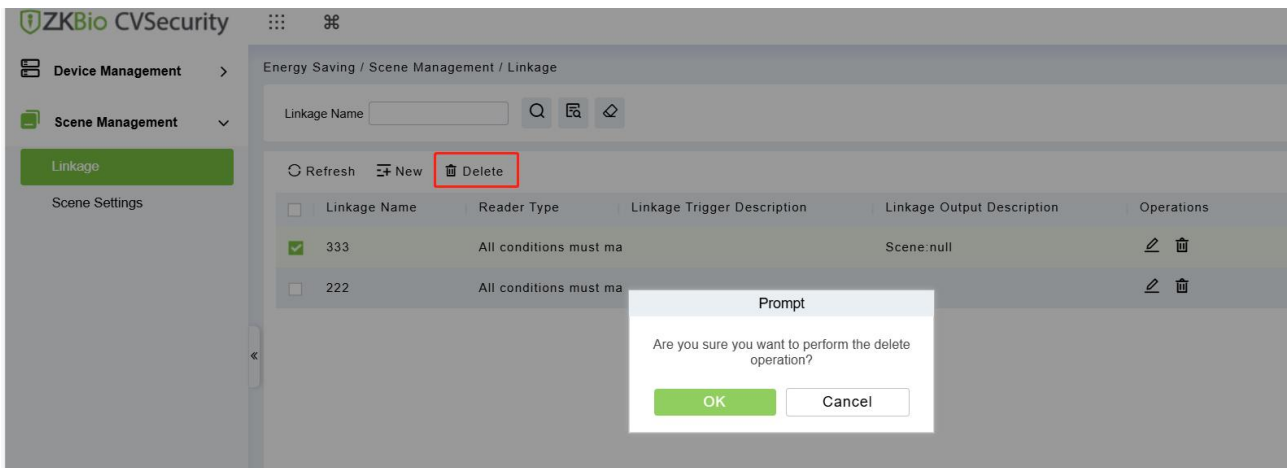


Figure 18- 17 Delete Linkage

### 19.2.1.2 Scene Setting

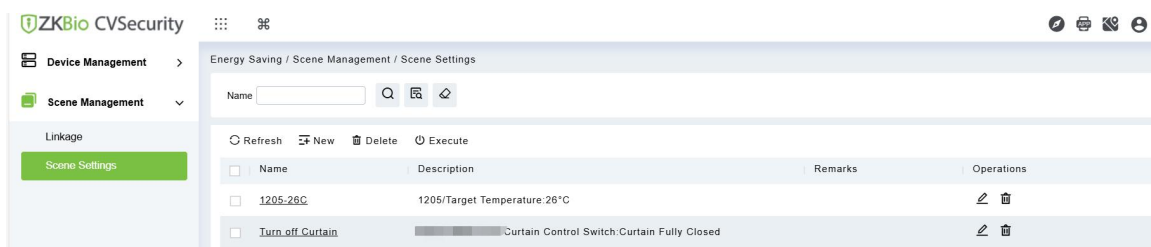


Figure 18- 18 Scene Setting

#### 19.2.1.2.1 New Scene

Configure the scene name and attribute values for the scene mode, as shown in the figure below.

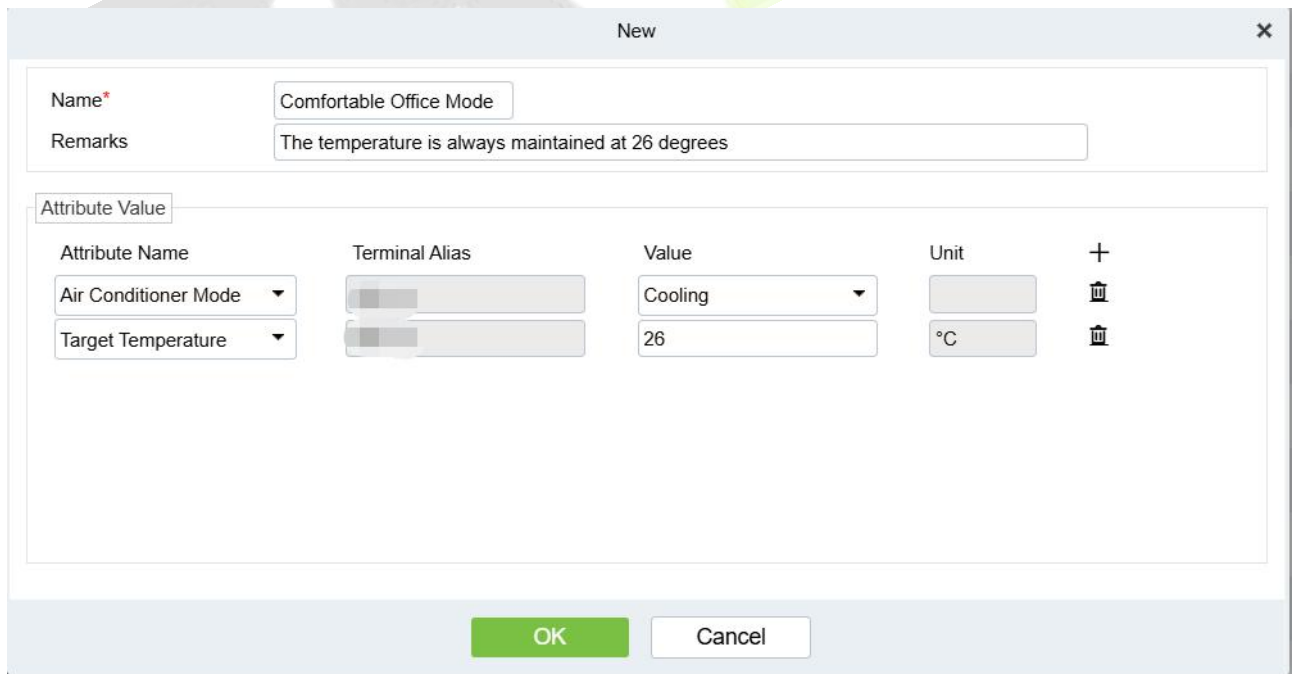


Figure 18- 19 New Scene

#### 19.2.1.2.2 Delete Scene

Select the scene then click **Delete** button to delete the scene mode.

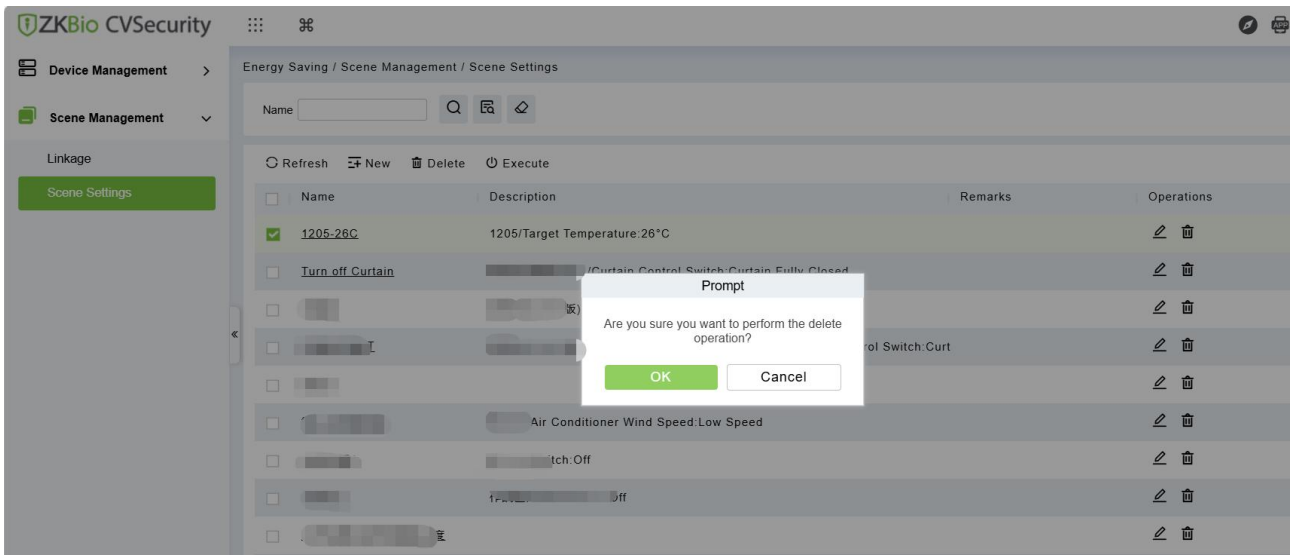


Figure 18- 20 Delete Scene

### 19.2.1.2.3 Execute Scene

Click the **Execute** button, enter the password, and then immediately activate the scene mode without waiting for the linkage conditions to be triggered.

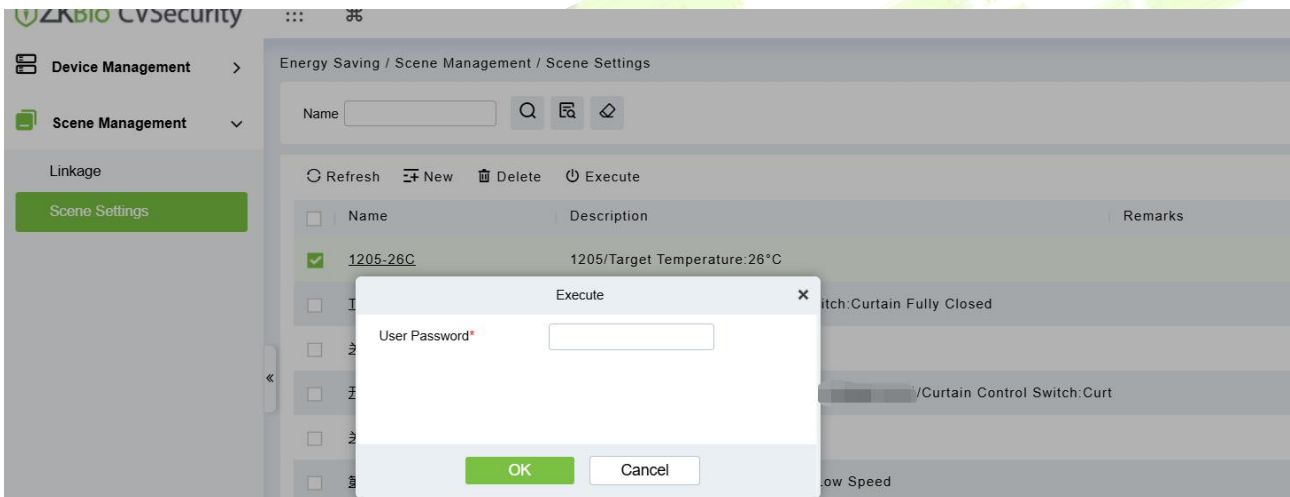


Figure 18- 21 Execute Scene

## 19.2.2 Report Management

### 19.2.2.1 Linkage Report

Click on the **Report Management > Linkage Report** to view the linkage report.

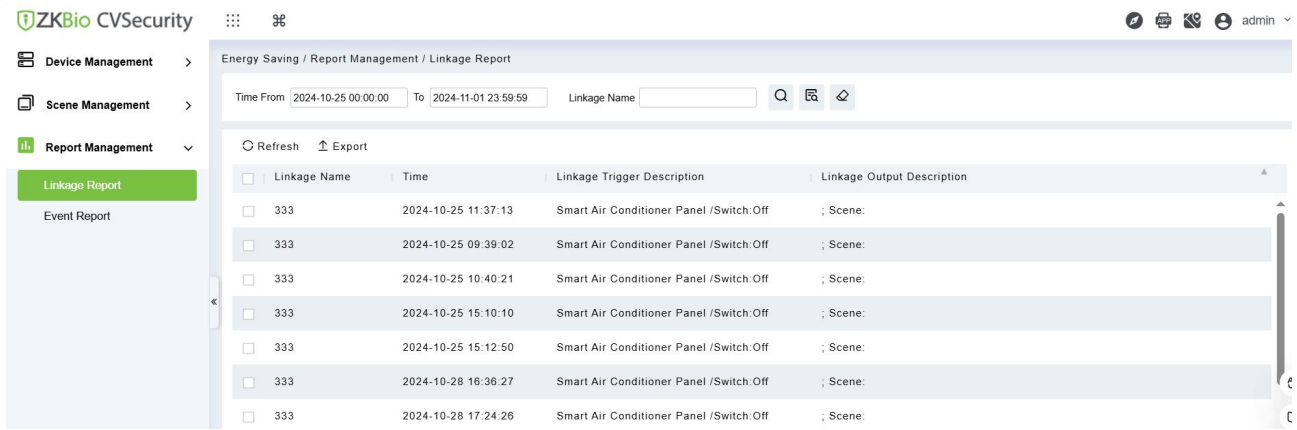


Figure 18- 22 Linkage Report

### Export Linkage Report

Click on the **Report Management > Linkage Report > Export** to export the linkage reports.

| Linkage Report |                     |   |                            |
|----------------|---------------------|---|----------------------------|
| Linkage Name   | Time                | Linkage Trigger Description             | Linkage Output Description |
| 333            | 2024-10-25 11:37:13 | Smart Air Conditioner Panel /Switch:Off | ; Scene:                   |
| 333            | 2024-10-25 09:39:02 | Smart Air Conditioner Panel /Switch:Off | ; Scene:                   |
| 333            | 2024-10-25 10:40:21 | Smart Air Conditioner Panel /Switch:Off | ; Scene:                   |
| 333            | 2024-10-25 15:10:10 | Smart Air Conditioner Panel /Switch:Off | ; Scene:                   |
| 333            | 2024-10-25 15:12:50 | Smart Air Conditioner Panel /Switch:Off | ; Scene:                   |
| 333            | 2024-10-28 16:36:27 | Smart Air Conditioner Panel /Switch:Off | ; Scene:                   |
| 333            | 2024-10-28 17:24:26 | Smart Air Conditioner Panel /Switch:Off | ; Scene:                   |

Figure 18- 23 Export Linkage Report

### 19.2.2.2 Event Report

Click on the **Report Management > Event Report** to view the event report.

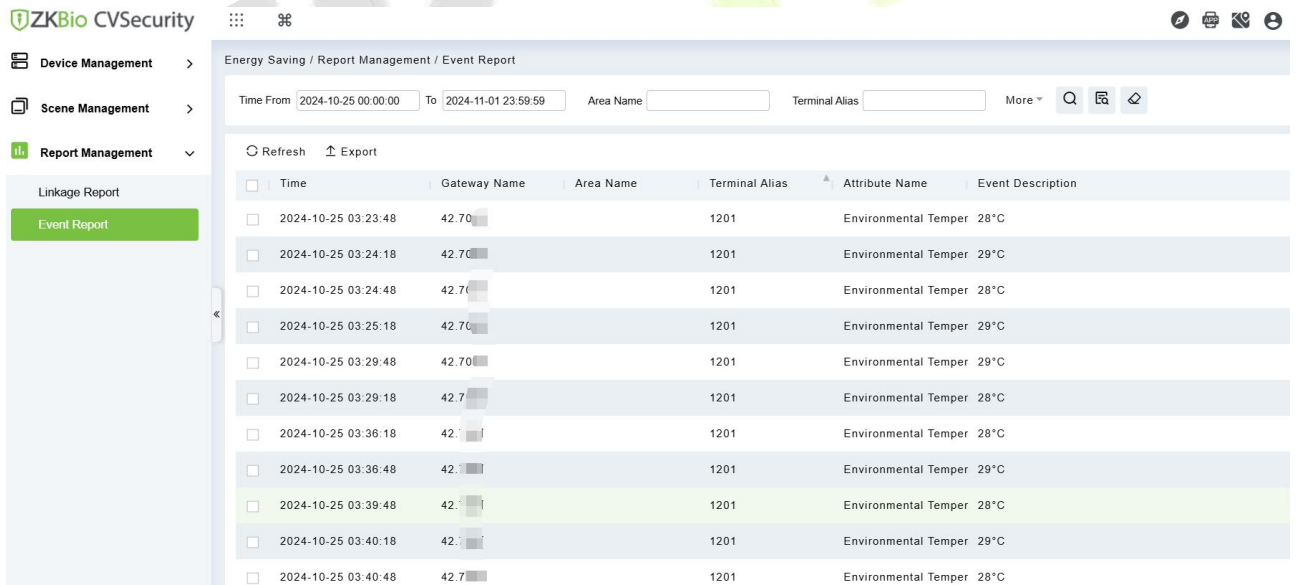


Figure 18- 24 Event Report

### Export Event Report

Click on the **Report Management > Event Report > Export** to export the event reports.

| Event Report        |              |           |                |                           |                   |
|---------------------|--------------|-----------|----------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| Time                | Gateway Name | Area Name | Terminal Alias | Attribute Name            | Event Description |
| 2024-10-25 03:23:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:24:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:24:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:25:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:29:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:29:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:36:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:36:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:39:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:40:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:40:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:41:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:42:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:43:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:51:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:51:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:54:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:54:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:56:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:56:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:57:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:57:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:58:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:59:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 03:59:48 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 28° C             |
| 2024-10-25 04:00:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |
| 2024-10-25 04:01:18 | 42.7         |           | 1201           | Environmental Temperature | 29° C             |

Figure 18- 25 Export Event Report

## 20 System Management

### 20.1 System Management

System settings primarily include assigning system users (such as company management user, registrar, access control administrator) and configuring the roles of corresponding modules, managing database, setting system parameters and view operation logs, etc.

#### 20.1.1 Operation Log

- Operation Step

Step 1: Click **System > System Management > Operation Log**.

| Operator | Time                | IP Address      | Module | Object | Operation  | Operation Detail  | Result  | Time (ms) |
|----------|---------------------|-----------------|--------|--------|------------|-------------------|---------|-----------|
| admin    | 2022-08-01 10:14:38 | 14.97.160.178   | System | User   | User Login | User Login:admin; | Success | 12        |
| admin    | 2022-08-01 10:14:01 | 14.97.160.178   | System | User   | User Login | User Login:admin; | Success | 22        |
| admin    | 2022-08-01 10:12:36 | 14.97.160.178   | System | User   | Logout     | Logout            | Success | 16        |
| admin    | 2022-08-01 09:47:20 | 14.97.160.178   | System | User   | User Login | User Login:admin; | Success | 16        |
| admin    | 2022-08-01 09:46:38 | 223.197.183.130 | System | User   | User Login | User Login:admin; | Success | 21        |
| admin    | 2022-08-01 09:46:09 | 183.250.208.207 | System | User   | User Login | User Login:admin; | Success | 12        |

Figure 19- 1 Operation Log Interface

All operation logs are displayed in this page. You can query specific logs by conditions.

### 20.1.1.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the operation log.

### 20.1.1.2 Export

Export the operation log records, save to local. You can export to an Excel, PDF, TXT or CSV file. See the following figure.

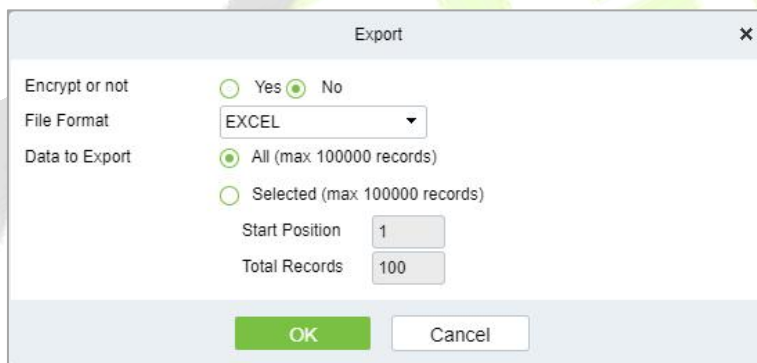


Figure 19- 2 Export Option

## 20.1.2 Database Management

### ● Operation Step

Step 1: Click **System > System Management > Database Management**.

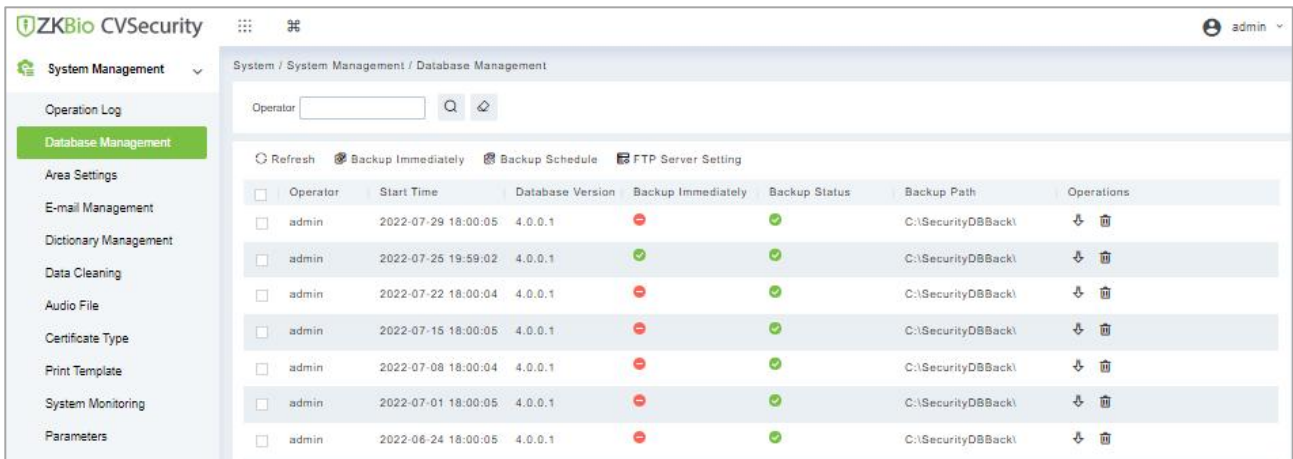


Figure 19- 3 Database Management Interface

All history operation logs about database backup are displayed in this page. You can refresh, backup and schedule backup database as required.

### 20.1.2.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the operation log.

### 20.1.2.2 Backup Immediately

Step 1: Click **Backup Immediately**.

Backup database to the path set in installation right now.

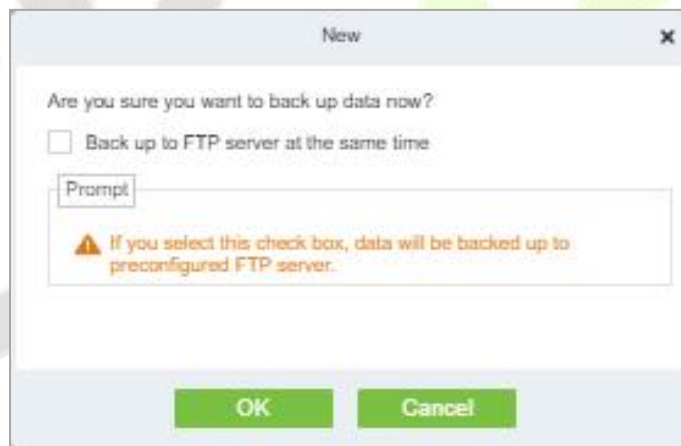
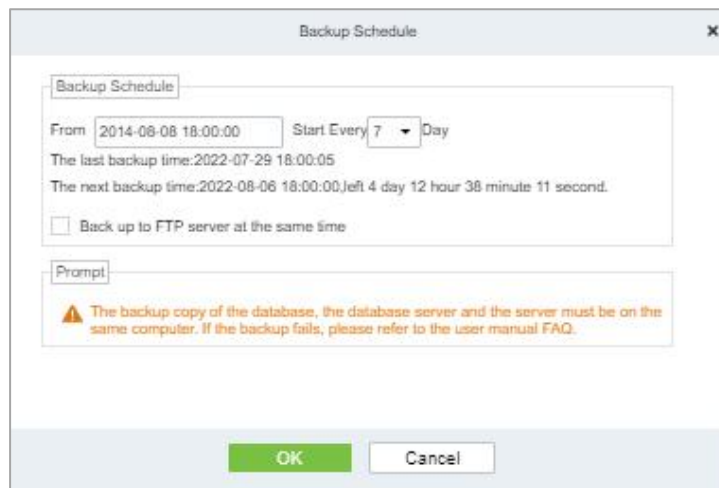


Figure 19- 4 Back up Immediately Option

**Note:** The default backup path for the system is the path selected during the software installation. For details, refer to 'Software Installation Guide'.

### 20.1.2.3 Backup Schedule

Step 1: Click **Backup Schedule**:



**Figure 19- 5 Back up Schedule Option**

**Step 2:** Set the start time, set interval between two automatic backups, click **OK**.

### 20.1.2.4 FTP Server Setting

When send mode is FTP Send Method, FTP parameters should be set. The parameters are FTP Server Address, Server Port, Folder Location, Username, and Password.



**Figure 19- 6 FTP Server Setting**

| Parameter          | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| FTP Server Address | Enter the address FTP Server Address E.g.: such as 192.168.1.10.   |
| Port               | Enter the port number.   |
| Folder Location    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the Folder location.</li> </ul>   |
| Username           | Enter the Username of the FTP server.  |
| Password           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the password for the FTP server.</li> </ul>   |
| Test Connection    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After configuring the FTP parameters, click <b>Test Connection</b> to test whether the FTP server is communicating normally.</li> </ul> |

**Table 19-1 Description of FTP Server Setting Parameters**

After the setup is completed, click the **OK** button, save and return to the Database Management interface.

### 20.1.3 Area Settings

Area is a spatial concept which enables the user to manage devices in a specific area. After area setting, devices (doors) can be filtered by area upon real-time monitoring.

The system, by default, has an area named **Headquarters** and numbered **1**.

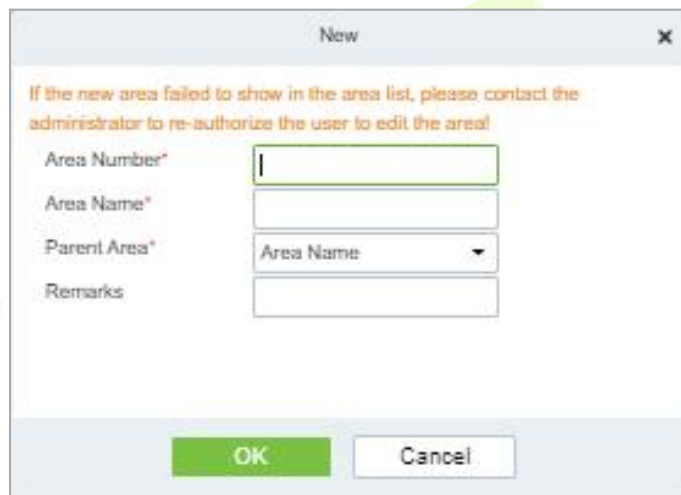
#### 20.1.3.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the area setting page.

#### 20.1.3.2 New

Step 1: Click **System > System Management > Area Setting > New**.

Step 2: Click **OK** to finish adding.



**Figure 19- 7 Area Setting**

| Parameter   | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| Area Number | Enter the area number. It must be unique.                       |
| Area Name   | Enter the area name. Any characters with a length less than 30. |
| Parent Area | Determine the area structure of system.                         |

**Table 19-2 Description of area Setting Parameters**

#### 20.1.3.3 Export

Export the operation log records, save to local. You can export to an Excel, PDF, TXT or CSV file. Click Export See the following figure.

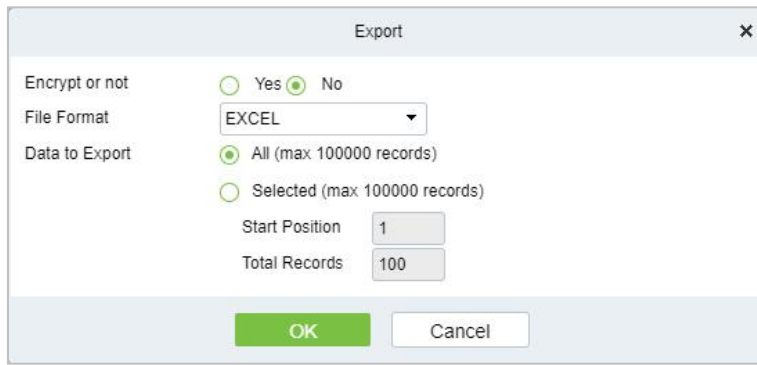


Figure 19- 8 Export Option

### 20.1.3.4 Edit/Delete an Area

Click **Edit** or **Delete** as required under **Operation** to go to the edit or delete page. Then click **OK** to save the setting.

### 20.1.3.5 Import

If there is a personnel file in your computer, you can Import it into the system.

**Step 1:** Click **Import**.

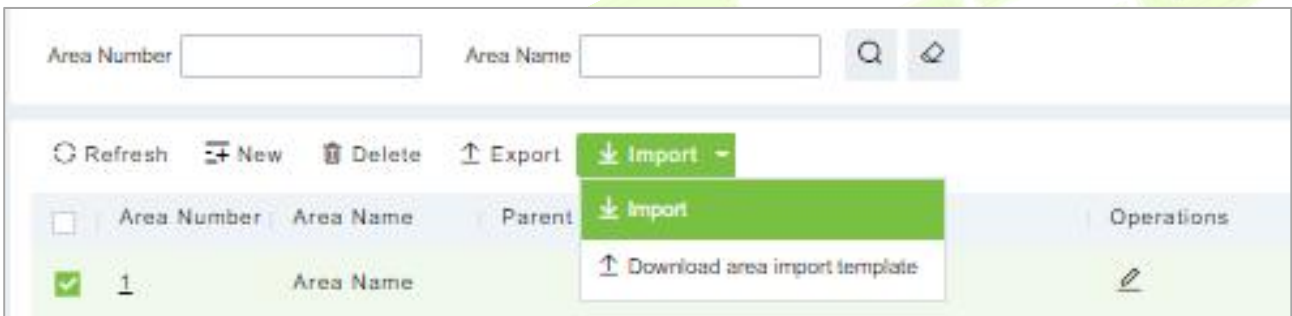


Figure 19- 9 Import Interface

**Step 2:** Select the file format to be imported (default is Excel) and choose the file to be imported.

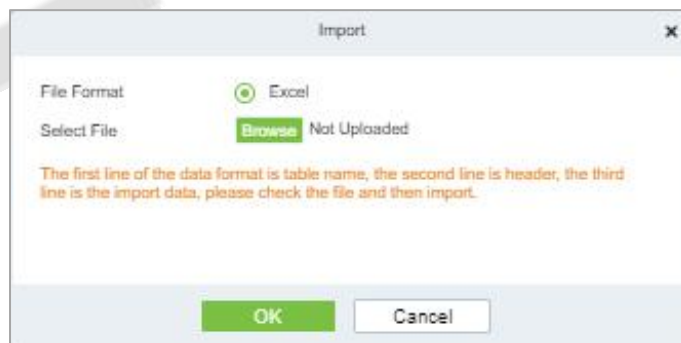


Figure 19- 10 Import Option

**Step 3:** If you want to download the sample template excel file for importing, click the **Download Area Import Template**.

| area import template |           |                    |                  |         |
|----------------------|-----------|--------------------|------------------|---------|
| Area Number          | Area Name | Parent Area Number | Parent Area Name | Remarks |
|                      |           |                    |                  |         |

Figure 19- 11 Area Import Template

**Step 4:** Once the sample excel is downloaded, you can fill your data into it and save it. Then upload the saved file.

## 20.1.4 E-mail Management

Set the email sending server information. The recipient e mail should be set in Linkage Settings.

Step 1: Click System > **System Management** > **Email Management**

### 20.1.4.1 Refresh

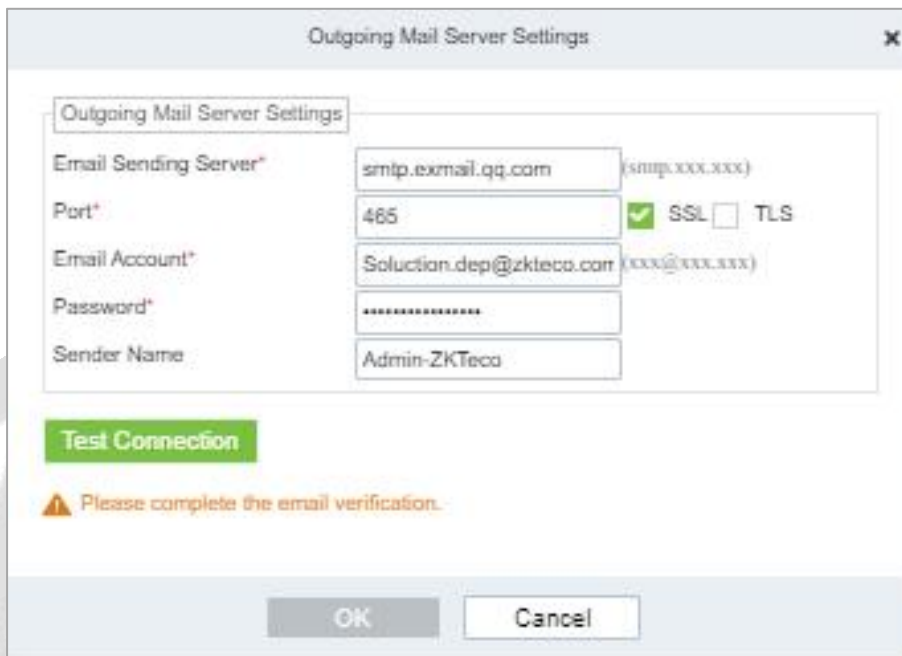
Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the Email management page.

### 20.1.4.2 Delete

Click **Delete** as required under operation to go to the edit or delete page. Then click **OK** to save the setting.

### 20.1.4.3 Outgoing Mail Server Settings

Click System > **System Management** > **Email Management** > **Outgoing Mail Server Settings**.



**Figure 19- 12 Outgoing Mail Server Setting**

**Note:** The domain name of E-mail address and E-mail sending server must be identical. For example, the Email address is test@gmail.com, and the E-mail sending server must be smtp.gmail.com.

### 20.1.4.4 Export

Export the operation log records, save to local. You can export to an Excel, PDF, TXT or CSV file. Click Export See the following figure.

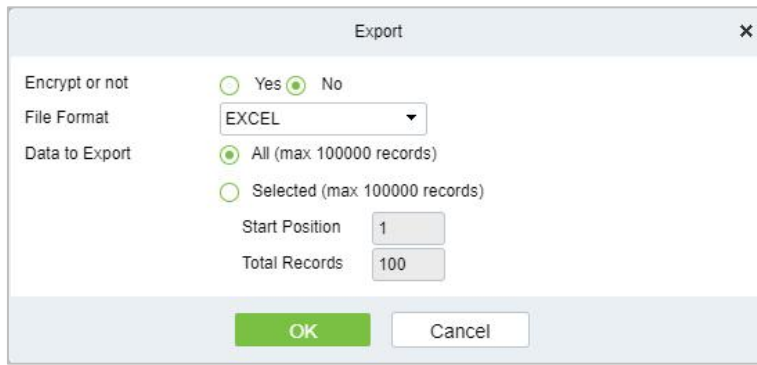


Figure 19- 13 Export Option

### 20.1.5 Dictionary Management

Data dictionary management function, users can find the meaning of error code and self-check software errors.

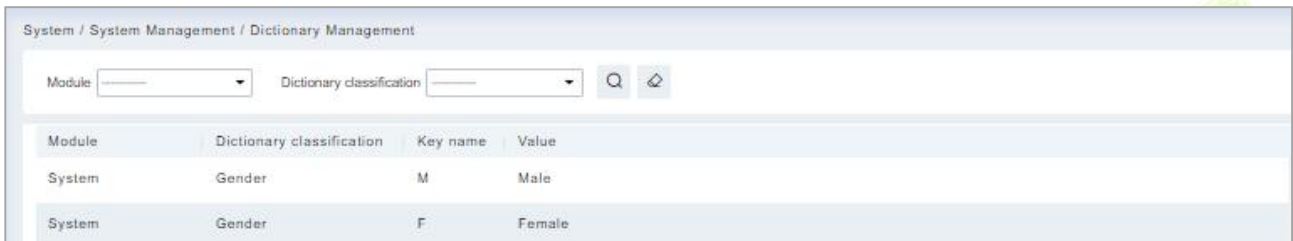


Figure 19- 14 Dictionary Management Interface

### 20.1.6 Data Cleaning

To save disk storage space, the expired data generated by the system must be cleaned up regularly

Click **System > System Management > Data Cleaning**. The data cleaning frequency can be set to Day/Week/Month.

#### 20.1.6.1 Record

This option helps you to set the frequency of retain the recent data of the access transaction, attendance transaction, elevator transactions and visitor transactions etc.

**Record**

**Access Transactions \***  
Retains the recent  
15 Month  
Execution Time  
01:00:00  
*(Carefully clean up)*

**Attendance Transactions \***  
Retains the recent  
15 Month  
Execution Time  
03:00:00  
*(Carefully clean up)*

**Elevator Transactions \***  
Retains the recent  
15 Month  
Execution Time  
01:00:00  
*(Carefully clean up)*

**Visitor Transaction \***  
Retains the recent  
15 Month  
Execution Time  
01:00:00  
*(Carefully clean up)*

**Parking Transactions \***  
Retains the recent  
15 Month  
Execution Time  
01:00:00  
*(Carefully clean up)*

**Patrol Transactions \***

Figure 19- 15 Record Interface

### 20.1.6.2 Disk Space Cleanup

In this option you can set the frequency of the retains the recent and also clean up the selected days data.

**Disk space cleanup**

**IVS Alarm Photos\***  
Retains the recent  
7 Day  
Execution Time  
01:00:00  
**Immediately Clean Up**

Figure 19- 16 Space Cleanup Interface

### 20.1.6.3 System

This option helps you to clean up the system operation log, device commands and database backup file.

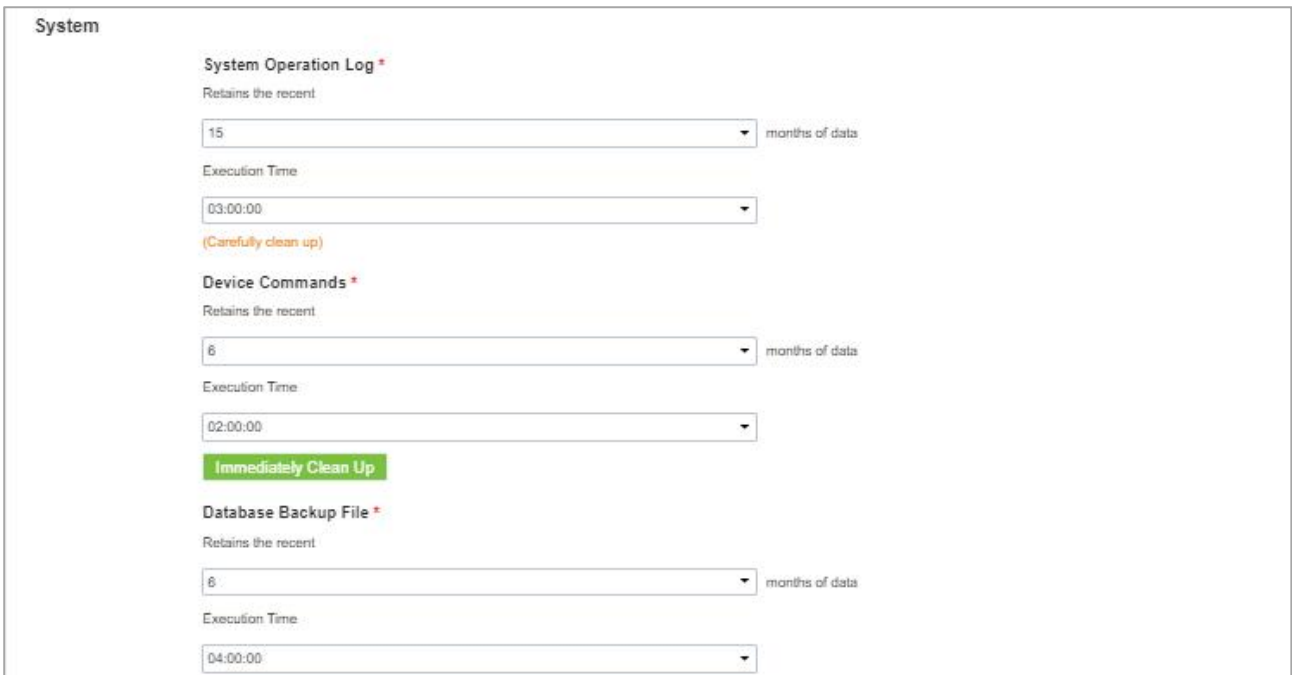


Figure 19- 17 System Interface

### 20.1.7 Resource File

Click **System > Basic Management > Audio File** to open the following interface:



Figure 19- 18 Audio File Interface

#### 20.1.7.1 New

##### ● Operation Steps

**Step 1:** Click **System > System Management > Audio File > New**, the following window appears:

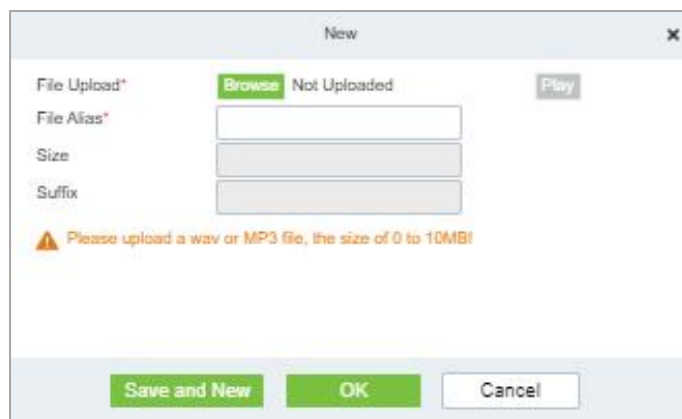


Figure 19- 19 New Option

**Step 2: Browse** to upload an audio file locally. The file format must be in WAV or mp3 format and must not exceed 10MB in size.

| Parameter         | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| File Alias (Name) | Enter the file name. Any character, up to 30 characters.   |
| Size              | After uploading the file, the file size is automatically generated.  |
| Suffix            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After uploading the file, the suffix of the file is automatically generated.</li> </ul> |

**Table 19-3 Description New option parameter**

### 20.1.7.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the Audio file page.

### 20.1.7.3 Edit

Click the file name or **Edit** to edit the audio file details which support replacing the audio files and editing the file name. The "size" and "suffix" automatically change depending on the size and type of audio file being uploaded. After editing, click **OK** and **Exit**.

### 20.1.7.4 Delete

Select the specified audio file to delete and click Delete. Then click **OK** to save the setting.

## 20.1.8 Cloud Setting

Enable hybrid cloud services and then use the Mobile APP.

Please refer to the attachment for the operation steps of the Mobile APP. [ZK\\_ZKBio CVSecurity Mobile APP UM\\_EN v2.0\\_20240719.pdf](#)

The screenshot shows the 'APP cloud service configuration' page in the ZKBio CVSecurity web interface. The left sidebar is expanded to 'System Management', with 'Cloud Settings' highlighted. The main content area contains the following configuration options:

- Enable:** Radio buttons for 'No' and 'Yes', with 'Yes' selected.
- ZKBio CVConnect Server Url:** A text input field containing 'http://127.0.0.1:6001'.
- Is pushing event data to the cloud platform enabled:** Radio buttons for 'No' and 'Yes', with 'Yes' selected.
- Is cloud sip enabled:** Radio buttons for 'No' and 'Yes', with 'Yes' selected.
- Warning:** A yellow triangle icon followed by text: 'The ZKBio CVConnect platform, as a sub-service of MinervalOT, mainly serves to forward intranet's application data to be accessed externally. If you have not installed the ZKBio CVConnect client yet, please click the link below to download or contact the technical support to obtain the installer. [ZKBio CVConnect Client](#)'.
- APP enterprise QR code:** A QR code image.
- OK:** A green button at the bottom.

### Parameter Description

- **Enable:** Whether to enable hybrid cloud services, enabling them allows users to start using the Mobile APP.
- **ZKBio CVConnect Server Url:** The address of the ZKBio CVConnect Client that you need to bind.
- **Is pushing event to the cloud platform enabled:** Whether to store data on the cloud platform, the default is No, data will not be stored in the cloud, it will only be forwarded to the APP.
- **Is Cloud Sip enabled :** Whether to enable the cloud SIP feature, after enabling it, you can configure the extension number for use in the visual intercom module, refer to the [Extension Management](#)
- **APP enterprise QR Code :** The QR code for APP login generated after registering and activating in the ZKBio CVConnect.

### 20.1.9 Certificate Type

The system initializes 9 certificate types. User can add the required certificate type for personnel and visitor registration.

Click **System > Basic Management > Certificate Type**.



**Figure 19- 20 Certificate Type Interface**

### 20.1.9.1 Refresh

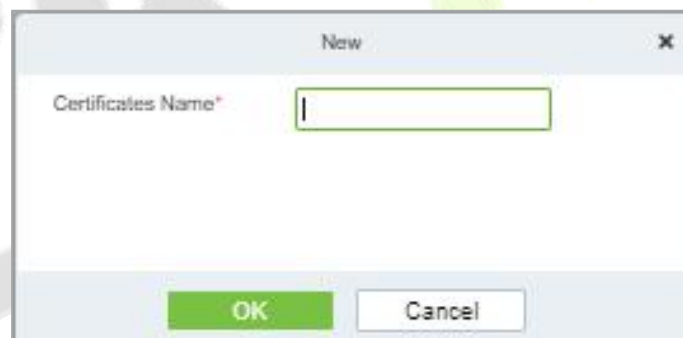
Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the certificate type page.

### 20.1.9.2 New

● Operation Step:

To add the certificates, click System > Basic Management > Certificate Type> New:

**Certificate Name:** Enter the certificate name.



**Figure 19- 21 New Option**

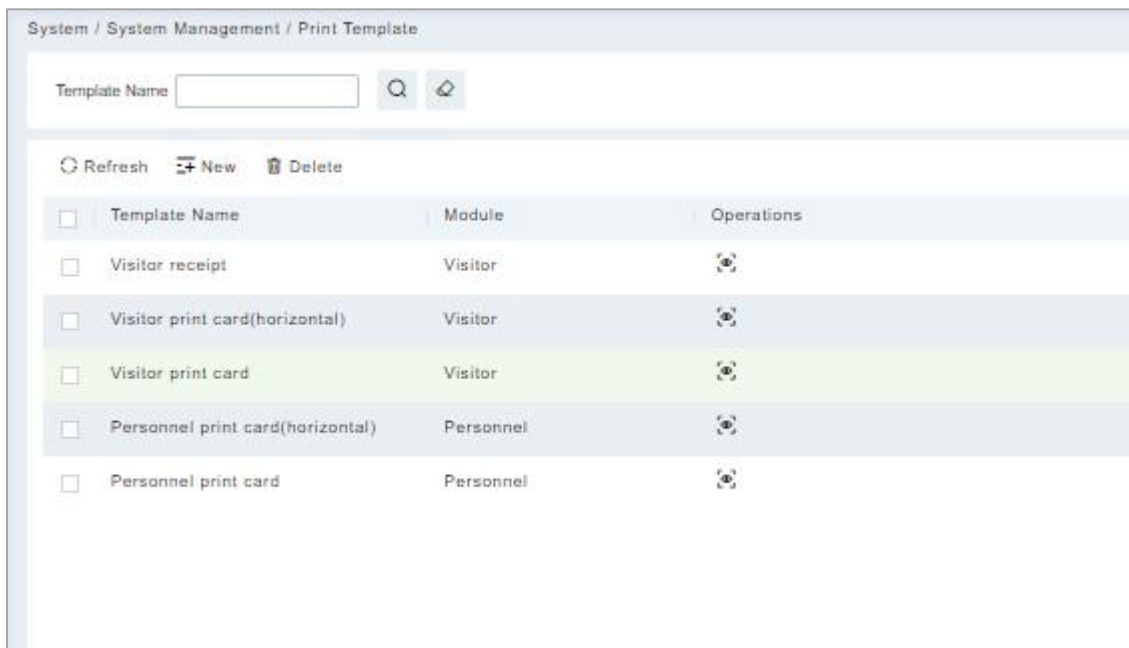
### 20.1.9.3 Delete

Select the specified certificate to delete and click **Delete**. Then click **OK** to save the setting.

## 20.1.10 Print Template

You can manage the template for different cards: Personnel card template, Visitor receipt template/Card template are all configured here. The system initializes 5 types of personnel and visitor print templates.

Click **System> Basic Management> Print template**.



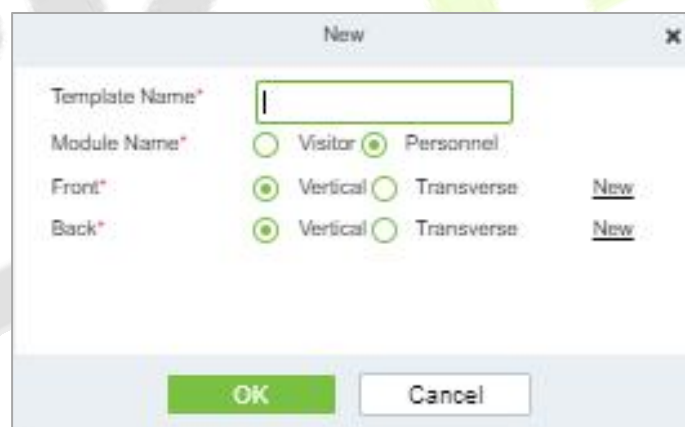
**Figure 19- 22 Print Template**

**20.1.10.1 Refresh**

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the Print Template page

**20.1.10.2 Add**

To add the certificates, click System > System Management > Print Template> New:



**Figure 19- 23 New Option**

**20.1.10.3 Delete**

Select the specified template to delete and click **Delete**.

**20.1.11 System Monitoring**

The system monitoring function displays the server processor usage, host memory usage, processor information, memory information, java virtual machine memory usage and other information.

Click **System> System Management > System Monitoring**.

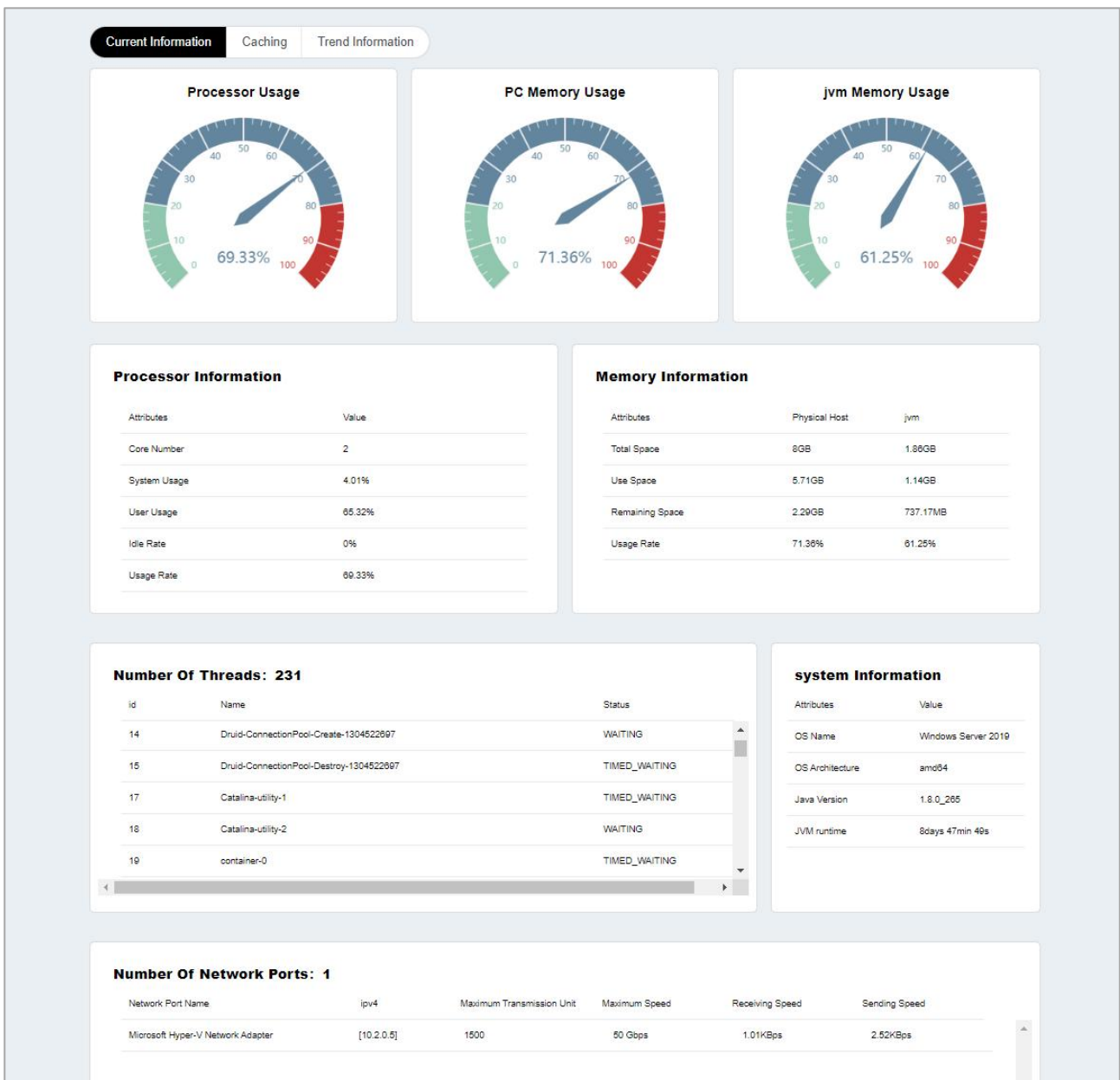


Figure 19- 24 System Monitoring Interface

### 20.1.11.1 Caching

This option helps you to know about memory information, Redis information, client information and also current data base.

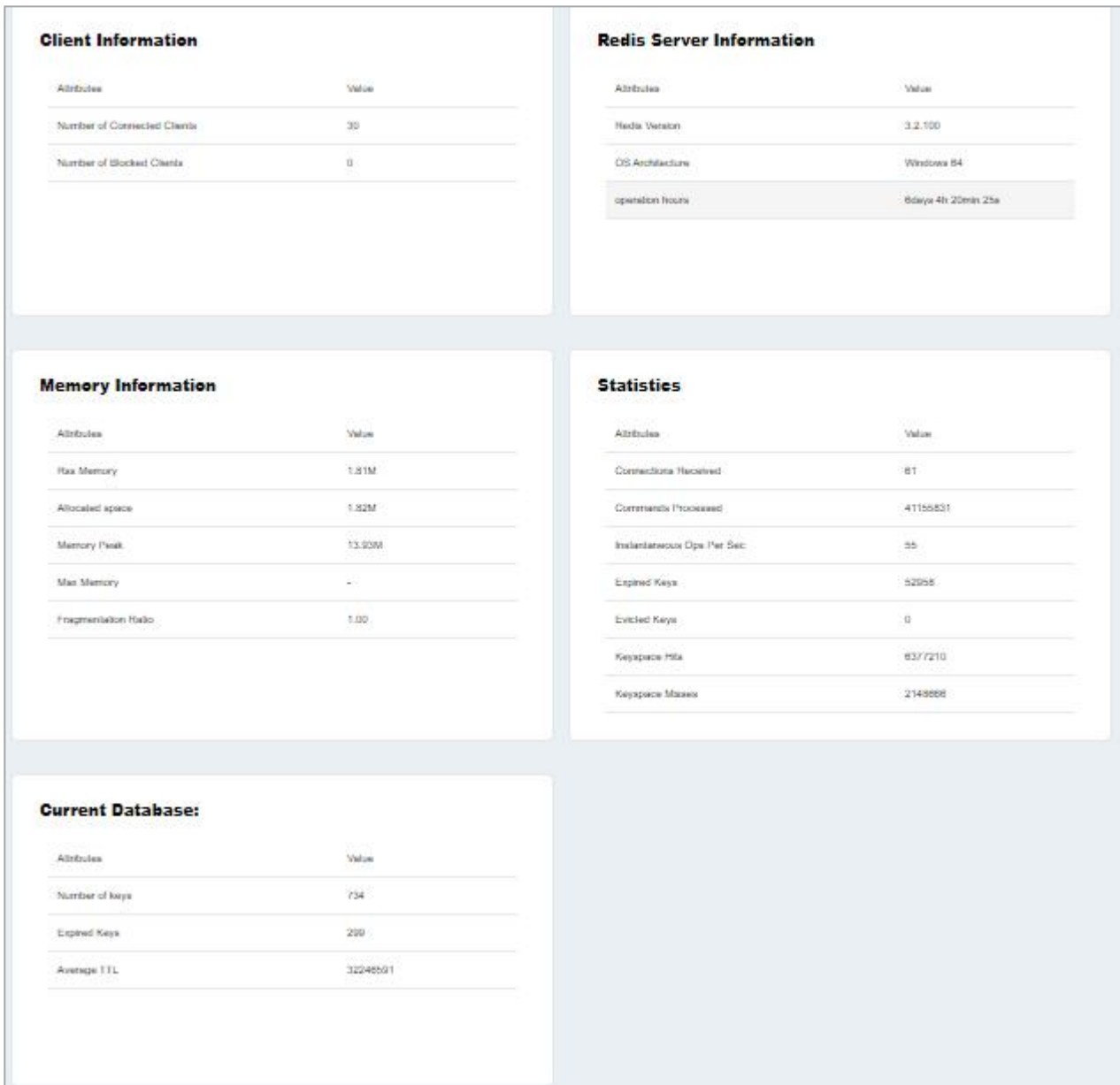


Figure 19- 25 Caching Interface

### 20.1.11.2 Trend Information

This option shows the graphical representation of processor usage, PC memory usage and JV memory usage.



Figure 19- 26 Trend Information Interface

## 20.1.12 Parameters

### 20.1.12.1 QR Code Setting

Step 1: Click **System > System Management > Parameter > QR Code Setting**.



Figure 19- 27 QR Code Setting interface

Step 2: Enable QR code Click **System > System Management > Parameter > YES** or **NO** for Enable the

QR code

**Step 3:** Enable QR code If YES click **YES > Static**. It will be fixed the QR information same manner for the rest of time.

**Step 4:** Enable QR code If YES click **YES > Dynamic > Valid Time**. It will generate new QR code every 30 seconds.

### 20.1.12.2 Date Time Format Setting

Here you can set the date and time format.



Figure 19- 28 Date and Time Format Setting Interface

### 20.1.12.3 Video Watermark

This option helps you to add watermark and tile to your videos.

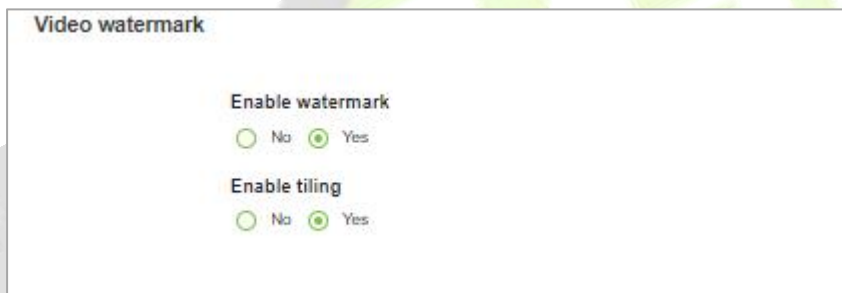


Figure 19- 29 Video Watermark Setting

## 20.2 Authority Management

### 20.2.1 User

#### 20.2.1.1 New

This section describes how to configure Step to add an administrator user in ZKBio CVSecurity.

● Operation Step

**Step 1:** In the System module, choose **Authority Management > User**.

**Step 2:** Click **Add** to pop up the new user interface.

**Step 3:** On the Add role page, set role rights as required, as shown in the figure below and the below Table describes parameters to be set.

**Figure 19- 30 Adding User Interface**

| Parameter                       | How to set up  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| User Name/Password              | You can customize the user’s name and password used for login.   |
| State                           | Set whether the user can log in and operate the system.  |
| Connection Limit/Maximum Logins | If this parameter is not selected, the number of simultaneous logins is not limited.   |
| Superuser Status                | This parameter specifies whether the user has all rights by default. If you click this parameter, the user is a super user, and no role is required. |
| Role                            | Set a role for the user. The user has all Operation permissions configured for the role.   |
| Authorize Department            | Authorization Sets the department permissions of the user.   |
| Authorized Permission           | Authorization Sets the area rights that the user has.  |
| Email                           | Customizes this user’s mailbox, which can be used to retrieve the password.  |
| The Name                        | Custom sets the name of this user.   |
| The Fingerprint Registration    | Register this user’s fingerprint.  |

**Table 19-4 Parameters for Adding a User**

**Step 4:** Click **OK** to finish configuring the new user.

### 20.2.1.2 Edit/Delete

Click **Edit** or **Delete** as required.

## 20.2.2 Role

When using the system, the super user needs to assign different levels to new users. To avoid setting users one by one, you can set roles with specific levels in role management and assign appropriate roles to users when adding users. A super user has all the levels, can assign rights to new users and set corresponding roles (levels) according to requirements.

### 20.2.2.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the user page.

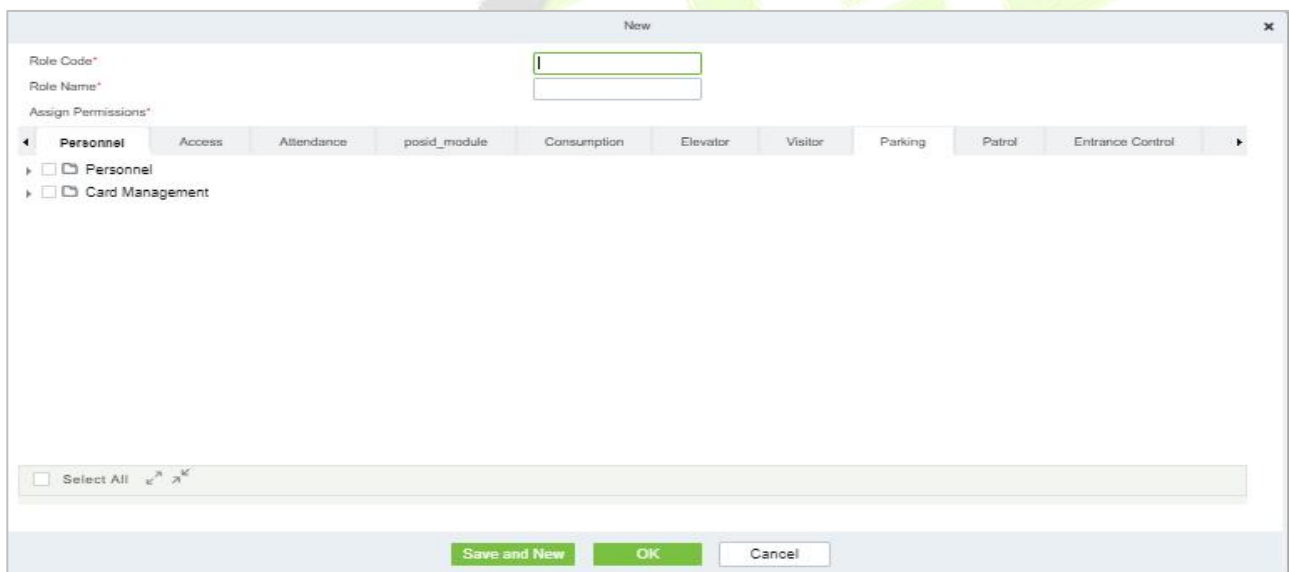
### 20.2.2.2 New

● Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Click **System > Authority Management > Role > New**.

**Step 2:** Set the name and assign permissions for the role.

**Step 3:** Click **OK** to save.



**Figure 19- 31 Add Role Option**

### 20.2.2.3 Edit/Delete

Click **Edit** or **Delete** as required.

## 20.2.3 API Authorization

### 20.2.3.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to get the most updated version of the API authorization page.

### 20.2.3.2 New

Operation Steps:

**Step 1:** Log in to the system (as the super user, for exportation.min) to enter the software. Click **System > Authority Management > API Authorization > New**, which must be unique, and a client secret, which will be used when the API is invoked.

**Step 2:** Only when the client ID and secret are added can the next API operation page be displayed normally. Otherwise, the access is abnormal):

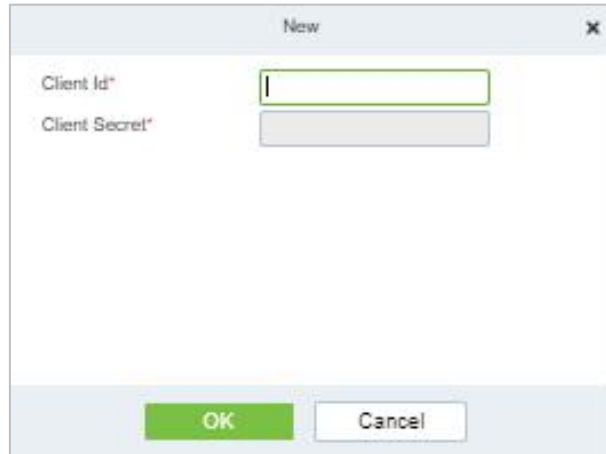


Figure 19- 32 API Authorization Option

### 20.2.3.3 Browse the API

After the client ID and secret are added, click Browse API on the API Authorization page to skip to the API operation page (The page of the ZKBio CVSecurity system must be open for normal access of the API operation page). This page provides multiple API.

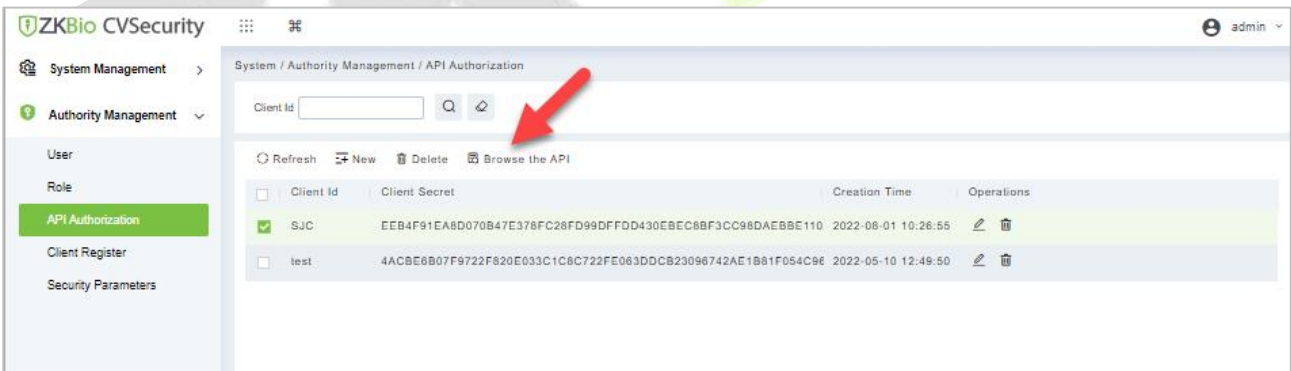


Figure 19- 33 Browse the API

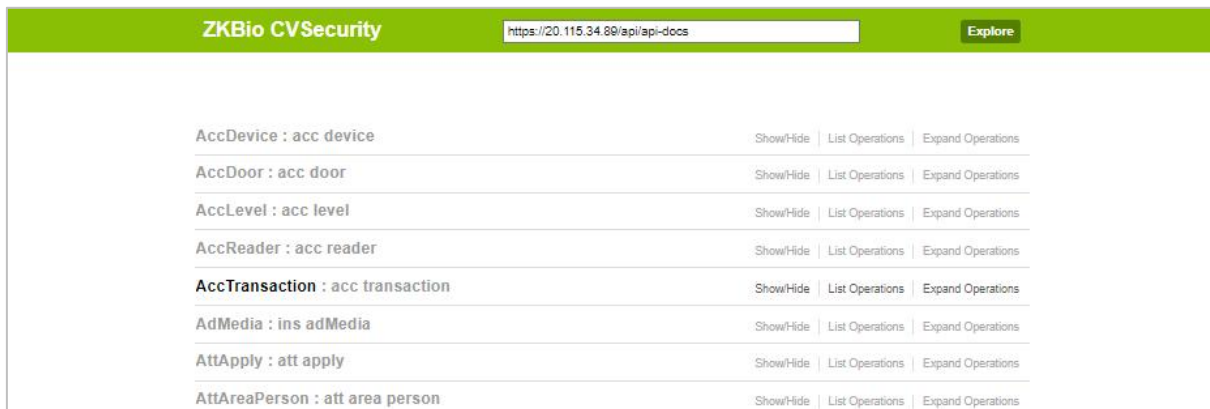


Figure 19- 34 ZKBIO CV Security API Interface

When API are invoked, URLs of all request API must contain the access token parameter, whose value is determined by the client key configured on the background (if there are multiple keys, only one is selected), for example:

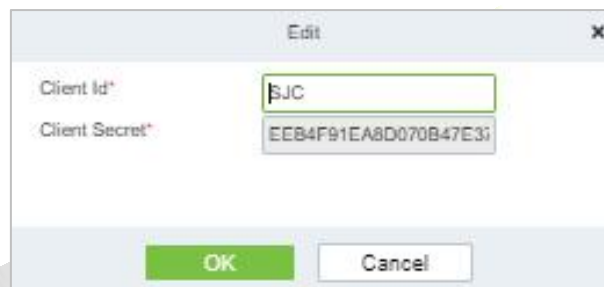


**Figure 19- 35 Request URL**

The access token parameter must be added when the API is invoked (one request URL can be invoked):  
http://localhost:8091/system/swagger/index.html?clientId=1653914953805#!/Person/getByPinUsingGET.

#### 20.2.3.4 Edit

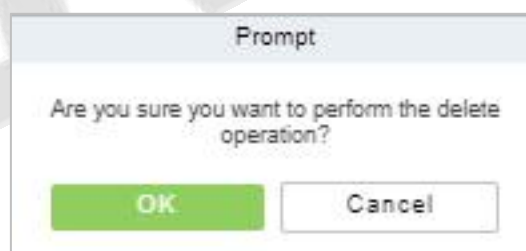
Click the **Edit** icon to edit the API Authorization details. Enter the required Details. After editing, click **OK** and exit.



**Figure 19- 36 Edit Option**

#### 20.2.3.5 Delete

Select the specified Client id to delete and click **Delete**. Then Click **OK** to confirm the operation.



**Figure 19- 37 Delete Option**

### 20.2.4 Client Register

You can add client types for the system and generate registration codes for client registrations of each module function. The number of allowed clients is controlled by the number of allowed points.

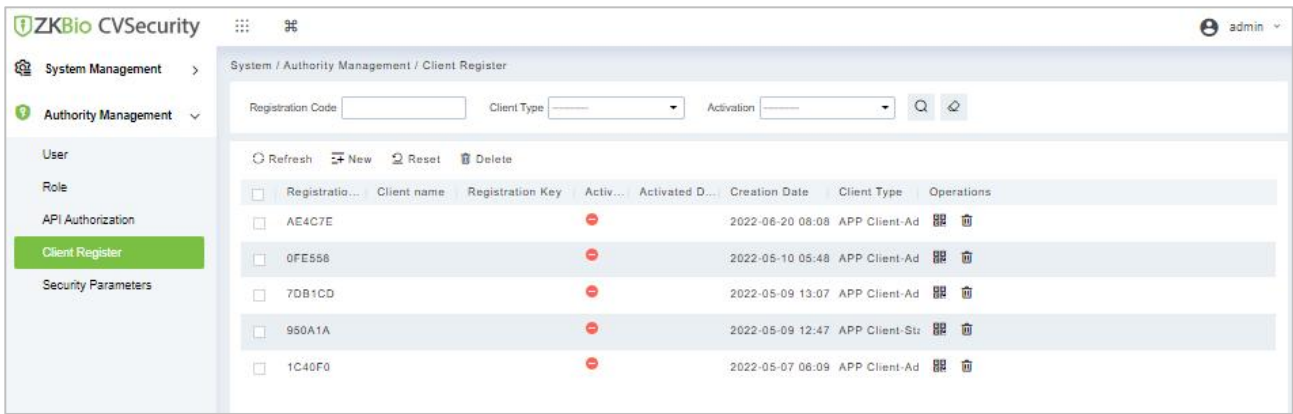


Figure 19- 38 Client Register Interface

20.2.4.1 New

Click **System Management > Authority Management > Client Authorization > New** to go to the New page.

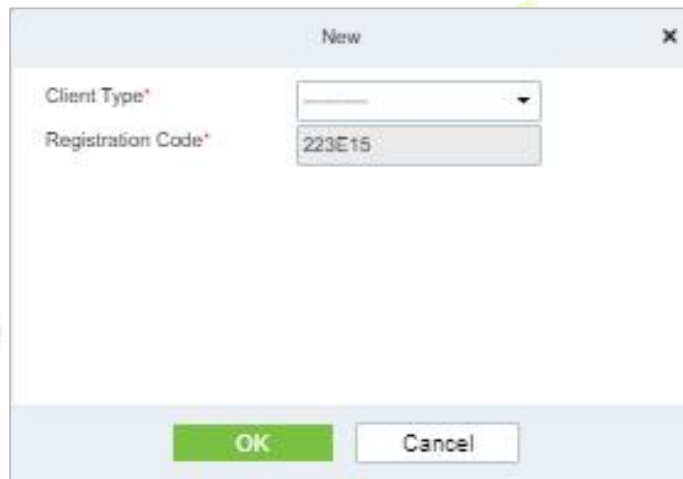


Figure 19- 39 Add Client Register

| Parameter         | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Client Type       | The value can be APP Client, OCR-Personnel, OCR-Visitor, ID Reader-Personnel, ID Reader-Visitor or Signature- Visitor, Card Printing- Personnel, Card Printing-Visitor.  |
| Registration Code | The registration code for <b>APP Client</b> is used under <b>Network Settings</b> on the APP login page and that for <b>Print Card-Personnel</b> is used under <b>Parameter Settings &gt; Client Registration</b> . Only new registration codes added on the server are authorized and one registration code can be used by only one client. |

Table 19-5 Description Add Client Register parameter

20.2.4.2 Reset

To reset a client, select the client and click **Reset**.

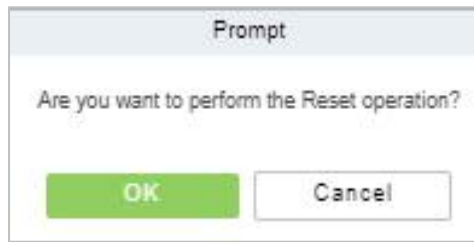


Figure 19- 40 Reset Option

### 20.2.4.3 Delete

To delete a client, select the client and click **Delete**.

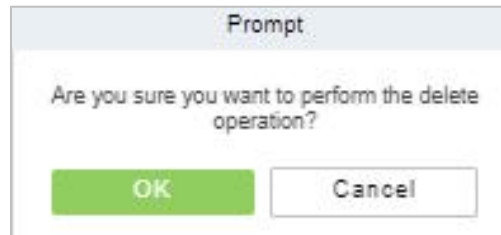


Figure 19- 41 Delete Option

Click **OK** to delete the client.

### 20.2.5 Security Parameters

Click **System Management > Authority Management > Set Security Parameters**.

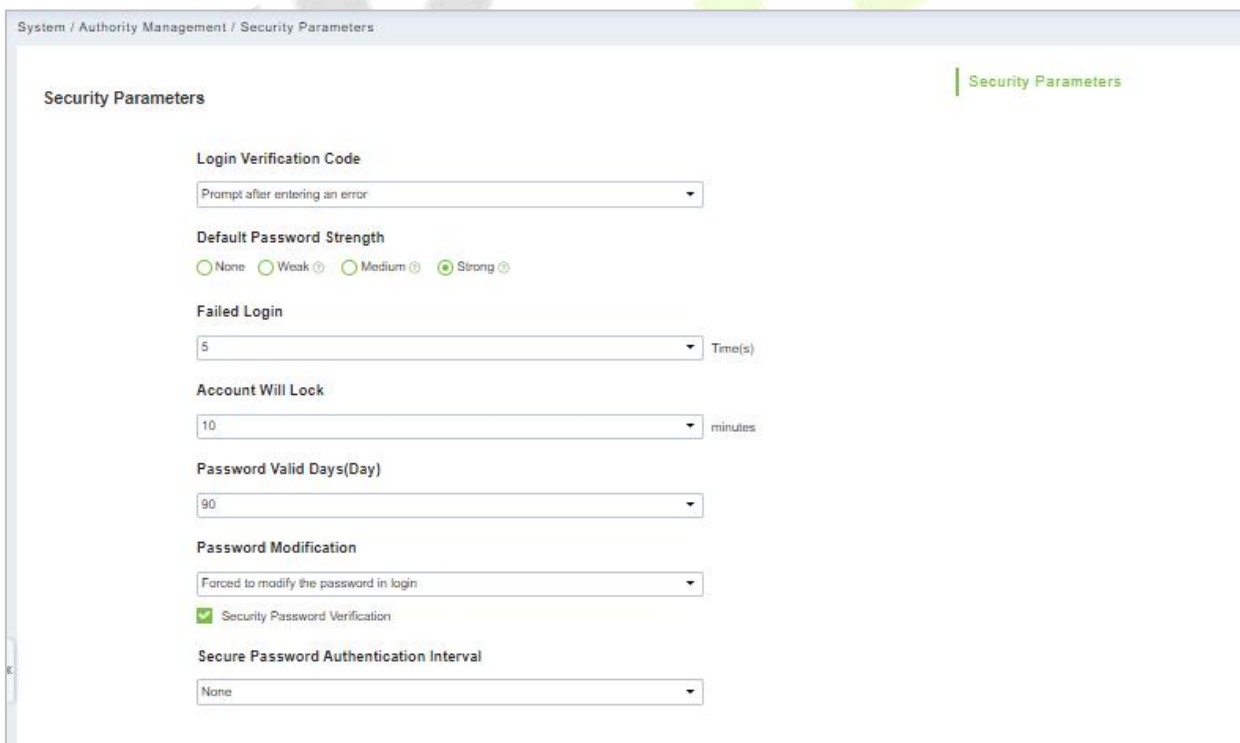


Figure 19- 42 Security Parameter Interface

#### Login Verification Code Setting

It includes None, always prompt verification code, Prompt after entering an error.

**Do not open verification code:** The system allows no verification code

**Open verification code:** Users must fill in the verification code when logging in to the software.

**Open after input error:** The system will pop-up a verification box after filling in the wrong Username and password.

**Password Strength Setting**

The path is System -> Authority Management-> Set Security Parameter.



**Figure 19- 43 Password Strength Option**

**Lock Account**

The account will be locked if user fails to login the system as per the software setting. For example, if the system allows user fill in wrong username and password for 2 times. The system will be locked for 10 minutes after exceeding 2 times of operation.



**Figure 19- 44 Lock Account**

**Password Valid Day (s)**

Users can set the validity as 30 days, 60 days or permanent. If password gets expired, user cannot login to the system.



**Figure 19- 45 Password Valid Days**

**Password Modification**

There are 2 options that user can set. Not mandatory and forced to modify the next time you login.

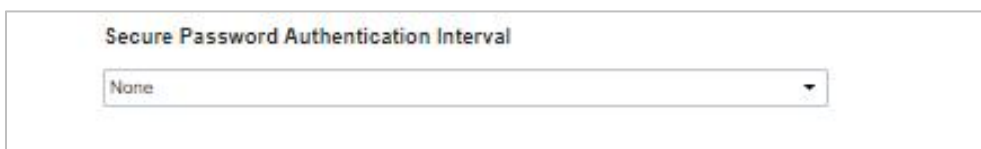
**Not mandatory:** The system does not need to modify the initial password.

**Forced to modify the next time you login:** It is compulsory to modify the initial password after the second login.



**Figure 19- 46 Password Modification Option**

**Secure Password Authentication Interval**



**Figure 19- 47 Secure Password Authentication Interval**

## 20.3 Communication Management

### 20.3.1 Device Commands

Click **System** > **Communication Management** > **Device Commands**, the commands lists will be displayed.

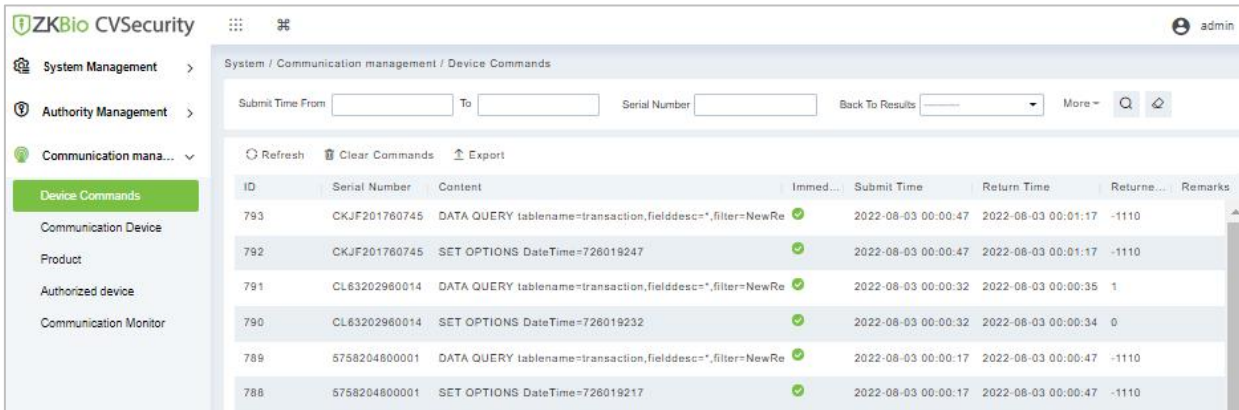


Figure 19- 48 Device Command interface

If the returned value is more than or equal to 0, the command is successfully issued. If the returned value is less than 0, the command is failed to be issued.

#### 20.3.1.1 Export

Export the command lists to the local host. You can export it to an Excel file. See the following figure.

| ID   | Serial Number | Content   | Device Commands | Immediately Cmd        | Submit Time            | Return Time | Returned Value |
|------|---------------|---|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1504 | 20100501999   | DATA UPDATE<br>userauthorize<br>Pin=2AuthorizeTimezoneId=1AuthorizeDoorId=1<br>Pin=1AuthorizeTimezoneId=1AuthorizeDoorId=1<br>... | false           | 2017-12-18<br>10:51:15 | 2017-12-18<br>10:51:21 | 0           |                |
| 1502 | 20100501999   | DATA UPDATE<br>mulcarduser<br>Pin=2CardNo=5dec02LossCardFlag=0CardType=0<br>Pin=1CardNo=4412c5LossCardFlag=0CardType=0<br>...     | false           | 2017-12-18<br>10:51:14 | 2017-12-18<br>10:51:21 | 0           |                |

Figure 19- 49 Export File

#### 20.3.1.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load new temporary Device Commands.

#### 20.3.1.3 Clear Commands

Click **Clear Commands** to clear the command lists.

### 20.3.2 Communication Device

Click **System > Communication Management > Communication**, you can view all equipment information and communication in the system. Detailed information such as accessed module, serial number, firmware version, IP address, communication status, and command execution can be viewed.



Figure 19- 50 Communication Device Interface

#### 20.3.2.1 View Authorized Device

View the authorized device information.

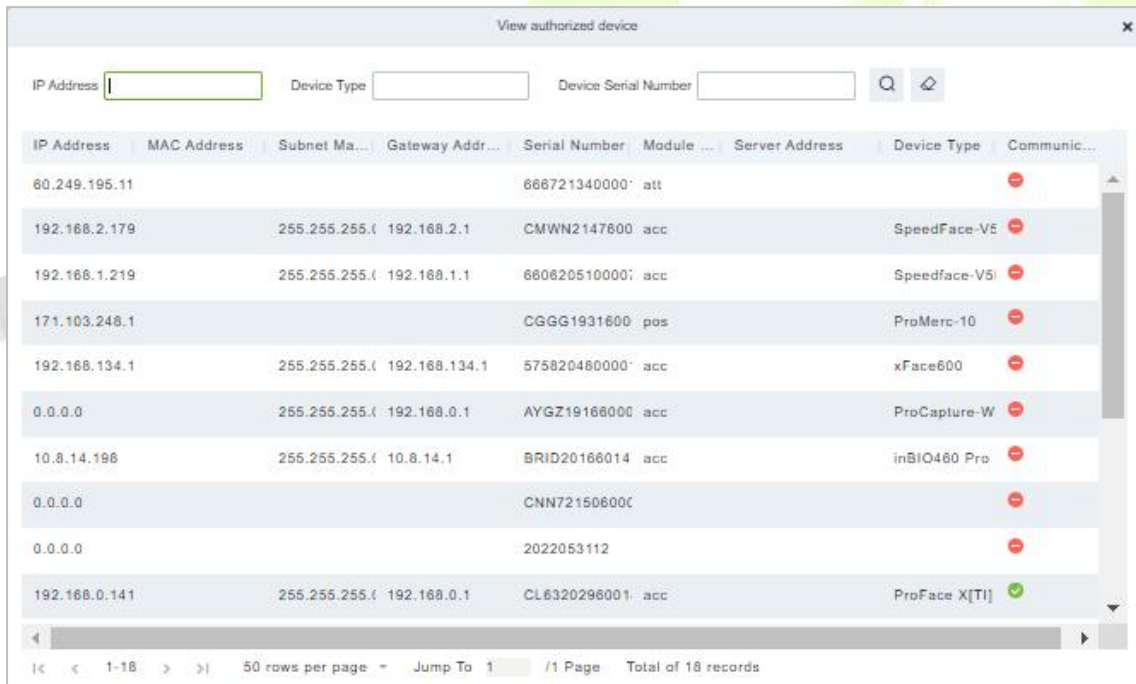


Figure 19- 51 View Authorized Device Interface

#### 20.3.2.2 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load the new temporary Communication Device.

#### 20.3.3 Product

Click **System > Communication Management > Product**, and the product lists will be displayed.

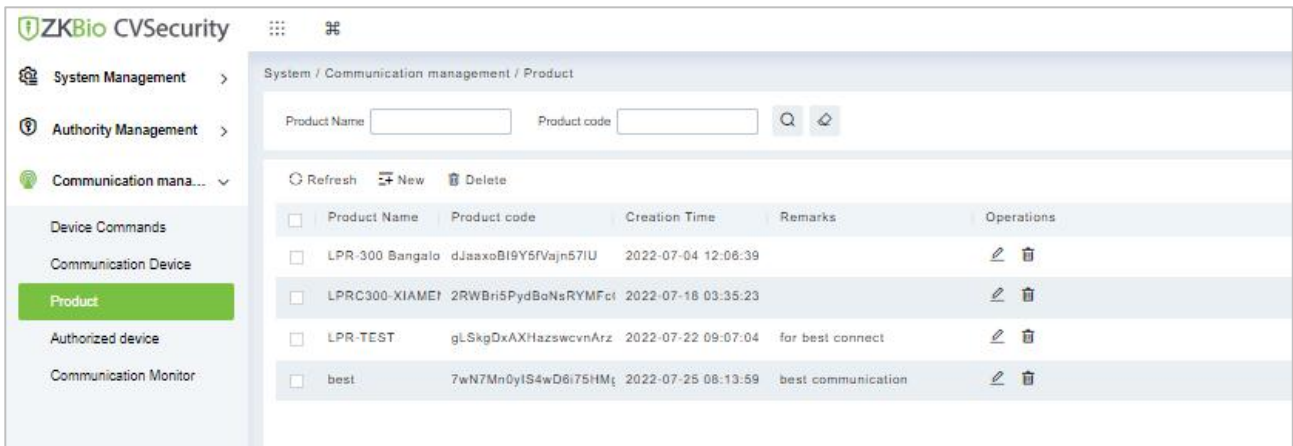


Figure 19- 52 Product Interface

20.3.3.1 New

Click **System** > **Communication** Management > **Product** > **New**, to add the new product name.

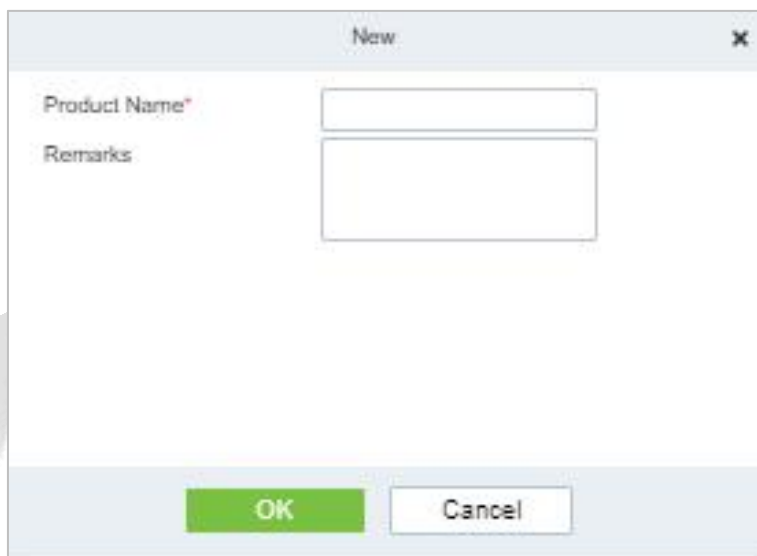


Figure 19- 53 Add Product Option

20.3.3.2 Delete

Click **Delete** to delete the Product Operation.

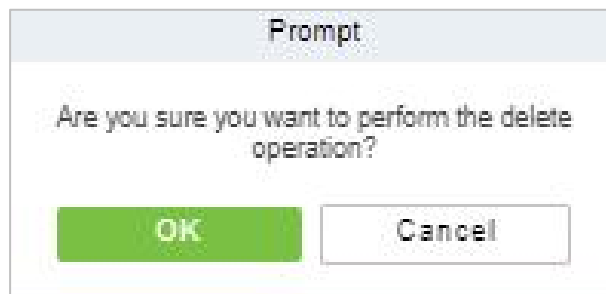


Figure 19- 54 Delete Product Option

20.3.3.3 Edit

Click **Edit** to delete the Product information.

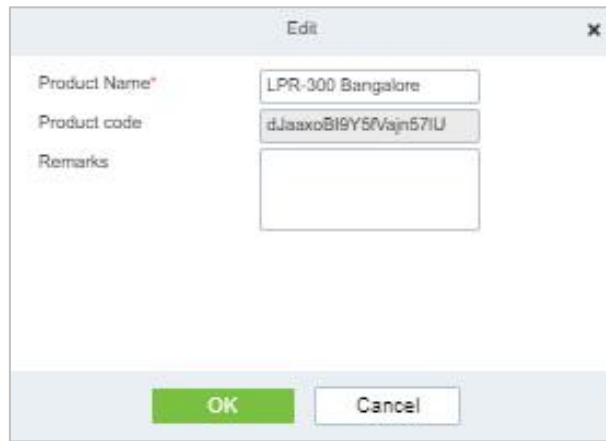


Figure 19- 55 Edit Product Information

### 20.3.4 Authorized Device

Click **System > Communication Management > Authorized Device**, and the product lists will be displayed.

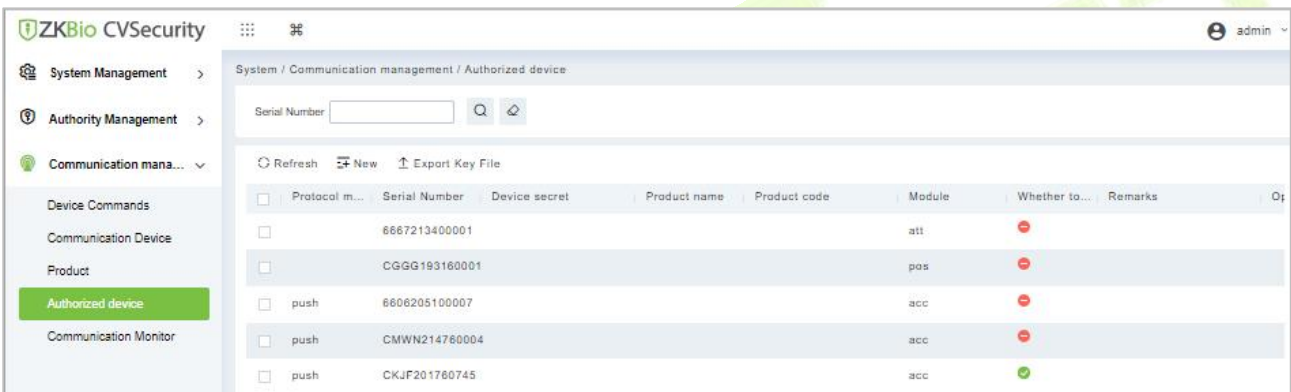


Figure 19- 56 Authorized Device Interface

#### 20.3.4.1 New

Click **System > Communication > Authorized Device > New**, to add the authorized product device.

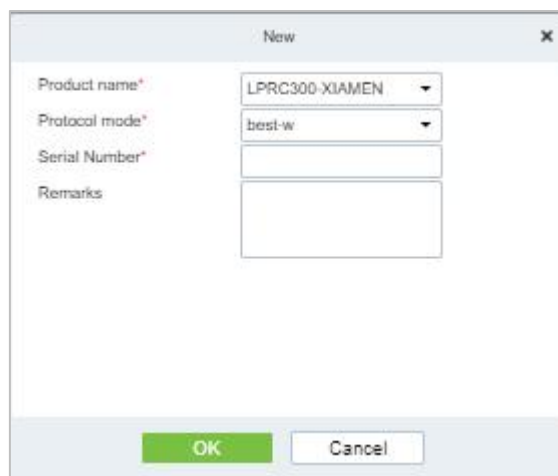


Figure 19- 57 Add Authorized Device

#### 20.3.4.2 Export Key File

Click **System > Communication > Authorized Device**, Select the protocols to export and click the **Export Key File**, to export the key file of the authorized product device.

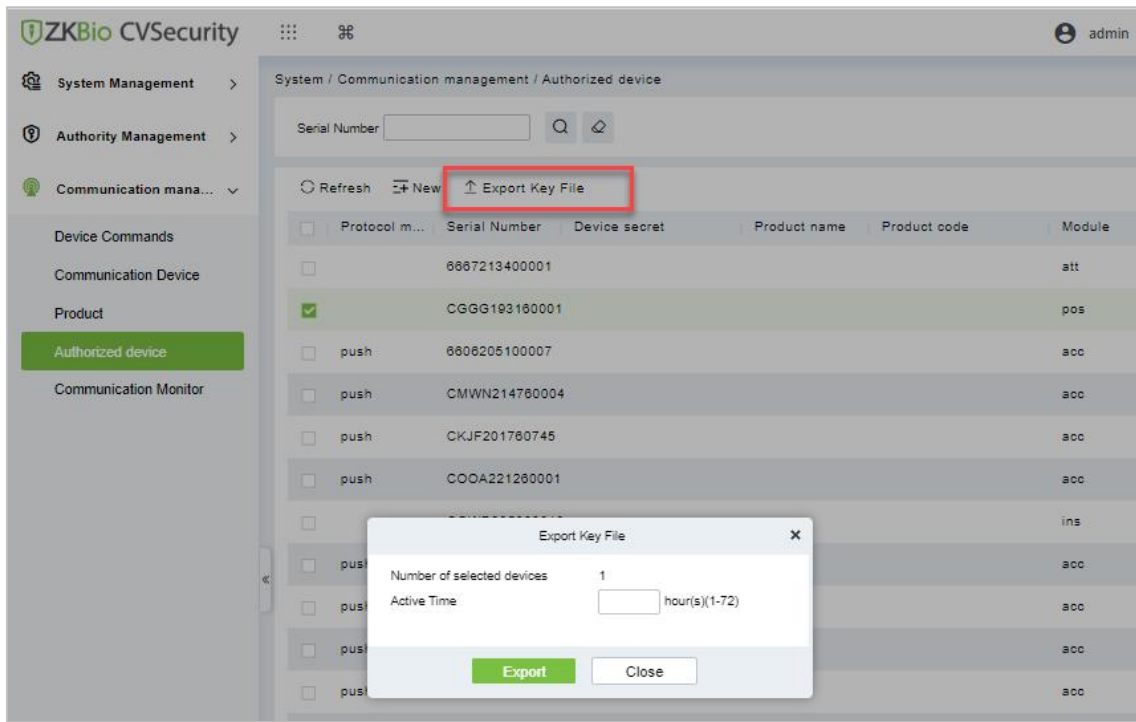


Figure 19- 58 Export Key Option

### 20.3.5 Communication Monitor

Click **System > Communication > Communication Monitor**, and the communication mode will be displayed.

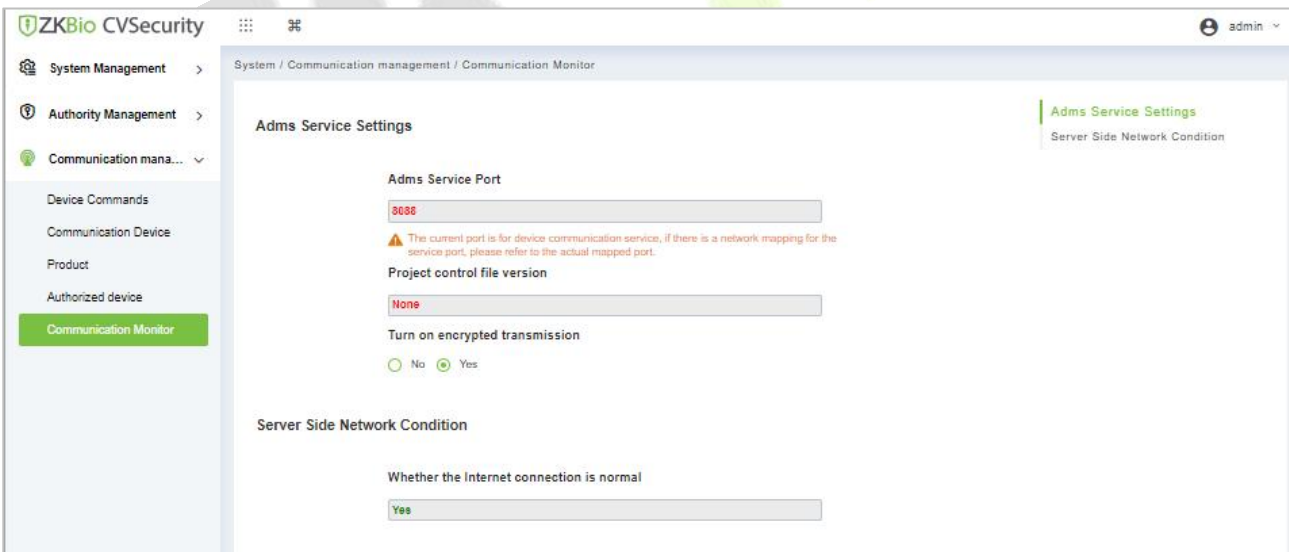


Figure 19- 59 Communication Monitor

## 20.4 Third Party Integration

### 20.4.1 LED Device

The system integrated outsourcing LED equipment (control card: lumens 3200/4200), provides a window to display data; it can provide customers personnel in the access area quantity statistics, real-time information about personnel going in and out and personnel information in the area, etc.

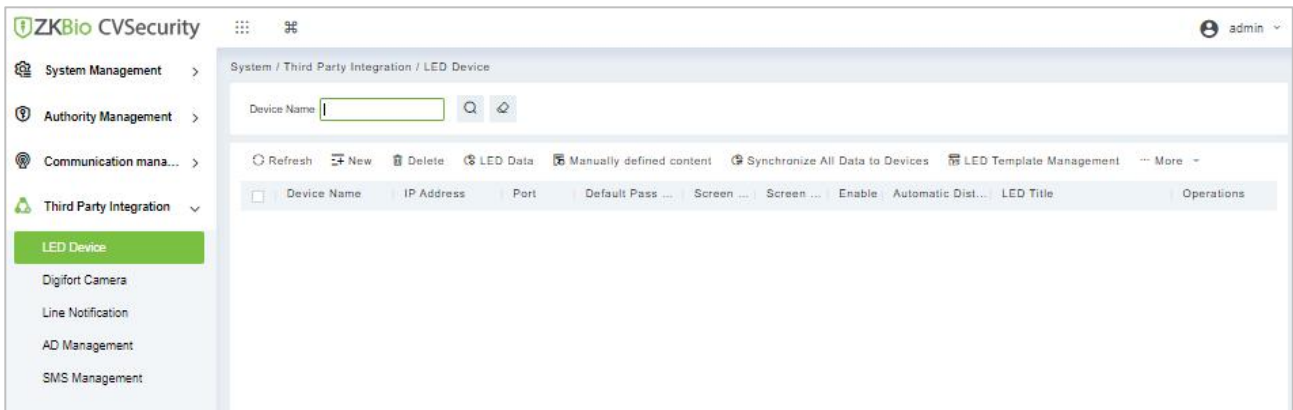


Figure 19- 60 LED Device

20.4.1.1 New

● Operation Step:

Click **System> Extended Management> LED Device> New**. The page is displayed as follows:

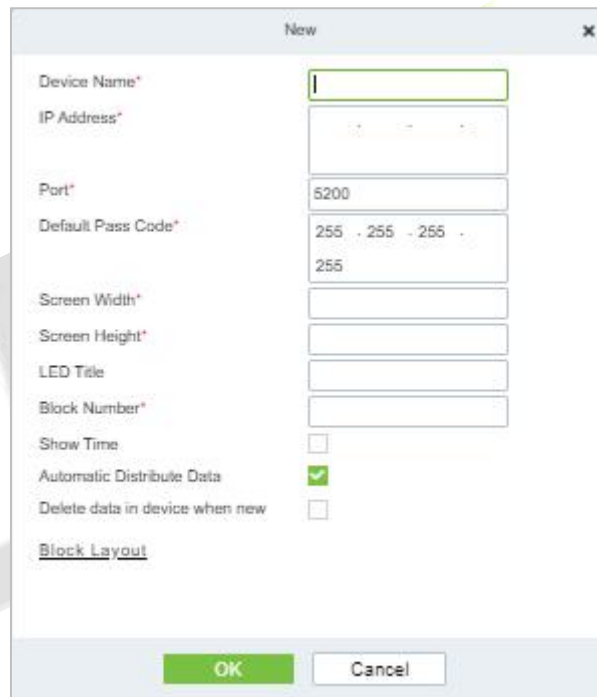


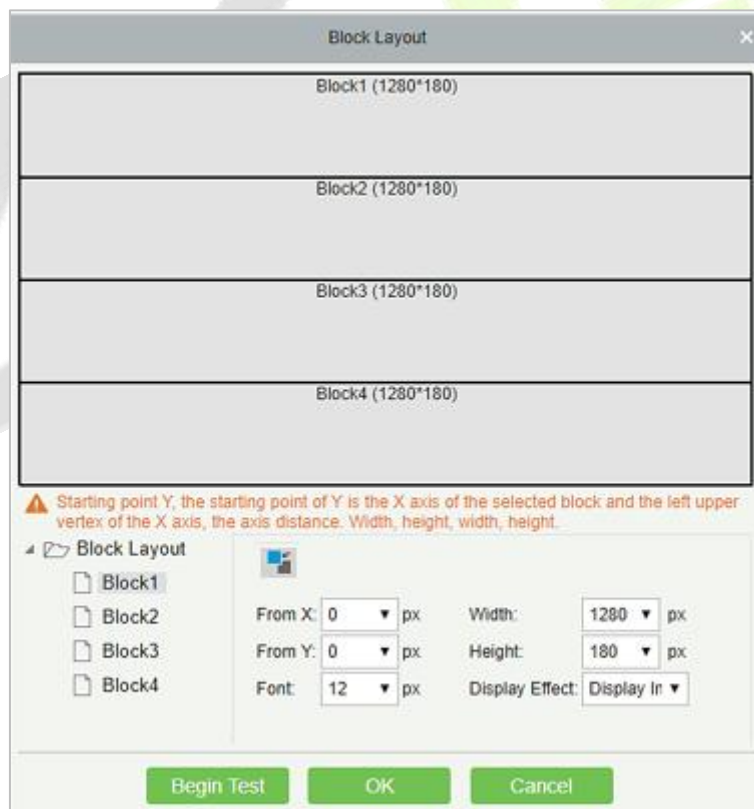
Figure 19- 61 Add LED Device

| Parameter         | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Device Name       | Enter the name of the LED device.                              |
| IP Address        | Enter the IP address of the LED device.                        |
| Port              | Enter the port number. The default communication port is 5200. |
| Default Pass Code | Displays the pass code. The default value is 255.255.255.255.  |
| Screen Width      | Width of the dot matrix (resolution).                          |

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Screen Height                      | Height of the dot matrix (resolution).   |
| LED Title                          | Select whether to display the title. If the parameter is left blank, the title is not displayed.   |
| Block Number                       | Number of blocks that the LED is divided into (Note that the blocks do not contain the title and system time blocks).  |
| Show Time                          | It will display time on the LED screen. Once you select it, you will find two options to choose from: Single Line and Multi-line Display. Choose according to your choice.                         |
| Automatic Data Distribute          | By default, this parameter is selected. You send data to the LED in the access control module only when you select this parameter. Otherwise, the content to be sent needs to be manually defined. |
| Delete Data in the Device When New | Delete the original data in the device when adding an LED device.  |

**Table 19-6 Description Add LED Device Parameter**

After you click **Block Layout**, the following box is displayed:



**Figure 19- 62 Block Layout**

**Notes:**

Parameters must be set for each block.

The height of each block must be equal to or larger than 12. Otherwise, the letters cannot be completely displayed.

The total height of all blocks cannot be larger than the screen height.

### 20.4.1.2 Delete

Click a device name or **Delete** under Operation in the device list and click **OK** to delete the device or click **Cancel** to cancel the operation. Select one or more devices and click Delete above the list and click **OK** to delete the selected device(s) or click **Cancel** to cancel the operation.

### 20.4.1.3 LED Data

LED data option let you view the details about outsourcing LED equipment such as zone device block details etc. user can add new LED data in this interface also.

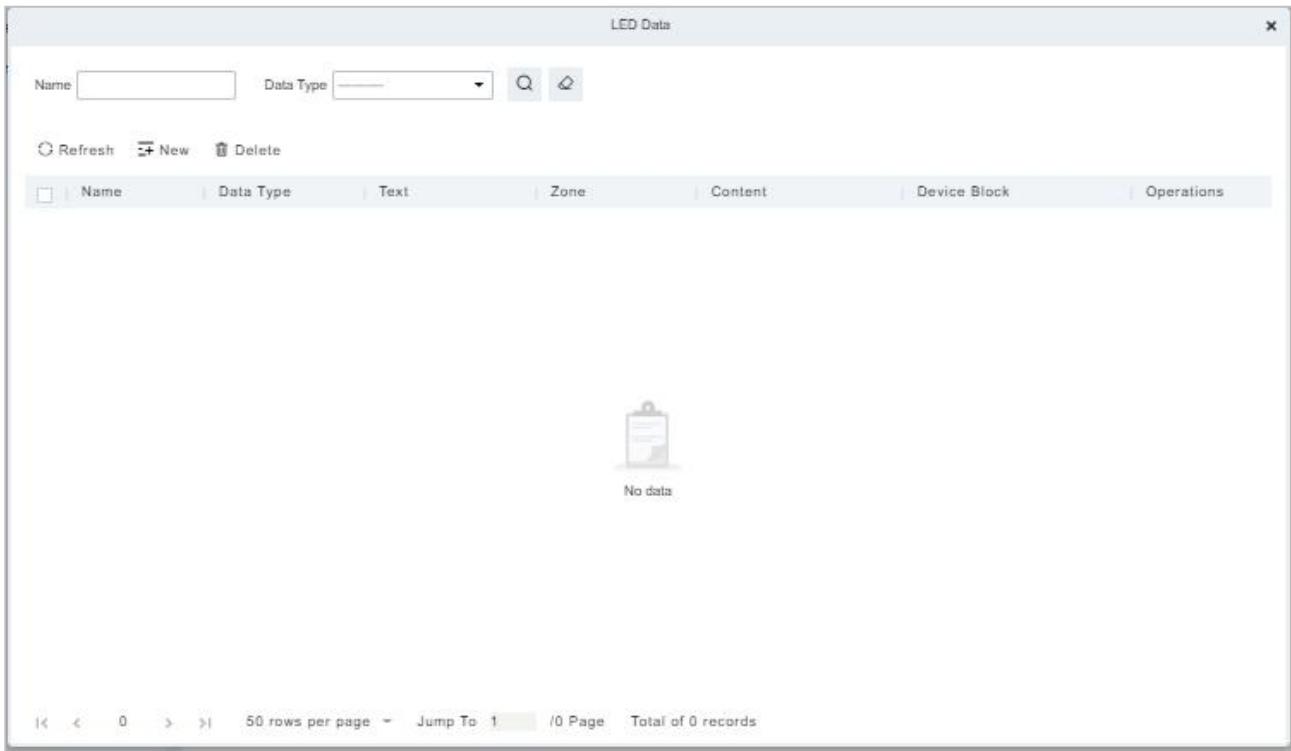


Figure 19- 63 LED Data

### 20.4.1.4 Manually Defined Content

Select a device and click **Manually Defined Content**. The page is displayed as follows:

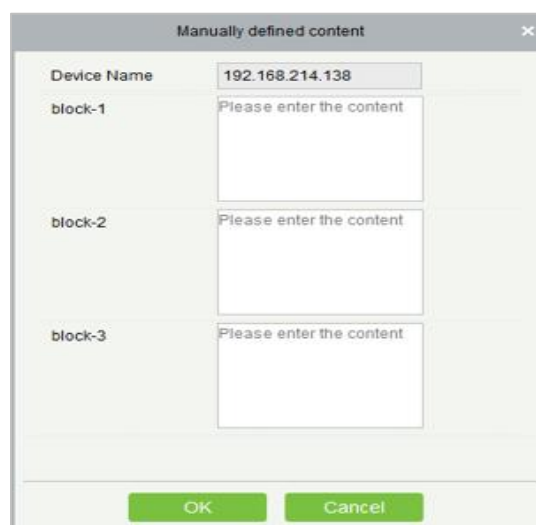


Figure 19- 64 Manually Defined Content Option

**Notes:**

At least one block must be selected for the distribution of manually defined content.

After the manually defined content is selected, the access control module cannot send data to the LED device.

Contact the technical support team for the intermediate table, line notification, active directory page, and other materials.

### 20.4.1.5 LED Template Management

Through this function, you can create a template for the blocks. This template you can directly use at the time of adding an LED device. When you are adding an LED device, then after defining the dimensions of the block, you will be prompted to save the template as shown below:

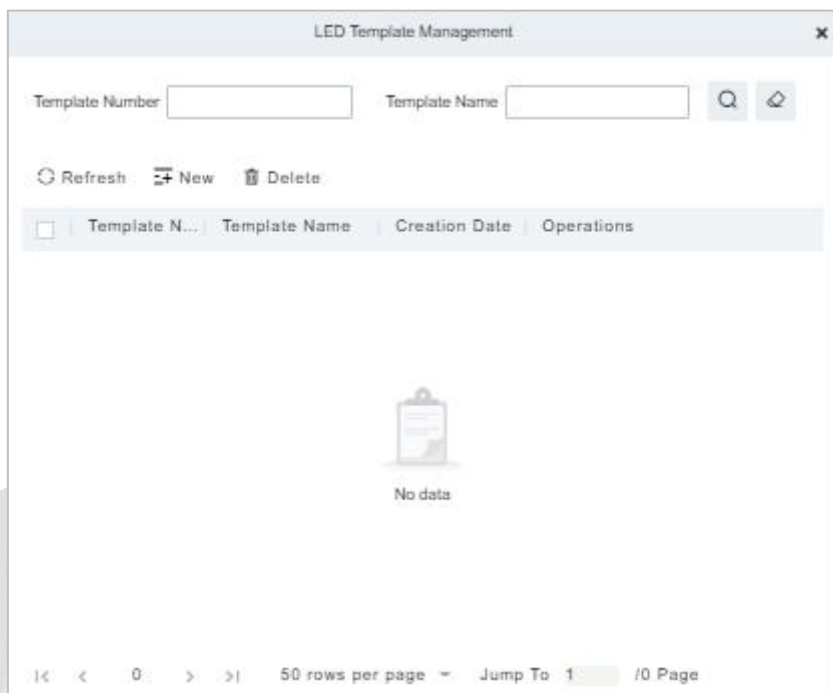


Figure 19- 65 LED Template Management

### 20.4.1.6 Synchronize All Data to Devices

Synchronize the LED block layout and LED data set in the system to the device. Select a device, click **Synchronize All Data to Devices**, and then click **Synchronize** to synchronize the data.

### 20.4.1.7 Edit

Click a device name or **Edit** under operation to go to the edit page. After editing the device, click **OK** to save the setting.

### 20.4.1.8 Enable/Disable

Select a device and click **Enable/Disable** to start/stop using the device. If the device is enabled, data is transmitted to the device. Otherwise, no data is transmitted to the device.

### 20.4.1.9 Restart

After you restart the device, the LED control card system will be restarted, data on the screen is cleared and data saved in the system is restored. After the device is successfully restarted, click **Synchronize All Data to Devices** to display all distributed content on the LED screen.

### 20.4.1.10 Modify IP Address

Modify the IP address of the device. The default IP address of the control card is 192.168.1.222.

## 20.4.2 Digifort Camera

It's integrated with third-party camera management system and the client uses "Digifort" to manage the cameras.

### 20.4.2.1 Sync with Server

It will help you to synchronize device with the server.

### 20.4.2.2 Delete

Click **Third Party Integration > Digifort Camera**, then select a Device Name, and click **Delete > OK** to delete.

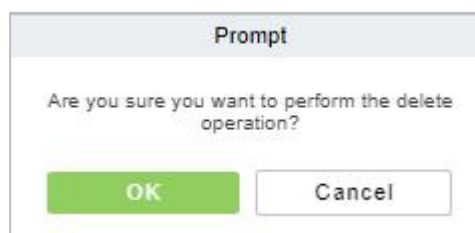


Figure 19- 66 Delete Option

### 20.4.2.3 Parameters

Click **Third Party Integration > Digifort Camera > Parameters** to update the server details.

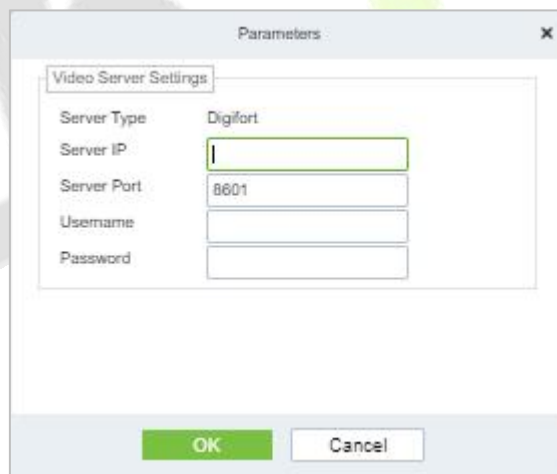


Figure 19- 67 Digifort Camera Device Parameters

| Parameter   | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| Server Type | By default, the server settings "Digifort".        |
| Server IP   | Enter the Arteco Server IP.                        |
| Server Port | Enter the Arteco Server Port.Default value is 8601 |
| Username    | Enter the Arteco User Username.                    |

|          |                          |
|----------|--------------------------|
| Password | Enter the User Password. |
|----------|--------------------------|

Table 19-7 Description Digifort Camera Parameter

### 20.4.3 Arteco Intergration

Please refer to the attached operating instructions for ARTECO.



2-ZKBio  
CVSecurity Integra

### 20.4.4 Line Notification

Click **System > Third Party integration > Line Notification** to enter the interface:

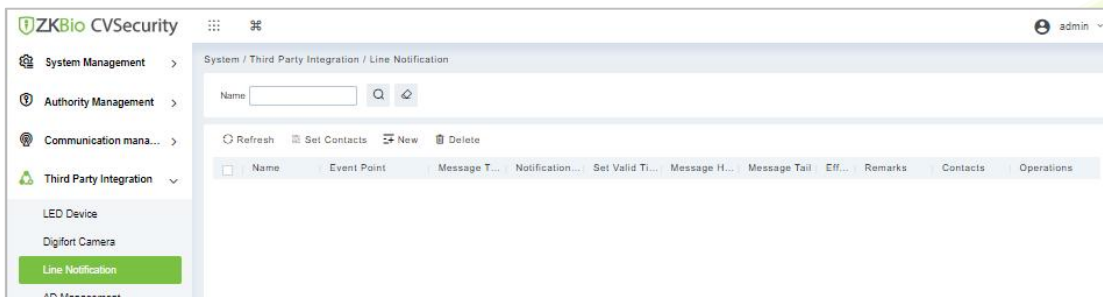


Figure 19- 68 Line Notification Interface

#### 20.4.4.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load the new temporary line Notification.

#### 20.4.4.2 Set Contacts

**Step 1:** Add Line Integration. Log in ZKBio CVSecurity and go to **System > Third Part Integration > Line Integration**, then click **Set Contacts**.

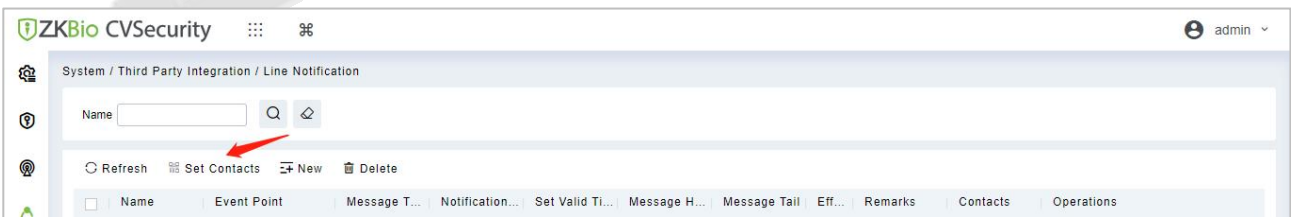


Figure 19- 69 Set Contacts Option

**Step 2:** After the windows is displayed, please click **New**.

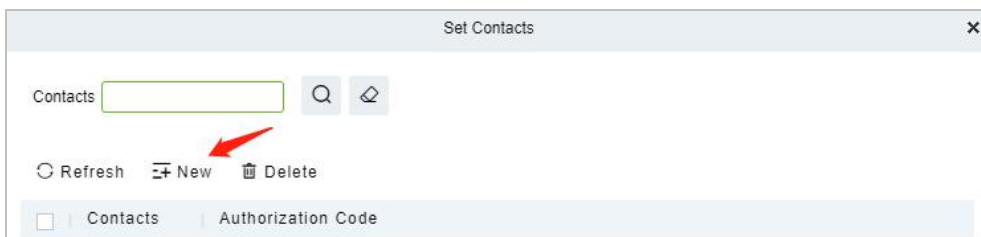


Figure 19- 70 Add Contacts Option

**Step 3:** After the windows is displayed, please click **Click to enter**.

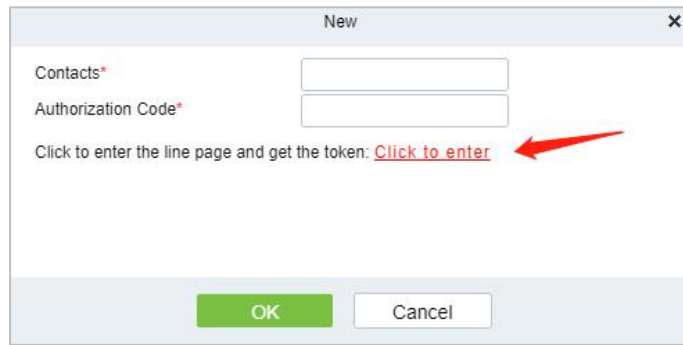


Figure 19- 71 New Option

**Step 4:** Line web page, please use the account and password of line to log in.



Figure 19- 72 Line Interface

**Step 5:** After login, slide down and click **Generate token**.

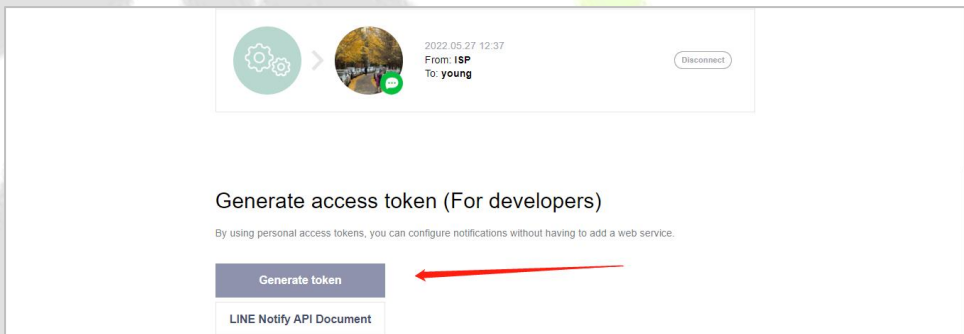


Figure 19- 73 Generate Token option

**Step 6:** Fill in the name of token and select the group you created earlier, then click Generate token

**Note:** The group you selected is used to receive Line-linked messages, please make sure that the group members do not disclose information security.

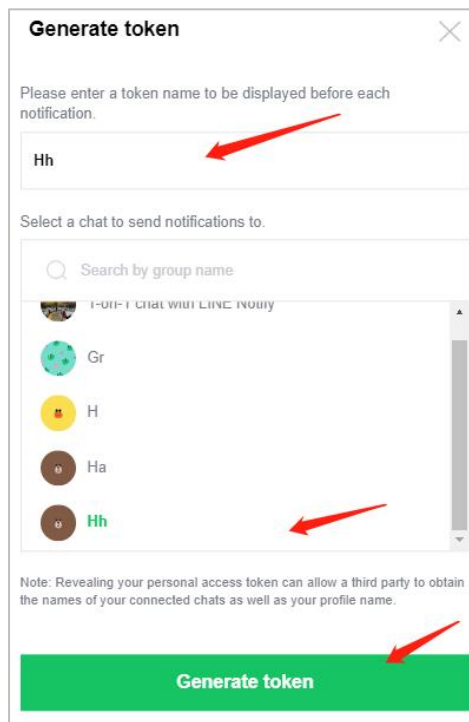


Figure 19- 74 Generate Token Option

Step 7: Please click **Copy**.

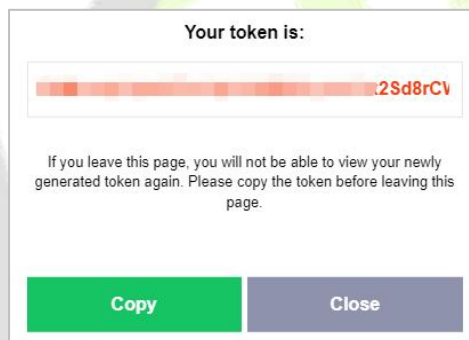


Figure 19- 75 Token Interface

Step 8: Back to **ZKBio CVSecurity > System Page**, paste the Authorization Code and fill in Contacts.

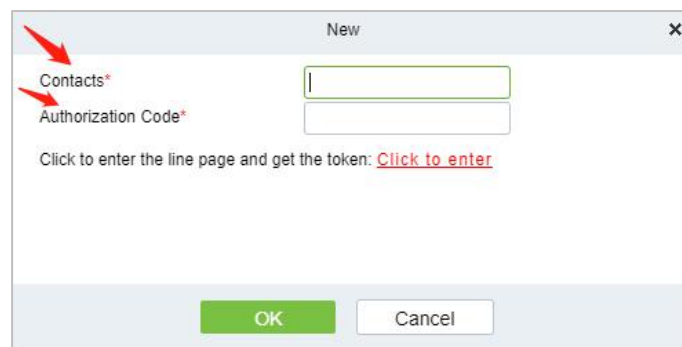


Figure 19- 76 Add Contact Option

### 20.4.4.3 New

Step 1: Click **Third Party > Line Notification > New** to enter the Add Levels editing interface:

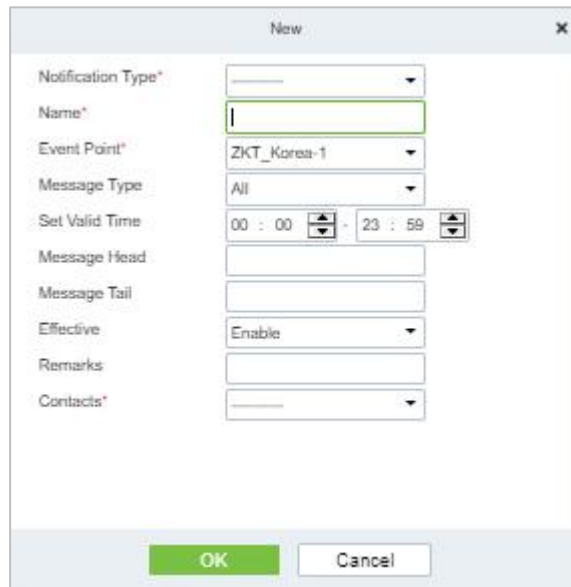


Figure 19- 77 Add Line Notification

**Step 2:** Fill in all the required details and save. Once saved, you will get the template at the Line Notification device adding interface.

#### 20.4.4.4 Delete

Click **Third Party > Line management**, then select a receiver, and click **Delete > OK** to delete.

### 20.4.5 AD Management

#### 20.4.5.1 Server Configuration

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the System module, select **Third Party Integration > AD Management**.

**Step 2:** In the **AD Management** interface, fill in the **Server Configuration** as required in the details below.

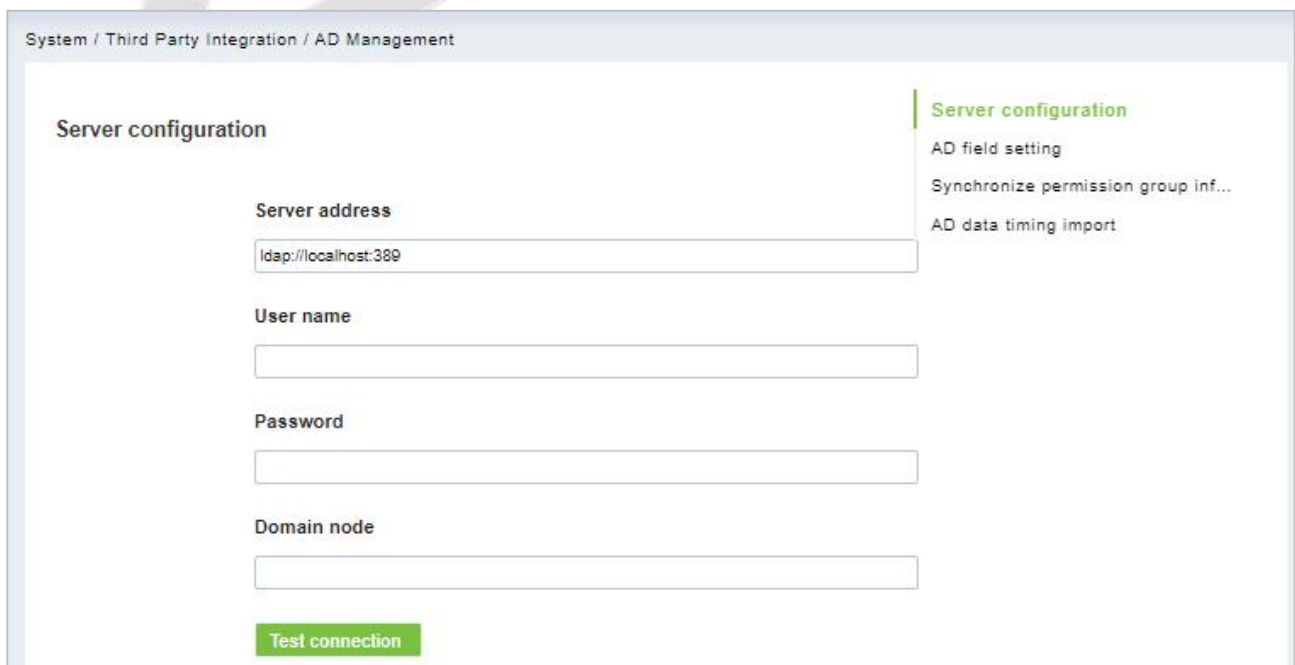


Figure 19- 78 Ad Management Interface

### 20.4.5.2 AD Field Setting

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the System module, select **Third Party Integration > AD Management**.

**Step 2:** In the **AD Management** interface, fill in the **AD field setting** as required in the details below.

Figure 19- 79 AD Field Setting

### 20.4.5.3 Synchronize Permission Group Information

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the System module, select **Third Party Integration > AD Management**.

**Step 2:** In the **AD Management** interface, fill in the **Synchronize permission group information** as required in the details below.

Figure 19- 80 Synchronize Permission Group Information

### 20.4.5.4 AD Data Timing Import

● Operation Step

**Step 1:** In the System module, select **Third Party Integration > AD Management**.

**Step 2:** In the **AD Management** interface, fill in the **AD data timing import** as required in the details below.

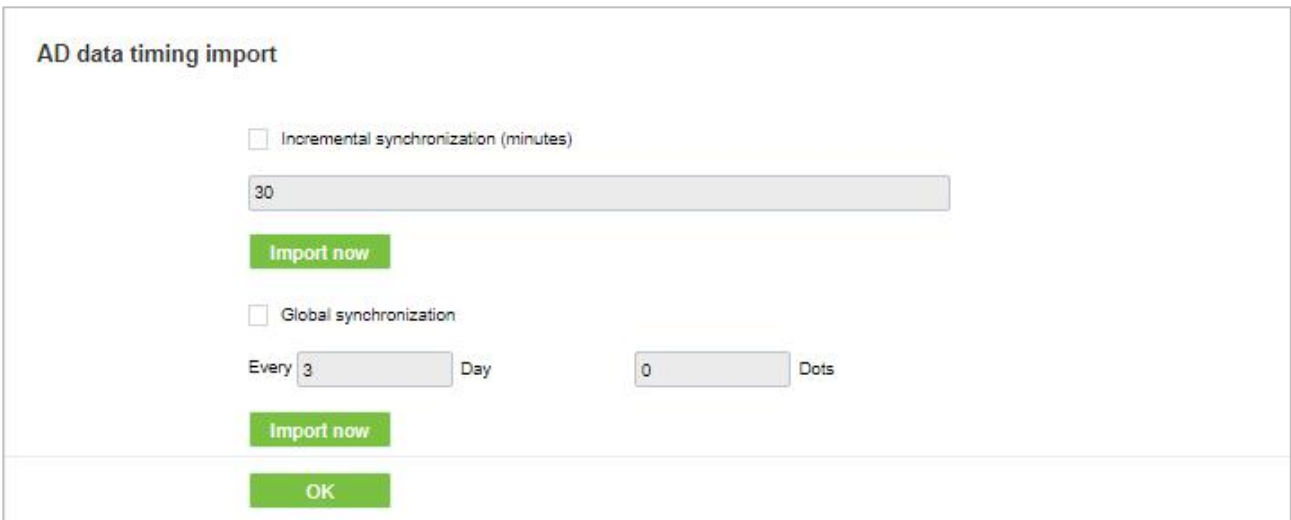


Figure 19- 81 AD Data Timing Import

**Note:** Please refer to the documentation for more details [3-ZKBio CVSecurity AD \(Active Directory\) Function Introduction.pdf](#)

### 20.4.6 SMS Management

The SMS Management feature helps in sending text messages to the personnel in case of any access or elevator event. If the checkbox is selected, the message will be sent to the corresponding person.

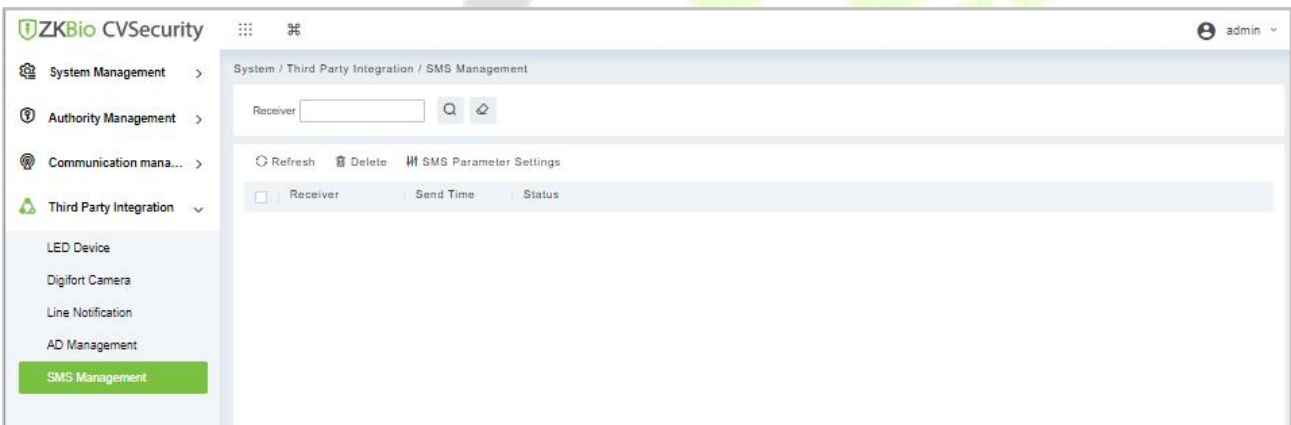


Figure 19- 82 SMS Management Interface

#### 20.4.6.1 Refresh

Click **Refresh** at the upper part of the list to load a new temporary SMS Management.

#### 20.4.6.2 Delete

Click **Third Party > SMS Management**, then select a receiver, and click **Delete > OK** to delete.

#### 20.4.6.3 SMS Parameter Settings

Supports sending text message to Personnel once any access or elevator event occurs.

After selecting the checkbox next to the Mobile Number, the system will send an email to the relevant person once access or an elevator event occurs.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "SMS Parameter Settings" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. At the top, there are two radio buttons: "Modem-SMS" (which is selected) and "AWS-SMS". Below this, there are two sections. The first section, titled "SMS Parameter Settings", contains three input fields: "Port\*" (a dropdown menu), "Phone Number\*" (a text box), and "SMS Service Center Number\*" (a text box). A green "Get" button is located to the right of the "SMS Service Center Number\*" field. The second section, titled "Test Send", contains two input fields: "Receiver" and "Content". A green "Test Send" button is located below these fields. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "OK" (green) and "Cancel" (white).

Figure 19- 83 Modern SMS Parameter Setting

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "SMS Parameter Settings" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. At the top, there are two radio buttons: "Modem-SMS" and "AWS-SMS" (which is selected). Below this, there are two sections. The first section, titled "SMS Parameter Settings", contains two input fields: "Accesskey\*" and "SecretKey\*", each with a text box. Below these fields is a checkbox labeled "Enable". The second section, titled "Test Send", contains two input fields: "Receiver" and "Content". A green "Test Send" button is located below these fields. At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "OK" (green) and "Cancel" (white).

Figure 19- 84 AWS-SMS Prameter Settings

## 21 Service Center

This module integrates the device and event logging of the system module. Users can import a map to the map center to view the distribution of monitoring points and alarm sources. When an alarm occurs, users can view the location and surrounding conditions of the alarm source, select a suitable monitoring point, and view video live, playback, and human movement functions.

### 21.1 Device Center

#### 21.1.1 Device

Devices added to the access control and video module are displayed on the screen, and basic device information is displayed, as shown in figure below.

The screenshot shows a web interface for device management. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: "Service Center / Device Center / Device". Below this is a search bar labeled "Device Name" with a search icon and a refresh icon. Underneath the search bar are two buttons: "Refresh" and "Device synchronization". The main content is a table with the following columns: "Serial Number", "Device Name", "Device Model", "Firmware V...", "IP Address", "Belong Areas", "Source Mo...", "Status", and "Operation".

| Serial Number                 | Device Name    | Device Model | Firmware V... | IP Address      | Belong Areas | Source Mo...     | Status | Operation |
|-------------------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|--------|-----------|
| CN3M212460001                 | ProfaceX       | TDB08M-TI/M  | ZAM170-NF-Vi  | 192.168.134.168 | Area Name    | Access           | ⊖      | 🔄         |
| 21024127099SL8000137          | 192.168.134.59 | DBL522-01    |               | 192.168.134.59  | Area Name    | Intelligent Vide | ⊖      | 🔄         |
| f673eae8ab854805b3874535b6b56 | AS1700         | IVS1800      |               | 192.168.134.101 |              | Intelligent Vide | ✔      | 🔄         |

Figure 20- 1 Device Display Page

- Device Synchronization:

Synchronize data of the system to the device. Select device, click Synchronize Data to Devices and click OK to complete synchronization.

**Note:** Synchronize Data to Devices will delete all data in the device first (except transactions), and thus download all settings again. Please keep the internet connection stable and avoid power down situations. If the device is working normally, please use this function with caution. Execute it in rare user situations to avoid impact on normal use of the device.

### 21.2 Event Center

Through the definition of the event level and type, it makes the level prompt for the record generated under real-time monitoring.

#### 21.2.1 The Event Type

The software contains event types by default. You cannot add new event types. You can customize the level of the event type.

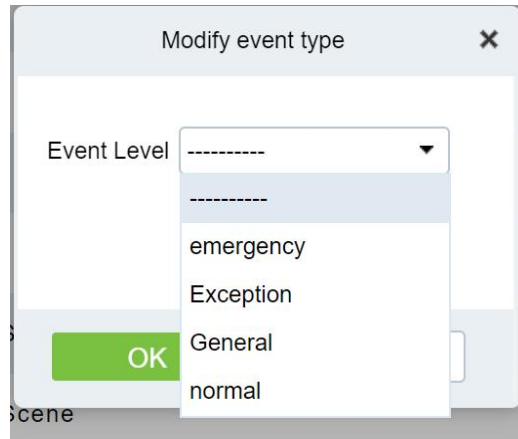
This section describes how to modify step.

### Modify Event Type

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose **Event Center > Event Type**.

**Step 2:** On the **Event Type** page, select the event type to be modified and click **Event Level**. The Event Level dialog box is displayed.

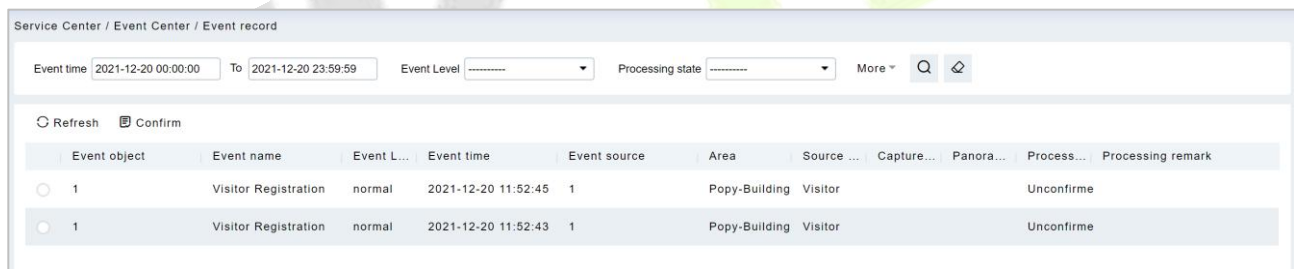


**Figure 20- 2 Modify Event Level Page**

**Step 3:** After selecting the desired level, Click **OK** to complete changing the event type level.

### 21.2.2 The Event Record

This screen records all events generated on the platform, as shown in figure below

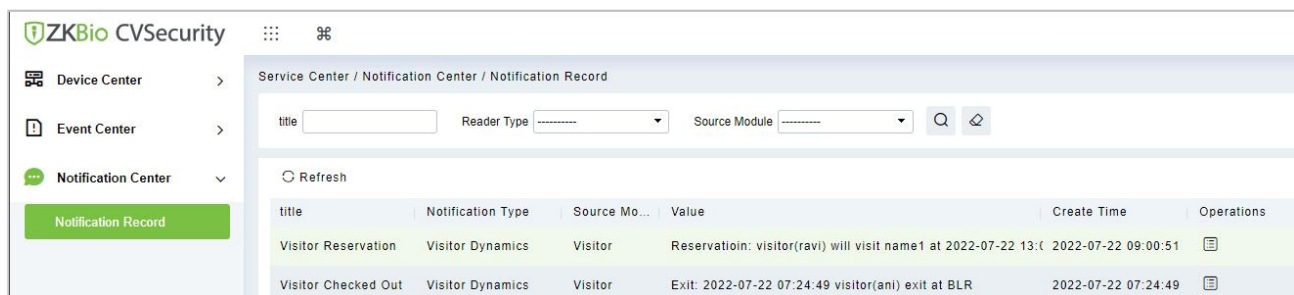


**Figure 20- 3 Event Recording Page**

### 21.3 Notification Center

● Notification Record

This interface records the notification reminding events generated by the attendance and visitor module.



**Figure 20- 4 Notification Record Page**

## 21.4 Map Center

You can import a map to set monitoring points. When an alarm occurs, you can immediately view the location of the alarm source and surrounding conditions, select an appropriate monitoring point, and view live videos, playback, and personnel movements.

### 21.4.1 Real-Time Monitoring


Alarms generated in the access control and video modules are displayed on the real-time monitoring interface. You can query access control and video events by category. When an alarm is generated, you can view the location of the alarm source and surrounding conditions, select a suitable monitoring point, and view the live video, playback, and personnel movement. Operation that can handle doors in batches.

#### 21.4.1.1 Personnel Movement

This part introduces the configuration Step for real-time monitoring of personnel movement in the service center module.

##### ● Operation Step

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "Map Center > Real-time Monitoring".

**Step 2:** On the real-time monitoring screen, click the icon on the right  in the personnel Trend window that is displayed, set related parameters.

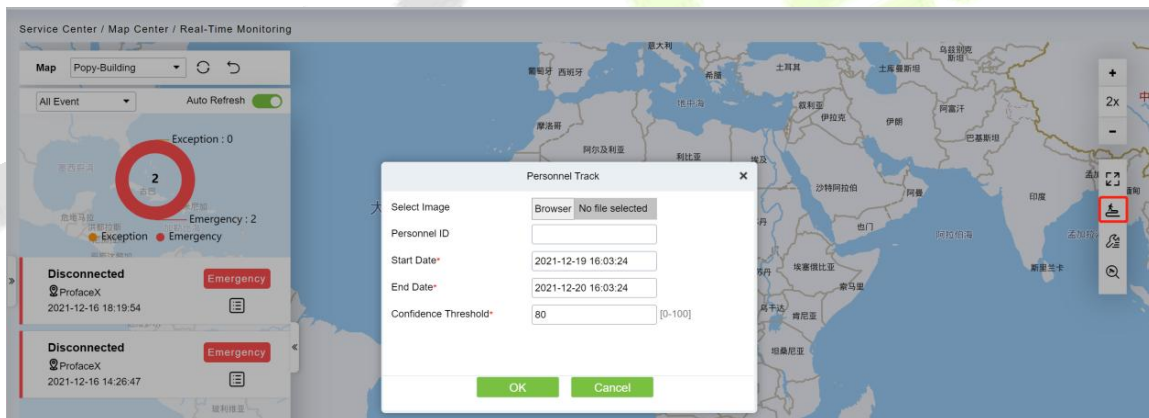


Figure 20- 5 Page for Querying Personnel Trends


**Step 3:** Click **OK** to display the movement chart on the map.

#### 21.4.1.2 Batch Operation

This part introduces the configuration Step for real-time monitoring of batch operation in the service center module.

##### ● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "Map Center > Real-time Monitoring".

**Step 2:** On the real-time monitoring screen, click the icon on the right  in the personnel Trend window that is displayed, set related parameters,

##### ● Remote Opening / Remote Closing:

It can control one door or all doors.

To control a single door, right click over it, and click **Remote Opening/ Closing** in the pop-up dialog box. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/ Closing** behind Current All.

In remote opening, user can define the door opening duration (The default is 15s). You can select **Enable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** to enable the intraday door passage mode time zones, or set the door to Normal Open, then the door will not be limited to any time zones (open for 24 hours).

To close a door, select **Disable Intraday Passage Mode Time Zone** first, to avoid enabling other normal open time zones to open the door, and then select **Remote Closing**.

**Note:** If **Remote Opening /Closing** fails, check whether the devices are disconnected or not. If disconnected, check the network.

- **Activate Lockdown:**

It will remotely set the door status to locked status. After this, the door wouldn't receive any operations, such as card reading and remote operations. This function is supported only by certain devices.

- **Deactivate Lockdown:**

It will unlock a locked door. This function is supported only by certain devices.

- **Cancel Alarm:**

Once an alarming door is displayed on the interface, the alarm sound will be played. Alarm cancellation can be done for single door and all doors. To control a single door, move the cursor over the door icon, a menu will pop-up, then click **Remote Opening/Closing** in the menu. To control all doors, directly click **Remote Opening/Closing** behind Current All.

**Note:** If cancel the alarm fails, check if any devices are disconnected. If found disconnected, check the network.

- **Remote Normally Open:**

It will set the device as normal open by remote

### 21.4.1.3 Search Device


This part introduces the configuration Step for real-time monitoring of search device in the service center module.

#### Add a Door

This part introduces the configuration Step of map configuration and door addition in the service center module.

- **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the service Center module, choose "**Map Center > Map Configuration**".

**Step 2:** On the map configuration screen, select the map of the desired area and click on the right of the screen  to add the gate.

**Step 3:** In the Add Door list on the left of the page, drag the required **Access Control** device to place it on the map,

**Step 4:** Click **Submit** under the left door bar to complete the operation of adding a door on the map.

#### Adding a Camera

This section describes how to add camera Step for map configuration in the Service Center module.

- **Operation Step:**

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "**Map Center > Map Configuration**".

**Step 2:** On the map configuration screen, select the map of the desired area and click on the right of the screen to add a camera.

**Step 3:** In the Add Camera list on the left of the screen drag the required camera device to place it on the map,

### Others

This section describes how to add others Step for map configuration in the Service Center module.

● Operation Step:

Step 1: In the Service Center module, choose "**Map Center > Real Time Monitoring**".

Step 2: On the map configuration screen, select the map of the desired area and click on the right of the screen to add Others.

Step 3: In the Add Other list on the left of the screen drag the required other device to place it on the map,

### Map

Click the Map: It will show the area of the map.

### Defense Area

It will show the defence area in the map.

### 21.4.1.4 Handle Video Alarm Details

This section describes the Step configuration for handling video alarm event details in the Service Center module.

● Operation Step

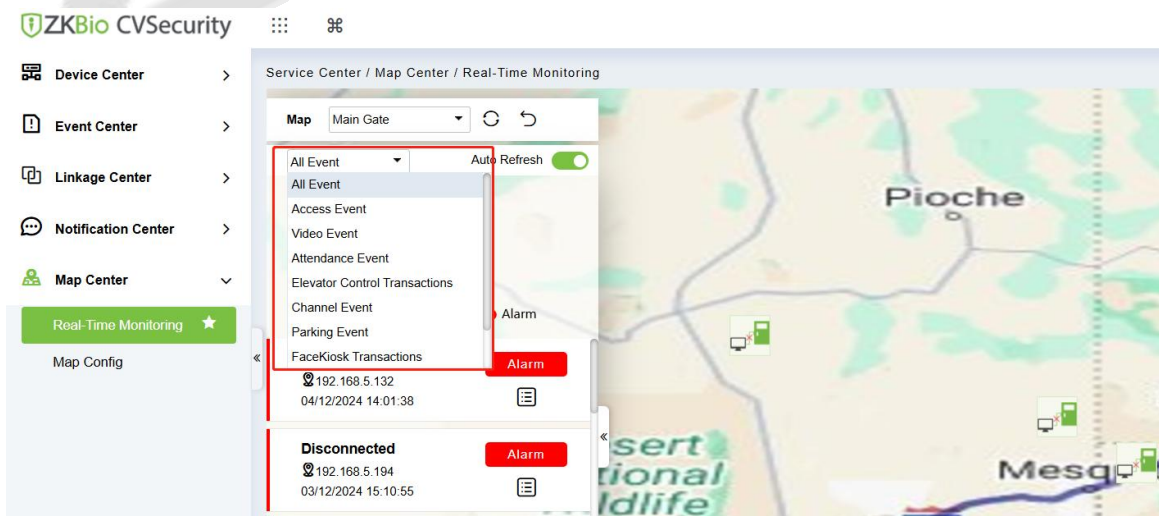
**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "**Map Center > Real-time Monitoring**".

**Step 2:** On the real-time monitoring screen, select a video alarm in the left pane and click ⓘ to display detailed information. As shown in Figure 14-6.

Instructions:

Function description of the detailed information interface:

- 1.Preview: Displays the live view of the current video device.
- 2.Playback: Plays back the records generated by alarm events.
- 3.Trend: record the corresponding trend record of personnel.
- 4.Report: You can note the event status.



**Figure 20- 6 Video Alarm Details Screen**


**Step 3:** After viewing the detailed information and remarks, click **Submit**.

### 21.4.1.5 Handle Door Alarms in Details

This section describes the Step configuration for handling gate alarm event details in the Service Center module.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "Map Center > Real-time Monitoring".

**Step 2:** On the real-time monitoring page, select the event for which the access control alarm is generated in the left pane and click . The detailed information is displayed.

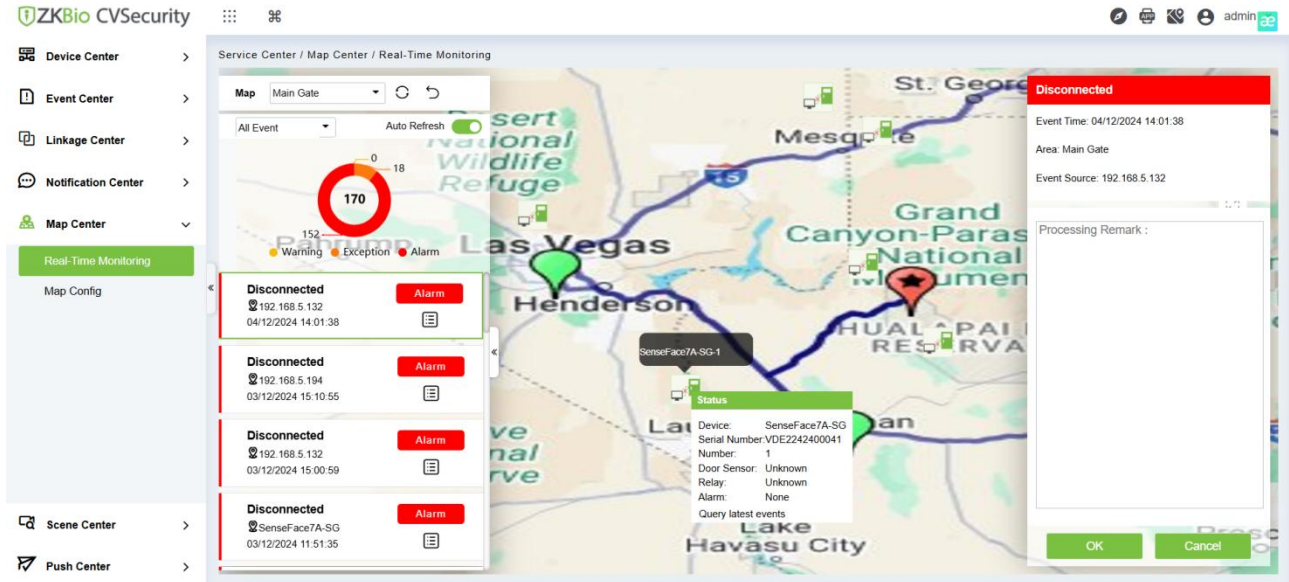


Figure 20-7 Access Alarm Details Page







**Step 3:** After filling in the report remarks, click **Submit**.



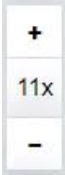



### 21.4.2 Map Configuration

By importing the map and configuring the corresponding monitoring points, the distribution of the current monitoring points can be intuitively displayed.

● Instructions:

Table 20-1 describes the ICONS on the map configuration page.

| Icon  | Instructions  |
|---|---|
|  | Full screen.  |
|  | The refresh.  |
|  | Return to the previous level.   |
|  | Drag ICONS of <b>Access Control</b> and camera and move coordinates; After Operation is finished, click  , can be saved. |
|  | Add the icon of the <b>Access Control</b> device.   |

| Icon  | Instructions  |
|---|---|
|  | Add a camera icon.  |
|  | Add sub maps.   |
|  | Operation to zoom in and out of the map.  |
|  | Move the mouse over the "door or Video" device on the map and right click it out. |
|  | Add a map.  |
|  | The editor.   |

**Table 20-1 Map Configuration Icons**

● The Premise Conditions:


1. The access control device is added to the Access Control module.
2. Add the camera device under the video module.

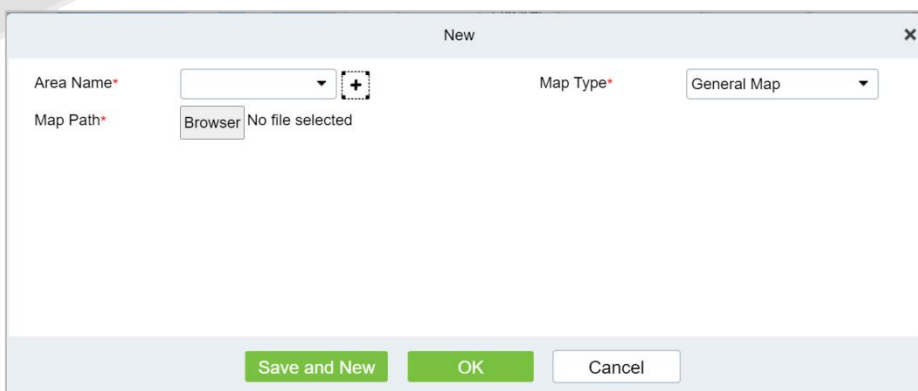
**21.4.2.1 Add Map**

This section describes how to add Step of map configuration in the Service Center module.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "**Map Center > Map Configuration**".

**Step 2:** In the map configuration screen, click on the left bar . The page for adding a map is displayed, as shown in Figure 14-8. For details about the parameters, see Table 18-2.



**Figure 20- 8 Add Map Page**

| The Map Type | Parameter | Instructions |
|--------------|-----------|--------------|
|--------------|-----------|--------------|

| The Map Type  | Parameter                             | Instructions  |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|
| Normal Mapping<br>(Using the map drawn by the user, as the background loading,) | Name                                  | Select the area to which you want to add the map. For details about how to configure regions, see 18.2 Region Settings.   |
|   | Map Path                              | Select the map you want to add, that is, the map image file that exists on the local server in advance.<br><b>Instructions</b><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Map is supported formats. Jpe \. JPG \. JPEG \. GIF \. PNG \. BMP \. Ico \. SVG \. SVGZ \. Tif \. Tiff \. Ai \. DRW \. PCT \. PSP \. XCF \. PSD \. Raw \. Webp image file.</li> <li>Map image file size should not exceed 1120 × 380px.</li> </ul> |
| Hypergraph  | Name                                  | Select the area to which you want to add the map. For details about how to configure regions, see 18.2 Region Settings.   |
|   | Map Path                              |   |
|   | Route Analysis Path                   | To set up a GIS server, set parameters on the server, and then set these parameters.  |
|   | Projection                            |   |
|   | The Center X/Y Coordinate             | Fill in the latitude and longitude.   |
|   | Initialize The Scaling Level          | The general choice for initial scaling is around 13.  |
|   | Maximum Zoom Level/Minimum Zoom Level | Custom map zoom size.   |
| Google Maps   | Area                                  | Select the area to which you want to add the map. For details about how to configure regions, see 18.2 Region Settings.   |
|   | The Map Key                           | Log on to the platform for <a href="https://cloud.google.com/maps-platform">https://cloud.google.com/maps-platform</a> for registration for the key.<br><b>Instructions:</b> You need to turn on the Directions API on Google’s platform to map people’s movements.   |
|   | Initialize The Scaling Level          | The general choice for initial scaling is around 13.  |
|   | The Center X/Y Coordinate             | Fill in the latitude and longitude.   |
| Baidu Map   | Area                                  | Select the area to which you want to add the map. For details about how to configure regions, see 18.2 Region Settings.   |

| The Map Type | Parameter                    | Instructions  |
|--------------|------------------------------|---|
|              | The Map Key                  | Log in to <a href="http://lbsyun.baidu.com/">http://lbsyun.baidu.com/</a> to register and obtain the key. |
|              | Initialize The Scaling Level | The general choice for initial scaling is around 13.  |
|              | The Center X/Y Coordinate    | Fill in the latitude and longitude.   |

**Table 20-2 Parameters for Adding a Map**

**Step 3:** Set parameters based on the type of the map to be added and Click **OK** to finish adding the map.

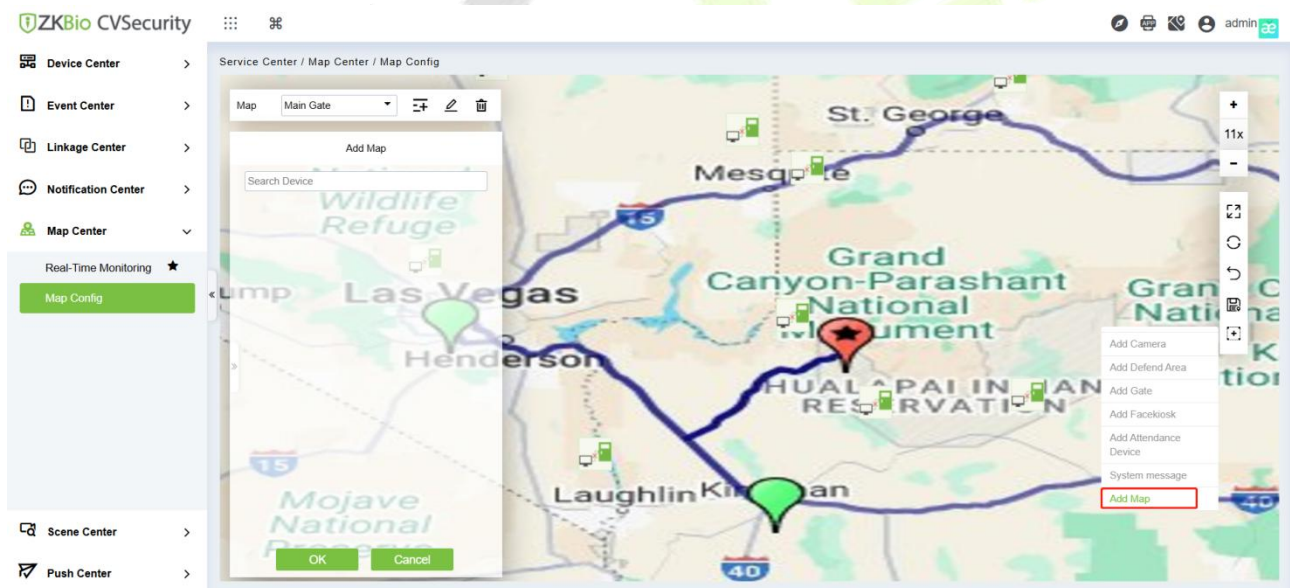
### 21.4.2.2 Add Sub-map (Optional)

This section describes how to add sub-map configuration Step on the map in the **Service Center** module.

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "**Map Center > Map Configuration**".

**Step 2:** Select a region map and click on the "Add Map" to add sub-maps.



**Figure 20-9 Add Sub-map Page**

**Step 3:** Click **OK** under add map on the left to complete the configuration of the sub-map.

### 21.4.2.3 Add Door

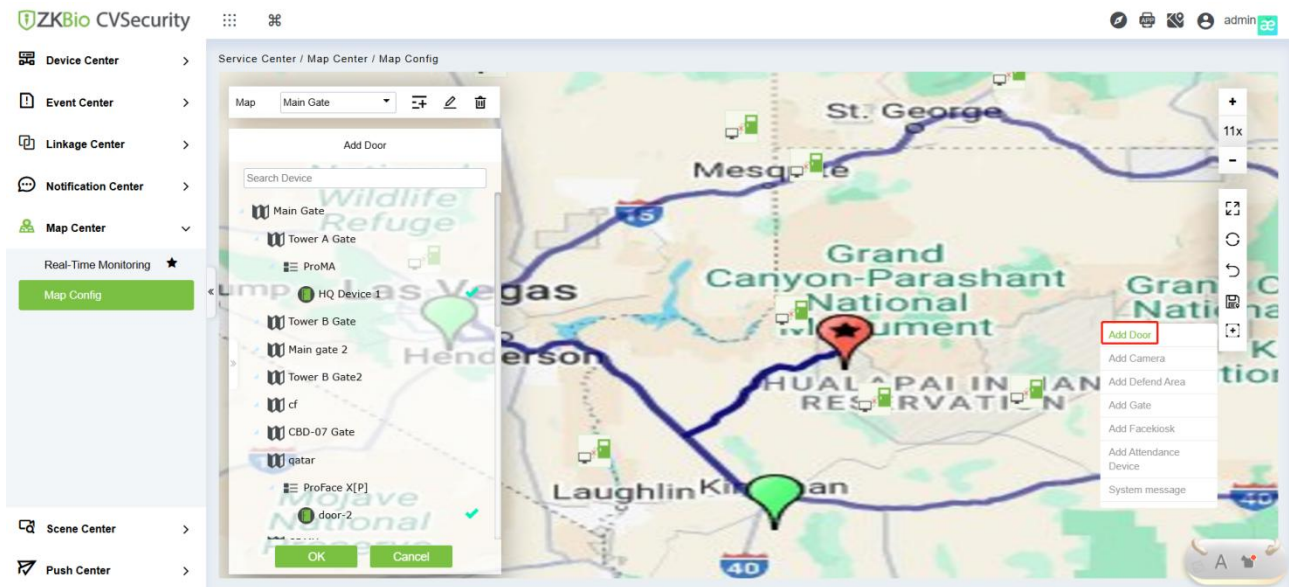
This part introduces the configuration Step of map configuration and door addition in the service center module.

● Operation Step

**Step 1:** In the service Center module, choose "**Map Center > Map Configuration**".

**Step 2:** On the map configuration screen, select the map of the desired area and click "**Add Door**" on the right of the screen to add the gate.

**Step 3:** In the Add Door list on the left of the page, drag the required **Access Control** device to place it on the map, as shown in Figure 14-10.



**Figure 20- 10 Add Door Page**

**Step 4:** Click **Submit** under the left door bar to complete the operation of adding a door on the map.

#### 21.4.2.4 Add Camera

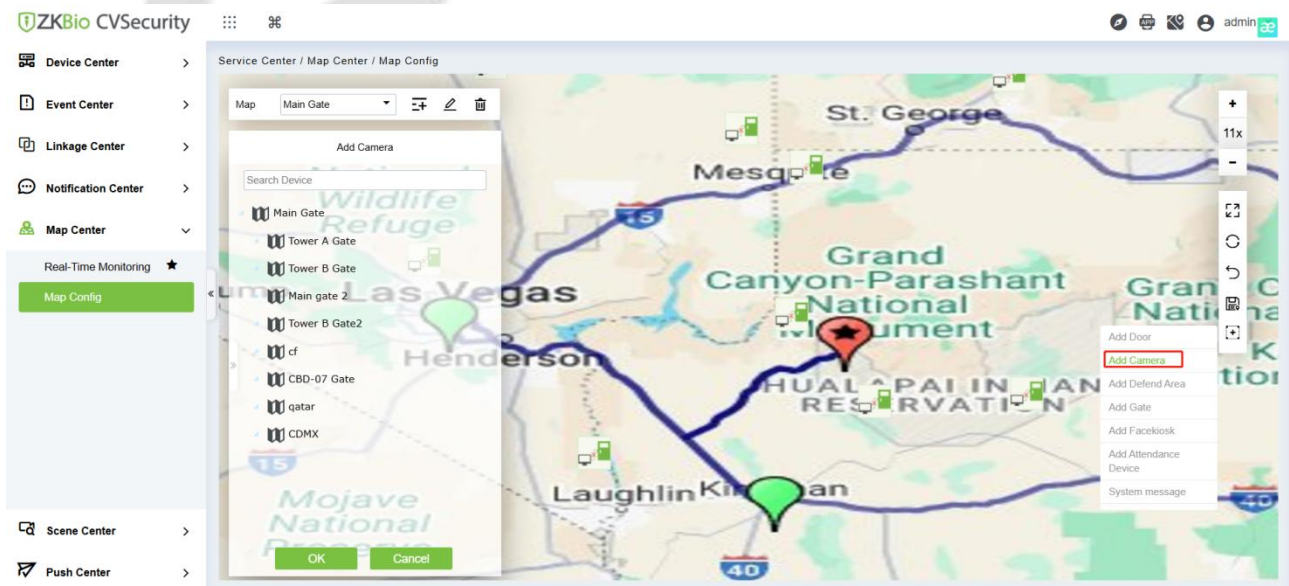
This section describes how to add camera Step for map configuration in the Service Center module.

##### ● Operation Step

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose **"Map Center > Map Configuration"**.

**Step 2:** On the map configuration screen, select the map of the desired area and click **"Add Cameras"** on the right of the screen to add a camera.

**Step 3:** In the Add Camera list on the left of the screen, drag the required camera device to place it on the map, as shown in Figure 14-11.



**Figure 20- 11 Add Camera Screen**

**Step 4:** Click **Submit** in the left column of Adding a camera to complete the configuration of adding a camera to the map.

### 21.4.2.5 Add Defence Area

We can view the Intrusion Alarm states in real time through the map center.

**Step 1:** Go to **Service Center > Map Center > Map Config**. Click  , start adding defence area.



**Figure 20- 12 Adding Defense Interface**

**Step 2:** Click the **Adding Defence Area** on the left of the screen, drag the required partition or zone to place it on the map.

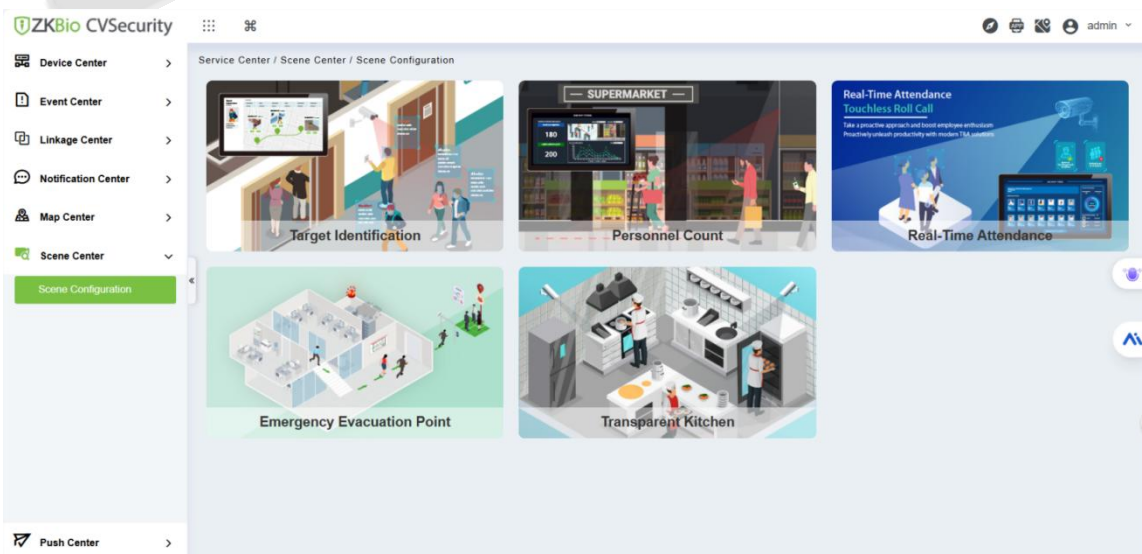
**Step 3:** Click **OK** the left column of **Adding Defence Area** to complete the configuration of adding a partition.

### 21.4.2.6 Map

**Click the Map:** It will show the area of the map.

## 21.5 Scene Center

### 21.5.1 Scene Configuration



**Figure 20- 13 Scene Center Interface**

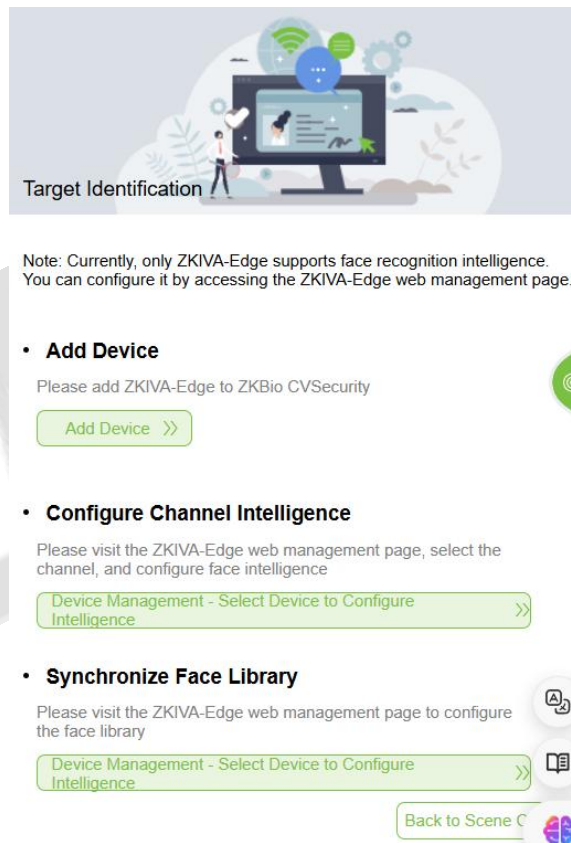
**Note:** The corresponding business modules must be installed to use the functions of the scenario center. The supporting modules are as follows:

- **Target Identification:** Smart Video Surveillance Module must be installed.
- **Personnel Count:** Smart Video Surveillance Module must be installed.
- **Real-time Attendance :** Time&Attendance and Smart Video Surveillance Module must be installed.
- **Emergency Evacuation :** Access Control and Smart Video Surveillance Module must be installed.
- **Transparent Kitchen:** Smart Video Surveillance Module must be installed.

### 21.5.1.1 Target Identification

**Hardware Supported :** ZKIVA-Edge X1 /T1

Click this icon  into Target Identification Guide:



**Figure 20- 14**

**Note:** Currently, only ZKIVA-Edge supports face recognition intelligence. You can configure it by accessing the ZKIVA-Edge web management page.

#### ● Operation Step

Step1: Add Device

Click **Add Device**, the system will automatically jump to **[Smart Video Surveillance] > [Device Management] > [Device]**, you can add ZKIVA-Edge devices here, and you can refer 4.1 Device Management for specific operation.

Step2: Synchronize Face Library

1. Click Synchronize Face Library to jump to **[Smart Video Surveillance] > [Device Management] >**

[Device], in this page we can configure the face library.

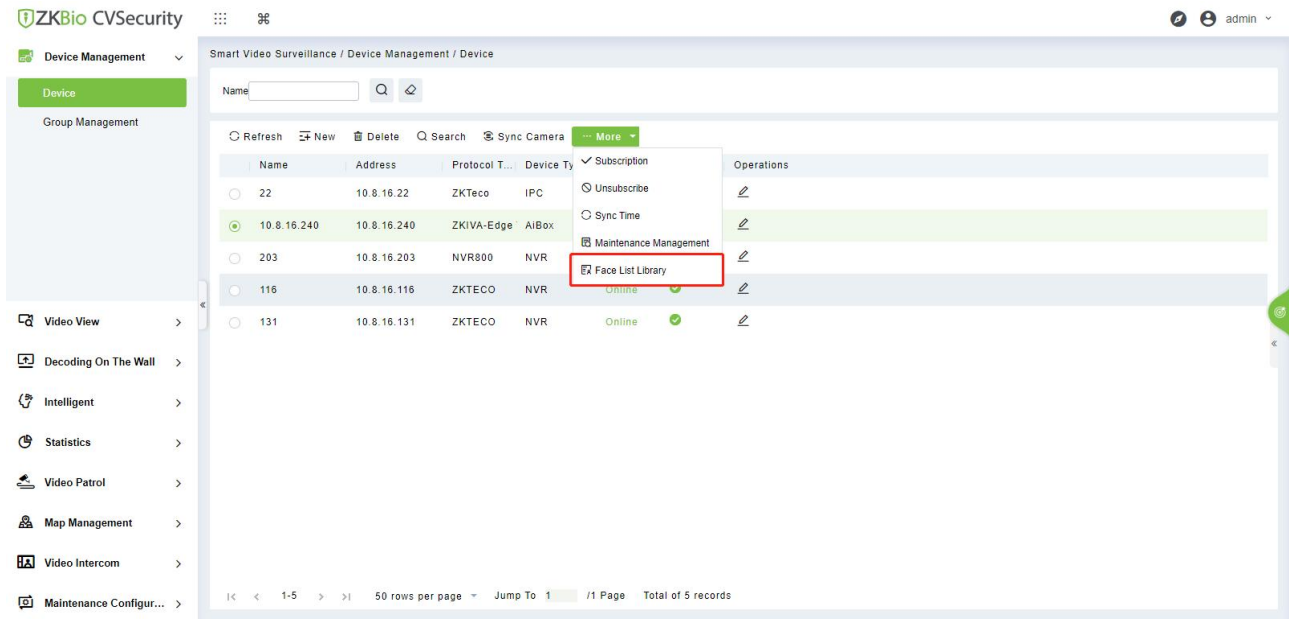


Figure 20-15

2. Select the face library to be added

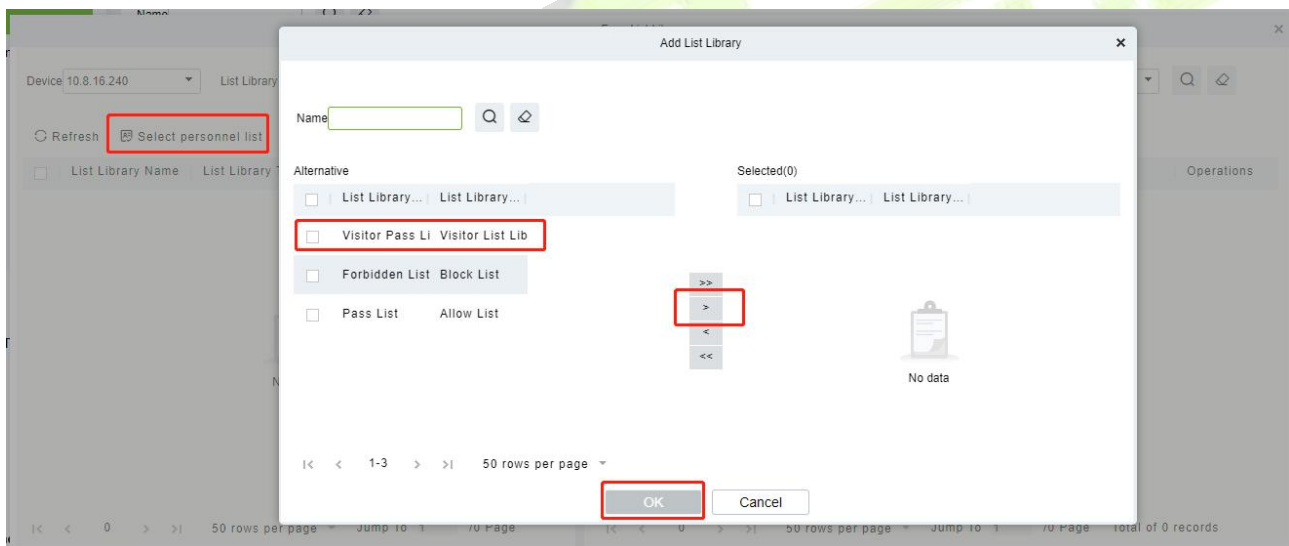


Figure 20-16

Step 3: Configure Channel Intelligent

The Face Intelligence configuration feature is now moved to the web side of the device, Please visit the ZKIVA-Edge web management page, select the channel, and configure face intelligence.

1. Click Configure Channel Intelligent to jump to [Smart Video Surveillance]>[Device Management] > [Device].
2. Click [Smart Video Surveillance]>[Device Management]>[Device]>[Maintenance Management] to jump to device web management page.

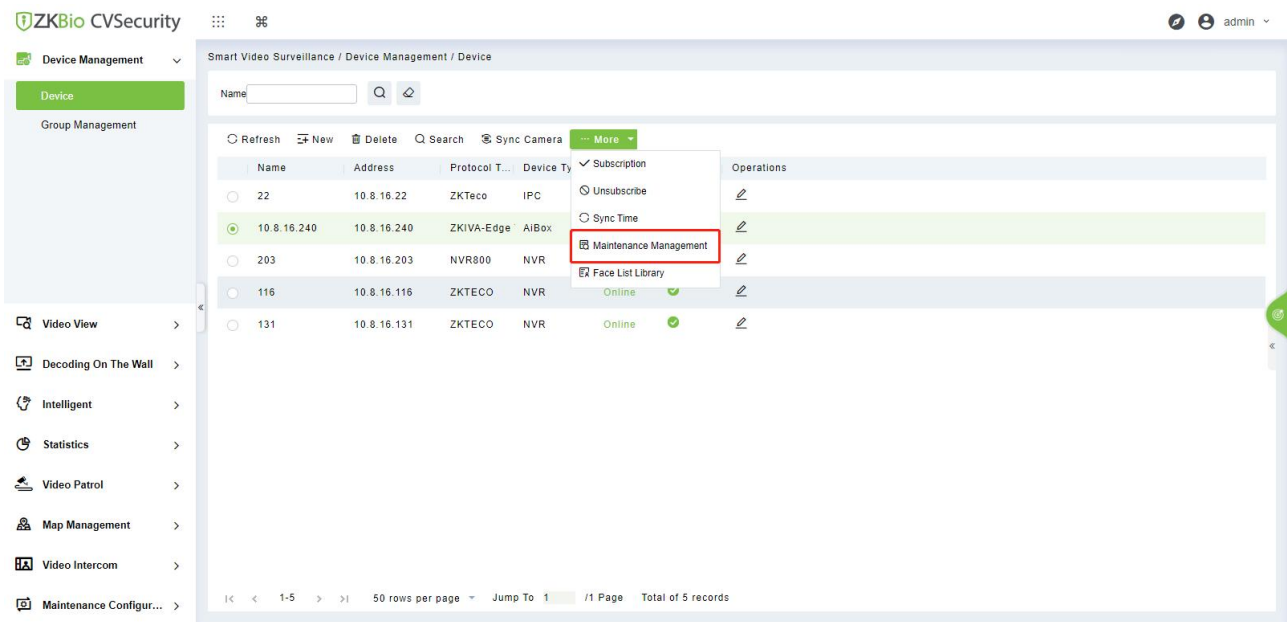


Figure 20-17

Note: Take the web management page of ZKIVA-Edge T1 for example:

1. Click [Data connect]>[Active reporting] >[Server address] to fill in the server address and active report your server IP to device.

Server address Format: http://main (ip):port/

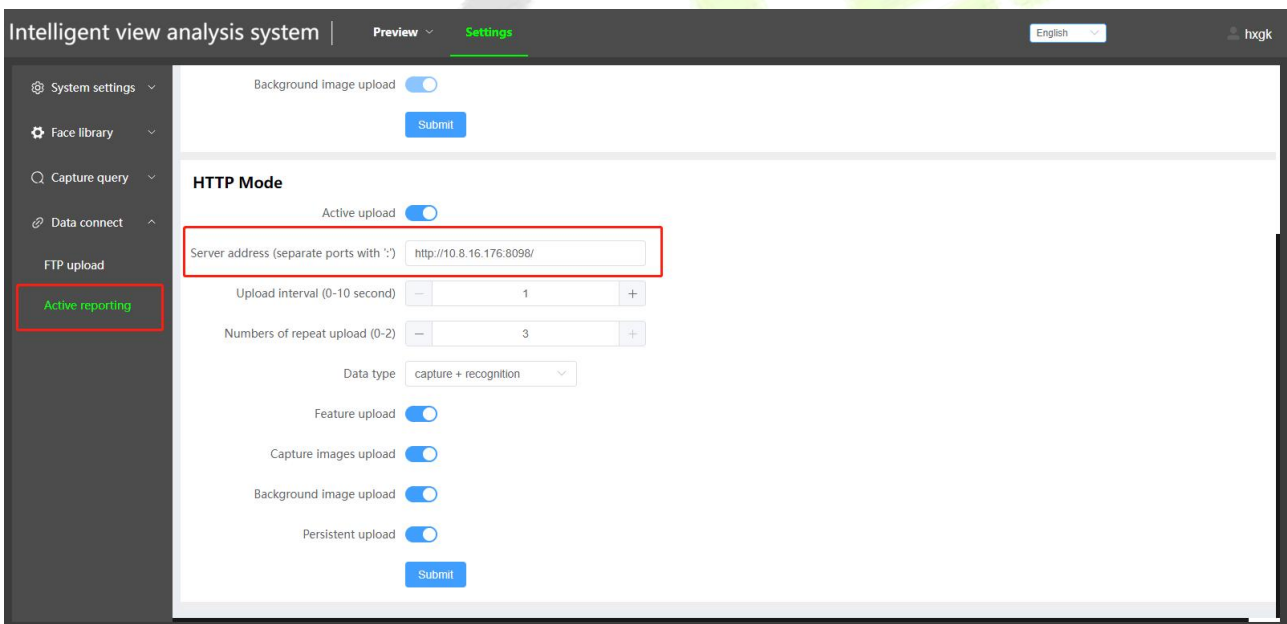


Figure 20-18

2. Click [Channel management]>[View/Edit] to visit the channel management interface.



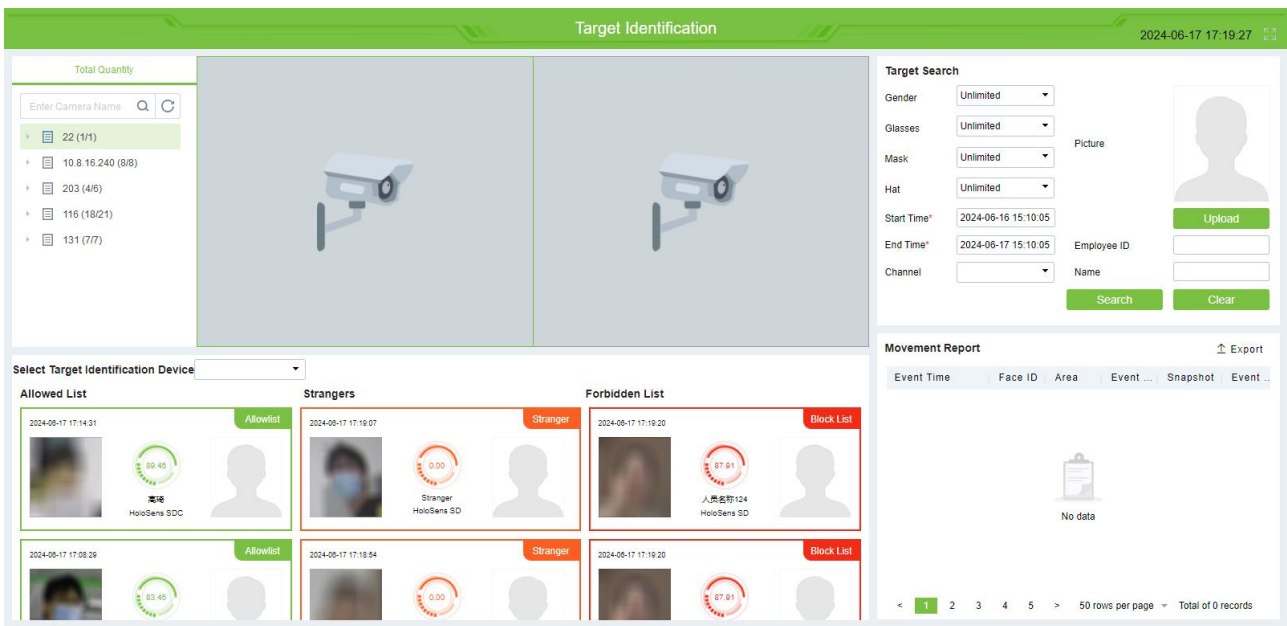


Figure 20- 21

● Quick Search

Right-click on the list of triggered events to quickly retrieve people.

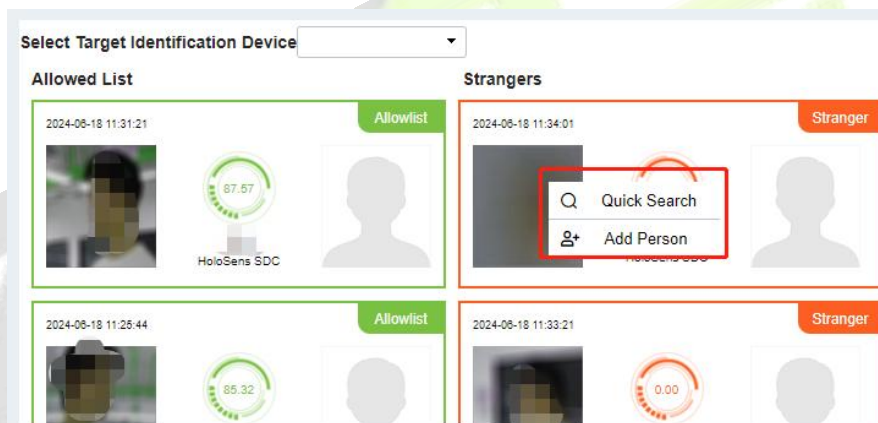


Figure 20- 22

● Target Search

It is possible to track personnel's passage by searching for their name, employee ID, photo, gender, whether they are wearing glasses, a mask, or a hat.

**Target Search**

Gender: Unlimited  
Glasses: Unlimited  
Mask: Unlimited  
Hat: Unlimited

Start Time\*: 2024-06-17 11:19:45  
End Time\*: 2024-06-18 11:19:45  
Channel: [Dropdown]

Picture: [Placeholder] Upload  
Employee ID: [Input]  
Name: [Input]

Search Clear

Figure 20- 23

● **Movement Report**

In the movement report, you can see the movement track of specific personnel, and click **[export]** to export the movement track report of personnel.

**Movement Report** Export

| Event Time         | Face ID | Area     | Event ... | Snapshot | Event ... |
|--------------------|---------|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 2024-06-18 10:01:5 | 3170156 | Area Nam | HoloSens  |          | Mask AI   |
| 2024-06-18 10:01:5 | 3170156 | Area Nam | HoloSens  |          | Target F  |
| 2024-06-17 17:24:2 | 3170156 | Area Nam | HoloSens  |          | Target F  |
| 2024-06-17 17:18:3 | 3170156 | Area Nam | HoloSens  |          | Target F  |
| 2024-06-17 13:35:4 | 3170156 | Area Nam | HoloSens  |          | Mask AI   |
| 2024-06-17 13:35:4 | 3170156 | Area Nam | HoloSens  |          | Target F  |

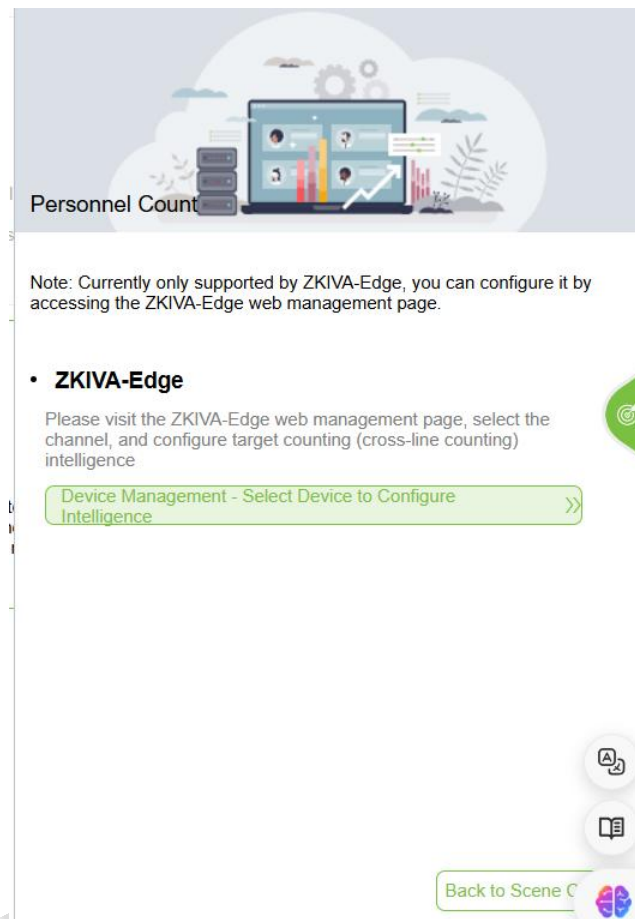
< 1 2 3 4 5 > 50 rows per page 共9条记录

Figure 20- 24

21.5.1.2 Personnel Count

**Hardware Supported :** ZKIVA-Edge X1

Click this icon into Personnel Count Guide:



**Figure 20- 25**

**Note:** Currently, only ZKIVA-Edge X1 supports Cross-line statistics intelligence. You can configure it by accessing the ZKIVA-Edge X1 web management page.

### ● Operation Step

#### Step1: Add Device

Add ZKIVA Edge device, please refer to [Target Identification](#) for details.

#### Step2: ZKIVA-Edge

Visit the ZKIVA-Edge web management page, select the channel, and configure target counting (cross-line counting) intelligence.

Take the web management page of ZKIVA-Edge X1 for example:

1. Click [Setting]>[Task Setting] to add a new task.FG

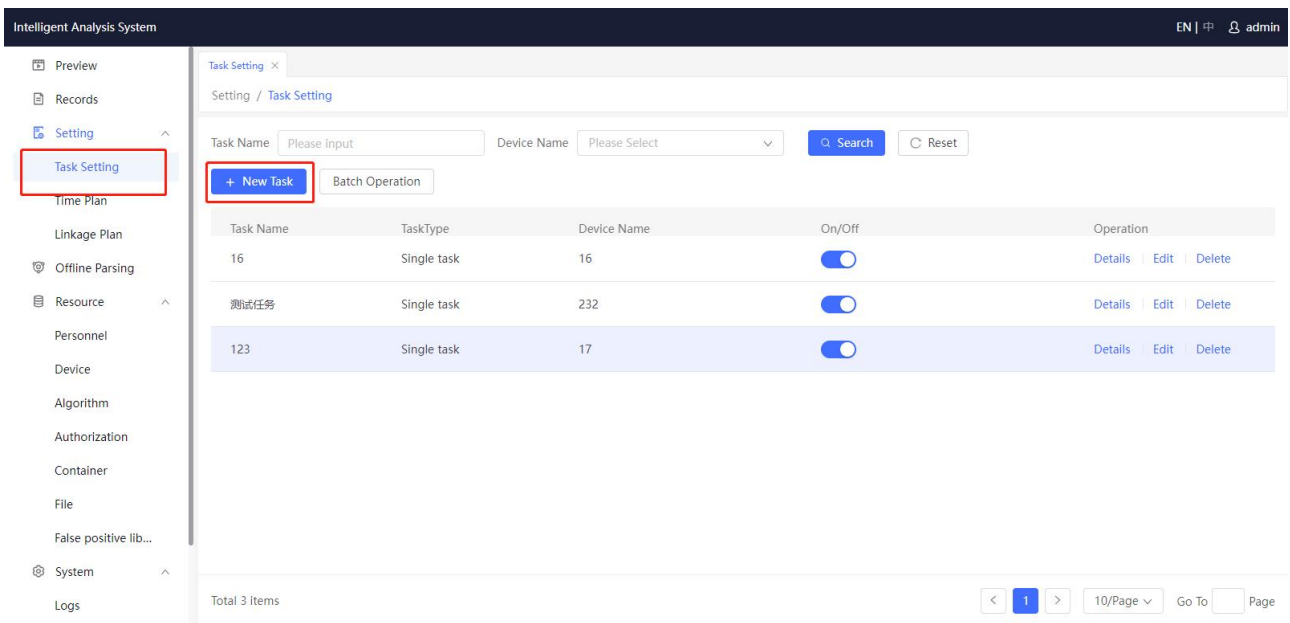


Figure 20-26

2. Perform basic configuration, and then click Submit.

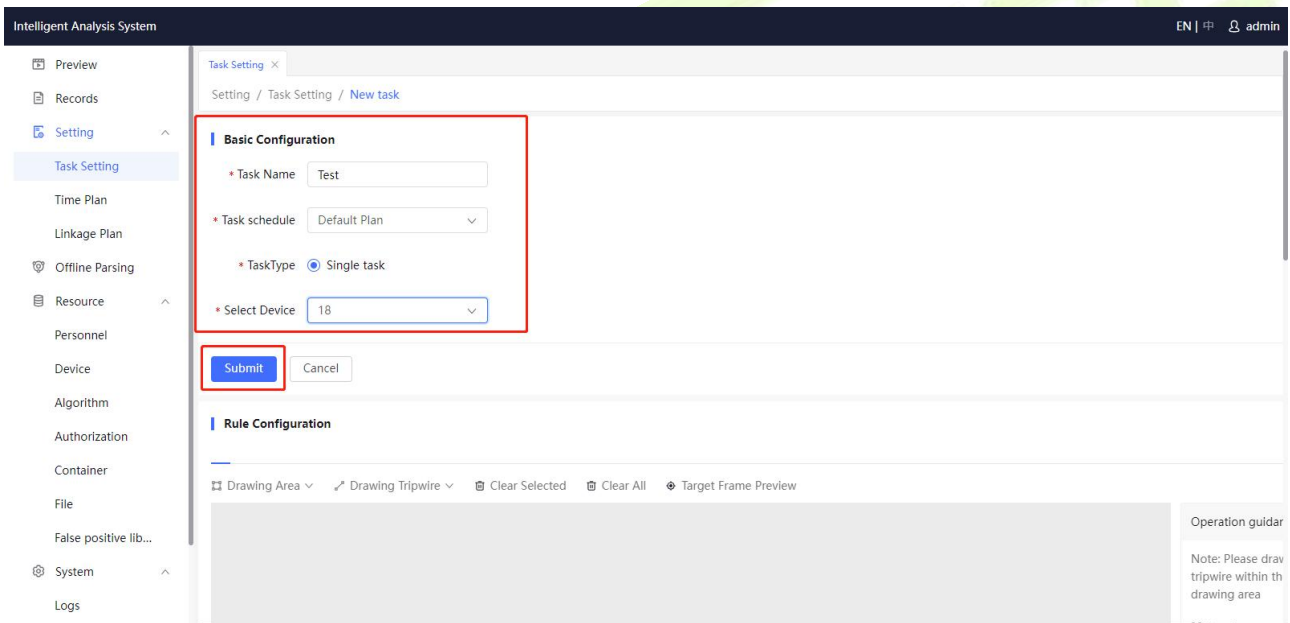


Figure 20-27

3. After submit the basic setting, click [Drawing Tripwire]>[Entry/Exit Tripwire] to draw entry and exit tripwire, select the configured algorithm and submit it.

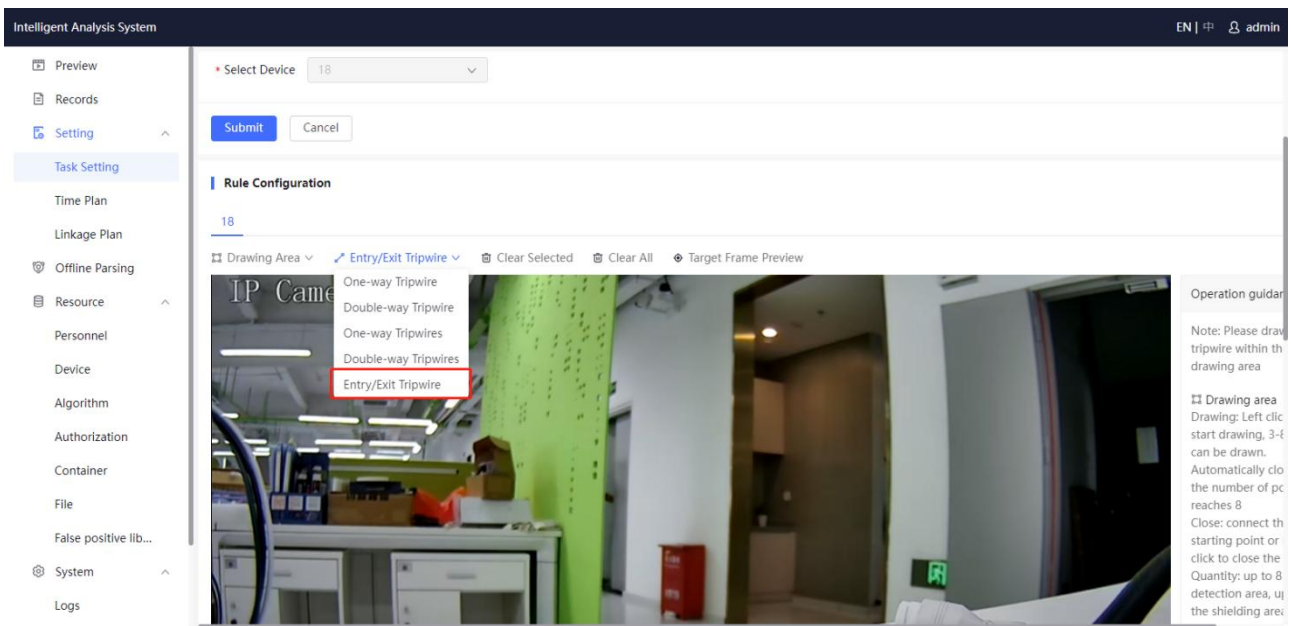


Figure 20-28

● Personnel Count Scene Page

Click **Enter Scene** to enter the personnel count function.

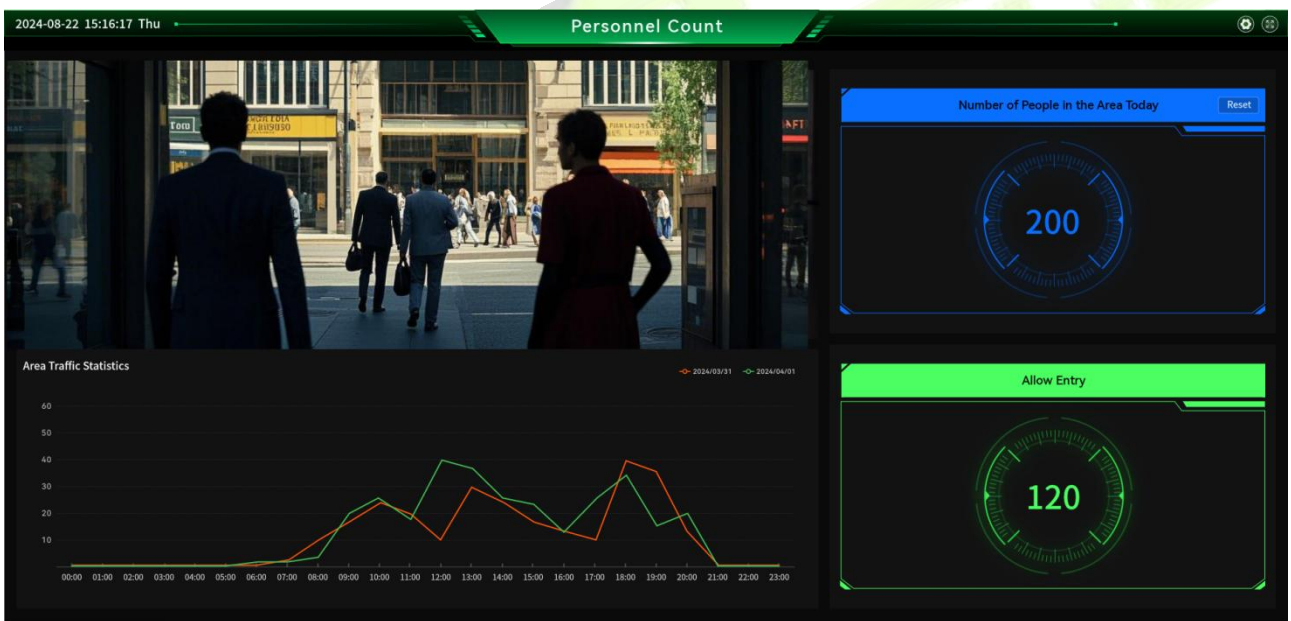


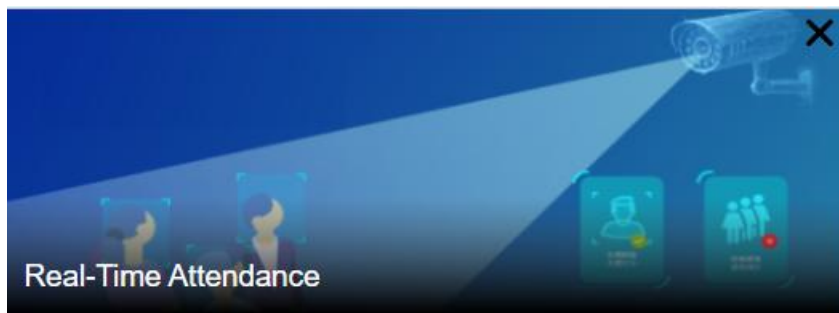
Figure 20-29

21.5.1.3 Real Time Attendance

**Hardware Supported :** ZKIVA-Edge X1 /X1

● Operation Step

Click Configuring Scenarios, to view the operation wizard.



Note: No-touch attendance uses video facial recognition intelligence; currently, only ZKIVA-Edge supports facial recognition. We recommend you directly navigate to the ZKIVA-Edge web management page to configure it.

- **Add Device**

Please add (ZKIVA-Edge T1/ZKIVA-Edge X1) to ZKBio CVSecurity

Add Device >>

- **Configure Channel Intelligence**

Please visit the ZKIVA-Edge web management page, select the channel, and configure face intelligence; Page Path: [Device Management] - [More] - [Maintenance Management] - Access...

Device Management - Select Device to Configure Intelligence >>

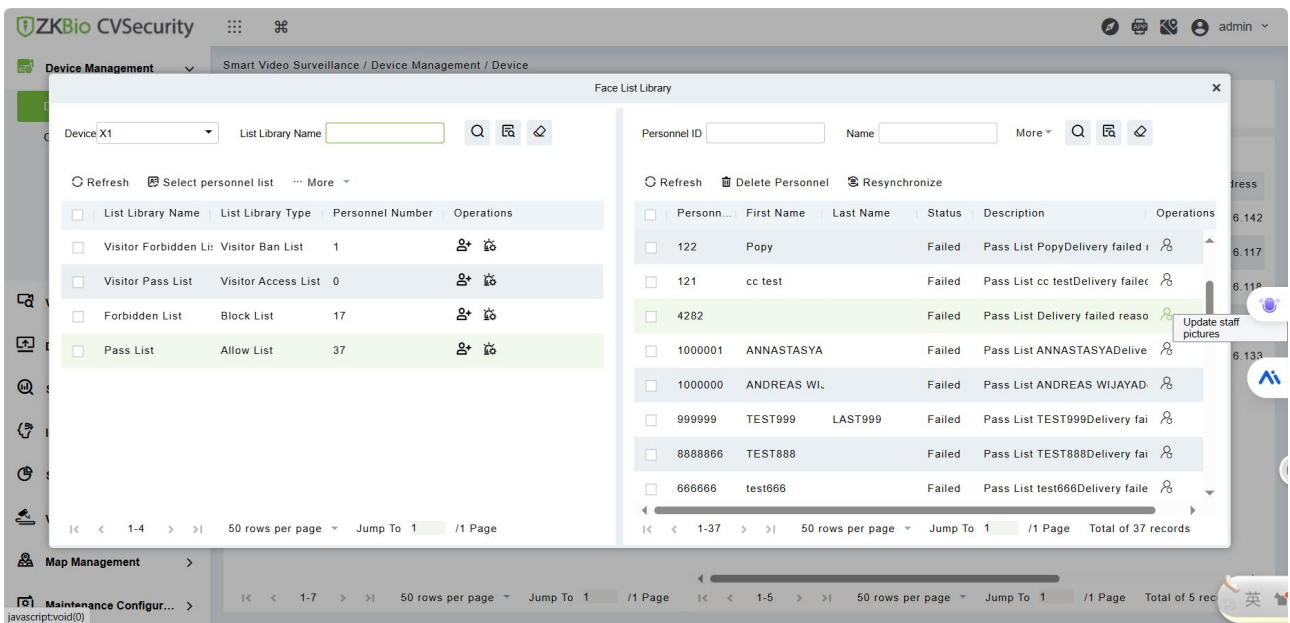
- **Synchronize Face Library**

Please visit the Smart Video Surveillance module device management page to configure the face library; Path: [Device management] - [More] - [Target list library]

Back to Scene Center

Step 1: Refer to [Target Identification](#) to add the ZKIVA-Edge device, and configure the face recognition intelligence.

Step 2: Refer to [Target Identification](#) to synchronize the Face Library.

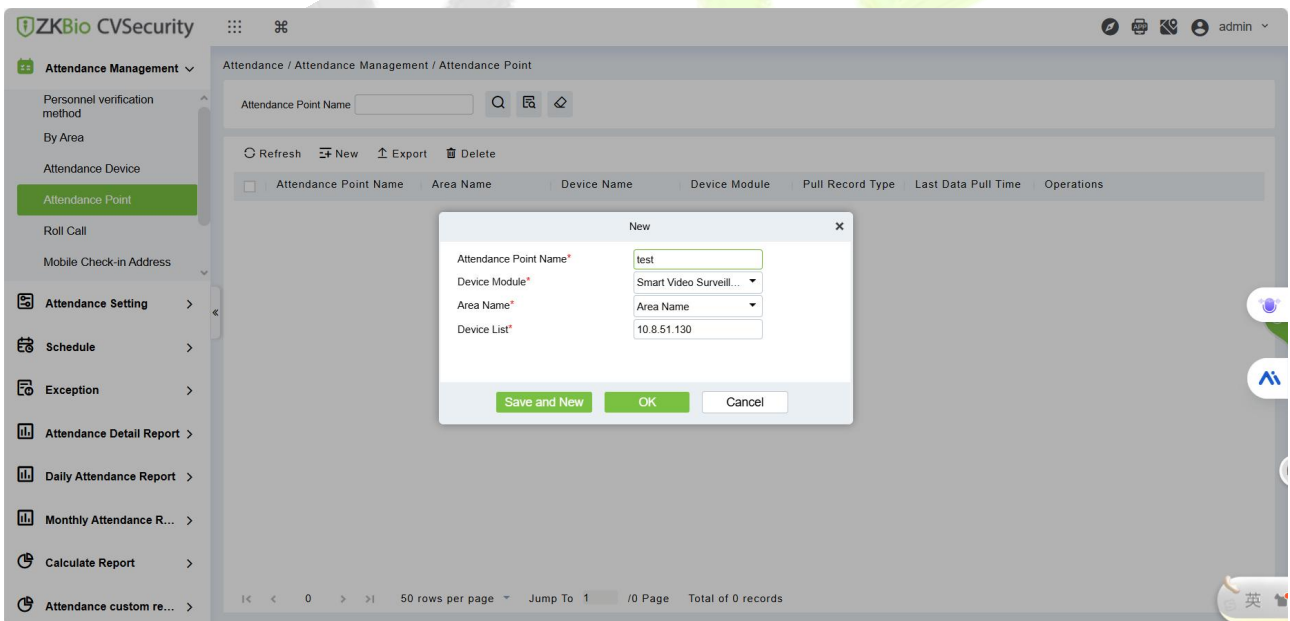


**Step 3: Configure the attendance point:**

Please go to **Attendance -> Attendance Management -> Attendance Point**, and click **New** to configure the ZKIVA-Edge device as the attendance point:

**Device Module:** Please select Smart Video Surveillance.

**Device List:** Please select the channel with face recognition algorithm in the ZKIVA-Edge device that you configured previously.



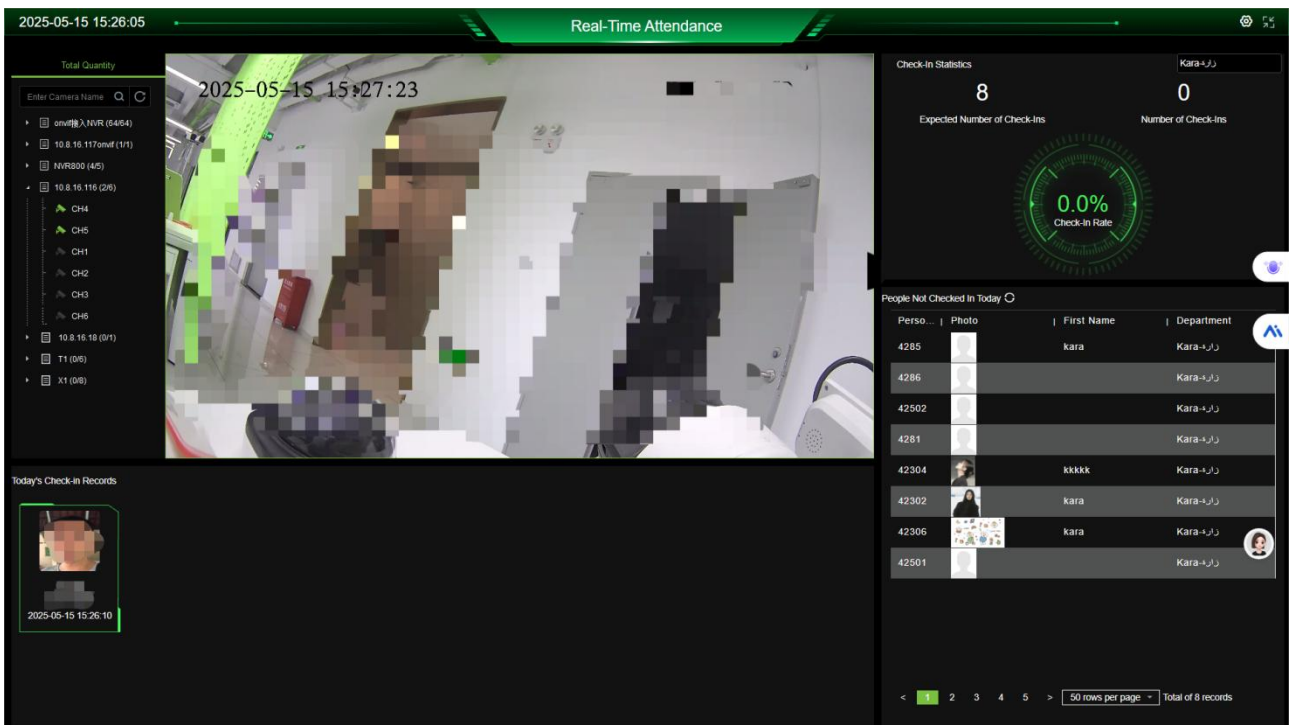
**Note:** After configuring the attendance point, be sure to assign attendance shifts to the personnel.

**● Result verification:**

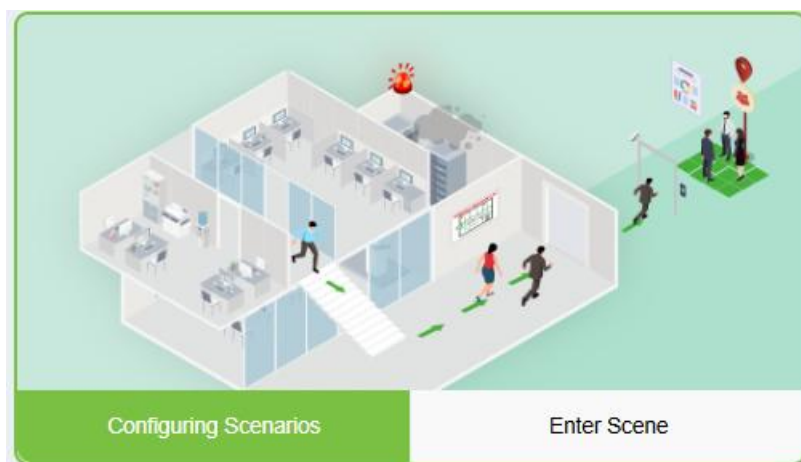
Click "**Back to Scene Center**" in the Operation Wizard. Click "**Enter Scene**" on the Real Time Attendance card.



Then you can enter the Real-time Attendance page to view the roll call data in real time.



### 21.5.1.4 Emergency Evacuation



Click **Configuring Scenarios** to enter the scene configuration of Emergency Evacuation;



The emergency evacuation plan is used to quickly count the assembled and unassembled personnel in case of emergencies, thereby effectively improving the rescue efficiency.

- **Emergency Evacuation Basic Configuration**

[Emergency Evacuation Basic Configuration >>](#)

- **Emergency Evacuation Linkage Configuration**

Please visit [Linkage Center] to configure linkages for emergency evacuation points with access control, video, and public broadcasting modules.

[Emergency Evacuation Linkage Configuration >>](#)

[Back to Scene Center](#)

Click **Emergency Evacuation Basic Configuration** and follow the Tab page above to complete the operation.

Emergency evacuation point scene Configuration

Configure Campus Entrance | Configure Campus Exit | Configure Safe Assembly Point | Configure Muster Group | Unlock the door in an emergency

Entrance Name  Door/Channel Name  🔍 🗑️ ↶

🔄 Refresh 🆕 New 🗑️ Delete

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Area Name | Entrance Name | Door/Channel Name | Owned Device |
|--------------------------|-----------|---------------|-------------------|--------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Area Name | r1            | 10.8.16.224-1-In  | 10.8.16.224  |

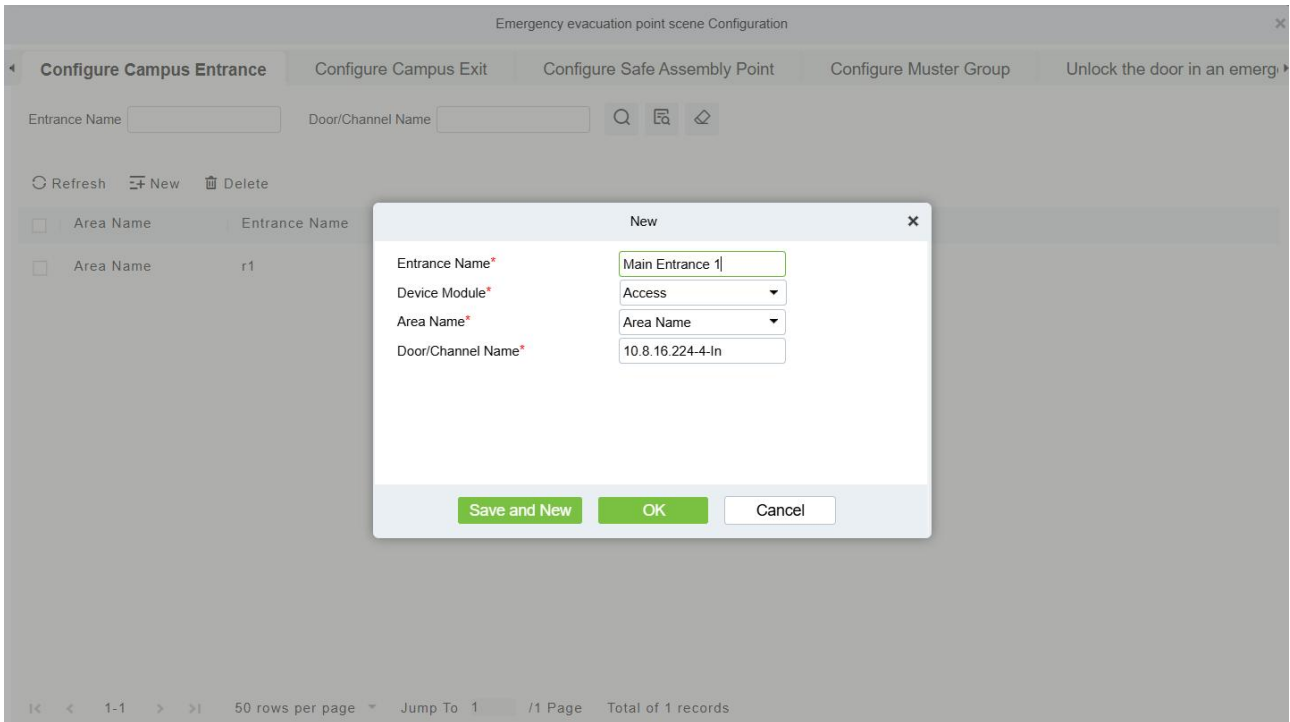
⏪ ⏩ 1-1 50 rows per page Jump To 1 /1 Page Total of 1 records

**Operation Step :**

**Step 1: Configure Main Entrance**

This menu is used to configure the main entrance, which is used to count the people entering. To avoid missing statistics, please be sure to configure all the main entrances within the set range.

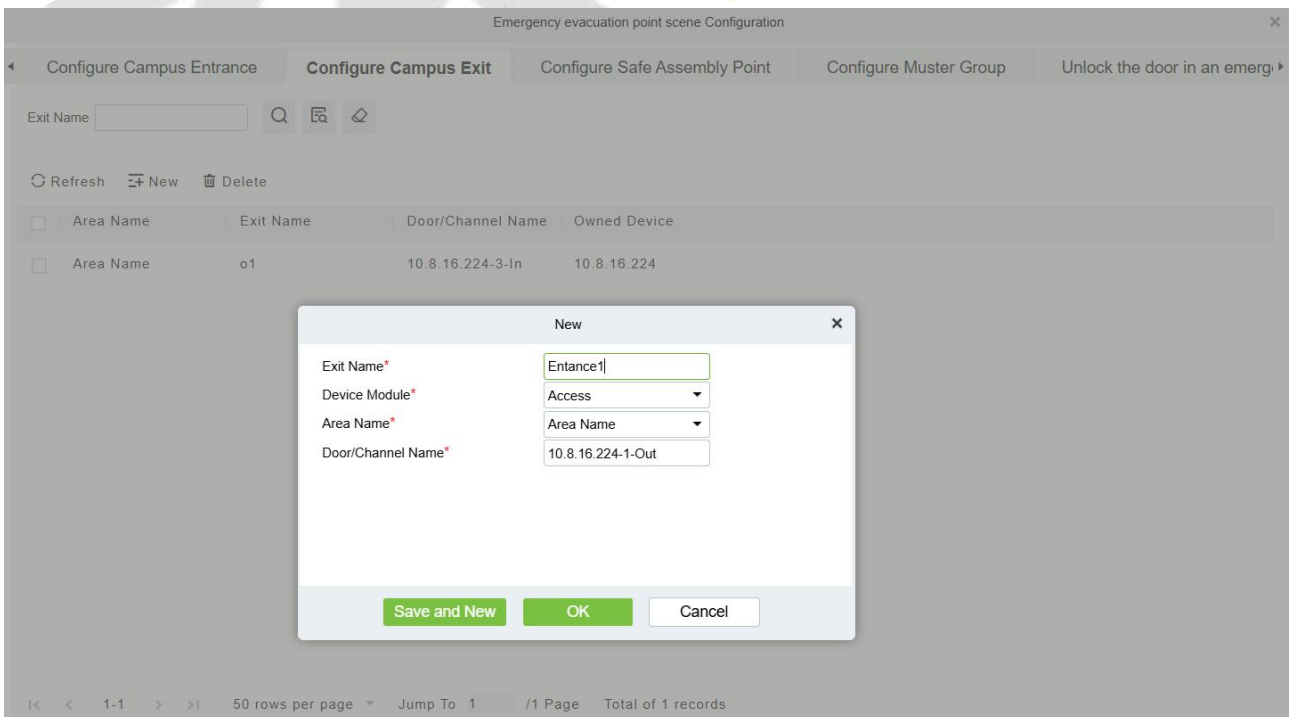
Click **New** and select the main entry device. As shown in the following figure:



### Step 2: Configure Main Exit

This menu is used by users to configure the main exit, which is used to count the people who go out; when an emergency is triggered, the statistical resources will mainly count the people inside the building; the people who have gone out will not be included in the statistical resources. To avoid missing statistics, please make sure to configure all exits within the collection range.

Click **New** and select the main export device. As shown in the following figure:

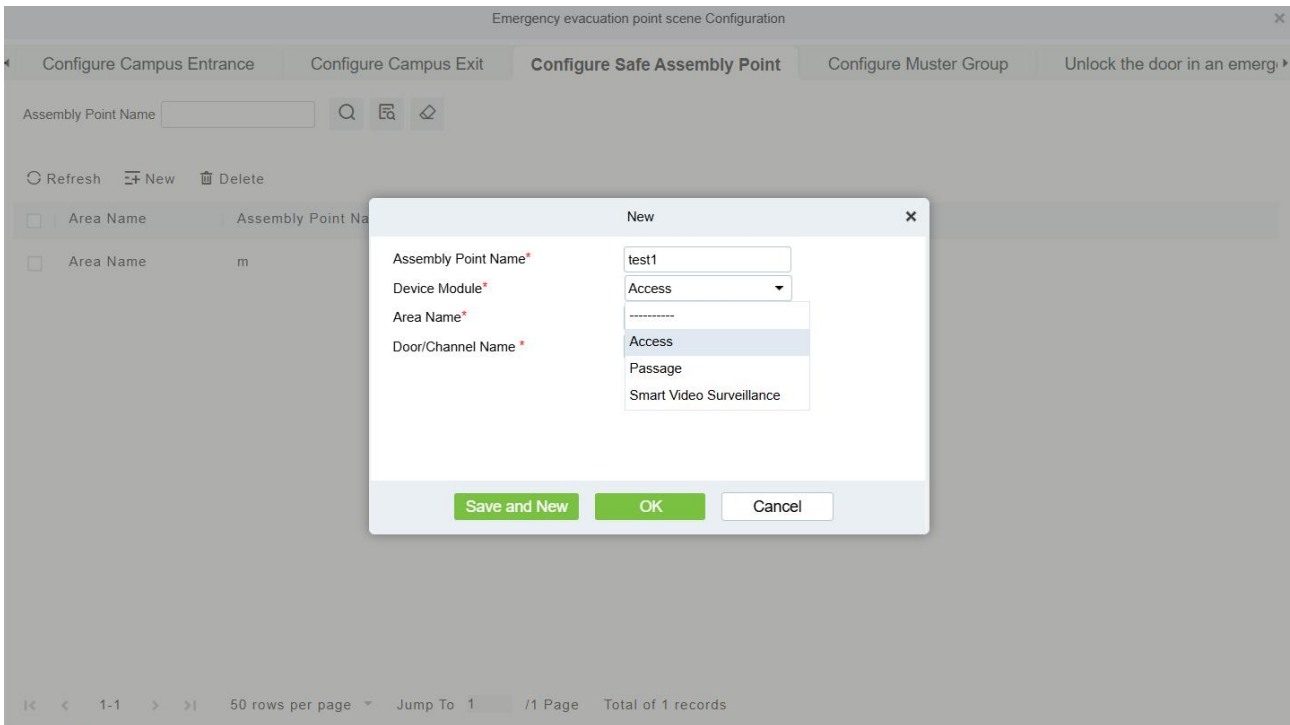


### Step 3: Configure Safe Assembly Point

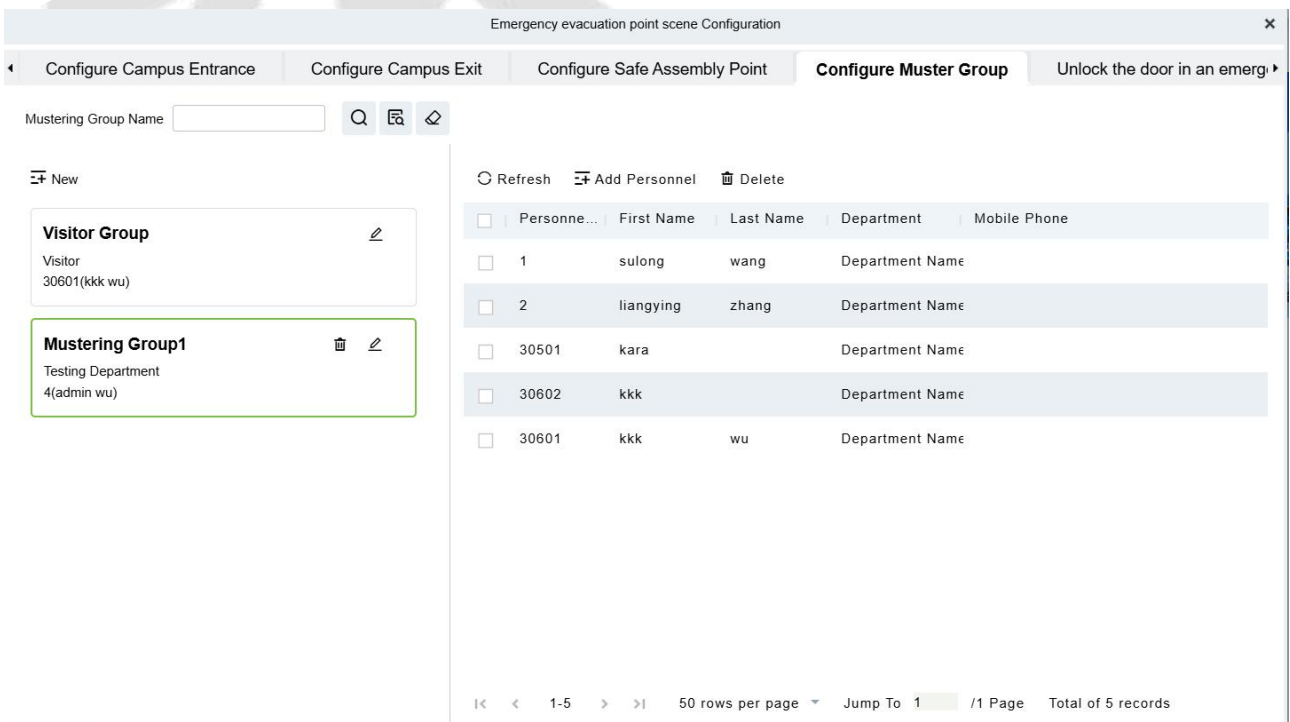
This menu is used to configure the security point, and the equipment of the security point can take attendance of the assembled personnel in real time;

**Security point support:** access control equipment and face camera

Click **New** to select the device of the access control, channel or video module; when the personnel arrive at the security point, they need to verify the device of the corresponding security point for reporting the collection record. The verified personnel will be marked as "Assembled", otherwise, they will be marked as "Disassembled"



**Step 4: Configure Muster Group**

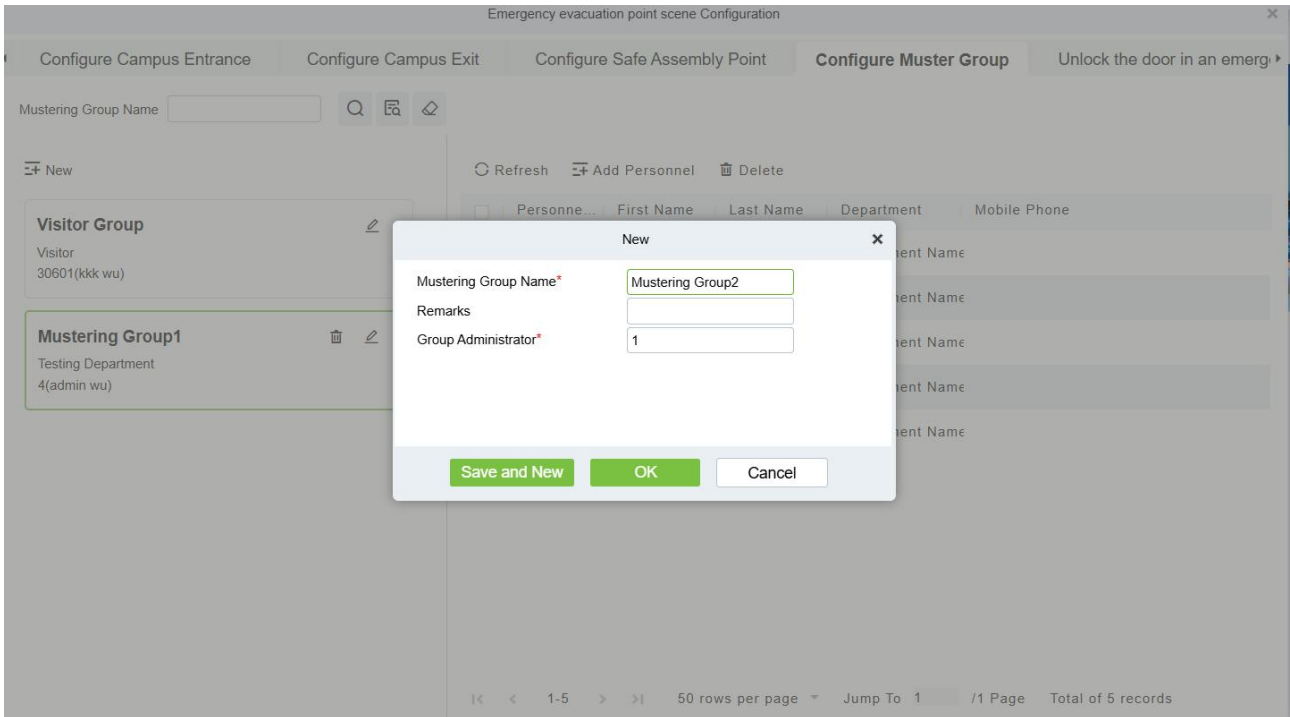


Click **New** on the left to add a collection group

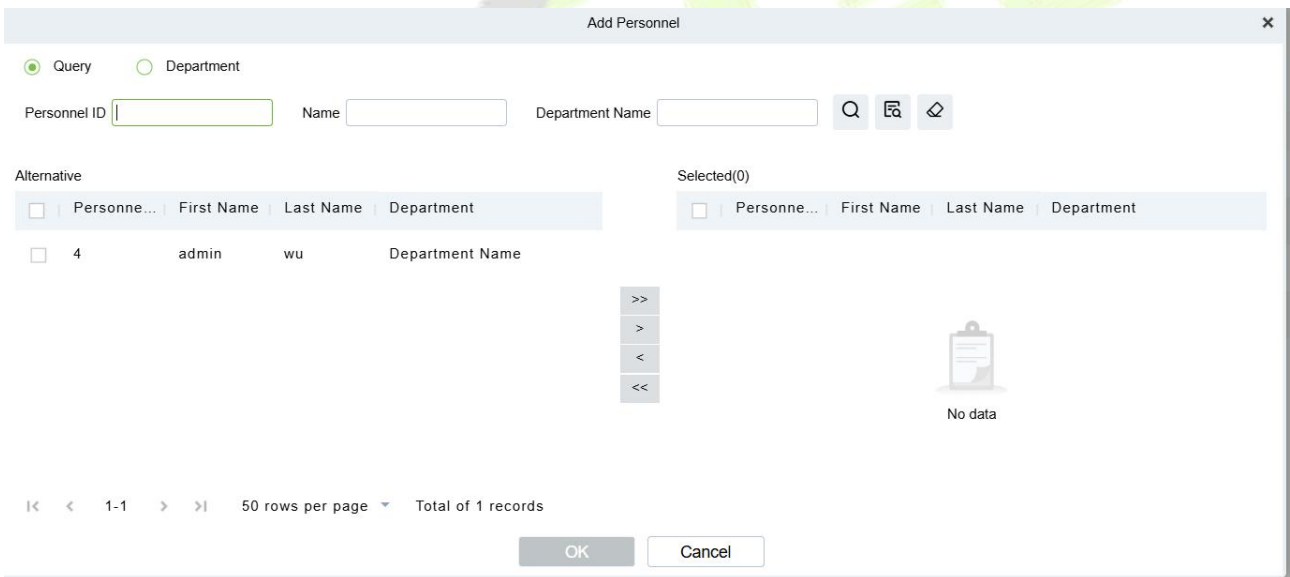
**Mustering Group Name:** Customize the group name

**Remarks:** Description of the set group

**Group Administrator:** Group administrator, used for offline secondary verification of the group list



Click **Add Personnel** on the right to add people to the group.



**Note:** The visitor group will be used to count the visitors who have signed in but have not gone out in an emergency. You can add administrators to the visitor group; however, you cannot delete or add people to the visitor group.

**Step 5: Emergency Assembly Notification**

This menu is used to configure the message set.

**Statistical Period:** Used to configure the scope of statistical resources. For example, if 7 days are selected, the personnel and visitors who entered the building in the past 7 days but did not leave when an emergency was triggered will be counted.

**Emergency Assembly Message Notification:** Whether to enable the message notification function. If enabled, when the emergency assembly is activated, the assembly notification will be automatically sent to the people and visitors in the assembly group.

**Notification Method:** Message notification mode, can be Email, SMS, WhatsApp, APP.

**Send Statistical Report:** Whether the configuration sends statistical reports regularly

■ **Send Periodically:** Whether to send regularly. After enabling, you can further configure the sending frequency.

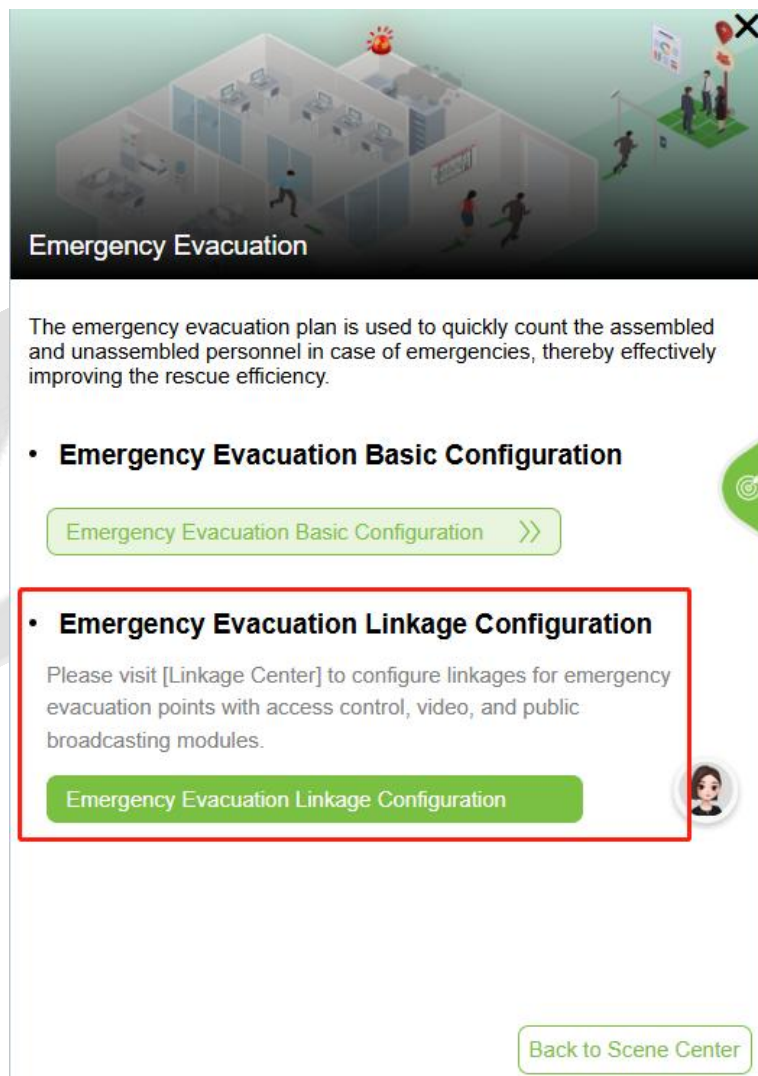
■ **Sending Frequency:** Optional sending frequency; if the configuration is 30min, then when the emergency assembly is activated, the system will send statistical reports to the corresponding personnel every 30 minutes

■ **Send to Group Administrator:** After enabling, the statistical report will be automatically sent to each group administrator

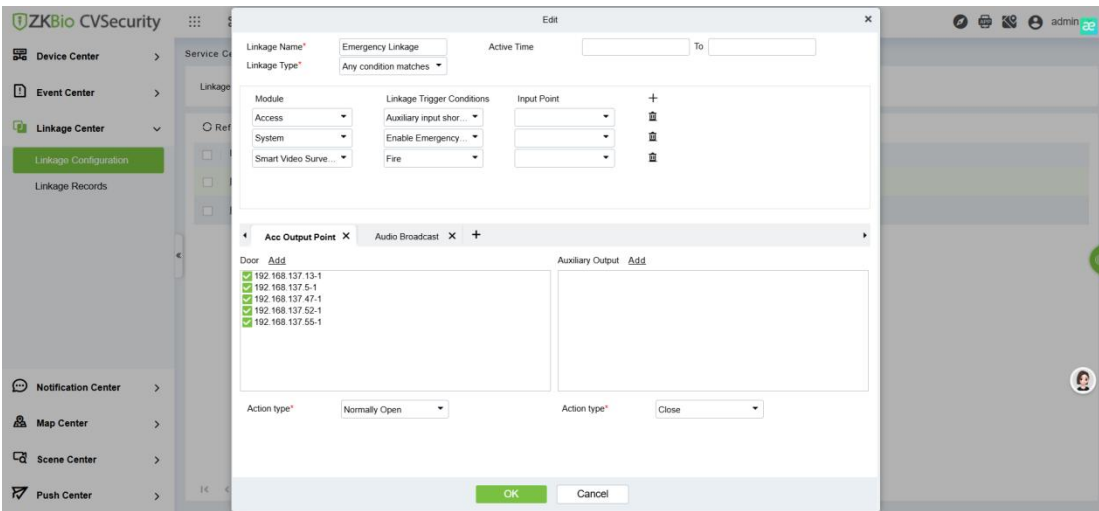
■ **Other Recipients:** You can configure the email address of other recipients.

## Step 6:Emergency Evacuation Linkage

Click **Emergency Evacuation Linkage Configuration** in the operation wizard to jump to the linkage configuration page.

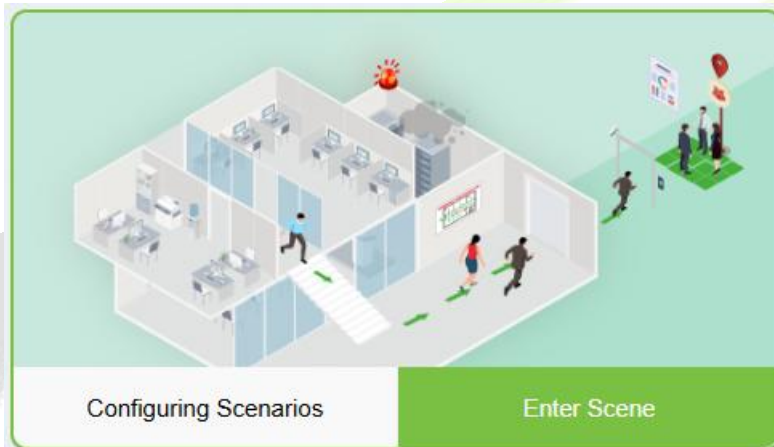


**Linkage Configuration->New**, carry out linkage configuration as shown in the figure below. You can configure automatic linkage of fire door to open when smoke is detected; you can also configure linkage of broadcast to play escape guidance after Emergency Evacuation activation, as shown in the figure below:



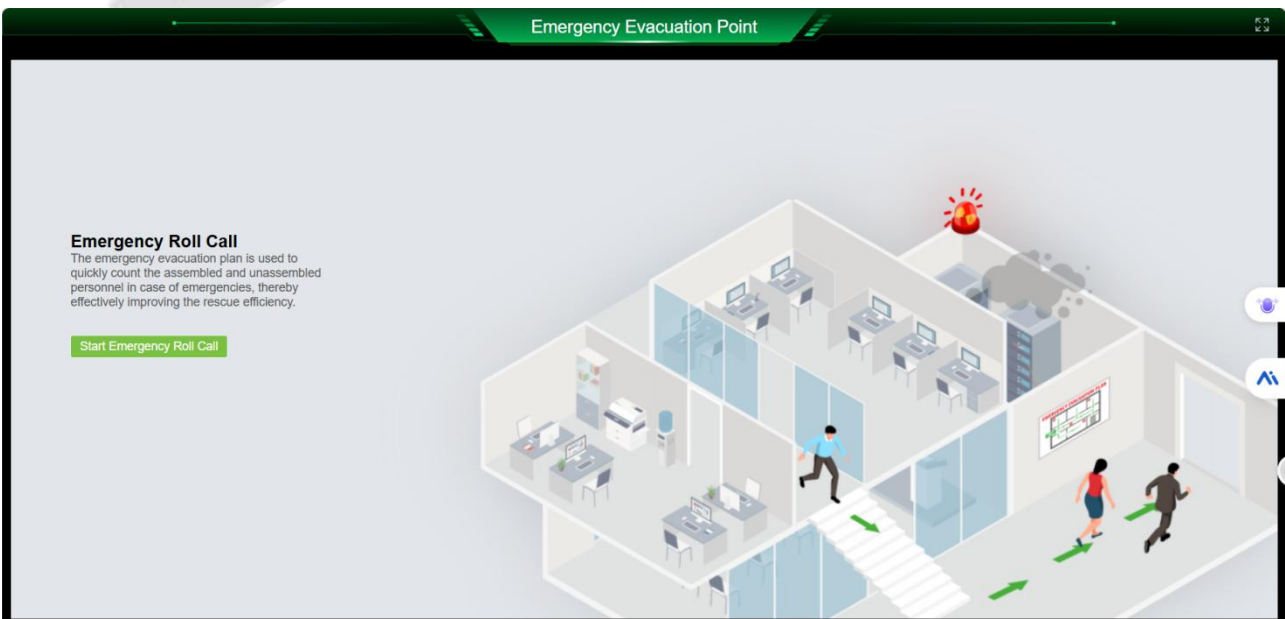
**Result verification:**

When a fire drill or emergency such as a fire occurs, the system administrator can manually click Enter Scene,

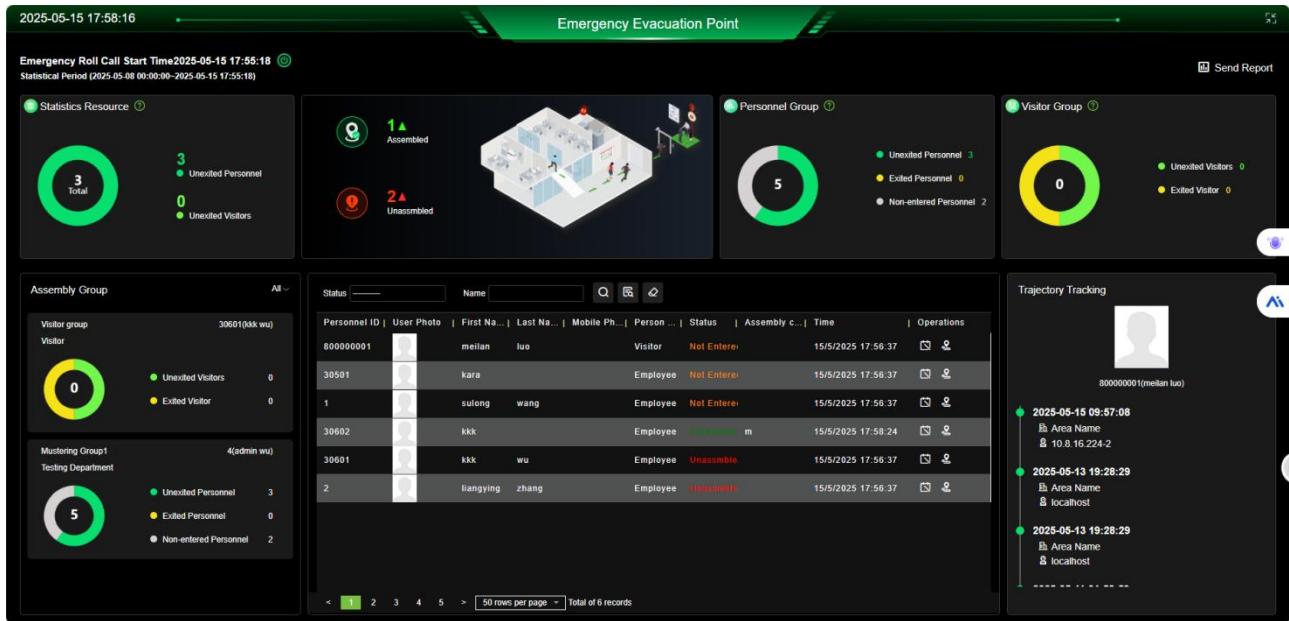



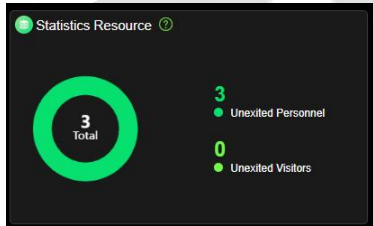
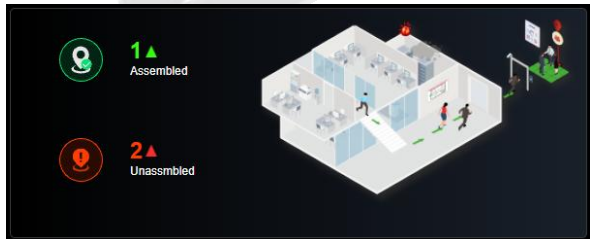
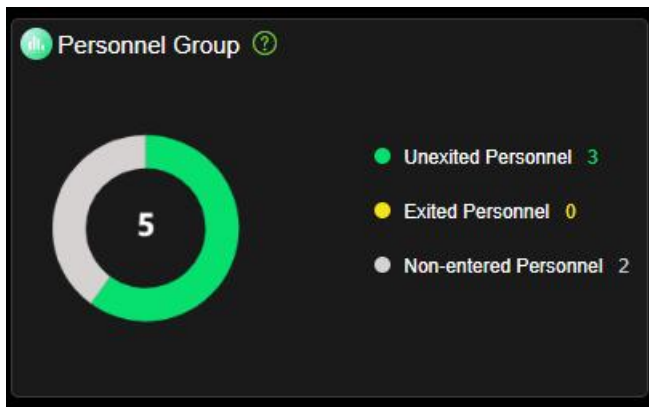
➤ **Start Emergency Roll Call**

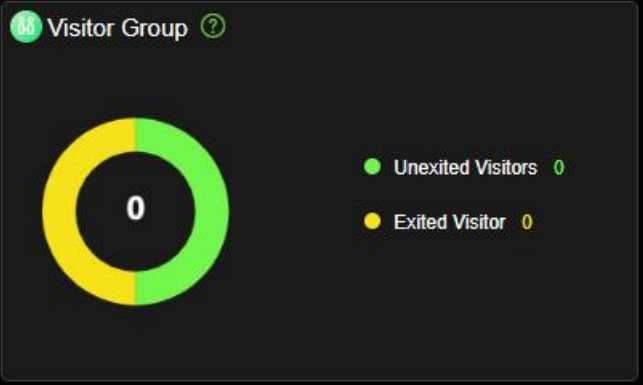
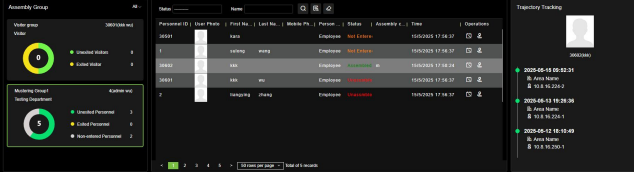
To enter the following page, click Start Emergency Roll Call,




Enter the real-time statistics interface to view, as shown in the following figure:

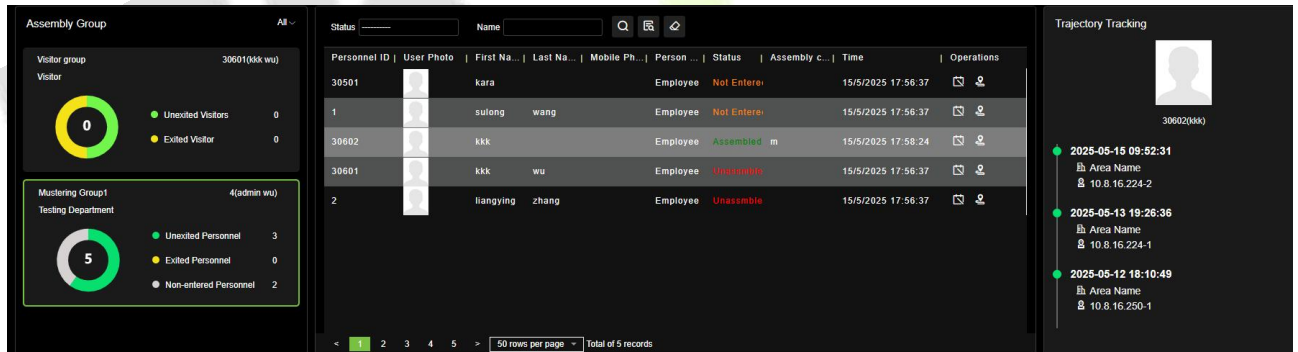



| Parameter   | Description  |
|---|--|
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Show the start time of the roll call</li> <li>● The statistical period refers to the statistical scope of the configuration. For example, if the configuration is 7 days, the statistics start to urgently collect data from the past 7 days</li> </ul> |
|  | <p>Statistical resources: refers to all the people and visitors who enter the country during the statistical period</p>  |
|  | <p>Display all collected and uncollected data;<br/>The sum of statistical resources = collected + not collected</p>  |
|  | <p>Display the data of all personnel groups during the statistical period.<br/>Personnel group = incoming personnel + outgoing personnel + not entered personnel</p>   |

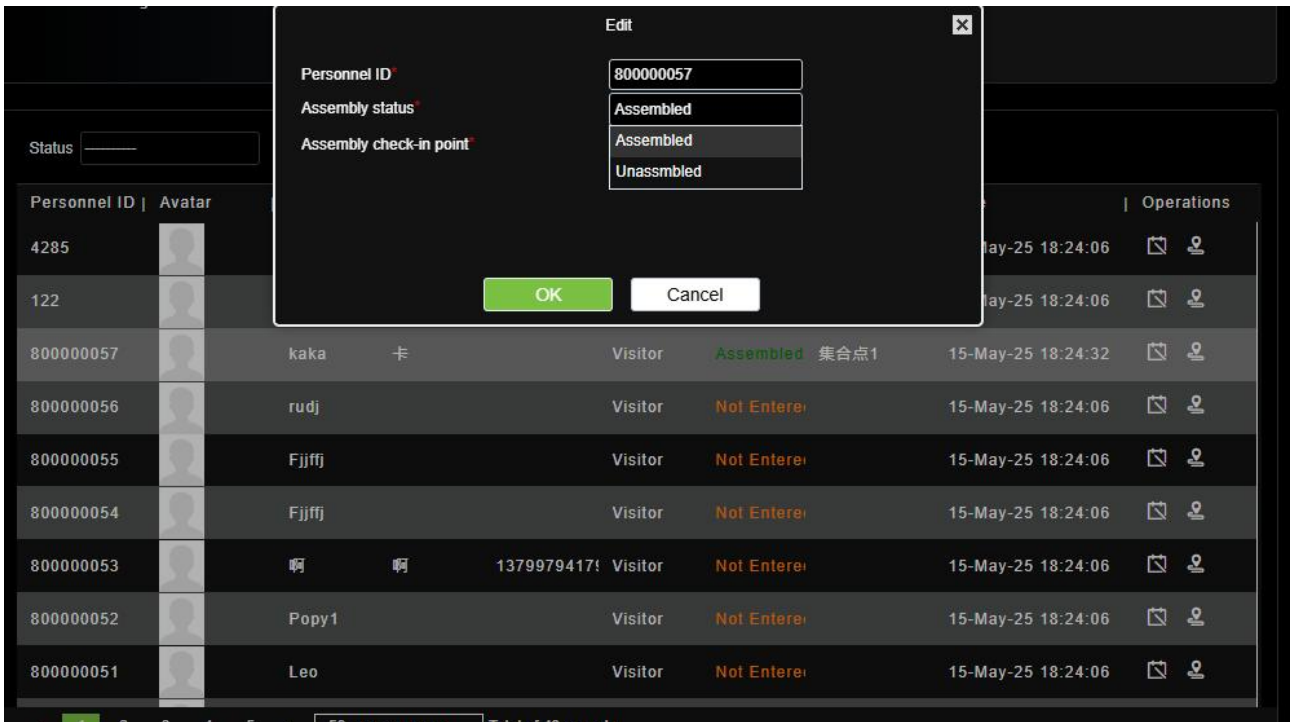
| Parameter   | Description   |
|---|---|
|  | <p>Display visitor data for the statistical period</p> <p>Visitor group = visitors who have entered but not gone out + visitors who have gone out</p> |
|  | <p>Display detailed data for each set</p>   |

Clicking on a set group on the left will automatically filter and display the details of the personnel set group; the status in the list includes: already set, not set, not out, already out, not in state.

- **Trajectory tracking:** The administrator can quickly screen the  uncollected personnel, click the icon to view the trajectory of the person, and quickly learn the last location of the person to improve the rescue efficiency

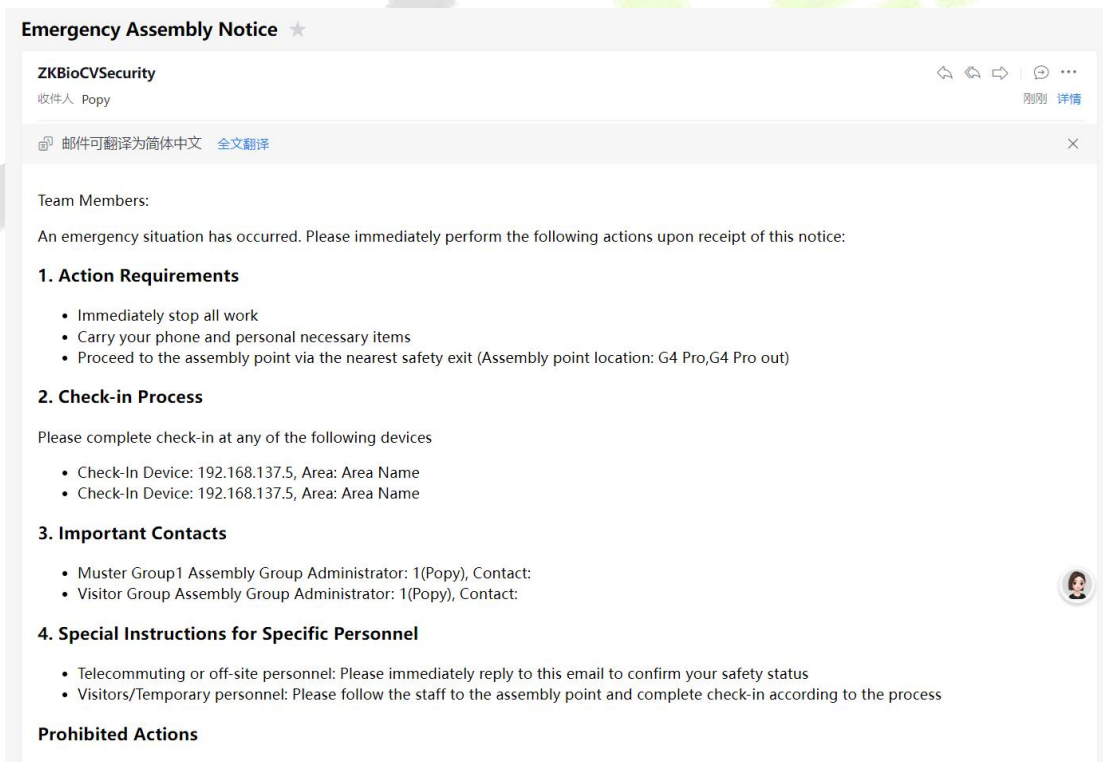


- **Manual check-in:** If someone has been in the safe point but not in the device  verification, the administrator can manually click the button to check in the person. If the person enters the dangerous area after gathering, the administrator can also change the gathering status of this person again



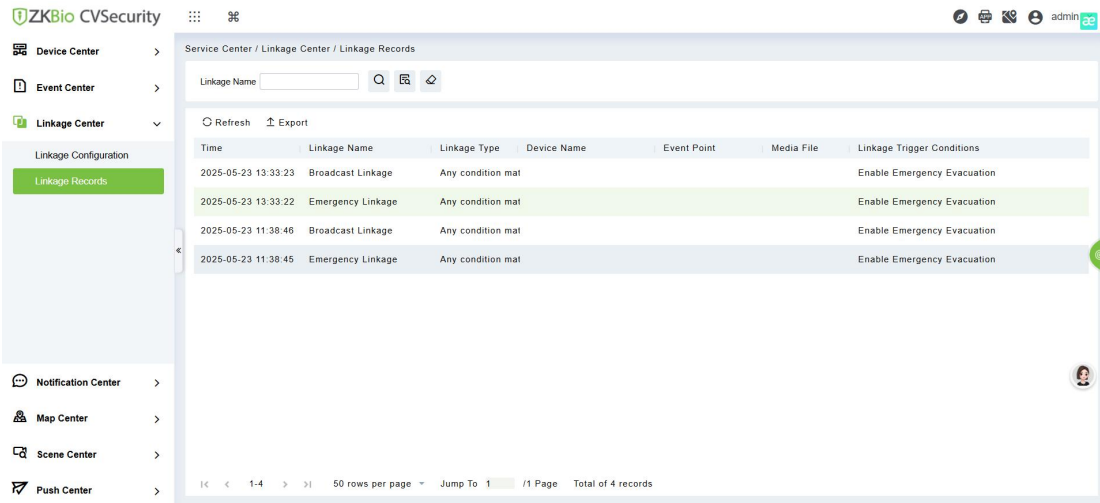
### ➤ Message notification

After Start Emergency Roll Call, the system will automatically send a collection message to the group members and visitors, as shown in the following figure:



### ➤ Trigger linkage

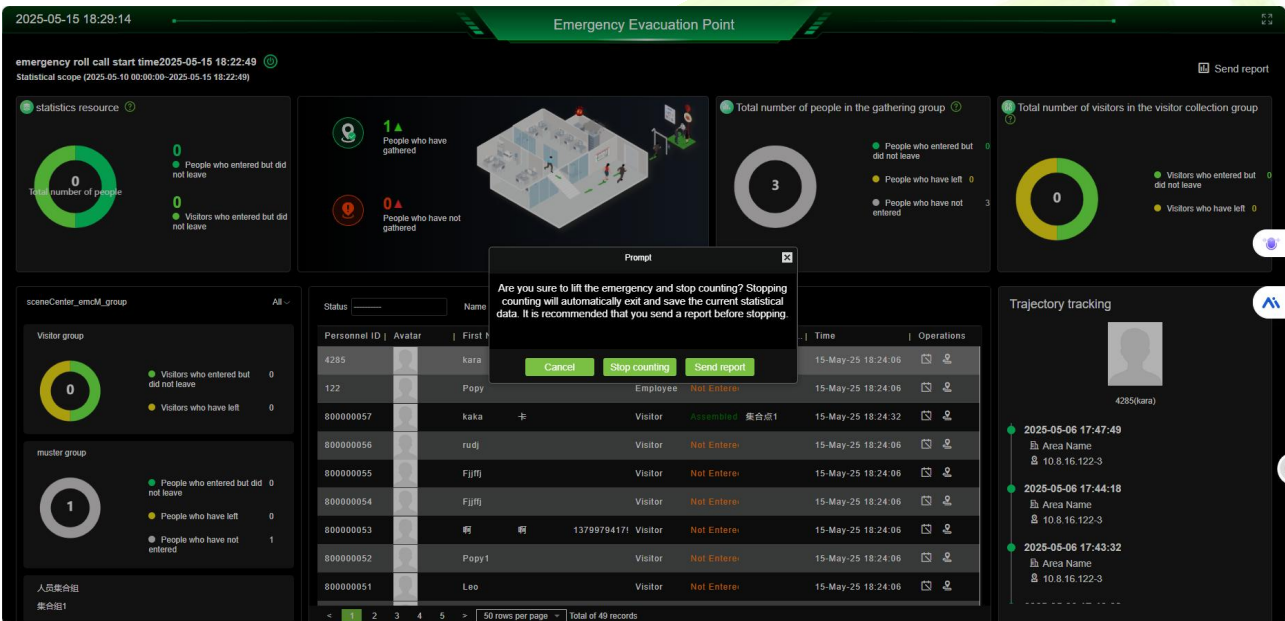
If the emergency assembly joint has been configured in advance, the corresponding actions will be output. For example, the broadcast will convert the text of escape guidance into voice playback, and the voice guide personnel will escape; or the escape channel can be linked to open, so as to facilitate escape.



### ➤ End Emergency Roll Call

If the danger is removed, the administrator can end the emergency assembly state.

Click the one in  the upper left corner to pop up the following dialog box.



#### ■ Cancel

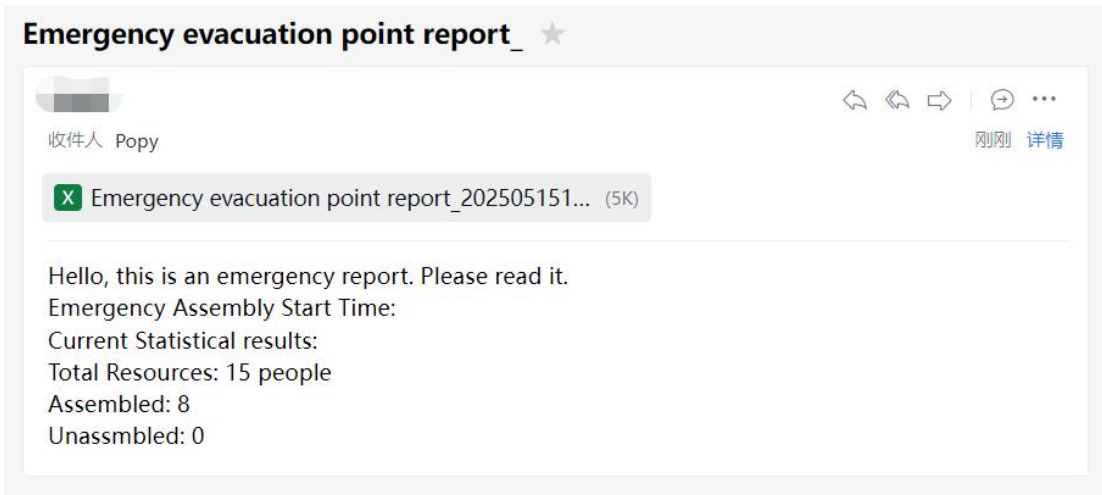
Cancel this operation, click to continue to stay on the emergency roll call page

#### ■ Stop Counting

To end the emergency assembly state, click this button to clear the statistics of this session and return to the previous page

#### ■ Send Report

After clicking, the final statistical report will be sent to the person in charge and the recipient.



The group administrator can open the attachment report to facilitate the offline secondary verification of the gathering situation of personnel. For the personnel who are already at the security point but whose status is "not gathered", they can sign in manually or let them verify on the equipment at the gathering point; they can also quickly contact the uncollected personnel through the mobile phone number on the report.

| Mustering Group1 |              |            |           |                 |              |             |                        |
|------------------|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------------------------|
| Assembly Group   | Personnel ID | First Name | Last Name | Department Name | Mobile Phone | Status      | Assembly check-in Time |
| Mustering Group1 | 1            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 123          | Assembled   | 2025/5/15 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 2            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 124          | Assembled   | 2025/5/16 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 3            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 125          | Assembled   | 2025/5/17 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 4            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 126          | Assembled   | 2025/5/18 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 5            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 127          | Assembled   | 2025/5/19 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 6            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 128          | Assembled   | 2025/5/20 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 7            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 129          | Assembled   | 2025/5/21 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 8            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 130          | Assembled   | 2025/5/22 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 9            | Popy       |           | Testing         | 131          | Assembled   | 2025/5/23 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 10           | Popy       |           | Testing         | 132          | Assembled   | 2025/5/24 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 11           | Popy       |           | Testing         | 133          | Assembled   | 2025/5/25 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 12           | Popy       |           | Testing         | 134          | Assembled   | 2025/5/26 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 13           | Popy       |           | Testing         | 135          | Assembled   | 2025/5/27 15:00        |
| Mustering Group1 | 14           | Popy       |           | Testing         | 136          | Unassembled | 2025/5/28 15:00        |

## 21.6 Push Center

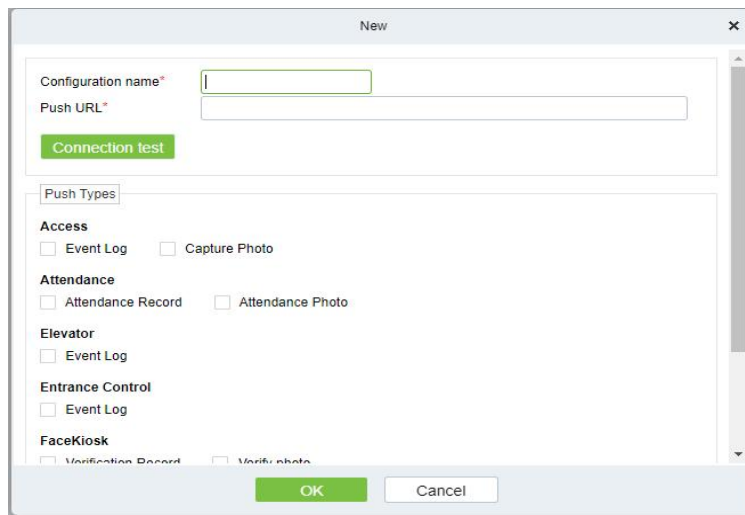
### 21.6.1 Push Configuration

#### Add New

● Operation Step:

**Step 1:** In the Service Center module, choose "Push Center > Push Configuration".

**Step 2:** In the Push Configuration interface, click Add New and fill in the relevant parameters, as shown in Figure 18-13. Please refer to Table 18-3 for parameter description.



**Figure 20- 30 Add Push Configuration**

| Parameter          | Description                  |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| Configuration Name | Enter the configuration name |
| Push URL           | Enter the push URL           |

**Table 20-3 Parameters for New**

**Delete**

Select one or more push configuration and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected push configuration. Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single push configuration.

**Docking Example**

It will show the example of data format as a code.

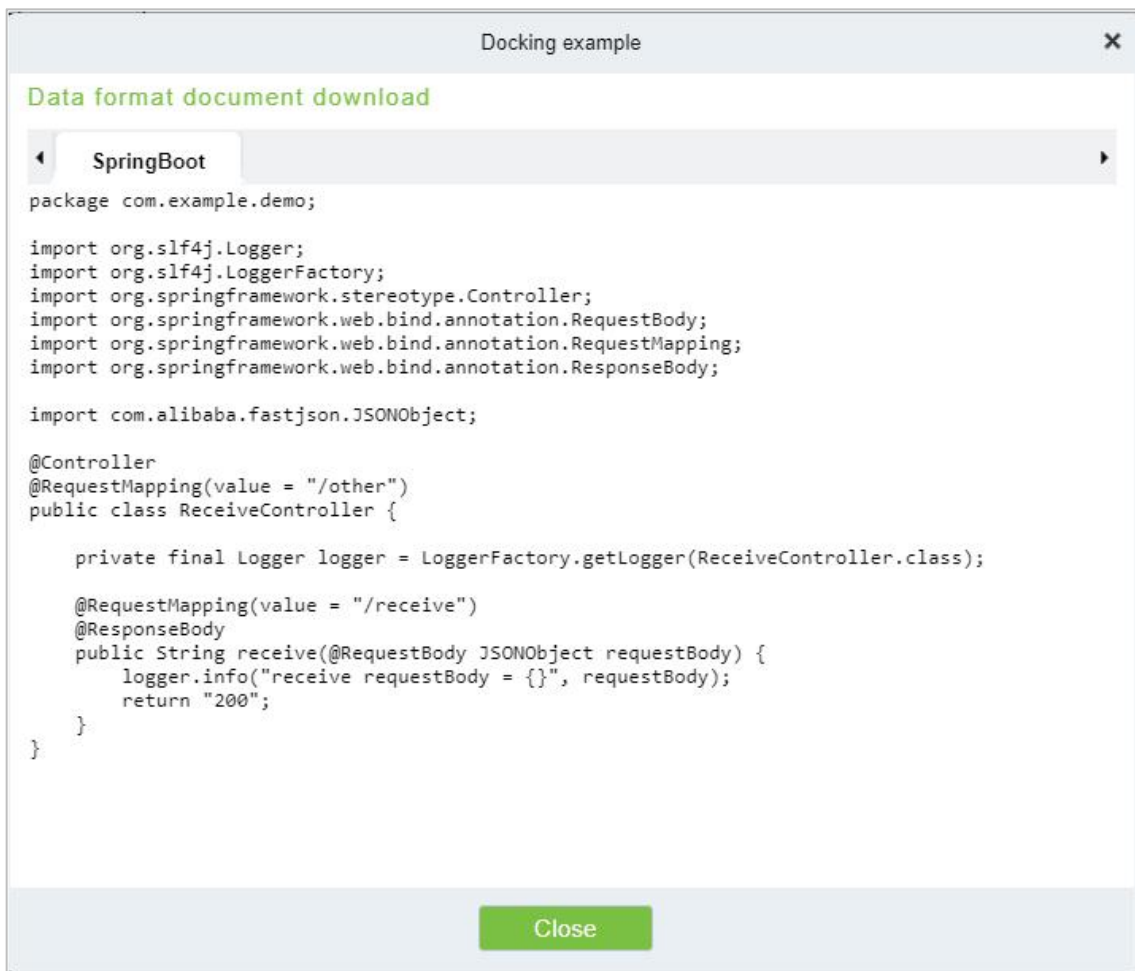


Figure 20- 31 Docking Example

## 21.6.2 Push Exception Record

### Delete

Select one or more push exception record and click **Delete** at the upper part of the list and click **OK** to delete the selected. push exception record Click **Cancel** to cancel the operation or click **Delete** in the operation column to delete a single push exception record.

### Re-push

If the data sync failed one time it will re-sync the data automatically to the software and device.

### Manual Push

Manual push is we need to sync the data from device to the software.

ZKTeco Industrial Park, No.32, Industrial Road,  
Tangxia Town, Dongguan, China.  
Phone : +86 769 - 82109991  
Fax : +86 755 - 89602394  
[www.zkteco.com](http://www.zkteco.com)

